ANCIENT INDIAN TRADITION & MYTHOLOGY

TRANSLATED BY

A BOARD OF SCHOLARS

EDITED BY

Dr. G. P. BHATT

VOLUME 37

ANCIENT INDIAN TRADITION AND MYTHOLOGY SERIES

[PURĀṆAS IN TRANSLATION]

VOLUMES

ŚIVA 1-4
LIṄGA 5-6
BHĀGAVATA 7-11
GARUḌA 12-14
NĀRADA 15-19
KŪRMA 20-21
BRAHMĀṆḌA 22-26
AGNI 27-30
VARĀHA 31-32
BRAHMA 33-36
VĀYU 37-38

VOLUMES UNDER PREPARATION

BHAVIṢYA
BRAHMAVAIVARTA
DEVĪBHĀGAVATA
KĀLIKĀ
MĀRKAṆḌEYA
MATSYA
PADMA
SKANDA
VĀMANA
VIṢṆU
VIṢṆUDHARMOTTARA

THE
VĀYU PURĀṆA

PART I

TRANSLATED AND ANNOTATED BY
G. V. TAGARE

MOTILAL BANARSIDASS • DELHI
UNESCO • PARIS

First Published ***1987***

MOTILAL BANARSIDASS
Bungalow Road, Jawahar Nagar, Delhi 110 007
Branches
Chowk, Varanasi 221 001
Ashok Rajpath, Patna 800 004
120 Royapettah High Road, Mylapore, Madras 600 004

Copyright © 1987 by MOTILAL BANARSIDASS

ISBN: 81-208-0332-9

UNESCO COLLECTION OF REPRESENTATIVE WORKS—Indian Series
This book has been accepted in the Indian Translation Series of the Unesco Collection of Representative Works jointly sponsored by the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization (UNESCO) and the Government of India.

PRINTED IN INDIA
BY JAINENDRA PRAKASH JAIN AT SHRI JAINENDRA PRESS, A-45 NARAINA, PHASE I, NEW DELHI 110 028 AND PUBLISHED BY NARENDRA PRAKASH JAIN FOR MOTILAL BANARSIDASS, DELHI 110 007.

PUBLISHER'S NOTE

The purest gems lie hidden in the bottom of the ocean or in the depth of rocks. One has to dive into the ocean or delve into the rocks to find them out. Similarly, truth lies concealed in the language which with the passage of time has become obsolete. Man has to learn that language before he discovers that truth.

But he has neither the means nor the leisure to embark on that course. We have, therefore, planned to help him acquire knowledge by an easier course. We have started the series of Ancient Indian Tradition and Mythology in English Translation. Our goal is to universalize knowledge through the most popular international medium of expression. The publication of the Purāṇas in English Translation is a step towards that goal.

PREFACE

This thirty-seventh volume in the series on *Ancient Indian Tradition and Mythology* constitutes the first part (Pūrvārdha) of the *Vāyu Purāṇa* of which the second part (Uttarārdha) also is in press and will follow shortly as the thirty-eighth volume. This part contains the English translation of Chapters 1-61 comprising the first two Pādas or Sections out of the total four Pādas into which the Purāṇa is divided, viz. *Prakriyā*, *Upodghāta*, *Anuṣaṅga* and *Upasaṁhāra* Pādas.

The project of this series was envisaged in 1970 by the late Lala Sundar Lal Jain of Messrs. Motilal Banarsidass. Thirty-seven volumes of the series, including the present one, have so far been published and others are in progress. Complete sets of ten major Purāṇas, viz. *Agni*, *Bhāgavata*, *Brahma*, *Brahmāṇḍa*, *Garuḍa*, *Kūrma*, *Liṅga*, *Nārada*, *Śiva* and *Varāha* have already been made available in English to the lovers of ancient Indian wisdom and it is hoped that this eleventh one, Vāyu Purāṇa, will also be complete much before the end of the year.

The Vāyu or Vāyavīya Purāṇa gets its name from the Wind-god who is said to be its promulgator, and it is a Śaiva Purāṇa in the sense that it has been composed for the propagation of devotion to and worship of god Śiva. It discusses the well known five topics of the Purāṇas, viz. creation, dissolution and re-creation, genealogy of gods, sages etc., periods called Manvantaras, and description of royal dynasties. In the present part cosmogony is discussed in great detail and a good deal of geographical material is found. The translation is preceded by a long scholarly *Introduction* highlighting the salient features of the Purāṇa.

It is our pleasant duty to put on record our sincere thanks to Dr. R. N. Dandekar and the UNESCO authorities for their kind encouragement and valuable help which render this work more useful than it would otherwise have been. We are extremely grateful to Dr. G. V. Tagare for translating the text and contributing the *Introduction*. We are also thankful to all those who have been helpful in our project.

—Editor

CONTENTS

PREFACE vii

ABBREVIATIONS xiii

INTRODUCTION xv

CHAPTERS

1. Summary of Contents 1
2. A Sacrificial Session of Twelve Years 22
3. Origin of Creation 26
4. Origin of Creation (continued) 29
5. ,, ,, 37
6. ,, ,, 42
7. Transition between two Yugas (Ages) 51
8. Four Stages of Life 58
9. Creation of Devas and Others 76
10. Manvantaras 86
11. Pāśupata Yoga 93
12. Evil Portents and Calamities in Yoga 98
13. Supreme Powers of Yoga 102
14. Pāśupata Yoga 104
15. ,, (continued) 108
16. Purity and Conduct of Life 110
17. Attainment of the Ultimate State of Life 112
18. Procedure of Expiation for Recluses (Sannyāsins) 113
19. Evil Omens Foreboding Death 116
20. The Characteristics of Attainment of Oṁkāra 119
21. Review of Kalpas 123
22. Number of Kalpas 130

23.	Incarnations of Maheśvara	133
24.	Hymn to Śiva	150
25.	Birth and Death of Madhu and Kaiṭabha	164
26.	Origin of Sounds	171
27.	Names and Bodies of the Great Lord	176
28.	Families of Sages	182
29.	Progency of Agni	185
30.	The Curse of Dakṣa	191
31.	The Race of Devas	218
32.	Characteristics of Yugas	224
33.	Progeny of Svāyaṁbhuva Manu	230
34.	Geography of Jaṁbūdvīpa	236
35.	Jaṁbūdvīpa (continued)	245
36.	(Geographical) Arrangement of the World	249
37.	Arrangement of the World (Valleys and Lakes)	252
38.	Valleys between Mountains	255
39.	Abodes of Devas	261
40.	Boundary and the Limits of Mount Devakūṭa	265
41.	Description of Kailāsa	267
42.	The Divine Rivers	274
43.	Description of Bhadrāśva	280
44.	Description of Ketumāla	283
45.	Description of Bhāratavarṣa	285
46.	Description of Kiṁpuruṣa Varṣa	301
47.	Descent of the Gaṅgā	304
48.	Countries of the Jaṁbūdvīpa	311
49.	Description of Plakṣa Dvīpa and other Dvīpas	314
50.	The Nether-worlds: Manifestation of the Luminaries	329
51.	Movements of the Luminary Bodies	347
52.	Movement of Dhruva	355
53.	Arrangement of Luminaries	362
54.	Hymn to Nīlakaṇṭha	373
55.	Hymn to the Liṅga of Śiva	383

56. Description of Pitṛs 388
57. The Cycle of Yugas: Their Characteristics 396
58. Description of the Four Yugas 408
59. Yugas and Classes of People: Lineage of Sages 419
60. Description of Holy Places : The Death of Śākalya 429
61. Lineage of Prajāpati 436

ABBREVIATIONS

Common and self-evident abbreviations such as Ch(s)—Chapter(s), p—page, pp—pages, V—Verse, VV—Verses, Ftn—footnote, Hist. Ind. Philo.—History of Indian Philosophy are not included in this list.

ABORI	*Annals of the Bhandarkar Oriental Research Institute*, Poona
AGP	S. M. Ali's *The Geography of Purāṇas*, PPH, New Delhi, 1973
AIHT	*Ancient Indian Historical Tradition*, F. E. Pargiter, Motilal Banarsidass (MLBD), Delhi
AITM	*Ancient Indian Tradition and Mythology* Series, MLBD, Delhi
AP	*Agni Purāṇa*, Guru Mandal Edition (GM), Calcutta, 1957
Arch.S.Rep.	Archaeological Survey Report
AV	*Atharva Veda*, Svādhyāya Mandal, Aundh
Bd. P.	*Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa*, MLBD, Delhi 1973
BG	*Bhagavadgītā*
Bh. P.	*Bhāgavata Purāṇa*, Bhagavat Vidyapeeth, Ahmedabad
Br.	*Brāhmaṇa* (preceded by name such as Śatapatha)
BS. P.	*Bhaviṣya Purāṇa*, Vishnu Shastri Bapat, Wai
BV. P.	*Brahma Vaivarta Purāṇa*, GM, 1955-57
CC	*Caturvarga Cintāmaṇi* by Hemādri
CVS	*Caraṇa Vyūha Sūtra* by Śaunaka, Com. by Mahidāsa
DB	*Devi Bhāgavata*, GM, 1960-61
De or GDAMI	*The Geographical Dictionary of Ancient and Mediaeval India*, N. L. De, Oriental Reprint, Delhi, 1971
Dh. S.	*Dharma Sūtra* (preceded by the author's name such as Gautama)
ERE	*Encyclopaedia of Religion and Ethics* by Hastings
GP	*Garuḍa Purāṇa*, ed. R. S. Bhattacharya, Chowkhamba, Varanasi, 1964

GS	*Gṛhya Sūtra* (preceded by the name of the author such as Āpastamba)
HD	*History of Dharma Śāstra*, P. V. Kane, G. O. S.
IA	*The Indian Antiquary*
IHQ	*The Indian Historical Quarterly*
JP	*Purāṇa* (Journal of the Kashiraj Trust), Varanasi
KA	*Kauṭilya Arthaśāstra*
KP	*Kūrma Purāṇa*, Veṅkaṭeśvara Press Edn., Bombay; also Kashiraj Trust Edn., Varanasi, 1971
LP	*Liṅga Purāṇa*, GM, 1960; also MLBD, Delhi, 1981
Manu.	*Manusmṛti*
Mbh.	*Mahābhārata*, Gītā Press, Gorakhpur, VS 2014
MkP	*Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa*
MN	*Mahābhārata Nāmānukramaṇi*, Gītā Press, Gorakhpur, VS 2016
MtP	*Matsya Purāṇa*, GM, 1954
MW	Monier Williams' *Sanskrit-English Dictionary*, MLBD, Delhi, 1976
NP	*Nāradiya* or *Nārada Purāṇa*, Veṅkaṭeśvara Press, Bombay
PCK	*Bhāratavarṣiya Prācina Caritrakośa*, Siddheshwar Shastri, Poona, 1968
Pd.P.	*Padma Purāṇa*, GM, 1957-59
PE	*Purāṇic Encyclopaedia*, V. Mani, English version, MLBD, Delhi, 1975
PR or PRHRC	*Puranic Records on Hindu Rites and Customs*, R. C. Hazra, Calcutta, 1948
ṚV	*Ṛg-Veda*, Svādhyāya Mandal, Aundh
Śat.Br.	*Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa*
SC or SMC	*Smṛti Candrikā* by Devanna Bhaṭṭa
SEP	*Studies in Epics and Purāṇas*, A.D. Pusalkar, Bharatiya Vidya Bhavan (BVB), Bombay

INTRODUCTION

1. THE TITLE *VĀYU PURĀṆA*

This close-cousin of the Bd. P. (*Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa*) is one of the oldest and authoritative Purāṇas. *Nibandhakāras* (writers on Dharma-Śāstra) like Aparārka, Ballālasena, Devaṇa Bhaṭṭa profusely quote it on *Śrāddha, Dāna, Tīrtha, Āśrama* etc., designating their source as '*Vāyavīya*'. They use this term to imply this Purāṇa and *not* the '*Vāyavīya*' *Saṁhitā* in *Śiva Purāṇa*. It is called 'Vāyu' or 'Vāyavīya' as Vāyu narrated it[1] to elucidate Dharmas and the glory of Rudra and it pertains to Śveta Kalpa. The Vā. P. (*Vāyu Purāṇa*) states that it consists of 12000 verses and is divided into four pādas[2].

The traditional division is into four parts (*pādas*) of unequal length, as can be seen below[3] :

I. *Pūrvārdha*
   1. *Prakriyā Pāda* (Chs. 1-6)
   2. *Upodghāta Pāda* (Chs. 7-64)

II. *Uttarārdha* (Chs. 1-3 of Upodghāta Pāda) and
   3. *Anuṣaṅga Pāda* (Chs. 4-37)
   4. *Upasaṁhāra Pāda* (Chs. 38-42 and includes Gayā Māhātmya 43-50).

A (Ānandāśrama edt. of the Vā. P.) follows the older tradition and does not divide the text into *Pūrvārdha* and *Uttarārdha* and gives the following break-up into four *Pādas*:

1. *Prakriyā* (Chs. 1-6),
2. *Upodghāta* (Chs. 7-64),

---

1. Mt.P. 53.18, NP. I. 95, Devī Bhāgavata I.3.7, Vā. P. II.41.44-45.
2. *evam dvādaśa-sāhasraṁ purāṇam kavayo viduḥ //*
   yathā vedaś catuṣpādaḥ....
   catuṣpādaṁm surāṇāṁ tu brahmaṇā vihitaṁ purā //
   —Vā. P. I. 32.63b-64.
   According to Venkateshwar Press edition.

3. *Anuṣaṅga* (Chs. 65-99),
4. *Upasaṁhāra* (Chs. 100-112)

In this break-up, the problem of spilling over three chapters of *Upodghāta Pāda* (Chs. 62, 63, 64 in A) into *Uttarārdha* (as Chs. 1-3) does not arise.

Even our text (Venkateshwar Press Edition) states that the original *Saṁhitā* was divided into four *Pādas* (I.61.5). Later on it specifically confirms it and states that Vāyu-god is its narrator.

"The Wind-god himself.....has narrated this popular Purāṇa consisting of four *Pādas*, viz. *Prakriyā* the first section where the story is taken up (the other *Pādas* or Sections being), *Anuṣaṅga*, *Upodghāta* and *Upasaṁhāra*.[1] —II.41.44-45.

The division of the Purāṇa into *Pūrvārdha* and *Uttarārdha* is of a later date.

The original Vā. P. ended with Ch. 41 of *Uttarārdha* (Ch. 103 in A). The sages who listened to Sūta's narration of the Vā. P. expressed their satisfaction at the narration of the Vā. P. They gratefully honoured the Sūta. The end of the narration of the Purāṇa and the conclusion of the sacrificial session (*Satra*) at Naimiṣāraṇya synchronised. The sacrificers had their valedictory (*Avabhṛtha*) bath and they went to heaven (II.41.42).

The last redactor of this Purāṇa exhorts his listeners to worship deities, perform sacrifices and go to heaven at the end of the life (II.41.43).

The same chapter traces the genealogy of teachers who transmitted the text of the Vā. P. from god Brahmā to Sūta and Śāṁsapāyana (II.41.58-66). After stating the 'fruit' of listening to this Purāṇa (*Phala-śruti*) and laying down prohibition of the transmission of the Purāṇa to undeserving persons,

---

1. *prakriyā prathame pāde kathā-vastu-parigrahaḥ /*
anuṣaṅga upodghāta upasaṁhāra eva ca //
evam etac catuṣpādam purāṇaṁ loka-sammatam /
uvāca bhagavān sākṣād vāyur loka-hite rataḥ //

—Vā. P. II.41.44-45

the author concludes the Purāṇa with salutations[1] to the Lord Maheśvara (II.41.73).

As shown in the notes to II.42, that chapter is a later accretion as it comes after *Phala-Śruti*, accepts *Adhyāsavāda* (vv.30-31) of Śaṅkara (c. 650-725 A.D.), quotes from the *Spanda-kārikā* of Vasugupta (c. 825 A.D.) and advocates Kashmiri Trika-Śaivism (v.33), brings in Rādhā-Kṛṣṇa cult (vv.44-45) and Vyāsa's dejection after completing (so called) eighteen Purāṇas[2] which is an echo of Bh. P. I.4.26-31 and subsequent chapters (I. 5 & 6). One wonders why the Agni P., Viṣṇu P. and Liṅga P. which are uniformly found in the standard lists of Purāṇas are deleted here and one '*Ādi Purāṇa*' is added to the list.

About the number of verses, no criticism is necessary as these Purāṇa-writers depend on hearsay or traditional information in this matter and did not count the verses. It may how-

---

1. taṁ deva-devaṁ jananaṁ janānāṁ....
varaṁ varāṇāṁ varadaṁ maheśvaram,
Brahmāṇam ādim prayato namasye //

—Vā. P. II.41.73

2. Though the traditional number eighteen of Mahāpurāṇas is mentioned in the text, actually only sixteen Purāṇas are enumerated as follows : (Total number of verses in each is given within brackets after the name of the Purāṇa.)

1. Matsya (14000),
2. Bhaviṣya (14500),
3. Mārkaṇḍeya (9000),
4. Brahma-vaivarta (18000),
5. Brahmāṇḍa (12100),
6. Bhāgavata (18000),
7. Brahma (10000),
8. Vāmana (10000),
9. Ādi-Purāṇa (?) (10600),
10. Vāyu (23000),
11. Nāradiya (23000),
12. Garuḍa (19000),
13. Padma (55000)
14. Kūrma (17000),
15. Varāha (24000),
16. Skanda (81900).

—Vā.P.II.42.3-11.

ever be argued that these numbers of verses actually existed then in the MSS of Purāṇas available to those Purāṇa redactors. Gayā-māhātmya (II, Chs. 43-50) is obviously an interpolation. The motive of this interpolation may be synthesising Śaivism and Vaiṣṇavism. The Vā. P. mainly advocates Śaivism and to counter-balance it, *Gayā-māhātmya* which emphasizes Vaiṣṇavism appears to have been added here. This *māhātmya* has a nominal, tenuous connection with the Vāyu P.—only the first verse of the Māhātmya is attributed to Vāyu. The real interlocutors are Nārada and Sanatkumāra.

Moreover a considerable number of verses are common to this *Gayā Māhātmya* and those in the Mbh., Vana, Chs. 84-95; NP, Uttarabhāga, Chs. 44-47; GP, Chs. 82-86; AP, 114-116; KP, II.35. It shows that there must have been an independent work called the *Gayā Māhātmya* from which these Purāṇas borrowed these verses.

2. THE EXTENT

The following total numbers of verses are attributed to the Vā. P. by Anukramaṇī-writers of Purāṇas :

(1)	Devī Bhāgavata I.3.7	24600
(2)	Mt. P. 53.18	24000
(3)	NP I.95.2	
(4)	AP 272. 4-5	14000
(5)	Vā. P. I. 32.63	12000

Actually however, there are 10991 verses[1]

These differences may be due to the difference in the time of the last redaction of these Purāṇas and/or the availability of different Purāṇic texts to these Anukramaṇī-writers. It may also be due to the actual difference in the contents of the Vā.P. before these writers.

We do not know the contents of the Vā. P. mentioned in the Mbh. Vana 191.16 but NP I.95 gives the detailed contents of the Vā. P. According to it, the first part of the Vā. P. contained the story of killing of Gayāsura and the glory of different

1. Ā. Poona and GM Calcutta editions of the Vā.P. I used these editions while writing on the Bd. P.

months and the second part has Revā-Māhātmya—details not found in to-day's editions of the Vā. P. Eggeling's *Catalogue* shows that the Lakṣmī-Saṁhitā once formed a part of the Vā. P. (MS No. 3599). It, however, appears that although these parts of Vā. P. became separate as independent works in due course, they have preserved the name of the Vā. P. as their original source in the colophons as follows :

(1) *Vāyu-purāṇāntargata-Revā-Māhātmyam |*
(2) *iti Śrī-Vāyu-Pūraṇe Lakṣmī-Saṁhitāyām ānanda-kānana-māhātmye.....*

3. POSITION IN THE MAHĀPURĀṆAS

The Problem :

Mt. P. (53.18), NP (I.95), DB (I.3.7) and AP (274.4-5) regard Vā. P. as a Mahā-Purāṇa implying its fourth place in the list of Mahāpurāṇas. But Bh. P. (XII. 7.23 ff.), LP (I.36. 61ff), Brahma-Vaivarta (III.133.14ff), Mārkaṇḍeya (137.8ff) and VP (III.6.21ff) do not mention Vā. P. in their list of Mahāpurāṇas, but substitute Śiva Purāṇa instead of Vā. P. KP I.1.13-15 includes both Vā. P. and Śiva P. in its list of nineteen Mahāpurāṇas[1].

The problem is which of the two has a better claim to be the fourth Mahāpurāṇa, as majority is not the criterion in such matters[2].

The consensus of these Purāṇas (or rather Anukramaṇī-writers) about the fourth Mahāpurāṇa is that :

(I) It consists of two parts and 24000 verses, and

(II) Is declared by Vāyu (Wind-god) with reference to Śveta-Kalpa. NP which gives 4th place to Vā. P. in the list of Mahāpurāṇas states its contents also. It includes the five characteristics (*pañca-lakṣaṇa*)

---

1. The text need not be strained and interpreted "and the eighteenth Vāyaviya called also Brahmāṇḍa" in order to stick to the traditional number eignteen. Purāṇa-writers are not very particular in such matters. For example, our text (Vā. P. II. 42.2-11) records that Vyāsa wrote 18 Purāṇas but the list actually contains only sixteen Purāṇas.

2. M. Winternitz, *Calcutta Review*, December 1924, p. 330.

of Purāṇas, the story of Gayāsura in the first part, *Māsa-Māhātmya* especially that of the month of Māgha, *Dāna-dharmas*, *Rāja-dharmas*, *Vratas* (religious observances) etc. The second part (*Uttara-bhāga*) describes Revā Māhātmya and Śiva Māhātmya.

Let us consider whether Śiva Purāṇa satisfies these conditions :

1. Out of the seven Saṁhitās of Śiva Purāṇa, only one Saṁhitā—*Vāyaviya Saṁhitā*—is declared by Vāyu. Hence the whole of Śiva Purāṇa cannot claim to be declared by Vāyu, and thus claim fourth place in the heirarchy of Mahāpurāṇas.

2. *Vāyaviya Saṁhitā* which claims to have been narrated by Vāyu with reference to Śveta Kalpa[1] (as in the case of Vā. P.) cannot claim to be the 4th Mahāpurāṇa for the following reasons :

(A) *Vāyaviya Saṁhitā* does not satisfy the *Pañca-lakṣaṇa criterion* of a Mahāpurāṇa while Vā. P. does (vide'*Va. P. as a Mahāpurāṇa*').

(B) *Vāyaviya Saṁhitā* consists of 4000 verses only. Vā. P. is nearer the mark to deserve the traditional epithet *dvādaśa-sāhasri saṁhitā* (a text with 12000 verses).

(C) *Vāyaviya Saṁhitā* does not contain the Gayāsura episode in the Pūrvārdha or the Revā Māhātmya in the Uttarārdha.

An extra-textual and hence extraneous argument to support the claim of *Vāyaviya Saṁhitā* is advanced as follows :

Śrīdhara in his Com. on Bh. P. I.1.4 quotes the following verse giving the etymology of the word *Naimiṣa* :

---

1. *śaivaṁ tatra purāṇam vai*
caturarthaṁ sapta-saṁhitam /
—*Vāyavīya Saṁhitā*
I.1.58
vakṣyāmi paramam puṇyaṁ veda-
sammitam /
śveta-kalpa-prasaṅgena vāyunā
kathitam purā
—*Vāyavīya Saṁhitā*
I.1.22-23.

tathā ca vāyavīye :
etan manoramaṁ cakraṁ
mayā sṛṣṭam visṛjyate |
yatrāsya śiryate nemiḥ
sa deśas tapasaḥ śubhaḥ ||

Our text (Vā. P. I. 2.7) has the following verse to explain the etymology of *Naimiṣa.*

bhramato dharmacakrasya yatra
nemir aśiryata |
karmaṇā tena vikhyātaṁ
naimiṣam munipūjitam ||

It is true that Śrīdhara's quotation is found in *Vāyavīya Saṁhitā* (I.2.88). But in olden times, people depended more on memory and did not care to give actual references to MS—*Pustakasthā vidyā*—every now and then. Śrīdhara, being a human being, mixing up of references of similar versesis highly probable. It is equally probable that the MS of Vā. P. before Śrīdhara had a verse with different readings.

I, however, do not understand how a verse incidentally giving the etymology of 'Naimiṣa' is going to refute the strong textual evidence against the position of *Vāyavīya Saṁhitā.*

The presumption that at the time of Śrīdhara (1300-1400 A.D.) Śiva Purāṇa completely eclipsed *Vāyu Purāṇa* and that people regarded *Vāyavīya Saṁhitā* as *Vāyu Purāṇa* need not be seriously considered. For *Nibandhakāras* and commentators on *Smṛtis* from the time of Aparārka quote from *Vāyu Purāṇa* in preference to *Śiva Purāṇa* and these '*Vāyavīya*' quotations are traceable to *Vāyu Purāṇa* only and not to *Vāyavīya Saṁhitā.* And a number of these *Nibandhakāras* are from the region of Śrīdhara Svāmin.[1]

The testimony of these Nibandha-writers disproves the above presumption. Nor should Śrīdhara be accused of confusing *Vāyv Purāṇa* and *Vāyavīya Saṁhitā* when the whole galaxy of writers on Dharma Śāstra and commentators on

1. For the verses quoted from *Vāyu Purāṇa* or *Vāyavīya* by the Nibandhakāras, see Appendix to R.C. Hazra's article 'The Vāyu Purāṇa', IHQ XIV, 2, pp. 337-339. The list of these Dharma Śāstra writers includes Aparārka, Ballālasena, Kullūka Bhaṭṭa, Devaṇa Bhaṭṭa and others.

Smṛtis are definite about the distinction between the two Purāṇas.

The enormous amount of Tāntric Śaiva ritual in Śiva Purāṇa and quotations from a late writer like Vasugupta (circa 825 A.D.) show there had been a lot of late accretion to Śiva Purāṇa. Vāyu like Brahmāṇḍa touches the beginning of the Gupta dynasty (500 A.D.). It will thus be seen that the evidence about the fourth position in the list of Mahāpurāṇas tilts in favour of Vāyu Purāṇa.

4. TRANSMISSION OF THE TEXT

Vā.P. II.41.58-66 gives the following line of transmission of this text:

God Brahmā → Mātariśvan (Wind-god) → Uśanas → Bṛhaspati → Savitṛ → Mṛtyu (god of Death) → Indra → Vasiṣṭha→Sārasvata→Tridhāman→Śāradvata → Triviṣṭapa → Antarikṣa→Trayyāruṇa→Dhanañjaya→Kṛtañjaya →Tṛṇañjaya →Bharadvāja→Gautama→Niryyantara→Vājaśravas → Soma→ Śuṣma→Tṛṇabindu→Dakṣa→Śakti→Parāśara (while in womb) →Jātukarṇa→Dvaipāyana (Vyāsa)→Sūta (Romaharṣaṇa).

There are two surprising yet similar transmissions. (1) Śakti was the son of Vasiṣṭha. But Śakti did not receive this Purāṇa directly from his father Vasiṣṭha. Fifteen generations of teachers or contemporary teachers had to intervene for its transmission when the father (Vasiṣṭha) could have directly transmitted it to his son (Śakti). Similarly Parāśara did not teach the Purāṇa to Dvaipāyana (Vyāsa) but to Jātukarṇa who taught it to Vyāsa. The birth story of Vyāsa explains why Parāśara was not available to Vyāsa. But the need of fifteen teachers intervening between Vasiṣṭha and his legitimate son Śakti is inexplicable.

This very list of transmission of Bd. P. is given in Bd. P. III. iv. 4. 58-66.

5. VĀYU AS A MAHĀPURĀṆA

The division of this ancient Purāṇa was originally into four sections (*Pādas*), viz. *Prakriyā, Anuṣaṅga, Upodghāta* and *Upasaṁhāra* (I.i.4.12-14). But due to the popularity of *Pañca-lakṣaṇa*

theory at the time of the last redaction the verse[1] enumerating the five characteristics (*lakṣaṇas*) of the Purāṇa, viz.

(1) *Sarga* (Creation of the Universe),
(2) *Pratisarga* (Dissolution and recreation of the Universe),
(3) *Vaṁśa* (Genealogies of gods, the Patriarchs, the Sun, the Moon etc.),
(4) *Manvantaras* (Aeons presided over by Manus),
(5) *Vaṁśānucarita* (Accounts of dynasties of different ruling families),

precedes (I.i.4.10) the older classification

I. *Sarga—Creation of the Universe*

We find the following theories of creation in this Purāṇa:

(i) THE VEDĀNTIC-SĀṄKHYA THEORY

The creation starts with the principle called *Mahat* and ends with *Viśeṣa* i.e. the differentiation amongst the five elements on the grossest plane of matter.[2] But the source of the Universe is the eternal Brahman, beginningless and endless, unborn, incomprehensible. It was in the beginning and it pervaded the entire Universe which was enveloped in darkness (was unmanifest), the Guṇas being in the state of equilibrium. Brahman is also called Ātman.

At the beginning of creation Kṣetrajña (the Supreme Deity) presided over *Pradhāna*, agitated the guṇas and the principle *Mahat* was evolved. When the Sattva-guṇa became dominant in *Mahat*, the psychic subtle body was evolved and was presided over by *Kṣetrajña*. The Purāṇa gives popular etymologies of the synonyms of Brahman, Kṣetrajña etc.—a sort of *samanvaya* of different current terms and theories. When *Mahat* is impelled (by God's will), it creates this great Universe—*Saṅkalpa* (thought-power) and *Adhyavasāya* (determination) are his two tendencies (*vṛtti-dvayam*) (I.i.4.16ff).

1. This verse is found in AP I.14, Bd. P. I.i.37b-38, BS.P.I.2.4.5, GP I.215.14, KP I.i.12 to mention a few Purāṇas. Amara Siṁha (5th cent. A.D.) records it in his *Kośa* I.6.5. Curiously enough the Purāṇa texts handed down to us hardly conform to this definition (*The Hist. and Culture of Indian People* Vol. III, p. 292).

2. V.S. Agrawala, *Mt.P.—A Study*, pp. 41-43; also vv. 61-62 below.

This Sāṅkhya-Vedānta synthesis in the theory of creation is found in other Purāṇas also, e.g. AP 17.2-26, Bd. P. I.i.3.6ff, KP I.2.3ff.

(ii) THE PURĀṆIC THEORY

Kṣetrajña called Brahmā awoke in the Cosmic Egg. He is the first embodied being. He is the creator of all *Bhūtas* (elements or beings). This four-headed *Hiraṇyagarbha* is the *Kṣetrajña* both at the time of creation and destruction of the Universe.

This Cosmic Egg contains seven worlds, the earth along with its seven continents, oceans—everything including the Sun, the Moon, Stars, both Loka and A-Loka. From outside, the Cosmic Egg is enveloped with seven sheaths[1]—the first four consisting of four elements, viz. water, fire, wind and ether—*ākāśa*, each sheath being ten times bigger than the former and three more sheaths consisting of *Bhūtādi*, *Mahat* and the Unmanifest *Pradhāna*.

This *Avyakta* (Unmanifest) it called *Kṣetra* and Brahmā is called *Kṣetrajña*. This *Prākṛta-sarga* is presided over by Brahmā. The creation took place without pre-planning (*abuddhipūrvaka*) like a flash of lightening (I.i.4.68-78).

(iii) THE SĀṄKHYA THEORY

The Vedānta, Sāṅkhya and Purāṇic theories are mixed up here. A clear analysis shows that *Prākṛta Sarga* is creation from *Prakṛti*. The Theistic Sāṅkhya position is more explicitly stated in the next chapter (I.i.5) as follows :—

Before the creation of the Universe there was *laya* (equilibrium) of all Guṇas. In the Unmanifest—*Avyatka*—all Guṇas lay potentially like ghee in milk. The great Lord, by His Yogic power created disequilibrium of the guṇas and the trinity of gods, Brahmā (from *rajas*), Fire or Rudra (from *Tamas*) and Viṣṇu (from *Sattva*) are created. It is the Lord who divides Himself into three for these functions.

---

1. See I.1.1. 44-45.

(iv) THE NINE CREATIONS OF BRAHMĀ

A more popular Purāṇic theory is explained in the next chaptet (I.i.6) :

At the beginning there was one vast ocean—(*Ekārṇava* also called *mahārṇava* or *yugānta-toya* 'water at the end of Yuga' in other Purāṇas). This primeval *Ekārṇava* expresses the unmanifest cause of the Universe (called *Kāraṇa Brahman* by Nīlakaṇṭha in *Harivaṁśa P.* 3.9.1-4). Brahmā named Nārāyaṇa with a thousand (innumerable) heads slept there for a thousand Yugas. At the end of the night, Brahmā assuming the form of the wind moved over the ocean for reconnaissance and discovered the earth as lying within the water. He assumed the form of a boar to lift it—a belief as old as *Tait. Br.* I.2.1-3. The beautiful description of the boar in Yajña terminology found herein is given in other Purāṇas also (e.g. Bm. P. 213.33-42, Bh. P. III. 13.34-39)and even Śaṅkara adopted it in *Viṣṇu-sahasra-nāma* 110.[1] After uplifting the earth, He re-arranged the mountains, oceans as before, as at the beginning of every Kalpa (I.i.6.27-32). When Brahmā consciously (*buddhi-pūrvaka*) began to meditate, *Avidyā* with its five 'knots', viz. *Tamas* (ignorance), *Moha* (delusion), *Mahāmoha* (great delusion) and others unfolded itself and immobile (*mukhya* or *sthāvara*) creation took place. Being dissatisfied with it, Brahmā began to meditate and created the lower creatures and animal-world called *tiryaksrotas* as it functioned 'obliquely' and was Tāmasika and ignorant. Not being satisfied, he created the third Sāttvika or divine creation of gods (called here *ūrdhvasrotas*) (vv. 33-48).

Later, Brahmā created the 'down-currented' (*arvāksrotas*) reation of human beings, Gandharvas, of Rajas and Tamas yet capable of achieving knowledge(vv. 49-52). The fifth creation is called *Anugraha Sarga* (the favoured creation). It is of four types through *Viparyaya* (contrariety?), *Śakti* (power), *Tuṣṭi* (satisfaction) and *Siddhi* (achievement). These creatures have the knowledge of the past and the present (v. 53). The sixth (repeated as the eighth creation) creation is *Bhūtādi* (of elements and Tanmātras?). The Purāṇa gives three more creations, viz.

1. Vide Fns. on p. 45 *infra*.

(7) the creation of *Mahat*, (8) the creation of Tanmātras also called Bhūtasarga (as 6 above) and (9) the *Vaikārika Sarga* (evolutes of Prakṛti) perceptible by senses.

In summary, the author calls the last three as *Prākṛta* (Primary) and the first set (*Mukhya* to *Anugraha*) as *Vaikṛta* (Secondary). The Purāṇa mentions the creation of mental sons (*Kaumāra* creations) eg. of Sanaka, Sanandana who however refused to participate in creation (vv.65-66). The Ṛgvedic idea of creation of Varṇas from the parts of Brahmā's body is also repeated (v.71).

Thus the theories of creation (Chs. 3-6) show the influence of Theistic Sāṅkhya, Vedānta and Purāṇic lore.

II. *Pratisarga or Pratyāhāra* (*Dissolution and Recreation*)

The theories are scattered over I.ii.7 and II.iv.40-41, They may be summarised as follows :

Dissolution is of four types :

(1) *Nitya*—usual,
(2) *Naimittika*—periodical,
(3) *Prākṛtika*—of Prakṛti, the primordial and
(4) *Ātyantika*—Final or absolute

(cf. KP II.45.1-10; VP I.7.41-43, VI.3.2 ff.)

Out of these (1) *Nitya Pralaya* is the daily disappearance of the world in darkness while *Ātyantika Pralaya* takes place in the case of individuals who obtain spiritual knowledge (I.ii.7.38, II.iv.40.41-45). (2) *Naimittika Pralaya* takes place at the end of the Kalpa (i.e. one thousand sets of four Yugas), when god Brahmā absorbs the creation within himself by creating drought, Saṁvartaka fires and heavy downpour creating one vast sheet of water. He becomes one with a thousand heads, feet, eyes. He sleeps in the *Ekārṇava* (Cosmic waters) for a period of the same duration as the day and re-creates the Universe *de novo* (I.ii.7.40-65) (3) *Prākṛtika Pralaya* takes place at the end of god Brahmā's life. When the time of this dissolution (*Pratyāhāra*) arrives, evolutes of Prakṛti from *Viśeṣas* to *Mahat* are destroyed. Thus the earth gets burnt up, water swallows up the special quality viz. smell, of the earth and is absorbed

in it. Thus each element is absorbed by the higher one till *Ākāśa* is 'swallowed up' by *Bhūtādi*. Thus each higher evolute of *Prakṛti* 'swallows up' the lower one till *Mahat* dissolves itself into the equilibrium of guṇas and the dissolution of Prakṛti is complete and only Ātman remains. This process is recurrent (II.iv.40). [Cf. AP 368.1-2; VP I.7.41-43, VI.3.2.ff.; KP II. 45.1-10]

IV. *Manvantaras*[1]

The Vā.P. regards Time as the unconquerable Mahādeva himself.[2] The four faces of Kāla are the four Yugas.[3] He creates all and annihilates all and is subject to none[4]. Its calculation from Nimeṣa to Mahāyuga is given in I.ii.50. 168-182 and also in I.ii.57.7 ff.

(i) *Kalpa* : Vā.P. claims to deal with Kalpa, Manvantaras and Yugas. Though a belief in the periodic creation and destruction of the world is found in AV (X.8.39,40), the theory of Kalpa is not found even in old Upaniṣads. The Buddhists and Jaina Āgamas use the term *Kappa* (Kalpa) in the sense of a long period of time, possibly related to cosmic life, but never in the sense of a period of 1000 Yugas, 14 Manvantaras or 432 million human years[5]

(ii) *Manvantara* : A Manvantara is a period presided over by a Manu as its lord. In every Kalpa, there are fourteen Manus[6] after whom the Manvantara is named. The names are as follows :

---

1. III *Vaṁśa* and V *Vaṁśānucarita* are combined in the next section.
2. I.ii.32.13b.
3. For a beautiful reification of Time with the characteristics of each Yuga vide I.ii.32.13-20.
4. I.ii. 32.29-32. Cf. KP II. 3-16.
5. Vide Vā.P. I.ii.61.136-142 for the duration of Manvantaras and a Kalpa.
6. I.ii. 26.30-47; curiously enough 14 vowels (*Svaras*) are traced to 14 Manus.

(1) Svāyaṁbhuva, (2) Svārociṣa, (3) Auttama, (4) Tāmasa, (5) Raivata or Cāriṣṇava, (6) Cāksuṣa, (7) Vaivasvata, (8) Meru-Sāvarṇi (9) Dakṣa-Sāvarṇi (10) Brahma-Sāvarṇi, (11) Dharma-Sāvarṇi, (12) Ṛtu (Rudra)-Sāvarṇi, (13) Raucya, (14) Bhautya—the Kalpa, Brahmā's day, ends with this Manvantara.

Every Manu has his separate list of sons, gods, seven sages, Indra and an incarnation of Viṣṇu also.[1] They exercise the same powers as mentioned in the Purāṇas. Vā. P. names 33 Kalpas (I.ii.21.26-72 and Ch. 22) while Mt. 290 enumerates 30 names and Bd.P. II.31-119 states that the number of Kalpas is exactly thirtyfive. The destruction of the Universe at the end of a Kalpa and receration at the beginning of a new one on the same lines as in previous Kalpa is described in the above section.

(iii) *Yuga* : The Manvantaras are based on the concept of Yugas. A Yuga originally was a period of five years[2] called (1) Saṁvatsara, (2) Parivatsara, (3) Iḍ or Iḍāvatsara, (4) Anuvatsara and (5) Vatsara. We find the same duration of Yuga in Mbh.[3], Kauṭilya[4] and Vedāṅga Jyotiṣa.[5] Later on the period of four Yugas came to be extended to 12000 years in all[6], a period endorsed by Manu (1.71) and Mbh. (Vana. 188-27).

But now here it is hinted that these are 'divine' years and not human.

Later on these were converted into 'divine years' corresponding to 4320000 human years[7]. The day of god Brahmā consists of 1000 caturyugas in which 14 Manus rule. This means a manvantara = $\frac{1000 \text{ Caturyugas}}{14}$ or $71\ \frac{6}{14}$ Caturyugas or 306720000 human years.

---

1. For details vide II. 38 in Upasaṁhāra Pada.
2. Probably 'Yuga' in RV. III.26.3, implies this—Kane-HD.
3. *Sabhā* 11.37-38.
4. Pañca-saṁvatsaram yugam—*Arthaśāstra* II.20. P. 109.
5. Pañca-saṁvatsara-mayam yugādhyakṣam prajāpatim—V.I.
6. Vide Fn 1 p. 396 infra.
7. Vide Vā. P. I.ii Chs. 21,22,57,58. This new concept is adopted by Purāṇas such as KP I. Chs. 51,53, NP I-41, VP I.3 and even in the Mbh. *Vana* Chs. 149, 188.

Curiously enough this Yuga-theory is strictly limited to Bhāratavarṣa as has been thrice asserted by this Purāṇa.[1]

CHARACTERISTICS OF THE YUGAS

Kṛta Yuga : It was a period of social equality. All people were ever young, equal in beauty and longevity with malice towards none. They were houseless nomads resorting to mountains or seashores. The climate was pleasant. The institution of *Varṇāśrama-dharma* or Sacraments did not as yet evolve. The vegetable world and animal kingdom did not exist.[2] Meditation was valued most then. Events happened unplanned (*abuddhi-pūrvakam*).

Tretā Yuga :

The advent of Tretā Yuga was marked by rainfall and luxuriant vegetation. Trees supplied food, clothing and ornaments to people. Giving up their nomadic habits, people began to settle down by river-banks and mountain ridges or hills. They evolved units of measurements and began to construct houses, establish villages and townships. Women came to have monthly menstruation.

In course of time people became greedy and began to over-exploit the trees. The earth, therefore 'swallowed up" the trees and she had to be 'milked' (i.e. Agriculture had to be developed to meet the need of food).

The Purāṇas believe in the eternity of Mantras. The Mantras which disappeared at the end of the last Kalpa, manifested themselves to sages who by their penance qualified themselves to be the recipients of those Mantras. The Veda which was one became "four-feeted" (*Catuṣpāda*). Practice of sacrifices, *dāna* (religious gifts), penance and truthfulness was the Dharma in Tretā Yuga. *Saptarṣis* (the set of seven prominent sages) laid down *Śrauta* and *Smārta Dharma*. The institution of Kingship, Law and order (*Daṇḍa-nīti*) was established (Vā.P.I.ii.8.75 ff., I.ii.57.81-94).

---

1. *Catvāri Bhārate Varṣe yugāni munayo viduḥ*—Vā.P.I.ii.24.1, I.ii.57, I.ii.46.137.
2. I.8.46-63.

Dvāpara Age :

Dharma became 'two-legged' in Dvāpara and there was increasing deterioration ofsocial, moral and religious conditions. Composition of rival scriptures as against the traditionally respected ones, diversions and variations in the text of Śrutis, ancillaries of Vedas and Smṛtis, intermixture of holy rites cause break-down in the systems and rules of Varṇas and Āśramas. Greed, slaughter, diseases and social and religious confusion greatly increase.[1]

To re-arrange the floating Mantras into four Vedic Saṁhitās, one sage functions as Vyāsa in each Dvāpara. The list of such Vyāsas is given in VP III.3, Bh.P.I.4.14-25, KP I.52, Bd.P.I.ii.35.116-126 with some variations in the names and even in number (e.g. 32 Vyāsas in Bd.P., 25 in KP) but the total of 28 Vyāsas is asserted.

In our text the following is the list of Vyāsas[2]: (1) God Brahmā (?), (2) Satya, (3) Bhārgava, (4) Aṅgiras (5) Savitṛ, (6) Mṛtyu, (7) Śatakratu (Indra), (8) Vasiṣṭha, (9) Sārasvata, (10) Tridhāman, (11) Trivṛt, (12) Śata-tejas, (13) Dharma (Nārāyaṇa), (14) Surakṣaṇa, (15) Āruṇi, (16) Sañjaya, (17) (Deva) Kṛtañjaya, (18) Ṛtañjaya, (19) Bharadvāja, (20) Vācaḥśravas, (21) Vācaspati, (22) Śuklāyana, (23) Tṛṇabindu, (24) Ṛkṣa, (25) Śakti, (26) Parāśara, (27) Jātūkarṇya, (28) Dvaipāyana.

Kali Yuga :

In a predictive tone, our text records the following characteristics and happenings in Kali Age:

Prevalence of violence, falsehood, deception, slaughter of ascetics, negligence of Vedic Studies and Yajñas, total crumbling down of the Varṇa and Āśrama system, Śūdra Kings obeyed by Brāhmaṇas, elimination of Kṣattriyas and Vaiśyas, Śūdras behaving as Brāhmaṇas and *vice versa*, Śūdra ascetics (with shaven heads and ochre-coloured clothes) performing sacred rites, prevalence of heretics like Bauddhas, Jainas,

1. I.ii.56.22-28.
2. I.ii.23.105-214.

Kāpālikas, men and women characterless, kings becoming robbers and robbers kings, maximum life span one hundred years etc. (I.ii.58.32-70).

It is a terribly gloomy picture. But similar conditions in Kali Age are recorded in other Purāṇas e.g. Mbh. *Vana.* 188.190, *Śānti* 69.80-97, Bd.P.I.ii.29.5-21, Bh.P.XII. 1-2, VP VI.1. As pointed out by R.C. Hazra that was the actual condition of the Hindu Society, after Aśoka and before 200 A.D.[1].

Pramati, an incarnation of Viṣṇu, will restore order with a strong hand and enter the confluence of Gaṅgā and Yamunā.[2] To redeem the fallen, Lord Śiva takes an incarnation in each Kaliyuga as follows[3]: (1) Śveta, (2) Sutāra, (3) Damana (Madana in KP), (4) Suhotra, (5) Kaṅga (Kaṅkaṇa in KP), (6) Lokākṣi, (7) Jaigiṣavya, (8) (not mentioned) (Dadhivāha in KP), (9) Ṛṣabha, (10)(not mentioned) (Bhṛgu in KP), (11) (not mentioned) (Ugra in KP), (12) Atri (13) Vāli, (14) Gautama, (15) Vedaśiras, (16) Gokarṇa, (17) Guhā (-Vāsa (?) as in KP), (18) Śikhaṇḍin, (19) Jaṭāmāli, (20) Aṭṭa (-hāsin), (21) Dāruka, (22) Lāṅgalin, (23) Śveta (Mahāyāma in KP), (24) Śūlin, (25) Muṇḍīśvara, (26) Sahiṣṇu, (27) Somaśarman, (28) Nakulin (occupied a Yogic body at Kāyārohaṇa in Gujarat).

Śiva has taken these incarnations to redeem people and hearten them against the fear of Kali.[4]

A happy feature of Kali Yuga is that Dharma practised gives its fruit that very day while it takes a year in Tretā and one month in Dvāpara[5].

III & V. *Vaṁśa and Vaṁśānucarita*

Our Purāṇa describes the race of gods like Agni (I. ii.Ch. 29), Varuṇa (II.iv.22), Gods (I.ii.32), Svāyaṁbhuva Manu

---

1. *Puranic Records on Hindu Rites and Customs*, II. Ch. 1.
2. Vā.P.I.ii. 53.85-88.
3. The list is based on I.ii.23.105-214.
4. *tasmāt kaliyugaṁ prāpya lokānāṁ hita-kāraṇāt /*
   tasmād bhayaṁ na kāryam kalim prāpya mahaujasaḥ //
   —I.ii.26.2-3.
5. I.ii.58.72.

(I.ii.33), Vaivasvata Manu (II. iii. Chs. 23, 24, 26, 27), the Moon-god (II. iii. Chs. 29, 30), dynasties of kings like Ikṣvāku (II. ii. 26), Nimi (II. iii. 27), Yadu (II. iii. 32 ff) Pṛthu and of sages like Kaśyapa (II. iii. Chs. 6, 7, 8), Atri (II. iii. 9. 67-78) Vasiṣṭha II. iii.9.80-92).

Vā.P. gives the following dynasties of the Kali Age :
(i) Pauravas—from Parīkṣit to Kṣemaka (Va. P. II. iii. 37.245-275) ; (ii) Aikṣvākus—from Bṛhadratha to Sumitra (op. cit. vv. 276-288) ; (iii) Bārhadrathas (op. cit. vv. 289-303), (iv) Pradyotas (op. cit. vv. 304-308a), (v) Śiśunāgas (op. cit. vv. 308b-313), (vi) Nandas (vv. 320-324), (vii) Mauryas (vv. 324-330), (viii) Śuṅgas (vv. 331-336), (ix) Kāṇvas (vv. 337-341), (x) Āndhras (vv. 341b-352).

Out of these (iii) to (x) (Bārhadrathas to Āndhras) have been discussed under "*Historical Tradition in Vā. P.*". It is difficult to fix up the time-frame or chronology of these dynasties. Earlier scholars disbelieved the Purāṇic chronology. The works of F. E. Pargiter (*Ancient Indian Historical Tradition*), S.N. Pradhan (*Chronology of Ancient India*), H. C. Roychaudhary (*Political History of Ancient India*), A.D. Pusalkar (*Vedic Age*), M. K. Acharya (*Dates of Ancient Indian History*), D. R. Mankad (*Puranic Chronology*) have modified this disbelief. In my Introduction to the Bd. P. I accepted tentatively 3102 B.C. as the beginning of Ancient Indian chronology as proposed by A.D. Pusalkar in the *Vedic Age*. My further studies lead me to believe that the date proposed by Megasthenes, the Greek ambassodor in the court of Candragupta, is more reliable than 3102 B.C. proposed by A.D. Pusalkar. The point however needs more debate (vide my long footnote under "*Historical Tradition in the Va. P.*"-

Thus our Purāṇa meets all the five characteristics expected of a Mahāpurāṇa.

6. RELIGIOUS SECTS IN VĀ. P.

Vā. P. believes in the Supreme God—Maheśvara, corresponding to the Upaniṣadic Para-Brahman. The trinity of gods entrusted with the functions of creation, maintenance and absorption (not destruction) of the Universe, viz. Brahmā,

Viṣṇu and Rudra is at a lower level. Vā. P. is traditionally regarded as a Śaiva Purāṇa and its main emphasis is on the glory of Śiva. But as the section of Viṣṇu—Gayā-Māhātmya (and reference to the oneness of Śiva and Viṣṇu at so many places in Vā. P.) shows, like Bd. P., Vā. P. also tries to integrate the society by synthesizing the -isms associated with these gods.

To respect the susceptibilities of traditionalists I do not use here speculative terms like 'Dravidian' Śiva, 'Pre-Vedic', 'Pre-Āryan' etc. but will simply make factual statements.[1]

---

1. The following is the stance of the traditionalists :

(i) *The so-called Āryan invasion of India* : There is no evidence or basis for this myth in the Vedas or in the Purāṇas.

(ii) *The so-called Dravidian Indus civilization and its destruction by invading Āryans.*

The Ṛgveda has no vocable like 'Draviḍa' or 'Nāga' to indicate a people (vide : *Ṛgveda Saṁhitā* Vol. V., Indices, Edt. S. N. Sonatakke and C. G. Kashikar, Vaidika Samsodhana Mandala, Pune, 1951), though it mentions the different peoples who participated in the Dāśarājña war. Had the Vedic speakers fought with Draviḍas or Nāgas, they would have certainly recorded the names of their enemies as they did in the case of the ten participating kings and peoples in the Dāśarājña war.

(iii) Further research in the Indus civilization shows that it disappeared through natural calamities like floods etc.—a fact refuting the theory of the destruction of that civilization by invaders.

(iv) There is no fool-proof evidence to claim the Indus civilization as 'Dravidian' or 'Non-Āryan'. The seals in the Indus-Script as deciphered by Dr. S. R. Rao disclose Vedism. The claim of Russian scholars about the Dravidianism of the seals is countered by the researches of Dr. S.R. Rao. I however, regard this as an open question.

(v) There is a strong ethnological evidence to show that the so-called Aryans were inhabitants of India even before the time of 'The Indus Civilization'.

(vi) Purāṇic India is not contained in the pre-partition political map of India drawn by European cartographers. It is true that they based the map on the political realities of British India in the 19th cent. Purāṇic India extended much to the north and to the west of that map. See the notes on the place-names in the Vā.P.

The above note is based on *Vedic Age* (BVB), pp. 220-221; B.N. Dutta, *Man in India* 1936-37; Kedarnath Śastri, *New Light on the Indus Civilization*; D. K. Chakrabarti, *Indian Studies—Past and Present*, Vol. IX, pp. 343, 358, 1968; B. K. Thaper; *The Aryan : A Reappraisal of the problem*

version of Satī's self-immolation and destruction of Dakṣa's sacrifice is probably of an ancient date[1].

Another extraordinary miracle attributed to Śiva is drinking of the Halāhala poison which emerged while churning the ocean for Amṛta. Śiva drank it at the request of Brahmā and saved the world, but he himself became blue-throated.[2] Śiva's blue-throatedness is recorded in the Vāj. S.[3] and Tait. S[4]., but it is not attributed to drinking of any poison. Mbh.[5] attributes it to the strangling of Śiva's throat by Viṣṇu in a fight.

The poison-drinking theory seems to be a post-Mbh. development.

LIṄGA-WORSHIP

The symbolic appearance of Śiva was the manifestation of a column of fire, the root and end of which could not be reached by gods Viṣṇu and Brahmā.[6] It is described in similar terms in other Purāṇas.[7] Rudra and Agni are identified since the Vedic times.[8] When Brahmā and Viṣṇu praised this fire-manifestation of the Liṅga, they used the terms attributed to the Supreme Diety who creates, permeates, protects and destroys the world. It is called Para-Brahman, the highest goal etc.[9]

In general we do not find Liṅga-worship in Vā. P. and I agree with D.R. Patil that it antedates the age of the Guptas in this respect :[10]

---

1. H. H. Wilson, Viṣṇu Purāṇa (Translation), pp. 61ff. and note 1.
2. Vā.P.I.ii. 94.90-25; Bd. P.I.ii.23.86-91.
3. XVI.7.51.2-4
4. IV.5.1-9.
5. Śānti 342.114-115.
6. Vā. P.I.ii.55.19-27.
7. For ex. Bd.P. I.ii.26.18-28; KP I.26.66-99.
8. RV II.1.6, AV VII.8.3, Śatapatha III.1.3 also I.7.3.8.
9. Vā. P.I.ii. 55.30-50.
10. *Vā.P.—Cultural History*, p. 186.

Even in the incident of the falling of Śiva's phallus in Dāruvana in Bd. P. I.ii.27, Śiva came there to teach Pāśupata Yoga to the sages and his queer behaviour is called '*dvāra*' in Pāśupata Yoga. There too the Liṅga is without Yoni and Liṅga-worship is not prescribed—see my Intro. to the Bd.P. Xlvi.

SKANDA

Vā. P.[1] gives the legend of the birth of Skanda. It grants him the parentage of Śiva and Umā, though originally according to Mbh.[2], he is the son of Agni and Svāhā who, to please the polygamous nature of Agni, assumed the forms of six wives of Saptarṣis except that of Arundhatī whose power of chastity was beyond the ability of Svāhā's impersonation. The Vā. P. legend is a later version in which Agni's parentage is retained by impregnating him with Śiva's semen. The rest of the story, Agni's interference in the sexual intercourse of Śiva and Umā etc., is practically the same as in Bd. P.[3] Skanda's status in the Gṛhya Sūtra period (in *Pāraskara Gr.S.*) is not much elevated. Even in Mbh.[4], his mothers appear to be evil spirits and his army consisted mainly of goblins and evil spirits (*Pramathas* and *Vināyakas*) in addition to Devas.

Skanda's status became more elevated in the post-Mbh. period. A cult of Skanda-worshippers was in vogue at the time of Patañjali (1st cent. A.D.).

Kushan seals from the 1st to 3rd cent. A.D. represent Skanda or Kārtikeya holding a javelin and a cock. His installation as the leader of the Deva army by gods Brahmā and Śiva(?) by seating him on a peacock is represented on a seal of the 5th cent. A.D. at Mathura. The names of the rulers of the Gupta dynasty, e.g. Skanda Gupta, Kumāra Gupta,confirm his exalted status.

The status given to Skanda in Vā. P. shows its pre-Gupta version probably reflecting the beliefs in *Pāraskara Gr. S.*

GAṆEŚA

'Gaṇeśa' means 'the lord or commander of gaṇas of Śiva'. He is not necessarily auspicious like the elephant-headed son of

1. II.iii.11.20-50.
2. *Vana* Chs. 224 & 225.
3. II.iii.10.22.51.
4. *Vana*. 226.22.

Umā and Śiva. Gaṇeśa in Vā. P. is a demon (Rākṣasa) called Kṣemaka or Nikuṁbha who was commisioned by Śiva to get the prosperous city of Vārāṇasī ruled by Divodāsa, vacated for his residence with Umā. After his marriage with Umā, Śiva stayed with his father-in-law but Umā's mother expressed to Umā her exasperation with the unconventional behaviour of Śiva and his followers. Umā felt insulted and urged Śiva to find out residence elsewhere. Śiva selected Vārāṇasī and instructed Nikuṁbha to use very soft means, as Divodāsa was a very powerful king (II.30.37).

Kṣemaka went into the dream of a barber named Maṅkaṇa and asked him to instal his image at the outskirt of the city (*nagaryante*) with the permission of the king. This Gaṇeśa (Nikuṁbha) went on giving munificent gifts according to the wishes of all his worshippers.

King Divodāsa was issueless, but after some hesitation, he directed his senior queen Suyaśā to worship this Gaṇeśa and pray to him to grant a son. In spite of repeated services for a long time, Nikuṁbha purposely did not grant the boon. The king lost his patience: "The god is munificent to my subject but is ungrateful enough to grant me nothing in spite of our rich services. This is no god but a goblin (*bhūtam*). I shall now destory his shrine (vv. 47-50).

When the king destroyed Nikuṁbha's shrine in desperation, Nikuṁbha, posing wounded innocence, approached the king and cursed him that as he destroyed Nikuṁbha's shrine without any reason, his capital city would be deserted (vv. 51-53).

And the great god lived happily with Umā there :

Divodāsa founded a new city on the river Gomatī. At the end of the period of the curse, king Mahābāhu killed demon Kṣemaka and rehabilitated the beautiful city of Vārāṇasī (v. 69).

The curse motif of the desertion of Vārāṇasī is used in Harivaṁśa, Brahma P. and Bd. P. Pargiter records it as a phase in the conflict between Haihayas and kings of Vārāṇasī (AIHT, p. 263).

Gaṇeśa in Vā. P. is 'a jungle genius' as Getty calls it (*Gaṇeśa*, Intro., p. XX).

VAIṢṆAVISM

In the early Viṣṇuism, Viṣṇu (√*viṣ* 'to pervade') represented pervasion—omnipresence of universal character—a protector promoting continuance (vegetation, fecundation and fertilization) of the world and ensuring well-being (*Śri*), victory, welfare (*bhūti*) and morality[1]—a view supported in our text (I.i.5.26, 33-35): "He is threefold according to Guṇas, fourfold according to Vyūhas (His manifestations such as Vāsudeva, Saṅkarṣaṇa). He is the protector and hence OM. He divides himself into three and carries out the functions of creation, protection and destruction. At the time of destruction he absorbs the Universe and goes to sleep on his ocean-bed (cf. I.ii.24.9ff). At the time of creation he is Brahmā-Nārāyaṇa[2] (I.ii.6.2-6). For lifting up the earth from the bottom of the ocean, Brahmā (Nārāyaṇa) assumed the form of a boar (I. i. 6.10 ff.)".

Owing to the curse of Bhṛgu for killing his wife and for restoration of Dharma and sacrificial order, Viṣṇu underwent the following ten (?) incarnations[3]. Out of these, three were among gods and seven among men as follows:—

Incarnation No.	Period	Name of the incarnation	Name of his preceptor and other details
1.	Cākṣuṣa Manvantara	Nārāyaṇa (Son of Dharma)	Promulgated the institution of sacrifice (*Yajña*).
2.	Vaivasvata Manvantara	Narasiṁha[4]	For killing Hiraṇyakaśipu. (His birth within the sea

1. J. Gonda—*Aspects of Early Viṣṇuism*, pp. 172-175.
2. *Nārāyaṇa means 'one who lies on waters'*
   āpo nārā vai tanava ityapāṁ nāma śuśrumaḥ /
   apsu śete ca yat tasmāt tena Nārāyaṇaḥ smṛtaḥ // —I.ii.6.5.
3. Vā. P. II.36.68-111.
4. V. 72a if emended as *'tu Vainyasya'* as in Bd. P. 2.3.73.72 for the obscure *'tadānyasya'* it means 'Pṛthu' was Viṣṇu's incarnation with god Brahmā as his preceptor (*Purohita*).

			implies a reference to the boar-incarnation).*
3.	7th Tretā Yuga (of the present Manvantara)	Vāmana	Begged in a Baṭu-form three paces of land from Bali but assumed Cosmic Form and covered the Universe in two paces and thus drove Bali to Pātāla for non-fulfilment of the promise.

The following seven (?) incarnations are among human beings.

4.	10th Tretā Yuga	Dattātreya	Son of Atri. Preceptor—Mārkaṇḍeya
5.	15th Tretā Yuga	Māndhātā	A Supreme Ruler (*Cakravartin*). His preceptor—Viśvāmitra.
6.	19th Tretā Yuga	Paraśurāma	Son of Jamadagni. His preceptor—Viśvāmitra.
7.	24th Tretā Yuga	Rāma	Son of Daśaratha; preceptor—Vasiṣṭha; mission—slaying Rāvaṇa.
8.	28th Dvāpara	Vedavyāsa	Son of Parāśara. Preceptor—Jātukarṇa.
9.	-do-	Kṛsṇa	Son of Vasudeva. Preceptor—Sāndīpani. Mission—to kill Asuras and restore Dharma.

Future incarnation(s)

10.		Kalki—Viṣṇuyaśas	of Parāśara Gotra. Preceptor—Yājñavalkya To massacre the wicked.
10A.	In the 25th Kalpa at the end of Kali Age	Pramati	He was formerly Viṣṇu by name. Pramati was of Candramas Gotra.

*Our text has skipped over two incarnations viz. Pṛthu and Varāha which preceded Narasiṁha. The text if emended as per Bd. P. will more explicitly refer to these two incarnations.

Now-a-days the standard list of the ten incarnations of Viṣṇu does not include King Pṛthu, Māndhātā, Dattātreya, Vyāsa and Pramati. The non-inclusion of Varāha incarnation in spite of its detailed description elsewhere[1] is inexplicable as the germ of this incarnation is traceable to *Tait. Br.* and is elaborately described by other Purāṇas[2] like Bh. P., Mt. P. etc.

Although Śiva and Viṣṇu are treated separately here, Vā. P. insists upon their unity. "It is one God whose oneness and separateness and speciality are described here" declares our Text.[3] As stated above the trinity of Brahmā, Viṣṇu and Śiva represents three Guṇas (of Sāṁkhyas) to explain the creation, maintenance and destruction of the Universe.

RELIGIOUS SECTS IN VĀ.P.

Sun-worship

Although there is no reference to the Sun-worshipping Brahmins in Vā. P. as in the Bhaviṣya Purāṇa, there are some positive indications of the prevalence of Sun-worship, though on a smaller scale. Thus, after re-canting the Yajurveda at the order of his preceptor Vaiśaṁpāyana, Yājñavalkya meditated upon the Sun-god. The recanted Mantras went up to the Sun-god who gave them to Yājñavalkya. Yājñavalkya alias Brahma-rāti assumed the form of a horse and received the Yajurveda (I.ii.61.18-22). Hence it came to be known as Vājasaneyī Saṁhitā. This story appears in Mbh. *Śānti* 318.1-12 but in Mbh. Yājñavalkya was not ordered by Vaiśaṁpāyana to recant Yajurveda and it is the Sun-god and not Yājñavalkya, who assumed the form of a horse at the time of the transmission of the Veda. Mbh. *Śanti* above states that at the behest of the Sun-god, Yājñavalkya opened his mouth and goddess Sarasvatī entered in it (*Op.cit.* 318.7).

---

1. I.ii.6.9-25.
2. Vide Foot-note 1 on p. 44 *infra.*
3. *ata ūrdhvaṁ Brahmaṇaśca Viṣṇoścaiva Bhavasya ca /*
   ekatvaṁ ca pṛthaktvaṁ ca viśeṣatvaṁ ca kīrtyate //
   Vā. P.I.1.120

The generosity of the Sun-god in gifting away his Syamantaka jewel to his friend and devotee Śakrajit is mentioned in II.iii.34.20-28. The mythical "astronomy" in Vā.P. gives a poetic description of the Sun's chariot and his attendants, sages, Yātudhānas, Serpents etc. At the Sun-god's residential forest in Kiṁśuka Vana, Siddhas pay homage to him (I.ii. 38.27-32) ; the Wind-god established the image of the Sun-god (Vāḍāditya) in his capital.

An Obscure Cult

Śiva's bull, the son of the divine cow Surabhi, explained the Cult of the Bull (*Go-dharma*) to Dīrghatamas when he caught him by both of his horns (II.iii.37.48-57). Says the bull, "We do not distinguish between what should or should not be eaten or drunk or with whom we cohabit. No sin is committed by us".

Buddha ridiculed the go-dharma by remarking that such persons would be bulls in the next birth. In Va.P. however Dīrghatamas was exonerated for his rape and his eyesight was restored to him by Surabhi.

Non-Vedic Religions

There are direct references to the Buddhists, Jainas and Kāpālikas as the dominant faiths in Kaliyuga.[1]

It is doubtful whether the term Nirvāṇa in the prediction of the impossibility of its attainment in Kali Yuga (I.ii.32.20) can be restricted to Buddhism as the vocable is found in BG VI.15. By the reference to Nirvāṇa in the same line along with *Kṣaṇikavāda* as in

Buddhāvasthā...avyakte saṁpraliyante, te sarve kṣaṇadarśinaḥ|
—II.iii.39.82-85.

---

1. *Śukla-dantā....muṇḍāḥ kāṣāyavāsasaḥ |*
śūdrā dharmaṁ cariṣyanti....
—Vā.P.I.58.59.

Kaṣāyiṇaś ca nirgranthās
tathā kāpālinaśca ha ||
—Ibid. 58. 64.

Along with these, apostate Brahmins who 'sold' the Vedas and sacred places are included (58. 65).

one may be tempted to regard this as a reference to Buddhism but the context is that of Brahmanism. '*Buddha*' is an epithet of Śiva[1], but when *buddha* is called the "Shadow of Hari" (II.iii.42.82) it may imply Śākyamuni.

There is so much similarity in rules of discipline of a Brahmanical *Yati* and Bauddha and Jaina *Bhikṣus* (recluses), that it is difficult to determine their particular sect. God Svayaṁbhū is said to have promulgated this "*Śaucācāra-dharma*" to Brahmanical forest-hermits.[2] Even Ahiṁsā[3] is strictly to be observed by all Yatis.

Jaina terms such as *Autpattikas*, *Nārakas* in classifying Jivas (II.iii,39.189-90) and the mention of Mt. Veyardha (AMg. Veyaḍḍha in I.ii.15.36-37) are found in this Purāṇa but there is very little philosophical exposition of non-Vedic sects.

7. (i) VĀ.P. AND DHARMA-ŚĀSTRA

Quotations from Pūraṇas pertaining to Dharma-Śāstra in the *Āpastamba Gr.S.* (I.6.19.13; II.9.23.3-6; II.9.24.6) show that material on Dharma Śāstra came to be included in the Purāṇas since the 5th century B.C. Mediaeval writers on Dharma Śāstra quoted Purāṇas as an authority like Smṛtis.[4] Vā.P. as an authority on Dharma Śāstra is quoted by Aparārka (Com. on. *Yāj. Smṛ*), Ballālasena (in *Adbhuta-Sāgara* and *Dāna-Sāgara*), Kullūka Bhaṭṭa (Com. on *Manu-Smṛ*), Madanapāla (in *Madana Pārijāta*), Śūlapāṇi (in *Prāyaścitta Viveka*), Vācaspati Miśra (in *Tīrtha-cintāmaṇi*)—to mention a few prominent authors of the mediaeval period. They use the title of their source as 'Vāyavīya' implying our text—Vāyu Purāṇa and *not* Vāyavīya Saṁhitā of Śiva Purāṇa.

As the titles of the above works indicate, the following topics from Vā.P. have been quoted by the mediaeval authors : (1) *Śrāddha*, (2) *Dāna* (religious gifts), (3) *Tīrtha* (sacred places

---

1. *namaḥ śuddhāya buddhāya* / I.ii.30.45

2. Vide the rules in the whole of the chapter I.ii.16

3. *Bhikṣūṇām ahiṁsā paramārthitā* / I.ii.16.18.

4. See my Introductions to the KP p. XIV, NP p. 52, Bd.P. pp. VIII-IX.

like Gayā), (4) Duties of persons belonging to different Varṇas and Āśramas, (5) *Yoga*, (6) *Mokṣa*.

Out of these, Śrāddha Kalpa (II.iii. Chs. 10-21) is profusely quoted. The details of actual performance of Śrāddha such as metal pots to be used in Śrāddha, the procedure of offering Piṇḍas, *Agnau-karaṇa*, rites of purification, appropriate and inappropriate acts in Śrāddha are the same as those in Bd.P. But its distinguishing feature not found in Manu and Yājñavalkya is the special importance of Yogins in Śrāddha (vide Vā.P. II.iii.10.50 ff. especially vv. 66 & 67) where a meal to a Yogin is stated as surpassing in merit the offering of meal (food) to a thousand of Brāhmaṇas. Also vide II.iii.17.92-93 where the omnipresence, omnipotence and omniscience of Yogins is extolled. The influence of Pāñcarātra system in the post-Manu-Yājñavalkya period may be the reason. But the Brahmanical Yogī is adorable and not non-Vedic recluses, those who have shaven their heads (muṇḍas), ascetics with matted hair (*Jaṭila*) and the wearers of Kaṣāya garments (*Kaṣāya*). The nudes (*nagnādayaḥ*) i.e. those who are not covered by Vedic religion or not showing allegiance to Vedas should not be allowed to have a look at the food prepared for Śrāddha (*ibid.* Ch. 16.24). The list includes the followers of Sāṅkhyas, Śaivas like Kāruṣa.[1] The belief that the sight of non-Vedic persons pollutes the Śrāddha food is found in Gautama Dh.S. I5-25-28, Manu III.239-42, KP II.22. 34-35, VP III.16. 12-14—to mention a few.

It is rather self-contradictory to enumerate the qualities of Brahmins to be invited to Śrāddha (*Op. cit* Ch.17) and state that it is not necessary to do so.

The importance of Śrāddha is so great that the Tīrtha-Section is subordinated to it informing us of ancient Indian geographical places[2] where Śrāddha performance will be more

---

1. *Vide op. cit*: Ch. 17.66-83.

2. Op. cit. ch. 15. It is not clear why places like Orissa, Telangana or regions north of the Indus were declared unfit for performance of Śrāddha (Ch. 16.22-23). Were they the strongholds of non-Vedic sects ? The words '*pranaṣṭāśrama-dharmāśca* (Lands from which the rules of Āśramas etc. have disappeared i.e. are not observed, lends support to this conjecture.

beneficial. The same is the case about *Tithis* and *Nakṣatras* regarding the fruit of the performance of Śrāddha on those tithis[1] and Nakṣatras. The latter chapter (on Śrāddha under different Nakṣatras) is incorporated from Mbh. *Anuśāsana* 89 and the topic is dealt with in Viṣṇu Dh. S. 78.8-15, Yaj. Smṛ. I.265-268, MK.P.30.8-16, KP.II.23.9-15, Bd. P.2.3-18 but there are some disagreements about the benefit promised.

The Vedic counting of Nakṣatras beginning from Kṛttikā (and not from Aśvinī as we find it to-day) shows that this chapter (or rather its source Mbh. *Anuśāsana* 89) was written some time before 500 A.D.

The topic of *Dāna* (religious gifts) is subservient to *Śrāddha.*

Ch. 21 deals with the period of satisfaction derived by Pitṛs by eating (through Brāhmaṇas) flesh of various animals. *Āpastamba Dh. S.* (600 B.C.) makes flesh-serving at Śrāddhas obligatory and enumerates the animals the flesh of which gratifies Pitṛs for a specified period[2]. For example: *Saṁvatsaram gavayena tṛptiḥ* 'The gratification (of Pitṛs) lasts for a period of one year by (eating through the invited Brāhmaṇas) the flesh of a gavaya, a cow-like animal'. (For details vide *Āpastaṁba Dh. S.* II.7.16-25; II.7.173). Refusal to accept non-vegetarian food at a Śrāddha results in detention in hell (*Viṣṇu-dharmottara* I.140. 49.-50; also Manu V. 35; KP.II.17.40).

Non-vegetarianism in religious and ritualistic acts in ancient India is undeniable despite the story of Uparicara Vasu's fall to Pātāla for advising animal slaughter in sacrifices.

In Southern India, strict vegetarianism is observed at Śrāddhas though neither *Mitākṣarā* nor *Kalpataru* have prohibited flesh-diet at Śrāddha.

The classification of Pitṛs into seven in II.iii.11. 1 ff (Cf. Pd.P. Sṛṣṭi 2.2-4) is a later development.

---

1. *Op. cit.* Ch. 19 and 20.

2. It is not our text only which prescribes flesh-eating and the specific flesh gratifying to the Pitṛs for a particular period. We find the same in Manu III. 267-272, Yāj. Smṛ. I.258-260, Mbh. *Anuśāsana* Ch. 88, *Kātyāyāna Śrāddha-Sūtra* (Kāṇḍikā 7-8), KP. II. 20.40-42, Mt. P. 17-31-35, Bd. P. 2.3.19.

7. (ii) VĀ.P. AND YOGA

The system of psychical and moral discipline called Yoga can be claimed as the special contribution of India to the world. We have traces of it in RV[1]. but it was fully developed at the time of Kaṭha Up.[2] Bd.P offers little about the path of Yoga.[3] But the treatment of Yoga in Vā.P. is comprehensive (I.ii.Chs. 11 to 15)[4]. Thus we are told the four objectives of Breath-control (Prāṇāyāma), viz. *Śānti, Praśānti, Dipti* and *Prasāda* (explained in 11.4-9) ; the details of stages, viz. postures (*āsanas*), *prāṇāyāma, Pratyāhāra, Dhāraṇā* and the resulting *Siddhi* (11.12-30); the places to be avoided for the practice of Yoga (11.31-34) ; the dangers or physical disability resulting from mistaken practice of *Prāṇāyāma* (11.35-37) and the remedies of them (11.38.58). The signs of progress of a student of Yoga described in 11. 60-61, viz. strength, health, indifference to sensual objects, lustrous complexion, auspicious smell etc. are echoes[5] of Śvet. Up. II.11.

The next chapter (ch. 12) deals with *Upasargas* (troubles, obstacles) that obstruct the path of Yoga and advises how to overcome them. Ch. 13 details the usual eight supreme powers (*aiśvarya-guṇa*) accruing from the practice of Yoga. The list is common to other treatises on Yoga but their classification into *Sāvadya, Niravadya* and *Sūkṣma* is peculiar. *Sāvadya* comprises five elements, *Niravadya* five elements and sense-organs, *Sūkṣma* adds to these mind, ego and intellect (13.5-8).

---

1. For example

(i) *Yuñjate mana uta yuñjate dhiyā*/ RV.V.81.1 found also in Tait.S. I.2.13.1, Vaj. S. 11.4, Śvet Upa II.4. (ii) RV.I.18.7 repeated in Tait. S.IV.1.1.1, Vaj. S. XI.1, Svet. Up. II.1.

2. Note the wording of Kaṭha VI.8 : *Mṛtyu-proktaṁ Naciketo 'tha labdhvā vidyāmetām yoga-vidhim ca kṛtsnam etc.*

3. Vide Intro. to Bd. P. 1 XIV.

4. Only Chs. and Verses mentioned.

5. *Sattvaṁ tathārogyam alolupatvam varṇa-prabhā susvara-saumyatā ca /*
gandhaḥ śubho mūtrapūrīṣam alpam yoga-
pravṛttiḥ prathamā śarīre //

Vā. P. 11.60.

Compare :

laghutvam ārogyam alolupatvaṁ varṇa-
prasādaḥ svara-sauṣṭhavaṁ ca /
gandhaḥ śubho mūtra-purīṣam alpam
yoga-pravṛttim prathamām vadanti //

—Sv. Up. II.13

The next chapter mainly deals with the transmigration of the soul and states the primitive ideas about embryology. The tortures in hell (commonly described in other Purāṇas) have one relieving feature. The principle ot redemption is accepted in Hinduism and not eternal punishment as in Semitic religions.

Ch. 15 describes the procedure of the daily practice of Pāśupata Yoga.

These five chapters—a *purāṇic* compendium on Yoga resembles Pātañjala Yoga to a great extent but it is called Pāśupata Yoga or Yoga of Maheśvara as it consists of five 'Dharmas' proclaimed by Maheśvara, viz. (1) Prāṇāyāma, (2) Dhyāna, (3) Pratyāhāra, (4) Dhāraṇa, and (5) Smaraṇa. It will be seen that here the stage of 'Samādhi' in Patañjali is substituted by 'Smaraṇa'.

7. (iii) ANCIENT LORES IN VĀ. P.

In Vā. P. I.ii.61.62-73 we find information about Vedic Saṁhitās. As I have said in my notes on 'The Schools of Vedas' (*Op. cit.* vv. 1-60), our text differs from the information in the CVS (Śaunaka's *Caraṇa-Vyūha-Sūtra*). About the number of Mantras in the Vedas. our Purāṇa-writer appears to have depended on traditional or rather hearsay report and given approximate round figures without verifying (i.e. counting the Mantras in) the original Saṁhitās as can be seen from the following comparative table :

Name of the Veda	*Total No. of Mantras as per Vā. P.*	*Total No. of Mantras in the Svādhyāya Maṇḍala (Satavalekar) edition, Aundh*
1. Ṛgveda	8635	10,552 (the same in CVS)
2. Sāmaveda	8014 (CVS endorses this)	1810 (But only 75 Sāman Mantras)
3. Ādhvaryava (Black Yajurveda)	12000	12330

4. Vājasaneyī Saṁhitā (White Yajurveda)	1900 (8880 when Śukriya Sāmans and Khila Mantras are added)	3988
5. Atharva Veda	6026	5977

2. As I stated above, Vā. P. differs from CVS about its statements regarding the names of sages, their lineage, the branches of the Vedas.

Purāṇa-writers believe in the eternal nature of Mantras. They (Mantras) become unmanifest at the end of a Kalpa and manifest themselves at the beginning of a new Kalpa (*Op. Cit.* v. 75).

3. Traditionally the number of Lores was fourteen (4 Vedas + 6 Vedāṅgas + Mīmāṁsā, Nyāya, Dharma Śāstra, Purāṇa). It became 18 after the additions of four subsidiary Vedas. CVS, p. 47 gives the following relation between the Veda and its subsidiary Veda:

Veda	*Upa-Veda*
1. Ṛgveda	Āyur Veda (the Science of Medicine).
2. Yajur Veda	Dhanur Veda (Military Science).
3. Sāma Veda	Gāndharva Veda (Musicology).
4. Atharva Veda	Artha-Śāstra (Politics, Economics & Administration).

THE SCIENCE OF MUSIC[1]

The *Svara-maṇḍala* is comprised of seven *Svaras* (notes), three *Grāmas* (basic scales), twentyone *Mūrcchanās* (the modes

1. The note is based on the translation and annotations of Vā. P. II. iii.24.36-66 and Ch. 25. Though similar sections in other Purāṇas like Bd.P, NP. and some later works like *Saṅgīta-Ratnākara* which preserve the Purāṇic tradition are used, the text is still obscure. The ancient Sāma-gāna tradition is still current in Kerala, Tamilnadu, Gujarat but that of music in Purāṇas is unfortunately not preserved anywhere. Hence some guesswork is attempted.

of gradual ascent and descent of the seven notes of the Basic Scales) and fourtynine *Tānas*.

The seven notes (*Svaras*) are *Ṣaḍja* (*Sa*), *Ṛṣabha* (*Ri*), *Gāndhāra* (*Ga*), *Madhyama* (*Ma*), *Pañcama* (*Pa*), *Dhaivata* (*Dha*), *Niṣāda* (*Ni*).

Our text mentions that there are three *Grāmas* (basic scales of the above group of seven notes), viz. (i) *Ṣaḍja Grāma*, (ii) *Madhyama Grāma* and (iii) *Gāndhāra Grāma* translated here as the *Sa-scale*, the *Ma-scale* and the *Ga-scale*. They are so-called as they have respectively *Sa*, *Ma* and *Ga* as the starting note. Thus (i) the *Sa-scale* would have *Sa*, *Ri*, *Ga*, *Ma*, *Pa*, *Dha*, *Ni* as the order of notes (*Svaras*); (ii) the *Ma-scale* would have *Ma*, *Pa*, *Dha*, *Ni*, *Sa*, *Ri*, *Ga*; and (iii) the *Ga-scale* would have *Ga*, *Ma*, *Pa*, *Dha*, *Ni*, *Sa*, *Ri* as the order of notes.

The *Ga-scale* "went to heaven" i.e. fell into disuse for reasons explained in Part II, p. 662, Fn. 2. infra.

The number of *Śrutis* (microtones) in the *Saptaka* as fixed by Bharata is 22. The *Śruti*-intervals were distributed in the notes as follows :—

Sa scale : 4 *Sa*, 3 *Ri*, 2 *Ga*, 4 *Ma*, 4 *Pa*, 3 *Dha*, 2 *Ni* = 22

Ma scale: 4 *Ma*, 3 *Pa*, 4 *Dha*, 2 *Ni*, 4 *Sa*, 3 Ri, 2 Ga = 22

Mūrcchanā (√*Mūrcch*—'to increase', 'to pervade') was the gradual ascent and descent of the seven notes of the basic scale. As *Mūrcchanās* started from each note of the scale, there were seven *Mūrcchanās* of each scale. Thus the *Mūrcchanās* of the three *Grāmas* numbered twentyone. *Mūrcchanās* served as the basis of different types of songs and brought in the notes of the low (*Mandra*) and high (Tāra) registers (*Sthāna*)[1]. A *Tāna*[2] is like a *Mūrcchanā* in which one or two specific notes are dropped.

When one specific *Svara* (Note) is dropped, it is called *Ṣāḍava Tāna* (a *Tāna* consisting of six notes). When two specific notes are dropped, it is called *Auḍuva Tāna*. According to

---

1. For detailed discussion of *Mūrcchanās* vide Part II, p. 662, Fn. 3. infra, where terms like *Antara Ga*, *Kākali Ni*, *Sādhāraṇīkṛta Mūrcchanā* are explained.

2. The Purāṇic concept of *Tāna* is different from that of the present times. For details about *Tāna*, see Part II, p. 663, Fn. 1 infra.

Purāṇas, there were twenty *Tānas* of *Madhyama Grāma*, fourteen of *Ṣaḍja Grāma* and fifteen of *Gāndhāra Grāma*. Thus the number of *Tānas* of three Grāmas is given as fortynine.

The Purāṇa mentions two authorities, viz. *Bhīmasena* and *Nārada* on Music. The names of *Mūrcchanās* with their presiding deities (Part II, 24.50-62) are for the present mere names till some explanatory text is discovered. Two old terms, viz. *Antara Gāndhāra* and *Kākali Niṣāda* are now known as *Śuddha Gāndhāra* and *Tivra Niṣāda*.

The text on this topic is corrupt and hence obscure.

ALAṄKĀRAS IN MUSIC[1]

Alaṅkāras[2] (embellishments of music) are to be explained along with their *Varṇas* (movement of notes such as 'steady', 'ascending' etc.) as their specific basis and also along with their associated configuration (*Saṁsthāna*), always in regard to dramatic performance[3] etc. The *Varṇas* are (1) *Sthāyin*, (*Sa, Sa, Sa*), (2) *Ārohin* (*Sa, Ri, Ga* etc.), (3) *Avarohin* (*Ni, Dha, Pa* etc.), (4) *Sañcārin* (*Sa, Ri, Sa, Ri, Ga* etc.). *Alaṅkāras* are said to be thirty in number but their explanation is scrappy and unintelligible.

Due to employment of *Varṇa* and *Sthāna* having the measures of *Kāla* and *Mātrā* are configuration, proportion, modifications and characteristics:

varṇa-sthāna-prayogena kāla-mātrā
pramāṇataḥ||
saṁsthānañ ca pramāṇañ ca vikāro
lakṣaṇam tathā|
caturvidham idam jñeyam alaṅkāra-
prayojanam||

---

1. Ref. to Part II, p. 663, Fn. 1 infra for further details.
2. Based on Vā. P. II.25 and *Saṅgīta Ratnākara* I.VI (Section on *Alaṅkāras*). *Saṅgīta Ratnākara* though much late in date than Vā. P. is used, as it preserves Purāṇic material on music. Vā. P. II, Ch. 25 however is full of corrupt readings and many verses (as stated in the translation) are obscure.
3. *Vide* Bharata's *Nāṭyaśāstra* Vol. IV, pp. 79-92 (Baroda Fdt).

The author emphasizes the use of the right Alaṅkāra at the place (Part II, 25.23-25). He gives the local varieties of music proper such as Mandraka, Aparāntika (cf. Ibid 25.33-37).

In spite of its scrappiness and obscurity, Vā.P. seems to follow Bd. P. in the matter about *Tāla* and says that there are two even measures—*Caturasra* (four beats and eight Mātrās) and *Tryasra* (four beats and six Mātrās).

Lastly he mentions three *Vṛttis*, *Citrā*, *Vṛtti* and *Dakṣiṇā*. The explanation in the text being scrappy and obscure, I may quote the explanation from my *Introduction to Bd.P.* (p. lxiii) :

(i) In *Cittrā*, the music of stringed instruments was prominent and the song was subservient.

(ii) In *Dakṣiṇā*, the song was prominent and instrumentation subservient and

(iii) in *Vṛtti*, both have equal status.[1]

8. RELIGION AND PHILOSOPHY IN VĀ.P.

In the section on Religious Sects, we have seen the different Vedic and non-Vedic sects current at the time of Vā. P. Now we shall consider a few schools of philosophy mentioned therein :

(i) VEDĀNTA

In the *Maṅgalācaraṇa* (benedictory verses) at the beginning of the Purāṇa, the author identifies the Great God (Mahādeva) Śiva with Upaniṣadic Brahman and applies these epithets to Him. He is the eternal Lord, immutable, imperishable, great soul, Lord, protector of the world (I.i.1.1). The epithets of Brahman are applied to God Śiva in I.ii.24.90-164, II.iii.35. 162-202 (which are strongly influenced by Rudrādhyāya, *Tait. S.* IV.v and vii, *Vāj. S.* Chs. 16 & 18). In II.iii.42.28-43, Brahman is stated to be the greatest, beginningless and endless, omnipresent, one without multiplicity, the source of and the final resolvers of crores of Brahmāṇḍas, the underlying

1. Bharata's *Nāṭya-Śāstra* Vol. IV. pp. 100-101. *Saṅgīta-Ratnākara* V 10-16, VI. 165-167.

reality of the superimposed Universe, an embodiment of existence (*Sat*), knowledge (*cit*) and bliss (*ānanda*)[1].

(ii) SĀṄKHYA

It is the theistic Śāṅkhya. Though Kapila, Āsuri and Pañcaśikha are at best agnostics (if not atheists), they are claimed to be the 'sons' (disciples) of an Avatāra of Śiva. The Sāṅkhya in Vā. P. is strongly influenced by Vedānta as can be seen from the relevant section on 'Vā. P. as a Māhapurāṇa'—*Sarga* i.e. evolution of the Universe. The involution or absorption (Pralaya) of the Universe is described in details as follows: The higher element 'swallows' the special characteristic of the lower element which then automatically becomes a part and parcel of the higher element (e.g. water 'swallows up' the 'smell' (*Gandha*) characteristic of earth etc.). Thus when Ākāśa 'swallows' all the lower Mahābhūtas, it gets merged in the *Cosmic Ego* (*Bhūtādi*) until there is complete balance of all Guṇas (*Guṇa-sāmya*) and Brahma remains in the end (II. iv. 40.2-36).

(iii) YOGA

See the special note in section 7 (ii).

There are references to the external characteristics of Jainas and Buddhists and other non-Vedic (*nagna*—non-covered by the Veda) sects, but their special philosophies are not elucidated.

A few more points:

Ahiṁsā—The Purāṇa supports *Ahiṁsā* by interpreting '*Aja*' as 'a non-germinating seed' and not 'a goat' in performing a sacrifice[2] and by making the pious king Upari-cara (Heaven moving) Vasu fall down in Pātāla for supporting Indra's violence-prone interpretation of '*Aja*'[3] (the story is corroborated in Mbh. Śāntī 337.24-27). But the problem arises why this same Purāṇa which denounces *Hiṁsā* so strongly should prescribe

1. I regard this chapter (II.iii.42) as a later accretion as the *adhyāsavāda* of Śaṅkara and a quotation from Vasugupta's *Spanda-kārikā* are found in it.
2. I.ii.57.92-110 also Bd. P. I.2.30.11-32.
3. Op. cit. vv. 103-111.

so many varieties of non-vegatarian dishes to Pitṛs in Śrāddha (II.iii.21.3-10).

FREE-WILL AND DESTINY :

The Purāṇa emphasizes the inexorable Law of Karman (I.ii.9.52-56). Destiny is Karma in previous births. Destiny and Karma are inseparable from each other. Neither one is superior to the other i.e. both factors are necessary for achieving the fruit. (Cf. Bd.P. I.ii.8.61-62, Mbh. *Śānti* 238.4-5 which are quoted verbatim in the above Purāṇas.)

9. HISTORICAL TRADITION IN VĀ. P.

Due to the historic role played by Magadha in establishing itself as the paramount power in ancient India—an achievement unanimously attested by Brahmanical, Buddhist and Jaina sources—we find Purāṇas presenting the history of eight successive Magadhan dynasties mentioning the name and the years of reign of each king.

The dynasties so described by Purāṇas like Vā. P., Bd. P., Mt. P. are as follows :

(1) Bārhadratha, (2) Pradyata, (3) Śiśunāga, (4) Nanda, (5) Maurya, (6) Śuṅga, (7) Kāṇva, and (8) Āndhra.

The first king of the first dynasty is Jarāsandha, the powerful monarch who was killed by the mighty Pāṇḍava Bhīma. In the following list of kings, the number of the years each king ruled, is mentioned within brackets after the name of the king.

(1) THE BĀRHADRATHA DYNASTY
(Vā. P. II.37.289-303)

Jarāsandha——→Sahadeva (killed in the Bhārata war)→ Somādhi (Somāpi in Bd.P.) (58 years)→Śrutaśravas (64)→ Ayutāyu (26)→Nirāmitra (100)→Sukṛtta (56)→Bṛhatkarman (23)→Senajit (the contemporary ruler of Vā.P. and Bd.P.).

FUTURE RULERS :

Śrutañjaya (40) → Mahābala (Ripuñjaya in Bd. P.) (35)→Śuci (58)→Kṣema (28)→Bhuvata (Suvrata in Bd. P.)

(64)→Dharmanetra[1] (58)→Suvrata (Suśarman in Bd. P.) (38) →Dṛḍhasena (58)→Sumati (33)→Sucala[2] (22)→Sunetra (40) →Satyajit (83) →Vīrajit (Viśvajit in Bd. P.) (35) →Ariñjaya (50).

These thirtytwo future kings will rule for 1000 years.

As a matter of fact, the actual number of kings is different even in the case of Bārhadratha. The author seems to have recorded the names of important kings only.

atītā vartamānāśca bhaviṣyāśca
tathā punaḥ /
prādhānyataḥ pravakṣyāmi.....

According to Vā. P., Munika (Śunaka in Bd. P. and Pulaka in Mt. P.) will kill his master Ariñjaya and instal his son Pradyota on the throne of Magadha in the teeth of all Kṣattriyas. He was of Vītihotra class and was a powerful unscrupulous king.

(2) THE PRADYOTA DYNASTY
(II. 37.304-308A)

Pradyota (23) →Pālaka (24) →Viśākhayūpa (50) →Ajaka (31) →Vartivardhana (Nandi-vardhana in Bd. P. (20).

Vā. P. states that this dynasty will rule for 138 years. Actually there is a discrepancy of ten years which can be rectified by accepting the emendation from the Bd. P. which limits the reign of Ajaka to 21 years.

Both Vā. P. and Bd. P. were misinformed about Pradyota who was really a ruler of Malwa at Ujjayinī. Bhāsa has immortalised the romantic elopement of Pradyota's daughter Vāsavadattā with king Udayana of Kauśāmbī in *Pratijñā-Yaugandharāyaṇa.* In *Mṛcchakaṭika* Śūdraka records the political revolution after which Pālaka became the king at Ujjayinī. According to Pāli records, Bimbisāra, the king of Magadha, was a contemporary of Udayana and Pradyota. There is no reliable evidence

1. 297b and 298a taken together mean : He was crowned at the age of five and ruled for 58 years.
2. Not mentioned in Bd. P. but "Sumati (33)" is named instead.

to presume a Pradyota dynasty in Magadha immediately after Bārhadrathas.[1]

(3) THE ŚIŚUNĀGA DYNASTY
(II. 37.308b-313)

Śiśunāka (Śiśunāga in Bd. P.) of Vārāṇasī will vanquish Pradyotas and shift his capital to Girivraja (Rājagṛha in Buddhist records; modern Rajgir, Bihar).

The following will be the kings in this dynasty :

Śiśunāka (Onāga) (40) →Śakavarṇa (Kākavarṇa in Bd. P) (63) → Kṣemavarmā (20) → Ajātaśatru (25) → Kṣatraujas (40) →Vivisāra[2] (Biṁbisāra) (28) →Darśaka (25) (He was a contemporary of Udayana as recorded in Bhāsa's *Svapnavāsavadatta*) →Udāyin (33) (He was the founder of Kusumapura or Pāṭalīputra, (Mod. Patna) → Nandivardhana (42) →Mahānandī (43).

(4) THE NANDA DYNASTY
(II. 37.320-323)

The credit of building a vast empire in north India goes to this dynasty. Its founder Mahāpadma (Ugrasena according to Buddhist and Greek sources) will be the son of Mahānandī (of Śiśunāga dynasty) from a Śūdra woman. Vā. P. predicts : "Henceforth all kings will be of Śūdra origin (*Śūdra-yonayaḥ*) and Mahāpadma will be the sole emperor with the earth under one umbrella.[3] Mahāpadma will rule for 28 years (*aṣṭaviṁśati*[4]). His eight sons will rule after him for 12 years. The dynasty will rule for 100 years.

---

1. *The Vedic Age*, p. 328.

2. According to Bd. P. Vidhisāra (Biṁbisāra) was succeeded by Ajātaśatru—a fact supported by other records (*vide The Age of Imperial Unity*, pp. 22-28). Vā. P. is obviously wrong in making Ajātaśatru the grandfather of Vivisāra.

3. *tataḥ prabhṛti rājāno bhaviṣyāḥ*
śūdra-yonayaḥ /
ekarāṭ sa Mahāpadma ekacchatro
bhaviṣyati //
—*Op. cit.* v. 321.

4. It should be 88 years as in the Bd. P. for only 12 years are allotted to his sons and the total duration of the dynasty is 100 years.

(5) THE MAURYA DYNASTY (II. 37.324-330)

Kauṭilya, a Brahmin, will exterminate all Nandas and instal Candragupta Maurya as the King. The following will be the rulers of this dynasty :

Candragupta (24) →Bhadrasāra or Bindusāra (25) →Aśoka (26 but 36 in Bd. P.) →Kuṇāla (8) →Bandhupālita (8) →Indrapālita (10) →Devavarmā (7) →Śatadhara (Śatadhanu in Bd. P.) (8) →Bṛhadaśva (7).

This dynasty of nine kings will rule for 137 years[1]. Mt. P., VP. and Bh. P. give ten as the total of kings in this dynasty.

(6) THE ŚUṄGA DYNASTY (II. 37.331-336)

Puṣpamitra (Puṣyamitra in Bd. P. and other Purāṇas), the commander-in-Chief of the last Maurya king (mentioned as Bṛhadratha in v. 331, though named as Bṛhadaśva in v. 329) will depose his master and establish his dynasty. The rulers of this dynasty are as follows :

Puṣpa (Puṣya) mitra (60 but 36 as per other Purāṇas) →Agnimitra[2] (7) →Vasumitra (10) →Dhruka (Bhadra in Bd. P.) (2) → Pulindaka (3) → Ghoṣasuta (3) → Vikramitra (Vajramitra in Bd. P.) (7) →Bhāgavata (32) → Kṣemabhūmi (Devabhūmi in Bd. P.) (10).

Thus 10 kings of Śuṅga dynasty will rule for 112 years. Actually, however the period in Vā.P. comes to 134 years.

(7) THE KĀṆVA DYNASTY (II. 37.337-341)

V. 337 of the Vā. P. is defective. If emended as per Bd.P. 2.3.74, it means, the last king Devabhūmi being dissolute from his childhood, will be overthrown by his Kāṇvāyana minister Vasudeva.

---

1. Some versions of Vā. P. add the following Kings after Bandhupālita : Daśona (7)→Daśaratha (8) → Samprati (9)→Śāliśuka (13). This, however, disturbs the traditional period of the Maurya dynasty.

2. The hero of Kālidāsa's play *Mālavikāgnimitra*. Bd. P. adds Sujyeṣṭha (7) after Agnimitra but Vā. P. ignores it.

The following will be the kings of Kāṇva dynasty : Vasudeva (9) ⟶Bhūtimitra (24) ⟶Nārāyaṇa (12) ⟶Suśarmā (10).

These Brāhmaṇa kings of Kaṇṭha (Kāṇva) Gotra will rule for 45 years[1].

(8) THE ĀNDHRA DYNASTY (II. 37.341b to 352)

Overpowering Suśarman and his forces, Sindhuka (Simuka) the Āndhra, will found his dynasty. Vā., Bd., Bh., and V. Purāṇas agree that there will be 30 kings in that dynasty, the actual number of kings listed is different in each of the above Purāṇas. Only Mt. P. gives a list of 30 kings.

Vā. P. gives the following list of Āndhra kings : Sindhuka (Simuka) (23)→Bhāta i.e. Kṛṣṇa[2] (18)→Śātakarṇi (56)→Āpādabaddha[3] (10+24+6=40 ?)→Nemi Kṛṣṇa (25)→Hāla[4] (1)→(Pattallaka[5]) (5 years as per Bd.P. which reads :

---

1. *Op. cit.* v. 341a. The period of 45 years does not tally with the total number of the regnal years of these kings. Bd. P. gives 5 years as the period of Vasudeva's rule and 4 years as that of Suśarmā.

2. Bd. P. V. 343b reads :

aṣṭau bhātaśca varṣāṇi tasmād
daśa bhaviṣyati |

If this obscure line is emended as per Bd. P. 2.3.74.162a :

kṛṣṇo bhrātāsya varṣāṇi
so 'smād daśa bhaviṣyati

it would mean, "(Simuka's) brother Kṛṣṇa will rule for ten years". This conforms to the statements in other Purāṇas.

3. Bd. P. gives the following Kings instead of Āpādabaddha : Apolava (12)→Paṭumāu (24)→Aniṣṭakarmā (25).

4. According to text adopted in Pargiter's *Dynasties of Kali Age*, p. 41, Hāla ruled for 5 years.

5. Vā. P.v. 347a reads :

Pañca saptaka rājāno bhaviṣyantt mahābalāḥ |

'Five or seven powerful kings' are anonymous in Vā. P. but Bd. P. quoted above is supported in history (*The Age of Imperial Unity*, p. 706).

Pañca pattallako nāma bhaviṣyati mahābalaḥ).

(After Pattallaka → Putrikaṣeṇa (Purikasena in Bd. P.) (21)→Sātakarṇi (1)→Śivasvāmin (28)→Gautamīputra (21)→ Yajñaśrī Śātakarṇi (19)→Vijaya (6)→Daṇḍaśrī Śātakarṇi (3) →Pulova (Pulomāvi in Bd.P.) (7)

Vā.P. states that 30 Āndhra kings will rule over the earth for 456 years[1] but actually it lists only 14 kings and the total number of years they ruled comes to 269.

A comparison of this list with that in the Mt. P. Ch. 273 shows that both Vā.P. and Bd.P. were inadequately informed as they could list only 14 and 13 kings and account for a period of 269 and 262 years respectively, though both agree in stating that the Āndhras ruled for 456 years.

The other local dynasties mentioned in Vā. P. with the total number of the years of their dynastic period are as follows :

Total No. of kings in the Dynasty	*Total No. of years of the dynastic rule*
7 Āndhras (Āndhrabhṛtyas?)	300
10 Ābhīras	—
7 Gardabhins	—
10 Śakas	380
8 Yavanas	80
14 Tuṣā (-khā-) ras	500
13 Maruṇḍas (Mlecchas)	350
18 Mauṇas	300 (? Bd.P)

Afterwards 11 Mlecchas will rule for 300 years. Then the Śūdra tribe Kolikila (Kilakila in Bd.P.) will rule for the same period. Vindhyaśakti (circa 300 A.D.) will take over from Kolikila and rule for 96 years.

This Vindhyaśakti, the founder of the Vākāṭaka dynasty was a Brahmin of Viṣṇuvṛddha Gotra, and 96 years is probably the span of his life. Vindhyaśakti's son Pravīra (Pravarasena I)

1. Op. cit. v. 352 reads :
samāḥ śatāni catvāri pañca ṣaḍ vai tathaiva ca /

Literally translated : (The rule of Āndhras will be) four hundred, five and six". This will mean 411 years. But here 'five' stands in ten's place and as such must be interpreted as "fifty". Thus Vā.P. regard 456 years as the period of the Āndhra dynasty.

performed Vājapeya sacrifice[1]—a sort of a public declaration of the end of Mleccha rule.

(9) THE NĀGA DYNASTY OF VIDIŚĀ

This dynasty is mentioned only in Vā. P. and Bd. P. The following is the line of kings :

Sadācandra alias Candrāṁśa (Xandrames, a contemporary of Alexander according to Greek writers) —→ Nakhavān —→ Dhanadharma—→Viṁśaja—→ Bhūtinanda.

A number of minor dynasties are mentioned after this but Viśvaphaṇi of King Nala's race is specially mentioned as a powerful ruler who conquered Magadha. He was a very pious ruler who caste his body in the Gaṅgā.

(10) THE GUPTA DYNASTY

Verse 377 (II.37) mentions the establishment of the Gupta rule. They "will enjoy the territories near the Gaṅgā, such as Prayāga, Sāketa (Ayodhyā) and Magadha."

Before closing this section, I would like to invite the attention of readers to an important statement of Megasthenes, the Greek representative of the Bactrian Kingdom at the court of Pāṭaliputra in 302 B.C. We definitely know that Alexander the Great invaded India in 326 B.C.[2] and that the credit of starting the Gupta era on December 20, 318 A. D. or February 26, 320 A.D. is given to Candra Gupta I of the Gupta dynasty.[3]

The proposed theory of contemporaneity of Megasthenes with Candra Gupta I of the Gupta dynasty[4] needs more debate and if proved with more convincing data, will revolutionize ancient India chronology.

---

1. *The Age of Imperial Unity*, pp. 219-220.
2. *The Age of Imperial Unity*, p. 47.
3. *The Classical Age*, p. 4.
4. Vide : K.D. Sethna—"Megasthenes and the Indian Chronology as based on the Purāṇas" in *Purana* VIII.1 pp. 9-37 and in the same journal VIII.2. pp. 276-294. Sethna concludes that Candragupta I of the Gupta dynasty was crowned in 325 or 324 BC. He follows up his theory and shows that Xandrames of Greek writers is Candrāṁśa of Nāga dynasty (*Purana* IX.I. pp. 121-139). Also vide, R. D. Karamarkar—"The First Greek conqueror of India" ABORI XXXI-i-iv pp. 238-249.

RECONSIDERATION OF ANCIENT INDIAN CHRONOLOGY

The statement of Megasthenes in *Indika* as quoted by Pliny (VI. XXI.4.5), Solinus (52.5) and Arrian (*Indica* I. IX), that there had been 153 kings intervening between the first king Dionysus and Alexander the Great and the period of their reigns is 6451 years and 3 months tallies with the above Purāṇic list. As Megasthenes was accredited to the court of Sandrocottus (Candra-Gupta) at Pali-bothra (Pāṭalīputra), his informants must have supplied the list of Magadhan kings. According to Vā.P. (II.I 131 ff) Pṛthu, the son of Vena was annointed by gods as the *first king* (ādirāja). Purāṇas tell us that he levelled the whole earth, clearing it of ups and downs, encouraged agriculture, cattle-breeding, commerce and building cities and villages. The list of kings between Pṛthu and Candragupta I (of the Gupta dynasty and NOT Candragupta Maurya) is of 153 kings. (154 if Bharadvāja, the adopted son of Bharata is included, though he got his son Vitatha crowned and did not rule himself).

The period of 6451 years also tallies with the period from Pṛthu as given in the Purāṇas. But this statement make Alexander the great a contemporary of Candragupta I of the Gupta dynasty.

10. THE DATE OF VĀ.P.

Vā.P. is one of the oldest and most authoritative Purāṇas. It is mentioned in Mbh. *Vana.* 191.16, but we do not know what Text was before them then. Nor can we say anything about the nature of the text when it came to be narrated by Sūta, in the reign of King Adhisīma Kṛṣṇa, the fourth descendant of Parīkṣit.[1]

1. Bd. P.II.iii. 74.227 states that 1050 years intervened between the birth of Parikṣit (the Bhārata War) and the coronation of Mahāpadma Nanda (382 B.C.). Thus if Parikṣit was born in 1432 B.C. according to the Bd. P., the reign of Adhisima Kṛṣṇa, his fourth descendant, may be taken one century later (30x4=120 years) in 1300 B.C. The statement of Megasthenes discussed elsewhere and our traditional belief about the beginning of the Kali Age in 3102 B.C. (fixing 3138 B.C. as the birth-date of Parikṣit) if found correct, will upset our present chronological frame.

As Vā.P. is quoted as an authority by mediaeval writers on Dharma Śāstra like Aparārka (c. 1125 A.D.) or Kullūka Bhaṭṭa (c. 1150 A.D.?), Vā.P. must be assigned to a period not later than 1000 A.D.[1]

But we have earlier references and quotations from Vā.P. Śaṅkara in his Com. on the *Brahma Sūtra* (Br. Sū.) quotes verses from the present day text of the Vā.P. For example:

(1) In his Com. on *Br.Sū.* I.3.30:

samāna-nāma-rūpatvāc.....
.....darśanāt smṛteśca|, he quotes Vā.P.I.ii.8.32-33
teṣām ye yāni karmāṇi prāk sṛṣṭyām pratipedire..... (upto)
tad bhāvitaḥ prapadyante|

(II) In the Com. on the same Sūtra, he further quotes Vā.P. I.ii.9.58.59:

ṛṣiṇāṁ nāmadheyāni..... (upto)
tathā bhāvā yugādiṣu|

(III) In his Com. on Br.Sū.II.I.I:

smṛtyanavakāśā.....doṣa-prasaṅgāt

he quotes Vā.P. I.i.185

ataśca saṅkṣepam imaṁ śṛṇudhvam.....
saṁhāra-kāle ca tadatti bhūyaḥ||

The quotations are enough to show that Śaṅkara regarded Vā.P. as an authority like Smṛtis worth-quoting while explaining Br.Sū. It means that to reach that authoritative position, Vā.P must have existed at least about one century or so before Śaṅkara.

Now the date of Śaṅkara as presumed at present (viz. 8th cent. A.D.) needs correction in view of recent researches. Śaṅkara calls Gauḍapāda as 'his teacher's teacher' *guror guruḥ* (*Upadeśa-sāhasrī* II. 18.2). Gauḍapāda's *Māṇḍūkyakārikās* are

---

1. Anukramaṇis (Table of Contents) generally given in the 1st chapter of a Purāṇa, were composed later in the 11th cent. A.D. and some attempt is made later to make the Purāṇa text conform to the *Anukramaṇi* (A.D. Pusalkar—*Siudies in Epics and Purāṇas*, p. 70). This has made the problem of fixing the date more complicated.

taken as *Pūrva-pakṣa* in Bhavya's *Madhyamakahṛdaya*[1] Ch. 8. Bhavya (A.D. 490-570) was a Buddhist philosopher of Madhyamaka school and a founder of its branch Svātantrika[2]. To select Gauḍapāda's *Māṇḍūkya-kārikās* for refutation implies a respectable status of Gauḍapāda and his Kārikās. To attain this position as the opponent of Buddhism worth-challenging, by a prominent Buddhist philosopher implies Gauḍapāda's seniority in time to Bhavya, at least by 25 to 50 years. If this conjecture is reasonable, Gauḍapāda must be located somewhere in the later half of the 5th century (A.D. 450+) and automatically Śaṅkara, the disciple's disciple of Gauḍapāda cannot be removed from him by more than 50 or 60 years (25 or 30 years per generation × 2). When Śaṅkara is thus located in the early part of the 6th cent. A.D. Vā. P., to attain an authoritative position to be quotable in Com. on Br. Sū. may be posted in the 5th cent. A.D.

Bāṇa (6th cent. A.D.) mentions Vā.P. in *Harṣacarita* (III. 4th para) as follows :

pustaka-vācakaḥ sudṛṣṭiḥ..... gitvā,
pavamānoktaṁ purāṇam papāṭha|
In *Kādaṁbari* (Pūrvabhāga para 37) :—

Purāṇe Vāyu-pralapitam ('In Purāṇa that is narrated by Vāyu i.e. Va.P'.). As Bāṇa's date—early in the 6th cent. A.D.—is accepted by scholars, Vā.P. may be assigned at least a century earlier to command the respect of scholars like Bāṇa.

It is enough to quote some prominent authors and philosophers—Brahmanical and Buddhist—to show that Vā.P. is reasonably located in the 5th cent. A.D. Vā.P. narrates the future kings upto Gupta period which agrees with the above finding.[3]

Though this is the usual way of determining the date of an old work, Purāṇas, being a literature of growth, have archaic,

---

1. The Sanskrit version of the Tibetan original was published by Prof. V.V. Gokhale. It is reprinted in Hajime Nakamura's *History of Early Vedanta Philosophy* Vol. I pp. 184-185 (Motilal Banarsidas, Delhi 1983).

2. *Op. cit.* p. 206.

3. If we accept Megasthenes' view as explained by K.D. Sethna in *Purāṇa* VIII.i. pp. 9-37 and op. cit. ii. pp. 276-294 Candragupta I of the Gupta dynasty and Megasthenes (302 B.C.) will become contemporaries·

ancient and comparatively modern materials in one and the same chapter and one has to analyse the chapter and fix the dates of those parts.

Dr. D.R. Patil has analysed and tried to fix up the date(s) of the different materials so determined.[1]

The classification is as follows :

(1) *Remains of archaic period*: Kṣattriya-Brāhmaṇa struggle, Kṛsattriya Brāhmaṇas, *Godharma*, *Niyoga* (levirate), cow as means of exchange etc.

(2) *Remains of the ancient periods* :

Old theories regarding kingship, references to Vārtā, Daṇḍa-nīti etc. as in old portions of Mbh., Kauṭalīya *Arthaśāstra*, popular institutions like *Sabhā*, *Saṁsad*, *Paura Jānapada*, older units of measurement of distance, non-vegetarianism is Śrāddha.

(3) *Some* (*comparatively*) *modern features*:

Yuga-system of chronology, ten Avatāras of Viṣṇu (with variations), twenty-eight incarnations of Śiva including Lakulīśa, emphasis on Śaiva religion.

But these elements are so mixed up that one will have to assign different periods to portions forming but one and the same chapter.

11. GAYĀ MĀHĀTMYA (G.M.)

This '*Sthala Purāṇa*' of about 560 verses glorifies the sacredness of the precincts of modern Gayā. It is appended to the Vā. P. after the concluding (*Phala-Śruti*) verses of the Vā. and has a totally different pair of interlocutors. It is found in different works such as Mbh. Vana Chs. 84-95, Garuḍa Chs. 82-86, AP Chs. 114-116, KPII.35, NPII.Chs. 44-47—all having practically similar contents and common verses. This shows that the G.M. must have been an independent work adopted and adapted by various Purāṇa-writers.

The place got its name from a pious Asura[3] King Gaya. He is different from the Vedic seer Gaya (of RV.X.63 and

1. Dr. D. R. patil—*Cultural History from the Vāyu Purāṇa*, pp. 14-15.
2. Based on : (i) The text of G. M. and notes (ii) Nārāyaṇa Bhaṭṭa's *Tristhalī Setu* (TSS), (iii) L. P. Vidyarthi's *The Sacred Complex of Hindu Gaya* (SCHG), (iv) P. V. Kane's *History of Dharma Śāstra* Vol. IV.
3. '*Asura*' is a respectable vocable of Indo-Iranian antiquity (cf. *Ahura* in the Avesta) and means 'spiritual' or 'divine' in the Vedic SK. and the

64) whose father was Plati[1], while our Gaya, according to *Uttarādhyana Sūtra* was the son of Samudravijaya, King of Rajagṛha (mod. Rajgir in Bihar). Buddha visited Gayāsīsa (Gayāśīrṣa) and Kāśyapa's hermitage at Gayā (*Mahāvagga* I. 21.1, also Aśvaghoṣa's *Buddhacarita* XII.87-88, XVII.8). The mention of king Gaya and the sacred place Gayā in Pāli and AMg. canons and in Brahmanical Purāṇas shows that Gaya must have been a historical person in hoary antiquities and the hermitage or the home-town of king Gaya probably became known as Gayā.

The story of Gaya is variously interpreted—as the defeat of Buddhism by Brahmanism[2] or the amalgamations of Brahmanism with the more ancient popular demonolatry[3] or an invention to impress the sanctity of the range of Gayā hills[4]. If this legend be an invention of the Brahmanical Purāṇa-writer, he must have been more sympathetic and respectful to the Asura King Gaya than to his own gods. After reviewing the materials of the sacred geography of Gayā, L.P. Vidyarthi finds the inclusion of the elements of folk tradition in this great traditional and "essentially Sanskritic" holy centre.[5] The story of the great penance of Gaya and the appeal to the generosity of the noble-hearted king by crafty Devas and their subsequent cruel treatment meted out to him is interestingly told in the Purāṇa.[6] Various legends etc. about sacred places (temples, tanks, rivers etc.) at Gayā have been discussed in details in the notes.

---

ancient god Varuṇa is called 'Asura' in the Vedas. '*Sura*' is a later development from '*Asura*' as '*sita*' from '*asita*' (MW, 121.) Asuras was a cousin tribe of Suras and had intermarriages between them. Lord Kṛṣṇa was an Asura from his mother's side (S.K. Chatterji—*Selected Writings*).

1. See *Prācīna Caritra Kośa* by Siddheshwar Shastri Chitrava, p. 308, under '*Gaya Plāta*'. 'Plati' is the name of the father of the Vedic seer Gaya.
2. Rajendra Lal Mitra—*Bodha Gayā*, pp. 14-18.
3. O'Malley—*JASB* LXXII.iii 7,1904.
4. B.M. Barua—*Gayā and Buddha Gayā*, p. 1934.
5. L. P. Vidyarthi—*The Sacred Complex in Hindu Gayā*, p. 29,1978.
6. Vā. P. II. Ch. 44.

The following is a brief outline of the traditional performance of pilgrimage at Gayā which lasts for seven days :

1st day	Entrance into Gayā; bath in the river Phalgu; performance of Śrāddha and Tarpaṇa; visit to Preta Śilā; bath, Śrāddha etc. at Rāma Tīrtha; offering Bali to Yama and Dharma and the two dogs Śyāma and Śabala.
2nd day	Visit Pretaparvata; bath, Śrāddha etc. at Brahma Kuṇḍa; offer *piṇḍas* to Pitṛs invoking gods to witness one's repayment of the debt of the Pitṛs.
3rd day (1st day of Pañcā Tīrthī rites).	*Pañca-Tirthi* rites (including those at Dakṣiṇa and Uttara Mānasas, Kanakhala); visit to Phalgu; bath, Śrāddha etc.
4th day (2nd day of Pañca-Rites)	Visit to Dharmāraṇya; bath etc. at Mātaṅgavāpī and Brahma Tīrtha; visit Mahābodhi tree; and performance of Śrāddha there.
5th day (3rd of Pañca-Rites)	Bath etc. at Brahmasaras; Śrāddha between Brahmakūpa and Brahmayūpa; circumambulation of Brahmayūpa; watering mango trees at Gopracara; offering Bali to Yama and Dharma and the two dogs of Yama.
6th day (4th of the Pañca-Rites)	Bath at Phalgu; Śrāddhas at various footprints (*Padas*) on Gayā Śiras (which extends from Krauñcapada to Phalgu Tīrtha); Śrāddha and offering Piṇḍas on Viṣṇu Pada is most important. Also Piṇḍa-offerings on Rudra, Brahmā and other 14 Pādas.
7th Day (5th day of Pañca Rites)	Bath, Śrāddha etc. at Gadālola; Śrāddha at Akṣayavaṭa; honour the Gayāvala Brahmin. Bow and worship to the Akṣayavaṭa and to Prapitāmaha.

The special feature of Gayā Yātrā is that there is no tonsure; the Gayawal alone and not other Brāhmaṇas are to be

honoured; and that anyone may offer a Piṇḍa to anybody by uttering his name and gotra and can offer a piṇḍa to oneself*.

Gayā is thus the most sacred centre to pay the debt of our ancestors and to redeem them from their plights and secure for them the highest abode.

*For details see Va. P. II. Chs. 45-50. There are of course a few divergences in other Purāṇas about the details of the Yātrā but TSS follows Vā. P.

VĀYU PURĀṆA

PART I

SECTION 1 : PRAKRIYĀ PĀDA

CHAPTER ONE

(Summary of Contents)

Obeisance to Śrī Gaṇeśa

One should read or recite any *Purāṇa* or *Itihāsa* text[1] after having paid obeisance to Nārāyaṇa[2] and Nara,[3] the most excellent of men, as well as to goddess Sarasvatī.

---

1. This verse, originally used at the beginning of the Mbh. is adopted by Purāṇa-writers as well, for example, Bh. P. I. 2. 4; and the word '*Jaya*' therein is interpreted by the commentators Vīra Rāghava and Śukadeva as another name of the Bh. P. Thus the word '*Jaya*' became a generic term used both for Itihāsa (Mbh.) and Purāṇa texts (Bh. P., Va. P.). Hence '*Jaya*' is interpreted as 'any Purāṇa or Itihāsa' here. Bhaviṣya Purāṇa states :

Tathaiva viṣṇudharmāśca śivadharmāśca śāśvatāḥ|
Jayeti nāma teṣām ca pravadanti manīṣiṇaḥ||

Compare KP I. 53. 33; II. 46.

2. *Nārāyaṇa* : The god who lay on cosmic waters of the deluge before creation. This aspect of this deity is recorded in the etymology of his name in Manu 1. 10, Mbh. Śānti 328. 25 :

Āpo nārā iti proktā, āpo vai narasūnavaḥ|
Tā yadasyāyanaṁ pūrvaṁ tena nārāyaṇa smṛtaḥ||

In early Viṣṇuism, Viṣṇu and Nārāyaṇa were not identical; the amalgamation of Viṣṇu of Vedic Brāhmaṇism and Nārāyaṇa of the Pañcarātras was a later development (vide J. Gonda, *Aspects of Early Viṣṇuism*; also G. V. Tagare, *Bhāgavata Purāṇa* (AITM), Part I, Introduction, pp. xlii-xlv).

3. *Nara* : An incarnation of Viṣṇu : born of Dharma and Mūrti, daughter of Dakṣa; a constant associate of Nārāyaṇa while performing penance at Badarikāśrama. The Mahābhārata heroes Kṛṣṇa and Arjuna are regarded as incarnations of Nārāyaṇa and Nara.

Victory to Vyāsa,[1] the son of Parāśara and the gladdener of the heart of Satyavatī—Vyāsa from whose lotus-like mouth flowed forth the nectar of words, which the whole universe imbibes.

1. I seek refuge in Lord Īśāna (Śiva), the eternal, steady, immutable, great god of noble soul, the lord of the entire universe.

2-6. Desirous of knowing (more about) *Purāṇas*, legends, (etc.) I seek refuge in Lord Brahmā, the creator of the worlds, (who is) omniscient, unvanquished, the noble lord of (everything) past, present and future; God Brahmā, the lord of the universe in whom are inherent the four divine excellences, viz. unparalleled knowledge, detachment, supremacy and virtue (*dharma*); (Lord Brahmā) who for ever visualizes all beings (irrespective of their being) manifest or unmanifest, which re-enter the Lord (Brahmā) for cessation of activities (at the time of the dissolution of the universe); (God Brahmā) the creator of the world, the knower of the reality of the world, the knower of the principles, who, resorting to Yoga, created all living beings mobile and immobile; the unborn lord, the creator of everything, the lord in the form of consciousness and the cosmic witness of the world.

7-9. After bowing with devoted and pious mind to Brahmā, Vāyu and Indra, to the noble-souled Vasiṣṭha, the most excellent of the sages, and to his (Vasiṣṭha's) great-grandson, Vyāsa, Kṛṣṇa Dvaipāyana, who had attained pre-eminent fame as a sage of great purity, and to sage Jātukarṇa,[2] I shall

1. *Vyāsa* : Vyāsa means "an arranger". In every Dvāpara Yuga, the work of arranging the floating Vedic Mantras into *Saṁhitās*—compilation—is done by a person. And he is called Vyāsa. The compilation of the Mbh. and eighteen Purāṇas is assigned to him. The present Vyāsa is the son of Satyavatī, the incarnation of Vāsavī, the daughter of Pitṛs. His father was sage Parāśara, the grandson of sage Vasiṣṭha. He was dark in complexion and was concealed in an islet in a river by Satyavatī (Mbh. Ādi. 63. 68). Hence he came to be known as 'Kṛṣṇa Dvaipāyana'.

2. *Jātukarṇa*; (also Jātukarṇya) : A sage noted for self-control; a member of Yudhiṣṭhira's court (Mbh. Sabhā. 4.14). One wonders why Parāśara did not teach the Purāṇas (for example this and Bd. P.) directly to his son Vyāsa but did so through Jātukarṇa.

(now) narrate this *Purāṇa* related by Brahmā, which is on a par with the Vedas and which is embellished by sacred treatises consisting of sections on *Dharma* (virtue), *Artha* (wealth) and *Nyāya* (justice or right conduct).

10-12. While Asīmakṛṣṇa,[1] the valiant king of unequalled splendour and the most excellent among sovereigns was ruling over the Earth righteously, the sages of well-disciplined souls performed a sacrifice of long duration in the holy land of Kurukṣetra[2] on the sacred bank of the river Dṛṣadvatī.[3] The sages were devoted to truth and holy rites. They were straightforward. Their sins had been quelled. They were quiescent, had full mental control and had conquered the sense-organs. They were within the precincts of the Naimiṣa[4] forest and had been initiated in accordance with the sacred scriptures.

---

1. *Asīmarkṛṣṇa* : or *Adhisīmakṛṣṇa* :

The great-grandson of Janamejaya III who was the great-grandson of the Mahābhārata hero Arjuna. He was a contemporary of Divākara, king of Ayodhyā and king Senajit of Magadha. All these kings belonged to the 6th or 7th generation of their forebears who participated in the Bhārata war. It was during the reign of Asīmakṛṣṇa that the great *Sattra* of 12 years took place at Kurukṣetra on the bank of the Dṛṣadvatī. The date assigned to this king, viz. B. C. 850 by Pargiter is now discarded.

2. *Kurukṣetra* : The famous battlefield where the war between Kauravas and Pāṇḍavas was fought. The different battles in that war were fought at and around Thaneswar in Haryana. Thus Abhimanyu was killed at Amin, 5 miles south of Thaneswar; Bhīṣma died at Nagdu, 11 miles to the south-west of Thaneswar. Historic battles were fought here from Vedic times to A. D. 1761, the date of the third battle of Panipat, ancient Paṇiprastha—a village claimed by Yudhiṣṭhira from Duryodhana (De, 110).

3. *Dṛṣadvatī* : The Chitang—a tributary of the Ghaggar between the Yamuna and Sutlej—M. Ali, p. 115. De has accepted this identification as correct (p. 58.) instead of with the Ghaggar.

4. *The Naimiṣa forest* : The description here shows that this forest must be located in Kurukṣetra (Kane, *H. D.* IV, 783). It is possible that there were two Naimiṣa forests, the original one on the bank of the Gomatī round Nimsār, 45 miles from Lucknow and one in Kurukṣetra as Vā. P. is positive about the performance of the *Sattra* on the Dṛṣadvatī. Was it that sages resident of Naimiṣa forest on the Gomati in U. P. migrated to Kurukṣetra and the sages being Naimiṣeyas (inhabitants of Naimiṣāraṇya), the area of this *Sattra* came to be called Naimiṣāraṇya in Kurukṣetra?

13-16. The highly intelligent Sūta[1] who was the most excellent among the reciters of *Purāṇas* came there to see the sages.

He became well-known to the world as Lomaharṣaṇa[2] (the Thriller who made hair stand on their ends) as he thrilled the members of his audience with delight by his excellent (absorbing) narration.

He was the most intelligent disciple of the sage Vedavyāsa, the store-house of penance, Vedic learning and good conduct.

The association of the sages of Naimiṣāraṇya and their performance of a *Sattra* is as old as Vedic times. According to Kane (ibid) "*Naimiṣyā vai sattram āsata*" occurs in Kāṭhaka Saṁhitā X. 6 (I could not trace it). But if the references given by him to the Saṁhitā and Brāhmaṇas be correct and if the direction of the spread of Aryandom from the West to the East be presumed, the Vedic references might be to the Naimiṣāraṇya in the Kurukṣetra area.

1. *Sūta* :

As stated below in vv. 26-33, Sūta is the offspring of a Brāhmaṇa woman from a Kṣatriya male, a view endorsed by Manu X. 11, Yājñavalkya I.93. He was not eligible for Vedic lore but was to recite *Itihāsa* and *Purāṇa*. Gautama regards Sūta as a *Pratiloma* (*Dharma Sūtra* 15-16). Kauṭilya agrees with this status of a Sūta but distinguishes this Sūta, the narrator of Purāṇas probably as a sage different from ordinary Sūtas (*Paurāṇikas tvanyaḥ sūto māgadhaśca brahmakṣattrād viśeṣataḥ—Artha Śāstra* III. 7, p. 165).

There is another derivation of *Sūta* from √*Su*—'to extract (Soma juice)'. In the sacrifice of King Pṛthu, Sūta appeared for the first time while extracting Soma on the prescribed day (*Sutyāha*) but the libations of Soma intended for Bṛhaspati got mixed with that for Indra and were offered to Indra. Hence he became of a mixed class (vv. 28-30). KP. I. 1.6 regards Romaharṣaṇa as an incarnation of Viṣṇu born on *Sutyāha* with the mission of recounting Purāṇa-Saṁhitā. Romaharṣaṇa, however, does not claim here to be Viṣṇu's incarnation. The birth of Sūta on the *Sutyāha* is recorded in Bd. P. II. 36. 158-73, Pd. P. II. 27. 65-87, Sk. P. Prabhāsa 1.8.

2. *Ro (Lo) ma-harṣaṇa*:

This appears to be the special designation of this Sūta as he thrilled the audience with delight and made their hair stand on their end. Hence Brāhmaṇa performers of sacrifices offered him a higher place while he narrated a Purāṇa. This post of honour above the Brāhmaṇas cost him his life as the hot-headed Balarāma killed him when during his visit to Naimiṣāraṇya, he found Romaharṣaṇa occupying a higher seat in the assembly of Brāhmaṇas (Bh. P. X. 78. 28). Our Purāṇa pays high tribute to his scholarship (vv. 13-16, 21-24).

He was well-known in the three worlds. The entire Purāṇic lore was well established in him. His scholarship had become extensive through his study of the Mahābhārata. Stories conducive to (four *Puruṣārthas*, viz.) *Dharma* (virtue), *Artha* (wealth), *Kāma* (desire) and *Mokṣa* (liberation) were firmly rooted in him. Wise sayings and sage discourses came forth from him as medicinal herbs from the (mother) earth.

17. He (the Sūta) who was an adept in decorum, approached the highly intelligent and prominent sages as per proper procedure. After coming near, he paid them obeisance with folded palms.

That brilliant scholar pleased those sages by prostrating himself before them (to show respect).

18. The lustrous sages who were performing sessional sacrifices were delighted; so also were the members of the sacrificial assembly. They duly greeted him with gentle words and honoured him.

19. On seeing that highly reliable scholar Lomaharṣaṇa, there arose in them the desire to hear the Purāṇa.

20. The chief householder (the sponsor) of that sacrificial session who was an expert in all (sacred) lores, understood their desire from their gestures. Consequently, he urged the Sūta (as follows) :

21. "O Sūta ! For learning *Itihāsa* and *Purāṇas*, the venerable and highly intelligent sage Vyāsa, the greatest among the knowers of Brahman (or Vedas), has been properly served and propitiated by you. And you have (as if) milked from his intellectual store, legends based on ancient tradition.

22. The prominent sages are anxious to hear the Purāṇa. Therefore it behoves you to narrate those legends to them.

23. All the noble persons, the knowers of Brahman (or Veda) who have assembled here, belong to different clans (*gotras*). May they hear about their respective clan-genealogies through the *Purāṇas*.

24. Please expound (the Purāṇa) to these sages, who, along with their sons, have assembled here for this sacrifice of

a long duration. Indeed, you have been (strongly) remembered by us while we were being consecrated for this sacrifice."

25. Urged thus for (narrating) the *Purāṇa* by the sages who were interested in (had some knowledge of) the Purāṇas and were devoted to truth and holy rites, the Sūta agreed to the proposal (and said).

Sūta said :

26-27. It is the incumbent duty of the Sūta, ordained by saintly men of yore to preserve the genealogies of gods, sages and the most glorious kings and the traditions of great men as recorded in (earlier) *Itihāsas* and *Purāṇas* by those well-versed in the Vedic lore (or expounders of Brahman).

28-29. But nowhere is the eligibility of the Sūta for the Vedic lore (such as recitation of the Veda etc.) seen (prescribed). While the sacrifice of the noble-souled (king) Pṛthu, the son of Vena, was being performed, Sūta appeared for the first time extracting Soma (on the prescribed *Sutyā* day) for offering unto the fire, but he became of a mixed caste as the oblation intended for Bṛhaspati was got mixed up with the one intended for Indra and was offered to god Indra. Therefrom was born the Sūta due to this grievous mistake and expiatory rites had to be performed (in that sacrifice) as atonement for the error.

30. As he was born (as a *pratiloma* child) from a Kṣatriya (male), a lower caste man, of a Brāhmaṇa woman, on account of his similarities of the inherent qualities of the former (i.e. Kṣatriya), he is proclaimed as having similar duties (like those of a Kṣatriya).

31. Thus the Sūta who was born of a Brāhmaṇa receptacle from a Kṣatriya source, has (some) qualities with the former (caste) and so has some identity of duties with them.

32. His middling duty (way of maintenance) is the pursuit depending on Kṣatriya profession such as maintaining chariots, elephants and horses. Practice of medicine was his inferior duty.

33. Since I have been commanded by expounders of Brahman like you, to follow my duty, how can I decline to narrate to you in details the *Purāṇa* so highly worshipped by sages.

34. Vāsavī[1] was born as the mental daughter of the Pitṛs (manes). Being cursed by her father, she was born in the species (womb) of a fish.[2]

35. Vyāsa, the great yogin and the foremost among the knowers of the Vedas, was born of her, just as fire is born of the *araṇi* stick.

36. I make obeisance to Vyāsa, the venerable sage, protagonist of Bhṛgu's lore, the ancient Puruṣa, the great lord Viṣṇu in the guise of a human being.

37. Even as he was born, the entire Vedic lore in all its compendiums appeared before him, but he formally attained it from Jātukarṇa, as it was his duty to study it from a preceptor.

38. He churned the ocean of the Vedas with the churning-rod of his intellect and produced the Moon in the form of the Mahābhārata.

39. Just as a tree proliferates into many branches after reaching fertile soil and in congenial season, the tree in the form of the Veda spread out in different branches after reaching him (Vyāsa).

40. I have listened to this Purāṇa from that omniscient expounder of Brahman, who is conversant with the Vedas, who is honoured by all and is of blazing brilliance.

41. I shall now relate in detail the Purāṇa narrated by Vāyu formerly[3], when he was urged by the noble sages of Naimiṣa.

---

1. *Vāsavī* :

Mbh. Ādi. (63. 51-73) endorses this legend but there she is said to be born of Uparicara Vasu and Adrikā, a celestial damsel cursed to be a female fish and was then in her fish-form. The Mbh. records that twins were found in the belly of the defunct Apsarā-fish. The king of the place adopted the boy who became known as a pious king called Matsya and the girl with the foul smell was handed over to Dāśa-rāja. She became a sweet-smelling lady through the favour of sage Parāśara when she responded to his overtures (*Ibid. Ādi.* 63. 70-85).

2. Satyavati, the mother of Vyāsa, was born in the womb of a fish. (*vide Mbh. Ādi.* 63. 50-69).

3. It means that the present Purāṇa which is being narrated by the Sūta at Kurukṣetra was formerly recited by Vāyu to the sages of Naimiṣa forest (mod. Nimsār in U. P.)

42. The ultimate cause is the four-armed, four-faced, supreme Maheśvara, the unmanifest, the inconceivable, the inscrutable and the self-born god.

43. It is certain that he created the unmanifest cause and whatever is permanent, in the form of existent and non-existent, beginning with *Mahat* (the great principle, the cosmic intellect) and ending with *Viśeṣa*.[1]

44-45. The incomparable golden cosmic egg was born from it. The cosmic egg was enveloped by the waters; the waters by the fire; the fire by the wind; the wind by the ether; the ether by the cosmic Ego; that Ego by the cosmic intellect (*Mahat*) and that intellect by the Unmanifest (*avyakta*).[2]

46-47. Hence in this Purāṇa, the origins of all the gods and sages are narrated. The origin of rivers and mountains is explained; all the Manvantaras and Kalpas are described; legends about Brāhmaṇas and Kṣatriyas and the birth of Brāhmaṇas are retold.

48. Then the creatorship of Brahmā and the creation of the subjects (beings) are explained as also the various states of Brahmā, born of the Unmanifest.

49. The number of years of the Kalpas, the establishment of the worlds, the slumber of Viṣṇu and the uplift of the Earth (are described).

50. The mode of planning cities etc. in accordance with castes and stages of life; the cutting of trees planted in dwelling places and those naturally grown (in the forest) (are discussed).[3]

---

1. The phrase '*mahadādi viśeṣānta*' is popular with Purāṇa-writers in describing the evolution of the universe. It means the group with *Mahat* at one end and *Viśeṣa* at the other. The term *Viśeṣa* means *Bhūtas* (gross elements, *Tanmātras*, sense-organs), the *Tāmasī Sṛṣṭi*. It is so called as it indicates the differentiation between gross elements where five senses cognise five sense-objects (*viṣayas*) and *Bhūtas* in a specialised (individual) manner.

2. These are the seven 'Sheaths' of this cosmic Egg. They mention these later (*infra* 4. 75-77). The number seven has a special significance in Purāṇas, e.g. 7 Lokas, 7 Seas, 7 Dvīpas (continents), 7 Mountains etc. (*infra* 4. 72).

3. A. reads *Siddhīnām*: "of the *Siddhis* providing homes under trees (?)"

51. A detailed description of the paths and their measurements and the allocation of places in the heaven to the mortals of this world (is given).

52. Description of (different species of) trees, medicinal trees, plants and creepers (is given). How mortals attain the status of trees, Hellish beings, and insects is also explained.

53. The two paths of the deities and the sages are mentioned. The creation and destruction of food etc., and of bodies is also mentioned.

54. In the beginning, out of sacred literature, the Purāṇa was remembered by Brahmā.[1] Then the Vedas came forth out of his mouths.

55. The ancillaries of the Vedas, the Dharmaśāstras (codes of the law like *Smṛtis*), holy rites, religious observances and restraints, origin of animals and human beings are explained.

56. Similarly are explained the total components of Kalpas; the nine types of unintentional creation by Brahmā are described.

57. Then the three creations without the cosmic intellect; how the worlds came into being and Dharma (virtue) etc. originated from the limbs of Brahmā's body.

58. The twelve species of beings that are born again and again in a Kalpa; the duration of Kalpas and the period of transition from one Kalpa to another.

59. The origin of *Adharma* from Brahmā on being enveloped by Tamas; the birth of Śatarūpā,[2] thereafter (is described).

60. The birth of Priyavrata, Uttānapāda, Prasūti and Ākūti —the sinless ones in whom the subjects are established.

61. The birth of twins to Ākūti by Ruci, the Prajāpati, and the birth of daughters of Dakṣa through Prasūti.

---

1. This self-glorificatory claim for precedence over the Vedas is chronologically justifiable as some compilation called Purāṇa did exist before the Atharva Veda (AV. XI. 7. 24, XV. 6. 11).

2. Śatarūpā: The spouse of Svāyaṁbhuva Manu. The pious lady, a performer of penance was accepted in marriage by Manu. They had two sons—Priyavrata and Uttānapāda and two daughters Prasūti and Ākūti. Prasūti married the Patriarch Dakṣa and Ākuti, Ruci, the Prajāpati (VP. I. 7. 17-18). Probably Manu and Śatarūpā represent the original darents.

62. The procreation by great-souled Dharma from Dakṣa's daughters like Śraddhā, of a race characterised by Sattvaguṇa giving rise to happiness.

63. As well as the race of *Adharma* (unrighteousness) from Himsā (violence) characterised by Tamoguṇa and inauspiciousness. Then is glorified the progeny of Maheśvara from Satī.

64. The receptacle of Yoga recounted again to the twice-born ones (who were) desirous of liberation that type of Yoga (which was) mentioned to blemishless (god) Brahmā.

65. The incarnation and the supreme glory of Rudra, the legends relating to the three Vedas and the great dialogue are then mentioned.

66. Eulogies of Lord Śiva by Brahmā and Nārāyaṇa at which that God was pleased, has been described.

67. The manifestation of Lord Rudra from Brahmā's body and the origin of the name Rudra because he, the Lord, had cried, (has been glorified).

68. How that God obtained the eight names such as Rudra and others from Brahmā and how the three worlds constituting the mobile and immobile beings are pervaded by them.

69. The creation of progeny by Bhṛgu and other sages as well as the glorification of the lineage of Vasiṣṭha, the Brāhmaṇa sage, (is described) here.

70. The progeny of Agni through Svāhā[1] and that of the Pitṛs[2] of two classes through Svadhā, thereafter (are mentioned).

71-72. In the context of the line of Pitṛs, the cursing of Dakṣa, and intelligent (sages like) Bhṛgu and others for the sake of Satī and the counter-curse of Rudra by Dakṣa of wonderful

---

1. The three fires in every ancient Aryan home, viz. Gārhapatya or Pavamāna, Dakṣiṇāgni or Pāvaka and Āhavanīya or Śuci are regarded as the progeny of Agni from Svāhā (*vide infra* Ch. 29, Agnivaṁśa).

2. The two types of Pitṛs mentioned here (*infra* Ch. 30. 6-7 etc.) are *Agniṣvāttas* and *Barhiṣadas*. The *Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa* and *Tait. Brāhmaṇa* I. 6. 9. 5 mention one more class viz. *Somavantaḥ*. Those who performed a Soma sacrifice are *Somavantaḥ*; those who offered cooked oblations (like *caru* or Puroḍāśa) and secured the next world are *Barhiṣadas* and those who did neither and are consumed by fire after death are *Agniṣvātta*.

activities and the ultimate termination of the enmity between them has been narrated in details here.

73[1]. Their individual appointments in different continents and lands and the description of creation by Svāyaṁbhuva Manu.

74. The creation of Nābhi and the noble-souled Rajas; the enumeration of continents, oceans and mountains.

75. The description of different Varṣas (sub-continents), rivers and their tributaries and the numerous divisions of the seven main continents.

76. The extent of the zones of the continent of Jaṁbū Dvīpa and the ocean; their extent in Yojanas along with their mountains (are mentioned).

77. The mountains in the sub-continents, mountain (ranges) dividing (this) sub-continent, viz. Himavān, Hemakūṭa, Niṣadha, Meru, Nīla, Śveta and Śṛṅgavān.[2]

78. Their internal dimensions, heights, lengths and extents (measured) in Yojanas, and the residents are described.

79. The sub-continents such as Bhārata; the rivers and mountains therein, as inhabited by the stable and moving beings.

---

1. Ref. to Bd. P. I. 65. 66 shows that a line is missing here: The line means : "Herein the details of the sons of Priyavrata are described such as : Their appointments etc."

2. These are the mountain-systems of India as understood by the Purāṇa-writers. They are identified as follows :—

(1)	Himavān	:	The great Himalayan range
(2)	Hemakūṭa	:	Ladakh-Kailash, the trans-Himalayan chain
(3)	Niṣadha	:	Hindu Kush-Kunlun chain
(4)	Meru	:	The Pamirs
(5)	Nīla	:	Zarafshan-Trans-Alai-Tien-Shan chain
(6)	Śveta	:	Nura Tau-Turkistan-Atbashi chain
(7)	Śṛṅgavān	:	Kara Tau-Kirghiz-Ketman chain

Soviet archaeologists and Indologists now testify to the existence of Vedic Aryans from the lower reaches of the Dnieper, Crimea, the northern Black Sea area, through the Soviet republics of Central Asia. *Vide* for example O. N. Trubachev's 'Linguistic periphery of the ancient Slavs', 'Indo-Aryans in Northern Black Sea Area'; B. A. Rybakov's 'The Paganism of the Ancient Slavs and others'. But due to the colonial legacy of mental slavery, many of us still disbelieve the geographical evidence in the Purāṇas.

80. The continents Jaṁbū etc. encricled by the seven oceans, the watery land (?) and the Lokāloka are described.

81. These worlds and the earth with its seven continents as enveloped by the cosmic egg; the worlds Bhū etc., and their natural surroundings are described.

82. Everything is described in brief along with its diameter and circumference even to the smallest fraction of the whole measure.

83. The magnitudes of the sun, the moon and the earth in Yojanas with their present presiding deities. So also the holy assemblies of Mahendra and others on the northern peak of Mānasa.

84. Thereafter, the movement of heaven like the circular movement of the fire-brand, is mentioned. The characteristics of Nāgavīthi and Ajavīthi[1] are also described.

85. Then is stated the Yojanas of the two extremities, the two borders and the zones of Lokāloka. The extent of twilight, day and the equinoxes is mentioned.

86-87. Then the guardians of the world who are stationed in the four quarters are described. The southern and the northern paths of the manes and the deities, the paths of householders and the ascetics as based on the qualities of Rajas and Sattva are described. The region of Viṣṇu where Dharma etc. are established is glorified.

88. The course of movements of the sun, moon, planets and luminaries due to the (controlling) power of Dhruva, the pole-star, and the auspicious and inauspicious effects (of their movement) on the people.

89. The chariot of the sun prepared by Brahmā himself for some special purpose is mentioned. Seated on this chariot, the Sun-god moves in the firmament.

90. That chariot is occupied by the gods, the different suns, sages, divine musicians, celestial damsels, Yakṣas, serpents and Rākṣasas.

---

1. *Vīthis* are the courses of the sun in the sky. Thus *Ajavīthi* is one of the three divisions of the Southern path in the sky in which the sun, the moon and the planets move comprehending the *Nakṣattras* (costellations) Mūla, Pūrvāṣāḍhā and Uttarāṣāḍhā.

91. So also the chariot of the moon which is constituted of the essence of waters is described. The increase and decrease of the moon, caused by the sun, are also mentioned.

92. The movement of the chariots of the sun and others (starting) from the pole-star is described in details, as also the tortoise-shaped arrangement of the heavenly bodies with the pole-star stationed at the tail (end) (is narrated).

93. The stars in the form of constellations are mentioned along with the planets wherein are situated the residences of the gods who have performed meritorious acts.

94-106. The exudation of rain, chilliness and heat from the thousand rays of the sun and the division of rays by their names, functions and purpose; the magnitude of the planets and their courses depending on the sun; the manner how the throat of Śiva became blue on account of poison;[1] how the trident-bearing lord swallowed poison when implored by Brahmā; the eulogy of the supreme lord Śiva by Viṣṇu who is eulogised by the gods; the holy sin-dispelling narrative of the origin of the *Liṅga*.[2] Wonderful transformation of Pradhāna through the cosmic form; the narrative of the greatness of Purūravas, son of Ilā; the propitiation of the two classes of manes by means of nectar; the Parvans (auspicious occasions based on the position of the moon) as also their junctures; the propitiation by means of Śrāddha of the two classes of manes, viz. those who have gone to the heaven and those who have fallen down to the nether regions; the duration and the number of Yugas.[3] The introduction of agriculture and such occupations as means of livelihood in Tretā Yuga due to their decrease in comparison with Kṛta Yuga; the enumeration of the castes and stages of life and the narration of

1. This refers to Śiva's swallowing the *Halāhala* poison which came up while gods and demons were churning the sea for obtaining *Amṛta*. For saving the world from its deadly effect, god Brahmā requested Siva to drink it up (*vide infra* Ch. 54).

2. This refers to Śiva's manifestation in the *liṅg* form as a column of fire the dimension of which could not be comprehended by gods Viṣṇu and Brahmā both of whom were contending for personal superiority. For details : *vide infra* Ch. 55.

3. *Vide infra* Ch. 58; compare Bd. P. Ch. I. 2. 31.

their activities. The establishment of the castes and stages of life by virtuous means; the introduction of the institution of sacrifice; the dialogue between the sages with Vasu and Vasu's descent (to the nether worlds);[1] the inexpressibility of (answers to) questions except by Svāyaṁbhuva Manu. The merits of penance, the periods of Yugas in their entirety, the brief narration of the events in Dvāpara and Kali Yugas; the magnitudes of the girth, height and longevity of gods, animals and human beings in the different Yugas according to the efficacy and power of the Yugas; the characteristics of the good and their advent; the narration of the Vedic and non-Vedic Mantras; the extent of the branches (of the Vedas); the appellation of Vedavyāsa and others; the dissolution of Manvantaras and their re-creation after dissolution—all these are mentioned in detail.

107. Since the account of (creation etc.) of the deities, sages, Manus and the Pitṛs cannot be given in detail, hence they are mentioned briefly.

108. The number of years of the present Manvantara is mentioned in terms of human years. The same applies to all Manvantaras.

109-110. The description of the past and future Manvantaras is given on the basis of the present Manvantara. So also the characteristics and the time duration of the transition from period of the past and future Manvantaras are given with reference to the Svāyaṁbhuva Manvantara. The scheme of three Manvantaras and the knowledge of time are also recounted.

111-112. The account of Devas and Prajāpatis in the Manvantaras, Dakṣa's grandsons, the sons of his favourite daughters and those that were procreated by Brahmā and others as well

---

1. This Vasu was an ancient pious king of Pūru dynasty. Due to his piety, he moved through the sky without touching the earth. There was dispute between sages and gods about the interpretation of '*Aja*' in the Vedic injunction '*Ajena Yaṣṭavyam*'. Gods interpreted it as 'a goat', while the sages held that it meant 'seeds incapable of germination'. When Upāricara Vasu whom both the parties accepted as the judge, decided in favour of gods, even though it involved injury to life, sages cursed him and he fell down from his exalted position into the nether world (*Mbh. Śanti Ch.* 337).

as by the intelligent Dakṣa. The Manus, viz. Sāvarṇi and others, residing on the Meru; the description of the lineage of Dhruva, the son of Uttānapāda[1].

113. The milking of the Earth (as started) by Pṛthu,[2] son of Vena; the specification of vessels and their content of milk; the description of races[3] as well as how formerly this earth was milked by Brahmā and others.

114. The birth of Dakṣa, the intelligent Prajāpati in Māriṣā from the ten Pracetas through a part of the moon.

115. The sovereignty of Mahendras over the beings of the past, present and future, the creation of Manus and others and the various anecdotes of their lives.

116. The creative activity of Vaivasvata Manu is recounted in details. So also is narrated the birth of Bhṛgu and others from the semen of god Brahmā at the time of the great sacrifice when the Lord assumed Varuṇa's form.

117. After the narration of the auspicious creation (Procreative activity) of Cākṣuṣa Manu that of Dakṣa by means of meditation is narrated.

118. Nārada, son of Brahmā, destroyed the mighty sons of Dakṣa after speaking pleasing words to them. He thus invited (Dakṣa's) curse.

119. Then Dakṣa procreated in Vīriṇī his renowned daughters. The procreation (procreative) activity sanctioned by religion (law) of the intelligent Kāśyapa is then narrated.

120. Thereafter, the unity, diversity and specialities of Brahmā, Viṣṇu and Śiva are narrated.

---

1. The reading *Auttānapāda* as in Bd. P. I. 1. 104 is more appropriate.

2. The legend of King Pṛthu milking the earth is a Purāṇic version of the Vedic conception of milking of the *Virāj* cow. The *Virāj Sūkta* (AV VIII. 10) is probably the basis of the legend. This Pṛthu, the son of the tyrant Vena, is a Vedic king. AV VIII. 10. 24 records that Pṛthu milked the *Virāj* cow with the earth as a milking pail and Vaivasvata Manu as the calf. Here (*infra.* II. 1. 174) Cākṣuṣa Manu is made the calf as in Bd. P. I. 2. 36. 202.

3. *Vaṁśānām* 'of the races' is inappropriate. Later on there is a specific mention of who was 'the calf' at the time of each milking of the earth. '*Vatsānāṁ*' the reading in Bd. P. I. 1. 196 is more appropriate.

121. How gods were cursed from being all-powerful by the self-born Brahmā (is narrated). The attainment of Marut-hood by the Maruts born of Diti from divine elements is then narrated.

122. The classification of Maruts into seven groups of seven each, their attainment of god-hood, the order of the Pitṛs and fixation of their abodes in Vāyu are narrated.

123. The creation of Daityas, Dānavas, Gandharvas, serpents, Rākṣasas, goblins, ghosts, animals, birds, creepers and the celestial damsels is then narrated in great detail.

124. The birth of the elephant Airāvata from the ocean, the birth of Garuḍa and his coronation (are also narrated).

125-126. Detailed narration (is then made) of the descendants of Bhṛgu, Aṅgiras, Kaśyapa, Pulastya, the noble Atri and the sage Parāśara. The progeny of Devas and the sages is described thereafter.

127. The three Virgins in whom all the worlds are founded are then glorified. Then the grandsons of the Pitṛs are mentioned and the birth of Devas is described.

128. A detailed description of the Lord and that of the five souls and the progeny of Ilā and then that of Āditya (the Sun-god) is given.

129. The legend of Vikukṣi,[1] the slaying of Dhundhu, and the line of rulers from Ikṣvāku to Bṛhadbala are briefly related.

130. The progeny from Nimi to Jahnugaṇa and even that of king Yayāti is described.

131. The description of the dynasties of Yadu, Haihaya and later that of Kroṣṭṛ is given.

---

1. Vikukṣi was king Ikṣvāku's son. One day Ikṣvāku decided to conduct a great sacrifice (*Mahāpralaya Śrāddha*) to his manes and sent his son Vikukṣi to forest to bring flesh of hunted animals. On his way home, Vikukṣi became hungry and ate a rabbit. When the flesh for sacrifice was to be sprinkled with sacred water, Vasiṣṭha declared that it was 'a remnant' and not acceptable for sacrifice. The Prince confessed but was expelled by Ikṣvāku. As Vikukṣi ate a rabbit, he became known as *Śaśāda*. After his father's death, Vikukṣi returned to rule over Ayodhyā.

132. The glory of Jyāmagha,[1] the creation of subjects of the noble souls Devāvṛdha, Arka and Vṛṣṭi are described.

133. The divine accusation of Viṣṇu, the attainment of a precious jewel from the Sun-god (are described).

134. The creation of the progeny of noble-souled Yudhājit as well as that of the glorious royal sage Devamīḍhuṣa are narrated.

135-136. Again the birth and doings of the great-souled (Viṣṇu), the wickedness of Kaṁsa, the birth in seclusion of Viṣṇu the Prajāpati as the son of Vasudeva and Devakī and later the procreation by Viṣṇu (Kṛṣṇa).

137. In the feud between Devas and Asuras, when, while protecting Indra, a woman (Bhṛgu's wife, Śukra's mother) was slain by Viṣṇu, He incurred the curse of Bhṛgu. Bhṛgu however brought back to life the divine lady, Śukra's mother.

138. There were wars between Devas and Asuras for twelve myriads of years entailing great loss of life. (The exploits of) Narasiṁha and others are extolled.

139. Propitiation of god Śiva was achieved through performance of penance by wise Śukra. Being intensly desirous of getting a boon, he eulogised Śiva. Thereafter are described the activities of gods and demons.

140. While the noble-souled Śukra was engaged with Jayantī, the intelligent Bṛhaspati, assuming the form of Śukra deluded the Asuras. So the mighty brilliant Śukra cursed them (all).

141. Next, the birth and glory of Lord Viṣṇu are described. Turvasu was the grandson of Śukra, born of his daughter Devayānī, from Yadu. Kings Anu, Druhyu and Pūru were the sons of Yayāti.

---

1. The word 'glory' refers to the fortunate end of a henpecked exiled king, son of Rukma-Kavaca. He was issueless. Once in a fight, he got a girl and brought her home. Jyāmagha's queen Śaibyā asked him who she was. The henpecked husband replied, 'Your daughter-in-law'. 'Where is the Son ?' retorted Śaibyā. Jyāmagha performed penance, got a son and the girl then became their daughter-in-law. Vide infra, II. 33.30-35.

142. Noble and excellent kings of this family endowed with brilliance and wealth and possessing eternal fame are described.

143-144a. The close adherence to Dharma by the Brāhmaṇa sage Kauśika is narrated, and also how Surabhi (the divine cow) dispelled the curse of Bṛhaspati.

144b. The praise of the family of Jahnu as also the prowess of Śantanu are also narrated.

145. A brief description of the seven Manus of the future and a description of the destruction (of the universe) at the end of Kaliyuga of the last (Bhauma) Manvantara (are given).

146. The significance of the terms *Para* and *Parārdha* (is explined) and the ascertainment of the extent of the universe in terms of Yojanas (is done).

147. Three types of dissolutions of all living beings, viz. *Naimittika* (periodical), *Prākṛtika* (of prakṛti—primordial nature) and *Ātyantika* (ultimate) are then described.

148-149. Then, there is the description of the drought caused by the sun, of the terrible fire Saṁvartaka, of the cloud, of the single vast ocean, of the wind, of the noble soul's (Brahmā's) night and of the calculation of periods, especially the period of Brahmā. Then the description of the seven worlds beginning with the earth (Bhū) and of hells beginning with Raurava is given.

150. The excellent abode of Śiva lies above the region of Brahmā where all living beings attain merger at the time of annihilation (of the universe).

151-152. Then the end of all living beings, the total annihilation after the death (lit. destruction) of Brahmā, the eight kinds and the eight forms of the vital breath, the upward and downward course (of the deceased) due to their resorting to virtuous and evil deeds in life.

153. Repeated destruction of the Mahābhūtas (the primary elements), the non-eternality of (even) god Brahmā after enumeration of miseries (are described).

154-155. The evil nature of pleasures and the ascertainment of their result, difficulties of attaining liberation, perception of defects through detachment, establishment of the being in

Brahman after casting away the manifest and the unmanifest and its realisation through the knowledge of diversity are all described in details.

156. The supreme bliss of Brahman is stated to be free from threefold distress, formless and unsullied. He who has realized it, has no fear from anywhere.

157. A further creation by another Brahmā is then narrated as before and so also the race of sages and the destruction of all sins.

158. Thus have been described the contents of this Purāṇa. Therein are also described the changes, and dissolutions of the universe, as also the tendencies of the living beings and the fruits of abstention from worldly acts.

159. The birth of Vasiṣṭha and his son Śakti, the slaying of Śakti by (Kalmāṣapāda), son of Sudās at the instigation of the sage Viśvāmitra (are described).

160. The birth of Parāśara (from Adṛśyantī) and how the sage Vyāsa was born of the daughter of Pitṛs from that holy sage.

161. The birth of Śuka; how the intelligent Parāśara and his son (Vyāsa) incurred the wrath of Viśvāmitra.

162. And how the sacrificial fire was kindled by Vasiṣṭha, how that sacrifice was shrewdly spoiled by divine means by lord Skanda, seeking the welfare of the sage Viśvāmitra, and for the sake of progeny.

163. How the holy sage Vyāsa, by the power of his intelligence, divided the single Veda into four ones and how, further, these were redacted into several branches by his disciples and grand-disciples.

164. How (Brahmā) was asked by the sages of the six illustrious families about the practical application of the Vedas in sacrifices; how the sages desirous of religious rites were answered by Brahmā on being thus asked; how the sages desired for a holy region and how Brahmā, being desirous of achieving their welfare, (gave them a wheel and told them:)[1]

---

1. Verses 164-166 give the popular etymology of Naimiṣāraṇya by attributing it to the *Nemi* (felly) of a wheel set in motion by god Brahmā. The place so selected is Nimsar in U. P.

165. "This wheel has a fine nave, its form and name are divine; it has truth for its spokes; its revolution is auspicious, and it is incomparable. You follow it alertly but with self-restraint as it proceeds ahead. You will then attain what is wholesome for you.

166. The place where the rim of this wheel of law, during its motion ahead is shattered, must be regarded as holy." After saying thus to the sages Brahmā vanished from sight.

167. (It is mentioned) how Gaṅgā conceived the golden foetus and how the place acquired the name Naimiṣa. And how the sages performed the long sacrifices there and how Śaradvat was restored to life.

168. How with great faith, the sages of Naimiṣa widened the earth and set up a king whom they honoured with hospitality in accordance with the injunctions of the sacred scriptures.

169. The king who was thus pleased with their hospitality was abducted by the cruel Asura Svarbhānu[1] who disappeared with him.

170. They followed the abducted king Aila (Purūravas) and as before they saw him in the village Kalāpa[2] in the company of Gandharvas.

171. (It is mentioned) how he joined the great sages and (how) he saw the golden vessels in their sacrifice.

172. How in the twelve year-long sacrifice (King) Aila engaged in disputation and scuffle and was slain by the sages of Naimiṣa.[3]

---

1. An ancient Dānava king, son of Kaśyapa and Danu (*Mbh. Śānti* 227. 50). Ugrasena, maternal grandfather of Kṛṣṇa, was regarded as his incarnation (*id. Ādi.* 67. 12-13).

2. *Infra* Ch. 91 shows that this Kalāpa was in the Himalayas where Purūravas honey-mooned with the divine nymph Urvaśī. It is supposed that Maru and Devāpi, the last kings of Solar and Lunar dynasties, wait there as ascetics for re-establishing their kingdoms after Kali Age. It is located somewhere near Badarikāśrama—De, p. 74.

3. The death of Purūravas in his attempt to seize the gold vessels of the Naimiṣāraṇya sacrificers is recorded in *Mbh. Ādi* 75. 20-22, Bd. P. I. 1. 2. 17-23. For details vide Bd. P., Vol. I, pp. 24-25, footnote.

173. How they created Āyus, son of Aila, from within the Araṇi[1], concluded the sacrifice and served Āyus.

174. O excellent Brāhmaṇas, all this has been described as it happened. The knowledge of worldly affairs of the sages is indeed great.

175. This Purāṇa, (which is) conducive to excellent knowledge, had formerly been narrated by Brahmā. The incarnation of Rudra for the welfare of the Brāhmaṇas (has been mentioned).

176. So also the (Pāśupata) Yoga of Śiva[2] and the regions sacred to him have been glorified. How lord Śiva became blue-throated and how he manifested in the liṅga-form[3] has also been described.

177. All this was mentioned to the Brāhmaṇas by Vāyu who propounded Brahman. The recital of this Purāṇa, listening to this Purāṇa and committing it to memory in particular, is conducive to wealth, fame and longevity. It is holy and it dispels sins.

178. Now it is going to be narrated in the above order. Even lengthy narrations, if stated in a brief form, are grasped with ease. And hence the above summary. What has been indicated above in brief will be narrated in detail by me below.

179. Even he who, with the composure of mind, studies this first section would have understood the whole of this Purāṇa. There is no doubt in this.

180-181. A Brāhmaṇa, who may know the four Vedas with the Aṅgas and Upaniṣads, cannot really be regarded as having attained proficiency, if he has not thoroughly known the Purāṇas also. He should re-inforce the Veda with the Itihāsa and Purāṇa. The Veda is afraid of him who is deficient in tradition, thinking 'he will hurt me.'

---

1. According to *Mbh. Ādi.* 75.24 Āyu was the son of Purūravas and Urvaśī and was *not* created out of *Araṇi* (the wooden piece for igniting fire by attrition) as stated here. Va. P. *infra* I. 2. 2 confirms Mbh. above.

2. *Vide infra* Part I, Chs. 11, 14 and 15.

3. *Vide infra* Part I, Chs. 54 and 55.

182. Reciting frequently this chapter which has been told by Brahmā himself, one will be liberated even if he be involved in mishaps and will attain the goal of his desire.

183. This is called Purāṇa because it breathes (exists) from earliest times.[1] Even he who understands the etymological interpretation of this would be liberated from all sins.

184. Nārāyaṇa (Lord Viṣṇu) pervades the entire universe and its functions. Lord Śiva is the creator of the creator of that universe.

185. Hence listen to this gist. Lord Śiva is the supreme deity of this Purāṇa.[2] At the time of evolution he creates the universe. At the time of dissolution he withdraws it into himself.

CHAPTER TWO

A Sacrificial Session of Twelve Years

1-2. The sages who were rich in religious austerities (or who considered religious austerities as their wealth) spoke to Sūta again : "Where did the *Sattra* (sacrificial session) of those sages of miraculous deeds take place? How long did it last? How did it function? How did Vāyu (the Wind-god happen to) recount the Purāṇa to them?

3. Please narrate this in details as we are extremely eager to hear this." Thus urged, Sūta spoke (the following) auspicious words in reply.

Sūta said :

4. Listen where the wise sages performed the excellent *Sattra*, how long it continued and how it was accomplished.

---

1. A popular etymology of '*Purāṇa*'.
2. Hence Vā. P. is regarded as a Śaiva Purāṇa.

5. They performed it where, of yore, the creator of the universe desirous of creating the universe, performed the holy *Sattra* for a thousand years.

6. In that *Sattra*, Tapa was the householder (performing the sacrifice); god Brahmā assumed the office of the priest designated as 'Brahmā.' Ilā had the status of the consort (of the performer of sacrifice). The intelligent Mṛtyu (god of death) of great splendour performed the *Śāmitra* rite (of killing the sacrificial animal) in that sacrifice of those noble souls.

7. The sages performed the sacrifice for a thousand years in the place where the rim of the revolving *Dharma-cakra* (the wheel of righteousness) was shattered. Thanks to that event, that place, sanctified by the sages, became famous as Naimiṣa.

8. It is the place where the holy river Gomatī, worshipped by Siddhas and Cāraṇas, flows. There, Rohiṇī gave birth to Budha by Soma.

9. Where Śakti, the eldest son of Vasiṣṭha, was born; where Arundhatī gave birth to a hundred sons of excellent brilliance.

10. Where king Kalmāṣapāda was cursed by Śakti and where the enmity between Viśvāmitra and Vasiṣṭha had cropped up.

11. Where sage Parāśara was born of Adṛśyantī. Even as he was born, the mortification of Vasiṣṭha[1] was brought about.

12. There, at Naimiṣa, the expounders of the Vedas performed the sacrificial session. Since they performed the sacrifice at Naimiṣa, they were called Naimiṣeyas.

13. It was while the valiant king Purūravas was ruling over the earth that the sages performed the *Sattra* for twelve years.

14. We have heard that though Purūravas enjoyed the eighteen continents, surrounded by the oceans, he was never content due to his covetousness for hoarding precious stones.

---

1. Parāśara, while in mother's womb for twelve years, became such a great Vedic scholar (*Mbh. Ādi* 176. 12-15).

15. Urged by Devahūti, Urvaśī loved him. Accompanied by this celestial damsel, the king desired to perform a sacrifice.

16. It was during his reign that the Naimiṣeyas performed the *Sattra*. The highly refulgent foetus which Gaṅgā conceived from the Fire-god, was deposited on the mountain and it was transformed into gold.

17. Then, for promoting the welfare of the world, god Viśvakarmā, of his own accord, made of gold, the sacrificial hall (lit. the enclosure for the sacrifice) of those noble-souled sages.

18. Bṛhaspati (the preceptor of gods was) there among the (sages) of incomparable brilliance. During the course of hunting, Purūravas, the son of Ilā, happened to visit that place.

19. On seeing that great wonderful sacrificial hall of gold, his faculty of judgement (wisdom) was overwhelmed by covetousness and he tried to seize it.

20. Thereupon, the Naimiṣeyas got extremely infuriated. Urged by fate, they killed him towards the close of the night with adamantised Kuśa grass.[1]

21. Pounded by the adamant-like Kuśa grass, the king cast off his mortal body. The sages made his son, born of Urvaśī, the ruler of the Earth.

22. This king (Āyu) was the noble-souled father of Nahuṣa. He was virtuous and devoted to religion, and he behaved well with the sages. The health of that excellent person was very fine and he enjoyed a long life.

23. After mollifying the king (Āyu), the sages who were excellent among those who know Brahman, resumed their *Sattra* duly for increasing their religious merit.

24. That *Sattra* of those noble sages became as wonderful as that of the creators (of the universe) which they undertook before, with a view to create the universe.

---

1. The greed of Purūravas and his consequent death at the hands of sages is recorded in *Mbh. Ādi* 75. 20-23. Vide Bd. P. I. 1.2. 20-23 and p. 24 note 1 on it.

25. The *Sattra* was attended by Vaikhānasas, the friendly Vālakhilyas, Marīcikas and other sages who were as brilliant as the sun and fire.

26. It was attended by Pitṛs, Devas, Apsaras-s, Siddhas, Gandharvas, Nāgas, and Cāraṇas. It was equipped with the auspicious requisites in the same manner as the assembly hall of Indra by means of all these.

27. They worshipped the Devas through hymns, *Sattra*-chants and *Graha*-incantations. They worshipped the Pitṛs with the rites befitting their status. They worshipped the Gandharvas and others according to their respective position in the prescribed way.

28. The Gandharvas sang Sāman hymns; the Apsaras-s danced. They were desirous of propitiating (the invitees) in this rite.

29. The sages uttered auspicious words full of graceful expressions. Those who were versed in the philosophy of the mantras argued with one another.

30. Some disputants overcame their adversaries by fallacious arguments. The sages there were learned men, well-versed in the Sāṁkhya and Nyāya school of philosophy.

31. Brahmarākṣasas did not perpetrate any foul deeds; nor were there the Daityas who destroy the sacrifice, nor the Asuras who plunder it.

32. There was no need for expiation or imprecation. By the combination of (steady) activity, intellect and efficiency, the injunctions were carried out.

33. In this manner the intelligent sages performed the *Sattra* of twelve years' duration. Bhṛgu and other wise sages performed the Jyotiṣṭoma sacrifices separately. They paid ten thousand (coins) as fee to those returning priests.

34. After concluding the sacrifice, O Brāhmaṇas, they asked the great lord Vāyu of noble soul what I have been asked by you. Urged to describe the various dynasties of Kings, the lord spoke to them.[1]

---

1. Vāyu (the Wind-god) is the earlier interlocutor than the traditional Sūta. Cf. *Bd. P.* I. 1. 2. 36-48.

35. He (Vāyu) was a disciple of Brahmā. He could see everything directly. He had perfect control over his senses. He was endowed with the eight supernatural powers like *Aṇimā* and others.

36. He sustains all the worlds with their special characteristics of the non-human (and human) species. He perpetually flows through his seven courses (regions) as arranged.

37. The forty-nine Maruts arranged in seven groups of seven were stationed invariably in his jurisdiction. He is very powerful who could make the assemblage of three kinds of living beings. He could make embodied beings sustain through Tejas (fire).

38. He sustains bodies of living beings urging them with his five-fold activities and through the organs of sensation and activity.

39. It has been said by the learned that his source of origin was ether, attributes were sound and touch and that he was the origin of fire.

40. Lord Vāyu is the extremely active presiding deity called Vātāraṇi. He was expert in the science of language.

41. He was adept in ancient (Purāṇa) tradition. By means of sweet words full of Purāṇic contents he could delight the learned sages.

CHAPTER THREE

Origin of Creation

Sūta said :

1. Obeisance to the great God (Śiva) of supreme power and activity, the prominent one among gods, whose intelligence and brilliance is immeasurable. Salute to him of the brilliance of thousands of suns and fire. Hail to the creator and annihilator of the universe !

2-5. I shall narrate the story that wards off the evil of the Kali age, after bowing to the Prajāpatis bowed to by all the world, to great Lords like the self-born god Brahmā, Rudra and other deities, (to) Bhṛgu, Marīci, Parameṣṭhin, Manu, (to) Rajas, Tamas (and Sattva), to Dharma, Kaśyapa, Vasiṣṭha, Dakṣa, Atri, Pulastya, Kardama, Ruci, Vivasvat, Kratu, (to) the Patriarch sage Aṅgiras, Pulaha, Cukrodhana and the group of twenty-one ordered to carry out their duty of increasing the subjects (human beings) and to those ancient, eternal sages who are accompanied by their attendants.[1] I bow to the sages, the leaders of whom are Bṛhaspati and Uśanas who shine by their firmness and fortitude. I bow to those merciful sages of auspicious conduct and penance.

6. I shall describe the excellent creation of Prajāpati (God Brahmā) embellished by Indra, gods, and the sages. It is auspicious, incomparable, sinless and pleasing to the sages and the patriarchs (Prajāpatis) of great splendour.[2]

7. The (Purāṇa) story proclaimed by the Wind-god is greater than the greatest. It describes the period from the beginning of god Brahmā's day; it describes the sages who have amply and distinctly manifested the glory of their manliness and splendour. It is spread (incorporated) in the Vedas and Smṛtis and illustrated (therein) as well.

8. It is highly delightful to the mind due to the precise construction of compounds and (the use of) appropriate variety of words. Herein is described the first activity of unmanifest nature prompted by lord Śiva.

9-10. What is mentioned as the incomprehensible cause is Brahman which is the source of origin of the Prakṛti. The individual unit is a synthesis of Ātman, the cavity of the heart, womb, eye and the body. It is immortal and imperishable. The semen comprises the sattvaguṇa, penance and is very bright. That incomprehensible eternal second Puruṣa is pervaded by Brahmā, the grandfather of the worlds.

---

1. A. adds : *Manūṁśca sarvān akhilān avasthitān*
'To all the Manus present'.
2. A. adds : *Viśuddha-vāg-buddhi-śarīra-tejasām|*
"Of extremely pure speech, intellect and bodily splendour".

11. By the mere mental conception of the great lord, Prakṛti gives birth to the eight causes for increasing the continuity of creation and to the predetermined changes in the personal soul, it (i.e. Prakṛti) being the procreator, the possessor of Rajas in abundance, bound by the cosmic time and the limits prescribed by the Vedas. (?)

12-14. (The Purāṇa describes the creation of) the Devas, Asuras, mountains, trees, oceans,[1] Manus, Patriarchs (Prajāpatis), sages, Pitṛs, twice-born castes, Piśācas, Yakṣas, Nāgas, Rākṣasas, stars, planets, constellations of stars, the sun, the night-prowling demons, months, seasons, years, nights, days, space, time, Yugas, *Ayanas*, medicinal and forest herbs, creepers, aquatic beings, Apsaras-s, animals, lightning, rivers, clouds, birds etc. In fact whatever is subtle, whatever is on the earth, whatever is stationed in the sky, whatever is mobile or immobile, whatever has motion and division (is mentioned in this Purāṇa).

15. The science of the Vedas—Ṛk, Yajus, Sāman, the Soma juice, the sacrifice—whatever is made use of and desired by Prajāpati has been mentioned.

16. (So also is described) The creation of those before that of Vaivasvata Manu—the birth of those pious ones who are bowed to by the three worlds such as the lords of gods, celestial sages, Manus and prominently intelligent (persons) who have filled in (populated) and embellished the three worlds.

17. The rebirth of Dakṣa in the world of mortals by the curse of Rudra; his residence on the Earth and the mutual curse of Śiva and Dakṣa[2] (are mentioned).

18. The revolutions of Manvantaras, the creation and dissolution of the Yugas, sages and their lineage as these happened in the primeval Yugas and would occur onward—All this is described here (in this Purāṇa).

19. Those Vyāsas who propagate the Vedas in the Dvāpara Yugas are serially described. So also the number of Kalpas, worlds and the days of Brahmā (are mentioned).

---

1. A. adds : *Gandharva-yakṣoraga-mānuṣāṇām|*
'Of Gandharvas, Yakṣas, Nāgas or reptiles and human beings'.
2. *Infra* Ch. 30. 56-67.

20. The extent of four-fold living beings, viz., birds, trees, the sweat-born insects, and animals as also of the pious heaven-dwellers, and of those who have gone to hell. Their extent is given by inference.

21. The three types of dissolution, viz. absolute, of Prakṛti (primordial nature) and periodical as also the bondage and liberation and particularly the way of worldly existence and the higher way are mentioned.

22. The position of the causes remaining in the state of Prakṛti (material cause) and their subsequent functioning, have been expounded to the sages through arguments and on the authority of sacred scriptures. O Brāhmaṇas, whatever was fully narrated factually is being recounted to you exactly. Please listen.

CHAPTER FOUR

Origin of Creation (continued)

1. On hearing that, all the sages of the Naimiṣa forest replied to Sūta with eyes excited with curiosity.

2. "You, sir, are an expert in the knowledge of different dynasties and families as you have inherited it directly from Vyāsa. Hence, please describe to us entirely the creation (etc.) of this world.

3. We wish to know the detailed '*who's who*' (lit. the genealogies) of them all, and also the diverse creation of the ancient sages, as also the primeval creation of Prajāpati".

4. On being repeatedly requested by them the noble-souled Lomaharṣaṇa, the most excellent among the good, narrated everything in detail and in due order.

Lomaharṣaṇa said:

5. The story that you have asked me to narrate is divine, charming, meaningful and destructive of sins. What is being

related by me is wonderful, full of deep meaning and in consonance with the Vedas.

6-7. He who retains this in memory, or listens to it constantly or narrates it to Brāhmaṇas and to recluses in particular, with pious mind and self-restraint, on festive occasions (or important lunar days) in holy centres and temples, enjoys a long life. By proclaiming this Purāṇa, he upholds his family and is honoured in the heaven.

8. Understand as the Purāṇa consisting of extensive sections is being recited by me word by word as it was heard (by me). It will increase the fame of you all.

9. The glorification of all meritorious persons of well-established fame is conducive to wealth, reputation, heavenly pleasure, destruction of foes and longevity.

10. Creation (of the universe, its) dissolution and re-creation, genealogy of kings, Manvantaras and the description of the families of sages—these five constitute the characteristics of a Purāṇa.[1]

11. I shall (now) recount in details the Purāṇa that was narrated by the Wind-god and is on a par with the Vedas. (I shall narrate the traditional history of) the Kalpa which is purer than any other Kalpas and is positively purer than other holy things.

12. The first section (*pāda*) called *Prakriyā* consists of the following : The Origin, dissolution, re-creation and sustenance of the world.

13. The other sections constitute the Introductory (*Upodghāta*), *Anuṣaṅga* (the central) and *Upasaṁhāra* (the conclusion). The Purāṇa is conducive to virtue, fame and longevity. It dispels all sins.

---

1. This verse enumerating the five characteristics of a Purāṇa is common to most Purāṇas, e.g. A. P. 1-14, Bd. P. I. 1. 37b-38, Bs. P. I. 2. 4-5, Bv. P. IV. 133. 6, GP. I. 215. 14, KP. I. 1. 12, SK. P. VII. 2. 84 and others. Amara Siṁha (5th cent. A. D.) has recorded this verse in *Amara Kośa* I. 6. 5. But "The Purāṇa Texts that have come down to us hardly conform to this definition" (*The Hist. and Culture of the Indian People*, Vol. III, p. 292). For the application of this definition to the present text *vide* Introduction.

14. Thus the four sections[1] are briefly mentioned by me. I shall describe these in detail in due order.

15-16. After making obeisance to the self-born god Brahmā, Hiraṇyagarbha (a golden-fetus, born of golden egg), who is the lord, is the first and the last Puruṣa, who is the distinguished and superior Ātman of the subjects and who governs the worlds, I shall relate in details the excellent creation without leaving anything in doubt. The creation starts with the principle of *Mahat* and ends with *Viśeṣa* (the gross body).[2] It is described in diversity of forms and characteristics with the five dimensions and six (dividing?) systems. It is presided over by Puruṣa.

17. The unmanifest primary cause is of the nature of *Sat* (existent) and *Asat* (non-existent). It is eternal. Those who meditate on the Reality call it *Pradhāna* and *Prakṛti*.

18. It is devoid of smell, colour, taste, sound and touch. It is unborn, steady, imperishable, eternal and stationed in its own Ātman.

19. It is the origin of the universe. It is the great Being, the great Brahman, the eternal. It is unmanifest and is indeed the extension of all elements.

20. It is beginningless, endless, unborn, subtle, possessed of three attributes. It is the source and the immutable one. This timeless (lit. not belonging to the present), incomprehensible, Brahman was in the beginning.

---

1. The division of Purāṇa texts into four Pādas (as in vv. 12-14.) viz.: (1) Prakriyā, (2) Anuṣaṅga, (3) Upodghāta and (4) Upasaṁhāra is older than the *Pañca-lakṣaṇa* definition. Bd. P. is also divided into similar Pādas.

2. Purāṇas have accepted the Sāṅkhya theory of the evolution of the universe. Compare the evolution as given in AP. 17. 2-16, Bd. P. I.13.5ff, Bh. P. III.20.12-53, KP.I.2.3ff, VP. I.3.1-45. *Mahadādyam viśeṣāntam* is another common expression to state the evolution in a nutshell.

In this expression Viśeṣa indicates the differentiation amongst the five elements on the grossest plane of matter (*vide* V. S. Agrawala, *Mt.P.—A Study*, pp. 41-43). See vv. 61-62 below.

The Sāṅkhya in this text is influenced by Vedānta; see the description the Brahman in vv. 18-20 below.

21-22. All this universe which was enveloped in darkness, was pervaded by the Ātman when the Guṇas were in equilibrium. But at the time of creation Tamas reached a subsidiary state. The principle of *Mahat* appeared, due to the subsidiary state of Pradhāna, since it was presided over by the individual soul.

23. It was enveloped by the subtle and unmanifest principle of *Mahat*, which when Sattva becomes predominant, illuminates only Sattva. The mind should be understood as the *Mahat* because the mind is its cause.

24. It is born of the subtle mind, presided over by the intelligent consciousness. Dharma etc. and their various forms are the causes of the ingredients of creation. When urged by desire to create, the principle of *Mahat* performs the creation.

25. The terms *Manas*, *Mahat*, *Mati*, *Brahma*, *Pūḥ*, *Buddhi*, *Khyāti*, *Īśvara*, *Prajñā*, *Citi*, *Smṛti*, *Saṁvit*, and *Vipura* are synonymous,[1] so say the learned people.

26. Since it conceives of the fruit of the activities that multiply in a subtle way, it is called *Manas*.

27. It is termed as *Mahat* because it is born ahead of all the principles and is greater in dimension than other principles and attributes.

28. It is called *Mati* because it bears (comprehends) the measure, thinks of the division and is considered to be the Puruṣa in view of its relationship in enjoyment.

29. It is (etymologically) designated as *Brahman* because of its bigness and because it creates the beings and lifts them up from their resting place, the cosmic water.

30. It is called *Pūḥ* because it fills all the bodies by conferring benefits and makes them endowed with predetermined elements.

31. It is called *Buddhi* because through this principle, Puruṣa discriminates between the wholesome and the unwholesome and makes him advise others too.

---

1. Tnis tendency towards synthesis or *Samanvaya* of different schools of thought is found in other Purāṇas irrespective of their classification as Śaiva or Vaiṣṇava. The etymologies of these terms in vv. 26-39 are populist.

32. It is called *Khyāti* because re-enjoyment is felt in the awareness of this principle when (real) enjoyment is based on knowledge.

33. It is proclaimed by its attributes and is known by different names. Hence *Khyāti* has been the epithet of *Mahat.*

34. Since it knows everything directly, it is called the noble-souled *Īśvara.* It is called *Prajñā* because organs of perception are born of it.

35. It is called *Citi* because it collects the forms, knowledge etc. and the fruits of sacrificial rites for enjoyment.

36. It is declared as *Smṛti* because it is mindful of all activities and affects present, past and future.

37. It is called *Saṁvit* (derived either from √*vid* or √*vind*) as it obtains complete knowledge and hence its greatness.

38. It exists in everything and everything exists in it. Hence it is termed as *Saṁvit* by the ones possessing higher intelligence.

39. That receptacle of knowledge, (the omniscient) lord, proclaimed that knowledge arises from knowledge. *Mahat* is called *Viṭpura* by the learned because the *Dvandvas* (mutually clashing pairs) are covered by it.

40. Because of its being absolute controller of all worlds, it is called *Īśvaran.* It is called *Brahman* because of its bigness. It is *Bhava* because of its existence.

41. It is called *Ka* (Prajāpati) because of its knowledge of the physical body and of the soul also, due to its being absolutely one. It is *Puruṣa* because it lies in the body. It is *Svayaṁbhū* because it is self-born and because it exists from the beginning.

42. The first excellent *Tattva* (*Mahat*) has been thus explained through synonymous words by the knowers of truth and those who meditate on reality.

43. Urged by the desire for creation, *Mahat* performs creation. Its two-fold activities are conception and exertion.

44. Dharma and other principles are the ingredients of creation. *Mahat* is three-fold by virtue of the three *guṇas*, viz. *sattva*, *rajas* and *tamas.*

45. From Mahat of threefold Guṇas, is born Ego when the *rajoguṇa* is predominant. The creation of Ego is secondary and is enveloped by *Mahat.*

46. Thereafter, when the (cosmic) Ego is dominated by *tamas-guṇa*, the primary subtle element is born of the Ego characterized by *tamas*.

47. Ether is a perforated (void) extensive expanse and is characterized by the subtle element called sound and is again enveloped by the cosmic Ego (*Bhūtādi*).

48. It is reported that ether characterised by the subtle element sound created the subtle element touch. The Ego undergoing a change created the subtle element sound.

49. Wind grows powerful and is regarded as having the quality of touch. The powerful air is born of the subtle element of touch. Ether characterised by its subtle element of sound enveloped the subtle element of touch.

50. Water (consisting) of the subtle element of taste is enveloped by the subtle element of colour. Water effecting a change in the subtle element of taste created the subtle element of smell.

51. Formation of components takes place from that quality. With its particular 'smell', water with its subtle element of taste covered (the earth) consisting of the subtle element of smell.

52. The subtle elements are so called because they have specialities. This is their special characteristic. They are also called *Aviṣeṣas* because they express non-distinguishing characters. They are further called *Aviśeṣas* because they are non-quiescent, non-vehement and non-intelligent.

53. This creation of gross and subtle elements should be known (on the basis) of reciprocal activities. From the *Vaikārika* type of ego which is generated by *Sattva guṇa* and is *sāttvika* by nature, the *Vaikārika* type of creation simultaneously takes place.

54. The five organs of knowledge and the five organs of action constitute the ten efficient organs. These constitute ten (presiding) deities. The eleventh is mind. (Thus) the *Vaikārika* gods are eleven (in number).

55. Ear, skin, eye, tongue and the fifth nose are the cognitive organs for knowing sound etc.

56. Legs, anus, organ of generation, hands and the tenth organ speech are the organs of action. Their functions are movement, evacuation, pleasure seeking, manual work and speech.

57. Ether, the subtle element of which is sound, penetrates the subtle element of touch. Therefore, air consists of two attributes: sound and touch.

58. When the two attributes, viz. sound and touch penetrate the quality, 'colour', fire becomes endowed with three attributes, viz. sound, touch and colour.

59. Along with the (qualities) of sound, touch and colour it penetrated the subtle element of taste. Therefrom water characterised by taste should be known to possess four attributes.

60. The subtle element of smell entered them along with sound, touch and colour. Then (water) in conjunction with the subtle element of smell produces earth. Among all gross elements, earth alone possesses five attributes.

61. The gross elements are called *Viśeṣas* because they are quiescent, terrific and non-intelligent. These sustain one another because they penetrate one another.

62. Within earth is this entire cosmos surrounded firmly by Lokāloka. The *Viśeṣas* are perceivable by the sense organs and are limited (as they are fixed and determined).

63. The later elements attain the attributes of the former ones. Whatever characteristic is retained for a particular period is called *guṇa* (quality) for that period.

64. Having sensed smell from fire, some, out of ignorance, (may believe it) as emanating from air. It should be known that it (smell) is only in earth (i.e. it is the exclusive quality of earth). And they (the particles of earth) take resort to (i.e. are found in) air (hence its smell).

65-66. These seven extremely powerful but disparate elements were unable to create the subjects (beings) separately, without all of them being conjoined. When those great-souled (powerful) ones beginning with *Mahat* and ending with *Viśeṣas*

come together, they are presided over by Puruṣa and with the blessing of the unmanifest, they create the cosmic egg.

67. Like a bubble out of water, the egg was born (suddenly) all at a time from *Viśeṣas*. What was the vast mass of water therein performed the work of Brahmā.

68. The *Kṣetrajña* designated as Brahmā (the cosmic principle of activity) woke up in the egg of Prakṛti. He is verily the first embodied being. He is called Puruṣa.

69. He is the first creator of living beings. He existed in the very beginning manifesting himself as the four-faced Hiraṇyagarbha. In the primary and the secondary creation, the *Kṣetrajña* is termed Brahmā.

70. Living beings are created along with the sense-organs which they give up at the time of dissolution. Living beings resort to bodies again in the transitional periods characterized by non-aggregation.

71. The golden Meru is the foetus of that great-souled one. The oceans constitute the embryonic liquid and the mountains, the embryonic membrane and the bones.

72. The seven worlds and this earth with the seven continents and seven oceans lie within the cosmic egg.

73. Within it are all these worlds along with thousands of very great mounts and rivers, nay, the very universe itself.

74. The moon, the sun, along with the stars, planets, the air, the Lokāloka mountain and whatever exists is included (i.e. present) in the cosmic egg.

75. The cosmic egg is enveloped externally by waters ten times its size.[1] The waters are externally surrounded by fire ten times their size.

76. Fire is externally enveloped by air ten times its size. The air is surrounded externally by ether ten times its size.

77. The air is enveloped by the ether. The ether is encircled by the cosmic Ego. The Ego is surrounded by *Mahat* (intellect) and *Mahat* (intellect) is surrounded by the unmanifest. The cosmic egg is thus surrounded by the seven coverings created by Prakṛti.

---

1. The theory of seven sheaths protecting the Cosmic Egg is another popular Purāṇic concept. Compare KP. I. 4. 42-45, Bd. P. I. 1. 3. 32 ff.

78. These eight Prakṛtis abide thus covering up mutually. Abiding at the time of creation, they swallow up one another (at the time of dissolution).

79. Thus generated mutually, they sustain one another as the sustainer and the sustained in their primary and secondary relationship.

80. The unmanifest (unconscious principle) is called *Kṣetra* and Brahmā (the conscious principle) is called *Kṣetrajña*. Thus the creation of Prakṛti is presided over by *Kṣetrajña*. It existed in the beginning without intellect. It appeared all of a sudden like lightning.

81. He who understands factually the manifestation of Brahmā, becomes endowed with fame, longevity, wealth and progeny.

82. Even if a man has renounced desires, he becomes pure-souled and attains his goal. By listening to this Purāṇa everyday one can attain pleasure and welfare.

CHAPTER FIVE

The Origin of Creation

Lomaharṣaṇa continued :

1. O Brāhmaṇas, the period of time calculated by me for the creation (of the universe) should be known as one day of the supreme Lord.

2. The night of the great Lord should also be known as entirely of the same duration. The period of creation is his day and the period of dissolution is called his night.

3. It is held that he (Brahmā) has only the day and no night. But such assumption is made just for the benefit of the world.

4-6. The subjects, the patriarchs, the seers of Vedic Mantras along with ascetics, eternally youthful sages like Sanat-

kumāra and others along with those who have attained salvation, the sense-organs and their objects, the subtle elements, as well as the intellect and the mind—all these stay during the day of the Lord Supreme; they are dissolved at the end of his day; at the end of the night, there is creation of the universe.

7. When the quality *Sattva* stays in itself and when the secondary creation is withdrawn, both Pradhāna and Puruṣa become similar (i.e. inactive).

8. The qualities *Tamas* and *Sattva* stay in a state of equilibrium. When there is equilibrium in the qualities mutually, it should be known as dissolution; when there is disequilibrium of the *guṇas*, it is called creation (i.e. creation takes place).

9. Just as oil abides in the gingelly seeds or ghee in milk, so does the quality *Rajas* stay unmanifest in *Sattva* and *Tamas*.

10. After remaining quiescent throughout the great night of the Lord, the creation of Prakṛti begins anew at daybreak.

11. Entering the cosmic Egg, the great god caused, by his supreme Yoga, agitation in Pradhāna and Puruṣa.[1]

12. From *Pradhāna* that was being agitated, *Rajas* was produced. It is *Rajas* that causes the activity even as water causes the activity in the seeds.

13. The disequilibrium of qualities having taken effect the presiding (deities) are begotten. The three gods were created while the *guṇas* were being agitated. Those embodied gods, the souls abiding in all who have taken resort are extremely hidden.

14. The *Rajas* quality became Brahmā, *Tamas*, Fire and *Sattva* becomes Viṣṇu. Brahmā, the illuminator of *Rajas*,

---

1. *Kṣobha* 'agitation' is a process of contraction and expansion which is cyclic. It is called '*Samañcana-Prasāraṇa*' in *Śat. Br.* 8. 1. 4-10 and '*Saṅkoca-Vikāsa*' in KP. I. 4. 15.

stays in the capacity of creator.[1]

15. Fire, the illuminator of *Tamas*, abides in the capacity of Kāla. Viṣṇu, the illuminator of *Sattva*, remains indifferent.

16. These alone are the three gods* and the three fires. They are mutually dependent, devoted and faithful to one another.

17. They function jointly, sustain one another; they are ever in association with one another. They subsist on one another. There is no separation among them even for a moment. They do not leave off one another.

18. Īśvara is the highest deity. Viṣṇu is greater than *Mahat*. Brahmā, with dominant *Rajas*, functions for the purpose of creation. Puruṣa is known as *Para* (the supreme) and Prakṛti as *Parā* (great).

19. He (Brahmā) functions on being presided over by Maheśvara and being urged all round. Mahat and other (creations of Prakṛti) long stationed in their respective objects due to attachment, function thereafter.

20. Due to the disequilibrium of the qualities, *Pradhāna* begins to function at the time of creation. From *Pradhāna*, which is of the nature of *Sat* and *Asat*, presided over by Īśvara, the pair Brahmā and *Buddhi* (cosmic intelligence) are born simultaneously.

21. Then the *Kṣetrajña* termed Brahmā, of the nature of *Tamas* and the unmanifest, manifests himself in the beginning, fully equipped with sense-organs for all activities.

22. He, the unmanifest endowed with intellect shines forth with brilliance. He is verily the first embodied being abiding in the capacity of a cause.

---

1. Purāṇic writers identify Guṇas with the triad of gods Brahmā, Viṣṇu and Rudra (cf. Bd. P. I. 1. 4-6 and my note on it), LP. I. 70. 77-78. In our text Agni represents *Tamas Guṇa*. But since Vedic times Rudra is identified with Agni, e.g. 1) *Tvam agne Rudro asuro maho divaḥ*/—RV. II. 1. 6, TS. 1.3.14.1; 2) *Tasmai Rudrāya namo astvagnaye*/—A. V. (Atharva Veda) VII. 87. 1.

Purāṇa writers have accepted the Sāṅkhya theory of cosmic evolution but they have added Īśvara or a supreme deity and have given a popular garb to this evolution for mass education.

**V. L.* Vedāḥ 'The Vedas'.

23. He is equipped with unobstructable knowledge and supreme lordship. He is endowed with unobstructed *dharma* and detachment.

24. The knowledge, characterised by detachment, of that lord is unimpeded. The intellect of Brahmā identifying himself with that Lord, is affected by *Dharma* and *Aiśvarya* (supremacy).

25. Whatever he wishes mentally is created out of the unmanifest naturally, due to its being controlled, due to absence of attributes (?) and due to his being the lord of Devas.

26. In the capacity of Brahmā, he becomes the four-faced creator; in the capacity of Kāla, he is the destroyer; in the capacity of Puruṣa (Viṣṇu) he is the thousand-headed lord. These are the three states of the self-born God.[1]

27. In the capacity of Brahmā, the creator, he possesses *Sattva* and *Rajas* predominantly; as destroyer (of the universe), *Rajas* and *Tamas* predominantly; and as Puruṣa (Viṣṇu), *Sattva* exclusively. Thus is the state or course of attributes of the self-born Lord.

28. In the capacity of Brahmā he creates; in the capacity of Kāla he withdraws (destroys) the worlds; in the capacity of Puruṣa he remains unconcerned. These three are the states of the Lord of subjects.

29. Brahmā has the lustre of the interior of a lotus. Kāla has the lustre of collyrium. Puruṣa is lotus-eyed. Thus is the form of the supreme soul.

30. The Lord of Yogas who out of sportiveness has different creations, activities, forms, names and functions, creates and effects changes in (different) bodies.

31. Since he functions in the world in three ways, he is called *Triguṇa*. Since he is divided into four he is glorified as *Caturvyūha* (having four manifestations).

---

1. Cf. Bd. P. I. i. 4. 18, KP. I. 2. 91-92. There, the Reality or supreme God is Mahādeva while in VP. I.2.70, it is Viṣṇu—a difference in nomenclature only. Our author emphasizes that this supreme god assumes three forms for the creation etc. of the universe.

32. He is called *Ātman*[1] because whatever he attains (*Āpnoti*), takes up (*Ādatte*) and exists (*Asti*) for the (enjoyment of) objects, that is his permanent being.

33. He is called *Ṛṣi* because he goes everywhere. He is *Viṣṇu* because he pervades everything. He has the lordship over everything. He is the lord of physical body etc.

34. He is *Bhagavān* because there are such (excellences) in him. He is *Rāga* (lord of passion) because he controls passion. He is *Para* (Supreme) because he is the cosmic being. He is *Om* because he protects (all).

35. He is *Sarvajña* (omniscient) because he knows everything. He is *Sarva* because everything originates from him. As men emerge from him, he is known as *Nārāyaṇa*.

36. He divides his self into three and acts on the three worlds. He creates, surveys (protects) and devours through the three activities. In the beginning Hiraṇyagarbha manifested himself as four-faced lord.

37. Because he is first to manifest he is called the first god. He is called *Aja* because he is not born (is self-existent). Since he protects the subjects, he is called *Prajāpati*.

38. He is called *Mahādeva* because he is the greatest deity among Devas. He is *Īśvara* because he is the lord of worlds and because he is not subject to other's control.

39. He is called *Brahmā* due to his bigness. He is called *Bhūta* because of his (eternal) existence. He is *Kṣetrajña* because he knows the unmanifest cosmic nature. He is *Vibhu* because he is omnipresent.

40. Because he lies in the subtle body (called *Pūr*) he is called *Puruṣa*. He is called *Svayaṁbhū* because he is not procreated and because he exists before the creation.

41-42. He is called *Yajña* because worship or sacrifice is offered to him. He is *Kavi* because he is omniscient. He is

1. The author is fond of derivations. Some of them are grammatically correct, some ingenious, but most of them are popular. Thus here *Ātman* is derived from √*āp*, √*ad*, and √*as*. Some others trace it to √*an* 'to breath', √*at* 'to move', √*vā* 'to blow' (MW. 135 a).

Kramaṇa because he is worthy of being approached and due to his patronage of castes, he is called *Āditya*, *Kapila*, *Agraja*, and *Agni*. His womb was gold and he was born of golden womb, so he is called *Hiraṇyagarbha* in this Purāṇa.

43. Even in hundreds of years, it is impossible to calculate the number of years that have elapsed since the self-born was manifested.

44. The time that has elapsed, the number of Kalpas that have passed after he had manifested is called *Para*. That much of time still remains for him. At its close, the subsidiary creation is to take place.

45. Crores and crores of Kalpas have already passed. Yet so many more still remain.

46. The Kalpa that is current now, O Brāhmaṇas, is called Vārāha. That is the first of the Kalpas now current.

47-50. It will have fourteen Manus, beginning with Svāyaṁbhuva and including those of the past, present and the future. By these rulers of men, this earth including the seven continents is to be protected along with the subjects, by means of penance. Now listen in detail. Through (the description of) one Manvantara, all the future Manvantaras, and through (the account of) one Kalpa all the past and future Kalpas (are described).[1] The future Kalpas along with the futurities and dynasties should be inferred by the intelligent one (on the basis of) the past Kalpas.

CHAPTER SIX

The Origin of Creation (Continued)

Sūta said:

1-3. Water originated from fire. When the earth was destroyed in the fire and everything merged within (the water),

1. Cf. *Dhātā yathāpūrvam akalpayat*/
This is a strong popular belief shared by all Purāṇa writers.

when, therefore, the mobile and immobile beings were also destroyed, nothing could be known (seen) in that vast ocean of water[1]. Then Brahmā, called Nārāyaṇa, lord Brahmā of thousand eyes, thousand legs and thousand heads, the Puruṣa who is golden in complexion beyond the ken of sense organs, slept in that water.

4. Due to the preponderance of Sattva, he woke up and he beheld that the world was a void. About Nārāyaṇa they cite this verse.

5. We have heard the epithet of waters, that waters are called Nārā, and that they are minute or subtle bodies. Since he lies in waters, he is therefore called Nārāyaṇa.[2]

6. Having spent the whole period of night equal to a thousand yugas, at the close of the night, he assumed Brahmāhood for the purpose of creation.

7. Brahmā assumed the form of Vāyu[3] and moved about in the water like a glow-worm at night during the rainy season.

8-9. Then having come to know definitely that the earth lies submerged in those waters and being convinced about it by

---

1. *Ekārṇava*, 'the primeval watery flood' expresses the infinite unmanifest cause of the universe. Nīlakaṇṭha on HV. P. 3. 9. 1-4 calls it the *Kāraṇa Brahman* from which all life comes into being. Purāṇas believe in this doctrine and use *Mahārṇava*, *agādha*, *stabdha*, *salila* (HV. 3. 10. 1), *Yugānta-toya* 'Water flood at the end of Yuga' (Bh. P. III. 8. 23) as synonyms for *Ekārṇava*. This doctrine is very old and *Brahma-Vādins* (expounders of Vedas) have elaborated it to explain the process of creation and dissolution (VP. I. 2. 22).

2. The usual derivation of Nārāyaṇa in other Purāṇas also. But Bd. P. I. 4. 27 traces it to Nara : Brahmā causes the sleep (i.e. perfect rest) of Naras (men), hence he is remembered as Nārāyaṇa.

narāṇāṁ svāpanaṁ brahmā
tasmān nārāyaṇaḥ smṛtaḥ//

3. The belief regarding the assumption of the form of Vāyu for reconnaissance before assuming the form of a boar, to lift up the earth, is as old as *Tait. Br.* 1. 2. 1. 3 which says :

āpo vā idamagre salilam āsīt
tasmin prajāpatir vāyur bhūtva acarat/
sa imām apaśyat/
tām varāho bhūtvāharat/

reasoning (inference), he assumed another body as in the previous Kalpas for the lifting up of the earth. The noble soul then conceived mentally of a divine form.

10. Observing that the earth was overflowed with waters on all sides, (he thought to himself), "Oh, what great form should I assume and uplift the earth?"

11. He thought of the form of a Boar[1] charmingly comfortable in sporting about in waters. It was unassailable by living beings. It was of the nature of speech and was designated as Dharma*.

12. It had a girth of ten and a height of a hundred Yojanas. It resembled a dark blue cloud in complexion. It grunted like the rumbling of thunder-clouds.

13. It had a huge body like a mountain. Its curved fangs were white and sharp and terrible. The eyes were brilliant like lightning and fire. Its lustre was like that of the sun.

14. Its shoulders were round, plump and large. It had the lion's valiant gait. Its buttocks were stout and lifted up (well developed). It had auspicious characteristics. It was charming.

15. Assuming this large immeasurable form of a boar, Viṣṇu entered the nether regions in order to lift up the earth.

16. He was the guide for the propounders of the Vedas.[2]

---

1. The germ of Varāha incarnation as given above is in *Tait. Br.* Purāṇas have given an elaborate description of that incarnation in Bh. P. III. 13. 17-33, Mt. P. Chs. 246-248, NP. I. 4. 1-52, Bd. P. I. 1. 5. 11-23 a number of verses in which are common to our text.

**Brahman* i.e. the Veda in Bd. P. I. i. 5-11.

2. This beautiful description of the Boar-incarnation in Yajña terminology is found in other Purāṇas also. For example Bm. P. 213. 33-42, Bh. P. III. 13. 34-39. Writers on Smṛtis, Tantra and even Śaṅkara adopted it, e.g. *Viṣṇu Smṛti* 1. 3-12, Śaṅkara on *Viṣṇu Sahasranāma* 119—explanation of *Yajñāṅga*.

The comparison between Varāha and sacrifice (*yajña*) will be clear from the following attributes of the Varāha in the text e.g. 6.16b : *Agni-jihva*—Agni (fire) is the tongue of gods. Through the fire gods eat the food (offered in sacrifice). A Vedic concept—Cf. RV. IV. 57. 1

darbha-romā : The *darbha* grass spread on the altar is compared to the shaggy hair on the body of the boar.

Brahmaśīrṣaḥ : Brahma is the knowledge of the Vedas—Naturally its position is the highest, viz. the head.

He had sacrifice for his chest and the firealtar (*citi*) for his face. The Fire was his tongue; the Darbha-grass was his hair and Brahma was his head. He was of great penance.

17. The day and the night constituted his eyes. The ancillaries of the Vedas were his ear ornaments. The *Ājya* (ghee offering in sacrifice) was his nose; the sacrificial ladle was his snout. The sound of the Sāman hymns was his roaring grunt.

18. Endowed with glory as he was, he was an embodiment of truth and *dharma* and was established in virtuous valour. He was engaged in expiation. He was terrible. He had the huge form with the knees of an animal.

19. His body was straightened up. The offerings of *ghṛta* constituted his Liṅga (symbol). The (sacrificial) spot was his seed. He was the great medicinal herb (incarnate for curing distress). The altar was his inner soul. Mantras were his hips. The Soma mixed with clarified butter was his blood.

20. The Vedas were his shoulders. He had the fragrance of sacrificial offering. The *Havya* (oblations for the Devas) and *Kavya* (oblations for the Pitṛs) constituted his velocity. *Prāgvaṁśa*[1] (the room accommodating the sacrificers) was his body. He was lustrous and had undergone different initiations.

21. The sacrificial fees constituted his heart. He was an all-pervading Yogin in the form of a great Sattva. He was charming with the sacrificial rites of *Upākarman*. *Pravargya* (a rite in which hot milk is poured in a vessel, thus giving rise to fumes) constituted the whorls of hair on his chest*[2].

22. His gait and paths were the different *Chandas*. The secret Upaniṣads constituted his seat. He was accompanied by his consort Chāyā. He was lofty like a jewelled peak. Having thus assumed the form of a sacrificial Boar, the lord entered the waters.

---

1. The body of Varāha was so big and spacious as to accommodate many men, as *Prāgvaṁśa* (the room in which the members of the sacrificer's family and friends stay) is spacious.

*read *Pravargyāvartabhūṣaṇaḥ* as in Bd. P. I. 1. 5. 18

2. *Pravargya-vitta-bhūṣaṇaḥ* in the text is obscure. Bd. P. I. 1. 5. 8 reads in that context *Pravargyāvarta-bhuṣaṇaḥ* which means '*Pravargya* were the whorls of hair on Varāha's chest.

23-24. He, the lord of the subjects, got at the Earth covered with the waters. He approached and lifted it quickly. He diverted the waters of the oceans in the oceans and of the rivers in the rivers. The lord, for the welfare of the worlds, lifted with his curved fangs, the Earth that had gone deep into the nether world.

25. Holding the Earth in his hands he brought it to its place. The supporter of the Earth at first mentally supported the earth and then released it.

26. Over the flood of waters, the Earth floated like an immense boat. Due to the activities of the lord, it did not sink.

27. With a desire to set up the universe, the lord lifted up the Earth. Then, he, the lotus-eyed lord, decided to divide the Earth. He levelled the Earth and created the mountains on it.

28. Formerly when the creation was burnt by the Saṁvartaka fire, all the mountains, being consumed by that fire, lay shattered and scattered all over the earth.

29. In that *Ekārṇava* (the ocean of cosmic waters) the waters (solidified by cold) and collected by wind and were placed in a scattered manner here and there (wherever they were thus deposited); they became condensed into mountains.

30. Since they became motionless after being (thus) sprinkled, they were known as *Acalas*.[1] Since they are endowed with knots and joints, they were called *Parvatas*. Since they had been swallowed and hidden (formerly), they were called *Giris*. Since they had been collected, they were called *Śiloccayas*.

31. Thus after the worlds, oceans and mountains are destroyed at the end of a Kalpa, the Maker (Creator) of the universe creates them again and again, in the beginnings of the Kalpas.

32. He again created this earth along with the ocean, seven continents and mountains, as well as the four worlds, viz. Bhūr and others. After creating the worlds, he began the creation of the subjects.

---

1. Note the Purāṇic etymologies of *acala, parvata, giri.*

33. Desirous of creating different species of subjects, the self-born lord Brahmā recreated the beings in the same form as they had in the previous Kalpas.[1]

34. When he was contemplating over the creation intellectually, the dark and gloomy creation manifested itself simultaneously with Pradhāna.*

35. Nescience (*Avidyā*) with five joints, viz. darkness, delusion, super-delusion, murkiness and super-murkiness**, became manifested out of the Supreme Soul.

36. While he meditated, the creation became established in five ways. Just as a lamp is covered up with a pot, the creation was enveloped by darkness. Like a lamp lighted in a pitcher illuminated within and (dark) without, it was pure but devoid of feeling.

37. Its intellect and sense organs were concealed; it consisted of vegetation and since vegetation is declared to be primary it was called primary creation.

38. On seeing that the creation did not multiply, Brahmā was dissatisfied and he went into contemplation.

39-40. When he contemplated thus the *Tiryaksrotas* (the animal world) came into being. Since this creation proceeded obliquely, it was called *Tiryaksrotas*. Predominated by *Tamas*, they were mainly ignorant. They took to wrong direction. They were self-swayed and devoted to self.

41-42. The lord saw this second creation of *Tiryak-srotas*, proud of themselves, conceited and divided into twenty-eight—eleven based on the sense organs, nine of Udaya and the eight of Tārakā and other Śaktis.

---

1. Purāṇas believe that despite the annihilation of everything at the end of a Kalpa, god Brahmā recreates the universe on the model of the previous universe. They state this succinctly as follows : *dhātā yathāpūrvam akalpayat.*

*A. reads : *Pradhyāna-samakālam* : 'simultaneously while he was meditating'.

**Com. on VP. I. 5 5 renders these as, ignorance, delusion, desire of enjoyment, anger and fear of death.

43. They were all illuminated within but covered externally. Since their activity was oblique, they were called *Tiryaksrotas*.

44. Having seen the second universe, the *Tiryaksrotas*, and having observed everything of it of that designation (nature), the Lord conceived of the (following) idea : Even as he was thinking uninterruptedly (*nityam*), the Sāttvika creation appeared (of itself, automatically).

45. This third creation was called *Ūrdhvasrotas*, consisting of beings in which the stream of life passed upwards. Since life proceeded upwards it was called *Ūrdhvasroṭas*.

46. The *Ūrdhvasrotas* beings have abundance of comfort and pleasure. They are circumscribed outwardly and inwardly and are brilliant externally and internally.

47. These created beings are air etc. They are well settled after creating themselves. The *Ūrdhvasrotas* being the third (in the series of creations), that creation is known after them.

48. When gods with upward stream (the divine creation of *Ūrdhvasrotas*) were created god Brahmā was satisfied. As he was the competent Over-Lord, he thought of and created beings that would be *Sādhakas* (aspirants after spiritual power).

49. While he began contemplating, and since he was of truthful (effective) conception, the *Arvāksrotas* that could accomplish the task of creation, manifested themselves out of the unmanifest (*Avyakta*). Since the stream of life proceeded downwards, they are called *Arvāksrotas*.

50. They are characterized by the abundance of brilliance and were dominated by the attributes *Tamas*, *Sattva* and *Rajas*. Hence they have excess of misery and are continuously engaged in activities.

51. They are human beings who are enlightened externally and internally and accomplish the task of creation. Through the characteristics of *Tāraka* etc. they are of eight types.

52. These human beings are of accomplished souls. They are of the same nature as Gandharvas. Thus the creation of *Arvāksrotas* of *Tejas* (Light) has been narrated.

53. The fifth creation called *Anugraha* is of four types, through *Viparyaya* (Contrariety), *Śakti* (Power), *Tuṣṭi* (Satisfaction)

and *Siddhi* (achievement). The created beings know factually the past and the present objects.

54. The sixth creation is said to be that of beings such as *Bhūtādi*. *Bhūtādi* is characterized by contrariety and disability.

55. The first creation is of *Mahat*. It is known as *Mahatsarga*. The second is the creation of *Tanmātras* and is called the creation of the *Bhūtas*.

56. The third creation is that of *Vikāras* (the products of Prakṛti) and is perceptible by the senses. Thus the *Prākṛta* creation took place with conscious fore-knowledge.

57. The '*Mukhya*' creation is the fourth in order. The *Mukhyas* are the immobile beings. The creation of *Tiryaksrotas* is the fifth consisting of animals.

58. The sixth creation of *Ūrdhvasrotas* consists of divine beings. The seventh creation of the *Arvāksrotas* is that of mankind.

59. The eighth creation is *Anugraha*. It is characterised by Sattva and Tamas. These (latter) five are the *Vaikṛta* creation and the (first) three are *Prākṛta*.

60-61. The ninth creation *Kaumāra* is both *Prākṛta* and *Vaikṛta*. The three *Prākṛta* creations were brought about without planning or pre-meditation. The six creations of Brahmā function intelligently. Now understand the *Anugraha Sarga* in detail.

62-63. It is of four types found in all living beings through contrariety, power, satisfaction and achievement. In the immobile beings there is *Viparyāsa* (contrariety or loss of consciousness). In the animals, there is *Śakti* (power). Human beings are *Siddhātmans* (with souls capable of achieving spiritual progress). In Devas there is *Tuṣṭi* (satisfaction).

64. There are thus the nine creations including *Prākṛtas* and *Vaikṛtas*. By their mutual combination, the types are many.

65-66. At the beginning, Brahmā created three mental sons equal to himself, viz. Sanandana, Sanaka and the intelligent Sanātana who possessed great power and enlightenment Those (sons) of great splendour and strength renounced

(the world) due to their special knowledge of *Vivarta* (the unreal appearance of the world in place of Brahman). Due to multiplicity, they were spiritually awakened. They were abandoned (by their father). Without creating any subjects they retired.

67. When they had left, Brahmā created other mental sons who could accomplish the object. They identified themselves with their position and abided till the final dissolution of the world. (Now) know them by their names :

68-70. They are water, fire, earth, air, ether, quarters, heaven, firmament, oceans, rivers, mountains, plants, the 'souls' of medicinal herbs, trees and creepers, units of time, *Lavas*, *Kāṣṭhas*, *Kalās*, *Muhūrtas*, *Sandhis* (junctions of day and night like dusk, dawn etc.), night, day, fortnights, months, *Ayanas*, years and Yugas. These are the positions with which they identify themselves.

71. The classes of society are born of his limbs : Brāhmaṇas (were created) out of his mouth; Kṣatriyas out of his arms; Vaiśyas out of his thighs; and Sūdras out of his feet.

72. The lord is beyond *Avyakta* (unmanifest Prakṛti). The Cosmic Egg is born of the unmanifest. Brahmā is born of the Cosmic Egg. The worlds are created by him.

73. Thus this first section has been narrated to you all very briefly and not in details. The whole of this Purāṇa, is briefly narrated in this first *Pāda* (quarter).

CHAPTER SEVEN

Transition between two Yugas (Ages)

Introductory

1. Thus this first *Pāda* (section) the main theme of which was *prakriyā* was narrated. On hearing it, Sanātana, the descendant of Kāśyapa was much delighted in mind.

2. Addressing Sūta with (appreciative) words, he asked him the subsequent narrative. "O Knower of Kalpas, please narrate to us (the events during) the period of transition between the two ages.[1]

3. We are desirous to know the difference between the two Kalpas, viz. the one that has gone and the other that is current. Let us also know the *Pratisandhi* (period of transition) between the two (Kalpas) as you are undoubtedly very intelligent."

Lomaharṣaṇa said :

4. I shall describe to you here the difference between the two Kalpas: the one that has gone and the other that is current, and the period of transition between the two.

5-6. O sages of holy rites, now understand the Manvantaras that are in the Kalpas. This auspicious Kalpa that is current now is (called the) Vārāha Kalpa. The Kalpa that has gone before this Kalpa was (known as) Sanātana. Now understand the (condition of) the interim period between that Kalpa and the present one.

---

1. Out of the five main characteristics of a Purāṇa, description of Manvantaras is one. Thus we find it in Bh. P. VIII. 1. 1-29, KP. I. 51, NP. I. 40. 17-37 and others. This chapter which textually corresponds to Bd. P. I. 2. 6 deals with Kalpas and the interim period between them.

7-8. When the previous Kalpa recedes there is a period of transition. Another Kalpa sets in again and again from Janaloka. This happens again and again when the period of transition ends, the Kalpas are cut off from each other. At the end of a Kalpa, all the rites are completely annihilated. Hence it is called the period of transition between one Kalpa and another.

9. The joints (transition) between the periods called Manvantara and Yuga are also cut off. Manvantaras function with the inter-connections of Yugas.

10. The Kalpas that have been briefly narrated in the *Prakriyā Pāda* [each Kalpa (out of them) has a *Pūrva-ardha* (earlier half) and a *Para-ardha* (later half)]. When a Kalpa elapses, its later half is followed by the earlier half of the next Kalpa.

11. The other Kalpas which follow in future are so tied with their later half. The Kalpa that is current, O Brāhmaṇas, is the first among them.

12. In it the first (half) is called *Pūrva* (*Pūrvārdha*) and the later half is called *Para*. This is the period of sustenance (of the world). The period after it is called the dissolution of the world.[1]

13-15. The Kalpa which preceded the present Kalpa was Sanātana (by name). When at the end of one thousand sets of four Yugas along with the Manvantaras, the Kalpa came to an end, then the time of the destruction (of the universe) by fire arrived:[2]

In that Kalpa the gods who used to move about in aerial chariots, constellations, planets, stars, the sun, the moon and planetary bodies (sites)—all these meritorious souls numbered twentyeight crores.

16-17. Just as (the number was 28 crores) in one Manvantara, (their number) in fourteen Manvantaras is the same.

1. At the end of a Manvantara (Manu-period), the Yuga-period connecting the two Manu-periods is not broken, but at the end of a Kalpa the Universe is annihilated.

2. The following verses describe the process of dissolution of the Universe.

Therefore their total number (in all Manvantaras) was (14× 28=) three hundred and ninetytwo crores. In the Kalpa that passed away, the number of gods moving about in aerial chariots is said as being seven hundred and eight thousand. In each Kalpa (the same number of) gods is said as possessing chariots.

18. In all the fourteen Manvantaras, there had been Devas, Pitṛs, sages and Manus in the heaven.

19-20. The sons of Manus who are their followers, the respectable Devas who receive honour and praise from the people of all castes and stages of life and those heaven-dwellers who remain in the Devaloka—all these stand on equal footing along with their associates at the time of final dissolution.

21-22. When the dissolution becomes due, the Devas residing in the three worlds realize their inevitable (fateful) turn which necessarily occurs in due course.[1] Characterized by unconcern and grief, they forsake their associated positions and fix their mind anxiously on *Maharloka*.

23. They are endowed with bodies special to *Maharloka*. All of them abound in special purity and acquire mental achievement.

24-25. They establish contact with the Brāhmaṇas, Kṣatriyas, Vaiśyas and others who have been devoted to that Kalpa. After fixing their minds on *Maharloka*, the fourteen groups of devas fix their minds on *Janaloka* too.

26. They have abundant purity and have attained mental perfection, along with the contemporaries of their Kalpa, who have attained *Maharloka*.

27. Repeating it ten times, they go to the worlds called *Svar* and *Tapas*. After staying there for ten Kalpas, they proceed to the world called *Satya*. The residents of the Kalpa go in this order.

28. Thus thousands of Yugas according to the calculations of Devas pass by when the residents go to Brahmā's world where they attain their goal of final liberation [Lit. the state from which there is no return to Saṁsāra].

1. Verses 21-30 describe how Devas proceed from heaven to still higher regions in the order: *Mahar→Svar→Tapas→Brahma*.

29. Except overlordship (on the world), they become equal to Brahmā in affluence, glory, form (appearance) and objects (of enjoyment of senses)[1].

30. There they stay happily due to their close contact with Brahmā. Acquiring the bliss of Brahmā, they become liberated along with Brahmā.

31. In view of the inevitability in matters pertaining to Prakṛti, they remain bound in their separateness produced at that time.

32. Just as in a wakeful stage knowledge occurs with intellectual efforts from its forms, similarly knowledge which arises in them at that time, begins to function.

33. When the differences of those whose energies are of different nature, are restrained and withdrawn, their effects and instruments (sense organs) are produced along with them.

34-35. Of those residents of Brahmaloka whose authorities are lost (destroyed) due to the manifestation of their differences and multiplicity, but who abide by their own Dharma, those Siddhas have similar characteristics, are of pure souls and unsullied. In their nature they are beyond the sense-organs and are well established in their souls.

36. After revealing itself entirely to them, Prakṛti thus seen does not function because it is not activized by Puruṣa.

37. When the creation starts again, the Prākṛtic causes join together and originate those seers of truth.

38. Here those persons who have attained liberation have not to go by the (same) path of *Saṁsāra*. There is the non-recurrence (non-existence) of these like the blazing flames of fire which has been extinguished[2].

39. When these great souls have gone up beyond the three worlds, those who have not reached Janaloka along with them from Maharloka are left behind to stay in Maharloka. They retain their body for a Kalpa.

---

1. That is the difference between a liberated soul and Brahmā; an echo of *Brahma Sūtra* IV. 4. 17-18.

2. Cf. the concept of *Brahma-nirvāṇa* in BG V. 24-26.

40. There are classes of beings from Gandharvas to Piśācas, Brāhmaṇas and other human beings, animals and birds, the immobile ones and reptiles.

41. While they (the beings mentioned in v. 40) stand there as the residents of the surface of the earth, at that time the thousand rays that emanate from the sun (getting combined and concentrated) become seven rays of the sun and each ray (out of those seven rays) becomes a sun.

42. Rising up gradually, they burn the three worlds, mobile and immobile beings, rivers and all mountains. They had already been dried up by drought and are now burnt by the suns.

43. Then all these—the mobile and immobile, both the pious and impious who are burnt by the rays of the sun, settle down and rest.

44-45. At the end of the sinful age, they go away with their bodies burnt. But they are not freed from bodies derived from their pious or impious activities. They are united with the people of Jana Loka having the same form as they have. Abounding in purity they attain mental perfection.

46. Having stayed there for the period of the night of Brahmā of unmanifest birth, they are born again as the mental sons of Brahmā, at the beginning of the creation (of the world).

47-48. When the residents of the three worlds thus function in Janaloka, and the three worlds are burnt down by the seven suns, when the earth is flooded with rain, when all abodes are scattered, the oceans, clouds and the earthly waters form a vast watery mass called '*Salila*'[1].

49. It (water) followed (one flood after another). When that enormous flood of water covered the earth (in one vast sheet of water) it is called *Arṇava* (sea).

50. The word (root)√*bhā* is used in the sense of spreading (*vyāpti*) and shining (*dipti*), as water shines and spreads. It floods on all sides and hence water is known as *Aṁbhas*.

51. The root√*Tan* means 'to cover', 'to expand.' Since waters

1. Verses 47-52 give the popular etymologies of *salila, arṇava, ambhas, tanu* and *nārā*. Cf. Bd. P. I. 2. 6. 51-56 for similar derivation of these words.

cover up the earth completely on all sides and expand, they are known as *Tanus*.

52. The learned say that the particle '*Aram*' denotes quickness. In the vast ocean the waters are not quick. (Hence) they are called '*Nārās*'.

53-55. At the end of a thousand Yugas, when Brahmā's day comes to an end, when, during the night everything is covered up with water, when the earth destroyed by the fire disappears in water, when the wind is calm and motionless, and darkness spreads around and there is no ray of light, Brahmā, the Lord Puruṣa who presides over all these, desires to make the apportionment of this world once again.

56. When the mobile and immobile beings are destroyed and lost in that vast ocean, Brahmā becomes (a god) endowed with a thousand i.e. innumerable feet and thousand eyes.

57. The thousand-headed Puruṣa, of golden complexion, who is beyond the ken of senses, who is Brahmā called Nārāyaṇa, goes to sleep in the water.

58. When he wakes up due to the predominance of Sattva guṇa, he sees the world a void. They cite this verse about Nārāyaṇa.

59. Waters are called Nārā. We have thus heard that the name of waters is *Tanus*. He stays there with waters coming upto his umbilicus. So he is called Nārāyaṇa.

60. In the Vedas he is called the first patriarch, the Puruṣa with good mind, thousand (i.e. inumerable) heads, thousand feet, thousand eyes, thousand faces, thousand hands[1] and devouring thousands.

61. He has the colour of *Āditya* (sun). He is the protector of the world. He is the single unprecedented and the first overpowerer of the mighty. He is the golden-wombed Puruṣa. He is the noble soul who is beyond darkness.

62. At the beginning of the Kalpas, *Rajas* predominates in him. He becomes Brahmā and creates the subjects. At the end of the Kalpas, *Tamas* predominates in him. He becomes Kāla and swallows them again.

---

1. Cf. the Puruṣa Sūkta (RV X. 90)

63. He who is designated as Nārāyaṇa with the Sattva Guṇa predominant, sleeps in the vast ocean. Dividing himself into three forms, he abides in the three worlds.

64-65. Through the three forms he creates, surveys and swallows them. When the mobile and immobile world is destroyed in that vast ocean, at the end of thousand sets of four Yugas, when everything is covered up with water all round, Brahmā called Nārāyaṇa sleeps in the dark, deep waters.

66. The great sages see from Maharloka, Kāla who, after swallowing four types of creation, is slumbering in the great (cosmic) ocean during the night of Brahmā.

67. The great sages like Bhṛgu and others as in seven Kalpas, so in this Kalpa, surrounded this immense being. That immense being is surrounded by the seven sages Bhṛgu and others.

68. The word '*Ṛṣi*' is derived from the root √*Ṛṣ*, 'to go'.[1] They existed from the beginning hence they are called *Ṛṣis*. The word *Mahat* indicates 'greatness'. Because they are great, they are called *Maharṣis*.

69. The sleeping Kāla was then observed by them while staying in Maharloka. In the past Kalpa there were seven sages beginning with Satya.

70. Thus, during these nights of Brahmā that had passed in thousands, the great sages (Satya and others) saw the sleeping Kāla (during the period of his slumber).

71. Brahmā is called Kāla (the destroyer) because at the beginning of a Kalpa, he fashioned fourteen forms of destruction.

72. He creates living beings at the beginning of each Kalpa again and again. He, the great lord, is both manifest and unmanifest. This entire universe is his creation.

73-74. Thus the period of transition between the two Kalpas—the one that is current and the other that has passed—has been described to you briefly. The conditions that existed in previous Kalpas have also been mentioned briefly. Now I shall explain the present Kalpa. Listen to that.

1. A correct etymology.

CHAPTER EIGHT

Four Stages of Life

Sūta said:

1. After spending a period of time equal to a thousand Yugas as his night, he assumes Brahmāhood, at the end of the night, for the purpose of creation.

2. When the mobile and immobile beings had already perished, Brahmā assumed the form of wind and moved about in the water, (enveloped) in darkness.

3-6. When the surface of the earth had been completely covered by the water, when the elements remained undivided and undifferentiated, the self-born lord, surveying everything, moved about like the glowworm at night during the rainy season.[1] Seeking a means for putting it back in position after knowing that the earth is immersed in water, he became enlightened by means of inference (as to the way) of lifting up the earth. He created another body which he recollected (as having been assumed) in the previous Kalpas.

7. On seeing the earth fully engulfed in waters, he entered the waters after assuming the form of a Boar.

8. After lifting up the earth from the waters, he deposited the waters of the oceans in the oceans, of the rivers in the rivers and of the earth on the earth. Then he collected the mountains.

9. When the previous creation was being burnt by the *Saṁvartaka*, fire of dissolution, the mountains lay destroyed and (scattered) all over the earth.

10. In that one vast ocean, the (solidified) waters tossed by wind got collected together due to cold. Wherever they were (thus) stuck (heaped) together, there they became immovable.

11. The mountains are called *Acalas* because they become motionless after being dried up and solidified. Because they have knots and joints they are called *Parvatas*. They are called

1. Cf. *Supra* 6. 7-11. A repetition of verses.

Giris because they were swallowed by waters. They are called *Śiloccayas* because they are collected.[1]

12. Then, after lifting up the earth from within the waters, the Lord established it in its position again and made division in it.

13. In each of its seven continents,[2] he made seven *Varṣas* (sub-continents). He levelled the uneven places and collected the mountains, with (heaps of) rocks.

14. There are forty(?) *Varṣas* in all the continents together. There are as many mountains also stationed at the extremities of the *Varṣas*. They were assembled there at the beginning of creation according to their nature and not otherwise.

15. The seven continents and the (seven) oceans encircle each other. They are in contiguity with each others, surrounding each other naturally.

16. Even at the outset, Brahmā created all these stations, the four worlds, viz. *Bhūḥ* etc., the sun, the moon and planets.

17-19. Formerly at the beginning of this Kalpa[3], Brahmā created the *Sthānins* (presiding deities or occupants of these posts). He created waters, fire, earth, wind, ether, heaven, elysium, quarters, oceans, rivers, mountains, the souls of medicinal herbs, the souls of trees, creepers, units of time, *Lavas*, *Kāṣṭhās*, *Kalās*, *Muhūrtas*, junctions (of night and day or twilight), night, day, fortnight, months, *Ayanas* (transits of the sun), years and yugas.

20. He created separately the abodes as well as the occupants presiding therein (who identified themselves with the

1. These are semantic etymologies i.e. those based on the meaning of the word. The derivations of *acala* or *giri* are understandable but others are doubtful.

2. The *Saṗta-dvīpī* conception (division of the earth into seven continents) has superseded the *Catur-dvīpī* concept(division of the earth into four parts) of old Purāṇas. The figure seven was then popular. Thus the earth is divided into seven continents. Each continent has seven sub-continents; each sub-continent has seven mountain ranges (*Kula Parvatas*), seven big rivers etc. For their description *vide infra* Chapters 40-49.

3. Verses 17 ff. describe the process of re-creation of the Universe. Due to the inexorable law of Karma, every being has to re-start his or her life according to one's Karma in the new Kalpa. There is no automatic *Mokṣa* even after the complete annihilation of the Universe at the end of a Kalpa.

abodes). After creating the 'souls' for these 'posts', he created the (serial) order of Yugas.

21. They are Kṛta, Tretā, Dvāpara and Kali. In the beginning of the Kalpa, during the first Kṛtayuga, he created the subjects (beings).

22. The subjects of the previous ages who have been mentioned to you by me, were burnt by the Saṁvartaka fire then in the Kalpa that was coning to an end.

23. Those who could not reach Tapoloka, had resorted to the Janaloka. They began to function as seeds for the future creation.

24. Abiding there, in the form of seeds for the subsequent creation, they, on being let loose (scattered) serve the purpose of progeny.

25. The subjects, Devas, Pitṛs, sages and Manus are those who accomplish (the four *Puruṣārthas* viz.) virtue (Dharma), wealth (Artha), pleasure (Kāma), and salvation (Mokṣa).

26. Being endowed with Penance thereafter, they fill up (occupy) the stations. As the mental sons of Brahmā, they work as accomplished souls.

27. The created beings who have attained heaven through subversive rites are reborn (repeatedly) in every Yuga.

28. Due to the residue of the fruits of their actions, they become well-known with their souls inclined in that manner. They descend from the Janaloka due to the bondage of the Karmans.

29. It is the intention, the feelings of the mind that should be regarded as the cause, in regard to the activities. The people descend from Janaloka due to their good and bad activities (in their previous lives).

30. They take up different forms of bodies in different wombs (species) from Devas to immobile beings. They are born of one another successively.

31. Being created again and again, they pursue those activities which they had been pursuing before.

32. They pursue violent or non-violent, soft or ruthless, virtuous or evil, truthful or false activities on being urged by those previous innate feelings which appeal to them.

33. Whatever names and forms (these beings have) in the past Kalpa, they mostly receive the same in the future Kalpas.

34. They assume those very names and forms again and again. They are born in the different Kalpas with the same names and forms.

35-36. When Brahmā who was desirous of creation got his creative activity obstructed, He, of truthful contemplation, began to contemplate on the subjects. He created a thousand pairs from his mouth. With the quality of Sattva predominant, they, of good mind, were suitable for the task.

37. He created another thousand pairs from his chest. These had the quality of passion (Rajas) predominant and were fiery and impatient.

38. He created another thousand couples from his thighs. Passion (Rajas) and Ignorance (Tamas) were predominant in them. They were ambitious and aspirant.

39. He created another thousand couples from his feet. They had ignorance (Tamas) predominant in them. They were inglorious and deficient in brilliance.

40-42. The living beings born of these pairs were passionate. Being lustful, they began to copulate with one another. Thenceforward procreation from pairing originated in this Kalpa. Women did not have their menstrual courses month by month. Then they did not conceive, even when copulated. They brought forth pairs of children once at the end of life.

43. They gave birth to crooked offspring (?), when they had desire for death. From that time onward pairing originated in this Kalpa.

44. Even by contemplating once mentally, the subjects had created for them, the five objects of senses such as sound, each of which was of five characteristics in the pure form.[1]

45. In this way the previous creation by god Brahmā was through his mind (mental activity). Those who were born in his race have filled the world.

---

1. Verses 44-63 paint a glowing picture of the Kṛta age. They depict the ideal state of society from Purāṇic point of view—a classless society with perfect equality and full liberty.

46. The people in that age resorted to rivers, lakes, oceans and mountains. The waters in that Yuga were neither too hot nor too cold.

47. They usually took the diet of the juicy food of the earth. They moved about wherever they pleased. They had acquired mental Siddhis.

48. In that Kṛta age, there was neither virtue nor evil. The human beings were non-differentiated. They had equal longevity, happiness and beauty (form).

49. In the beginning of the Kalpa, in the Kṛta age, neither virtue (Dharma) nor evil (Adharma) existed. The people were born with their respective authority and rights.

50. The first Kṛta age consisted of four thousand divine years. They say that the period of transition consisted of four hundred divine years.

51. Even when thousands of human beings spread they had no obstruction, no clash and no order.

52. They had no fixed abode or place of resort. They wandered about mountains and oceans. They were free from sorrow. They had abundant goodness. They were happy in solitude.

53. They moved about as they pleased. They were always joyous in their minds. There were no animals, birds or reptiles then.

54. There were no trees or plants nor hellish beings born of evil. There were neither roots nor fruits nor flowers nor the seasons nor the years.

55. Time was always pleasant when peoples' desires were fulfilled. There were no extremes in heat or cold. Whatever object they desired in their minds was available everywhere and at all times.

56. Whatever juices they meditated upon, grew up from the earth. Their achievements were conducive to strength, fair complexion and destructive of ailments.

57. With their bodies requiring no decoration (or beautification), the subjects had eternal youth. Pairs of children were born from their pure mental conception.

58. They were born alike and they died together. They had similar forms and features. At that time, there was truth, absence of greed, forbearance, contentment, happiness and restraint.

59. They had no distinguishing marks in their forms and features, longevity, conduct and activity. Their actions were spontaneous and voluntary, without the intercession of intellect.

60. In the Kṛtayuga, there was no inclination towards performance of good or evil actions. There was no classification of castes or differentiation in stages of life. Nor was there intermixture of castes.

61. In their mutual dealings they behaved without being impelled by desire or hatred. All of them, had equal forms, features and longevity. There was neither superior nor inferior class of people.

62. Only those who were mostly happy and devoid of sorrow were born in the Kṛta Yuga. They were highly powerful, very strong and perpetually delighted in the mind.

63. They had neither gain nor loss; neither friends nor foes; neither likes nor dislikes, since they were devoid of desires. The objects functioned according to their minds. They neither desired to possess nor favoured one another.

64. It has been said that in the Kṛta age meditation was the highest; in Tretā it was knowledge; in Dvāpara it was sacrifice, while charity (donation) is excellent in Kali age.

65. In accordance with practice obtaining in the different ages, goodness (Sattva) predominates in Kṛta, passion (Rajas) in Tretā, passion (Rajas) and Ignorance (Tamas) in Dvāpara and only ignorance (Tamas) in the Kali Yuga.

66. As for the duration of Kṛta age, know that four thousand divine years constitute its duration.

67. The duration of eight hundred divine years constitutes its two junctions (interim periods). Then the people had longevity and suffered no pain or adversity.

68. In the Kṛta age, when the interim period (between

Kṛta and Tretā) passes off, only one fourth of the entire yuga-dharma (characterising the Kṛta age) remains.

69. When the period of junction is over at the end of the age,[1] the Dharma of the period of junction remains but one-fourth. When the Kṛta age lapses completely without any remnant, the spiritual achievement (of Kṛta age) too vanishes.

70. When the mental *Siddhi* (of Kṛta age) is lost, another comes into being in the Tretā Yuga.

71. The eight mental perfections in the beginning of the creation, mentioned by me, decline gradually and are lost.

72. In the beginning of the Kalpa, in the Kṛta age, this attainment is only mental. In all the Manvantaras in accordance with the division of the four Yugas, the attainment is due to the holy rites, due to the pursuit of the conduct of life of the respective castes and stages of life.

73. When the Kṛta age passes off thus, one-fourth of the Dharma is lost in the first junction, another one-fourth during the lapse of the main Yuga and a third one-fourth in the later junction. Thus three fourth of the power of penance, strength and longevity gets lost.

74-76. O excellent sages, when a portion of Kṛta has lapsed, then in the Tretā, another age, a portion of Kṛta remains. When that portion has also lapsed at the advent of Tretā in the beginning of Kalpa, the attainments of the remaining subjects become defunct due to efflux of time and not due to any other reason. When one attainment (Siddhi) disappears another takes its place.

77. When water becomes subtle, cloud is formed. The creation of rain showers functions through the thundering clouds.[2]

78. When the surface of the earth is drenched with rain

1. Verses 69-76 describe the transition between Kṛta and Tretā ages.

2. Verses 77-88 show that rain-showers, human dependance on trees (for means of subsistence, clothes, ornaments) and growing cupidity were the special features of Tretā. It is a period when men gave up their nomadic habits and began to build shelters. These settlements further developed into hamlets, villages and towns.

only once, the trees begin to manifest themselves for their abodes.

79. All the necessary objects of enjoyments emanated from them (the trees). In the beginning of Tretā, people subsisted on them (i.e. the products of trees).

80. Then after the lapse of a long time, due to their own perversity the emotions of lust and greed possessed them suddenly.

81. The menstrual flow that used to take place only at the end of life in the case of women then (in Kṛta Yuga), ceased to be so due to the power of the (new, Tretā) Yuga.

82. In their case, the menstruation began to take place every month. As a consequence thereof, they indulged in copulation the same way.

83. When the flow took this turn and when they copulated every month, the untimely menstrual flow and conception began to happen.

84. On account of their perversity and due to what was destined to happen in course of time, all the trees in their house (or which were like their houses) perished.

85. When these were destroyed, the people became excited and agitated in all their senses. They, of truthful thought, began to meditate on that mental Siddhi.

86. The trees manifested in their houses again. They yielded clothes, fruits and ornaments.

87. Invigorating honey without the bees, possessing sweet taste, scent and colour, exuded in them in every leafcup.

88. They maintained themselves with that honey at the beginning of the Tretā age. They were delighted and contented with that Siddhi. They were free from ailments.

89. As time elapsed, they were overcome with greed once again. They forcibly took possession of trees and extracted from them the nectar (of flowers) and honey.

90. Due to this misdemeanor committed by the people, the wish-yielding trees perished at some places along with honey.

91. When the period of junction remained but little, due to the passage of time, there arose extremes of climate (e.g. scorching heat and extreme cold).

92. They were terribly distressed by the extremes of biting winds and scorching sunshine. Being afflicted by these they made shelters.

93. Warding off *Dvandvas* (pairs of opposites) of heat and cold, they resorted to abodes. Formerly, they had been roaming about as they pleased, without a fixed habitation.

94. Now according to circumstances and their liking, they stayed in abodes, wildernesses, deserts, deep chasms, on hills, mountains or riversides. They resorted to fortresses, dry soils and waste lands with perpetual supply of water.

95. In order to ward off heat and cold, they made habitations in level and rugged lands in accordance with the availability and their taste.

96. Then they set up hamlets, villages and towns with due alignment and built harems too.

97-98. The measure of their length and diameter was fixed by them.[1] They built houses on this basis just as they thought fit. A unit was termed *Pradeśa*—a distance between the (extended) thumb and the (outstretched) forefinger. The distance between the thumb and the middle finger (when both are stretched) was *Tāla* and that between the thumb and the ring figer was *Gokarṇa*.

99. The distance between the thumb and the little finger (when both are stretched) was called *Vitasti*. It contained

1. Verses 97-102 give the units of measurement of distance as follows : The first unit '*Aṅgula*' means 'Finger-breadth'

12 Aṅgulas	=	1 Vitasti
21 Aṅgulas	=	1 Ratni
24 Aṅgulas	=	1 Hasta
2 Ratnis or 42 Aṅgulas 4 Hastas or 2 Nālikās	=	1 Kiṣku 1 Dhanus or Daṇḍa
2000 Dhanus or Daṇḍas	=	1 Gavyūti
8000 Dhanus or Daṇḍas	=	1 Yojana

twelve *Aṅgulas* (finger-breadths). Twenty-one *Aṅgulas* made one *Ratni* (the distance between the elbow and the closed fist).

100. Twenty-four *Aṅgulas* made one *Hasta* (hand). Two *Ratnis* or forty-two *Aṅgulas* made one *Kiṣku*.

101. Four *Hastas* or two *Nālikās* made one *Dhanus* or *Daṇḍa*. Two thousand *Dhanus* or *Daṇḍas* made one *Gavyūti*.

102. Eight thousand *Dhanus* constituted a *Yojana*. It is on the basis of the Yojana calculation that the sites were fixed then.

103. Of the four types of fortifications, three occur naturally. The fourth kind of fortress is artificial. I shall describe the mode of its construction.[1]

104. Huge mansions, lofty ramparts and fort-walls are built around. There is a principal gate called *Svastika* and there is a gynaeceum in which maidens are kept (*Kumāripura*).

105. The (main) gate is close to a moat with flowing water current. The width of the moat is the best if (it is) eight or ten hands. Others opine that nine or eight hands (in width) is the best.

106-107. (I shall mention the dimensions) of hamlets, cities and villages and three types of forts, viz. mountains, waters (rivers) and constructed (artificially by) men. The diameter shall be half a Yojana. Its length should be one and one-eighth of a Yojana.

108-109. A city that extends to the east or north is the most excellent.[2] Its extent shall be half or one-fourth of the maximum length. It should be divided into a hypotenuse and segments and be laid out in the shape of a fan.* A city planned circularly or merely lengthwise (with little breadth) or deficient in (amenities) is not recommendable. A city set up in the form of a square with straight rows of houses in all the eight quarters is desirable.

---

1. Verses 103-107 refer to construction of forts.

2. Verses 108-117 explain the ancient ideas of town (and village) planning. The instructions about construction of roads are interesting. But crudeness or elementary nature of town planning or civil engineering shows that they are earlier than *Kauṭ. Artha Śāstra*.

3. The reading *Vyajana* from Bd. P. I. 2. 7. 107 is accepted as '*Vyañjana*', the reading here is obscure.

110. The minimum width of a dwelling is twenty-four *Hastas* and the maximum is eight hundred *Hastas*. But they praise a middle one which is neither too narrow nor too wide.

111. Important dwellings shall be constructed in a site eight hundred *Kiṣkus* wide. A hamlet has half the diameter of the city and a village is bigger than that.

112. A hamlet shall be situated a *Yojana* away from a city and a village shall be half a *Yojana* away from a hamlet. Two *Krośas* is the maximum boundary. The boundary of a field is four *Dhanus*.

113. The highway shall be twenty *Dhanus* wide. The main road in the village shall also be twenty *Dhanus* wide. But the road in the border-land shall be only ten *Dhanus* wide.

114. The main road shall be excellent if it is ten *Dhanus* wide. The movement of the traffic of people (pedestrians), horses, elephants and chariots should be without hindrance.

115. Branch roads should be four *Dhanus* wide. The roads connecting dwelling houses and side roads shall be two *Dhanus* wide.

116. The "bell-road", i.e. the main road in a village, should be four steps wide; the space between two dwellings shall consists of three steps or paces. The side roads shall be half a pace wide. The way to the sacrificial room shall be a pace wide.

117. The dust-bin shall be a pace wide. The gutters on either side of the road shall be a pace wide. They made a lay-out and built houses afterwards.

118. Thinking and recollecting again and again they began to grow trees in the places in which they stood formerly.

119. The trees had branches going upwards and apreading around. They never receded. In the same way, the branches spread in all directions (lit. obliquely) in former times.

120. They observed carefully how the branches had gone. They constructed the apartments in accordance with the growth of the branches (*śākhās*).[1] Hence they had been called *Śālās*.

1. Verses120-122. *Śāla* trees played an important part in construction of houses. Note the popular etymology of *Śālā*, 'an apartment' and *Prāsāda*, 'a mansion'.

121. Thus *Śālās* (apartments) became well known from branches; so also the abodes. Hence they are remembered as '*Śālās*'. Thus is explained their state of being Śālās (*Śālātva*).

122. The mind is delighted in them. They delight the mind. Hence the houses, halls and mansions are duly termed as *prāsādas*.

123. After warding off the *Dvandvas* (the pairs of mutual opposites, viz. heat and cold), they began to think of the means of their sustenance (such as agriculture). When the Kalpa-trees had perished along with the honey, they were overwhelmed by hunger and thirst and became bewildered and dejected.

124. Thereafter, in the Tretā age, a *Siddhi* (accomplishment) appeared before them. The means of agriculture that could meet their ends came as they desired.[1]

125. The waters showered (from the sky) which flowed downwards became *srotas* (river, stream). And waters flowing in ditches or excavated places are known as *Nimnagās* (down flowing).

126-127. Thus in the second creation through rain, the rivers came into being. What little of water remained on the surface of the earth thereafter, became mixed with earth and grew into plants and herbs. Plants began to put forth flowers, fruits and roots.

128. Fourteen kinds of trees and bushes which grew up in the villages and forests without ploughing or burning, put forth seasonal flowers and fruit.

129. It was in the Tretā age that vegetation manifested first and the medicinal plants appeared. The people in the Tretā age maintained themselves on the products of agriculture.

130. Then again all of them were overwhelmed with lust and greed as a result of unavoidable fate or due to the Tretā age.

---

1. Verses 124-137 show that in the Tretā Age man developed agriculture and for division of labour the society was divided into different Varṇas (Classes). The credit of introducing Agriculture is given to Brahmā.

131. They then forcibly occupied the rivers, fields, mountains, trees, clusters and medicinal plants.

132. While describing the *Prākṛta Sarga*, I have spoken about the accomplished souls. These were born as human beings according to Brahmā's plan.

133. They were quiescent, powerful, active and distressed. Then, thus functioning they were born again in the Tretā age.

134. Urged by the auspicious and inauspicious activities of the previous births they were born as Brāhmaṇas, Kṣatriyas, Vaiśyas, Śūdras and Dasyus.

135-137. Those who were truthful, non-violent, devoid of greed and self-controlled lived therein. There were others deficient in brilliance, who served these in return for the gifts they received from them. Thus there was mutual dependence. Due to their fault, the medicinal plants disappeared while they were looking on helplessly. They vanished as sand particles in handfuls.

138. The earth, due to the power of the Yuga, swallowed the fourteen kinds of plants both in villages and forests—the plants which bore fruit through flowers and flowers with leaves.

139. When these were destroyed, the people became bewildered. On being overwhelmed by hunger they approached Lord Svayaṁbhū, Prajāpati.

140-141. (It was) at the beginning of Tretā Yuga. The self-born lord Brahmā, knowing that they wanted the means of sustenance, considered what was proper by observing directly. Realising that the medicinal plants were swallowed by the earth he milked them out again (from the earth).[1]

142. Making mount Meru as the calf, he milked the earth. The earth-cow yielded the seeds on its surface.

---

1. This is the Purāṇic development of the ancient Vedic concept of milking the Virāj cow recorded in AV VIII, Sūkta 10. Purāṇa-writers used this motif later with Lord Brahmā, King Pṛthu as the milkers. In Mt. P. 10. 25 Vararuci became the milker and the science of Dramaturgy (*Nāṭya Veda*) was the milk.

143. The seeds grew into wild and cultivated plants yielding ripe fruits. They comprised seventeen classes.

144-146. Rice, barley, wheat, the minute gingelly seeds, the *Priyaṅgus*, *Udāras*, *Kārūṣas*, *Tinakas* (different kinds of pulse etc.), black gram, green gram, *Masūras* (a pulse), *Niṣpāvas*, horse grams, *Āḍhakis* (the pulse *cajanus Indicus spreng*), and other grams. These are the seventeen varieties of rural medicinal plants (*Grāmya oṣadhi*). Then there are fourteen kinds of plants used in sacrifices.

147. They are: rice, barley, black gram, wheat, *aṇus* (*panicum Miliaceum*), gingelly seeds, *Priyaṅgu* the seventh among them and horse-gram the eighth.

148-149. *Śyāmākas* (a variety of rice), *Nivāras* (another variety of rice), *Jartilas* (wild sesamum), *Gavedhukas*, *Kuruvindas* (a kind of barley), *Veṇuyavas* (bamboo seeds) and *Markaṭakas* (a species of grain)—these are the fourteen varieties of wild and cultivated plants. They were originally produced in the beginning of the Tretā age.

150. All these medicinal plants, trees, hedges, creepers and grasses grew in villages and forests without the fields being ploughed.

151. The seeds that were milked from the earth at the outset by the self-born god Brahmā grew into various fruits and flowers.

152-153. They grew into plants yielding seasonal flowers and fruits. When they let go (the seasonal product once) they did not grow again. The self-born Brahmā then devised for the livelihood of the people by means of agriculture.

154. From that time onwards the plants began to grow on being (ploughed and) cultivated. Thus when agriculture came into vogue the self-born lord established conventions for their mutual help.[1]

155. Those who were masters (powerful ones) had (to follow) prescribed conventions and established them (as) Kṣattriyas for the protection of others.

---

1. Verses 154-164 show the evolution of Varṇas or Classes in an agrarian society and the duties of each class. Verses 166-168 state the region to which pious members of these classes go.

156. Those who worship (or respect or obey) those (Kṣatriyas) are free from fear. Those who averred that Brahman is the truth and spoke according to facts (the truth) are Brāhmaṇas.

157. Those who were weak were assigned the duty of Vaiśyas. They became the cultivators of the soil. Formerly they used to destroy things in the earth. They are called Vaiśyas as they maintain their livelihood by soil and cultivation.

158. Those who were engaged in serving others, those who were lustreless and deficient in virility he called Śūdras because they bewailed their lot, were miserable and adopted crooked ways.

159. Lord Brahmā assigned their duties and virtues when the system of castes was thus established.

160. Out of delusion the people did not follow their duties. Not observing the (special) duties of castes, they clashed mutually.

161. On realising that precisely, lord Brahmā ordered strength, punishment and warfare as the means of sustenance for the Kṣatriyas.

162. The lord assigned these as the duties of Brāhmaṇas: presiding over sacrifice, teaching of the Vedas and the acceptance of monetary gifts.

163. The lord assigned breeding of cattle, trading and agriculture to the Vaiśyas. He made the practice of arts and crafts as means of livelihood and service the duties of Śūdras.

164. The duties common to the three classes—Brāhmaṇas Kṣatriyas and Vaiśyas include the performance of sacrifice, study of the Vedas and making gifts.

165. After prescribing the holy rites and duties as the means of livelihood, the lord gave them suitable regions in the other worlds achievable by means of *Siddhi.*

166. The region of the Brāhmaṇas who performed their sacred rites and duties is the world of Prajāpati. The world of Indra is the region for Kṣatriyas who flee not in battle.

167. The region of Maruts is assigned to Vaiśyas who maintain themselves as per their (ordained) duties. To the Śūdras who abide by their duty of rendering service, the region of Gandharvas is assigned.

168. These are the regions for different castes who observe their prescribed duties. When the castes were thus stabilised, he established the *Āśramas*.

169. Formerly, the Lord established the four *Āśramas*, viz. Brahmacārin (the religious student), Gṛhastha (the householder), Vānaprastha (the recluse) and Bhikṣuka (the ascetic mendicant).

170. Those who do not practise the duties assigned to their caste, they say, incurred the loss of the (fruit of) holy rites even if they maintained the activities of the *Āśramas*.

171. Brahmā established these *Āśramas* by name.[1] In order to guide them, he spoke to them about their duties, manners, restraints and observances.

172. The *Āśrama* of the householder is common to all the four castes. This stage is the very basis and support of the other three *Āśramas*. I shall explain it in order along with the observances and restraints.

173. The following are briefly the religious duties of the householders: Marriage, maintenance of the sacred fire, hospitality to guests, performance of sacrifices and continuation of the race (procreation of children).

174. The characteristic duties of a Brahmacārin are: (bearing) the staff, wearing the girdle (of *muñja* grass), sleeping on the bare ground, having matted hair, service to the preceptor and begging alms.

175. Wearing of bark garments, leaves or deer skin, diet of grains, roots, fruits or herbs (found in the forest), bathing at dawn and dusk and performing sacrifice are the characteristics of a forest-dweller.

176-177. Begging when the sound of pestles dies down, non-stealing, purity, non-negligence, refraining from sexual intercourse, mercy towards (all) beings, forebearance, absence of anger (control of temper), service to preceptors and the tenth truthfulness—This code of conduct of ten characteristics has been prescribed by the self-born god (Brahmā).

---

1. Verses 171-181 state the duties of different stages (*Āśramas*) in life. The importance of householdership (*Gṛhasthāśrama*) is duly recognised.

178. Five (of the above) are the main observances and five subsidiaries which constitute the sacred rites of the mendicant ascetic. Purity in the conduct of life, restraints, purity of the mind, counteraction of evil deeds and perfect vision—these are the five subsidiary sacred rites.

179. They say that the holy course of conduct (*dharma*) of a man of renunciation consists of meditation (samādhi), control of the mind and of the sense-organs, silence, taking of food voluntarily offered by others and endeavour for liberation (from saṁsāra).

180-181. All these stages of life have been declared by Brahmā himself for the achievement of ultimate good. Truthfulness, straightforwardness, austerities, forbearance, Yogic sacrifice preceded by control of senses, study of the Vedas and their ancillaries, sacrifices, holy observances and restraints do not bear fruit if there is fault in emotions and if one is defiled.

182. If a person is defiled in inner emotions, all his external actions never bear fruit even if he puts in his utmost effort.

183. Even if a person donates all his possessions but with an impious inner soul, he shall not be virtuous. Piety is the true cause of perfection.

184. It is said that the region attained by the persons who abide by this Dharma is that of the Devas, Pitṛs, sages and Manus.

185. There are eighty-eight thousand sages of sublimated sexuality. It is their region that is assigned to those who live with their teachers.

186. The sphere of the seven sages is the abode of heaven-dwellers. Prājāpatya (the region of Prajāpati) is the sphere of householders. The region of Brahmā is the abode for Sannyāsins. The region of immortality is the abode for the Yogins. There is no abode for those who have mental worries.

187-188. These are the regions for the people of different stages of life who abide by their allotted duties. The four paths called Devayāna have been made by Brahmā,[1] the controller of

1. Verses 187-189 : Purāṇic concept of Devayāna and Pitṛyāna paths after death.

the worlds in the first Manvantara on the earth. These paths lead to the region of Devas. The sun is remembered as the doorway to these paths.

189-190. Similarly the moon is the doorway to Pitṛyāna (the path of the Pitṛs). When these divisions of castes and stages of life were made but when the people did not abide by their injunctions, he evolved another mental creation from his own body which was like himself.

191. When the first Tretā age reached the middle period, gradually he began to create another mind-born progeny.

192. Then the lord created beings with (predominant) Sattva and Rajas *guṇas*. They were competent to accomplish virtue, love, wealth, liberation and their means of livelihood.

193. He created Devas, Pitṛs, sages and Manus (i.e. human beings) who were suitable for the Yuga. They have procreated these subjects as per Dharma.

194. When the subjects abided by the Dharma prescribed by the self-born lord (Brahmā) he meditated on the, mind-born beings of different forms.

195. The persons who have been mentioned to you by me, as having resorted to Janaloka became *devas* and other subjects here, when the (previous) Kalpa passed away.

196-198. While he meditated, the subjects appeared before him for creation. In the order of the Manvantaras, they are considered the first or the last. They are imbued with the knowledge of discrimination, adjuncts and topics. Endowed with efficient and inefficient activities, they are restrained by the residue of the fruit of their actions. They attain the state of *devas*, *Asuras*, *Pitṛs*, animals, birds, reptiles, trees, hellish beings and insects. He created them to be subservient to himself and his subjects.

CHAPTER NINE

Creation of Devas and Others

Sūta said :

1. Even as he was meditating, mental progeny were born of him along with those causes and effects arising out of his body. There emerged from the limbs of that intelligent Being *Kṣetra-jñas* (individual souls).

2. Then, desirous of procreating the group of four living entities, Devas, Asuras, Pitṛs, and mankind, he applied himself in the water.[1]

3. Then as the self-born god Brahmā engaged himself in meditation on creation, exertion appeared on the part of the creator.

4. Then, from his loins, the Asuras were born at the outset. O Brāhmaṇas, the word *Asu* means 'the Vital Breath'. Born of that, they were called *Asuras*.[2]

5. He abandoned that body from which Asuras were created; the body so abandoned by him became night immediately as it (the abandoned body) was dominated by *Tamas*.

---

1. Verses 2-22 describe the creation of four entities of living beings, viz. Asuras, Devas, Pitṛs and human beings from various parts of god Brahmā's body at different periods, with the predominant *guṇas* of each category. They may be tabulated as follows:

Creation	*The Source : part of Brahmā's body*	*The transformation of discarded body*	*Dominant Guṇa*
1. Asuras	Loins and vital breath	Night	*Tamas*
2. Devas	Shining face	Day	Predominant *Sattva*
3. Pitṛs	Sides	Evening (Juncture of day and night)	Pure *Sattva*
4. Human beings	Mind	Moon light (but dawn)	*Rajas*

2. Vide v. 21 below. As MW 121-a notes, 'In later SK., *Sura* 'a god' has been formed from *asura* like *sita* is from *asita*'.

6. As it (the abandoned body) was dominated by Tamas, the night consisting of three watches was full of darkness. Hence the progeny of the self-born lord were enveloped by darkness at night.

7. After creating the Asuras, the lord took up another body of unmanifest nature abounding in Sattva. The lord united himself with it. While engaged with it, they say, he felt pleasure.

8. Then Devas were born from his shining face. They were so called because they were born of his refulgent face.

9. The root *√Div* means[1] 'to play'. Devas were so called because they were born of his playful (shining) body.

10. After creating Devas, the lord took up another body having only the Sāttvic attribute.

11. The lord meditated upon those sons considering them like father and created the father-like Manes from his two sides, between the juncture of day and night. Hence Pitṛs are Devas and their fatherhood[2] is due to that.

12. He abandoned the body after creating the Pitṛs. As soon as he abandoned the body, it became evening.

13. Hence day is for Devas; night is meant for the Asuras; the body (meant for) Pitṛs, evening which is between the two, is held to be important.

14. Hence Devas, Asuras, all the sages and Manus, engaged in Yogic communion, worship the middle body (i.e. the twilight time) of Brahmā.

15. Then Brahmā took up another body again. The Lord created beings with his mind, in that body consisting of Rajas.

16. Then he created mentally sons from his mind which was dominated by Rajas *guṇa*. Hence the subjects were born of his mind.

17. Having seen the subjects, he again cast off his body. The body so abandoned by him immediately became the moonlight.

---

1. Correct etymology—*√div* means both 'to play' and 'to shine'.
2. *Putratvam* would mean "His being a son unto them".

18-19. Hence the people are delighted when the moonlight comes out (and spreads). Thus these bodies abandoned by the lord instantly became night and day, the twilight and the moonlight. The three, viz. the moonlight, twilight as well as the day consist solely of the *Sattva guṇa*. The night comprises the nature of *Tamas* only; hence it has three watches.

20. Hence Devas created from the mouth are possessed of shining traits of the day and full of delight. Since they were born during the day, they are very powerful by day.

21. Since the lord created the Asuras at night from the loins of his body, through vital breath, the night-born Asuras wield unbearable prowess during the night.

22. These alone function as the causes for the creation of Devas, Asuras, Pitṛs and human beings in the past and future Manvantaras.

23. The moonlight, the night, the day and the twilight, these four shine when illuminated. The word √*bhā* means 'to spread' and 'to shine'.[1] So say the wise scholars. The root √*bhā* is used in the sense of spreading and shining.

24. After seeing (creating?) waters, the Lord created Devas, Dānavas, human beings, Pitṛs and his other divinities.

25. After casting off that body entirely, he created another form mostly constituted of Rajas and Tamas and united himself with it.

26. Feeling hunger and thirst in darkness, he created another body. The hungry creature created by him attempted to take (possess) the waters.

27-28. Some among them declared, "We shall protect these waters". They are known as *Rākṣasas* in the world. They are wrathful souls and night-walkers. Those among them who delightedly said to one another, "We shall destroy the waters" became, due to that activity, Yakṣas and Guhyakas. They were cruel in their actions.

29. The root √*rakṣa* is considered to have the sense of protection. The root √*kṣi* is used in the sense of destroying.[2]

1. Verses 23-24 suggest the derivation of *aṁbhas* 'water' from √*bhā*.
2. Verses 27-29 give the Purāṇic etymology of '*Rākṣasa*' and '*Yakṣa*'.

30-31. On seeing them with displeasure, the hairs of that intelligent one withered. But due to heat and cold, they climbed up the Lord. As the *Vyālas* (*Vālas*—hairs) which were dropped down from my head crawled up, they became known as *Vyālas* and as they dropped down (*hīnatvāt*), they (the serpents) are called *Ahis*.[1]

32. As they move footlessly (without foot), they are *pannagas* and they are *sarpas* as they crawl. Their abode is below in the earth under the sun and the moon.

33. The excessively terrible fiery foetus, born of his anger, entered those beings of poisonous nature—serpents who were born along with them.

34. On seeing the serpents, he became angry and out of anger he created beings of furious nature. They were very fierce goblins whose diet is flesh and who were reddish-brown in colour.

35. They were remembered as *Bhūtas* as they came into existence.[2] They were called *Piśācas* because they ate flesh. Even as he was singing words, the Gandharvas were born.

36. The root √*dhay* means 'to drink'.[3] Since they were born from drinking the (musical) words, they are known as Gandharvas.

37. When these eight classes of divine beings were created, the lord from his bodily energy created birds out of his own free will.

38. Covering up those *chandas* (wilful acts) and the birds by his age (?) and seeing them void, he created groups of winged creatures.

39. He created goats from his mouth, birds from his chest, kine from his belly and sides.

40. From his feet he created horses, elephants, Sarabhas, Gavayas, deer, camels, mules and other animals of various kinds.

---

1. Some more Purāṇic derivations : *Vyāla*<*Vāla* —'hair'; *ahi*<√*hi* but Apte derives from √*han* 'to kill ! *Hindi-Sk. Kośa* p. 134.

2. Verses 35-36 derive the words '*Bhūta*','*Piśāca*' and '*Gandharva*' from the functions they carry out.

3. *yātrarthe* in the text is incorrect. A. reads '*pānārthe*', so in Bd. P. I 2. 8. 41.

41-42. Plants or trees, fruits, and roots were born of his hair. After creating the cattle and plants thus, the lord applied himself to sacrifice. It was in the beginning of the Kalpa, in the Tretā age. Cow, goat, man,[1] sheep, horse, mule and donkey—they call these rural domestic animals. Now know about the wild animals.

43. Beasts of prey, cloven-hoofed animals, elephants, monkeys, birds constituting the fifth and the animals, mice—these were created. The seventh (in the series) were reptiles.

44. From his front mouth[2] he created the metre Gāyatrī, Varuṇa[3], *Trivṛt*[4], Soma, *Rathantara*[5], and the Agniṣṭoma among the sacrifices.

45. From his southern mouth he created the sacred hymns of (Yajurveda?), *Triṣṭubh* metre, the fifteenth *stoma*, the *Bṛhat-sāman*, and the Uktha verses.

46. From his western mouth he created the Sāman hymns, *Jagatī* metre, the fifteen hymns of praise, Vairūpya Sāman and Atirātra[6] rite.

47. From his northern mouth he created twenty-first (*stoma* hymn), the Atharvan, the Āptoryāman,[7] Anuṣṭhubh and Virāj metres.

48. In the beginning of the Kalpa, the lord created lightnings, thunderbolts, clouds, red-coloured rainbows and birds.

---

1. It seems to be the social memory of ancient human sacrifices that man is included in the list of 'domestic animals'.

2. Verses 44-47 state the creation of Vedic literature, Vedic meters and special hymns and sacrifices from the different faces of Brahmā.

3. Bd. P. I. 2. 8. 50 reads *ṛcam* (the *Ṛgveda*).

4. *Trivṛt-Soma*—a threefold *stoma* in which at first, a set of the first three verses—*Tṛcā* of RV. IX. 11 are first sung together, then the second and then the third set is sung.

5. The verses to be sung according to Sāma-music are RV VII.32. 22-23, *abhi tvā Śūra*, SV. 1. 233 (*Vedic Concordance*).

6. *Atirātra* is a form of Soma-sacrifice.

7. *Āptoryāma* is an amplification of *Atirātra* sacrifice. According to *Tāṇḍya Br.* XX. 3. 4-5, it is so called as its performance secures whatever one desires.

49. As the patriarch Brahmā created the progeny, living beings high and low were born of his limbs.

50. After creating the four classes of beings—Devas, Asuras, Pitṛs, and mankind, he next created the mobile and immobile beings.

51. He created Yakṣas, Piśācas, Gandharvas, groups or families of Apsaras-s, human beings, Kinnaras, Rākṣasas, birds, cattle, wild animals and snakes.

52. Whether changing or unchanging, stationary of mobile, these beings created and re-created, adopted those activities which they had in the previous creation.[1]

53. Violent or non-violent, soft or cruel, virtuous or evil, true or false—all these things are adopted by them as they appeal to them.

54. It is the creator who ordained diversity of forms in the great elements and their allotment to different physical bodies and the objects of different senses.

55. Some say that it is human effort and others say it is the *karma*, while still others, fatalist Brāhmaṇas, call it the destiny that decides the nature of beings.

56. Human activity and divine dispensation are decided by the nature of fruit. In fact either of the two alone does not suffice. They are inseparable from each other. Neither one is superior to the other. Neither one alone nor the two separately or collectively.

57. Persons of even vision abiding by Sattva say that the attainment of objects is due to their activities.

It is only through the words of the Vedas that the great Lord created the names and forms of living beings and the development of those that are already created.

58. He assigns names to the sages, the visions belonging to Devas and to other things that were brought forth at the end of the night.

59. Just as the indications and forms forboding the advent of seasons recur at their appropriate times, so also in the Yugas

1. The inexorable law of Karma is advocated in vv. 52-56, for destiny or *daiva* is the Karma of a previous birth.

the same creation appears again and again.

60. The beings of such types created by resorting to his mental power (*mānasi siddhi*) by god Brahmā born of the unmanifest, are seen manifestly at the end of (god Brahmā's) night.

61-63. Thus the living beings, the mobile and immobile came into being. But the progeny created by him did not multiply. He created some other mind-born sons equal to himself. These are known as Bhṛgu, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, Aṅgiras, Marīci, Dakṣa, Atri and Vasiṣṭha. They are known in the Purāṇas as nine Brahmās. These are propounders of the Vedas and are identical with Brahmā himself.

64. Then Brahmā, the ancestor of ancients, created Rudra out of his anger, from his own self. (He created) *Saṁkalpa* and Dharma (also).

65-66. At the beginning, Brahmā created mental sons who were equal to himself, viz. Sanandana, Sanaka, the learned Sanātana and the eminent Sanatkumāra. They are eternal, independant, unattached to worldly life and hence they do not procreate.

67-68. They have the knowledge of the future. They are devoid of passions and rivalry. When they remained indifferent to the continuity of the world, the supreme lord Brahmā contemplated (angrily). Out of his anger, a person as resplendent as the sun was born. Half of his body was a man and half a woman. He was comparable to the fire in splendour.

69. "Everything has become full of lustre and equal to the sun in splendour. Divide yourself"—saying so he vanished there itself.

70. Thus addressed, the man and the woman became separate; the man divided himself into eleven parts (out of the male half).

71-72. All the (eleven) great souls were addressed by the noble being: "Try energetically and vigilantly for the totality (continuity) of the world desiring the multiplication (increase in the population) of the world, (try) for the establishment, benefit and interest of the entire world."

73. Thus addressed, they cried and ran about helter-skelter. Since they cried and ran about they are known as Rudras.

74. The three worlds including the mobile and immobile are pervaded by them. Their followers live in all the worlds.

75-77. They are the valorous lords of Gaṇas with the strength of ten thousand elephants. The highly fortunate one (the female)[1], forming half the body of Śiva, who has been mentioned to you just before, was the woman born of Brahmā's mouth. The right side of her body was fair (white) and the left black. She had been asked by Brahmā to divide herself. O Brāhmaṇas, thus requested, she bifurcated herself into black and white parts. I shall mention her names. Please listen very carefully:

78-79. Svāhā, Svadhā, Mahāvidyā, Medhā, Lakṣmī, Sarasvatī, Aparṇā, Ekaparṇā, Pāṭalā, Umā, Haimavatī, Ṣaṣṭhī, Kalyāṇī, Khyāti, Prajñā, Mahābhāgā, and Gaurī.

80. Know also in brief the universal forms assumed by the noble Lady (forms she assumed in the universe) through the formation of separate bodies:

81. Prakṛti, Niyatā, Raudrī, Durgā, Bhadrā, Pramāthinī, Kālarātri, Mahāmāya, Revatī, and Bhūtanāyikā.

82. Listen to her names at the end of Dvāpara age: Gautamī, Kauśikī, Āryā, Caṇḍī, Kātyāyanī, Satī.

83. Kumārī, Yādavī, Devī, Varadā, Kṛṣṇapiṅgalā, Barhirdhvajā, Śūladharā, Paramabrahmacāriṇī.

84. Māhendrī, Indrabhaginī, Vṛṣakanyā, Ekavāsasī, Aparājitā, Bahubhujā, Pragalbhā, Siṁhavāhinī.

85. Ekānasā, Daityahanī, Māyā, Mahiṣamardinī, Amoghā, Vindhyanilayā, Vikrāntā, Gaṇanāyikā.

86-88. These are the names of her forms that have been mentioned to you in serial order. Those persons who recite accurately the epithets of goddess Bhadrakālī as enumerated by me, will never have a failure or discomfiture. Whether in the forest, or in the outskirts, whether in the house or in the city; whether in water or on dry land, these names afford protection from tigers, robbers and thieves. One should repeat these names

1. Verses 75-85 give a list of epithets of Śakti or the female form called Bhadrakālī in v. 86. These epithets characterise the different forms of the goddess. An element of Śakti cult is found in vv. 75-91.

during mental agony and particularly in a place infested by goblins.

89. An amulet with these names should be used for children afflicted by evil planets, goblins or by evil witches, such as Pūtanā and others.

90. The great goddess is glorified as Prajñā (intellect) and as Śrī (glory). Thousands of goddesses have emerged out of these two and pervaded the universe.

91. She created *Vyavasāya* (industry) and Dharma (duty) bestowing happiness and thought in the beginning of the Kalpa. They were born of unmanifested womb.

92. Ruci was the mental son of Brahmā. He created Dakṣa from his vital breath and Marīci from his eyes.

93-94. Bhṛgu was born of his chest. He created Aṅgiras from his head and Atri from his ears. From the vital breath Udāna, he created Pulastya; from Vyāna, Pulaha; from Samāna, Vasiṣṭha and from Apāna, Kratu.

95. He created Bhadra, Nīlalohita in the form of conceit. These are the twelve sons of Brahmā born of his vital breath.

96. These are the mental sons of Brahmā. Bhṛgu and others who were created were not the expounders of the Veda.

97. They were the ancient householders. Dharma was established (and propagated) by them. These twelve create progeny along with Rudra.

98. Both Ṛbhu and Sanatkumāra sublimated sexual virility. As they were born very early before (the twelve sons), they were the eldest of all.

99. When the first ancient Kalpa was over, both of them withdrew their splendour and occupied the Vairāja region achieving (the good of) the world.

100. Both of them, practising Yogic virtue and concentrating their self in the *Ātman* maintained the *dharma* and aspiration (*kāma*) of the people by their great splendour.

101. Sanat continues to have the same form and features as at the time of his birth. So he is called Kumāra. Hence his name is mentioned Sanatkumāra.

102. Their twelve races are divine and endowed with divine attributes. Performing holy rites and multiplying the race, they are embellished by great sages.

103. Thus ends (the description of) the activity of the self-born lord in creating the worlds. The creation was born of his various organs. The creation beginning with *Mahat* and ending with *Viśeṣas* belongs to *Prakṛti* itself.

104-105. The light of the sun and the moon illuminates the world which is further embellished with planets and stars. It is surrounded by rivers, oceans, mountains, and cities of various shapes and sizes, and happy countryside. In that unmanifest Brahmavana, Brahmā spends the night.

106-108. This eternal tree of Brahmā is born of the seed of *Avyakta*. It grows up through his blessings. Intellect constitutes its branches and the sense-organs its sprout and Dharma and Adharma its flowers, happiness and sorrow its fruits. It is the source of livelihood for living beings and its root is Brahman.

109. The unmanifest which is the cause of creation is eternal and of the nature of *Sat* and *Asat*. This is the *Anugraha Sarga*, the primary creation of Brahmā.

110. The six creations *Mukhya* etc. are secondary. They exist in all the three times in Brahmā who identifies with them.

111. It is known by the learned that the creations function as causes of one another. There are two divine trees growing together, having fine leaves and sprouts and branches. Only one knows the tree of the Ātman and not the other.

112. That incomprehensible Ātman is the cause of creation of all living beings—he whose head the Brāhmaṇas eulogise as heaven; the sky as the umbilicus; the sun and the moon as the eyes; the quarters as the ears; and the earth as his feet.

113. From his mouth the Brāhmaṇas were born; from his arms the Kṣatriyas; from his thigh the Vaiśyas and from his feet the Śūdras.[1]

114. The great lord is beyond the unmanifest. The cosmic Egg is born of the unmanifest. From the cosmic Egg is born Brahmā who created the universe.

---

1. An echo of RV X. 90 (Puruṣa Sūkta).

CHAPTER TEN

Manvantaras

Sūta said :

1-2. When the worlds came into existence thus by the activity of Brahmā, the creator, and when the progeny did not multiply by any means, Brahmā, enveloped entirely by Tamas, became dejected. He then created intelligence which leads to a definite decision.

3. He then saw only the Tamas element moving within himself as the controlling factor. Subduing Rajas and Sattva, it was functioning.

4. Tormented by that sorrow, the Lord of the universe felt grieved. He eschewed Tamas and Rajas enveloped it.

5. The Tamas that was thus pushed out (dispelled), gave birth to a twin. Violence and sorrow were born of Adharma.* (?)

6. When the twins were born of the foot, the lord felt pleased. And he resorted to this.

7. He abandoned his body which was non-radiant. He split it into two. With one half of his body he became a man.

8. With the other half he became a woman. The woman was named Śatarūpā. Then the lord created the earth (for the support of created beings). The lord created desires also.

9. This body of Brahmā pervaded the earth and heaven by its greatness. The previous body stood enveloping the firmament.

10-11. The woman Śatarūpā who was born of half the body of the creator performed a severe penance for a million years and obtained a man of brilliant fame as her husband. He was called Manu, the first man born of god Brahmā.

12-13. Seventy-one sets of four Yugas, constitute what is called his Manvantara (reign of Manu). Having obtained Śatarūpā, not born of any womb, as his wife, he sported with her. Hence that sport is called *Rati* (sexual intercourse). The first act of coition happened in the beginning of the Kalpa.

**Śokāt* emended as *Śoko*.

14. Brahmā created Virāj[1]. That Virāj became the man (*puruṣa*). And as the king had been created mentally, he became known as Vairāja Manu.

15-16. That creation (of subjects) is called Vairāja. In that creation, Manu is the man (the progenitor of human race). Śatarūpā bore to that valorous man Vairāja two excellent sons that persons possessing sons can expect.

17. The two auspicious daughters Ākūti and Prasūti were born to Manu who gave Prasūti in marriage to Dakṣa.

18. Dakṣa should be known as *Prāṇa* (the vital breath) and Manu, *Saṅkalpa* (will, determination). Manu gave Ākūti to the patriarch Ruci.

19. Auspicious twins were born to Ākūti from Ruci, the mind-born son of Brahmā. They were Yajña and Dakṣiṇā.

20. Yajña begot of Dakṣiṇā twelve sons. They were called Yāmas, gods in the Svāyaṁbhuva Manvantara.

21. Being born as the sons of Yajña, one of the twins (Yama), they are known as Yāmas. The two Gaṇas (groups) of Brahmā are Ajitas and Śūkas.

22. The Yāmas occupied the heaven at the outset. Hence they are called 'heaven-dwellers.' The mothers of the worlds were born of Prasūti, the daughter of Svāyaṁbhuva Manu.

23. Lord Dakṣa begot of her twenty-four daughters. All of them were lotus-eyed and very fortunate.

24. These were wives of Yogins and Yogic mothers. The first thirteen were—Śraddhā, Lakṣmī, Dhṛti, Tuṣṭi, Puṣṭi, Medhā, Kriyā, Buddhi, Lajjā, Vapus, Śānti, Siddhi and Kīrti the thirteenth.

25. Lord Dharma took these daughters of Dakṣa as his wives. They functioned as the doorways (of creation) as ordained by Brahmā.

26-28. Besides them, the remaining younger ones were the eleven lovely-eyed daughters—Khyāti, Satī, Saṁbhūti, Smṛti, Prīti, Kṣamā, Sannati, Anasūyā, Ūrjā, Svāhā and Svadhā. Other great sages then accepted them. They were Rudra,

---

1. The author uses Vairāja, Puruṣa, Manu (and Samrāṭ) as synonyms here.

Bhṛgu, Marīci, Aṅgiras, Pulaha, Kratu, Pulastya, Atri, Vasiṣṭha, Pitṛs and Agni who took them as their wives.

29-31. He gave (in marriage) Satī to Śiva and Khyāti to Bhṛgu, Sambhūti to Marīci, Smṛti to Aṅgiras, Prīti to Pulastya, Kṣamā to Pulaha, Sannati to Kratu, Anasūyā to Atri, Ūrjā to Vasiṣṭha, Svāhā to Agni and Svadhā to Pitṛs. I shall mention the children born to them.

32. All these children were highly intelligent and very fortunate. They abide in all the Manvantaras till the final dissolution takes place.

33-36. Śraddhā (faith) gave birth to Kāma (Desire);[1] Lakṣmī to Darpa (Arrogance); Dhṛti (Firmness, self-command) to Niyama (Restraint); the son of Tuṣṭi (Satisfaction) is called Santoṣa (Contentment); Lābha (Gain) was the son of Puṣṭi (nourishment); Śruta (Learning) was the son of Medhā (intelligence). (The sons of) Kriyā (Activity) were Naya (Justice), Daṇḍa (Punishment) and Samaya (Law). Both Bodha (Knowledge) and Apramāda (Absence of errors) were the sons of Buddhi (intellect). Vinaya (Discipline) was the son of Lajjā (Bashfulness); Vyavasāya (Exertion) was the son of Vapus (body); Kṣema (welfare) was the son of Śānti (Tranquility); Sukha (pleasure) was born of Siddhi (Achievement); Yaśas (fame) was the son of Kīrti (Renown). These are the sons of Dharma.

37. Harṣa (pleasure) was the son of Kāma from the goddess Rati. Thus the progeny of Dharma resulted in happiness.

38-39. Hiṁsā (Violence) bore to Adharma (Evil) the twins Nikṛti (Wickedness) and Anṛta (Falsehood). Bhaya (Fear) and Naraka (Hell) were born of Nikṛti and Anṛta. The twins Māyā (Deceit) and Vedanā (Pain) were born to them. Bhaya begot of Māyā, Mṛtyu that takes away living beings.

40. From Raurava, Vedanā gave birth to Duḥkha (pain). From Mṛtyu were born Vyādhi, Jvara, Śoka, Krodha, and Asuyā. These were characterised by Adharma and were conducive to misery.

---

1. Verses 33-40 personify virtues and vices and state their parentage. Out of these verses 38-41 describe the *Tāmasa* creation.

41. They had no wives and no sons. They were known as Nidhanas. Thus the Tāmasa creation that checked the growth of Dharma came into being.

42. Nīla-Lohita was commanded by Brahmā to create progeny; Śiva, contemplated on his wife Satī and created sons (born of his self).[1]

43. They were neither superior nor inferior to him. They were mentally created and were equal to himself. He created thousands and thousands (such children) who were wearing elephants' hides.[2] All were equal to him in form, splendour, strength and learning. Some were reddish brown. Some had quivers. Some had matted hair.

44-51. They were tawny-coloured, equipped with quivers (for arrows); they had matted hair and were deeply red (*vilohita*) in complexion. They were green-haired. They killed with eyes (by casting a glance) and held skulls (in their hands). They were multiformed, hideous in appearance, and cosmic-formed. They rode chariots and wore coats of mail. They were virtuous and put on armours. They had hundred thousand arms. They could traverse through the heaven, firmament and the earth. They had big heads, eight fangs, two tongues and three eyes. (Some of them were) eaters of rice, (some) eaters of flesh, (some were) drinkers of ghee and (some) of Soma juice; some drank fat. They were huge-bodied and blue-black-necked and of fierce fury. They were equipped with quivers, bows, swords and leather-shields. Some were seated, some were running, some were yawning and some occupying seats. Some were teaching the Vedas; some performing Japa, practising Yoga and some studying the Vedas. Some were blazing, some showering, some shining, while some were smoking. Some were awake (enlightened), some the most enlightened, some established in Brahman and some of auspicious vision. All of them were blue-necked, thousand-eyed and nocturnal wanderers. They were invisible to all beings. They were great yogins of brilliant splendour. Some were shouting and running. Rudra created

---

1. Verses 42-52 describe *Raudrī Sṛṣṭi* (creation by Rudra).

2. A. reads: *Kṛtti-vāsasām* 'wearing elephants' hides'. *Kṛmi-vāsasā* in the text is obviously a misprint.

thousands of excellent gods resembling himself (Rudra) within the period of Yāma (three hours).

52. On seeing them, Brahmā said, "Do not create progeny like these. Beings equal or superior to yourself, should not be created by you. Create other offsprings. Prosperity be unto you. I am staying here (by you). You create the offsprings."

53-54. (Śiva replied), "These hideous reddish blue beings created by me in thousands and thousands are definitely comparable to myself. These gods will become Rudras of great strength. They will be known on the earth and in the sky by the name Rudra.

55. These called Śatarudra in the Veda will be worthy of sacrifices and will partake of sacrificial shares with the groups of gods.

56. They will stay till the period of dissolution, being worshipped with those Devas born of the *Chandas* (Vedas) in all the Manvantara ages."

57. Thus addressed by the intelligent Lord Śiva, the Patriarch Brahmā, replied joyfully to the terrible Rudra:

58. "O Lord, let it be as it is spoken by you. Welfare unto you." When so assented by Brahmā, everything happened accordingly.

59. Thenceforth, the lord did not create offsprings. He stood with sublimated sexual virility till the final dissolution of living beings. Since he said "I am staying", he is known as "*Sthāṇu*".

60. The following ten qualities are ever present in Śaṅkara. They are: knowledge, non-attachment, glorious prosperity, penance, truth, forbearance, firmness, creativity, self-comprehension, dominance.

61. By means of his brilliance the lord surpasses all the Devas, sages and Asuras. So he is known as Mahādeva.

62. He excels Devas by his glorious prosperity; Asuras by his strength; the sages by his knowledge; and all the Bhūtas by his Yoga.

The sages said :

63. O noble sage, explain to us the nature of the Yoga,

penance, truth, virtue and the means of perfect knowledge of the great lord.

64. We wish to hear completely all the different Dharmas comprising the Yoga of Maheśvara whereby the twice-born ones will attain Mokṣa.

Vāyu narrated :

65. Five Dharmas have been proclaimed by Rudra in the Purāṇas. They are called Māheśvarya[1] (Yoga of Maheśvara) by the Rudras of unimpaired activities.

66-67. These Dharmas are practised by Ādityas, Vasus, Sādhyas, and Aśvins, so also by all Maruts, Bhṛgus, heaven-dwellers of whom Yama, Indra are prominent and by Pitṛs, Kāla, Mṛtyu and many others.

68. The groups of sages, pure as the sky in the autumn, with all their Karmans exhausted, practise these after uniting the (individual) self with the (cosmic) self.

69. Engaged in what is wholesome and pleasing to the preceptors, and desirous of achieving what is pleasing to their preceptor, they sport about like Devas, after giving up (i.e. completing their span of) human life.

70-71. Please know in the serial order as they are being narrated, the five eternal Dharmas ordained by the great lord.

These are: *Prāṇāyāma* (Restraining of the breath), *Dhyāna* (Meditation), *Pratyāhāra* (Withdrawal of the sense-organs), *Dhāraṇā* (Steady abstration of the mind) and *Smaraṇa* (recollection).

72. I shall expound, in their particular order, their characteristics, causes and principles as explained by Rudra.

73. The restraining of the speed (span ?) of vital breath is also called Prāṇāyāma. It is of three kinds : *Manda* (slow), *Madhya* (middling) and *Uttama* (excellent).

74. Controlling the vital breath is termed Prāṇāyāma. The

1. Yoga of Maheśvara consisting of five Dharmas is a discussion on Yoga. The five Dharmas enumerated in vv. 70-71 below are the main stages in Pātañjala Yoga, viz. Prāṇāyāma, Dhyāna, Pratyāhāra, Dhāraṇā and the only Śaiva addition is *Smaraṇa* while Patañjali's last stage *Samādhi* is droppod.

standard span of *Prāṇāyāma* is twelve *mātrās* (mātrā = time required to pronounce a short vowel).

75. The *Manda Prāṇāyāma* has one stroke of twelve moments. The *Madhya Prāṇāyāma* has two strokes and has the span of twenty-four *mātrās*.

76. The *Uttama Prāṇāyāma* has three strokes and the *mātrās* are thirty-six. This excellent *Prāṇāyāma* produces sweat, shivering, languor and exhaustion.

77. Thus the three characteristics of *Prāṇāyāma* have been explained. Now listen to their span and other characteristics briefly.

78. A lion or an elephant or any other wild animal of the forest on being captured and tamed becomes mild and quiet.

79. Similarly though the vital breath is difficult to be controlled in case of non-self-possessed persons, it can be controlled by practice of Yoga if done regularly.

80-81. Just as a (captured) lion or an elephant becomes powerless and tamed by disciplining and lapse of time, similarly by placing the mind with the Manda (slow) type of *Prāṇāyāma*, it comes under control. Similarly the wind (life-breath) lives by being placed under mind-god (?).

82. Just as the life-breath comes under control by resorting to Yoga, similarly he can take the life-breath wherever he pleases.

83. Just as a lion or elephant which comes under control provides protection to men from other animals;

84. Just as (so ?) the wind which blows in all directions, if controlled within the body by meditation, destroys all sins in the body.

85. All the blemishes of the Brāhmaṇa who is self-controlled and engaged in *Prāṇāyāma* perish. He becomes stable in the Sattva Guṇa.

86. *Prāṇāyāma* is equal to all the penances performed and performance of (all) holy rites and observances, and the fruits accorded by all sacrifices.

87. *Prāṇāyāma* is equal to the penance and observance of the holy rite of drinking a drop of water from the tip of Kuśa grass once in a month and continuing it for a hundred years.

88. One should burn off defects of the body through *Prāṇāyāma*, sins through *Dhāraṇā*, the sensual objects through *Pratyāhāra* and ungodly qualities through *Dhyāna*.

89. Therefore, a practising Yogin should always be engaged in *Prāṇāyāma*. After purifying himself of all sins, he will attain the supreme Brahman.

CHAPTER ELEVEN

Pāśupata Yoga[1]

Vāyu said:

1-2. Sages of noble souls observe with divine vision and worship the vital breath (*Prāṇa*) by establishing themselves in penance, whether it be for a great day or a day and night or a fortnight, or a month or six months or a year or a Yuga or thousands of great Yugas.

3. Henceforth, I shall explain the purpose and particularly the benefit of Prāṇāyāma as expounded by the Lord.[2]

4. Know that the objectives of *Prāṇāyāma* are four: *Śānti*, *Praśānti*, *Prasāda* and *Dipti* (each term is explained in the following verses).

5. Actions whether terrible in form or auspicious in nature, if performed by oneself, do bear fruits here and hereafter in due course.

6. But the quelling of evils and sins committed by parents, cousins or other relatives or a mixture of both is called *Śānti*.

---

1. The present chapter is important as it throws a flood of light on the Pāśupata Yoga as practised before the 10th cent. A.D. when the Vā. P. came to be finally redacted.

2. Verses 3-11 describe the purpose or objectives of Prāṇāyāma, the first Dharma in this Yoga.

7. The restraint of sins arising from covetousness is called *Praśānti*. It is a form of penance that benefits both here and hereafter.

8. Sages richly endowed with knowledge and perfect wisdom can reach the world of the sun, moon, planets and stars.

9. To the enlightened, the vision of the past, present and future is possible. It is called *Dipti*. It is also a penance.

10. *Prasāda* is that which sublimates the five sense organs, their objects, the mind and the five vital breaths.

11. Thus the fourfold *Prāṇāyama* is the first Dharma. It should be known that it gives immediate fruit and results forthwith in composure (of mind).

12. Henceforth I shall explain the characteristics of *Prāṇāyama*, the posture and the practice of Yoga precisely.

13-18. One should utter the syllable *Om* at the outset and bow to the moon or the sun. Then he should sit in the postures of *Svastika* or *Ardhapadma*. The two knees shall be level with each other or one knee should be slightly raised. He should sit comfortably with firmness. The feet shall be brought closer. The mouth should be kept closed, the eyes half-closed, the chest raised forward. With the heels he should cover the scrotum and the penis; the head should be slightly raised, the neck be straightened. He should fix his gaze on the tip of his nose, and should not look elsewhere in any direction. He should cover Tamas by Rajas which he should envelop by Sattva. Then he should remain established in Sattva and practise Yoga with pure mind. He should then hold (control) the aggregate of his sense-organs and their objects, his mind and the five vital breaths. He shall then begin *Pratyāhāra* (withdrawing in himself these together).

19-22. He who withdraws his passion and desires as the tortoise does its limbs, becomes delighted in the self. Fixed (established) in it, he sees the Self in his self. Filling the body with air and remaining pure within and without, he shall begin the withdrawal by the process of Yoga from the navel to the

throat. One winking (closing and opening of eyelids) is the period called *Kalā*. The *Prāṇāyāma* shall be held for twelve *mātrās* : *Dhāraṇā* cansists of 12 *Prāṇāyāmas*. Yoga is 2 *Dhāraṇās*. A person thus practising Yoga attains prosperity. He sees the great Self shining in his own splendour.

23. All the defects (sins) of the Brāhmaṇa who is engaged in (i.e. practices) Prāṇāyāma and is self-controled are destroyed and he becomes established in Sattva.

24. Thus, with due restriction in the diet a sage (observing silence) engaged in *Prāṇāyāma*, shall conquer Yogic stages and ascend higher and higher.

25. The great ground (i.e. stage) if not subdued (overcome) may generate many defects. It may increase delusion. Hence one cannot go to a higher stage unless the initial stage is overcome.

26. Just as water is taken up by applying force through a pipe or mechanical device, so also the Yogin should drink in the wind with effort but conquering (without incurring) exhaustion.

27-28. The wind shall be retained gradually in the umbilicus, in the heart, in the chest, in the throat, in the mouth, at the tip of the nose, in the eye, between the eyebrows and in the head. The retention of the breath a little above in the great lord is called *Dhāraṇā*. Since both the *Prāṇa* and *Apāna* are obstructed, it is called *Prāṇāyāma*.

29. It is the steadying of the mind that is called *Dhāraṇā*. The withdrawal from the sense-objects is *Pratyāhāra*.

30. When all these are combined together, accomplishment of Yoga or Siddhi takes place. The achievement is the characteristic sign of Yogic meditation. Endowed with meditation, the Yogī sees his own self as the sun and the moon.

31. If Sattva is not accomplished, the vision is not possible. If the Yoga is practised in a defective place or at the wrong time, the vision is not possible.

32-34. A Yogī should not practice concentration near fire, in the forest, over a heap of dry leaves, in a place infested with

low creatures (or a crowded place), in a cremation ground, in a dilapidated cowshed, at the cross-roads (where four ways meet), in a noisy or terrifying place, near a tomb (or a Buddhist or Jain shrine) or a place full of ant-hills, near a well or a river, for these are places of disturbance. Nor should he do so when overwhelmed with hunger, displeasure or excitement. He should however practice Yoga diligently and with concentration.

35. In spite of knowing decisively these faults, if a person inadvertently engages in the practice of Yoga, the three humours in his body become deranged and put up obstacles in his path.

36. He develops sluggishness, deafness, muteness, blindness, loss of memory, old age and sickness.

37. The bodily humours of a person practising Yoga ignorantly, become virulent. Hence a Yogin should practise Yoga with pure knowledge of the mind and body.

38. If he is alert and careful in the practice of Yoga, he will not suffer from any defects. I shall explain the remedy for the defects originating from the wrong performance of *Prāṇāyāma*.

39. The enlargement of the spleen (due to the derangement of the wind humour) calms down, if the patient drinks thick, sticky gruel (while it is) very hot.

40-42. The following is the treatment for constipation. After taking in curds or gruel, the vital breath will go up. Then the 'wind knot' (a lump caused by the disturbance of the wind in the body) shall be broken up and the vital breath made to circulate in its own place. Still, if there is no improvement, the *Dhāraṇā* should be practised in the head. The practitioner of Yoga shall retain the body in the Sattva alone. For dispelling (curing) constipation this remedy should be followed.

43. At the beginning of Yogic practice if there is shaking of limbs, this treatment shall be followed. This will give him relief.

44. He shall fix firmly something in the mind and hold on to it as though observing some holy rite. If there is palpitation of the heart, the vital breath shall be retained in the cardiac region and near the throat.

45. If there is obstruction to speech, the vital breath should be retained in the organ of speech; in deafness it shall be retained in the ears. In affliction by thirst, he shall (apply) oil or ghee to the tip of the tongue by means of threads. Concentrating thus on the effect of the treatment, a Yogin achieves happiness.

46-49. In the state of consumption and leprosy, the Sāttvika breath shall be centred on the parts affected. If a part is affected by Rajas, the Yoga shall be practised with respect to that particular part. If a Brāhmaṇa practising Yoga, suffers from illness the following treatment should be pursued. His head shall be beaten with a wedge of bamboo or the wedge shall be placed on his head and beaten with a wooden stick. Thus overwhelmed by fear, he will regain consciousness. Or if he has lost consciousness he can be held with hands. After regaining consciousness he should retain *Dhāraṇā* in the head. He shall eat oily substance yet in small quantity. Thus the Yogin becomes happy.

50. When he is possessed by a non-human being, he should perform the *Dhāraṇā* of heaven, earth, wind and fire.

51. Being burnt by *Prāṇāyāma* everything comes under control. Still if it enters the body, he should ward it off.

52. Then after stupefying it with one's Yogic power, the fire of *Prāṇāyāma* be burnt over its head and it is completely perished.

53. The faults of the black serpent (i.e. ignorance) should be retained in the cavity of the heart. After keeping the worlds Mahar, Jana, Tapas and Satya in the heart, he should perform *Dhāraṇā*.

54. Drinking the *fruit* of the poison, he shall retain it but make it ineffective. He should perform *Dhāraṇā* conceiving in his mind the whole earth along with the mountains all round.

55. After placing the oceans in the heart and remembering the deities therein, he should bathe with a thousand vessels.

56. With waters upto the neck, *Dhāraṇā* shall be fixed on the head. When afflicted by the back-current of poison, he shall perform *Dhāraṇā* over all the parts of his body.

57. He shall drink in the clay from the ant-hill with the cups of the withered fallen leaves of the Arka plant. This Yogic mode of treatment is well known in the world.

58. It has been explained briefly in the manner found among the topics of Yoga. You should know the suitable traits of the Brāhmaṇa before you shall reveal it.

59. If it is revealed out of delusion to an undeserving person, the instruction proves fruitless. Hence the practice of Yoga shall not be mentioned to anybody (who is undeserving).

60. Strength, health, indifference to sensual objects, lustrous complexion, good and gentle voice, auspicious smell and less quantity of urine and faeces. These are primary signs of progress in Yoga in the body.

61. If he sees himself and the earth blazing and one entering the other, he should know that the time of accomplishment of Yoga has approached.

CHAPTER TWELVE

Evil Portents and Calamities in Yoga

Sūta said :

1. Henceforth, I shall explain how the evil portents, injuries, calamities and defects appear to a person who has realized the Truth.

2. The Yogin who is afflicted by evil may be enamoured of women, season (?) and long for human enjoyments and the fruits of learning.

3. Such an afflicted person desires to perform *Māyic* (deceptive) activities such as maintenance of sacrificial fire (*Agnihotra*), oblations in fire, performance of sacrifice, wealth and heaven.

4. If a Yogin is engaged in such religious rites, he falls a victim to Nescience (*Avidyā*). One should know that one is affected and should deliberately avoid it. If he becomes permanently devoted to Brahman, he is released from the evil effects.

5. But even though one has mastered breath-control and evils (obstructing Yoga), other evils arising from (and of the nature of) Sattva, Rajas and Tamas appear.

6. Perspicuous intellect, hearing (spiritual) voices, vision of gods and circular motion of whirling flame—these are called the signs of (attainment of) Siddhi.

7. All learning, literature, arts and other lores communicable orally as well as the essence of all learning attend upon him (for service). It is the index of his superhuman power.[1]

8. He hears words worth hearing even from the distance of a hundred Yojanas. The omniscient Yogin, even though knowing the procedure of Yoga, may become like a lunatic.

9. If the great Yogī sees Yakṣas, Rākṣasas, Gandharvas and divine beings and knows them, it is the sign of disturbance (in spiritual progress).

10. One should recognize him specifically as insane if he sees Devas, Dānavas, Sages and Pitṛs all round.

11. The Yogī, being urged by his inner soul, flounders through delusion. All his knowledge is lost when his intellect is confounded.

12. Professional activities can destroy his mental balance. If his mind is overcome (due to shock of financial loss) and urged by his inner soul, his knowledge is lost.

---

1. Verses 7-15 describe the disturbances in the path of Yogic progress. 16-25 describe the powers attained by different *Dhāraṇās*. But these Siddhis are a trap (v. 26). The gist of the remaining chapter is that a Yogī should not be attached to any exalted position—even of god Brahma himself. Then only he will be absorbed in Brahman.

13. Covering himself with a white cloth or a blanket he should quickly meditate upon the great Brahman.

14. If the inelligent Yogī desires to attain his spiritual power, he should give up (overcome) his defects caused by the (spiritual) disturbances.

15. Devas, Gandharvas, Sages, Yakṣas, Serpents and Asuras, that are involved in creating obstruction, come again and again.

16. A practising Yogin should always take light food and subdue the sense-organs. Similarly he should lie and repose in the subtle body and perform *Dhāraṇā* in the head.

17. Then, if he conquers sleep after practising Yoga, *Upasargas* in the form of vital breaths are produced in the end.

18. He should then perform *Dhāraṇās* of the earth, waters, fire, ether and the mind.

19. Then the striving (aspiring) recluse should perform *Dhāraṇā* upon his intellect. He should discard instantly whenever he sees the indications of (coming) Siddhis.

20. While he performs the *Dhāraṇā* of the earth, the earth becomes subtle. While he performs the *Dhāraṇā* of waters, the waters become subtle. Cool juices, subtle and nectar-like, begin to function.

21. While he performs the *Dhāraṇā* of fire, the subtle fire begins to function. He feels himself like fire and sees its subtle nature.

22-23. He considers himself to be wind and the universal sphere as made of that*. While he performs the *Dhāraṇā* of the ether, the subtle ether begins to function. He sees its subtle sphere and its sound begins to function.

24. While he performs the *Dhāraṇā* of the mind, the subtle mind begins to function. Through his mind he penetrates the minds of living beings; when he unites his intellect with the cosmic intellect, he understands everything perfectly.

25. The Yogin who, after knowing the seven subtle elements abandons them, attains the highest point of intellect.

---

*The same line is repeated as 23b.

26. If he identifies with any of these elements characterised by *Aiśvarya* (prosperity or mastery), he becomes entangled and thereby perishes.

27. Hence he who knows the subtle elements attached to one another and abandons them deliberately, attains the supreme lord.

28. Indeed, even the noble-souled sages of divine vision are found entangled in the subtle elements. Those are regarded as defects in them.

29. Hence no attachment should be had in regard to the subtle elements. Due to *Aiśvarya* (prosperity and glory) attachment is generated, while Brahman is called non-attached.

30. After knowing the seven subtle (elements etc.) and the excellent great god of six characteristics, he attains to the supreme Brahman.

31. Those who know the procedure, declare the (following) six characteristics of the supreme Lord. These are: omniscience, contentment, beginning-less (external knowledge), independence, never-failing power and infinite power.

32. The practising Yogin with Brahman as his permanent asset, becomes liberated from the *Upasargas*. To a Yogin who has conquered the vital breath, the *Upasargas* and passion, there remains only one *Dhāraṇā* inclusive of all desires in the external body.

33. When the twice-born fixes his mind anywhere he enters it. He enters the elements and can even shake (move) the three worlds.

34. Be means of this *Dhāraṇā*, he can abandon his body and enter another. He should determine that the Sun is the mental door of the Yoga.

35. He is called *Āditya* as he is the recipient of the activities (like taking). The Yogin who, by this procedure, becomes detached and free from the affections of the subtle elements goes beyond the sphere of Prakṛti to Rudraloka.

36. The Yogin who has attained the status of Īśvara and Guṇas becomes Brahman himself. He withdraws himself from the positions of Devas.

37-38. He should eschew from the positions of Piśācas, Rākṣasas, Gandharvas, Kubera, Indra, Soma and Prajāpati by the processes specific to these.

39. He should give up the position of Brahmā by the special *Brāhma* procedure. He should take leave of the Lord. But if he is attached thereto (to Brahmā's position), he becomes (as if) intoxicated and everything (his fall) proceeds from that.

40. Being permanently absorbed in Brahman, he should give up the aforesaid positions. Thus, being non-attached to these positions, he shall acquire the power of going anywhere (omnipresence).

CHAPTER THIRTEEN

Supreme Powers of Yoga

Vāyu said :

1. Henceforth I shall explain in detail the supreme powers of Yoga whereby the Yogin can go beyond all the worlds.

2. Eight types of powers of Yogins have been cited. Listen to these as I narrate them in order.

3-4. They are *Aṇimā*, *Laghimā*, *Mahimā*, *Prāpti*, *Prākāmya*, *Īśitva*, *Vaśitva* and *Kāmāvasāyitā*. The divine faculty that fulfils all desires is of various types.

5-8. It is (of the following types) *Sāvadya*, *Niravadya* and *Sūkṣma*. *Sāvadya* is that principle which comprises the five elements. *Niravadya* consists of the five elements as well as the sense-organs, mind and the ego. *Sūkṣma* consisting of the five elements comprises the sense-organs, mind, ego and intellect. So also the powers of omnipresence and discrimination pertaining to the Self. The combination of these three types is found in the *Sūkṣma* type alone.

9. The eightfold *Aiśvarya* too functions in the subtle elements. I shall explain its features as the lord has described.

10. In all the three worlds, among all living beings, the power of *Aṇimā* (becoming minute like an atom) is uncontrolled. It is unmanifest. It is the basis of all (powers).

11. What is stated to be inaccessible to living beings in the three worlds becomes accessible to the Yogins by virtue of this first power.

12. The second power in Yoga consists of descending (hanging down) and floating. The Yogī possessed of this power can move the fastest in all beings.

13. The ability to obtain anything in the three worlds is called *Prākāmya* (irresistible will). What is *Mahimā* also falls under this category. This is the third Yoga (Yogic power).

14. These three worlds are regarded as untraversable to all beings (except Yogins) in the three worlds. It is the Yogin who can enjoy all objects to the utmost satisfaction. He is not obstructed anywhere. Happiness and misery befall all living beings in the three worlds (but the Yogin escapes).

15. The Yogin becomes the lord of everything. In the three worlds including the mobile and immobile beings the living beings become submissive to him. They can be made to serve if he so wishes, not otherwise.

16. Where there is the supernormal power called *Kāmāvasāyitva*, by the mere will (of the Yogī), the sense-organs function or do not function according to his will.

17. Objects of senses, viz. Sound, Touch, Taste, Smell and Colour as well as the mind function or do not function just in compliance of his will.

18. He is neither born nor does he die. He is neither broken nor cut. He does not get burnt nor does he lose his sense. He is neither deficient nor attached.

19. He does not get diminished or waste away. He does not perish. He is never dejected. Anywhere he can do anything or undo it.

20. He is not characterised by smell, taste, colour, touch and sound. He is casteless, but not inferior to any caste.

21. He enjoys sensual objects but is not entangled by them. On realising the greatest and the subtlest Brahman, because of his subtlety, he attains salvation.

22. Because of salvation, he becomes all-pervading. Because he pervades (everything), he is called *Puruṣa*. Due to his subtle form, the *Puruṣa* is established in Supremacy.

23. Another characteristic of his Supremacy is the all-round subtlety. After attaining the most excellent Yoga, of unobstructed supremacy, he goes to the subtlest region, the state of Liberation.

CHAPTER FOURTEEN

Pāśupata Yoga

Vāyu continued :

1. A person who has come thus (to this stage) due to knowledge, should not perform any action due to passion. After experiencing the Rājasic and Tāmasic fruits, he becomes attached there.

2. Similarly the man who has performed meritorious actions enjoys the fruits in heaven. Fallen from that region, he is born again as a human being.

3. Brahman is therefore, supreme and subtle. Brahman is said to be eternal. One should devote oneself to Brahman as Brahman is the supreme bliss.

4. There is great exertion in performing sacrifice requiring great deal of (expenditure of) wealth. Moreover he (the sacrificer) is subject to death. Salvation therefore is the greatest bliss.

5. But he who is engaged in meditation and devoted to the sacrifice of Brahman cannot be reached even in hundreds of Manvantaras.

6. He visualizes the divine *Puruṣa* that is called the *Viśva* (all-pervading). He appears in various forms. He has feet, heads and necks everywhere (pervades the Universe). He is the Lord and the creator of the Universe. He has the cosmic fragrance, is garlanded cosmically and robed in cosmic apparel. He is the Ruler of all.

7. By means of their sense-organs people endeavour to visualize him who is the winged noble soul, the most excellent and the greatest Soul. But it is not with the eyes but with the mental concentration called Yoga that they can see the omniscient, ancient governor (Teacher) who is subtler than the subtlest, greater than the greatest, the Puruṣa of golden complexion, devoid of sense-organs.

8. They always see Puruṣa who is golden in colour, endowed with or without exterior symbols, devoid of attributes, conscious, eternal, all-pervading and pure. By means of Yoga, they see the steady light.

9. Manifested thereby He shines in his own refulgence. He is devoid of heads, feet, belly, sides and tongue, but he, though beyond the ken of senses, though still extremely subtle and alone, can see without eyes and hear without ears.

10. There is nothing that is not known to him; yet he has no intellect. He knows all, yet he is not known to the Vedas. They call him the foremost or the first Puruṣa, the great, the sentient, all-pervading and very subtle.

11. All sages call that Prakṛti, which gives birth to living beings in this world. Those who are engaged in Yoga, can visualize it mentally.

12-13. Those who are engaged in Yogic meditation on the eternal Puruṣa who is endowed with hands and feet, eyes, heads and faces (mouths), ears on all sides and who stays after permeating everything in the world (who is both immanent and transcendent) and who governs everything, does not become deluded.

14. One does not get deluded after meditating on the supreme Brahman, the Soul of all living beings, the imperishable, noble, supreme soul, the soul of all.

15-16. Just as the (presence of the) wind is to be admitted as evident through its movement in clouds, so is that of the Ātman that moves through the bodies of all. Since the Soul abides in the body, it is named Puruṣa. When the merit is exhausted due to specific Karmans he is born and re-born in the womb by the mixture of semen and blood as a result of the mixture of male and female flesh.[1]

17. Then, at the time of conception, *Kalana*, the embryo at its first stage (in the form of a drop) is formed. In due course the *Kalana* develops into bubbles.

18-19. Just as a lump of clay pressed by the wind in the potter's wheel and shaped by the hands (of the potter) attains multifarious shapes, so also the foetus united with bones and impelled by the wind becomes a human body with proper forms, features and mind.

20. The wind assembles them together. From the wind water is generated. From the water the vital breath is formed and through the vital breath the semen gets developed.

21. Thirty-three parts of blood (female contribution) and fourteen parts of the semen mixing together form only half a *Pala* (two *karśas*) and is deposited in the womb.

22. The child in the womb is covered by the five vital breaths. From the father's body he inherits his forms and features.

23. The food of the mother, drunk or licked, enters through the umbilical cord and sustains the foetus in the womb.

24. For nine months the child suffers in the body with his neck encircled by the inner vessels of its mother. His limbs are covered in disorder. He remains there for nine months. He then comes out through the vaginal passage with the head downwards.

25. Then (in his life on the earth) he commits some sinful actions and as a result he goes to the hell (after death), *Asipatravana* or *Śālmali* where he is cut or pierced.[2]

---

1. Verses 16-25 give Purāṇic (Mediaeval) ideas on Embryology.
2. Verses 25-31 describe the tortures in hell.

26. In the hell, he is rebuked and threatened. He is forced to drink blood. These are the terrible tortures he has to undergo in Kumbhīpāka. They are very unbearable.

27. Just as waters though parted regain their normal form, so also the hellish beings though cut and broken in torturing hells regain their original form.

28. Thus the living beings become agitated and tortured through their own sins. If there is anything left over, they take other births.

29. Man must go alone to the abode of death. He must bear the punishments alone. Hence one should perform pious deeds.

30. None follows him who proceeds along the path of death. But the actions performed by him pursue him.

31. The hellish beings always cry in the abode of Yama when they are pierced or when tortures are inflicted on their bodies. Their bodies being tortured get withered up and suffer extreme pain caused by evil harassments.

32. The sin may forcibly remove everything desirable resorted to by him mentally, verbally or physically. Hence one should perform meritorious deeds.

33. In accordance with the sinful actions committed by him previously, the embodied being undergoes six types of worldly transmigrations of *Tāmasa* nature.[1]

34-35. They are : Birth as human beings; as domestic animals (*Paśu*) ; from the state of *Paśu* (he becomes) a wild animal; from that stage (he goes to) the birds; from 'bird-hood' to reptiles; from reptilehood he certainly becomes an immobile. He who has attained the immobile state evolves into a human being. He thus rotates like one propelled by the potter's wheel.

36. Thus in this migration six types of birth beginning with that as man and ending with that as plant are known as Tāmasa. He undergoes many changes there.

---

1. The life in hell and evolution through six stages upto that of man show the acceptance of the principle of redemption. No sinner is condemned to eternal hell.

37. The transmigrations beginning with Brahmā and ending with *Piśāca* are known as Sāttvika. Only in the celestial regions the embodied beings experience these.

38-39. In the world of Brahmā, there is only *Sattva*; in the world of immobile beings there is only *Tamas*. In between the two there is *Rajas*, that supports the fourteen lokas. How can he think of the great Brahman when he is distressed by pain and his vitals are being torn. It is due to the impressions of the previous pious actions that he attains human birth. Hence one should devote oneself entirely to Brahman.

CHAPTER FIFTEEN

Pāśupata Yoga (continued)

Vayū said :

1. After knowing the fourteen types of transmigrations a person overpowered by the fear of *Saṁsāra* (transmigration from birth to birth) should begin suitable action.

2. Then, being whirled round by the wheel of *Saṁsāra* he remembers (about Yoga). Thenceforth, he is always engaged in meditation in communion with the Supreme. He should start the *Yogic* practice in such a way as he would be able to visualize the Soul.

3. He is the first, the supreme light, the excellent bridge. He has grown up in living beings but this difference is not eternal.

4. Hence he who knows the procedure should worship this bridge, this Ātman, this fire with its face in every direction, abiding in the heart of living beings.

5. After sipping water once only at the beginning, with purity and with the mind concentrated on Him, he should offer

eight oblations in a serial order to the Fire that abides in the heart and should worship him silently.

6-7. The five *Āhutis* shall be offered with the following five *mantras* : *Prāṇāya Svāhā*, *Apānāya Svāhā*, *Samānāya Svāhā Udānāya Svāhā* and *Vyānāya Svāhā*. The other (three *Āhutis*) shall be offered simply with '*Svāhā*'. Then he should take food as he pleases. He should drink water once, perform *Ācamana* thrice and touch the heart.

8. He should then strengthen and satisfy himself by repeating the following mantra—"Om, Thou art the knot of the *Prāṇas*. Tou art the *Ātman*. Rudra indeed is the *Ātman*. That Rudra, the destroyer of the subjects. He is the Prāṇas of the *Ātman*.

9. You are the eldest among Devas. You are fierce, the skilful bull. You are the destroyer of death. Let this *Havis* oblation offered be propitious to us".

10-11. Saying thus he shall touch the heart, the right toe and the navel with the right hand. Touching water once again, he shall touch the chest, eyes, nose, ears, heart and the head. The *Prāṇa* and *Apāna* both are declared as two *Ātmans*.

12. Of these *Prāṇa* is the inner and *Apāna* is the external *Ātman*. *Anna* (food) is Prāṇa, and Apāna is both life and death.

13. *Anna* (food) should be known as Brahman. It is the source of origin of the people. The living beings are born through *Anna* (food). The maintenance is sought through *Anna* (food). The living beings increase through *Anna*. Hence it is called *Anna*.

14. Devas and Dānavas eat the food oblated in the (sacrificial) fire. Gandharvas, Yakṣas, Rākṣasas and Piśācas too partake of it.

CHAPTER SIXTEEN

Purity and Conduct of Life[1]

Vāyu said :

1. Henceforth I shall explain the characteristics of purity and conduct of life, the observance of which purifies the *Ātman* and leads a person to heaven after death.

2. Seeking of water for purity is the excellent state of sages. He who is not negligent in regard to these comes to no trouble.

3. Insult and honour, they say, constitute (what is called) poison and nectar. Insult is poison; honour is nectar.

4. The sage who does not err in regard to these comes to no trouble. He should remain with the preceptor for a year engaged in what is pleasing and beneficial to him.

5. He should not be negligent in the observance of vows, major (*Yamas*) or minor (*Niyamas*). After attaining supreme knowledge, he should seek permission from his preceptor and move about the earth consistently with Dharma.

6. This is the holy dictate of *Dharma*, viz. one should go along the path purified by (i.e. observed carefully by) the eyes; one should drink water filtered with a cloth; and one should utter words purified by truth i.e. state the truth only.[2]

7. It is the considered opinion that the knower of Yoga should never accept hospitality in *Śrāddhas* and *Yajñas* and that it is only thus that a Yogin becomes non-violent.

8-9. An intelligent Yogin should go out (for alms) when the fires (in the kitchen) have become smokeless[3] and have been

---

1. This chapter prescribes the rules of conduct to be followed by Pāśupata yogins. The term '*Śaucācāra*' corresponds to '*Sadācara*' in Dharma Śāstra. These are usages practised by one's ancestors (Manu) or by *Śiṣṭas* under the belief that they are part of Dharma (Kumārila). Some of the rules (as noted below) are adopted from those prescribed for saṁnyāsins. Some of the verses are adapted from Smṛtis.

2. An echo of Manu VI. 46. Cf. also Śaṅkhasmṛti. VII.7, Viṣṇu Dh. S. 96. 14-17 and KP. II. 28. 19.

3. Cf. Manu VI. 56, Śaṅkha. VII. 2.

extinguished and the people have practically taken their meals. He should not constantly beg in the same houses lest he should get insulted or people offended. It is thus without violating the code of conduct of the good, that he should carefully go out for alms.

10. First of all, he should go to the houses of only those householders who maintain good conduct. Such begging for alms is said to be an excellent means of livelihood advised to the Yogin.

11. Secondly, he should go to the abodes of modest householders who are faithful, self-controlled, learned and noble.

12. Last of all he should go to the residence of non-defiled and unfallen people. Begging for alms in the abodes of lower caste is considered mean.

13. The alms received may be gruel, butter-milk, milk, barley-water, cooked or uncooked fruits, roots, oil-cake or anything offered in accordance with the householder's ability.

14. Thus the foodstuffs conducive to the increase in Siddhis of Yogins have been proclaimed by me. Among these the most excellent is that which is received by way of alms.

15. He who begs alms in a righteous manner, is better than the person who drinks a drop of water from the tip of the *Kuśa* grass once in a month.

16. The observance of the *Cāndrāyaṇa*[1] vow is the most excellent for the Yogin. He should perform it once, twice, thrice, four times successively or as many times as he can.

17-18. Non-stealing, celibacy, non-covetousness and renunciation are the holy rites of recluses (*Bhikṣus*). The restraints (*Niyamas*) are non-violence, truthfulness; non-furiousness, ser-

1. Cāndrāyaṇa is an expiation (*Prāyaścitta*) for all lapses for which no specific penance is prescribed. It is also for accruing merits. It is so called as the intake of morsels of food increases or decreases in imitation of the course of the phases of the moon. Thus if he eats one morsel on the 1st Tithi, he is to increase one more morsel the next day eating 15 morsels on the Full Moon day. And thus he is to decrease by one morsel everyday and observe fast on the New Moon day.

vice to the preceptor, purity of body, light diet and daily study of the Vedas.

19-20. Just as an elephant is caught in the forest, is then controlled, so man with the seeds (of Karmas) as his source of birth, body as *guṇas*, is bound by Karmas. Soon he is trapped and is disciplined like a (wild) elephant. In this way, with the seeds of his Karmas having been burnt by the fire of pure knowledge, he becomes free from bondage and quiescent. He is called the liberated (soul).

21. By Vedas, by means of eulogies, all rites in a sacrifice (are performed). *Japa* is regarded more important than knowledge. Meditation free from association with attachment is better than *Jñāna*. When that is achieved, the eternal (Mokṣa) is obtained.

22. The Yogin possesses these attributes: control of sense-organs, quiescence, truthfulness, sinlessness, silence, straightforwardness towards all living beings, knowledge of things beyond the scope of sense-organs, uprightness etc. Those purified by means of knowledge have declared thus.

23. Composed in mind, absorbed in Brahma (or the Veda), un-erring and alert, pure, delighting in the *Ātman*, with senses controlled—such pure, unsullied, highly intelligent, praiseworthy (un-censurable) and pure (yogins) achieve (master) this Yoga.

CHAPTER SEVENTEEN

Attainment of the Ultimate State of Life

Vāyu said :

1-2. After passing the three (earlier) stages and reaching the ultimate (*Sannyāsa*) stage of life,[1] he shall attain the Su-

1. *Paramāśrama* is the last *āśrama*, viz. Sannyāsa. The present chapter states the rules to be followed by a Sannyāsin. We find here the echoes of Smṛtis like Manu. Cf. for example the duty of wandering (cf. Manu VI. 52), the rules of conduct (cf. Manu VI. 92). Also cf. *supra* 8. 176-178,

preme knowledge by the end of a year. Taking leave of the preceptor, he should wander over the earth. He should apply in practice that excellent essential knowledge that leads to the attainment of the knowable.

3. He who wanders remaining satisfied with the discrimination between knowledge and the knowable, will never attain the knowable even if he were to live for a thousand Kalpas.

4. Giving up contacts and attachment, subduing one's wrathfulness, subsisting on light food, he, with his sense-organs controlled, should close down all the portals of his intellect and should thus fix his mind in meditation.

5. He should always practise Yoga in uninhabited places, caves, forests or on the banks (sands) of rivers.[1]

6. He who has control over his speech, action and mind and represents each by a long staff is declared as *Tridaṇḍin*.[2]

7. Thus established, he who loves meditation, has subdued his sense-organs, gives up both auspicious and inauspicious acts. Even after abandoning this (physical) body, he is neither born nor dead from the standpoint of scriptures.

CHAPTER EIGHTEEN

Procedure of Expiation for Recluses (Sannyāsins)

Vāyu said :

1. Henceforth I shall explain decisively the expiations prescribed for ascetics for their (evil) actions done by them un-

---

1. *Vaikhānasa Sūtra* VIII. 9 prescribes this for a *Paramahaṁsa*. Buddhist and Jaina mendicants have similar instructions.

2. Cf.

Vāg-daṇḍo 'tha mano-daṇḍaḥ kāyadaṇḍas tathaiva ca/
yasyaite nihitā buddhau tridaṇḍīti sa ucyate//

—Manu XII. 10 also Dakṣa VII. 30.

intentionally. But people who know the subtle Dharma say that there are expiations for actions done out of lust or deliberately as well.

2. Sin is proclaimed as threefold, according as it is born of (results from) speech, mind and body both by day or night continuously. By this the whole world is bound.

3. The great Śruti declares that no man can stay without activities. In life every moment has to be spent in activity[1] for its sustenance.

4. One shall be self-possessed and un-erring. Yoga is the greatest strength. There is nothing seen to be greater than Yoga for men here. Hence, the wise who are endowed with piety praise Yoga.

5. Intelligent and resolute men transcending ignorance through knowledge, attain excellent *Aiśvarya*. Having discriminated between the greater and the lesser, they attain the highest region.

6. Expiation is prescribed for the violation of any major or minor vow ordained for the mendicant.

7. If he approaches a woman cut of lust, the expiation prescribed is that he shall perform the rite of *Sāntapana*[2] along with Prāṇāyāma.

8. He shall follow the prescribed courses (of conduct) at the end of that expiation with mental purity. He should return to the hermitage and move about carefully as a mendicant. The wise people opine that words piercing the heart[3] do not kill (?)

9. However this should not be indulged in. For this results in cruelty.

The Śruti says that there is no evil action (lasting) after a full day (i.e. day and night) (?)

---

1. Cf. BG III. 5

2. *Sāntapana* is generally prescribed for pollution or falling off from caste (*Jāti-bhraṁśa-kara*). It lasts for two days. One has to take *Pañca-gavya* on the first day and observe fast on the second day.

3. *marmayukta* is emended as *narmayukta* 'jocular remark' in A. The emendation deserves consideration.

10. Violence is the greatest of evil deeds created by Devas and sages. What is called wealth is the veritable external life-breath of a man. He who deprives any man of his wealth verily takes away his vital breath (life).

11-12. By committing theft a wicked person shatters off his good conduct. He falls off from his vow. After repenting for this sin, he should perform *Cāndrāyaṇa* vow for a year in accordance with the injunctions of the scriptures, says the Śruti. At the end of a year his sin will practically diminish. If he repents again he should vigilantly observe his vow of medicancy.

13. Non-violence towards all living beings, mentally, verbally and physically (shall be observed). If a mendicant injures animals or deer even unintentionally, he should perform the expiatory vow of *Kṛcchra*, *Atikṛcchra* or *Cāndrāyaṇa*.[1]

14. If due to the weakness of his organ, a recluse emits semen on seeing a woman, he should perform sixteen *Prāṇāyāmas*.

15. In the case of a Brahmāṇa who emits semen during day the observance of fast for three nights and performance of a hundred *Prāṇāyamas* are prescribed for its expiation.

16. If he has nocturnal emission of semen, he should take bath and perform twelve *Dhāraṇās*. He becomes pure in soul and free from sin by performing the *Prāṇāyāma*.

17. Daily eating at the same house, use of honey, flesh and salt as well as feasting at *Śrāddha* are forbidden for the ascetics.

18. For the violation of each of these expiatory rite consisting of *Prājāpatya* or *Kṛcchra* is prescribed. Then alone he becomes free from the sin.

---

1. *Kṛcchra* or *Prājāpatya* is a general term for several kinds of expiations. It has about 12 varieties (For details vide Kane, *HD* IV, pp. 120, 132-33).

Atikṛcchra is for purification of all sins except *Mahā-pātakas* (great sins) (Gautama 26. 22). The procedure of observing it differs with Manu XI. 213 and Yājñavalkya III. 319, the former restricting the intake of one morsel of food while the latter allowing as much food as will fill his hand (vide Kane, *HD* IV, p. 130).

19. If there is any other violation, mental, physical or verbal, he should consult expert men (for deciding suitable expiation) and act according to their injunctions.

20. A Yogin of pure intellect, looking upon a clod of earth and lump of gold alike, behaving with purity of mind towards all livings, attains the region of saintly people which is unshakable, eternal and imperishable. After reaching there, he is not born again (is liberated from *Saṁsāra*).

CHAPTER NINETEEN

Evil Omens Foreboding Death[1]

Vāyu said :

1. Henceforth I shall explain the evil omens. Know that by seeing them one can foresee one's death.

2. He who cannot see the Arundhatī star, the Pole star, the shadow of the moon and the *Mahāpatha* does not survive a year thereafter.

3. He who sees the sun bereft of rays and the fire with rays (radiating from it) will not survive the eleventh month.

4. He who vomits urine, cow-dung, gold or silver either while awake or in dream, will not survive ten months.

5. He whose feet crack either in front or at the back, or become dusty or marshy, lives only for seven months.

6. If a crow, a dove, a vulture or any other bird of prey settles on his head, he does not survive six months.

---

1. Belief in evil portents was very common in ancient India. We have a number of such references in the Mbh. (e.g. *Sabhā* 80. 28-31, *Śalya* 192. 14-21), *Rāmāyaṇa* (e. g. *Araṇya* 23. 1-7, 10-25), *Bd. P., Lalitā M.* 21. 5-20. Jaina *Ṭhāṇaṅga Sutta* 405. 8, Dharasena's *Joṇipāhuḍa* testify to the Jain belief in them. Durgadeva's *Riṭṭha-Samuccaya* of A.D. 1032 (Ed. A. S. Gopani, Singhi Jain Series 1945) shows many beliefs common to Brahmanical Purāṇas. Even today Indian masses believe in such portents.

7. He who is obstructed by rows of crows or by a dust storm, lives only for four or five months.

8. He who sees lightning without clouds, in the southern direction, or water or the rainbow (without the existence of clouds) lives only for two or three months.

9. He who does not see his reflection either in water or in a mirror or who sees his reflection without the head does not survive a month.

10. If the body smells like a corpse or like burning fat, death is imminent. He lives only for a fortnight.

11. If a biting wind seems to pierce the vulnerable points of one's body or if no sensation is experienced after touching water, death is imminent for him.

12. If he dreams that he is singing and proceeding to the south on a chariot to which bears and monkeys are yoked, it shall be known as a sign of imminent death.

13. If he dreams that he is being led to southern direction by a dark singing woman wearing black garment, he does not survive long.

14. If he dreams that he wears black rags or that his ear is broken, it shall be known as a sign of imminent death.

15. If he dreams that he is immersed in a marshy sea upto the head, he does not survive long after seeing the dream.

16. He who sees (in dream) ashes, burning coals, hair, dry river and serpents will not survive ten nights.

17. If he dreams that he is being beaten by hideous dark skinned men with weapons and stones in their hands, he dies soon.

18. If a howling vixen rushes directly at him early in the morning at sunrise, his death is imminent.

19. If he feels acute pain in the chest and morbid senstitiveness in the teeth immediately after taking bath, his death is immiment.

20. If he gasps for breath during night or day and is unable to discern the smell of a oil lamp, know that his death is imminent.

21. If he were to see the rain-bow at night and the cluster

of stars during the day, and if he is unable to see his reflection in others' eyes, he does not live long.

22. He, one of whose eyes begins to water, whose ears are dislodged from their places and whose nose becomes crooked (and curved) should be known as approaching death.

23. Death is imminent to him whose tongue is black and rough and whose face appears muddy and whose cheeks are ruddy and flattened.

24. A man who (in dream) goes to the southern direction with hair dishevelled, laughing, singing and dancing, meets with the imminent end of life.

25. He who perspires frequently, the sweat drops being like white mustard seeds, dies very soon.

26. He who in dream, goes to the south in a chariot to which camels or donkeys are yoked does not live long.[1]

27. These are two extermely ill omens, viz. he does not hear loud noise with his ears and does not see bright light with his eyes.

28. If he sees in dream that he has fallen in a ditch and that there is no door to escape through and that he is unable to stand up from the ditch, that marks the end of his life.

29. One is definitely in difficult situation if the eye moves upward without steadiness, becomes red and begins to whirl round, if the mouth becomes hot, if the umbilicus is porous and the urine is very hot.

30. If a man is directly hit during the day or night and sees the attacking man (in dream), the man so hit does not live long.

31. If a man dreams that he is entering fire but does not remember the details after waking up, that marks the end of his life.

32. Death is imminent to the man who sees his white covering cloth as red or black in dream.

33-35. A wise man should eschew fear[2] and dejection when death approaches him as indicated by the ill omens. He

1. Cf. v. 12 above.
2. Verses 33-40 advise how one should face death in a Yogic way.

should then start from his house and walk to the east or to the north. With a pure mind he should sit in a level spot isolated and devoid of crowds. He should perform *Ācamana* and sit facing north or east. He should sit in the *Svastika* posture. After bowing down to Lord Śiva he should keep his body, head and neck straight.

36. His posture is comparable to a lamp in a windless place where it is steady (not flickering)[1]. He should practise Yoga in a spot sloping to the east or north.

37. He shall perform *Dhāraṇā* in the vital breath, eyes, skin, ears, mind, intellect and chest. He shall take particular delight in keeping *Dhāraṇā* in the vital breath.

38. After realizing the advent of death and the groups (of ill omens) he shall perform Yoga-Dhāraṇās in the parts of the bodies twelve times.

39. He shall perform hundred or hundred and eight *Dhāraṇās* on the head. Without Dhāraṅās in the Yoga, the breath does not function properly (goes anywhere).

40. Then with a purity of mind, he should fill the body with *Oṁkāra*. Thus full of *Oṁkāra*, he does not perish. He becomes imperishable.

CHAPTER TWENTY

The Characteristics of Attainment of Oṁkāra

Vāyu said :

1. Henceforth, I shall explain the characteristics of *Oṁkāra* and the ways of its attainment. It consists of three *Mātrās* inclusive of vowels and a consonant.

2. The first Mātrā is *Vaidyuti*; the second is *Tāmasi* The third *Nirguṇi*, which follows the syllable (?)

1. Cf. yathā dipo nivātastho neṅgate sopamā smṛtā/
BG. VI. 19.

3. The *Mātrā* born of the Gāndhāra note, shall be known as Gandharvī. When employed on the head, its touch is like the touch of an ant.

4. The *Oṁkara* so directed ceases to blow (sound) in the head. The Yogin so full of *Oṁkāra* becomes imperishable in the imperishable Being.

5. The *Oṁkāra* is the bow. The *Ātman* is the arrow. Brahman is its target. It should be hit unerringly. Like the arrow, the *Ātman* shall be wholly absorbed in Brahman.[1]

6. The single-syllabled *Om* is the Brahman hidden in the cavity of the heart. This *Om* is the set of the three Vedas, three worlds, three fires, three steps of Viṣṇu and the Ṛk, Sāman and Yajur *mantras*.

7. It should be known that in fact, it consists of four *Mātrās*. The Yogin who is in communion with these will attain the *sālokya* form of salvation.

8. The letter '*A*' should be known as the phoneme (?) The letter '*U*' is *svarita* (the circumflexed note between the high and the low). The letter '*M*' is the prolated syallable. The three *Mātrās* thus termed shall be known.

9. The letter '*A*' is Bhūrloka. The letter '*U*' is Bhuvarloka. The letter '*M*' with its consonant part is Svarloka.

10. The *Oṁkāra* is a set of three worlds. Its head is the heaven. It is the entire universe. It is the region of Brahmā.

11. The region of the *Mātrās* is Rudraloka but '*A*' alone is the region of Śiva. He (the Yogin) worships that region by specific meditation.

12. Hence the devotee shall always take delight in meditation. He should worship the *Mātrā-less* syllable strenuously if he aspires for eternal region.

13. The first *Mātrā* is the short vowel; the second is long and the third is indicated as *pluta* (prolated).

14. These *Mātrās* shall be known precisely and in due order. They shall be retained as far as possible.

15. He who concentrates the sense-organs, mind and in-

1. Cf. *Muṇḍaka Up.* 2. 2. 4.

tellect in the *Ātman*, even if he bears only half a *Mātrā*, will attain the fruit.

16. He who worships with *Aśvamedha* every month for a hundred years, will not attain the benefit which accrues through a single *Mātrā*.

17. One can attain through a *Mātrā* that benefit which a man attains by drinking a drop of water from the tip of *Kuśa* grass, once in a month, for full hundred years.

18. One can attain through a *Mātrā* that benefit which accrues from *Iṣṭāpūrta*, from sacrifice or from truthful utterances or refraining from meat-diet.

19. One can obtain through one *Mātrā* the fruit which accrues to the warriors fighting for their master without turning away from the battlefield.

20. What one fully attains through one *Mātrā* cannot be attained through austere penance or through (performance of) sacrifices with plenty of gifts.

21. The half *Mātrā* there, which is known as prolated, shall be pursued by the Yogins who are householders.

22. This is specially the *Mātra* characterised by *Aiśvaryas* (supernormal powers). Thereby, the Yogins gain the eightfold super-power like *Aṇimā*. Hence he shall practise the Yoga thereof.

23. A Yogin who is thus in communion (with the soul) becomes pure. Having suppressed the sense-organs and conquered them, he can realize the Ātman and one who realizes his soul, gets everything (i.e. becomes omniscient).

24. The intelligent Yogin who engages (himself) in meditation, attains the knowledge of the Ṛgveda, Yajurveda, Sāmaveda and the Upaniṣadic lore through (his) Yogic knowledge.

25. Thus with all his elements (that constitute his body) dissolved, he becomes elementless. He then transmigrates to the eternal region whence there is no return.

26. After seeing it with divine sight he meditates on the four-armed, four-faced Prakṛti designated as Viśvarūpā (one manifested as the universe).

27. One goat (i.e. unborn individual soul) takes pleasure and sleeps (enjoys) with this famale goat (i.e. the unborn Prakṛti) which is beautiful, and red, white, black in complexion (i.e. consisting of the *Rajas*, *Sattva* and *Tamas guṇas*) and procreates creatures in great numbers. But the other goat (liberated soul) abandons her after enjoying her.

27 (A). The wise attain immortality after realising the reality about the primordial Prakṛti of eight syllables, of sixteen hands and feet, of four faces, of three tufts, of a single horn, who is primordial, unborn and the creator of the universe after its own form. The Brāhmaṇas who know (realize) the *Oṁkāra* are never born again (i.e. get liberated from *Saṁsāra*).

28-29. He who understands properly and again meditates upon the imperishable supreme Brahman called *Oṁkāra* leaves off the cycle of worldly existence. He becomes liberated from all ties and bondages. Undoubtedly he attains the auspicious eternal region devoid of attributes. Thus I have described to you the way for the attainment and realization of *Oṁkāra*.

30. [Prose portion] Obeisance to the lord of the worlds who has grasped the idea and knowledge of the Kalpas, and whose worship is beneficial to you. Obeisance to the attributeless, eternal Brahman to whom the lord of Yogins is devoted. One should worship him who is extremely pure and unaffected like the lotus-leaf untouched by water. *Oṁkāra* is the holiest of holy things. Consisting of syllables short and prolated, it is holy and full of sanctifying things. One shall worship *Oṁkāra* devoid of sound, touch, colour, taste and smell. Obeisance to the lord of Prakṛti, obeisance to Yogīśvara by whom has been made the fierce firmament, the earth firm and the heaven extended, by whom Elysium has been created and Ether made—the two being the abode of Devas. He has universe as (his) form. He is incomparable with *Prāṇa* and *Apāna*. He is a sacrifice and constitutes all things. The sacrifice is Veda. Veda is obeisance. Obeisance is Rudra. Hail to Rudra. Obeisance to the lord of the chiefs of Yogins. This prayer for success should be performed in the evening, morning and midday. Rudra bestows the fruits of all desires.

30. [Verse] Just as a ripe fruit is separated from the stalk

when wind blows at it, so also sin in quelled by the obeisance to Rudra.

31. The obeisance to Rudra is decisively the bestower of the fruits of all pious rites, but so is not the case with the obeisance to other Deves. He who bows to other Devas does not attain the same benefit.

32. Hence a Yogin should worship the supreme lord after taking bath thrice a day. Brahman is extensive. Brahman is tenfold extensive.

33. The lord created everything at the opportune time with Oṁkāra all round. Viṣṇu was also created by him as well as obeisance.

34. Obeisance as well as Oṁkāra eulogise the lord. *Yajña* eulogises *Oṁkāra*; obeisance eulogises *Yajña*. Rudra eulogises prayer. Hence Rudra's region is auspicious.

35. These are the secrets of the ascetics in due order. He who understands meditation attains the highest region.

CHAPTER TWENTYONE

Review of Kalpas

Sūta said :

1. Among the sages refulgent like fire, who resided in the Naimiṣa forest, there was an intelligent sage, well versed in the Vedas and was called Sāvarṇi.

2. He was very eloquent. Standing ahead of them with humility he approached Vāyu the highly majestic god who frequented that place to render favour to the *Sattra*-worshippers, and asked him.

Sāvarṇi requested :

3. O all-pervading Lord! We wish to hear from you who are the observer of everything, the legends of the Purāṇa, which are on a par with the Vedas.

4. How did lord Brahmā beget from his forehead, Lord Rudra of such a splendour, as his son ?

5. How was lord Brahmā born of a lotus? How did his son Śarva obtain the status of a Rudra?

6-7. How is it that Viṣṇu cherishes such unparalleled love towards Rudra ? There is no doubt that gods always sing. "All gods as well as *gaṇas* consist (are of the form) of Viṣṇu. There is no other goal higher that attainment of Viṣṇu". How is it that such (a great god like) Viṣṇu always pays obeisance to Bhava (Śiva) ?

Sūta said :

8. Thus addressed, Vāyu spoke to Sāvarṇi, "O Sage, an excellent question has been aptly asked by you.

9-10. Listen (attentively) as I explain in detail, how it was that Rudra became the son of Brahmā, how Brahmā was born of the lotus, how Śaṅkara became Rudra, how there is such an intense love between Viṣṇu and Rudra and why Viṣṇu always bows to Śiva. I shall explain it in due order.

11. O excellent Brāhmaṇa, after the dissolution of the last Manvantara, the seventh Kalpa called Padma came to an end. The current Kalpa is Vārāha. I shall narrate it in detail."

Sāvarṇi enquired :

12. After what period of time, does the Kalpa begin ? What is the duration of a Kalpa? Please explain to me; I am curious to know.

Vāyu replied :

13. I shall mention in due order the duration of the periods of the seven Manvantaras. Understand as I explain it briefly.

14. Two thousand eight hundred and sixtytwo crores and seventy *Niyutas* (millions) of years constitute a Kalpa. While calculating the years of half a Kalpa, this was spoken (before).

15. The multiplier and the divison too have been mentioned before. The surplus of years would be one hundred and seventyeight crores, two hundred thousand, and nine crores.

16. Upto Vaivasvata Manvantara, this should be known as the period of Kalpa according to human calculation. Half a Kalpa is multiplied by two.

17. This alone is the time limit for the seven future Kalpas. It shall be known as the view of the Lord himself.

18. The time limit is fifty-eight million and eight thousand. Another eighty-four shall be included in this.

19. The seven sages, Devas with Indra as their leader and Manu—The surplus years of this time limit should be known accordingly.

20. Thus their Manvantara-ending with human beings has been narrated. The Devas ending with Praṇava (Viṣṇu), Sādhyas, Deva-gaṇas and Viśvedevas live for the whole of the Kalpa.

21. The Kalpa that is current is called Vārāha. It consists (of the rule) of fourteen Manus beginning with Svāyaṁbhuva.

The sages said :

22. Why is the Vārāha Kalpa proclaimed by that name ? What is the reason that the Lord is glorified as *Varāha* (Boar).

23. Who is lord Varāha ? What is his origin ? What is his nature ? Why was he born ? We wish to know this.

Vāyu replied :

24-25. I shall explain all this according as I have seen and heard, (as to) how Varāha was born and what the object was (of his incarnation), how this Kalpa came to be called Vārāha, what Kalpa is and what is the conception (called Kalpa), what is the transitional period between two Kalpas.

26-27a. Bhava is proclaimed as the first Kalpa in the beginning of the world[1]. It should be known that Lord Ānanda

1. Verses 26-34 give the serial order of Kalpas as follows: Bhava, Bhuva, Tapas, Bhava (?), Raṁbha, Ṛtu, Kratu, Vahni, Havyavāhana, Sāvitra, Bhuva(?), Uśika, Kuśika, Gandharva, Ṛṣabha, Ṣaḍja, Mārjālīya, Madhyama, Vairājaka, Niṣāda, Pañcama, Meghavāhana, Cintaka, Ākūti, Vijñāti, Manas,

himself abides here at present (then). This was the celestial seat of Brahmā obtained (by him). It was of divine origin.

27b-34. The second Kalpa was Bhuva; the third one was called Tapas. Bhava (?) should be known as the fourth (Kalpa); the fifth was Raṁbha; the sixth Kalpa was Ṛtu; the seventh is remembered as Kratu; the eighth was Vahni; the ninth was Havya-vāhana; Sāvitra was the tenth Kalpa. The eleventh (Kalpa) was called Bhuva (?); the twelfth was Uśika; the thirteenth was Kuśika. The fourteenth was Gandharva when Gāndhāra as a musical note of the gamut came into existence and Gandharvas were born.[1] O Brāhmaṇas, Ṛṣabha should be known as the fifteenth Kalpa when world-enchanting note of the gamut Ṛṣabha was born. The world-fascinating (musical) note *Ṣaḍja* was the sixteenth Kalpa when six (types of men? or) sages were born. The six seasons viz.: *Śiśira* (the Winter), *Vasanta* (the Spring), the Summer, the Rainy-season, the Autumn (*Śarad*) and the *Hemanta* (the cold season in Mārgaśīrṣa and Pauśa months) are the mental sons of god Brahmā. These sons born of the note *Ṣaḍja* were born in the sixteenth Kalpa. As the Lord Maheśvara was born along with those six, the musical note *Ṣaḍja* was born of him. The musical note *Ṣaḍja* is (deep and loud) like the (sound of the) ocean.

35. The seventeenth Kalpa is known as Mārjālīya[2] since

Bhāva and Bṛhat. A few more are added in the next chapter (22-9 ff). But the peculiar omission is *Vārāha Kalpa*. It is mentioned so many times elsewhere but is *not* included in this list. Similarly *Padma-Kalpa* mentioned as 7th Kalpa is not found in the list. The name of Bhava Kalpa is repeated twice. The notes of Gamut are adopted for Kalpa-names.

1. This is the translation of the emended line of the Text *Ṛṣayo yatra saṁbhūtāḥ svaro loka-manoharaḥ*. Births of sages and the musical notes are unrelated. So *Ṛṣayo* is emended as *Ṛṣabho* (the musical note RA or Ṛṣabha, which is also the name of the Kalpa) and *Saṁbhūtāḥ* is emended as *'saṁbhūtaḥ*. It agrees with number and gender of *Svaro loka-manoharaḥ* of the Venkateshwar Text. The line is emended as per A (Anandashrama, Poona) edition which is ch. 21 v. 34A which runs as follows :

Ṛṣabho yatra sambhūtaḥ svaro loka-manoharaḥ

The line is translated above.

2. Mārjālīya is a heap of earth to the right of the *Vedi* (altar) of the sacrifice on which sacrificial vessels are cleansed (?) or 'fond of purification' (said of Śiva) —MW 813A. But neither of the meanings is suitable here.

Mārjālīya is that activity from which the world of Brahmā is created.

36. The eighteenth Kalpa was Madhyama wherein the note of music of the gamut *Madhyama* honoured by the note of musical scale called *Dhaivata* arose in all beings from the self-born deity (Brahmā).

37. Then, the nineteenth Kalpa, was Vairājaka, where lord Vairāja, son of Brahmā, was the Manu.

38. His son was the pious, righteous Dadhīci. He, the refulgent Prajāpati, became the lord of Devas.

39. As Prajāpati Dadhīci was engaged in sacrifice, Gāyatrī was enamoured of him. From that was born the charming musical note (*Niṣāda*?) as a son to Dadhīci.

40-42. The twentieth Kalpa is glorified after him as *Niṣāda*. On seeing him (born), Prajāpati desisted from creating (beings). In order to create progeny *Niṣāda* performed a penance for one thousand divine years without taking any food and with his senses controlled (who had thus conquered his sense-organs). The refulgent Brahmā, the grandfather of the worlds, said, "sit down" as the former was standing with arms lifted up, hungry and thirsty, dejected and exhausted with penance. Since Brahmā told this quiescent son to sit down, he came to be known as *Niṣāda*,[1] the note of the gamut (endowed with *niṣāda* restfulness?).

43-45. O Brāhmaṇas, the twentyfirst Kalpa should be known as *Pañcama*. (In this) Prāṇa, Apāna, Samāna, Udāna and Vyāna (the five vital airs) were the mental sons of god Brahmā and were on par with him. The great Lord was worshipped by them with eulogistic words. As he was praised in chorus by those noble-souled ones, the fifth note (*Pañcama*) of the gamut became melodious. Hence the Kalpa became known as *Pañcama*.

46. The twenty-second Kalpa should be known as Meghavāhana when the mighty-armed Viṣṇu became a cloud and carried the hide-clad lord (Śiva) for a thousand divine years.

---

1. Fanciful derivations are given here to the names of the Kalpas. One is reminded of stories in *Brāhmaṇas* which supply such explanatory stories to derive names or terms.

47. From the mouth (of Viṣṇu) who was overwhelmed by burden and was gasping for breath, out came *Kāla* (Time) of huge dimensions, the illuminator of the world. Hence he is declared by Brāhmaṇas as Viṣṇu, the son of Kaśyapa.

48-49. The twenty-third Kalpa should be known as Cintaka. Citi was the glorious son of Prajāpati. As Brahmā was meditating on the twins—Citi and Cintā were born. Hence the Kalpa was designated as Cintaka by the self-born lord.

50. The twenty-fourth Kalpa is called Ākūti. Ākūti and Devī were twins.

51. Since Prajāpati asked Ākūti to create progeny, he should be regarded a man, and the Kalpa was named after him.

52. The twenty-fifth Kalpa was Vijñāti. Goddess (his spouse) and Vijñāti gave birth to twins.

53. While he was meditating in mind, being desirous of a son, spiritual knowledge dawned upon him. Hence he came to be called *Vijñāti*.

54. The twenty-sixth Kalpa was Manas. Goddess Śāṅkarī gave birth to twins.

55. While he thought of the subjects and desired to create them, a conception (*Bhāvanā*) arose in his mind. Since he was created by god Brahmā for procreating the subjects, he is therefore, remembered as *Bhāvanā-Saṁbhava* due to the creation of subjects.

56. The twenty-seventh Kalpa is designated as Bhāva. Goddess Paurṇamāsī gave birth to twins.

57-58. While Brahmā, the great god (Parameṣṭhin), desirous of creating the subjects was meditating on the great Ātman Īśvara, Agni (Fire god) became a circular sphere surrounded by clusters of rays. Huge-bodied as he was, he enveloped the earth and firmament and blazed.

59-61. At the end of a thousand years, when the sphere of light was complete, he saw the sphere of the sun risen overpowering it. Since the lord sun of complete sphere invisible to (all) beings was seen by Brahmā Parameṣṭhin and since the Yogas, and Mantras revived and rose along with the sphere and since this was seen, the Kalpa was called Darśa.

62. Since lord Soma (the full Moon) filled up the mind of Brahmā Parameṣṭhin, it is known as Paurṇamāsī.

63. Therefore Parva days, new moon and full moon days were accepted by *Yogis* as the most important days in both the fortnights for the achievement of their interest (desired object).

64. Those (persons) of twice-born castes who perform the Darśa and Paurṇamāsa sacrifice, have never to return from the region of Brahmā (to Saṃsāra).

65-66. One who without having maintained the sacrificial fires dies or one who goes along the path of heroes (meets death on the battlefield) should stabilise his mind and repeat this Mantra[1] slowly—"O Agni, you are Rudra, Asura. You are the earth and heaven. You are Śiva. When urged, you rule over the breath. You are the sun. You sever our noose with your sword and blaze." A twice-born person should repeat this *mantra* well, within his mind. If he then enters the fire, he goes to the region of Rudra.

67. The Śruti declares that fire is the moon and the lord Kāla and Rudra, Hence he who enters fire does not return from Rudra.

68-69. The twenty-eighth Kalpa is known as *Bṛhat*. While god Brahmā, desirous of sons and procreating the subjects, mentally meditated on *Bṛhat* and *Rathantara* Sāmans, the *Bṛhat Sāman* came out with faces all round. Hence the meditators on truth call this Kalpa Bṛhat.

70. *Rathantara* shall be known as the great sphere of the sun extending to eighty-eight thousand Yojanas. Therefore the (cosmic) egg-like sphere of the sun should be known as impenetrable.

71. The *Bṛhatsāman* pierces the sphere of the sun. Brāhmaṇas of firm vows, fixing their *Ātmans* in Yoga, break through this sphere and achieve the goal. *Rathantara* includes other Kalpas collectively.

---

1. This is untraced in M. Bloomfield's *A Vedic Concordance*. Presumably it is a Purāṇic mantra.

72. Thus the spiritual philosophy of diverse nature has been narrated by me. Henceforward, I shall explain the details of Kalpas.

CHAPTER TWENTY TWO

Number of Kalpas[1]

The sages said :

1. O great sage, all this is wonderful. The secret of the Kalpas and the settlement of *mantras* have been narrated by you.

2. There is nothing in the three worlds which is not known to you. Hence please narrate in details the number of Kalpas, to us.

Vāyu said :

3. I shall explain to you the number of Kalpas precisely and what constitutes the foremost Yugas and years to the supreme god Brahmā.

4. One thousand (human) Kalpas constitute a year of god Brahmā. Eight thousand such years make a Yuga of Brahmā.

5-6. A thousand Yugas constitute a *Savana* of Prajāpati. Six thousand *Savanas* constitute the period of Brahmā's existence. I shall narrate their number later on in due course.

7. I shall now mention in order the names of other Kalpas beyond the twenty-eight Kalpas already enumerated by me, with their names.

8. Know also the names and origins of the *Mantras* in the other Kalpas beyond *Rathantara* and *Bṛhat Sāman*.

9-10. The twenty-ninth Kalpa should be known as Śveta-lohita. During the period of this Kalpa, while Brahmā was

1. The present chapter deals with the remaining Kalpas, viz. (29) Śveta-lohita, (30) Rakta, (31) Pītavāsas, (32) Sita, and (33) Viśvarūpa.

One wonders how to reconcile this list with the statement in *supra* 7. 30 which limits the number of Kalpas to ten.

engaged in supreme meditation, a son of great splendour resembling the Fire-god was born to him. He had white turban, white garland and white garments and a tuft.

11. His face was dreadful, extremely fierce and very much awe-inspiring. It was reddish white. He was blazing with a refulgent body. He had a huge mouth and a white form.

12-13. On seeing him, god Brahmā, the glorious Puruṣa with faces all round and the grandfather of the world, paid obeisance to that Kumāra (youth), the supporter of the world, the omnipresent great Lord, the god of gods who was the refulgent ancient Puruṣa, the eternal universal soul of Yogins.

14. God Brahmā embraced him to his bosom—the great god (Mahādeva), the supreme soul, the ruler of all, who was newly-born (*Sadyojāta*).[1] He, then, meditated upon Brahman, knowing him, the ruler of Devas. The Lord of the world became delighted and burst into laughter.

15. Then, from his side were manifested noble-souled, white-complexioned sages refulgent with the splendour of Brahman, bedecked with white garlands and unctions (probably with holy ashes—*Bhasman*).

16. They were Sunanda, Nandaka, Viśvananda and Nandana, the noble-souled disciples by whom Brahman was then surrounded.

17. In front of him, the great sage Śveta of brilliant white complexion, endowed with great splendour was born. Nara was born of him.

18-19. All the sages, engrossed in Prāṇāyāma and absorbed (resolutely) in the realization of Brahman became absolved of sins, free from *mala* ('bondage' in Śaivism). Endowed with the splendour of Brahman, they transcend the world of god Brahmā, and go to the region of the (supreme) Brahman.

---

1. *Sadyojāta* is one of forms (also faces) of Śiva. This appeared in *Śveta-lohita Kalpa*. As in his incarnations, these forms also had four sons or disciples.

Vāyu continued :

20. The thirtieth Kalpa is well-known by the name Rakta where the Being of great splendour assumed red complexion.

21. From Brahmā, the supreme god who, being desirous of a son, was engaged in meditation, a boy of great splendour was born. His body was red. He wore red garlands and garments. He was red-eyed and valorous.

22. On seeing that boy of red garments, he entered into deep meditation and realised that he was the great lord of the universe.

23. After bowing to him, Brahmā became extremely self-controlled and meditated on the Vāmadeva[1] form of Brahman.

24. The great god who was thus meditated upon by Brahmā, the Parameṣṭhin, spoke to the grandfather of the world (Brahmā) with mind full of affection.

25-26. "O most venerable god ! Inasmuch as I was visualized by you with highest devotion and Yoga of meditation while you were meditating with the desire of having a son, you who are endowed with great penance, will realize me, the supreme ruler and supporter of the world, by engaging yourself in meditation in every Kalpa." Saying so he, Śarva, burst into a boisterous laugh.

27. Then four sons of noble souls were born to him. They shone with pure intellect.

28. They were Viraja, Vivāha, Viśoka and Viśvabhāvana. They were all well-versed in the Vedas, equal to Brahmā, heroic, diligent and persevering.

29. They wore red clothes, red garlands and unguents. They had smeared red ashes over their bodies. They were ruddy-faced and red-eyed.

30-31. Those industrious, noble souls, well-versed in the Vedas, eulogising that Brahman Vāmadeva, imparted instructions in piety for showering grace on the people who desired to receive instructions from them. Then at the end of a thousand years, they re-entered Rudra, the eternal great lord.

---

1. Vāmadeva—another form of Śiva. This too had four sons listed in v. 28 below. This form appeared in the *Rakta Kalpa*.

32-33. Other excellent Brāhmaṇas practising Yoga for their communion with Vāmadeva attained the lord, as they are his devotees and attached to him. Becoming sinless and pure and attaining the splendour of Brahman, all of them reach Rudra-loka whence there is no return to Saṁsāra.

CHAPTER TWENTYTHREE

Incarnations of Maheśvara

Vāyu continued :

1. The thirtyfirst Kalpa is known as Pītavāsas[1] (yellow garmented). Here, god Brahmā of great brilliance assumes a yellow complexion.

2. While Brahmā, the supreme god, was meditating with a desire for sons, a son of great splendour robed in yellow attire appeared.

3. He was a mighty-armed young man with yellow ointment applied over his limbs. He wore yellow garlands, yellow sacred-thread and yellow turban.

4. On seeing him engaged in meditation, Brahmā mentally saluted him who was the supreme lord and the creator of the universe.

5. When god Brahmā became absorbed in meditation, he saw a great hideous cow pertaining to the great god, coming out from the mouth of Maheśvara.

6. That Cow-goddess had four feet, four faces, four hands, four teats, four eyes, four horns, four curved fangs, four mouths and faces on every side. It was united with thirtytwo *Lokas*.

7. On seeing that great goddess Maheśvarī, the god of immense splendour who was bowed to by Devas, spoke :

8. "Come on. Come on," said he, eulogising her frequently by terms such as 'intellect', 'memory' and 'knowledge'.

---

1. Verses 1-19 describe the 31st Kalpa called *Pītavāsas*. God Śiva incarnated as Vāmadeva and had four disciples or sons. As the name of the Kalpa implies, yellow colour is a special feature of this Kalpa.

He got up with palms joined in reverence and addressed her thus.

9. "Enveloping the universe with Yoga, bring the whole world under (your) control. Or you will join with Rudra and become his consort. For the welfare of Brāhmaṇas, you will be the highest truth."

10-11. Then the lord of the chief of Devas gave the four-footed great goddess (Maheśvarī) to Brahmā who was meditating with a desire to have sons. Then realising by his Yogic meditation that she was the supreme goddess, Brahmā who deserves obeisance from all the world, sought refuge in her. Having meditated on the Gāyatrī pertaining to Rudra, god Brahmā became self-controlled.

12. After performing the *Japa* of Rudra Gāyatrī—the Vedic lore that was given to him and the great goddess bowed to by the people of Rudra-loka, he resorted to the great lord (Rudra) with his mind fixed on him in meditation.

13. Again remembered by him, the great lord gave him the divine Yoga, overlordship and glory, the riches of knowledge and detachment.

14-15. Then the Lord burst out into a terrific, boisterous and dazzling loud laugh. And around there appeared brilliant sons, who wore yellow garlands and yellow robes. They had yellow ointments. They had yellow heads, yellow turbans, yellow hair and yellow faces.

16-17. After staying for a thousand years, at the end of the period, these Yogic souls of pure splendour, desiring the welfare of Brāhmaṇas, took their ceremonial bath. They were endowed with piety and Yogic power. They imparted instruction in Yoga to the sages engaged in the *Sattra* of long duration and entered lord Rudra.

18-19. Even all others—those who have restrained their souls, who are engaged in meditation, who have conquered the sense organs and who have thus resorted to the lord, eschew their sins, become sinless and pure and are endowed with the splendour of Brahman. They enter lord Rudra never to be born again (in *saṁsāra*).

Vāyu said :

20. When the Kalpa of yellow colour of the self-born deity passed away, another Kalpa called *Sita*[1] began to function.

21. When the universe was turned into a single vast ocean and a thousand divine years had elapsed, the dejected Brahmā desirous of creating the subjects began to think.

22 While he was thinking and meditating with a desire for sons, the complexion of that great god turned black.

23. Then he of great splendour saw that a boy of great powers, dark in complexion and shinning with his lustre had appeared.

24. He wore dark garments, an excellent black turban, black sacred thread, black garlands and unguents and had a black head.

25. On seeing the noble-souled, immortal one with terrible *mantras*, he (Brahmā) paid homage to the dark and tawny Lord of the chief of the Devas and the universe.

26. The glorious Brahmā was engaged in *Prāṇāyāma* (breath control). With Maheśvara (the great god) in his heart, he mentally sought refuge in the Lord of ascetics absorbed in meditation. Brahmā then contemplated on Brahman as Aghora.

27. While he was thus meditating Lord Rudra burst out in a boisterous laughter.

28. Then from his sides four noble sons emerged. They were black in complexion and had black garlands and unguents.

29. They wore black garments, turbans, clothes and had black faces. They laughed aloud boisterously. They uttered great hissing sounds. They performed obeisance again and again.

30. Then they worshipped him for a thousand years by means of Yoga and at the end of that period they transferred their activities to their disciples.

---

1. Verses 20-32 describe the 32nd Kalpa called *Sita* (black). Complexion and dress suitable to the name of the Kalpa and birth of four sons after a boistrous laugh—all these are common features to other Avatāras of Śiva. The *avatāra* or form of Śiva here is *Aghora*.

31. Endowed with Yoga and by its means, they contemplated upon Śiva. They entered the region of Rudra, the lord of the universe—the region that was devoid of impurities and attributes.

32. Other Brāhmaṇas too well-versed in the injunctions who meditate upon Rudra by means of Yoga attain the eternal lord.

33. When that terrible black Kalpa elapsed, another Kalpa named *Viśvarūpa*[1] began to function.

34. After the period of dissolution was over when the mobile and immobile beings were created and when Brahmā desirous of sons began to meditate, the omnipresent Sarasvatī of great sound manifested (herself).

35-36. Brahmā who had a Yogic communion with his Ātman mentally meditated on Īśāna, the lord of all, the omnipresent, who was clad in universal garlands and robes and who wore universal sacred thread and universal turban and who had applied universal scents, who had mighty arms and had universe as his abode. Brahmā bowed to the lord.

37. To him who was thus meditating and saluting, with the words "*Oṁ* to Īśāna, O Mahādeva, obeisance be to you," the Lord Īśa (Śiva) said, "I am pleased with you. Ask what you desire."

38. Then, bowing and eulogising the lord with words, the delighted Brahmā replied with a contented mind:

39. "O lord I wish to know your universal form that pervades and rules over the universe. I wish to know who is this supreme god.

40. Who is this goddess with four feet, four faces, four horns, four mouths, four teeth and four teats?

41. How is she described as four-armed, four-eyed and pervader of the universe? What is her name? What is her Ātman? What is her prowess in activity?"

---

1. Verses 33-55 describe briefly the Viśvarūpa Kalpa. In this the Īśāna form of Śiva manifested himself and also goddess Sarasvatī—the cow called Prakṛti, the source of all the universe. As usual Śiva laughs loudly and four sons are born who follow the Yogic path for a thousand years, then enter Lord Rudra.

Maheśvara replied :

42. "Listen precisely to this holy and nourishing secret of all *mantras*. It is the great secret of the first creation.

43. The Kalpa that is current now is known as Viśvarūpa, wherein Devas, Bhava and others and twenty-six Manus (are said to have existed).

44. O Lord, this is the thirty-third Kalpa since you have occupied the position of Brahmā.

45. O great sage, O lord of devas, know that previous to your existence a hundred thousand self-born deities (i.e. Brahmās) have passed away.

46. It should be known that Ānanda (is your predecessor). In Ānanda you will be ultimately dissolved. You are of the spiritual lineage of Gālavya. By virtue of penance you have become my son.

47-48. In you are firmly established Yoga, Sāṅkhya, penance, learning, sacred precepts, rites, order, truth, Brahman, non-violence, series of generations, meditation, the body for meditation, quiescence, Vidyā and Avidyā, mind, fortitude, splendour, calmness, memory, intellect, modesty, purity, speech, contentment, nourishment, rituals, shyness and forbearance.

49. Know, O Brahmā, that this great goddess is *Prakṛti*, your mother. She possesses twenty-six attributes. She is called "thirty-two syllabled".

50-51. This venerable goddess is the mother of the self-born god. She has four faces. She is the origin of the universe. She is glorified as Prakṛti, the cow whom the meditators of the reality call *Prakṛti* and *Pradhāna*. This unborn (Goddess) is red, white and black in complexion. She is beautiful in form and creator of the universe. While I, the unborn, am intelligent knower that, the universal-formed (all-pervading) Gāyatrī, is the universal-formed cow."

52. After saying thus, the great lord laughed boisterously. Moving clapping his hands loudly he produced 'Kahākaha' sound.

53. Then from his sides divine sons of various forms were born, some with matted hair, some with shaven heads, some with tufts and some with half-shaven heads.

54-55. Those sons of great prowess worshipped the lord for a thousand divine years by means of Yoga as mentioned (before), instructed decent pupils in righteousness and Yogic practice and restraint. Thereafter, they entered Lord Rudra.

Vāyu continued :[1]

56. Then Brahmā, the grandfather of the world was struck with wonder. He resorted to the great god (Mahādeva) with heart full of devotion. He spoke the words, "O Lord ! How is this entire whiteness of yours?"

The Lord replied :

57. When it was *Śvetakalpa*, I became wholly white. I had white turban, white garlands and white garments, and was known as the auspicious.

58. My bones, flesh, hair and skin were white. My blood too was white. Hence this Kalpa came to be known as Śveta.

59. Due to my grace, the lord of Devas possessed white limbs and white blood, The Gāyātrī called Brahma Gāyatrī[2] was of white complexion.

60. O lord of Devas, I, the eternal *Sadyojāta*, stationed in the secret region, have been realised by you by means of penance. So this secret Brahman is glorified as *Sadyojāta*.

---

1. In verses 57-74 Lord Śiva recapitulates the names of the Kalpas and his appearance as follows:

N. of the Kalpa	Siva's incarnation	Special feature	Gāyatrī*
1. Śveta	Sadyojyoti	Whiteness	Brahma Gāyatrī
2. Lohita or Rakta	Vāmadeva	Redness	Rudrāṇi (Rudra Gāyatri)
3. Sita or Kṛṣṇa	Kāla or Aghora	Blackness	—
4. Viśvarūpa	Īśāna	all colours	Viśvarūpa

2. As the importance of the so-called *Gāyatrī* mantra became well-established, the Purāṇa writers (devotees of one of the trinity of gods) had a Gāyatrī Mantra pertaining to their own special deity. Thus AP 317. 7 gives the Śiva (Rudra) Gāyatrī as follows :

tan Maheśāya vidmahe, Mahādevāya dhīmahi/
tan naḥ Śīvaḥ pracodayāt //

61. Hence the Brāhmaṇas who realize me hidden in secret (the heart) will approach me whence the return (to saṁsāra) is rare.

62. When I next became Lohita (red), the Kalpa too was known as Lohita through the colour assumed by me.

63. Then Gāyatrī, the cow was glorified as endowed with red flesh, bones, blood, milk, eyes, and udder.

64. Then I became Vāmadeva as my colour changed into red. By the excellence of Yoga, I was known as Vāmadeva.

65. Still, O Mighty one, I have been known by you of restrained soul as white-coloured that excels all colours. Henceforth I attained fame as Vāmadeva.

66-67. Those twice-born ones who realize my position as Vāmadeva and who realise Mother Rudrāṇī, Gāyatrī, are liberated from sins. They become free from passion. They have the splendour of Brahman. They will attain Rudrā's region from which the return is rarely possible.

68. When this Kalpa became terribly black in colour through the colour assumed by me, the Kalpa was called Kṛṣṇa.

69. There I am like Kāla (God of death). I am black and I illuminate the worlds. O Brahmā, I have been realised by you as terrible and of terrific exploit.

70. Hence to those on the earth who realise me in this terrible form, I, the eternal god shall become non-terrible and quiescent.

71. To those on the earth who realize me in universal form, I always become propitious and gentle.

72. Hence this Kalpa too is Viśvarūpa. There Sāvitrī too is Viśvarūpā (universal-formed).

73. These sons of mine art omniformed. They are mentioned to be four. Their feet are indeed worshipped by the worlds.

74. Hence too in my subjects there will be all castes and colours. The subjects shall eat all sorts of foodstuffs. They will be pure according to caste.

75. Salvation, virtue, wealth and love constitute a set of four[1]. Hence the knower and the known too will become fourfold.

1. Verses 75-77 speak of the sets of four (entities) such as *Arthas* (Dharma, Artha, Kāma and Mokṣa) and Yugas (Kṛta, Tretā, Dvāpara and Kali).

76. The living beings are of four categories. The stages in life are four. The feet of virtue are four. My sons are four.

77. The universe consisting of the mobile and immobile beings, exists in the four Yugas. Since it is four-fold, it becomes four-footed.

78. *Bhūr*, *Bhuvar*, *Svar*, *Mahas*, *Jana*, *Tapas* and *Śānta* are the seven regions. The region of Rudra is beyond these regions.

79. *Svar* is the third and *Mahas* is the fourth. This region is very extensive. It is the great abode of Yogins.

80. Those alone who practise Yoga, who know about it, who meditate upon it, who are in communion with it, who are free from the feeling of 'my-ness', who are devoid of egotism, lust or anger, can realize it.

81. Since you saw the four-footed Sarasvatī, all animals will be four-footed and will have four teats.

82. Since Soma charged with Mantras exuded from my mouth, O Brahmā, the soul of all living beings will drink milk contained in her breasts.

83. Hence (the milk) will be full of Soma and is designated as *Amṛta* (nectar) and hence the quadrupeds have their whiteness therefrom.

84. Since the goddess Sāvitrī, the promoter of the welfare of the world, was seen by you again as two-footed, after performing the rites, so all human beings will be two-footed and two-breasted.

85. Since this supreme goddess (Maheśvarī) of great prowess who sustains all living beings, was seen by you as the she-goat (unborn—Prakṛti) endowed with all colours, hence the universality of forms of she-goats.

86. The he-goat (or the unborn deity) of great brilliance will become universal-formed. Its semen will never be wasted. Everywhere it will have fire in its mouth. Hence the all-pervading fire is worthy of sacrifice in the form of an animal.

87. The Brāhmaṇas who have purified their souls by practising penance will see the all-pervading lord as Īśa or Śiva everywhere.

88. Being free from passion and ignorance and after aband-

oning their human bodies, they come to me once and for all and never return.

89. O Brāhmaṇas ! Thus being addressed by Rudra, Lord Brahmā, the grandfather of the world bowed down to Rudra and spoke to him again with humility and restraint.

Brahmā said :

90. O Lord Maheśvara, O chief of the lords of Devas, O omnipresent Mahādeva, these bodies of yours are revered by the people.

91. O long-armed mighty lord, of universal forms, in what Yuga will the Brāhmaṇas see you?

92. O Mahādeva ! By what *Yoga* of *Tattvas* (contemplation of true principle) or yogic meditation can your bodies be visualized by Brāhmaṇas?

The Lord replied:

93-94. Neither by penance, nor by Yoga, nor as a fruit of religious gifts, nor as a result of pilgrimage to holy places, nor by performance of sacrifices with liberal sacrificial fees, nor through the teaching of the Vedas, nor by dedicating the mind, can I be seen by human beings except through meditation.

95. The all-pervading (Viṣṇu) Nārāyaṇa, the Lord of the three worlds will be famous in this world by the name Varāha.

96. He will have four arms, four feet, four eyes, four faces, six parts, three heads and three bodies in three places (worlds). He will assume the form of sacrifice after becoming *Saṁvatsara* (year).

97-99. The four yugas, Kṛta, Tretā, Dvāpara and Kali, will be the four feet. His limbs will be the sacrifices (*Kratus*). His arms are the four Vedas; the season, the beginnings of conjunctions; the two faces are the two *Ayanas* (transits of the sun) and the eyes are four (two per face). The three heads are the three *Parva* days in the months of Phālguna, Āṣāḍha and Kārtika; three seats (in places) are the heaven, the firmament and the

earth. Creation and dissolution (of the world) are described as the two stages (in his life).

100. In Vārāha Kalpa when he assumes the form of Kāla, lord Viṣṇu, Nārāyaṇa will become attainable.

101. O Lord of Devas, you will also become four-faced. People residing in Brahmaloka will worship you.

102-103. When you will see the great sage Puruṣa, Nārāyaṇa, the Lord of the Devas, lying absorbed in meditation on a float in the vast ocean (of cosmic waters), minds of both of you will be confounded by my Yogic power. Without recognizing each other at night you will be fighting with each other.

104. On seeing the worlds containing mobile and immobile beings stationed in each other's belly, you will be very much surprised and realise the truth through meditation.

105. Then you, the lotus-born Brahmā and he the lotus-navelled ancient Puruṣa (Viṣṇu) will become very famous in the Kalpa designated as Lotus (*Padma*)-Kalpa.

106. Then in the seventh Kalpa of the lord, in the Vārāha Kalpa, Viṣṇu of great splendour, Kāla the annihilator of worlds will be born as your son and known as Vaivasvata Manu.

107. In that Kalpa when the four Yugas have passed, I will be born as a great sage called Śveta having a tuft, at the end of the Yuga.[1]

108. In the beautiful peak of Himavat, on the excellent mountain Chāgala, I will be having four disciples who were excellent devotees of Śiva.

109. The four noble-souled Brāhmaṇas, masters of the Vedas, will be Śveta, (Śveta-)Śikha, Śvetāśva and Śveta-Lohitā.

110. Seeing the great goal of Brahman and fully absorbed into Brahman, they will approach and (be united with) him eternally (whence there is no return to *saṁsāra*).

111-112. Again, there will be born the patriarch Vyāsa by

1. Verses 107 ff give a list of Śiva's incarnations along with disciples (or sons). Śiva incarnates in the Kali-yuga and each incarnation has four disciples. The last Avatāra at Kāyārohaṇa in Gujarat is a historical one as we have inscriptional records about him.

For the tabulated list see Introduction : Śaivism.

name Satya[1] in the second Dvāpara age. I, known as Sutāra, will be born in the Kali age for the bliss and welfare of the people and to shower grace (on them).

113. There too my sons will be born: Dundubhi, Śatarūpa, Ṛcīka and Kratumān.

114. Attaining the Yogic power, perfect knowledge and eternal Brahman, they will go to Rudra Loka whence there can be no return (to *saṁsāra*).

115. In the third Dvāpara age, when Bhārgava is the Vyāsa, I will be born as Damana at the end of that age.

116. There also four sons will be born to me, viz. Viśoka, Vikeśa, Viśāpa and Śāpanāśana.

117. Those sons, endowed with great splendour will, by means of Yogic path, go to the region of Rudra whence there is no return.

118. In the fourth Dvāpara age, when Aṅgiras is the Vyāsa, I will be born and known as Suhotra.

119. There also four excellent sons will be born to me. They will be great ascetics, excellent Brāhmaṇas, steadfast in holy rites and endowed with Yogic souls.

120. They will be Sumukha, Durmukha, Durdama and Duratikrama. They will attain the subtle goal of Yoga and become pure. Their sins will be burnt. They too will be going along the same path.

121. In the fifth Dvāpara age, when Savitṛ will be the Vyāsa, I shall be born as a great ascetic (called) Kaṅga (Kaṅka?). I, being a Yogic soul, will perform many activities for showering grace on the world.

---

1. Vyāsa is a designation of the 'arranger' of Vedic mantras into *Saṁhitās*. He is born at the end of Dvāpara. The name of the incumbent of *Vyāsahood* is different. The list of Vyāsas is as follows:

(2) Satya, (3) Bhārgava, (4) Aṅgiras, (5) Savitṛ, (6) Mṛtyu, (7) Śatakratu (Indra), (8) Vasiṣṭha, (9) Sārasvata, (10) Tridhāman, (11) Trivṛt, (12) Śata-tejasa, (13) Dharma-Nārāyaṇa, (14) Surakṣaṇa, (15) Aruṇi, (16) Sañjaya, (17) Deva Kṛtañjaya, (18) Ṛtañjaya, (19) Bhāradvāja, (20) Vācaḥśravas, (21) Vācaspati, (22) Śuktāyana, (23) Tṛṇabindu, (24) Ṛkṣa, (25) Śakti, (26) Parāśara, (27) Jātukarṇya, (28) Dvaipāyana Vyāsa (Viṣṇu's incarnation).

Cf. the List of Vyāsa's in Bd. P. 35. 116-126. It differs from the same list given in KP I. 52.

122. Four blessed sons, pure in origin, free from passion, will be born to me. They will be Yogic souls, steadfast in their rites.

123. They are Sana, Sanandana, Sanātana and Ṛtu Sanatkumāra. They will be devoid of egotism and selfishness. They will approach me and cease to return to the world.

124. In the sixth revolution of the cycle of Yugas, when Lord Mṛtyu is the Vyāsa, I shall be born and will be known as Lokākṣi.

125. Four blessed disciples will be born to me. They will be divine Yogic souls, steadfast in the religious rites. Those highly fortunate ones will be highly honoured by the people.

126. They are Sudhāman, Virāja, Śaṅkha and Pādrava. All of them will be Yogic souls, great Ātmans, with their sins burnt. They too will go along the same path, to be sure.

127-128. In the seventh revolution of Yugas when Śatakratu is the Vyāsa, who formerly was lord Śatakratu of great brilliance, I will be born in the Kali age at the end of that Yuga and be known as Jaigīṣavya. I will be the most excellent of all Yogins.

129. There in that Yuga the four sons will be born to me, viz. Sārasvata, Sumedhas, Vasuvāha and Suvāhana.

130. Resorting to meditation these noble souls will go to Rudraloka.

131-132. In the eighth revolution of the Yuga-cycle when Vasiṣṭha is the Vyāsa, Kapila, Āsuri, Pañcaśikha and Vāgbali, the great Yogi, all of them will be endowed with great prowess. After obtaining (being initiated in) Maheśvara's Yoga and being absorbed in meditation, they will burn down all their sins. They will approach me (and being absorbed in me) they will never return to the world.

133. In the ninth revolution, when Sārasvata is the Vyāsa I will be born and known as Ṛṣabha. There also I shall have sons of great prowess.

134. They will be Parāśara, Gārgya, Bhārgava and Aṅgiras, noble-souled Brāhmaṇas, masters of the Vedas.

135. They will be excellent in penance and prowess. They will be capable of and experts in cursing and blessing. They too

will go in the same manner and attain the goal, through the Yogic meditation, as mentioned before.

136-137. In the tenth Dvāpara when Tridhāman is the Vyāsa, I will be born on the peak of Himavān, on the excellent mountain Bhṛgutuṅga. The peak is known so after the name of Bhṛgu.

138. There also, my sons of steadfast vows will be born. They are Balabandhu, Nirāmitra, Ketuśṛṅga and Tapodhana.

139. They will be great *yogic* souls endowed with the Yoga of meditation. With their sins burnt by penance, they will go to Rudraloka.

140. In the eleventh revolution, when Trivṛt is the Vyāsa, I shall be born at Gaṅgādvāra at the end of the Kali age.

141. My sons of loud voice known as Ugras will be born then. Endowed with great power, they will be well-behaved and well-known in the world.

142. They are Laṁbodara, Laṁba, Laṁbākṣa and Laṁbakeśaka. After attaining the Yoga of Śiva, they will go to Rudraloka. They too will attain the great goal along the same path.

143. In the twelfth revolution (of the *yuga*-cycle), the great sage Śatatejas, most excellent among poets, will be the Vyāsa.

144. At the end of the Yuga, I shall be born on the earth and be known as Atri. I shall resort to the forest called Haimaka and take to Yoga.

145. Here also my sons will be born. They will be great Yogins taking bath and smearing *Bhasma* as unguent and devoted to Rudra.

146. They are Sarvajña, Samabuddhi, Sādhya and Sarva. Devotedly engaged in Yogic meditation, they will go to Rudraloka.

147-148. When the thirteenth revolution has arrived and Dharma Nārāyaṇa is the Vyāsa, I will be born as the sage Vāli in the holy hermitage of Vālakhilyas on the mountain Gandhamādana.

149. There too my sons will be born as great ascetics (lit. who value penance as wealth), viz. : Sudhāman, Kāśyapa, Vasiṣṭha and Virajas.

150. They will be endowed with Yogic power. They will be unsullied. They will remain celibate sublimating their sexuality. Along with the same Yogic path, they will undoubtedly go (to Rudraloka).

151-152. In the fourteenth revolution when Surakṣaṇa is the Vyāsa, I will be born again at the end of the Yuga in the family of Aṅgiras, (and be called) by the name of Gautama, the excellent knower of Yoga. That forest will also become holy and be named Gautama.

153. There also, in the Kali age, my sons will be born, viz. Atri, Ugratapas, Śrāvaṇa and Sraviṣṭaka.

154. They will be great Yogic souls. They will be devoted to the Yoga of meditation. They will go along the same path and become the residents of Rudraloka.

155-157. When in due course the fifteenth revolution arrives and when in the Dvāpara age Āruṇi is the Vyāsa, I shall be a Brāhmaṇa named Vedaśiras. There Vedaśiras, the miraculous missile of the supreme Lord, will be powerful. The mountain (also) will be known as Vedaśiras. I shall be resorting to the Himavān on its excellent peak, the source of the river Sarasvatī.

158-159. There too my sons will be born, viz., Kuṇi, Kuṇibāhu, Kuśarīra and Kunetraka. Yogic souls absorbed in Brahman and of sublimated sexuality, they too will go to Rudraloka along the same path.

160. When the sixteenth revolution has arrived gradually, lord Vyāsa will be born and known as Sañjaya.

161. I too will be born and known as Gokarṇa. The forest will become holy and be known as Gokarṇa.

162. There too very powerful sons will be born to me, viz. Kāśyapa, Uśanas, Cyavana and Bṛhaspati. They too will attain the great region and go along the same path.

163. When the seventeenth revoluation has arrived in due course, Devakṛtañjaya will be the Vyāsa.

164. There too, I will be born and known as Guhāvāsin on the lofty peak of Himavat called Mahālaya. This centre of Siddhis will be very holy.

165. There too, omniscient noble-souled sons will be born to me. They will not be egotistic. They will be the knowers of Yoga and engrossed in Brahman.

166-167. They will be Utathya, Vāmadeva, Mahākāla and Mahālaya. They will have hundreds and thousands of disciples all practising meditation. In that Kalpa, all of them will be in communion with Brahman by means of meditation. Ever practising Yoga and keeping the great lord in their heart, they will step onto Mahālaya and enter the eternal Śiva.

168-169. Then at the end of the age, some other noble Ātmans too will become unsullied and pure. Attaining the holy Mahālaya, the region of the great lord, they will enable the people ten generations before and ten after, to cross the ocean of worldly existence.

170. After making everyone (of the preceding ten and succeeding ten generations) including themselves as the twenty-first, cross the great ocean (of worldly existence), they will attain, through my grace, the region of Rudra, free from (worldly) feverishness.

171-172. When the eighteenth revolution (of the cycle of Yugas) arrives, and Ṛtañjaya is the Vyāsa, I shall be born and known by the name Śikhaṇḍin on the holy peak of Himālaya, worshipped by Devas and Dānavas, where stands the mountain Śikhaṇḍin. The forest known as Śikhaṇḍin is resorted to by sages and Siddhas.

173-174. There too my sons, the ascetics will be born. These are their names: Vācaḥśravas, Ṛtīka, Śāvāsa and Dṛḍhavrata. They will be Yogic souls, very powerful and masters of the Vedas. Attaining the Yoga of Lord Śiva, they will go to Rudraloka.

175. When the nineteenth revolutation arrives, the great sage Bhāradvāja will become Vyāsa.

176. There too, I will be born and known as Jaṭāmālin, on the charming peak of the Himavat where the mountain Jaṭāyu exists.

177. There too very powerful sons will be born to me, viz. Hiraṇyanāman, Kauśilya, Kākṣīva and Kuthumi.

178. All of them will be lords of Yogic holy rites. They will observe celibacy. After attaining the Yoga of the great Lord, they will go to Rudraloka.

179-180. When in the twentieth revolution (of the cycle of yugas) Vācaḥśravas is the Vyāsa, I shall be born and known as

Aṭṭahāsin. Then men will be fond of *Aṭṭahāsas* (boisterous laughs).

181. There on the top of Himavat itself, resorted to by Siddhas and Cāraṇas, very powerful and brilliant sons will be born to me. They will be Yogic souls engrossed in meditation, regularly observing holy rites and highly Sāttvika by nature.

182. They will be Sumantu, Varvari, Subandhu and Kuśikandhara. After attaining the Yoga of the great Lord Rudra, they will go to Rudraloka.

183-184. When the twentyfirst revolution arrives in due course and when Vācaspati is the Vyāsa, I will be born and known by the name Dāruka. And the holy forest will be known as Devadāruvana.

185. There too highly powerful and brilliant sons, namely Plakṣa, Dākṣāyaṇi, Ketumālin and Baka, will be born to me.

186. They will be Yogic souls, high-minded (magnanimous), of sublimated sexuality. Resorting to supreme Yoga these sinless ones will attain the region of Rudra.

187-188. In the twentysecond revolution, when Śuklāyana is the Vyāsa, I will be born as a sage in Vārāṇasī, and known as *Bhīma* (awe-inspiring) Lāṅgalin. There devas including Indra will see me incarnated in Kali as Halāyudha (with plough-share as a weapon).

189-190. There too, righteous sons will be born to me, viz. Tulyārcis, Madhu, Piṅgākṣa and Śvetaketu. They will attain Śiva's Yoga. Engrossed in meditation, they will be free from passion. Absorbed in Brahman they will proceed to Rudraloka.

191-192. In the twentythird revolution, when Tṛṇabindu is the Vyāsa, O Brahmā, I will be born as the highly righteous son of a sage. Possessed of mighty physique, I shall be known by the name of Śveta. I will be spending my time on that excellent mountain. Hence the mountain will be known as Kālañjara.

193. There also powerful sons will be born to me, viz. Uṣija, Bṛhaduktha, Devala and Kavi. After attaining the Yoga of the Lord Rudra, they will go to Rudraloka.

194. In the twentyfourth revolution, when Ṛkṣa will be the Vyāsa, O Brahmā, in that Kali age, towards the end, I will

be born as a great Yogin by name Śūlin, in the Naimiṣa forest honoured by the Yogins.

195. There too my ascetic sons will be born, viz., Śālihotra Agniveśya, Yuvanāśva and Śaradvasu. Those sages of good religious vows, endowed with the Yogic power will attain Rudra.

196-197. When the twentyfifth revolution arrives in due course, and Śakti, son of Vasiṣṭha becomes the Vyāsa, I will be born as the lord Muṇḍīśvara with a staff (a recluse) in the city Koṭivarṣa honoured by devas.

198. There too my sons will be born in succession. They will be noble Yogic souls observing celibacy.

199. They will be Chagala, Kuṁbhakarṣāśya, Kumbha and Prabāhuka. After attaining the Yoga of the great Lord Rudra they will also go along the same path.

200. In the twentysixth revolution of the *yuga*-cycle, when Parāśara is the Vyāsa, I shall be born and known as Sahiṣṇu in the Kali age at its close, in the holy forest of Rudra.

201. There too, sons of great piety will be born to me, viz. Ulūka, Vaidyuta, Sarvaka and Aśvalāyana. After attaining the Yoga of Rudra, the great god, they will also go the same way to Rudraloka.

202-203. When the twentyseventh revolution has arrived in the course and Jātukarṇya becomes the Vyāsa, I will be born as the excellent Brāhmaṇa Somaśarman in the holy centre of Prabhāsa. I will be a Yogic soul well-known in the worlds.

204. There too the sages will be born as my sons, viz. Akṣapāda, Kaṇāda, Ulūka and Vatsa.

205. They will be noble Yogic souls, free from sin and pure in intellect. After attaining the Yoga of the great lord, they will go to Rudraloka.

206-207. When the twentyeighth revolution has arrived in due course and the glorious Viṣṇu, the great father of the worlds becomes Dvaipāyana Vyāsa, then Kṛṣṇa, the best amongst men and the chief of Yadus, by a sixth of his part, will be born of Vasudeva as Vāsudeva.

208. Then I will be a yogic soul and assume the body of a religious student to surprise the worlds, by means of Yogic Māyā.

209. On seeing a forlorn dead body (of a child) left (deserted) in a cremation ground, I, with my power of Yogic Māyā, entered (will enter) that body for the welfare of Brāhmaṇas.

210. With you Viṣṇu (as my companion), (I shall stay) in the holy cave of Meru. I shall be known by the name Nakulin, O Brahman.

211. Then it will be a centre of Siddhas called Kāyārohaṇa. It will remain famous till the earth lasts (i.e. upto the deluge).

212. There too my sons will be born as the ascetics Kuśika, Gārgya, Mitraka and Ruṣṭa.

213. They will be noble Ātmans endowed with Yogic power. They will be Brāhmaṇas, masters of the Vedas. They will be free from dirt (sin) and abstain from sexual intercourse. After attaining the Yoga of Rudra, they will go to Rudraloka and never return.

214. Thus I have mentioned incarnations from Manu to Kṛṣṇa in the twentyeight cycles of Yugas. This series of traditional accounts is very sacred and virtuous.

CHAPTER TWENTYFOUR

Hymn to Śiva[1]

Vāya said :

1. Sages know that there are four Yugas in Bhāratavarṣa.[2] There are Kṛta, Tretā, Dvāpara and Kali Yugas.

2-3. A thousand cycles of these four yugas constitute a day of god Brahmā. The seven Gaṇas (groups of gods) like Yāma and others and the fourteen Romavat groups in their

1. It is since the Rudrādhyāya in TS. IV. 5 that we find the list of epithets used as a hymn of prayer. The list of epithets went on increasing and was lastly recorded as *Sahasra-nāma*. Here we have a list of Śiva's epithets as prayer in vv. 90-164.

2. It is surprising that the cycle of Yugas should be limited to Bhāratavarṣa only.

physical bodies resort to Janaloka along with their followers. In this way, Devas go from Maharloka to Janaloka and Tapoloka.

4. When many Manvantaras pass off, the mighty devas of the Kalpa go up and attain *Sāyujya*.

5-7. When the time of withdrawal (dissolution) arrives, the fourteen Gaṇas leave Maharloka.[1] Those gods in combination with these (quit the Maharloka), when the elements and immobiles alone are left behind, when all the regions from the *Bhuvar-loka* to *Svar-loka* become void; when Devas whose duration of tenure is a Kalpa go upto Janaloka, god Brahmā then collects (all) the groups of Devas, sages and Dānavas and destroys them all through fire and showers when the Yuga comes to an end.

8. In the seventh Kalpa that has just passed off and has been described to you by me, the seven oceans joined together and formed one vast limitless (and divisionless) ocean full of darkness.

9-11. In the vast single ocean, the lord holding conch, discus and mace lay on the serpent couch. He had the colour of the cloud. He was lotus-eyed. He had a crown. He was the lord of Lakṣmī. He was Hari, the eighth Puruṣottama born of the mouth of Nārāyaṇa. He had eight arms, and a broad chest. He is the source of origin of the worlds. He was in communion with the self. Conversant with the process of Yoga, he had taken to meditation beyond the ken of thought, by his Māyā. The serpent (his couch) had a thousand hoods; its body had an unparalleled splendour and the lustre of gold.

12. While he was lying there, taking repose in the Ātman, he, the mighty Viṣṇu, created a lotus in his umbilicus just for a sport.

13. The lotus extended to a hundred Yojanas. It had the splendour of the midday-sun. It was very high supported by an adamantine stalk. It was created sportively by the powerful lord.

1. Verses 5-14 describe the dissolution of the universe and formation of one ocean (*Ekārṇava*) of cosmic waters with god Viṣṇu lying on the serpent couch and god Brahmā born in the lotus-flower blooming on the lotus-plant issuing from Viṣṇu's navel.

14. While lord Viṣṇu was sporting thus, the golden-coloured four-faced, wide-eyed Brahmā, unperceivable by the sense organs, and born of the golden Cosmic Egg, approached him casually.

15-16. On seeing him sporting with the fresh lotus, shining with brilliant lustre, emitting sweet smell, Brahmā worshipped him.[1] He was surprised and praising him in loud voice, he asked, "Who are you, Sir, lying in the middle of water?"

17. On hearing the auspicious words of Brahmā, Viṣṇu got up from his couch, with eyes outstretched with wonder.

18. He gave the reply, "Whatever is there (such as) the heaven, firmament, elements; but I am the master, the highest region."

19. After saying this, Viṣṇu continued, "Who are you, Sir? Where have you come from? Where have you to go again? Where is your permanent abode ?

20. Who are you, sir ? A universe-formed being? What can I do for you ?" When Viṣṇu said thus Brahmā replied:

21. "Just like you, I am the first creator Prajāpati. I am called Nārāyaṇa. Everything rests in me."

22-23. But Viṣṇu, the source of the universe, heard this with wonder. Being permitted by lord Brahmā, the creator of the worlds, the great Yogin Viṣṇu entered the mouth of Brahmā, out of curiosity. After entering he saw in the belly of Brahmā, these eighteen continents, along with oceans, and mountains, the living beings beginning with Brahmā and ending with a blade of grass, people of four castes and the eternal seven worlds.

24. On seeing all these, Viṣṇu of great renown and splendour, repeatedly exclaimed thus: "Oh, the prowess of the penance of this being !"

25. Viṣṇu wandered though different regions and different hermitages, but he could not see the end (of it) even after the expiry of one thousand years.

---

1. Verses 15ff. The meeting of Brahmā and Viṣṇu leading to their quarrel on personal superiority and the appearance of god Śiva to solve it, is the Śaivite way of establishing Rudra's greatness. Cf KP I. 9. 12-49. But here Brahmā is shown to be more magnanimous than Viṣṇu who is superior to him in knowledge about Śiva.

26. Then the Garuḍa-emblemed deity (Viṣṇu) came out of his mouth. The enemy-less (lit. one whose enemy is not born) Lord addressed Brahmā, the grandfather of the world:

27. "O Lord, O sinless one, I do not see the beginning, the middle or the end of your belly. I do not see the end of time and space."

28. After saying thus, Viṣṇu spoke again to Brahmā, "O excellent Brāhmaṇa, you too, enter my belly and see the uncomparable world within."

29. On hearing his words delightful to the mind and approving of them, Brahmā entered the belly of Viṣṇu.

30. Stationed within his body, he of unimaginable exploits, saw the same worlds. Though he wandered within he did not see the end of worlds in the body of the primordial lord.

31. On seeing that Brahmā was returning, Viṣṇu closed all the pores of his body. The lord then wished to resume his happy deep sleep in the middle of the vast ocean.

32. When Brahmā saw all the openings closed, he made his form very subtle and discovered a small opening in Viṣṇu's umbilicus.

33. Through the stalk of the lotus he came out and then resumed his own form. The four-faced lord seated in the middle of the lotus, shone with a splendour like that of the interior of the lotus.

34. In the meanwhile there arose a clash between them on the point of (individual) entirety (superiority) in the middle of the ocean.

Sūta said:

35. Then the trident-bearing Lord of unmeasurable soul, the Lord of all living beings, who was clad in gold-coloured bark garments, came where the eternal Lord Viṣṇu was lying on the couch of the (Śeṣa's) serpent's body.

36. While he was walking quickly, big drops of water kicked forcibly by his feet rose up in the sky. They were very hot and extremely chill. A violent wind also blew.

37. On seeing that mysterious phenomenon, Brahmā spoke to Viṣṇu, "The drops of water are big and hot. The lotus is

also moving terribly. Please clarify this doubt of mine. What else do you wish to do?"

38-40. On hearing these words uttered by Brahmā, the lord of unimitable activity and the destroyer of demons, thought within himself thus, "Could it be that another living being has taken abode in my umbilicus? It speaks agreeable words though it does disagreeable acts:" After thinking thus he replied, "O lord, are you agitated in that lotus ?

41. O Lord what have I done to you? Wherefore, O greatest of men, you speak to me thus, though I am your excellent friend? Speak precisely."

42. While the lord of Devas was speaking thus in accordance with the convention, lord Brahmā of lotus-like brilliant complexion, the storehouse of the Vedas, replied.

43. "O Lord, I entered your belly by your desire. Just as the worlds were seen by you in my belly, so also the worlds were seen by me in your belly.

44. O sinless one ! At the end of one thousand years, as I was returning (out of your belly), I found that due to rivalry you have closed all the openings wishing to bring me under control.

45. O blessed one, then thinking within myself, I gained an entrance through the umbilicus and came out of your navel through the lotus stalk.

46. Let there be no misgiving in your mind." On hearing these words of Brahmā, Viṣṇu spoke thus:

47. "What I shall do afterwards has been thought over by me. It was only out of sportiveness that I quickly closed the openings and not to harass you.

48. You shall not take it otherwise. You are worthy of my honour and worship. O gentle one, forgive whatever misdeed I may have committed. Hence O Lord, being urged by me, you shall get down from the lotus.

49. I cannot bear you as you are so brilliant and weighty." Then Brahmā replied, "Tell me what boon you will bestow on me if I come down from the lotus."

Viṣṇu said :

50. "O destroyer of enemies, please be my son. You will

derive great delight thereby. You are a great Yogin with truth as your asset. You are worthy of being worshipped. You are of the form of Oṁkāra.

51. O Lord of all, from now onwards you will have a white turban as your crest ornament. You will be known as *Padmayoni* (one born out of a lotus). O Brahmā, O Lord of the worlds, be my son."

52. Then Lord Brahmā accepted the boon from Viṣṇu. Pleased in his mind and without any sense of rivalry, he said, "May it be so".

53. On seeing a wonderful being approaching with the lustre of the rising sun and with a huge face, he spoke to Nārāyaṇa:

54-56. "O Viṣṇu, who is this person coming hither? He is incomprehensible with a huge mouth, curved fangs, dishevelled hair, ten arms, characterised by the trident, and faces all round with many eyes. He is the lord of the worlds, He is hideous in form. He wears a girdle of Muñja grass. His penis is lifted up. He is roaring terribly. He has great refulgence. He is a heap of splendour. He has pervaded all the quarters and heaven."

57-59. On being addressed thus, Viṣṇu spoke in reply to Brahmā, "He has been coming quickly wading through the ocean. Kicked by his feet, the whole ocean is agitated with profuse sprays of water raised in the sky. O lotus-born (god), you are being sprinkled by them. The great lotus coming out of my umbilicus is being shaken along with you by the wind exhaled through his nose. He is the eternal lord Īśa, the destroyer. Let us both eulogise the bull-bannered lord."

60-61. Then the infuriated Brahmā spoke to Viṣṇu, the illuminator of the lotus, "You do not know yourself the source of origin of all the worlds nor me Brahmā, the eternal creator of the universe. Oh! Who is this being (called Śaṅkara) excelling us both?"

62. On hearing the furious words of Brahmā, Viṣṇu said, "O gentle one, do not speak disparagingly of the noble Ātman.

63. The ancient Puruṣa, the lord of Māyā and Yoga is virtue (Dharma) itself. He cannot be thwarted. He is the bestower of boons. He, the eternal lord, is the cause of this universe.

64. He is the soul of all souls. He is the sole light that shines. He is god Śaṅkara himself who is sporting with childish toys.

65. As the creator of subjects his names are *Pradhāna, Avyaya,* the unmanifest light, Prakṛti, darkness incomprehensible. Whatsoever he may be, he is sought by ascetics, distressed with grief.

66. He is the eternal sower of the seed. You are the eternal seed. I am the eternal womb". Thus told, Brahmā, the soul of the universe, spoke to Viṣṇu again:

67. "You are the womb. I am the seed. But how is he the sower of the seed ? It behoves you to remove this subtle doubt of mine."

68. On hearing this, Viṣṇu explained to Brahmā, the sustainer of the worlds, their own origin and the origin of the worlds. He cleared the doubt of Brahmā with a suitable analogy.

69. "There is no other being greater than he or more subtle (unmanifest) than he. The region of the lord is the goal of the spiritualists. It is the abode of bliss.

70. The supreme lord has split himself into two and entered the self. He is both possessed of and devoid of attributes. His form without attributes is subtle and unmanifest.

71-72. He is the knower of Māyā (Prakṛti) and her activities; he is deep and inaccessible. His penis deposited you as the seed in my womb, in the primary stage of creation. In due course of time that seed became the huge golden egg in my womb.

73. For a thousand years, the egg was embedded in the waters. At the end of a thousand years, it was split into two by the elemental air.

74. One of the (upper) parts of the crust turned into heaven and the other (lower) into the earth. The lofty foetus became the golden mountain Meru.

75. It is from that, there woke up the golden-wombed lord (Hiraṇyagarbha) of Devas and I, the four-armed Viṣṇu.

76. Then, at the end of a thousand years, the egg was split into two. On seeing the world a void without stars, the moon and planets, you pondered over, 'Who is here ?' Then your sons were born.

77. They are born (as your sons) again and again at the end of a thousand years—they who are the early predecessors, pleasing to look at, endowed with fire-like brilliant bodies and eyes wide like the petals of a lotus.

78. Glorious Sanatkumāra and Ṛbhu who were perpetually celibate, Sanātana, Sanaka, and Sanandana were born simultaneously. They could visualize objects even beyond the reach of sense-organs.

79. They were born with controlled mind and devoid of three distresses. They said that they would not take up the work of creation.

80-83. There is a great pain in this birth, O gentle one. It is attended by old age and sorrow. Life, death and birth occur again and again. This world is a dream. Even in heaven there are miseries. On realising the tortures of hell, the advent and the inevitability of events and seeing that Ṛbhu and Sanātana were under your control, the three sons Sanaka and others eschewed the three *guṇas* (the creative ingredients) and attaining knowledge of the illusory nature of the world, they renounced the world. When they had renounced the world you were deluded by the Māyā of Śaṅkara.

84. In this Kalpa, O sinless one, your consciousness is withdrawn and the subtle elements earth etc. remain intact (to the end of Kalpa).

85. This Māyā of the lord functioning in the world has been explained to you. That mount Meru is said to exist in Devaloka.

86-87. You will realize your greatness. You will realize your self through your own self. You shall know me the lotus-eyed one. You shall approach the lord supreme Śiva of great Yogic (power), the bestower of boons to all living beings. After approching him who is the preceptor of the universe in the form of Praṇava, you shall propitiate him by prostration. Should he be infuriated, he may burn us both by his very breath.

88. After knowing that lord of great Yogic power I shall be strong and powerful keeping you ahead. I shall eulogise the lord who has the lustre of fire."

Sūta said:

89. Keeping Brahmā ahead, the Garuḍa-bannered deity, Viṣṇu recited this hymn (in praise of Śiva) uttering his past, present and future names of Vedic origin.

Hymn to Śiva:

90. Obeisance to you, the lord of good rites and unfathomable splendour, the lord of holy centres, the *Bījin* (sower of seeds), the trident-bearing lord.

91. Obeisance to *Ameḍhra* (one without the penis), *Ūrdhvameḍhra* (one with erected penis), *Vaikuṇṭharetas* (from whose semen Viṣṇu was born), the eldest, the superior-most, the first and the foremost.

92. Obeisance to *Havya* (one to whom *Havīs* offerings are made), who is worthy of worship, to *Sadyojāta*, the impervious, the lord of wealth, the deity wearing yellow barkrobes.

93. Hail to thee, the origin of living beings like us, the lord of the materials of Vedic and glorious heroic rituals.

94. Obeisance to the lord of Yoga and Sāṁkhya, to the lord of sages of (controlled, limited) sleep.

95. Obeisance to the lord of the loud roar, lightning, thunderbolt and clouds, to the lord of oceans and continents.

96. Obeisance to the lord of mountains, of *Varṣas* (subcontinents) and of rivers flowing to the west and the east.*

97. Obeisance to the lord of medicinal herbs and trees, to the presiding deity of virtue or religion and holy rites, and to the lord of continued existence (as distinguished from *Utpatti* and *laya* or creation and destruction or death).

98. Obeisance to the lord of juices and jewels, of moments, of *Kāla* (a unit of time).

99. Salute to the lord of *nimeṣas* (winking time), of *kāṣṭhās* (1/30 of a kalā), of days, nights, fortnights and months.

100. Obeisance to the lord of seasons, of numbers of *parārdha* and to the lord of the greatest of the great.

101. Obeisance to the lord of Purāṇas, the Yugas, of the fourfold creation and to the infinite-eyed.

---

*Mallinātha, quoted in Apte's *Students' Sk. Dictionary* 278, distinguishes between *nada* and *nadī* as follows :

prāk srotaso nadyaḥ pratyak-srotaso nadāḥ narmadām vinetyāhuḥ|

102. Obeisance to the lord of agriculture and other occupations settled at the beginning of the Kalpa, to the lord of the universe, of god Brahmā and others.

103. Obeisance to the lord of lores (*vidyās*), sacred rites and of *mantras*.

104. Obeisance to the lord of *pitṛs* (manes), of *paśus* (souls bound by *pāśa*), to thee of virtuous words, and to the ancient Bull.

105. Obeisance to thee of beautiful hair, of lifted-up eyes and upward heads, to the lord of paśus, and to the Bull-emblemed god.

106. Obeisance to the lord of Prajāpatis, Siddhas, of Garuḍa, serpents and birds.

107. Obeisance to the cow-eared deity seated on the Bull, the spike-eared deity, to the chief of Rākṣasas, the incomprehensible deity of Vārāha Kalpa.

108. Obeisance to the lord of *Apsaras*-s and *Gaṇas*, waters and splendour.

109. Obeisance to the lord of Lakṣmī endowed with glory and bashful modesty, to the congeries of the weak and the strong and to the agitator of the unagitable.

110. Bow to the long-horned, single-horned, humped Bull, to the body of (great) steadiness and to the light of great splendour.

111. Obeisance to the lord of the past, present and the future, to the valorous hero of great splendour, and to one who excels others.

112. Salute to the granter of boons, the most excellent, omnipresent lord of the past, present and future.

113. Hail to thee the (lord of the) people, the penance and bestower of boons, to the deity worthy of salutes (worship). Obeisance to the lord of salvation, of the people and the hell.

114. Obeisance to Bhava, the worshipper, the worshipped and the sacrificer, one praised with loud voice, to the illuminated, the *Nirguṇa* principle.

115. Bow to the noose, the hand and the well-ornamented one. Obeisance to the one with (proper) oblations, (wrongly offered) oblations, well-offered and well-whetted one.

116. Obeisance to the *Iṣṭa*, *Pūrta*, *Agniṣṭoma*, *Ṛtvik*, *Ṛta* (order), *Satya* (truth) and the lord of living beings.

117. Salute to the member of the sacrificial council, to *Dakṣiṇā* (the monentary gift in a sacrifice) and *Avabhṛtha* (the ceremonial ablution after the sacrifice). Obeisance to the non-injurer of the worlds, the charm and medicine for the individual soul.

118. Hail to the bestower of contentment, the three-eyed sweet-scented one. To the lord of the sense organs. Obeisance to the (lord of) remedy and to the lord wearing garlands.

119. Obeisance to the universe, to the universal-formed one with eyes and faces all round and one with infinite hands and feet.

120. Obeisance to *Havya* (offerings to gods), *Kavya* (offerings to the manes) and *Havya-Kavya*. Obeisance to Siddha, *Medhya* (pure), the desired and the unchanging lord.

121-122. Hail to the great hero, terrible agitator of the unagitable, one of good intellect, the deity of good subjects, the refulgent sun. Bow again and again to *Suparṇa* (beautiful-winged one), of gold colour, to the odd-eyed, three-eyed, tawny one endowed with great strength.

123. Obeisance to the dazzler of eyes, the gentle-eyed one, to the smoke-coloured, white (coloured), black (complexioned) and the red one.

124. Bow to the adorned, the reddish brown and yellow (coloured god), one equipped with quiver. Hail to the possessor of and the one devoid of *Viśeṣas* (speciality?).

125. Obeisance to the lotus-complexioned destroyer of death and to the god of death. Salute to the dark, white, tawny and red complexioned lord.

126. Obeisance to the lovely one of the colour of cloud at dusk, to the multi-formed holding skull in the hand, to the naked and to the one with matted hair.

127. Obeisance to the incomprehensible Śarva, unslayable and excellent. Obeisance to one that supports from front and back and hail to the fire.

128. Obeisance to the great, the impassable, the obstruction and to one of tawny colour. Obeisance to one with a body as lustrous as the sun. Obeisance to one with strength and velocity.

129. Obeisance to the Pināka-bearing lord, the stretching, thriving and prosperous deity, of keen intellect and wearing Rudrākṣa. Obeisance to the naked, tufted lord.

130. Obeisance to the variegated one of variegated colours, the mysterious, the supporter of all. Obeisance to the intelligent one, the contented, non-deposited (?) lord.

131. Obeisance to the forbearing, the quiescent, with body as strong as a thunderbolt. Obeisance to the destroyer of demons, the destroyer of sacrifice, the blue-necked deity abstaining from sexual intercourse.

132. Obeisance to the slayer of enemies, the annihilator, the one holding sharp weapons. Obeisance to the rejoicing, the delighted one connected with rivers.

133. Obeisance to *Praṇava*, the lord of *Praṇava*, the bestower of happiness, the hunter of the deer, the deft and the destroyer of Dakṣa's sacrifice.

134. Hail to the spirit that is multiformed one who excels all lords, the destroyer of the cities (*Tripura*), the quiescent, sweet-scented possessor of excellent arrows.

135. Obeisance to the deity in the form of Puṣpavat, to the destroyer of Bhaga's eyes, to the excellent Kaṇāda, and the destroyer of Kāma's body.

136. Bow to the terrible wheel of the sun, the suppressor of the lord of serpents, the destroyer of Daityas, and to the one who makes divine shouts.

137. Obeisance to the god ever fond of cremation ground. Hail to the three-eyed protector of vital breaths, the wearer of the garland of skulls.

138. Salute to the god eulogised by different beings full of pleasure, to one with a (half) male and (half) female form and to the one who pleases the goddess (Umā).

139. Obeisance to you with matted hair and staff. Obeisance to the one with serpent as sacred thread, to the one habitually indulging in dance and fond of music.

140. Obeisance to Manyu (wrathful), to a habitually cool (quiescent god), to the singer of excellent songs, to the terrible god, one with bangles in the hand, to the assumer of fierce forms.

141. Obeisance to the terrible, the awe-inspiring and the suppressor of Bhaga, who is praised by the Siddhas and is highly blessed.

142. Hail to the god who laughs freely and boisterously, who roars striking (clapping) his arms, who shouts, jumps and rejoices.

143-144. Obeisance to the wonderfully mysterious, sleeping and running, staring and meditating, stretching and expanding, harassing and running, moving and sporting (god). Obeisance to the one with a pot-bellied body, to the one who shakes, to the one with a shaven head, to the one without hands.

145. Salute to the one in the guise of a mad person, to the one with tinkling ornaments, to the one with hideous dress and to the ruthless, fierce and infuriated (deity).

146. Obeisance to the incomprehensible, to the illuminated, to the brilliance beyond attributes, to the one fond of argument and to the one wearing signet jewel.

147. Hail to (the god) with child-like form, to one with unequalled qualities, to the secret Gaṇa, to the unattainable yet eternal refuge.

148. This earth, mother of the worlds, constitutes your feet resorted to by the good. Your unfathomable belly is the support of persons who have achieved Yogic power.

149. The firmament bedecked by the clusters of stars extends in your middle. The glorious garland on your chest shines like the galaxy of stars.

150-151. The ten quarters are your arms bedecked with bracelets and armlets. The expansive wide neck of yours, comparable to the cluster of blue clouds, shines gloriously bedecked with golden necklaces. Your mouth terrific with the curved fangs is unthwartable and incomparable.

152-153. How much does the turban on your head, done by garland of lotuses, shine ! The wise know that qualities like the brilliance of the sun, the beauty of the moon, the stability (and firmness) of the earth, the power of the wind, the heat in the fire, lustre in the moon, sound in (the element) ether and coolness in waters are evolved out of your excellent eternal qualities.

154-155. The following *Japa* (inaudible repetition) of the

(following) names of Śiva should be performed : *Mahāyogin* (a great Yogin), *Mahādeva* (great god), *Maheśvara* (the supreme ruler), *Pureśaya* (abiding in the city i.e. body), *Guhāvāsin* (the resident in the cavity of the heart), *Khecara* (the sky-walker), *Rajanīcara* (nocturnal wanderer), *Taponidhi* (storehouse of austerities), *Guhaguru* (father or teacher of Skanda), *Nandana* (the delighter), *Nandivardhana* (increaser of delight), *Hayaśīrṣa* (horse-headed), *Dharādhāṭṛ* (the supporter of the earth), *Vidhāṭṛ* (the creator), *Bhūtivāhana* (carrier or bestower of welfare),

156. *Boddhavya* (worthy of being realized), *Bodhana* (enlightener), *Neṭṛ* (the leader), *Dhūrvaha* (bearer of the yoke i.e. responsibility), *Duṣprakaṁpaka* (one shaking heavily?), *Bṛhadratha* (possessor of a big chariot), *Bhīma-karman* (of terrific activity), *Bṛhatkīrti* (widely renowned) *Dhanañjaya* (winner of wealth),

157. *Ghaṇṭāpriya* (fond of bells), *Dhvajin* (having a banner), *Chatrin* (having an umbrella—a royal insignia), *patākādhvajinī-pati* (lord of a flag and an army), *Kavaci* (clad in a coat of mail), *Paṭṭiśin* (armed with a sharp iron club), *Śaṅkhin* (having a conch shell), *Pāśahastin* (holding a noose in hand), *Paraśubhṛt* (wielder of an axe),

158. *Agama* (mountain-like firm), *Anagha* (sinless), *Śūra* (brave), *Devarājārimardana* (slayer of the enemies of Indra). It is by propitiating you that enemies were killed in battles by us.

159. You are (such) a fire as is not satisfied by drinking all the seas. You are the abode of furiousness (but) delighted in mind. You are destroyer of Kāma (god of love) but a bestower of desired objects and a lovable one.

160. You are absorbed in Brahman, celibate, controller of sex-organs, worshipped by the good. You are the inexhaustible treasure of Vedas and sacrifice (sacrificial ritual) is ordained by you.

161. You are the sacrificial fire carrying oblations, the Vedas and prescriptions in the Vedas. When you are pleased, O Mahādeva, we too are pleased.

162. You are the lord of the eternal (beginningless), the mass of splendour, Brahmā, the creator of the worlds, the first creation. Sāṅkhyas know that you are transcendental to Prakṛti. When their meditation is over, they do not enter death.

163. The Yogins who are ever in communion with you through Yoga, eschew sensual pleasures. Other mortals who resort to you become sinless and enjoy divine pleasure.

164. Limitless is the greatness of (you) the supreme soul. Whatever we knew of the glory of the incomprehensible reality has been glorified according to our (humble) ability. Be ever and everywhere auspicious to us. Whoever you are you are so (incomprehensible). Obeisance be unto you.

CHAPTER TWENTYFIVE

Birth and Death of Madhu and Kaiṭabha

Sūta continued :

1-2. Looking at them as if drinking them in (with his eyes), the consort of Umā, with honey-like tawny eyes uneven (three) in number, the Lord, destroyer of Dakṣa's sacrifice, wielder of the Pināka bow and a battle-axe, who was surrounded by goblins, became delighted with a beaming face on hearing his eulogy.

3. On hearing their nectar-like words, the supreme Lord asked lovingly what he himself knew before.

4. "Who are you two, Sirs, of noble souls, desirous of mutual welfare, with eyes having the lustre of a lotus, and who have come together in the terrible watery expanse?"

5. After glancing at each other, they replied to him : "O lord, of what avail, is our reply ? It is already known to you. Where is infinite happiness except in your conduct as you please?"

6. The blessed lord spoke in sweet, charming words : "O Brahmā, O Viṣṇu, I am addressing you both.

7. I am delighted with your devotion of permanent nature. I honour you both; you well deserve my respect. What is the excellent boon you desire to have?"

8. When these words were spoken by him, Viṣṇu told Brahmā : "O highly blessed one, do speak out the boon wished by you".

9. "O Viṣṇu, I am desirous of having progeny. I wish to have a son who will bear my responsibility." So spoke Lord Brahmā who coveted to have a boon granting him (such) a son.

10-12. Then Viṣṇu said to Brahmā who was desirous of progeny, "Since you wish for an incomparably valiant son who will carry out your task, you ask Lord Maheśvara, the god of gods, to be (born as your) son."

Honouring the words of Viṣṇu, god Brahmā folded his palms in reverence and humbly bowed to Lord Rudra, the bestower of boons. Desirous of a son, he addressed these (following) words in the company of Viṣṇu:

13. "O Supreme Lord, if you are so pleased with me who am desirous of a son, soul of the universe, you shall be my son or you shall grant me a son like you who will bear my burden. If you are pleased to grant me this boon, I shall not choose any other."

14. On hearing his request, the lord, the destroyer of the eyes of Bhaga, piously and undeceitfully said : "So be it".

15-16. "O *Suvrata* (one of good vows), when you will be overwhelmed by anger at the unsuccessfulness of an activity undertaken by you, I shall be born then from your forehead (as a friendly noble-souled sage Rudra), one of the eleven Rudras, the cause of the vital breaths. I shall wield a trident in my hand, and shall be accompanied by my followers."

17. After bestowing incomparable favour (boon) upon Brahmā at first, he told Viṣṇu, "I (desire to) grant you a boon too".

18. The blessed Viṣṇu replied thus : "O Lord, if you are pleased with me, it is as good as having done everything (to me). O Cloud-vehicled god, let my devotion to you be well established in you."[1]

19. The Lord, thus addressed, spoke to Viṣṇu : "O Viṣṇu, O eternal lord, listen, how I am pleased with you.

20. The entire universe, whether illuminated or unillumina-

1. Though regarded as a Śaiva Purāṇa, passages like vv. 19-29 which emphasize the identity of Śiva and Viṣṇu exercise integrative influence.

ted, mobile or immobile shall be identified with me (Rudra) and yourself (Nārāyaṇa).

21. I am the fire, you are the moon. I am the day, you are the night. I am the truth, you are the Order (*Ṛta*). You are the sacrifice, I am (its) fruit.

22. You are the knowledge, I am the object of knowledge. Performing your *Japa*, pious people (lit. performers of meritorious deeds) will enter me if you are pleased. At the end of the Yuga, there is no better goal than this (abiding with us).

23. Know yourself as Prakṛti. Know me as Puruṣa, Śiva. You are one half of my body just as I am your other half.

24. You are my left side which is dark and bears the mark of Śrīvatsa. I am your right side which is blue and red.

25. O Viṣṇu you are my heart. I am stationed in your heart. You are the doer of all activities. I am the activator.

26. So, come, hail to you, my dear cloud-coloured one, adieu". After saying this to Viṣṇu, the great Lord vanished.

27. When the lord had vanished, the delighted Viṣṇu, lord of the earth, entered water and lay on his couch.

28. Then with a delighted mind Brahmā, the lotus-born, lotus-eyed deity, resorted to his own seat in the lotus having the lustre of the interior of a lotus.

29-30. After a long lapse of time, two brothers of great strength and energy, the unrivalled Madhu and Kaiṭabha spoke to Brahmā, "You will become our prey". After saying thus both of them vanished.

31. On coming to know of their terrible intention and realising his greatness, the lotus-born deity began to gather further information.

32. As he did not know the make-up of the pericarp nor the way out, he descended to the nether regions by way of the lotus stalk. Then within the waters, he saw Viṣṇu with the deer-skin as his upper robe.

33. He then woke him up and when he woke up he said— "O Lord, I am afraid of spirits. Get up, save me. Be thou my benefactor."

34. Then, Lord Viṣṇu, the suppressor spoke, "You should not be afraid, you should not be afraid."

35. Since you have uttered at the outset, there is a danger to me from *Bhūtas* (spirits). You will therefore kill the Daityas through words *Bhū* etc."

36. Bhūr, Bhuvaḥ, Svaḥ (the earth, the firmament and the heaven) entered the self-born Lord, Having circumambulated, Brahmā returned to his (former) seat.

37. When Brahmā had gone, Lord Viṣṇu created two brothers Viṣṇu and Jiṣṇu out of his mouth, and instructed (them): "Both of you should protect Brahmā after knowing the next arrival of Madhu and Kaiṭabha."

38. Meanwhile, Madhu and Kaiṭabha assumed forms similar to those of Viṣṇu and Jiṣṇu. After assumption of similar forms, they stood in front of him facing him.

39. Then they spoke terrible words to Brahmā: "You should be the judge, while we fight."

40. Then they entered water which they paralysed by their Māyā. A tumultuous fight arose, when they fought with one another.

41. A thousand divine years elapsed as they fought. Still their pride, arrogance and eagerness for mutual fight did not subside.

42. If they had different marks, they could have been distinguished but they had similar forms. Agitated in the mind due to this similarity, Brahmā began to meditate.

43. By his divine vision he understood the distinction between them. He tied a subtle secret amulet of lotus filaments and also a girdle round their body. Then he uttered the Mantra.

44. While he uttered the Mantra, a virgin of universal form appeared there itself. The lustre of her face resembled the splendour of the lotus and the moon. The chaste lady held a lotus in her hand. On seeing her the Daityas were distressed. Their faces turned pallid due to fear.

45. In sweet voice Brahmā spoke to the virgin, "O chaste lady, tell me the truth, who you are. What are your antecedents?"

46-47. With palms joined in reverence, the virgin worshipped Brahmā and said after singing a eulogistic hymns. "Know that I am Mohinī (the enchantress), the Māyā of Viṣṇu and his

messenger. O Brahmā, on being glorified by you, I came to you hurriedly." Delighted with her, Brahmā gave her a name.

48. "Since you came here as (soon as) this Mantra was uttered by me, you will be known as *Mahāvyāhṛti*[1] (the great utterance).

49. Since you appeared breaking through the head, you will be called *Sāvitrī*. Though you are born of one part (*aṁśa*) you will have many parts.

50. O auspicious-faced lady ! Due to my grace, these and other minor names derived from your activities will be applicable to you."

51-22. The two demons on being afflicted thus begged for his boon. "Our death shall come in an uncovered place. We shall be born as your sons in future". Saying, "So be it", they were killed : Kaiṭabha by Viṣṇu and Madhu by Jiṣṇu.

53. Thus with a desire for the welfare of the worlds the two Daityas were killed by Brahmā, Viṣṇu and Jiṣṇu concertedly.

54. Know how Īśa (Śiva) was born as the son of Brahmā. When the fight of Madhu and Kaiṭabha with Viṣṇu and Jiṣṇu was over, Brahmā spoke to Viṣṇu:

55. "Today a hundred years have elapsed. The time has come when I shall go to my abode, terrible due to congestion and flooding".

56. At his instance, the lord effected Dissolution, making the earth devoid of immobile beings and making the mobile beings settled in Prakṛti.

57. "O Viṣṇu, O increaser of prosperity, welfare unto you. If thus the ocean has been diffused by you, tell me what I shall do for you."

58-59. "O gold-lustred, lotus-born ! Listen to my words. The favour that you obtained from the lord with the desire for a son has fructified now. You have become free from indebtedness. Create four kinds of living beings or abandon the effort."

60. Getting the hint from Viṣṇu, the lotus-born deity Brahmā conceived in his mind to create the subjects. Then he performed a severe penance.

---

1. Verses 48 & 49 give popular etymology of *Mahāvyāhṛti* and *Sāvitrī*.

61. While he was performing penance thus, nothing happened. When a long time elapsed, due to grief his anger increased.

62-63. From his eyes defiled by anger, drops of tears fell. From those drops of tears, poisonous serpents manifested themselves. They had the elements of gas, bile and phlegm in their humour. They were of great strength. They were bedecked by the Svastika signs. They had scattered hairs.

64. On seeing the serpents born at the outset, Brahmā lamented. If the fruit is such, fie upon my penance. In the very beginning progeny has become destructive of the world.

65. A severe senselessness born of anger and annoyance overtook him. Due to the heat (severity) of fainting, Brahmā forsook his vital breaths (became unconscious).

66. From his body of unequalled prowess eleven souls, the Rudras, manifested themselves, crying out of pity. Since they cried, they were known as Rudras. Their Rudra designation is due to that.

67. Rudras are Prāṇas and Prāṇas are Rudras. The vital breaths are stationed in all living beings.

68. To him who was great and fierce and who had performed good actions, the trident-bearing lord gave the vital breaths. Then out of the forehead of Brahmā, there emerged a being identical with the eleven (Rudras).

69. The Lord who gave to Brahmā his vital breaths, became his son. When Brahmā was revived to life, Rudra spoke to him delightfully:

70. "O Brahmā, you may express your desire. Think of yourself and know me as your son Rudra. Bless me with your favour."

71-72. On hearing his words, mostly what he had felt in his mind, Brahmā became delighted. His eyes shone with the lustre of full-blown lotus as he returned to life. Lord Brahmā, attaining the lustre of unalloyed gold, spoke in charming majestic words :

73. "O blessed one, you delight my mind. Speak who are

you that as the embodied bliss of the universe stand divided into eleven forms."

74. Thus addressed by Lord Brahmā of infinite splendour, Rudra saluted him along with his sons and spoke.

75-76. "O Brahmā, I was requested for a boon by you along with Viṣṇu: 'O Lord, be my son, or grant me a son equal to you who would carry my burden'. Activities shall be pursued by all persons born in the universe. O Lord of Devas, cast off your gloom and create the worlds."

77. Thus addressed, Brahmā was delighted in his mind and spoke to Rudra thus:

78. "In order to help me, create the subjects along with me. You are the sower of seeds of all living beings. Hence get ready for the task." Rudra accepted the suggestion and said "yes".

79. Then Brahmā, bedecked in deerskin created the mind at first and the retentive power of living beings (?) Thereafter he created Sarasvatī, the speech in multifold forms.

80. Then he, of great lustre, created seven mental sons: Bhṛgu, Aṅgiras, Dakṣa, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu and Vasiṣṭha.

81. He created physical sons too, equal to himself. Pursuing their path again, the cows were born out of his mouth.

82. Brahmā, grandfather of the worlds, created the Vedas with *Oṁkāra* at the head. Then he created Devas worthy of honour and other beings as mentioned before.

83. The Lord spoke to his mind-born sons, Dakṣa and others: "Welfare unto ye. Along with Rudra you create subjects."

84. Approaching Rudra the Prajāpatis said, "O Lord, O Maheśvara, we along with you, desire to create progeny. This is what Brahmā has asked you too".

85-86. Thus addressed Lord Rudra spoke to them: "O Devas, Brahmā's sons, take the vital breaths from me. Make these sons of mine, the Brāhmaṇas, the foremost of the first born. Now you shall create, at my bidding, the seven species of people from Brahmā onward to a blade of grass. They shall be of my nature. Hail unto ye all".

87. Thus addressed by him they replied to Rudra, the trident-bearing primordial lord, "O Sir, everything will happen as you please."

88. After getting permission from lord Rudra, the Prajāpatis spoke to the noble Dakṣa, "Sir, you are the most excellent Prajāpati. Keeping you ahead and by your favour, we will create progeny."

89. Saying "So be it", Dakṣa accepted their suggestion. Desirous of progeny, he with his team, began the work of creation. When Rudra stayed (away) from creation, Brahmā took up the task.

90. When the seventh Kalpa passed Ṛbhu and Sanatkumāra were born. They settled as residents in Tapoloka. Then the Lord created mind-born sages also.

CHAPTER TWENTYSIX

Origin of Sounds[1]

Sūta said:

1. O intelligent one, wonderful are the secrets which you have truthfully spoken for blessing the worlds.

2. There I have a doubt regarding the incarnations of the trident-bearing lord. What is the reason that the great God (Mahādeva) avoids the previous Yugas and takes incarnation in the terrible Kali age (only)?

3. I wish to know how the lord took up incarnation in this Vaivasvata Manvantara.

4. There is nothing unknown to you in this or in the other world. O intelligent lord, if I deserve to hear that great account please tell me. I ask you humbly for the instruction of the devotees.

---

1. This esoteric exposition of *Oṁ*, tracing to it the creation of vowels (and consonants also) and connecting 14 Manus with the 14 vowels, shows how Purāṇic thinkers tried to emphasize the importance of *Oṁ* as the source of everything.

Lomaśa said :

5. Thus asked, Lord Vāyu of great brilliance honoured by the people and engaged in their welfare said :

6. "O son of Gādhi, what you have asked me is a great secret in the world. I shall explain everything. Please listen as I narrate this to you.

7. Formerly, when a thousand divine years had elapsed in the vast ocean of water, Brahmā, desiring to create the subjects was distressed and he began to contemplate.

8. While he was contemplating, a boy manifested himself. His body was emitting divine fragrance. He was reciting nectar-like divine Vedas.

9. He was repeating the Vedic lore that had neither sound, nor touch, nor colour nor smell nor taste and which the four-faced lord (Brahmā) had secured.

10. Then he became engrossed in meditation. After performing terrible penance, he thought within himself thrice, "Who is this ?"

11. While he was contemplating thus, an eternal (imperishable) syllable manifested itself. It was devoid of any sound, touch, form, taste or smell.

12. Then he saw his own form, the most excellect one in the worlds. Meditating upon the lord, he saw it again.

13. He saw that it was white, red, yellow and black. He looked into the colour. It was neither a woman nor a eunuch.

14. After knowing it, he contemplated over the syllable for a pretty long time. While meditating thus, the syllable came out of his throat.

15. It consisted of one single *mātrā*. Its sound was very loud. It was white in colour and very pure. That *Oṁkāra* would be the Veda. The syllable was verily Maheśvara himself.[1]

16. While the self-born Brahmā was contemplating, the red colour manifested itself. That is known as the first Veda [*Deva* in A].

17. The Ṛgveda is the first Veda that begins with the (words) "*agnimile purohitam*" (RV1.1.1). On perceiving this

1. The identification of Oṁ, Brahman or Vedas and Śiva enhances Śiva's greatness in the minds of listeners.

Ṛk, Brahmā the creator of worlds and of great splendour thought, "What is this?"

18. While he was contemplating, the Lord, due to his power of Lordship, turned it into a syllable of two *mātrās*.

19. Then he thought of the *Akṣara* as consisting of two *Mātrās*. It manifested itself as red. The Yajur-veda was born out of it.

20. The Yajur mantra begins '*iṣetvā ūrjetvā vāyavastha devo vaḥ savitā punaḥ*' (TS 1.1.1 and 1.1.15). The Ṛgveda is declared to be (consisting) of a single *mātrā* and the Yajurveda of two *mātrās*.

21. On perceiving the Veda and the *Akṣara* of two *Mātrās*, lord Brahmā contemplated over the *Akṣara* of two *Mātrās*.

22. While he was contemplating *Oṁkāra* appeared. Then Brahmā thought over the *Akṣara Oṁkāra*.

23. Then he observed the yellow Ṛk that rose up, beginning with the words "*agna āyāhi vītaye gṛṇāno havya dātaye*". (RV VI. 16. 10, also Sāmaveda 1.1)

24-26. He, the lord of great brilliance, saw the Vedas present. He contemplated over the *Akṣara* thrice during the three junctions (dawn, mid-day, and dusk). The *Akṣara* which is called Brahman the *Oṁkāra*, assumes three colours during the three *Savana* periods. Due to the contact with the three, that *Akṣara* had three colours. It was perceivable, imperceivable and manifest. It was triple, symbolizing the three heavens. It had three *Mātrās*, three worlds and three Yogas. It was eternal. Since Lord Brahmā contemplated upon that *Akṣara*, it was Brahma.

27. It had the form of the self-born (deity). It saw the lord of fourteen faces of shining splendour. After creating *Oṁkāra* at the outset, the self-born deity Brahmā became visible.

28. Then, out of the four mouths of the four-faced god came out fourteen letters—various letters and vowels. That is the refulgent initial letter. From it sixty-three letters have the letter *A* at the beginning.

29. Hence for serving a common purpose for all letters, the self-born Brahmā stood in the form of "*A*" at the outset. It was the first vowel.

30. Then from those vowels, fourteen Manus of big faces were born. They are the divine sounds in the Manvantara.

31. The letter "*A*" which has fourteen faces and which is known as Brahmā and which is equal to him is called Prajāpati. It exists in all letters.[1]

32. From the first face, Svāyaṁbhuva Manu was born. He is known as the letter "*A*" of the self-born Brahmā. Its colour is white.[2]

1. The purāṇa linguistics believes in the existence of vowel "*A*" in all letters.

2. Verses 32-49 show a crude attempt to connect the 14 Manus to the vowels as follows :

Sr. No. of Brahman's face	Letter of alphabet	Name of the Manu associated	Colour
1st Face	A	Svāyaṁbhuva	White
2nd	Ā	Svārociṣa	Yellowish white
3rd*	I	The Sun (?)—Yajurveda	
	Ī	Kṣattriya	Red
	*No Manu named for I & Ī		
4th	U	Tāmasa	Copper-coloured
5th	Ū	Cariṣṇava	Yellow
6th	Oṁ	(Vijaya?)	Tawny
7th	Ṛ	Vaivasvata	Dark
8th	Ṝ (long)	Sāvarṇi	Dark bluc
9th	Ḷ (ऌ)	Dhūmra	Smoky
10th	Ḹ (ॡ)	Sāvarṇika	Similar as above
11th	E	Piśaṅga Manu	Reddish brown
12th	AI	Also Piśaṅga Manu	Reddish brown with the lustre of Bhasma
13th	O	Not named	Five colours
14th	AU	Sāvarṇi	Variegated

This tabular statement shows that

(i) The list of Manus is different from the usual list.

(ii) Names of some Manus are repeated.

(iii) Some letters e.g., I, Ī, O, Oṁ have no presiding Manus.

(iv) The Purāṇa author has foisted long Ḹ on the alphabet though no grammarian accepts it.

*Pāṇini does not recognize long Ḹ (ॡ)

33. From his second face the letter "*Ā*" was born. He is known as the Svārociṣa Manu. His colour is yellowish white.

34. From his third face was born the letter "*Ī*" the most excellent of the Yajus. The sun consists of Yajus from which the Yajurveda manifested itself.

35. That Manu is known as the letter "*I*". He is valorous and of red colour. The Kṣattras (the warrior caste) function from it. Hence a Kṣattriya is red.

36. From his fourth face was born the vowel "*U*". It is copper-coloured. It is known as Tāmasa Manu.

37. From his fifth face the letter "*Ū*" was born. It is yellow in colour. It is known as Cariṣṇava Manu.

38. Then from his sixth face, Oṁkāra was born. It was tawny in colour. From the sixth was born the superior-most *Vijaya* (Victory) of great penance.

39. From his seventh face was born the vowel "*Ṛ*". It is known as Vaivasvata Manu. It is dark in colour.

40. From his eighth face emerged the (long) "*Ṝ*". Due to its dark blue colour and due to its being similar (in sibilant pronunciation ?) in Śyā-ma, it is called Sāvarṇi.

41. From his ninth face was born the ninth letter "*Ḷ*". It has the colour of the smoke and (the Manu ?) is known as "Dhūmra".

42. From his tenth face was born the letter (long) "*Ḹ*". It is similar to the lord and has a similar colour. Hence it is known as Sāvarṇika Manu.

43. From his eleventh face was born the letter "*E*". It is called 'Manu'. It is reddish brown in colour. It is known as Piśaṅga (reddish brown) Manu.

44. From his twelfth face was born the letter "*Ai*". It is reddish brown with the lustre of *Bhasma* (ashes). It is also known as Piśaṅga Manu.

45. The letter that was born from his thirteenth face was called the letter "*O*", which consisting of five colours, excels all.

46. The letter born from his fourteenth face was called the letter "*AU*". It is of variegated colours. It is known as Sāvarṇi Manu.

47. Thus the Manus, letters and colours shall be known precisely in regard to Kalpa, accent and letters.

48. The vowels are of similar colour. They are assigned to *Varṇas* due to their similarity in colour. Their logical connection or natural sequence is stated.

49. Since born in the same Kalpa, they are of the same colour, the junctions (combinations, transitions) of the Kalpas or letters occur in respect of similar entities.

50. The groups of letters are formed by their places of utterance (*sthānas*) as the distributions of castes by their professional equity. This is the practice in regard to the junctions of vowels and the transition of Kalpas.

CHAPTER TWENTYSEVEN

Names and Bodies of the Great Lord[1]

The sages said :

1. The manifestation in this Kalpa of the noble-souled supreme Lord Rudra along with the spiritually aspirant sages has been mentioned by you. Now let us hear this in detail.

Sūta narrated :

2. The origin of the primordial creation has been narrated by me briefly. Now I shall describe in detail the bodies and names of Lord Rudra.

3. The supreme Lord begot of his wives several sons in the eighth Kalpa that has passed. Now listen.

4. In the beginning of the Kalpa, while he was meditating about a son who should be his equal, there appeared in his lap

1. This chapter corresponds to Bd. P. I.2.10 and a number of verses are common to them both. The topic of this chapter—the eightfold form—*aṣṭa-mūrti*—of Śiva is popular in Purāṇas and classical literature.

a youth blue and red in colour. He held him who was blazing in brilliance and shouting terribly.

5. On seeing him crying suddenly Brahmā asked the child Nīlalohita,[1] "Why are you crying ?"

6. The boy said : "O grand-sire, at first give me a name".[2] "O Lord, you are named Rudra". Though he was thus told, he cried again.

7. "Why do you cry ?" Brahmā asked him again as he cried. The boy said to Brahmā, "Give me a second name".

8. "O Lord, you are Bhava by name." On being told thus he cried again. Brahmā asked Śaṅkara, "Why do you cry ?"

9. "Give me a third name", he replied to him (Brahmā). "O Lord ! You are Śiva by name", he was told. But he cried again.

10. "Why do you cry ?" asked Brahmā again as he cried. He told the self-born deity, "Give me a fourth name".

11. On being told "O Lord, you are Paśupati (the lord of Paśus-individual souls)", he cried again. As he cried again, Brahmā asked him, "Why do you cry ?"

12. When told, "Give me a fifth name", he replied, "O Lord, you are Īśa by name." On being told thus, he cried again.

13. "Why do you cry ?" Brahmā asked him as he cried. He told the Lord, "Give me a sixth name".

14. "O Lord, you are Bhīma by name". On being told thus he cried again. As he cried again Brahmā said, "Why do you cry ?"

15. "Give me a seventh name". On being told thus, he replied to him, "O Lord, you are Ugra by name". On being told thus, he cried again.

16. "Why do you cry ?" asked Brahmā as he cried. "O Lord, give me an eighth name". When he was told, "You are Mahādeva by name", he stopped (crying).

17. After obtaining these names from Brahmā, the Lord requested, "Assign bodies to these names".

---

1. The identification of Rudra and Agni is suggested by this epithet.

2. The legend of Rudra crying for a name and god Brahmā assigning a name to him and the recurrence of this granting of names for eight times is an amplification of the same story in *Satapatha Brāhmaṇa* (Ś Br.6.3.1-18).

18-19. Then the following bodies for these names were created by Brahmā. These were the sun, the earth, water, fire, air, ether, the initiated Brāhmaṇa and the moon. These (eight) have their source in Brahmā. Rudra should be worshipped and honoured in these bodies. Thus (honoured and worshipped) Rudra does not injure.[1]

20-21. Then Brahmā spoke to the lord Nīlalohita again : "To your second name declared as Bhava by me, the body shall be the waters". When this was said, the stable element of the nature of *Rasa* (the lymphatic constituent in his body) entered water. Hence water is known as *Bhava*.

22. The living beings are born of waters and purified by them (they are named *Bhavas*). Greation of beings is by means of production and purification.

23. So none shall pass urine or evacuate bowels in waters. None shall take bath in the nude or spit into water.

24. None shall indulge in sexual intercourse (in waters). None shall perform headbath. None shall look into water sportively while sailing by boat or standing still on the shore.

25. Since waters form the sacred body of Bhava, they shall nowhere be defiled. One shall avoid waters small (in quantity) or discoloured, insipid or foul smelling.

26. The ocean is the source of waters. Hence waters desire the ocean. On flowing into the ocean, waters became pure and nectarine.

27. Hence one shall not obstruct waters that desire to flow unto the ocean. Lord Bhava never injures a person who behaves with waters always thus.

28. Brahmā then spoke to the lord, "To your third name which was mentioned as Śarva,[2] let this earth be the third body."

29. When this was uttered, the firm and stable portion of the body called the bone (system) entered the earth. Hence the earth is called Śarva.

---

1. It appears that some verses are missing in this text as no mention is made of his first body. The missing verses might be corresponding to Bd. P. I.2.10.21-28.

2. There is a difference in the names—in v. 9 it is 'Śiva' while here in v. 28 it is a Śarva' as in Bd. P.

30. Therefore no wise man should leave faeces or urine in the shade or on steps. He should not pass urine on his own shadow.

31. He should evacuate the bowels after covering his head and the ground with grass. He who behaves thus to the earth is not injured by Śarva.

32-34. Then Brahmā addressed Lord Nīlalohita : 'To your fourth name designated as Iśāna by me, the wind shall be the fourth body. As soon as this was said, the wind (vital breath) which was stationed in him in five forms and is termed Prāṇa entered Vāyu. Hence Vāyu is called Iśāna. So one should not censure or revile the wind, the Lord himself, as it blows violently.

35. Then Brahmā spoke to Lord Dhūmralohita. To your fifth name Paśupati, let fire be the fifth body.

36. When this was said, Agni (Fire-god) entered the fiery element in the body. Hence Paśupati is called Agni.

37. The moon is called Soma. The group of medicinal herbs is its Ātman. Mahādeva does not kill a person who, during the full moon or the new moon day, worships the lord thus.

38. The sun protects people during the day and the moon at night. During one night (once in a month) the sun and the moon come together and that is the new moon day. One shall always be in communion with the lord on that day.

39. All this (universe) is pervaded by these bodies and names (of Rudra). The sun that moves about all alone is also called the moon*.

40. It is due to the light of the sun that the people see with their eyes. Rudra, in the resplendent form of the sun, drinks water with his rays.

41. Food and waters are eaten and drunk. The body (of Bhava) grows and flourishes by these.

42. It is his body called earth with which he sustains all people with a stable mind. It is the body called Śārvī which sustains the subjects.

---

*'Rudra' in Bd. P. I.2.10.66 is a better reading.

43. As long as the gaseous body of Īśāna is stationed in the bodies of living beings along with the functions of the vital breath, it is the vital breath of beings.

44. That which digests the food and beverages eaten and drunk, in the bellies of living beings, is called Paśupati's power. It is called the digestive power.

45. The pores within the bodies which are for facilitating the free movement of the wind, constitute the body called Bhīma.

46. The propounders of the Vedas initiated in sacrifices have their bodies in the form of Ugra. Ugra is, therefore, known as Dīkṣita (initiated Yajamāna).

47. That which conceives and contemplates and exists equally among the people is the mental body. It is known as the moon abiding among beings.

48. The moon is born again and again emerging fresh everytime. It is led[1] in accordance with their desire by Devas and Pitṛs. It is known as the great lord of nectarine nature, full of water.

49. To the first body of the lord known as Rudra[2] and symbo-

1. Bd. P.I.2.10.75 reads '*pīyate*' 'is drunk', a better reading.

2. Verses 49-60 give the names of the forms of Śiva, his abode or body allotted to him, designation of that body, name of his consort and the name of his son (s). The following tabular statement of the eight forms will clarify the above verses:

Name or Form of Śiva	Abode or Form or Body allotted	Name of the Consort	Name (s) of the Son (s)
1. Rudra	The Sun i.e. Heat or Prāṇa	Suvarcalā	Śanaiścara (Saturn)
2. Bhava	Water	Uṣā (Dhātrī in Bd. P.)	Uśanas (Venus)
3. Śarva	The earth	Vikeśī	Aṅgāraka (Mars)
4. Īśāna	The wind	Śivā	Manojava
5. Paśupati	The fire	Svāhā	Skanda
6. Bhima	The ether (Ākāśa)	Quarters	Svarga
7. Ugra	Sacrificer (Dīkṣita)	Dīkṣā	Santāna
8. Mahādeva	The Moon	Rohiṇī	Budha (Mercury)

lized by the sun, the wife is Suvarcalā and the son is Śanaiścara (Saturn).

50. To the second body of the lord known as Bhava and symbolized by water, the wife is Uṣā and Uśanas (the planet Venus) the son.

51. To the third body of the lord known as Śarva and symbolized by the earth the wife is Vikeśī and Aṅgāraka (Mars) the son.

52. To the fourth body of the lord known as Īśāna and symbolized by the wind, the wife is Śivā and Manojava the son.

53. The body of Paśuptati which is remembered (proclaimed) as Fire by the twice-borns, has Svāhā for his wife and Skanda as the son.

54. The ether (Ākāśa) is called the body Bhīma, his sixth name. Quarters are remembered as his wives and Heaven (Svarga) as the son.

55. To the seventh body of the Lord known as Ugra and symbolized by the sacrificer, the wife is Dīkṣā (initiation) and Santāna as the son.

56-57. The eighth body of the great Lord is known as the Moon. His wife is Rohiṇī and Budha is remembered as the son. They should be saluted and bowed with respective names to each body.

58. By devotion to these bodies and the names of the Lord, viz. the Sun, the Waters, the Earth, Wind, Fire, Ether, Initiaited Priest and the Moon, the devotee attains *Sāyujya* with the Lord himself.

59. Thus the secret glory of the terrible lord has been narrated to you. Welfare be unto us the bipeds. Welfare be unto our quadrupeds.

6o. Thus the origin of the bodies of Lord Mahādeva along with their designations has been recounted. Now listen to progeny of Bhṛgu.

It will be found that the abodes of the name of Nīlalohita are the eight forms (*aṣṭa-mūrtis*) of Śiva which are the five *Mahābhūtas* (gross elements), Prāṇas and the mind (represented by the moon). Our Text does not give the designation of these *mūrtis* as given in the Bd. P.

CHAPTER TWENTYEIGHT

Families of Sages[1]

Sūta said :

1. Khyāti bore to Bhṛgu the holy lords Dhātṛ and Vidhātṛ living throughout the Manvantara. They were masters of happiness and misery and grant auspicious and inauspicious results to living beings.

2. Their eldest sister, the chaste goddess Śrī, the purifier of worlds, attained the auspicious lord Nārāyaṇa as her husband, and gave birth to two sons: Bala (Strength) and Utsāha (Energy).

3. Those heaven-walkers who pilot the aerial chariots of Devas and meritorious beings, were born to her as mental sons.

4-5. She had two daughters Āyati and Niyati who are remembered as the wives of Vidhātṛ and Dhātṛ. They had two sons Pāṇḍu and Mṛkaṇḍu. They were firm in religious vows, eternal and the very storehouses of the Vedic learning. Mārkaṇḍeya was born of Mṛkaṇḍu from Manasvinī.

6. Vedaśiras was his son born of Mūrdhanyā. The sons born to Vedaśiras in Pīvarī established the family line. They were known as Mārkaṇḍeyas. They were seers and masters of the Vedas.

7. Pāṇḍu begot of Puṇḍarīkā a son, Dyutimān. Two sons were born to him, viz. Dyutimanta and Sṛjavān. Their sons and grandsons had alliances with the descendants of Bhṛgu. Listen to the progeny of Marīci when the Svāyaṁbhuva Manvantara had passed.

8. Marīci's wife gave birth to a son Pūrṇamāsa. Know that these daughters too were born, viz. Kuṣṭi, Pṛṣṭi, Tviṣā and the beautiful Apaciti.

9. Pūrṇamāsā begot of Sarasvatī two sons Virajas and the righteous Parvasa.

---

1. This chapter corresponds to Bd. P. I. 2.11 even textually. It deals with the progeny of the famous seven sages such as Bhṛgu, Aṅgiras, Atri, Pulaha and others. It mentions their important descendants. The text states their (descendants') position in the Svāyaṁbhuva Manvantara.

10. Virāja's son Sudhāman was famous as learned Vairāja. The son of Sudhāman resorted to (and settled in) the eastern quarter.

11. He was the son of Gaurī and a valorous, righteous ruler of the worlds. Parvasa had great fame and he was the most excellent of all Gaṇas.

12. Parvasa begot of Parvasā two glorious sons Yajñavāma and Kāśyapa. These two righteous sons established their race.

13-14. Smṛti, the wife of Aṅgiras, gave birth to two sons and four daughters who were pious and renowned in the world. They (the daughters) were Sinivālī, Kuhū, Rākā and Anumati. The sons were two, viz. Bharatāgni and Kīrtimān.

15. Saṁhūti gave birth to Agni's (Bharatāgni's?) son, Lord Parjanya. Another Parjanya called Hiraṇyaromā was born of Marīci. He is known as the guardian of the world abiding upto the final dissolution of the world.

16. To Kīrtimān, Dhenukā bore two pious sons—Variṣṭha and Dhṛtimān. They were the most excellent of the descedants of Aṅgiras.

17-19. Their sons and grandsons who were in thousands have passed away. Anasūya gave birth to five sinless sons by Atri, and to a daughter called Śruti, the mother of Śaṅkhapada. She was the wife of Kardama, son of Pulaha, the Patriarch. The five sons of Atri are glorified (enumerated) thus: Satyanetra, Havya, Āpomūrti, Śanīśvara and the fifth was Soma. At the end of Svāyaṁbhuva Manvantara they passed away along with the Yāma gods.

20. The descendants of Atri, their sons and grandsons were in hundreds and thousands. They lived upto the end of Svāyaṁbhuva Manvantara.

21. Dattāli was the son of Pulastya by his wife Prīti. In his previous birth, in the Svāyaṁbhuva Manvantara, he was known as Agastya. Devabāhu was the middle and Vinīta was the third son of Pulastya.

22. Their younger sister, viz. Sadvatī was well known. She is remembered as the splended and pure wife of Agni (i.e. Bharatāgni) and mother of Parjanya.

23. The wife of Dattāli, the saintly and intelligent son of

Pulastya and Prīti brought forth many sons: Sujaṅgha and others. They became famous as Paulastyas (descendants of Pulastya).

24. Kṣamā gave birth to the sons of Pulaha. They had fiery refulgence and they established their reputation.

25. They were Kardama, Ambarīṣa, Sahiṣṇu, Ṛṣi and Dhanakapīvān. An auspicious daughter, Pīvarī, was also born.

26. Kardama's wife Śruti, daughter of Atri, gave birth to a son Śaṅkhapada and a daughter Kāmyā.

27. The glorious Śaṅkhapada was a Prajāpati and the ruler of worlds. After giving Kāmyā (in marriage) to Priyavrata, he settled in the southern region.

28. From Priyavrata, Kāmyā got ten sons equal to Svāyaṁbhuva Manu and two daughters who extended the Kṣattriya race.

29. The sons Dhanakapīvān and Sahiṣṇu became famous. So also Yaśodhārin, Kāmadeva and Sumadhyama.

30. From Ṛtu a son equal to Kratu was born and the progeny was auspicious. They did not marry and remained celibate. They were sixty thousand in number and known as Vālakhilyas.

31. They surround the sun and go ahead of Aruṇa. They will remain fellow-travellers with the sun till the universe is finally dissolved.

32. Two younger sisters were Puṇyātmā and Sumati. They were the daughters-in-law of Parvasa, son of Pūrṇamāsa.

33-34. Seven sons were born to Vasiṣṭha in Ūrjā. Their eldest sister was the slender-waisted lady Puṇḍarīkā who was the mother of Dyutimān and the wife of Pāṇḍu. Her younger brothers were seven. They were famous as Vāsiṣṭhas.

35. They were Rajas, Putra, Ardhabāhu, Savana. Adhana, Sutapas and Śukla. They are known as seven sages.

36. The famous daughter of Mārkaṇḍeya bore to Rajas a son known as Prajāpati Ketumān, a king in the western region.

37-38. Vāsiṣṭhas are known by their Gotra names. The races of the noble-souled Vāsiṣṭhas passed away in the Svāyaṁbhuva Manvantara.

Listen to the progeny of Agni.

Thus the creation of sages has been recounted along with their attendants. Henceforth, listen to the progeny of Agni in deatail and in due order.

CHAPTER TWENTYNINE

Progeny of Agni[1]

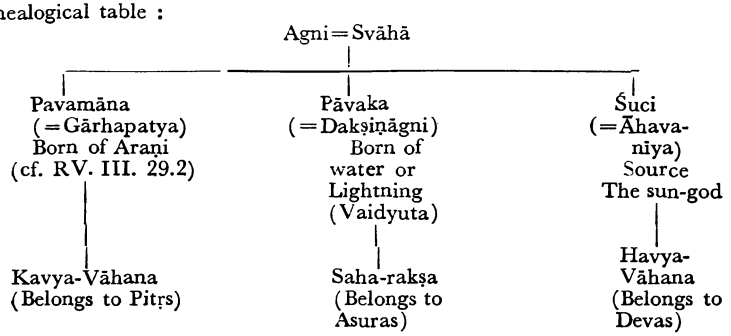
1-2. A mental son of Brahmā was the deity identifying himself with Agni (the Fire-god) in the Svāyaṁbhuva Manvantara. Svāhā bore to him three sons:[2] Pāvaka, Pāvamāna and Śuci or Śaura (solar-fire).

3. Pavamāna is the fire which is obtained after churning (the *Araṇi*). Śuci is remembered as the solar fire. Pāvaka is the fire originating from the lightning. These are their (specific) abodes.

---

1. In this chapter fortynine ritualistic functions of Fire are represented as so many Fire-gods and the correlation of these is arranged in a genealogical form. In fact it is a Vedic conception presented here in a popular form. Probably this formed a part of the original Purāṇa as it is found in the *Mbh. Vana* chs. 217-222, *Bd. P.* I. 2.12, *Mt. P.* 51, *VP.* I. 10. 14-17 to mention a few. V. S. Agrawal regards *Va. P.* account as the original (*Mt. P.* : *A study*, p. 155). Pargiter did not know the Vedic background when he condemned it as 'imaginary genealogy' (*AIHT*, p. 122) for it is no 'genealogy' at all.

2. The relations of the following fires will be clear from the following genealogical table :



4. Pavamāna's son is called Kavya-vāhana. From Pāvaka was born Saharakṣa. Havyavāha was the son of Śuci.

5. Havyavāha is the fire of Devas. Kavyavāha is the fire of Pitṛs. Saharakṣa is the fire of Asuras. These are (thus) the three fires pertaining to the three (viz. Devas, Pitṛs and Asuras).

6. Their sons and grandsons are fortynine in number. I shall mention their divisions separately by (stating their) names.

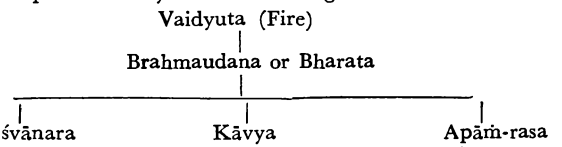
7. Vaidyuta[1], the secular the fire, was the first son of Brahmā. His son Brahmaudanāgni was famous (by the name) Bharata.

8. Vaiśvānara and others were his sons. They were Mahar, Kāvya and Apāṁ-rasa. Amṛta was first churned in the Puṣkara[2] ocean by Atharvan. That Atharvan is the terrestrial fire. Dadhyaṅ[3] was Atharvan's son.

9. Atharvan shall be known as Bhṛgu and Aṅgiras as the son of Atharvan. Hence it is that the worldly fire Dadhyaṅ was Atharvan's son.

---

1. The group from Vaidyuta fire is arranged as follows :



Agni is called *Bharata* as he supplies Havya to gods. As *Śat. Br.* (I .4.2.2) explains :

eṣa agnir hi devebhyo bharati tasmād bharatagnir itvāhuḥ.

This genealogy thus identifies :

Brahmaudana=Bharata=Vaiśvānara (For details, see V. S. Agrawa *ibid* p. 158).

2. This is a reference to RVvi. 16. 12 where Agni is said to have been churned out of Puṣkara. Thus Puṣkara=Waters (*Āpo vai Puṣkaram—Śat. Br.* VI. 4. 2.2). *Śat. Br.* VII. 4.1-13 further explains that when Indra became frightened after killing Vṛtra, he resorted to waters. They (waters) offered their sap (*apāṁ rasaḥ*) to him and created a city (*pur*) for him. Hence water came to be called Puṣkara (*asmai puram akurvans tasmād puṣkaraṁ ha vai tat puṣkaram ācakṣate parokṣam.*

3. *Dadhyaṅ* is etymologically related with *dadhi* which according to *Śat. Br.* 7.5-1 is a symbol of the earth or Matter (*dadhi haivāṣya lokasya rūpam*). Probably it is related to Dakṣiṇāgni.

10. Now the fire Pavamāna[1] which is remembered by the wise as *Nirmantha* (one generated by churning) should be known as *Gārhapatya* fire from whom were born two sons.

11. Śaṁsya is the *Āhavanīya* fire which is known as *Havyavāhana*. His second son is named as Śukra who is consecrated by reciting sacred Mantras.

12. *Sabhya* and *Āvasathya* were the two sons of the fire Śaṁsya. Śaṁsya *Havyavāhana* which is known as the *Āhavanīya* fire by the Brāhmaṇas loved sixteen rivers.[2]

13-14. They were Kāverī, Kṛṣṇaveṇī, Narmadā, Yamunā, Godāvarī, Vitastā, Candrabhāgā, Irāvatī, Vipāśā, Kauśikī, Śatadru, Sarayū, Sītā, Sarasvatī, Hrādinī and Pāvanī.[3]

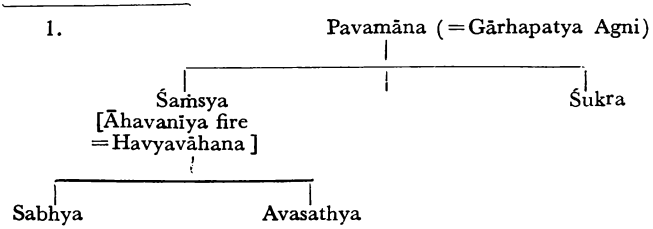
15. He divided himself into separate sixteen parts among them and deposited himself in those *dhiṣṇis*.

16. *Dhiṣṇis* move about in the sky. Those that are born in them are called *Dhiṣṇis*. They are proclaimed as *Dhiṣṇis* as they are born in *Dhiṣṇis*.

17. Hence these sons of the rivers were born in *Dhiṣṇis*. Out of them some fires are *Viharaṇīya* (portable) and some

---

1.



Sabhya is the fire kept burning in the recreation hall for diffusing warmth to people assembled (Medhātithi on Manu III. 185). Like the Gārhapatya fire, it is produced by friction (*Kātyāyana Śrauta Sūtra* IV. 9. 20).

Avasathya is the fire to be kept in the guest-room.

2. This is a poetic way of describing the spread of Yajña-cult. It covers the geographical area from Central Asia from the river Sītā or the Tarim (AGP 100-102) down to the Kāverī in South India. Modern political maps of India do not show India as known to Purāṇas.

3. The following are the modern names in the above list of rivers given in vv. 13-14: Kṛṣṇā-Veṇi (the Krishnā), Vitastā (the Jhelum), Candrabhāgā (the Chinab), Irāvatī (the Rāvī), Vipāśa (the Bias), Śatadru (the Sutlej), Kauśikī (the Kosī), Sītā (the Tarim—Yarkand), Hrādinī (the Brahmaputrā?), Iāvanī (the Ghaggar).

are *Upastheya* (to be worshipped at their places or spots)[1]. Listen, I shall explain them succinctly and precisely.

18. Ṛtu, Pravāhaṇa and Agnīdhra are the Dhiṣṇīs in front. Others are ordained in accordance with their seats in the order of sacrifice on the day when Soma juice is extracted.

19. Listen to the order of fires, the names of which are not mentioned before.[2] The fire Samrāṭ is the fire stationed on the second *Uttara-vedi*.

20. The Samrāṭ fire is proclaimed as eight (fold in form?). Brāhmaṇas worship them. Beneath it is the second Parṣad fire.

21. When the mantras "*Pra tadvoce nabhaḥ* (VS. 33.9?) etc. are repeated four times that fire is conceived. The fire named *Brahma-Jyoti-Vasu*[3] is spoken to have its abode in Brahmā's region.

22-23. A fire having no association with the celestial or the sacrificial fires has an abode in the cremation ground. The terrestrial fire of the ocean is said to abide in Brahmā's region. The lustrous fire Ṛtudhāmā lives in the Udumbara wood. (Line

---

1. The author classifies Dhiṣṇya fires into (1) *Viharaṇīya* and (2) *Upastheya*. The *Dhiṣṇyā* was a side-altar of a heap of earth covered with sand. Fire was placed on the altar. In *soma* sacrifices, these fires were placed between the altar (*Vedi*) of the Śrauta Yajña and the *Uttara-Vedi* meant for *soma* sacrifice. The designation *Upastheya* is given to these fires as they were to he approached at their fixed places on the *Uttara Vedi*. The *Viharaṇīya* fires were so called as they could be taken to any spot considered necessary on the day of the Yajña.

2. Verses 19-24 give the list of *Upastheya* fires as follows:

1. *Samrād agni* also called *Kṛśānu*.

2. Parṣad (but Mt. P. names it *Parjanya*) [Mt. P. mentions *Samūhya* fires but our text omits it].

3. *Brahma-jyotiḥ* (called *Vasudhāmā* in Mt. P.). If the reading *Vasudhāman* of *Mt. P.* 51-21 for *Vasurnāma* in our text be accepted, it would mean "The fire *Brahma-jyotiḥ* another name of which is *Vasudhāman* is in the place of the Brahman").

4. *Śāmitra* : The reading in Mt. P. (ibid) means, "The fire *Havyasūda* is also called *Śāmitra* and *Assamṛjjya*.

5. *Ajaikapāda* also called *Śālāmukhīya*.

6. *Ahirbudhnya* also called *Anuddeśya*.

The fire *Sata-dhāmā* alias *Śvarjyoti* in the list of Mt. P. is not found in our text.

3. Variations from Mt. P are noted in the notes.

repeated) the fire called Brahma-jyoti Vasu is said to be abiding in Brahmā's region.

24. Ajaikapāt is the *Upastheya* fire. Its place is in front of the sacrificial hall. Ahirbudhnya is the *Anuddeśya* (not kindled?). That fire is proclaimed as Gṛhapati.

25. All the sons of Śaṁsya fire are regarded as *Upastheya* by Brāhmaṇas.

I shall now explain the *Viharaṇiyas* and their eight sons.[1]

26. Kratu, Pravāhana and Agnīdhra are the Dhiṣṇīs there. On the day when Soma juice is extracted, they are carried to their spots.

27. The fire which is remembered as the son of Pautra, that Havya-bearer is called fire Śānti or Pracetas or Satya. It is the second fire.

28. The fire Viśvadeva is said to be at *Brahma-sthāna*. Avakṣu, the son of Acchāvāka, is conceived to be at the position of the earth (*Bhū*).

29. The powerful fire Uśīra is regarded as the son of Neṣṭhīya. The eighth fire Vyaratti is proclaimed as the son of Mārjāli (?).

30. Dhiṣṇyās are Viharaṇīyas (portable?) by Saumya (?) and another. Out of them that which is called Pāvaka is the foetus of waters.[2]

31. That fire shall be known as "*Avabhṛtha*" which is worshipped properly by oblations in the waters. The fire *Hṛcchaya* is his son, it is the fire stationed in the belly of men.

---

1. *Viharaṇīya* fires are eight in number. But their lists in our text and in the Mt. P. are different. These portable (viharaṇīya) fires are regarded as the sons of the stationary fires. The list of *Viharaṇīya* fires in our text is as follows :

1. Pravāhaṇa, 2. Śānti or Pracetas or Satya, 3. Viśvadeva, 4. Avakṣu, 5. Uśīra, 6. Vyaratti. Two more names are missing in this list, but Mt. P. 51 gives only four names and cannot supply the missing names.

2. Verses 30-35 give the following 'descendants' of the fire Pāvaka :

Pāvaka→Avabhṛtha→Hṛcchaya→Manyumān→Saṁvartaka→Saharakṣa →Kṣāma→Kravyād.

The list of Agnis (Sons of Bṛhaspati) in *Mbh Vana* 219 though similar to this list is unsytematic and probably later. The same can be said of the list in the Mt. P. 51.

32. Manyumān, the scholarly fire, is the son of Jāṭhara (Gastric) fire. Mutually kindled that fire is the lord of living beings.

33. The son of the fire Manyumān is the terrible *Saṁvartaka* fire. That mare-faced fire stays in the ocean consuming its waters.

34. Saharakṣa is the son of the submarine fire. Saharakṣa's son Kṣāma burns human habitations.

35. The fire *Kravyāda* is his son. It consumes the dead. These are the sons i.e. descendants of the fire Pāvaka.

36. The fire Śuci, son of the Sun, was kindled by Gandharvas and Asuras by churning the *Araṇi* wood.[1]

37. Lord Āyus is the fire consecrated in the animal. Mahiman was the son of Āyus and his son was Śāvāna by name.

38. The fire that identifies (itself with it) in cooking and sacrifices is known as Savana. The son of the fire Savana was the famous Adbhuta.

39. Vivici is known as the great son of Adbhuta. It always swallows the offerings in expiatory rites of sinners.

40. Vivici's son was Arka and his sons are Anīkavān, Asṛjavān, Rakṣohā, Pitṛkṛt, Surabhi and Rukmavān. The latter abides in gold, jewels and other shining materials.

41. The fourteen fires are the progeny of the fire Śuci. These are called Vahnis. They are consecrated by reciting mantras in sacrifices.

42. In the Manvantara called Svāyaṁbhuva, in the first Sarga (creation), these fires who were *Abhimānins*, had passed away along with the Yāmas, the best of Devas.

43. In the previous Manvantara, these fires were those who identified themselves with their abodes called *Viharaṇiyas*, both sentient and non-sentient.

---

1. Verses 36-41 give the following 'descendants' of Śuci (the Son of the Sun-god):

Śuci→Āyus→Mahiman→Sāvāna (cooking as well as sacrificial fire)→ Adbhuta→Vivici→Arka.

Anīkavān, Asṛjavān, Rakṣobha, Pitṛkṛt, Surabhi, Rukmavān

Mt. P. adds Vīra as the Son of Adbhuta.

44. These (fires) were assigned to the three types of Karmas, viz. *Kāmya* (those depending on desire), *Naimittika* (occasional) and constant (*Nitya*). In the previous Manvantara they passed away along with the fair sons.

45-46. Thus the abodes and the abiders have been explained by me. Through them alone, the characteristics of the fires of the past and future Manvantaras have been enumerated. All of them are remembered as ascetics, those who performed Avabhṛtha bath, lords of subjects and luminous.

47. In the seven Manvantaras from Svārociṣa to Sāvarṇi, they shall be known through their different forms and purposes in all the Manvantaras.

48. The present fires exist with the present Devas and the future fires with the future Devas.

49. Thus the instruction about Fire-god has been imparted to you precisely. Now the account of Pitṛs (manes) will be told in detail and in due order.

CHAPTER THIRTY

The Curse of Dakṣa[1]

Sūta said :

1. Even as Brahmā was creating sons formerly in the Svāyaṁbhuva Manvantara waters,[2] human beings, Asuras and Devas were born.

2. While he thought upon Pitṛs (lit. like Pitṛs), the Pitṛs (Manes) were born. Their creation has been described before. Its details are being narrated now.

---

1. The story of the destruction of Dakṣa's sacrifice is (even textually) similar to that in *Mbh Śānti* 284 as many verses are common to both texts. But here in the introduction, we have a discussion about the concept of Time, the seasons and Pitṛs.

2. *gātrataḥ* (in Bd.P.I.2.13.1) 'From the limbs' is a better reading.

3. On seeing the creation of Devas, Asuras and human beings, god Brahmā said[1] (to himself i.e. conceived a new creation). While he thought upon Pitṛs, they were born.[2]

4. The six seasons (the spring etc.) are called the Pitṛs. The Vedic Śruti declares: "The seasons are the Pitṛ-Devas"[3]

5. In all the Manvantaras, past and future (the same is repeated). Formerly these were born in the auspicious Manvantara (called) Svāyaṁbhuva.

6. They (Pitṛs) are known by the names *Agniśvātta*[4] and *Barhiṣadas*. Those of them who were householders but did not perform *yajñas* are remembered as *Agniśvāttas*. They were not *Āhitāgnis* (who maintain regularly the sacred fire).

7. Those (of the Pitṛs) who performed sacrifices (and pressed Soma-juice) are the Pitṛs called *Soma-pīthins*. Those Pitṛs who maintained the sacred fire (while on the earth) are remembered as *Barhiṣad* Pitṛs. In the scriptures, the decision that seasons are the *Pitṛ-devas* is approved.

8-9. The months of *Madhu* and *Mādhava* (Caitra and Vaiśākha) should be known as *Rasas* (juicy); those of *Śuci* and *Śukra* (Jyeṣṭha and Āṣāḍha) are Suṣmins (lustrous). Those of *Nabhas* and *Nabhasya* (Śrāvaṇa and Bhādrapada) are cited as *jīvas*; those of *Iṣa* and *Ūrja* (Āśvina and Kārtika) are ambrosial; those of *Saha* and *Sahasya* (Mārgaśīrṣa and Pauṣa) are called *manyumān* (angry) and those of *Tapas* and *Tapasya* (Māgha and Phālguna) are terrible and cold.[5]

---

1. *abhyamanyata* (Bd. P.I.2.13.3) 'took pride in them'.

2. *upayakṣitāḥ* in the text is obscure *upapakṣataḥ*, 'from the flanks' in *op. cit.* is better. *Pa* and *ya* in Devanāgarī script are always confused.

3. The identification of seasons (*Ṛtus*) with Pitṛs is as old as *Tait. Br.* (I.4.10.8) which states:

athartavaḥ pitaraḥ prajāpatim pitṛ-yajñenāyajanta !

'Ṛtus are Pitṛs. They offered *Pitṛ-yajña* to Prajāpati, their father'. The identification of Ṛtus & Pitṛs is endorsed by Manu III. 217.

ṣaḍ ṛtūṁśca namas-kuryāt
Pitṛneva ca mantra-vit!

Also vide vv. 7, 11 below.

4. For classification of Pitṛs see *supra* ch. 1, p. 10, note 2 also.

5. The nomenclature Madhu, Mādhava etc. for modern months Caitra, Vaiśākha etc. is the orignal and older one (Kane *HD*, V. Part I, p. 668).

10. The periods of time (called seasons) are six. In them are included (periods of time called) months. These seasons are said to be sentient and insentient.

11. The seasons are the sons of Brahmā. They identify themselves with the months and fortnights as their stations.

12-13. Through the change of their abodes, these *Abhimānins* (deities who identify) will be recognizable. Day, night, month, season, tropical transits of the sun (a half year) and year constitute the abodes of the deities. Nimeṣas, Kalās, Kāṣṭhās, Muhūrtas, days and nights constitute the units of time.

14. Since these are stationed in them or since these identify with them, they are known as identifiers. I shall explain them. Understand.

15. The units of time are the *Tithis* of Parvans, the junctions; the fortnights are the halves of months: two fortnights make a month and two months constitutes a *Ṛtu* (season).

16. Three seasons constitute an *Ayana*. The two *Ayanas*, the southern and the northern, constitute a year which is a fixed period (*Sumeka*). Such are the positions of identifiers.

17. The sons of the season are five (viz. human beings, quadrupeds, birds, reptiles and trees). They are characterised by their seasonal changes.

18. Since the mobile and immobile beings are born of *Ārtavas* (seasonal changes, menstruation etc.), the seasonal changes are their fathers and seasons are grandfathers.

19. It is from *Sumeka** (fixed period of time) that beings are born and die. Hence *Sumeka* is remembered as the great-grandfather of the subjects.

20. Due to their having the same name, the same essences and the same nature, *Sthānins* (deities abiding in a particular *Sthāna* or unit of time) are declared to be identical with the *sthānas*.

21. He who is known as Prajāpati, is a year. A year is Agni. It is also called Ṛta by Brāhmaṇas.

22. Since they are born of Ṛta, the seasons are called Ṛtus.

**Vatsara* 'a year' in Bd. P. ibid. v. 21.

The months too are born of them. The Ṛtus are six in number and the five *Ārtavas* are their sons.

23. The flowering period of bipeds, quadrupeds, birds, reptiles and immovable beings is called *Kālārtava* (the seasonal change?).

24. The state of being Ṛtu and Ārtava is declared as fatherhood. Hence the seasons and Ārtavas should be known as Pitṛs.

25. Since beings are born of them through the *Ṛtu-Kāla* (period favourable for conception, the Ṛtu period), these Ārtavas are also Pitṛs—So we have heard (it reported).

26. The (deities) identifiers with Kāla (period of time) continue to stay in all Manvantaras conditioned and regulated by their identification with their positions.

27. The Pitṛs are of two types, the *Agniṣvāttas* and *Barhiṣads*. Two famous daughters were born of the Pitṛs.

28. They were Menā and Dhāriṇī both of whom supported the universe. Both of them were beautiful, propounders of the Vedas and practitioners of Yoga. Pitṛs gave both their daughters for the increase of Dharma.

29. Menā was the mind-born daughter of the *Agniṣvāttas*. Dhāriṇī was the mind-born daughter of the *Barhiṣads*.

30. The *Barhiṣads*, known as *Somapithins* gave Dhāriṇī to Meru in marriage.

31. *Agniṣvāttas* gave Menā to Himālaya as wife. Their grandsons were known. Now listen to (the details of) the grandchildren.

32. Menā, the wife of Himavat, gave birth to Maināka and to (the river) Gaṅgā who became the wife of the briny Sea. Maināka's younger brother was Krauñca whence the continent Krauñca got its name.

33-34. Dhāriṇī, wife of Meru, gave birth to Mandara abounding in divine herbs and to three famous daughters—Velā, Niyati and the third Āyati. Āyati became the wife of Dhātṛ and Niyati was married to Vidhātṛ.

35. Their progeny are glorified (as existing) in Svāyaṁbhuva Manvantara. Velā bore to Sāgara (the Sea) a daughter of noble qualities.

36. The daughter of the Sea called Sāvarṇā[1] became the wife of Prācīnabarhis. Savarṇā that daughter of the Sea (Samudra) (married to Prācīnabarhis) gave birth to ten Pracetas who were the masters of the science of archery.

37. As a result of the curse of Śiva, Dakṣa, the son of the self-born god Brahmā, was reborn as their son[2] in the Cākṣuṣa Manvantara."

38. On hearing this, Śāṁśapāyana asked Sūta—"How was Dakṣa born in the Cākṣuṣa Manvantara formerly, as a result of the curse of Śiva? Narrate this in detail to us who ask you."

39. Thus requested, Sūta narrated the episode of Dakṣa and the occasion of Śiva's curse, after addressing Śāṁśapāyana.

40-41. Dakṣa had eight daughters whom I have already mentioned to you. He invited them from their homes and welcomed them at his house. They stayed in their father's house duly honoured. But the eldest (of them) Satī, wife of Śiva, was not invited by him out of hatred for Śiva.

42. Śiva, the son-in-law, (being) stable (enveloped in his own brilliance) never bowed to his father-in-law Dakṣa.

43. Knowing that her sisters had gone to their father's, Satī, though not invited, went to her father's house.

44. Highly infuriated (with wrath), the goddess spoke to Dakṣa : "O Lord ! How is it that you have done this despicable act of dishonouring me by according greater honour to younger daughters ?

45. I am the eldest and the most excellent daughter. It does not behove you to be discourteous to me". Thus addressed, Dakṣa, with his eyes reddened with anger retorted :

46. "You are the most excellent of my daughters, foremost and most worthy of my respect for ever. Their husbands too are worthy of my respect always.

---

1 *Sāvarṇinā* in the text is incorrect as the next line records her name as Sāvarṇā—Sāmudrī.

2. The story of the second birth of Dakṣa is told here as in this birth Dakṣa became a descendant of Pitṛs. The story of the destruction of Dakṣa's sacrifice is found in *Mbh-Śanti* 283 and many Purāṇas like KP. I.14, 15, NP *uttara bhāga* 66 & others. Probably it is a part of social memory of some ancient conflict between Karma Mārga or Yajña cult and some Śaivite (Pāśupata?) cult or Jñāna Mārga.

47. O Satī, they are better in qualities and are more deserving than Śiva. They are good ascetics, absorbed in Brahman, righteous and great Yogins.

48. These sons-in-law of mine, viz. Vasiṣṭha, Atri, Pulastya, Aṅgiras, Pulaha, Kratu, Bhṛgu and Marīci are very great.

49. Śiva is my enemy. But you are his heart and soul, and *vice versa*. You are devoted to him. Hence I do not honour and welcome you."

50. So said Dakṣa with the deluded mind, resulting in a curse to himself and to the great sages mentioned.

51. Thus addressed, the infuriated Satī spoke to her father—"Since you insult me, who am pure in speech, mind and acts, I cast off this body, O father, born of you."

52. Then goddess Satī, dejected and infuriated due to the insult, spoke after bowing mentally to Śiva.

53. "Wherever I am reborn with another refulgent body, I, undeluded and righteous, will attain the status of the righteous wife of Śiva alone."

54. She sat there itself with her Ātman in Yogic communion. She mentally retained the *Āgneyī Dhāraṇā*.

55. Fire came out of all limbs of her body and was blown by the wind, from the *Āgneyī Dhāraṇā*. It reduced her to ashes.

56. On hearing about the death of Satī, and on understanding their conversation precisely, the trident-bearing Śiva became furious with Dakṣa and other sages.

57-58. "O Dakṣa, since for my sake pure, sinless Satī had been insulted and all other daughters were praised along with their husbands, they will die (attain Yama's region) and will be born again as persons not born of womb, when I perform another sacrifice.

59. They will be there when Brahmā will offer sour gruel in fire in the Cākṣuṣa Manvantara."

After cursing the sages he addressed Dakṣa again.

60. "There will be a king Cākṣuṣa in the family of Cākṣuṣa Manu. He will be the grandson of Prācīnabarhis and the son of Pracetas.

61. When the Cākṣuṣa Manvantara comes you will be born, by the name of Dakṣa, of Māriṣā (also Mārṣā), daughter of trees."

Dakṣa said :

62. "O evil-minded one, I will be putting up obstacles to you, there also, again and again in the rites of virtue (Dharma), wealth and love (Kāma).

63. Since you spoke cruelly of the sages for my sake, the Brāhmaṇas will never worship you in their sacrifice where they worship Devas.

64. After offering *Āhutis* (to you) they will offer water (as purification) in your rites; you will stay here (on the earth) to the end of the Yuga".

Rudra said:

65. "The earth is called the first among the worlds. At the behest of Brahmā, I shall sustain that world.

66. In this sphere the worlds and suns stand surrounded (by oceans). I support them always but not at your behest.

67. Devas are classified into four castes. They take meals together (through fire). I shall not take meals with them. They will give me meals separately". Thereafter Rudra is not worshipped with Devas. He is worshipped separately.

68. Then thus cursed angrily by Rudra of unmeasured brilliance, Dakṣa abandoned his body of Svāyambhuva Manvantara and was born among human beings.

69. After realizing the Lord, the master of all knowledge, Dakṣa worshipped him with great sacrifices along with Devas.

70. When the Vaivasvata Manvantara arrived, Himavat, king of mountains, begot of Menā, a daughter named Umā who had been Satī (in her previous birth).

71. She, being Satī formerly, now became Umā. She is the joint performer of rites with Śiva who never forsakes her as long as he wishes to remain in the Manvantaras here.

72-73. Just as Aditi is devoted to Kaśyapa, son of Marīci, Śrī is attached to Nārāyaṇa, Śacī to Indra, Kīrti to Viṣṇu, Ruci to Sūrya, and Arundhatī to Vasiṣṭha, so she was devoted to Śiva. These gentle ladies never forsake their husbands. When the cycles of Kalpas recur, they are born along with them.

74. Thus Dakṣa was born as the son of Pracetas in the Cākṣuṣa Manvantara. He was the grandson of Prācīnabarhis and the son of Pracetas.

75. It is said that as a result of Rudra's curse, he was born in Mārṣā by the tenth Pracetas in this second Manvantara.

76. All the great sages, Bhṛgu and others, were born formerly in the first Tretā Yuga. They assumed body from Varuṇa at the sacrifice of the great god.

77. Thus the mutual enmity of Dakṣa Prajāpati and Lord Śiva continued from their previous existence.

78. Hence, intense enmity should never be pursued even with enemies. Due to merits and demerits, a living being does not leave off (forget) the awareness of what was intensly conceived in the previous existence. Hence an intelligent person should use discretion in his actions.

The sages enquired :

79. O Sūta, how was the horse sacrifice of Dakṣa Prajāpati, son of Pracetas, destroyed in Vaivasvata Manvantara?.

80. How did Dakṣa propitiate the lord who was enraged at the death of Satī? We wish to know this. Please narrate this precisely.

Sūta replied :

81-82. O excellent Brāhmaṇas, formerly the lord was seated as if on a couch, on the excellent mountain Meru, bedecked by minerals, on its peak Jyotiṣka, famous in the three worlds. This peak is open to the sun and is adorned with jewels. It is immeasurable and unthwartable. It is bowed to by all the worlds.

83. Pārvatī, daughter of the Himavat, remained always by his side. The noble Ādityas and Vasus of immeasurable strength were also present.

84. Similarly, the noble Aśvins, the most excellent physicians, and king Vaiśravaṇa surrounded by the Guhyakas, were present.

85. Kubera, the lord of Yakṣas, the glorious lord residing in Kailāsa, and the great sage Uśanas worshipped him. So also Sanatkumāra and other sages.

86. Similarly the celestial sages Aṅgiras and others, Viśvāvasu Gandharva, Nārada and Parvata were present.

87. Many groups of Apsaras-s came there. Pure, pleasing, wind blew wafting different kinds of sweet smell.

88-89. The trees were in full bloom with the flowers of all seasons. The Vidyādharas, Siddhas, ascetics and other living beings (and goblins) assuming various forms began to worship the great lord Paśupati.

90. Great and terrible Rākṣasas and Piśācas were seen there assuming various forms and holding different kinds of weapons lifted up.

91-92. The attendants of the lord who were as brilliant as Fire-god stood there. Lord Nandīśvara stood in the service of the lord, wielding the blazing trident shining with its brilliance. O excellent Brāhmaṇas, Gaṅgā the excellent river, the source of all sacred waters, assumed the form of a deity and worshipped him.

93. Thus the great lord shining with his brilliance stayed there along with the celestial sages and the blessed Devas.

94. Formerly on the top of Himavat in an auspicious place near Gaṅgādvāra,[1] resorted to by the sages and Siddhas, Dakṣa began his sacrifice.

95. The Devas led by Indra gathered together and prepared to attend the sacrifice.

96. It is reported that with the permission of the Lord (Śiva), Devas who were resplendent like fire went to Gaṅgādvāra in their dazzling aerial cars.

97-98. Folding their palms in reverence, the residents of earth, sky and heaven approached Dakṣa Prajāpati, the foremost among sacrificers, who was surrounded by sages, Gandharvas and celestial damsels at Gaṅgādvāra abounding in various trees and creepers.

99. Ādityas, Vasus, Rudras, Sādhyas arrived there for their share in the sacrifice along with Maruts and Indra.

100. (Deities of the categories of) Ūṣmapās, Somapās, Ājyapās, Dhūmapās (drinkers of hot offerings, soma, ghee and smoke), the two Aśvin-gods and Pitṛs came there along with god Brahmā.

101. These and many other groups of living beings—*Jarāyujas* (viviparous animals), *Aṇḍajas* (born of eggs, birds)

1. The same as modern Hara(i)dwar. The actual spot of Dakṣa's sacrifice is at a distance of a kilometer from modern Haridwar.

Svedajas (insects, germs born of sweat) and *Udbhijjas* (germinating plants and trees) were present there.

102. Devas and their consorts were invoked through Mantras. Seated in their aerial chariots they shone like blazing fires.

103. On seeing them Dadhīca became angry and said, "A man incurs sin by worshipping one unworthy of worship and not worshipping one who is worthy of worship."

104. After saying thus, the sage spoke again to Dakṣa, "Why don't you invite lord Śiva who is worthy of worship?".

Dakṣa said :

105. I have so many Rudras here armed with spears and having matted hair. They stay with eleven forms. I do not know any other great god.

Dadhica said :

106. He who has invited Śiva, has invited all gods. As I do not see (regard) any other deity superior to Śaṅkara, this vast and rich sacrifice of Dakṣa will not take place.

Dakṣa said :

107. "O heroic lord, in this sacrifice, I offer unto Viṣṇu, the lord without an equal, all the *Havis* sanctified by Mantras, and invariably through the Āhavanīya fire, holding the *Havis* in a golden vessel".

108. On knowing that Devas had gone, Pārvatī, the chaste daughter of the king of mountains, spoke to Lord Śiva (her husband).

Umā said:

109. O Lord, where have these gone, led by Indra. O knower of truth, speak truly. There is my great doubt.

Maheśvara said :

110. The blessed, noble, Prajāpati Dakśa is performing a horse-sacrifice. The heaven-dwellers are going there.

Umā enquired:

111. O blessed lord, why have you not gone to this sacrifice? Wherefore is the departure thither prohibited?

Lord Śiva replied:

112. O blessed lady! All this has been done by Devas only. My share in all the sacrifices is not allotted (to me).

113. O beautiful lady! By following the traditional procedure, the Devas do not give me my due share in sacrifice.

Goddess Umā said :

114. "O Lord! You are the most brilliant among all the Devas. You excel them in good qualities. You are invincible, unthwartable by your splendour, fame and glory.

115. O blessed one, by this prohibition, I am much distressed. O sinless lord, my body heaves.

116. What indeed is the religious gift I should give or penance I should perform whereby you, my husband, shall have a share of the sacirfice—half or a third of it."

117. The unthinkable lord delightedly spoke to her who was so agitated. "O goddess of Devas, of slender belly and limbs, you do not know whether your statements are proper.

118. O large-eyed goddess ! I know that when men of good qualities speak, all of them do so attentively. But at present god Indra has fallen in delusion and the three worlds are also deluded in every respect.

119. They eulogise me in sacrifices. They sing appropriate Sāman Rathantara. In the Brahmasatra, Brāhmaṇas worship me. The Adhvaryus assign my share."

Pārvati said :

120. "Undoubtedly my lord, though not born of Prakṛti, you either eulogise or offer self-defence in this assembly of women."

121. The Lord said: "O Goddess of Devas, I do not eulogise myself. O fair lady, O beautiful one, see and approach the person I create for the sake of my share."

122. After speaking thus to his wife, more beloved to him than his vital breath, the Lord created from his mouth a goblin that resembled the fury of fire.

123. He had a thousand heads, a thousand feet and eyes. He held a thousand iron clubs, a thousand arrows in his hands.

124. He held a conch, a discus, a mace, a blazing bow, an axe and a sword in his hands. He was terrible and awe-inspiring.

125. He was blazing with a terrible form. Half a moon constituted his crest. He was clad in a tiger-skin dripping with blood.

126. He was terrible with his curved fangs. He was whirling (?). He had wide mouth and big belly. His tongue was like lightning. His lips hung loose. His ears were long. He was inaccessible to all.

127. A thunderbolt brightened his hands. His hair shone with splendour. He was surrounded by wreaths of flames. He was bedecked in pearl-strings.

128. He blazed with brilliance like the fire of Dissolution. His gaping mouth extended upto his ears. He looked terrible all around.

129. He had great strength and spendour. He was a great Puruṣa and lord. His huge body was capable of destroying the universe. It was as huge as the clustering banyan tree. He blazed like a hundred moons blazing simultaneously or like the fire that burnt Madana.

130. He had four big mouths. His curved fangs were white and sharp-pointed. He had great splendour, fierce brilliance, and enthusiasm. He had the refulgence of a thousand fires and suns at the time of Dissolution of the world. He had the splendour of a thousand moons. He resembled the Mandara mountain with all blazing medicinal herbs. He was equal to Sumeru, Kailāsa and the mountain Himavat.

131. He resembled the sun at the time of Dissolution. He had great prowess. His nose was charming. His face was big. His cheeks were fierce; eyes blazed. His face was turbid with the flames of fire.

132. He wore the hide of elephant. He was entwined by great serpents. He had a turban on. He held the moon on

the crest. In some respect he was fierce. In some respect he was mild.

133. He wore different flowers on his head. He had various kinds of scent and unguents. His limbs were decorated with different jewels. He was bedecked in ornaments.

134. He wore a shining garland of Karṇikāra flowers. Due to anger his eyes were whirling and turning. At times he danced in different postures.

135. At times he meditated with his soul in communion. At times he wiped off the gross matter. At times he sang and at times he cried over and over again.

136. He was endowed with the basic attributes of knowledge, detachment, lordship, penance, truthfulness, forbearance, fortitude, mastery and self-enlightenment.

137. He knelt on his knees on the ground. He bowed with palms joined in reverence and stood still. Then he said, "O lord of Devas, command, what work shall I do for you?"

138. The great lord spoke to him—"Destroy the sacrifice of Dakṣa". On hearing the command of the lord, the powerful Vīrabhadra bowed at the feet of the lord, bending his head.

139. Then he jumped ahead sportingly like a lion released from bondage. He considered that the sacrifice of Dakṣa was already destroyed by the fury of the goddess.

140. The great goddess, highly fierce Bhadrakālī accompanied him wrathfully to reveal her omnipresence (to all).

141. This is the infuriated lord, having his residence in the abodes of ghosts, who became known as Vīrabhadra. He dispelled the anger of the goddess.

142. From the hair pores in his body he created the chiefs of Gaṇas named Raudras. They were the followers of Rudras who possessed great prowess and exploits of Rudra.

143. They were the followers of Rudra. They had the splendour of Rudra. They started immediately in hundreds and thousands.

144. There arose tumultuous roar that filled the sky. By that loud noise, the heaven-dwellers became frightened.

145. O Brāhmaṇas, mountains crumbled, the earth shook. The Meru whirled round. The seas were agitated.

146. Fires did not blaze; the sun did not shine. Neither the planets nor the moving and fixed stars gave forth light.

147. The sages did not speak nor Devas nor Dānavas. From their aerial chariots the Gaṇas burnt everything enveloped in darkness.

148. They roared like lions. They had terrible forms and great strength. They broke everything. They uprooted the sacrificial posts.

149. They suppressed everything. They danced. Having the speed of the wind and the quickness of the mind, they ran here and there.

150. They broke the sacrificial vessels to pieces. The sacrificial altar shattered utterly, appeared like the stars fallen from the sky.

151-153. There were heaps of foodstuffs and beverages like mountains. Rivers of milk were flowing. Ghee and milk pudding formed muddy slushes. There was honey and gruel water. There were divine sugar candies, powdered like sands. Foodstuffs having all the six tastes flowed through the rivulets of jaggery, charming to the mind. There were meat dishes of several varieties. Whatever sweet foodstuffs they saw, they ate up. They squeezed the juice and licked up the lambatives. Their different faces exhibited different reactions. They rolled everywhere. They sported about assuming different forms. They seized the celestial damsels and molested them.

154. Urged by Rudra's fury, the Gaṇas as furious as Rudra himself, destroyed the sacrifice, though it was well guarded by Devas.

155. Others roared loudly terrifying all living beings. Others severed the head of sacrifice and roared.

156. Dakṣa, the skilled Prajāpati, and the lord of sacrifices began to flee through the sky in the form of a deer.

157. Vīrabhadra of incomprehensible soul then gauged his strength. He cut off the head* as he passed through the sky.

158. Dakṣa Prajāpati was confused and lost consciousness.

---

*Contrast the statement with the next verse & vv. 161, 166 etc.

He was kicked on the head by the infuriated Vīrabhadra. Being aged and weak, he fell on the ground.

159. The thirty-three crores of Devas of pure souls were bound with noose as strong as fire or lion.

160. Then Devas went to the powerful noble being and said, "O Lord Rudra, be pleased. O Lord, do not be angry with your servants".

161. Then Brahmā and other Devas and Dakṣa Prajāpati spoke with palms joined in reverence, "Please tell us who you are?".

Vīrabhadra said :

162. I am neither a Deva nor an Āditya. I have not come here to take meals, nor to visit the chiefs of Devas nor out of curiosity.

163. Know me as one come here to destroy the sacrifice. I am known as Vīrabhadra and I have come out of the fury of Rudra.

164. Bhadrakālī has come out of the fury of the goddess (Pārvatī). Sent by the lord of Devas, she has come near the sacrifice.

165. O Dakṣa, seek refuge in lord Śiva. Even his fury is better than the gift of boons from a Deva."

166. On hearing the words of Vīrabhadra, Dakṣa, the foremost of the upholders of holy rites, propitiated the trident-bearing Śiva, lord of Devas.

167-171. When the premises of the sacrifice were defiled, when the Brāhmaṇas fled, when the hideous and terrible great fire in the form of the constellation Mṛgaśiras blazed, when the servants whose faces were pierced by spears (screamed), when the uprooted sacrificial posts were scattered here and there, when the place was filled with vultures greedy of flesh rising up and flying, when the sound of hundreds of vixens by the flapping of wings (pervaded the quarters), the Lord of Devas, the conqueror of enemies, the lord having many visions, restrained his Prāṇa and Apāna strenuously in their places, directed his vision all round. Suddenly came out of the pit of fire the God of gods. His splendour was comparable to that of a thousand suns, moons and the *Saṁvartaka* fire.

172. The lord laughed loudly and said again: "O Dakṣa, you are ruined due to ignorance. I hope you are well disposed towards me now".

173-174. Smilingly he spoke again: "Tell me, what shall I do for you?" After relating what had been narrated to Devas and their preceptors, Prajāpati Dakṣa joined his palms in reverence and spoke to the lord. He was afraid, suspicious and frightened. His eyes and face were filled with tears.

175-177. "If you, my lord, are pleased, if I am your favourite, if I am to be blessed and if I am to be granted boon, I would choose this. The requisites of sacrifice are collected by me with strenuous efforts over long period. They have been swallowed, eaten, drunk, chewed, destroyed, powdered and scattered in this manner. Let them not go in vain."

178-179. "So be it", said the lord, the destroyer of the eyes of Bhaga. After receiving the boon Prajāpati Dakṣa knelt on the ground and eulogised the bull-bannered, three-eyed lord, the presiding deity of sacred rites, by his thousand and eight names.[1]

Dakṣa said:

180. "Obeisance to you, the lord of the chiefs of Devas, the destroyer of the host of the enemies of Devas. O Lord of Devas, O excellent among the immortals, O one worshipped by Devas and Dānavas.

181. O thousand-eyed one, O hideous-eyed one, O three-eyed one. O favourite of the chief of Yakṣas, you have hands, feet, eyes, mouths, heads and ears all round. You stand permeating everything in the world.

182. Obeisance to you, O pike-eared one, O large-eared one, O pot-eared one, O one residing in the sea, O elephant-eared one, O bull-eared one, O hand-eared one.

183. O hundred-bellied one, O one with hundred revolutions, O hundred-tongued one, O hundred-faced one, those who practise Gāyatrī sing about you; those who regularly worship, worship you.

1. This *Śiva-sahasra-nāma* has a number of verses common to that in *Mbh. Śānti* 284, 69-180.

184. You are the protector of Devas and Dānavas, you are Brahmā and Indra. O large-bodied one, you are the lord of the deities. Obeisance (to you), you are the upholder of the waters in the ocean.

185. Devas abide in your body as cows in the cow-shed. I see your body as the moon, fire and ocean.

186. I see you as Āditya, Viṣṇu, Brahmā and Bṛhaspati. You are the cause, becoming, being, agent and instrument.

187. You are the non-existent, the existent-cum-non-existent, the source of origin and the end of the universe. Obeisance to Bhava, Śarva, Rudra and the granter of boons.

188. Obeisance to the lord of Paśus, the destroyer of Andhaka, Trijaṭa (having matted hair in three plaits), the three-headed and the wielder of excellent trident.

189. Obeisance to *Tryaṁbaka* (three-eyed), *Trinetra* (three-eyed), the destroyer of Tripuras, *Caṇḍa* (the fierce), *Muṇḍa* (one with a shaven head), *Pracaṇḍa* (very fierce) and *Dhara* (the uplifter).

190. Obeisance to one engaged in listening to Ḍiṇḍima, Lord of *Ardhadaṇḍa*, Niṣka (body-less), Vikṛta (the deformed one).

191. Salute to *Vilohita* (ruddy), *Dhūmra* (coloured), blue-necked, Śiva, who is without a compeer.

192. Obeisance to the sun, the lord of the sun, the sun-bannered god, the lord of Pramathas, and the bull-shouldered archer.

193. Obeisance to Hiraṇyagarbha (the golden-wombed), one with golden coat of mail, the gold-crested and the lord of gold.

194. Obeisance to the destroyer of sacrifice, *Daṇḍa* (the staff), *Parṇapānapuṭa* (one having a cup of leaves for drinking); one who is eulogised, one worthy of being praised, one being eulogised.

195. Bow to *Sarva* (the all); one who subsists on non-eatable food; one who is the inner soul of all beings and who is the Hotṛ (sacrificer), to mantra, to one with a white banner on the flag-staff.

196. Obeisance to worshipper, one worthy of worship; the embodied joyous shout, one lying down, one who has lain and one who has got up.

197. Obeisance to the one who is stable; who is walking; who symbolizes a mystic sign, who is crooked, who is habitually dancing and making a musical instrument of his mouth.

198. Obeisance to the one greedy of securing presents in dances; who is engaged in songs and musical instruments, who is the eldest, the excellent and the suppressor of foes.

199. Obeisance to *Kalana* (creator), Kalpa, *Kṣaya* (complete dissolution), *Upakṣaya* (subsidiary dissolution), one laughing terribly like the Dundubhi (wardrum), cherished by Bhīmasena.

200. Obeisance to *Ugra* (the fierce one); one having ten arms and a skull in his hand; obeisance to one fond of ashes from the funeral pyre.

201. Obeisance to the terrible, the awe-inspiring one, one observing terrible rites; one of deformed chest and having tip of the tongue and the curved fangs as sharp as sword.

202. Hail to the one greedy of raw and cooked meat; one fond of *Tuṁba-vīṇā* (lute supported by a gourd). Bow to *vṛṣa* (the bull or holy virtue) and to *Vṛṣya* (most vigorous god), to Vṛṣṇi (the mighty) and Vṛṣaṇa (the fertilizer).

203. Bow to Kaṭaṁkaṭa (Fire-god), the fierce, the embodied one. Obeisance to Vara-Kṛṣṇa (super dark?), excellent one, the bestower of boon.

204. Obeisance to one having excellent scents, garlands and garments; the excellent and surpassing one. Obeisance to the rain, wind, shadow and sunshine.

205. Obeisance to the attached and detached, the auspicious god wearing a garland of beads. Bow to the *Saṁbhinna* (the pierced and broken?), the variegated, the hideous and isolated.

206. Hail to the god with non-terrible form and one extremely terrible, to the auspicious, quiescent and an extremely quiescent one.

207. Obeisance to the single-footed, many-eyed, single-headed one. To the old, greedy and fond of shares (in sacrifice).

208. Obeisance to the one who is worshipped with five garlands; obeisance to Pāśupata, Caṇḍa, Ghaṇṭa (equipped

with a bell) and one who has consumed the vitals with his bell (?)

209. Obeisance to one having a hundred thousand bells, one fond of a garland of bells, to the restrainer of Prāṇa, the renunciation (incarnate), and to *Hilahila* (a sport).

210. Obeisance to one who makes the "Huṁhuṁ" sound, who takes us across, who is fond of Huṁhuṁ sound. Obeisance to Śaṁbhu who is fond of mountains, trees and their fruits.

211. Obeisance to the jackal (fond of) embryo meal. Obeisance to *Tāraka* (one who takes across), *Tāra* (ferryboat), to the lord of sacrifices, the one who has fled (or rushed in).

212. Obeisance to the carrier of sacrifices, religious gifts, the goal of penance (*Tapya*) and the (scorching) Sun-god. Hail to the shore (of the ocean of Saṁsāra?) and the excellent Lord of lightnings.

213. Obeisance to the bestower of cooked food, Lord of cooked food, one born of cooked food, the thousand-headed and thousand-footed lord.

214. Obeisance to him with thousand tridents lifted up, to the thousand-eyed, one in the form of a boy, or one assuming the form of a boy.

215. Obeisance to the protector of children, one sporting with children, the pure and the enlightened, the agitator and the unwoundable.

216. Obeisance to the one whose tresses are marked by waves, the one of unbound tresses, the one abiding by six prescribed rites, the one engaged in three-fold rites.

217. Obeisance to the one who makes people of different castes and stages of life duly function separately. Obeisance to loud sound, one worthy of proclamation, who is *Kalakala* (the murmuring sound).

218. Obeisance to the one with white and reddish brown eyes, the one with black and red eyes, the one bestower of virtue, wealth, love and salvation. Obeisance to slaughter and the slaughterer.

219. Obeisance to Sāṁkhya, to the master of Sāṁkhya and Yoga. Obeisance to Rathya, Virathya and to one interested in crossroads.

220. Obeisance to the one with a deer-skin for upper garment; to the one wearing a serpent for sacred thread, O Īśāna, O destroyer of Indra. O green-haired one, obeisance be to you.

Obeisance to the sole controller of indiscrimination. Hail to you, O manifest and unmanifest lord.

221. O Kāma, bestower of desires, destroyer of the god of Love , slayer of the haughty and arrogant, *Sarva* (all in all), O bestower of all, omniscient and twilight red, obeisance be to you.

222. O powerful, mighty-armed one, and highly powerful, lustrous, great cloud, excellent-visioned great Kāla, obeisance be to you.

223. (Obeisance to) perpetual ascetic with stout and worn out limbs and matted hair, to one wearing bark garments and deer-skin, to one with matted hair resembling blazing fire and the sun, to one clad in bark garments and deer skin. Obeisance be to one resembling a thousand suns.

224. O one having hundreds of maddening revolutions, O one with tresses half filled with the waters of Gaṅgā, O Candrāvarta, Yugāvarta, Meghāvarta, obeisance be to you.

225. You are the cooked food, the creator, the bestower, and the maker of food; you are the person cooking food. Obeisance to cook and enjoyer of the cooked food.

226. O lord, you are the lord of chief of Devas and the four-fold living beings, viz. the viviparous, oviparous, the sweat-born and the germinating ones.

227. You are Brahmā, the creator of the mobile and immobile. You are their withdrawer; the foremost among the scholars of the Vedas and the knowers of Brahman.

228. Pronounders of the Vedas say that you are the very source of *Sattva guṇa*, the storehouse of waters, wind and fire; you are the Ṛg, Sāman Mantra and Oṁkāra.

229. You are the offering in sacrifice, sacrificing itself, the invocation; you are the solemn rite of oblation with words (of *mantra*). The experts in the Veda and singers of Sāman sing of you, O great God.

230. You are cited by the knowers of Brahman and

those well-versed in Kalpa and Upaniṣads, as the one consisting of Ṛg, Yajur, Sāman and Atharvan mantras.

231. The Brāhmaṇas, Kṣatriyas, Vaiśyas, Śūdras and people of inferior castes worship you alone. The clusters of clouds sing about you by their rattling and roaring thunder.

232. You are the year, seasons, months, fortnights, Kalās, Kāṣṭhās, Nimeṣas, Yugas, stars and planets.

233. You are the hump of bulls, the peak of mountains, the lion among beasts, Tārkṣya (Garuḍa) among birds, and Ananta among serpents.

234. You are the ocean of milk among oceans, bow among mechanical devices, thunderbolt among weapons, and truth among holy vows.

235. You are desire, hatred, passion, delusion, infirmity, mental control, restraint of sense organs, enterprise, fortitude, greed, love, fury, success, and failure.

236. You are the mace-bearer, the discharger of arrows, the wielder of Khaṭvāṅga, the holder of Jharjhara (drum or cymbols). You chop, pierce, strike, leak and annihilate.

237. You are the holy rite (piety) with ten characteristics. You are wealth, love, Indra, oceans, rivers, puddles and lakes.

238 You are the creeper, the winding plants, the grass and medicinal herbs; you are the animals, beasts and birds; you are the beginning of substance, activity and attributes; you are the bestower of flowers and fruits at the right time.

239. You are the beginning, end and the middle; you are the Gāyatrī and Oṁkāra *mantra*; you are green, red, black, blue, yellow and crimson.

240. You are tawny-coloured, dove-coloured, dark-blue, and gold-semened; hence you are known as having good colour.

241. You have names consisting of good letters; you are fond of gold; You are, Indra, Yama, Varuṇa, Kubera and Agni.

242. You are full-blown; you are Citra-Bhānu (fire, sun, Bhairava); you are Svarbhānu (Rāhu) and Bhānu (the Sun-god); you are the sacrifice, the sacrificial priest, the Homa, the *Huta* (what is offered in the fire), the *Prahuta* (the offering in Bhūta-yajña); you are the lord.

243. You are well-winged Brahman; you are *Śatarudriya* among *Yajurmantras*. You are the holiest among holy, the most auspicious of the auspicious.

244. You are the huge mountain, and the little one. You are the tree, the individual soul and atom. You are the Sattva, Rajas and the Tamas Guṇa; you are the creation.

245. You are (the vital airs such as) Prāṇa, Apāna, Samān, Udāna and Vyāna; you are the wink of the eyes; you are their expansion and stretching.

246. You are of red-complexioned body, wielder of a mace (*gadā*) and have curved fangs; you have a huge face and huge belly. You are white-haired and green-moustached. You have three eyes and hair lifted up.

247. You are the parts of dance, song and music; you are fond of singing and playing on instruments; you are *Matsya* (fish); you are watery, water and conducive to watery life. You are speed, time, Kali and Kāla.

248. You are improper time, propitious period and bad (famine-like) time as well as the destroyer of Kāla. You are death, decline and end and the destroyer of the earth.

249. You are the Saṁvartaka fire (annihilating the universe) and clouds of final dissolution. You are *Ghaṭa* (a duration of time), *Ghaṭika* (master of *Ghaṭa*), *Ghaṇṭika* (having small bells?), *Cūḍālolabala* (having the strength in swinging locks of hair). You are the power.

250. You are the destroyer of Brahmā; you have fiery mouth; you wield a staff; you have shaven head; you are the holder of a staff; you are the four Yugas, four Vedas, four sacrifices and crossroads (of four paths).

251. You are the knower of the four stages in life; you are the creator of the four various (classes of people); you are fond of the perishable and imperishable; you are knavish, uncountable and the lord of innumerable Gaṇas.

252. You wear the Rudrākṣa-garland and garments; you are a small mountain; you are fond of hillocks. You are the lord of artisans and the best of them. You are the originator of arts and crafts.

253. You are the destroyer of the eyes of Bhaga; you are the moon, the destroyer of the teeth of Pūṣan. You are *Gūḍhā-*

varta (the hidden eddy); you are the concealed one; you resort to hidden things.

254. You are *Taraṇa* (one that takes across), *Tāraka* (liberator), *Sarvabhūta-Sutaraṇa* (liberator of all living beings); you are *Dhātṛ* (creator), *Vidhātṛ* (dispenser of destiny) and the preserver of living beings; you are the supporter of all.

255. You are austerity, the Brahman, truth, celibacy, straight-forwardness, the Ātman and the maker of all living beings, the living being, the spirit, the source of everything that was, is and will be.

256. You are *Bhūḥ, Bhuvaḥ, Svar*, the origin (of the universe); you are the great Lord, *Īśāna*, the surveyor. You are the quiescent; hard to be subdued and the destroyer of teeth.

257. You are Brahmāvarta, Surāvarta, and Kāmāvarta. Obeisance be to you. You are the destroyer of Kāma's body; you are fond of the pollen powder of the Karṇikāra flower.

258. You have a moon-like face and also a terrible one. You are pleasant-faced, wry-faced, faceless, four-faced, multi-faced, and always face to face with the enemy in the battle.

259. You are gold-wombed, a big bird (a vulture) and an ocean. You are the greatest and (the most) immense being. You are the destroyer of evil, chastiser of the wicked, the wielder of the rod of punishment and fond of battles.

260. You are the best of bulls, the rider of a bull, the bull-vehicled one. You are the promulgator of Dharma, the creator of Dharma and foremost among the experts in Dharma.

261. You are the protector of the worlds and the winner (or protector) of the earth, a bestower of honour and honour incarnate; you are stable, fixed, a pillar, motionless and shaking.

262. You are unwardable, dispenser(?) of brilliant poison, unbearable, untransgressable, unsupportable, unshakable, incomprehensible, unconquerable, the victory (itself).

263. You are soft spoken (and of lovable traits), the moon, the subduer. You are chilliness and heat, an unquenchable thirst. You are the mental worries and physical ailments, the remover of ailments and diseases.

264. You are bearable, the sacrifice, the deer-hunter, the

storehouse of ailments, handless. You are having a tuft of hair. You are lotus-eyed and lotus-visioned.

265. You are a holder of the rod (of chastisement), the wielder of a staff, adorned with staff, and tonsured head. You are imbiber of poison, drinker of nectar, drinker of wine, drinker of milk and Soma juice.

266. You are the imbiber of honey, ghee and everything; you are very powerful; you are carried by a horselike bull; you are the bull (strong person), with eyes like those of a bull.

267. You are known as Vṛṣabha (a bull); you are honoured by the people; the moon and the sun are your eyes; Brahmā is your heart; you are fire and water; you are the lord achievable by pious rites.

268. O Śiva, neither Brahmā nor Viṣṇu nor the ancient sages can understand your greatness precisely.

269. Your subtle forms do not come within the ken of my vision. Protect me with them as a father does to his son.

270. The Lord is always sympathetic and favourable to his devotees. And I am always devoted to you.

271. May that lord be always my protector—the Lord who after devouring (withdrawing at the time of *Pralaya*) thousands of men, abides all alone at the bottom of the ocean.

272. Obeisance to the Yogic soul whom persons of impartial outlook, abiding by Sāttvic qualities, who have conquered their vital breaths and who are devoid of slumber, see as the brilliant light, while in Yogic communion.

273. I resort to him who lies in the middle of the expanse of water after devouring the living beings, at the close of the Yuga.

274. You enter the mouth of Rāhu, swallow the moon at night and becoming Rāhu, devour the sun too. You are the fire accompanied with Soma.

275. May the Puruṣas of the size of the thumb stationed in all embodied beings, protect me always. May they nourish me and make me flourish.

276. May the Svāhās and Svadhās reach them who have gone up from the womb and who have gone beneath. May they be appealing to them and attain them.

277. Obeisance to them all, for ever, who do not cry and who, stationed in the body, make the living beings cry. Obeisance be to them who are delighted and who delight all.

278-280. Perpetual obeisance to them, who are stationed in the ocean, in the river, in the fort, on the mountains, in the caves, at the roots of trees, in the cowpens, in the dense forests, in crossroads, in the streets, in the quadrangular courtyards, in the assemblies and in the midst of the sun and the moon, in the rays of the sun and the moon, who have gone to the netherworlds and beyond them. Perpetual obeisance to those who are subtle, gross, lean or short.

281. O Lord, you are all in all; you pervade all; you are the lord and the inner soul of all living beings. Therefore you were not invited to the sacrifice.

282. Since it is you alone who are worshipped with sacrifices with various monetary gifts and since you alone are the doer of everything, you were not invited.

283. O Lord, I was deluded by your subtle Māyā that you were not invited.

284. O Lord of Devas, be pleased with me. You alone are my refuge, my goal, my foundation. I have no other goal or resort."

285. After eulogising the great lord thus, the Prajāpati stopped. The delighted lord spoke then to Dakṣa:

286. "O Dakṣa of good rites, I am pleased with this hymn of yours; of what avail is much talk. You will come near me."

287. Then the lord of the three worlds, conversant with the appropriate use of words spoke consoling words and said again:

288. "O Dakṣa, you shall not be angry due to this hindrance. It is I, none else, who destroyed the sacrifice. You have seen that before.

289. O you of good rites, again, accept this boon from me. With your face beaming with delight, you shall listen to me with attention.

290. O Prajāpati, by my grace, you will derive the merit of a thousand Aśvamedha and a hundred Vājapeya sacrifices.

291-293. Having established the Vedas with their six ancillaries together with the Sāṁkhya and Yoga and performing

penances inaccessible to Devas and Dānavas, the Pāśupata rite has been evolved by me. This rite is accompanied by objects of worship. It is evolved in secret and is unintelligible to the unintelligent. In some respects it agrees with the functions of different castes and stages of life. In some respects it is contrary to them. It is determined by the meanings of the Vedic passages. It is conducive to liberation from the bondage of individual souls. It can be followed by a person in any stage of life. It is auspicious, O Dakṣa, and it liberates one from sins.

294. O blessed one, you shall derive the benefit of this holy rite. May your mental worry be over."

295. After saying thus to Dakṣa, the valorous lord vanished along with his consort and his followers.

296. O Brāhmaṇas, after obtaining his due share as mentioned by Brahmā, the lord who was conversant with the holy rites, divided *Jvara* (fever) into many classes[1] for achieving calmness in living beings. Listen to it.

297. For elephants it is excessive pain in the head; for mountains it is bitumen; for waters it is the bluish tinge; and in serpents it is the slough.

298. It is *Khauraka* (cracks in the hoofs) for all cattle. It is barrenness for the earth. O Knower of Dharma ! to the elephants it is the obstruction to vision.

299. It is the opening of pores to the horses, the splitting of the crest to the peacocks, the ailment of the eyes to the cuckoos.

300. It is splitting of the bile to the goats. It is *Himikā*[2](?) to the parrots. O Brāhmaṇa, *Śrama* (fatigue) in the tigers is their *Jvara* (fever).

301. O Omniscient lord, it is fever to the human beings. It can enter human body any time, at the time of birth or death or in between.

302. This is the brilliance of the lord that is *Jvara*. The Lord shall be worshipped, bowed and honoured by all creatures.

---

1. Cf. the kinds of *Jvara* in *Mbh. Śānti* 243.52-57

2. V.l. *hikkikā* 'inarticulate sound, cough' in *Mbh. Śānti* 283.55. The present chapter is closely similar to *Mbh Śānti.* 284 (283 as well)

303. He who reads the story of the origin of *Jvara* with undejected and concentrated mind shall be freed from the ailment. He will rejoice, attaining all joys in accordance with his desires.

304. He who narrates or listens to the hymn of praise recited by Dakṣa, attains longevity. He will never face inauspicious results.

305. Just as Śiva endowed with Yogic power is the excellent of all Devas, so also this hymn of Brahmā is the excellent of all hymns.

306. The lord shall be eulogised with devotion by those who desire fame, kingdom, happiness, prosperity, riches, longevity, wealth and learning.

307. The sick, the distressed, the indigent, the frightened, those afraid of thieves and those on the king's errand are liberated from dangers.

308. He will attain all happiness here itself. He will become the chief of Gaṇas with this body itself.

309. In a house where the lord is eulogised, neither the Yakṣas nor the Piśācas, neither the serpents nor the impediments create obstacles.

310. A celibate woman who listens to this with devotion will become the object of respect of the families both from her father's and her husband's side.

311. The affairs of the man who constantly listens to or narrates all these will become fruitful without impediments.

312. By the repeated recitation of this hymn, whatever he thinks in his mind and whatever he speaks out, will become realised.

313-314. After offering oblations to the lord, Guha, Goddess and Nandīśvara, as far as he can, practising mental control and restraint of the sense organs and united in Yogic communion, he shall repeat the names of the lord in the proper order. He will attain his desires, ambitions and enjoy pleasures. On death he will attain heaven surrounded by a thousand women.

315-316. One who performs undesirable activities or one who is defiled by sins becomes free from sins on reading the hymn

of Dakṣa. After his death he is honoured by Devas and Asuras. He attains residence in the same world with the Gaṇas. Like Indra he shines while seated on a duly yoked aerial chariot. He stays permanently there till the hour of ultimate dissolution. He then becomes the attendant of Rudra.

317-319. So said the holy lord Vyāsa, son of Parāśara. This episode is a secret that shall not be divulged to anyone. After hearing this secret, even the sinners, whether they be Vaiśyas, Śūdras or women, will attain Rudraloka. The Brāhmaṇa who recounts this to the other Brāhmaṇas during Parvan days attains Rudraloka. There is no doubt about this.

CHAPTER THIRTYONE

The Race of Devas[1]

Sūta said:

1. Thus the sin-destroying story in the context of Dakṣa as told by Śiva, has been narrated to you.

2. In the context of describing the race of Pitṛs, this story has been narrated. In succession to the Pitṛs, I shall describe Devas hereafter.

3. Formerly, in the Svāyaṁbhuva Manvantara, in the beginning of the Tretā age, there were Devas known as Yāmas. They were formerly the sons of Yajña.

4. Those known as Ajitas were Brahmā's sons. Those known as Jitas and Jitajitas were the mental sons of Brahmā. They were known as Śukras.

5. There were three groups of Devas, namely (Yāma, Śukra and) Tṛptimanta. They were the chanters of the Sāmaveda and were thirty-three in all in Svāyaṁbhuva Manvantara (or born of Brahmā).

6-10. The Yāmas are twelve in number, viz. Yadu, Yayāti, Dīdhaya, Sravasa, Mati, Vibhāsa, Kratu, Prajāti, Viśata, Dyuti,

1. This chapter corresponds to Bd. P. I.2.13.87-151. In addition to Devas, the chapter discusses the nature of Time etc. in vv. 24 ff.

Vāyasa and Maṅgala. The Ajitas too are twelve in number, viz. Abhimanyu, Ugradṛṣṭi, Samaya, Śuciśravas, Kevala, Viśvarūpa, Supakṣa, Madhupa, Turīya, Nirhapu, Yukta and Grāva. The last group of twelve Devas consists of Yamina, Viśva, Devādya, Yaviṣṭha, Amṛtavān, Ajira, Vibhu, Vibhāva, Mṛlika, Didehaka, Śruti-Śṛṇa and Bṛhacchukra.

These were in the Svāyaṁbhuva Manvantara. They were the drinkers of Soma juice. This group of Devas is called Tviṣimantas. They are virile and very strong.

11. Viśvabhuk, the first lord, was their Indra. The Asuras were their cousins and kinsmen.

12. There are eight (groups of) demi-gods, namely, Suparṇa, Yakṣa, Gandharva, Piśāca, Uraga (Reptiles), Rākṣasa, Pitṛs and Aśvinīkumāras.

13. In the Svāyaṁbhuva Manvantara, thousands of the offsprings of these passed away. They were endowed with prowess, beauty, longevity and vigour.

14. They are not mentioned in detail so that no new topic be raised here. The creation of Svāyaṁbhuva should be understood (as similar to) the present Manvantara.

15. The past creation should be seen through the present one, viz. Vaivasvata Manvantara in regard to progeny, gods, sages and Pitṛs.

16-18. Now know the seven sages who existed before. They were Bhṛgu, Aṅgiras, Marīci, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, Atri and Vasiṣṭha. Svāyaṁbhuva Manu had ten valient sons, viz. Agnīdhra, Atibāhu, Medhā, Medhātithi, Vasu, Jyotiṣmān, Dyutimān, Havya, Savana and Putra.

19-20. They have been mentioned by Vāyu as kings of great valour in the first Manvantara. Their families, the Asuras, Gandharvas, Yakṣas, serpents, Rākṣasas, Piśācas, human beings, Suparṇas and groups of Apsaras-s cannot be enumerated in due order, even in hundreds of years because the names are numerous in their families.

21. Those who were known by the name of Vrajakula and who were in the Svāyaṁbhuva Manvantara, passed away as much time elapsed in the order of Ayanas, years and Yugas.

The sages asked :

22-23. Who is this lord Kāla, the annihilator of living beings? What is his source of origin? What is his beginning? What is his intrinsic essence? Who is his son? What is his eye? What is his form? What are his limbs? What is his name? Who is his Ātman? Mention these in detail as we ask you.

Sūta said :

24. May the origin of the Kāla be heard. After hearing it, may it be retained in memory. The sun is his source of origin. *Nimeṣa* is his beginning. He is called *Saṅkhyā-Cakṣu* (having Number as his eye).

25. His form is the day and night. The *Nimeṣas* are his limbs. A century constitutes his principle. Kāla is his name. He is the Prajāpati with the present, past and future as his Ātman.

26. Listen to the five divisions in which Kāla is divided by means of days, fortnights, months, seasons and *Ayanas*.

27-28. The first (year) is *Saṁvatsara*. The second (is called) *Parivatsara*. The third is *Idvatsara*. The fourth is *Anuvatsara* and the fifth is *Vatsara*. The group is called Yuga.[1] I shall explain their principle. Understand as it is being narrated.

29-30. That which is mentioned as *Kratu* (sacrifice) and *Agni* (fire) is considered as *Saṁvatsara*.[2] The fire of time which is the essence in the Sun-god is *Parivatsara*.

Soma (the moon) which is of the nature of the essence of waters, which has two movements, the bright and the dark (the bright half and the dark fortnight of the month) is *Iḍāvatsara*.

1. All there five names of years (Saṁvatsara, Parivatsara etc.) appear first in *Tait. S.* v. 5.7-1-13 in offering salutations to Rudra. The idea that five years constitute a *yuga* is found not only in our Purāṇa but also in *Kauṭalīya Artha-śāstra* II. 20 (*Deśakāla-māna*).

2. The identification of gods Agni etc. in vv. 29-32 is as old as *Śat. Br.* (I. 4-10.1-3) which states:

agnir vāva saṁvatsaraḥ|ādityaḥ parivatsaraḥ|candramā iḍāvatsaraḥ|vayuḥ puṇar anuvatsaraḥ|

In Va. P., Vāyu being the narrator, substitutes Rudra for Vāyu in v.31. The remaining verses (vv. 33 ff) give the explanation of the association of these deities with these years.

31. He who quickens (lit. warms up) the worlds with his bodies seven times seven (=49 Maruts) and who makes people to work actively (and quickly) that wind (god) is *Vatsara.*

32. He who while being born out of Brahmā, roared thrice egotistically is Rudra. That Rudra who was born red-blue (in complexion) out of them is *Vatsara.* Now I shall explain to you their essential nature. Understand it as it is being narrated.

33. Due to the contact of limbs and minor parts of the body (divisions and sub-divisions), the Ātman of Kāla is the great-grandfather. He is the source of origin of Ṛk, Sāman and Yajus. He is the lord of all the five (viz. day, fortnight etc...).

34. That (identical with) Yajus, Soma, Bhūta (elements) and Prajāpati is called *Saṁvatsara* by learned men. And what is Agni but Sūrya (the Sun-god) ?

35-36. The Sun-god is the arranger of the divisions of time such as days, months, seasons, equinoxes as well as of the activities of planets, stars, of cold, heat, rain, span of life, holy rites, (but himself) is an evolute (being born of Brahmā) of kindly disposition, the son of Brahmā, the Lord protector of subjects. He is only one.* He is day, month, season and grand-sire (Brahmā).

37. He is Āditya, Savitṛ, Bhānu, the enlivener of life, honoured by Brahmā. He is called Bhāskara as he is the source of the origin and cause of destruction of all living beings and is hence designated as Bhāskara.

38. The third *Parivatsara* should be known as the presiding deity of stars. As the moon is the Lord of medicinal herbs, he is called the great-grand-father.

39. He is the life-bestower of living beings. He meets their needs and preserves them. By his rays he surveys the universe and sustains it.

40. The moon is the source of the origin of *Tithis* (days of the Lunar fortnight), junctions of *Parvans,* the Full Moon and the New Moon. He causes the night and is the Prajāpati with nectarine soul.

41-42. Hence he is fatherly soma of the nature of Ṛk,

*"He is one! he is many"—Bd. P. *ibid.* v. 125.

Yajur and Sāman. He is the propeller of all the activities of all creatures through the working of vital airs such as Prāṇa, Apāna, Samāna, Vyāna, Udāna.

43. He causes the unified and simultaneous activities of the five units of the physical body, viz. the sense-organs, the mind, the intellect, the memory and power*.

44. He is the soul of all the worlds (beings) through (his spatial forms) *Āvaha*, *Pravaha* etc. He is the creator of all. He is the *Prabhañjana* (violent wind) always energetic.

45. He is the source of origin of fire, water, earth, the sun and the moon. Hence he is Prajāpati. He is the soul of existing worlds. He is the great-grandfather.

46. When medicinal herbs decline, the Lord is worshipped by Devas, the chief of whom was Prajāpati and who seek fruits eagerly desired by them. He is worshipped (by offering *Puroḍāśa*) in three *Kapālas* (pots known as *Aṁbaka*). Hence he is called Tryaṁbaka.

47. The (Vedic metres) Gāyatrī, Triṣṭubh and Jagatī are remembered (known) by the term Tryaṁbaka. They are the sources of the origin of sacrifice.

48. It is remembered as *Tri-Kapāla* as the *Puroḍāśa* offering consecrated for (achieving) three means by the repetition of those three metrical verses united into one and through their efficacy.

49. Thus the Yuga as mentioned by the learned, is one consisting of five years. The *saṁvatsara* that has been mentioned by Brāhmaṇas as one having five-fold selves became a set of six selves with the names of Madhu (spring) and other seasons.

50. The sons of the seasons are five. Thus this creation is mentioned briefly. This wind (vital air) alone is the life of living beings.

51. The destroyer Kāla runs with the force of the current of a river with day and night for his hands. Hence he is called the wind.

52. These are the Prajāpatis (Lords of subjects) most im-

**Jalātmaka* in the text amended as *balātmaka* as *jala* is irrelevant. Bd. P. ibid. v.131 also reads *balātmaka*.

portant of all embodied beings. They are glorified as the Pitṛs of all people and the Ātmans of all the worlds.

53. The lord manifested himself by coming out of the mouth of Brahmā, as he was meditating. Hence he (the great lord) Mahādeva, the sage, the Brāhmaṇa, the soul of all living beings is the great-grandfather.

54. He, the lord of all living beings is identical with the Praṇava. The creation of the limbs (major and minor) of living beings is due to the entry of the soul (into the body).

55. Agni, *Saṁvatsara*, the sun, the moon, the wind—Lord Rudra, the soul of Kāla, the all-pervader always condenses these. It is called *Idvatsara* when it causes exhilaration and blesses the world.

56. In this universe everything is penetrated and permeated by Lord Rudra with his own brilliance, bodies and names by the relation of the supporter and the supported.

57. Hence through his prowess this second contact of welfare is the cause of supreme bliss to the worlds.

58. Since he is the cause of the general distinction existing in Devas, Pitṛs, and Kāla, he is worshipped by the learned.

59. The lord of lords, the Prajāpati of the Prajāpatis, the abode of living beings is Rudra, Nīlalohita. He revives the growth of medicinal plants declining again and again.

60. Thus the lineage of Devas cannot be enumerated due to their multiplicity. Their sons and grandsons are too many to mention.

61. He who glorifies this lineage of great Prajāpatis of noble deeds and stable renown will attain great *Siddhi*.

CHAPTER THIRTYTWO

Characteristics of Yugas

Vāyu said:

1. Henceforth I shall explain the decisive nature of *oṁkāra* as the imperishable Brahman.[1] It shall be remembered at the beginning that it consists of three letters.

2. In accordance with the letters, the presiding deities are ordained. There are Ṛk, Yajur, Sāman (Vedas), Vāyu (the Wind-god), the Fire-god and water.

3. It is from the *Akṣara* that the fourteen noble *Ātmans*, the deities of the Devas, originated.

4. Among these letters (*oṁkāra*) is omnipresent, all-permeating, the knower of all Yogas. It is lettered at the beginning, middle and the end for the bliss of the people.

5. Seven sages, Indras, Devas, as well as Pitṛs—all who are evolved out of the letter, have (really) come out of Maheśvara (Śiva), the God of gods.

6. For the benefit here and hereafter, they speak of it as the greatest region. Kāla, known as Yuga, has already been mentioned to you by me.

7. The Yugas are Kṛta, Tretā, Dvāpara and Kali. They move in cycles like a wheel.

8. Devas, being subject to the control of Kāla, felt dejected. They could not adjust to his magnitude and control.

9-10. Terrified by Kāla, the sages, Devas and Indra of great penance, restrained their speech, controlled their minds severely for a thousand years in the beginning of the Manvantara and resorted to the great lord (Śiva).

11. They said to the lord, "O great Lord! This Kāla is the lord of Devas. He has four faces and four forms. Who can comprehend him? He is too deep."

12. Then looking at Kāla of four faces, the great Lord

---

1. This chapter is a continuation of the topic of Time initiated in the previous chapter (31. 24 ff.). The introductory statement regarding 'The decisive nature of Oṁkāra' concludes with its identification with god Maheśvara.

said to Devas, "You need not be afraid. What desire of yours shall I grant You ?

13. I shall do everything for you. Your endeavour will not go in vain." Himself being the unconquerable Kāla, the lord spoke again.[1]

14. "This white face of his, seen with four tongues, is the face of Kāla and is called Kṛta Yuga. This god Brahmā, the most excellent among gods, and Vaivasvata is (this) face.

15. What I called the third—this blood-red coloured (face) with three licking tongues, is the Tretā Yuga, O Brāhmaṇas.

16. In this age the institution of sacrifice is initiated from great Lord Śiva and is worshipped in this age. The three tongues are the three fires (Gārhapatya, Āhavanīya and Dakṣiṇa). After worshipping the fires, O Brāhmaṇas, the tongue of Kāla begins to function.

17. This terrible face of reddish-tawny colour with two tongues is the Dvāpara age. I will remain two-footed in this age.

18-19. This fourth face of black colour and red eyes, the single-tongued, dark and huge, licking like a serpent again and again, is the terrible Kali age. It is terrifying to all the worlds. It is the fourth terrible face of the Kāla.

20. In this age, neither happiness nor salvation comes into being. The subjects are devoured by Kāla.

---

1. Verses 13-20 give us an interesting reification of Time. Identifying himself with Kāla, Maheśvara explains the four faces and forms of Kāla as follows : A Yuga is a face of Kāla.

Name of the Face	*Other Description*
4. Kṛta ..	Colour—white; four tongues. Identified with Brahmā and Vaivasvata Manu.
3. Tretā	Colour—blood-red. The three tongues are three sacrificial fires (viz. Gārhapatya, Āhavanīya and Dakṣiṇa) i.e. the institution of sacrifice was established in Tretā. Establishment of Kṣattriya Gotras.
2. Dvāpara ...	Colour—reddish tawny. Two tongues, two feet. Kṣattriyas firmly established.
1. Kali	Colour—black, red eyes, one tongue.

21. Brahmā shall be worshipped in the Kṛta age; in the Tretā, it is sacrifice; Viṣṇu in Dvāpara; and I in all the four ages.

22. Brahmā, Viṣṇu and sacrifice are the three parts of Kāla itself. But in all ages, the four-formed great Lord is the very Kāla itself.

23. I am the progenitor of Kāla, the initiator of Kāla.

24-25. O Excellent Devas of great power, you need not be afraid of the advent of Kali. For the welfare of the worlds, and for offering protection to the people and Devas, I shall be born (in Kali age) and be worshipped."

26. Thus addressed, Devas and the sages bowed to the Lord of the universe with bent heads. They spoke to him again.

The gods and sages enquired:

27. How is this Kāla, of great splendour, huge body, great prowess and four faces terrible to living beings?

The great Lord said:

28. "This Kāla has four forms, four fangs and four faces. For protecting the universe, he goes beyond, on all sides.

29. There is nothing impossible for him in the universe consisting of the mobile and immobile beings. Kāla creates the living beings and gradually annihilates them.

30. All are subject to the control of Kāla. Kāla is not subject to anyone. Kāla always reckons (controls) all living beings.

31. He takes seventy-one steps, as mentioned before, which constitute a Manvantara with as many cycles of the sets of four Yugas.

32. Over-stepping one, when Kāla completes a set of seventy-one steps, the Manvantara terminates."

33. Having spoken thus to Devas, sages, Pitṛs and Dānavas, the lord vanished there itself, after being bowed to by them.

34. Thus the lord creates, annihilates Devas, sages, Pitṛs and Dānavas in course of Time (Kāla) again and again.

35. Hence, due to the fear of Kāla, the great Lord is worshipped in every Manvantara by Devas, sages, Pitṛs and Dānavas.

36-37. Hence in the Kali age, a Brāhmaṇa should perform penance strenuously. The fruit of the merit of a person resorting to the great Lord is very great. Hence abandoning the heaven and descending to the earth at the advent of the terrible Kali, Devas and the sages desire to perform penance. They are engrossed in holy rites. The Lord too takes incarnation frequently in the Kali age.

38-39. Thousands of Devas, saints and kings have passed away in course of time, in Vaivasvata Manvantara. Devāpi, the king in the race of Pūru, Manu and his descendants in the family of Ikṣvāku are endowed with great Yogic strength. They wait for the change in Kāla.

40. When the Kali age terminates, and Tretā Yuga arrives, in that future Tretā Yuga along with the seven sages, the *gotras* of Kṣattriyas will be established. They are narrated.

41. The Kṣattriyas become firmly established at the end of Dvāpara, along with the sages. When Kṛta, Tretā and Dvāpara pass away, the Kali age arrives, wherein sinful men pass their time.

42. Śrutis and Smṛtis record the (completion and) passing away of the seven Manvantaras. The serial order of the termination of *yugas* is the same in all these.

43. The rise of Brāhmaṇas and Kṣatriyas is mutual along with that of the Yugas. Just as they come into existence from them, those that have come into being pass away along with them.

44. When the Kṣattriyas were exterminated by Rāma, son of Jamadagni, the widows were made unchaste by the rulers of the earth. Now I shall tell you about those that have gone to heaven. Understand.

45. They mention Aiḍa i.e. Aila (Purūravas) as the founder of Ikṣvāku race.[1] There was a line of other Kṣattriya kings on the earth.

---

1. The statements in vv 45, 46 regarding Aiḍa (i.e. Aila, Purūravas) as the founder of the Ikṣvāku race is wrong. Vide *AIHT*, pp. 145-46 for the table of Royal Genealogies.

46-47. Ikṣvāku kings were born in the race of Aila; full hundred kings of that family were crowned; the extent of the Bhoja family of kings is twice that number. There were three hundred Kṣattriya kings divided into four lines as I have already mentioned (?)

48-49. Now hear about the kings that have gone before, as I mention about them. There were a hundred Prativindhyas,[1] a hundred Haihayas, a hundred Dhārtarāṣṭras, eighty Janamejayas, a hundred families of very powerful kings.

50. There were a hundred Paulas; Kāśi, Kuśa and others were a hundred. Śaśabindus who have gone, constitute a thousand. These performed horse-sacrifices wherein thousands and thousands (of gold coins) were given as gifts.

51. Thus, all the saintly kings who passed away in the previous Yugas, have been mentioned briefly. They cannot be mentioned in detail.

52. These have made the race of Yayāti flourish. Sustaining the worlds, these have been glorified as lustrous.

53-54. Those who hear and retain in memory their account get the five rare boons of Brahmaloka, viz. longevity, sons, wealth, fame and prosperity and they go to the region of Brahmā.

55. Four thousand years, they say, constitute the Kṛta Yuga.[2] Four hundred years oonstitute *Sandhyā* (transitional period) and four hundred years the part of *Sandhyā* (Sandhyāṁśa).

---

1. Vide Pargiter in *AIHT* p. 130. But the kings mentioned here belong to the past epoch.

2. The years mentioned in Yuga calculations are 'years of gods'. Verses 55-63 give the period of divine years of each Yuga as follows :

Name of the Yuga	*Period*	*Sandhyā*	*Sandhyāṁśa*		*Total*
1. Kṛta	4000	400	400	=	4800
2. Tretā	3000	300	300	=	3600
3. Dvāpara	2000	200	200	=	2400
4. Kali	1000	100	100	=	1200

Total period of four yugas (*Caturyugī* or Mahā-yuga) = 12,000 years.

The author identifies four parts (*pādas*) of this Purāṇa with Yugas. Thus Kṛta=*Prakriyā Pāda*, Tretā=*Anuṣaṅga Pāda*, Dvāpara=*Upodghāta Pāda*, Kali = (*Upa-*) *Saṁhāra Pāda*.

The number of years in a Mahāyuga=12,000 years.

The number of verses in this Purāṇa=12,000.

56. The Kṛta yuga, the *Prakriyāpāda* (the preliminary period) consists of four thousand years. Out of it, four hundred years constitute the transitional period (at the beginning and at the end of the yuga).

57. In the Tretā age the period is three thousand years with three hundred years of *Sandhyā* (twilight period) and three hundred years of *Sandhyāṁśa* (transitional period).

58. Tretā age, the *Anuṣaṅgapāda* (of the *Caturyugi*) consists of three thousand years and two thousand years period is proclaimed for Dvāpara Age.

59. The twilight period (*Sandhyā*) consists of two hundred years and the transitional period (*Sandhyāṁśa*) is of the same duration. The third *pāda* (of Caturyuga) called *Upodghātapāda* is in Dvāpara Age.

60. Persons expert in calculation opine one thousand years (as the period) of Kali age. Its *Sandhyā* period is of hundred years and *Sandhyāṁśa* period is also of a hundred years.

61. The fourth, *Saṁhāra* (*Upa-saṁhāra*) *pāda*, is stated to be in Kali Age. Four Yugas have (each of them) the twilight and transitional periods.

62-63. (This totals upto twelve thousand.) Thus learned men knew that this Purāṇa (also) consists of twelve thousand verses.

64. Just as Vedas are divided into four *Pādas*, a Yuga also has four *Pādas*. Just as god Brahmā ordained a Yuga to consist of four parts (feet), so he has ordained four parts (Pādas—feet) to this Purāṇa* as well.

**Surāṇām* in the text is a misprint for *Purāṇam*, as recorded in A. Hence that reading is accepted.

CHAPTER THIRTYTHREE

Progeny of Svāyaṁbhuva Manu[1]

Sūta said :

1. In all the Manvantaras of the past and future, equally identical persons, all of the same names and forms, are born.

2. The different Devas who are the ruler in that Manvantara, sages and human beings all (are equally identical[2]).

3. The creation of great sages has been narrated. Now know and understand the family of Svāyaṁbhuva Manu being narrated in detail and in due order.

4-6. Svāyaṁbhuva Manu had ten grandsons equal to himself. They were the sons of Priyavrata. This entire earth with its seven continents and various *Varṣas* was colonised by them formerly in the Svāyaṁbhuva Manvantara in the first Tretā ages.[3] They were endowed with progeny, Yogic power, and penance and the ability to create subjects. This earth was colonised by them.

7-8. Kanyā (Kāmyā in Bd. P.), that extremely fortunate daughter of Kardama, the Prajāpati, bore to valorous Priyavrata sons endowed with progeny. She gave birth to two daughters Samrāj and Kukṣi as well as to hundred sons[4]. Among them ten brothers were very valorous and equal to Prajāpati.

9. They were Agnīdhra, Vapuṣmat, Medhā, Medhātithi, Vibhu, Jyotiṣmat, Dyutimat, Havya, Savana and Sarva.

---

1. This chapter is (even textually) similar to Bd. P.I.2.14 as both deal with the topic of the race of Priyavrata and the distribution of the continents and sub-continents among the descendants of Priyavrata.

2. This belief is shared by all Purāṇas. This chapter deals with Purāṇic cosmography. It associates the names of the continents and sub-continents of the earth with those of their respective rulers—all being the grandsons of Svāyaṁbhuva Manu—sons of Priyavrata. Compare A.P. Ch. 107, Bh. P.V. 16.1-26, KP. I. 40, Mt. P. Chs. 112, 121, 122.

3. Tretā is the Yuga in which Kṣattriyas got established.

4. Ten sons in Bd. P.

10. Priyavrata crowned seven of them with due religious rites as kings over the seven continents.[1]

11. He made Agnīdhra the powerful lord over Jambūdvīpa and he made Medhātithi king of Plakṣa Dvīpa.

12. In the Śālmali continent, he crowned Vapuṣmat as the king. He made Jyotiṣmat ruler over Kuśa Dvīpa.

13. He granted Dyutimān the kingdom of Krauñca Dvīpa. He made Havya lord over Śāka Dvīpa.

14. He made Savana the overlord of Puṣkara. In Puṣkara Dvīpa, Savana had two sons Mahāvīta and Dhātaki. These two sons were excellent among persons endowed with sons.

15. In honour of the name of the noble soul, that continent (sub-Varṣa) [is known] as Mahāvīta. The subcontinent Dhātakī Khaṇḍa is called after the name Dhātaki.[2]

16. King Havya begot (seven) sons as the rulers of Śāka-dvīpa. They were Jalada, Kumāra, Sukumāra, Maṇīcaka, Vasumoda, Sumodāka and the seventh son Mahādruma.[3]

17. The first sub-continent or country of (=governed by) Jalada is called Jalada; the second of (=ruled by) Kumāra is glorified as Kaumāra.

18. The third sub-continent of Sukumāra is known as Sukumāra and the fourth of Maṇīcaka is called Maṇīcaka.

---

1. The division of the earth among the sons of Priyavrata is as follows:

Name of Pripavrata's son	*Name of the Dvīpa assigned as a separate kingdom*
1. Āgnīdhra	Jaṁbū Dvīpa
2. Vapuṣmat	Śālmala (-li)
3. Medhā	
4. Medhātithi	Plakṣa
5. Vibhu	
6. Jyotiṣmat	Kuśa
7. Dyutimat	Krauñca
8. Havya	Śāka
9. Savana	Puṣkara
10. Sarva	

2. The Sub-Divisions of Puṣkara Dvīpa.

3. Verses 16-20 enumerate the Sub-Divisions of Śāka Dvīpa, each named after the seven sons of Havva.

19. The fifth Varṣa of Vasumoda is called Vasumodaka and the sixth of Modāka, is glorified as Modāka.

20. The seventh of Mahādruma is named Mahādruma. All the seven countries were thus named after them.

21. Dyutimat, Lord of Krauñca Dvīpa had seven sons, viz. Kuśala, Manuga, Uṣṇa, Pīvara, Andhakāraka, Muni and Dundubhi.[1]

22. The splendid regions situated in Krauñca Dvīpa were called after the names of these (sons). The land of Uṣṇa is remembered as Uṣṇa and that of Pīvara, Pīvara.

23. Andhakāraka's land was called Andhakāra, that of Muni was Muni and that of Dundubhi, Dundubhi. These seven flourishing lands were situated in Krauñca Dvīpa.

24. These seven sons of great strength were born to Jyotiṣmat in Kuśa Dvīpa. These were Udbhida, Veṇumat, Svairatha, Lavaṇa, Dhṛti, the sixth son Prabhākara and the seventh Kapila.[2]

25-26. The first country was called after Udbhida, the second after Veṇumaṇḍala, the third after Svairathākāra, the fourth after Lavaṇa, the fifth after Dhṛtimat, the sixth after Prabhākara and the seventh Varṣa of Kapila is well-known as Kapila.

27. Thus the countries in the Kuśa Dvīpa were known after their names. The subjects therein followed the conducts befitting the stages of life.

28. The rulers of the Śālmali continent were the seven sons of Vapuṣmat. They were : Śveta, Harita, Jīmūta, Rohita, Vaidyuta, Mānasa and Suprabha.[3]

29-30. Śveta was the land of Śveta, Rohita, of Rohita. Jīmūta, of Jīmūta, Harita, of Harita, Vaidyuta, of Vaidyuta, Mānasa, of Mānasa and Suprabha, of Suprabha. All these seven were the rulers of the lands.

---

1. Verses 21-23 enumerate the sub-continents of Krauñca-dvīpa which are named after their first rulers, the sons of Dyutimat.

2. Verses 24-27 give the seven sub-divisions of Kuśa-dvīpa each named after their initial ruler, the sons of Jyotiṣmat.

3. Verses 28-30: The seven sons of Vapuṣmān, the kings of Śālmali-dvīpa gave their names to its sub-divisions, each to his special sub-division.

31. I shall describe the seven countries after Jambūdvīpa. The seven sons of Medhātithi were kings and rulers of Plakṣa-dvīpa.[1]

32-33. The eldest was Śāntabhaya, and then followed Śiśira, Sukhodaya, Ānanda, Dhruva, Kṣemaka and Śiva. The seven countries named after them were established by them in the previous Svāyaṁbhuva Manvantara.

34. The subjects in the Plakṣa-dvīpa were made to follow the conduct of life according to their respective castes and stages of life by the sons of Medhātithi residing in their respective seven countries.

35-36. In the five continents beginning with Plakṣa and ending with Śāka the sacred rite was known in accordance with the division of castes (*Varṇas*) and stages of life (*Āśramas*). Happiness, longevity, forms (beauty), strength and Dharma were all common to everyone in the five Dvīpas (continents) perpetually.

37. Understand that the Jaṁbūdvīpa is surrounded by the seven Dvīpas. Priyavrata crowned the eldest son (the son of) Kāmyā[2], Āgnīdhra of great valour as the king of Jaṁbūdvīpa.

38-40. He had nine sons equal in valour and strength to Prajāpati. The eldest was known as Nābhi; his younger brother was Kiṁpuruṣa; Harivarṣa was the third; Ilāvṛta was the fourth; Ramya was the fifth; Hariṇmat was the sixth; Kuru was the seventh; Bhadrāśva was the eighth; Ketumāla was the ninth. Undestand their lands.[3]

41-45. The father gave Nābhi the southern *Varṣa* (sub-continent) called Hima. He gave to Kimpuruṣa the *Varṣa* known as Hemakūṭa; to Harivarṣa the *Varṣa* remembered as Naiṣadha; to Ilāvṛta the central part of Sumeru. He (the father) gave to Ramya Nīla-varṣa; Śveta, which lay to the north of it, was given by the father to Hariṇmat. He gave to Kuru the

1. Verses 32-34 enumerate the seven sub-continents of Plakṣa-dvīpa each of which was named after its ruler, the son of Medhātithi.

2. *Kanyā* in the text is a misprint.

3. Verses 38-45 enumerate the nine sub-division of India as understood by the author of the Vā. P. For locations of mountains mentioned here *vide Suptā* p. 11, fn. 2.

subcontinent to the north of Śṛṅgavān. Similarly he assigned the subcontinent Mālyavat to Bhadrāśva. He assigned the subcontinent Gandhamādan to Ketumāla. Thus (he apportioned) these big subcontinents (among his sons).

46. The righteous Āgnīdhra crowned his sons in these countries in due order and then engaged himself in penance.

47. Thus, the seven continents were established by the seven sons of Priyavrata, the grandsons of Svāyaṁbhuva (Manu).

48. The eight countries beginning with Kiṁpuruṣa are very auspicious. There perfection is natural, wholly consisting of pleasure and without effort.

49. There is no calamity or misfortune, no fear of old age and death. They have neither righteousness nor unrighteousness. There are neither high born nor low born nor middling. In all those areas there are no *yuga* cycles (with their classification, duties etc.).

50. I shall now describe the lineage of Nābhi in the Hima Varṣa. Nābhi of great lustre begot of Merudevī a son (named) Ṛṣabha,[1] the best among all kings and the ancestor of all Kṣattriyas.

51. The heroic Bharata was born of Ṛṣabha. He was the eldest of his hundred sons. After crowning his son Bharata, Ṛṣabha renounced the world.

52. He entrusted the southern *Varṣa* called Hima to Bharata. Hence learned people know it by the name Bhārata Varṣa.[2]

53. Bharata's son was the scholarly and righteous Sumati. After transferring his kingdom, the royal splendour and glory to the son, Bharata entered the forest.

---

1. He is the first Tīrthaṅkara of Jains. He is mentioned in Bh. P.V. Chs. 4 & 5 and in VP. II. 1.28. Brahmancial Purāṇas regard him as their own, an incarnation of Viṣṇu.

2. Jain tradition supports this Purāṇic belief. But countries are named after the major tribes that settled in that particular land e.g. Malwa, Gujarat, England. Thus the country in which the tribe called Bharatas settled was the original Bhārata.

54. His son, Tejas[1] was a lord of the subjects and conqueror of enemies. Indradyumna, the son of Taijasa, was well-known as a scholar.

55. His son was Parameṣṭhin. After his death Śobhana born in the family of Pratīhāras[2] and related to him (ascended his throne). A son known as Pratihartṛ was born to him.

56. Unnetṛ was the son of Pratihartṛ. Bhuva was his son. His son was Udgītha. Pratāvi was his son.

57. Vibhu was the son of Pratāvi. His son was Pṛthu. Nakta was Pṛthu's son and Gaya was Nakta's son.

58. Nara was the son of Gaya. Virāṭ was Nara's son. Virāṭ's son was Mahāvīrya and Dhīmat was his son.

59. Mahat was the son of Dhīmat. Bhauvana was Mahat's son. Tvaṣṭṛ was Bhauvana's son and Arija was his son.

60. Rajas was Arija's son. Śatajit was the son of Rajas. He had a hundred sons and all of them were kings.

61. Out of them Viśvajyoti was the chief. It is through them that these subjects flourished. They made this Bhārata as consisting of seven Khaṇḍas.

62. The country Bhārata was enjoyed by those born of their race, for seventyone sets of ages consisting of Kṛta, Tretā etc.

63. Along with those ages (*yugas*) which have gone, the kings of their race were hundreds and thousands in the Svāyaṁbhuva Manvantara.

64-65. This is the creation of Svāyaṁbhuva (Manu) by which this universe has been filled along with sages, deities, Pitṛs, Gandharvas, Rākṣasas, Yakṣas, Bhūtas, Piśācas, human beings, animals and birds. Their creation in the world revolves in cycles along with the Yugas.

---

1. Reading in A accepted as '*Tejasas tu sutaḥ*' in the text contradicts the second line thereof.

2. Bd. P. (v. 65-66) states that Pratihāra is the name of the son of Parameṣṭhin.

CHAPTER THIRTYFOUR

Geography of Jaṁbūdvipa[1]

1. On hearing of the establishment of the people, the clever and eminent sage asked Sūta about the length and extent of the earth.

The sages enquired :

2. O holy sir, how many continents, or oceans or mountains are there? How many Varṣas (sub-continents) are there and what are the rivers in them.

3. Explain factually to us in details, the magnitude of the great elements and of the Lokāloka mountain, the circumference, the size and the course of movements of the sun and the moon.

Sūta said :

4. Henceforth I shall explain the length and extent of the earth, the number of oceans and continents in details.

5. I shall tell you how many countries (*Varṣas*) there are and what the rivers (are) therein. (Now) I shall tell you the magnitude of the great elements, the Lokāloka mountain range, the circumference, magnitude and the course of the moon and the sun.

6. There are thousands of countries and islands in the seven continents. They cannot be described in details with sufficient evidence, even in hundreds of years.

7. I shall explain the seven continents along with the moon, the sun and the planets. Men mention their extent and magnitude by guess-work.

---

1. The Vā. P. is one of the oldest Purāṇas. Though the anthor has recorded the traditional information or social memory of the places in Jaṁbūdvīpa, the information as corroborated by modren researchers shows that Purāṇic India was much wider and included modren Afghanistan and a major portion of Central Asia. The distances and the extent mentioned in terms of Yojanas are traditional (and possibly conjectural) as they often do not tally with our present knowledge.

8. One shall not make conjectures about inconceivable objects and worlds. That which is beyond Prakṛti is called eternal.

9. I shall describe to you factually Jaṁbūdvīpa consisting of nine *Varṣas*. Understand its extent and zones in Yojanas.

10-11. It extends to a hundred thousand Yojanas. It is full of different rural localities and various splendid cities. It is embellished with the (colonies of) Siddhas, Cāraṇas and Gandharvas and with mountains as well. It has mountains abounding in minerals and variegated rocks. It has many rivers rising from mountains.

12. Jaṁbūdvīpa is immense, glorious and surrounded by nine (Khaṇḍas—Zones?) inhabited by living beings. It is encircled on all sides by salt-sea.

13. All round Jaṁbūdvīpa, extending to its entire length, the six mountain systems stretch to the east.[1] They have excellent ridges. They extend to both sides plunging into the eastern and western seas.

14. The mountain Himavat is full of snow. Hemakūṭa is full of gold; Niṣadha is golden having the lustre of the midday sun.

15. The golden Meru of four colours is known as the highest.[2] Leaping up in symmetrical shapes on all sides it rises up.

16. On its sides it has various colours. It is endowed with the attributes of Prajāpati. It is born of the umbilical knot of Brahmā, of unmanifest origin.

17. It is white on the east, hence its Brāhmaṇahood. It is yellow on the south, hence its Vaiśyahood.

1. These are called *Varṣa parvatas* as they divide one *Varṣa* (sub-continent or country) from another. For their location and modern name *vide Supra* Ch. 1, p. 11, note 2.

2. Verses 15-23 describe the pivotal mount Meru. About its shape and size there is a consenus among Purāṇas like KP, Mt. P., Bd. P., Mk. P. M. Ali (*AGP*, pp. 47-50) points out that Persians, Greeks, Chinese, Jews and Arabs confirm the traditional nodality of Meru. After discussing the problems, he shows that Mt. Meru of Purāṇas is identical with the Pamirs in Central Asia.

For a diagrammatic representation of Jaṁbū-dvīpa and its cross section *vide* Fig. 4 on *AGP*, p. 65.

18. On the west it is black like the aloe leaf. It is very hard, and renders services to many.

19. Its northern side has a natural red colour. Hence its Kṣattriya-hood. Thus all its colours are described. Its manifest characteristic are described according to its colour and effects.

20-21. The Nīla mountain is full of *Lapis lazuli*; Śvetasṛṅga, full of gold; Śṛṅgavān is of gold but variegated in colour like peacock feathers. These lordly mountains are resorted to by Cāraṇas and Siddhas. Their inner girth is said to be nine thousand (Yojanas).

22. It is in the centre of Ilāvṛta which surrounds it. It extends to nine thousand Yojanas. In the centre of the Meru, there is a smokeless fire.

23. The southern and the northern halves of Meru come together like the middle of the sacrificial altar. The seven mountain systems of the seven countries (Varṣas) are two thousand Yojanas long and as much high.

24-27. Their length is said to be similar to that of Jaṁbūdvīpa. The two middling mountains, Nīla and Niṣadha are a hundred thousand Yojanas in length; the other (four mountains) are shorter (in length) than these. (They are) Śveta, Hemakūṭa, Himavān, and Śṛṅgavān. Out of these mountains Śveta and Hemakūṭa are each ninety thousand Yojanas long. (Mountains Himavān and Śṛṅgavān) are each eighty thousand in length. There are *Janapadas* (territories) in between them. The *Varṣas* are seven in number. They are encircled by mountains that are difficult to cross on account of steep precipices. They are criss-crossed by different rivers. It was impossible to travel from one *Varṣa* to another (lit. they were mutually unapproachable). Animals of different species live in them.

28. This *Varṣa* deriving its name from Himavat is well known by the name Bhārata. Hemakūṭa is beyond this. It is remembered by the name Kiṁpuruṣa.

29. Naiṣadha (*Varṣa* is beyond) Hemakūṭa. It is called Harivarṣa. Ilāvṛta is beyond Harivarṣa (with Meru in the middle).

30. Nīla is beyond Ilāvṛta and is well-known by the name Ramyaka. Beyond Ramyaka is Śveta and is well known as

Hiraṇmaya. The Śṛṅgavat is beyond Hiraṇmaya and it is remembered as Kuru.

31. The two sub-continents in the south and north should be known as situated in the form of a bow. Four others are situated lengthwise and the middle one is Ilāvṛta.[1]

32. Vedyardha which is on the hitherside of Niṣadha is known as southern Vedyardha and that which is beyond the Nīlavān is the northern Vedyardha. On the southern side of Vedyardha there are three *Varṣas* and three on the northern side.

33a. Meru should be known as standing in between them and Ilāvṛta is in the middle of Meru.

33b-34. To the south of the Nīla and to the north of Niṣadha, there is a great mountain stretching to the north named Mālyavān.

It stretches a thousand Yojanas from Nīla to Niṣadha. It is glorified as one thirtyfour thousand Yojanas in extent.

35. The mountain Gandhamādana should be known as situated to its west. In length and extent it is reputed to be like Mālyavān.[2]

---

1. This is the seven-continent concept of the earth in the Purāṇas. It may be diagrammatically represented as follows :

NORTH

Uttara-Kuru Varṣa	—	Mt. Śṛṅgavān
Hiraṇmaya Varṣa	—	Mt. Śveta
Ramyaka Varṣa	—	Mt. Nīla
Ilāvṛta Varṣa Mt. Meru Ilāvṛta Varṣa		
Hari Varṣa	—	Mt. Niṣadha
Kiṁpuruṣa Varṣa	—	Mt. Hemakūṭa
Bhārata or Haimavata Varṣa	—	Mt. Himavat or Himālaya

SOUTH

Does the bow-like formation of these Varṣas suggest the spherical shape of the earth?

2. The Purāṇas differ about the location of these mountains. But here Mt. Mālyavān due to its association with Gandhamādana and Meru may be identified with the Sarikol range, as Gandhamādana was the northern ridge of the great Hindukush arch with its northern extension, the Khwaja Mahammad (*AGP*, pp. 58-59).

Meru, the golden mountain, is in the middle of two cirdes. That golden mountain has four colours. It is symmetrical and very lofty.

36. In between the two, there is the four-coloured, golden, four-cornered, lofty, excellent mountain Meru. From the unmanifest, the elements of water etc. are born.

37. From the unmanifest the great lotus of the earth is evolved. Its pericarp is the four-cornered Meru that is five times great.

38-39. O excellent Brāhmaṇas, then all the deities were born. The noble Puruṣottama was born with his *Ātman* purified by merits earned through many Kalpas previously. Then there was born Mahādeva, the great Yogin, the great lord who is elderly to the universe which he pervades, and who is infinite and formless.

40. He has no form evolved out of Prakṛti, that is to say no form of flesh, fat or bone; with his Yogic power and lordly nature, he pervades the universe.

41. From him as the cause, was born the eternal lotus of the worlds. As the natural sequence of time, it occurred at the advent of the Kalpa (?)

42. In that lotus was born the four-faced lord of Devas, Brahmā, the chief of Prajāpatis, the lord of the universe.

43. His creation is the seed of the lotus precisely. The whole of it, along with the creation of the subjects, is mentioned here in detail.

44. The lotus that was fashioned by Viṣṇu grew from his umbilicus. The earth along with the forests and the trees was evolved in the shape of a lotus.

45. O Brāhmaṇas, listen to the detailed description of this lotus of the universe and its divisions in due order.

46. The four famous great continents are stationed on the petals.[1] The powerful Meru is stationed on the pericarp.

---

1. Verses 46 ff explain the four-continent (*Caṭur-dvīpī*) concept of the earth. It regards Meru as the pericarp of the Earth-lotus with four *dvīpas* as petals, one in each direction. Four-directionwise concept was naturally earlier and is found in Mbh. VI., 6.12-13, VP. II. 2. 39 ff and in early Buddhist works (see Childers, *Pali-Eng. Dictionary*; S. V. Mahādipo and Malalsekera, *Dict. Pali. Prop. Names*—Jambūdipa).

47-48. Of its sides of different colours the eastern side is white; the southern is yellow; the western is black; and the northern is red. With variegated colours shining brightly, Meru is established like a king.

49. It is as refulgent as the midday sun or the smokeless fire. It is eightyfour thousand Yojanas in height.

50. Its depth below the surface of the earth is sixteen thousand Yojanas and at its base it extends also as much. It is situated like an arrow pointing to the east. Its diameter at the summit is thirtytwo thousand Yojanas.

51. Its girth all round is thrice its lateral extent. The spherical curvature is half of it. It lies in three angles.

52. Its extent all round is forty thousand Yojanas. In the angular calculation, it will be eight thousand more.

53. In the quadrangular calculation the girth is fortyeight thousand Yojanas.

54. That mountain is extremely rich in divine medicinal herbs. It is encircled by auspicious golden worlds.

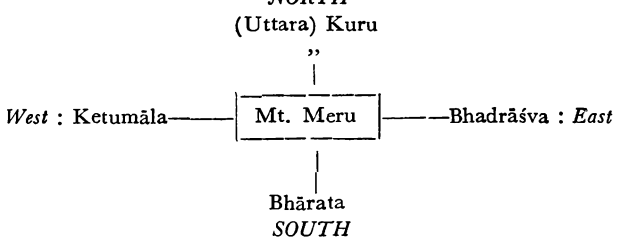
55. All the groups of Devas, Gandharvas, Uragas, Rākṣasas and splendid Apsaras-s, are seen on that lordly mountain.[1]

56. That Meru, the purifier of living beings, is encircled by worlds. Four lands are established on its different sides.[2]

57. They are Bhadrāśva (to the east), Bhārata (in the south), Ketumāla in the west, and the Kurus in the north.

---

1. *Śailarājaiḥ* is emended as *Śailarāje* as in A.
2. Verses 56-57 state in a nutshell the *Catur-dvīpī* concept as follows :—



Early Buddhists show the same distribution though they substitute Pūrva-Videha for Bhadrāśva and Apara Godāna (Pali—*Goyāna*) for Ketumāla. For a discussion of these names vide D.C. Sircar, GAM, I, pp. 19 ff and CGEIL—*Cosmography and Geography in Early Indian Literature* pp. 38-43.

They (Kurus) are the resorts of those who perform pious deeds.

58. The pericarp of that lotus is spherical all round extending to ninety-six thousand Yojanas. The internal measurement is eighty-four thousand Yojanas.

59. Its filaments extend to three hundred thousand Yojanas in all directions.

60. It has four petals to the four quarters, a hundred thousand Yojanas in length and eighty thousand in width.

61. Listen attentively to the description of what I had called before the pericarp and know it briefly.

62. Atri[1] thought it has a hundred angles or corners; sage Bhṛgu, one thousand. According to Sāvarṇi; it is octangular, and a quadrangle according to Bhāguri.

63. Vārṣāyaṇi opines that it is four-sided; Gālava thinks it has the shape of a saucer; Gārgya regards it as twisted braided hair; while Kroṣṭaki conjectures it to be spherical.

64. Each of these sages knew only that side of this lordly mountain which was near him. Only Brahmā knows the entire range.

65-66. Know that Meru, the most excellent of mountains, is full of gems and jewels. It has various colours and lustres. It is golden and refulgent like Aruṇa. It is very attractive. It has a thousand knots and ridges, where water flows. It is like a lotus with a thousand petals.

67-70. It is full of columns studded with gems and jewels. It has altars decorated with diverse jewels. Festoons of corals and golden pieces adorn it. On festival occasions hundreds of glorious heaven-dwellers moving about on aerial chariots, illuminate all its sides with their lustre. The abodes for Devas are laid in thousands of its beautiful ridges. The four-faced lord of Devas, Brahmā, the most excellent among those who know Brahman and the leader of heaven-dwellers, occupies its upper surface.[2]

---

1. Verses 62-63 show the confusion of pre-Vā P. geographers about Meru. The author of Vā. P. is not much wiser or reliable here.

2. In order to justify the identification of Meru with heaven or Svarga in vv. 94-96 below, we are told how the assembly halls of Gods are

71-72. The various quarters set up on the mountain contain thousands of great Devas capable of bestowing desired fruits. They have occupied the great regions there. Here is a glorious assembly-hall of Brahmā, resorted to by several Brahmanical sages. It is known as Manovatī in all the worlds.

73. The great aerial chariot of lord Īśāna, having the brilliance of a thousand suns, is there proclaiming its own glory.

74. Devas and sages (stay there) near Brahmā. The mass of splendour (god Brahmā?) is glorified there. I shall describe it to you now.

75. The glorious lord of riches, the thousand-eyed Indra, stays here honoured by Devas and the celestial sages of great Yogic prowess.

76. Here alone is the region of lord Indra, the great monarch, the lord of the worlds. It is as refulgent as the sun. It is bowed to by all Siddhas.

77. Here is the region of Indra endowed with the highest prosperity of the world. It is brightened by the excellent immortal Devas and is ever resorted to by them.

78-80. In the second inner ridge, in the intermediate point between the east and the south, is the famous splendid assembly-

---

located on the different ridges of Meru. God Brahmā, being the greatest of gods, is on a higher plane with his assembly hall Manovatī.

The direction-wise distribution of gods and their assemblies given in vv. 75-92 is as follows :

Direction of the Ridge		*Name of the presiding god*	*Name of his Assembly Hall*
I.	East	Indra	—
II.	South-East	Agni (Fire-god)	Tejovatī
III.	South (?)	Vaivasvata (Yama)	Susaṁyamā
IV.	?	Nairṛtya	Kṛṣṇāṅganā
V.	West (?)	Varuṇa	Śubhavatī
VI.	North-West	Vāyu	Gandhavatī
VII.	North ?	The Moon	Mahodayā Vibhāvarī in *infra* 50.90
VIII.	?	Īśāna	Yaśovatī

The list of the lords of directions as given here in Va. P. is different from the traditional one. The list quoted from Amarakośa (in Apte's Sk. Dictionary) substitutes Kubera for the Moon while Mbh V. 16.27 excludes Indra and Agni and includes both Kubera and Soma.

hall that shines like fire. It is very beautiful and lustrous, inlaid with metals of diverse colours. The ground is paved with various gems. It has several pillars made of gold and rising high. There are many gem-studded platforms, secret and hidden excellent apartments on either side. This famous spacious aerial chariot is refulgent and fire-like.

81-82. That alone is the great assembly-hall of the Fire-god. It is called Tejovatī. The Fire-god Vibhāvasu, the most excellent (among Devas) and the mouth of all celestial deities, endowed with thousands of leaping flames, is eulogised by Devas and sages, who perform *Homas* too.

83-84. The Fire-god is the intermediary and a distinguished deity of Brāhmaṇas. Though he is indivisible, his splendour is shared by all. He, the lord of splendour, assumes various forms. His diversity both as the cause and effect is perceptible through concentrated mind.

85. That Fire-god is respectfully bowed to by noble Siddhas, blessed sages, knowers of the world and worldly affairs and those who assimilate his prowess and exploits.

86. In the third inner ridge is a great assembly-hall of Vaivasvata (god of death). It is known as Susaṁyamā.

87. In the fourth inner ridge is the great assembly-hall of the intelligent lord Nairṛtya of squint-eyes. The hall is named Kṛṣṇāṅganā.

88. Similarly in the fifth inner ridge there is a great assembly hall of Varuṇa, lord of waters and son of the sun. This hall is named Śubhavatī.

89. In the northern quarter beyond that, in the sixth inner ridge, there is the great assembly-hall of Vāyu. It excels all in good qualities. It is called Gandhavatī.

90. In the seventh inner ridge, there is the assembly-hall of the Moon, lord of the stars. It has raised platforms and altars of brilliant *lapis lazuli*. This hall is called Mahodayā.

91. So also in the eighth inner ridge there is a great assembly-hall of Īśāna. It is named Yaśovatī. It has the lustre of the molten gold.

92. These splendid assembly-halls are situated in the eight quarters. They belong to the eight chief Devas, Indra and others.

93. They are resorted to by the sages, Devas, Gandharvas, Apsaras-s and serpents, who come for worship.

94-96. What is known and called by the synonyms of heaven, viz. Nākapṛṣṭha, Diva and Svarga, by those who know the Vedas and their ancillaries is this. It is here where Devas live. It is so said in the Vedas. One attains this Devaloka by various observances, restraints, sacrifices or different sorts of meritorious deeds. It is called Svarga also.

CHAPTER THIRTYFIVE

Jaṁbū-dvīpa (contd.)

Sūta said :

1. What is described as the root of the pericarp[1] is seventy thousand Yojanas beneath.

2. It is heard that a sphere of fortyeight thousand Yojanas encompassed by the lord of mountains is what is called *Merumūla* (Root of Meru).

3. In all the quarters, there are boundary mountains, the loftiest among thousands of mountains.

4-6. They are beautified by hedges, caves, rivers and rivulets. They have many ridges like huge mansions shining with flowers. Their sides are beautified by minerals. Their flanks are decorated by clusters of flowers. Their peaks are golden brown. Many streams flow over them. All these mountains are richly decorated with gems. There are inimitable bowers with hundreds of birds resorting to them. Lions, tigers, *Sarabhas* (a mythological eight-footed animal), Camarī deer and elephants live there. They (boundary mountains) are bounded by mountain (ranges) of various shapes and colours.

---

1. This is a continuation of the description of Mt. Meru. The author is recording his hearsay information—social memory. Modern geographers try to identify the mountains, rivers etc., in Purāṇas, many times without success.

7. Each of the ten mountains is marked by the sun, lion and the black deer. They have three streams (?) flowing in and out.

8. To the east of Meru are the two mountains Jaṭhara[1] and Devakūṭa which run north to south and stretch upto the Nīla and Niṣadha mountains.

9. The Kailāsa and the Himavat are to the south and north. Extending to the east and the west, they enter the sea.

10. O excellent Brāhmaṇas, now I shall tell you the diameter of Meru, the mountain of gold.

11. Meru has four great ranges (legs) in all the four quarters. Held by them, the earth with her seven continents does not move.

12. Their extent is ten thousand Yojanas. They shine with many gems and jewels of Devas, Yakṣas and Gandharvas who reside there. Many rivulets flow from their rocky declivity and their beautiful caves.

13. The table-lands of diverse colours and features shine with the clusters of flowers blooming around the slopes and ridges, abounding in red arsenic mines and yellow orpiment.

14. The caves all round shine in diverse colours with gems and gold. The place abounds in vermilion, gold and minerals.

15. They are decorated in corals set in variegated shapes and sizes of gold. There are abodes of Siddhas with hundreds of joints (storeys?) which are beautiful and delightful. They are dazzling all around with majestic palatial aerial chariots.

16. To the east is the Mandara,[2] to the west, the Vipula and to the north, the Supārśva.

17. On thousands of their peaks, there are platforms of diamonds and *Lapis lazuli*, with trees of thousands of branches. With firm roots, they are well-established.

---

1. Jaṭhara and Devakūṭa are the Kuruk-Tagh and Altin Tagh (Nan-shang—Tsing-ling) mountains of Sinkiang (AGP 99-100).

2. The Pamirs if taken as Meru, Supārśva is located in Kirghistan. Mandara is not the hill in the Banka sub-division of the Bhagalpur district (Bihar) as given by De 124, but the Sarikol range (N. China) (AGP 101), and Vipula is in Ketumāla (see p. 248, note 2). The identification of Mandara with Ptolemy's Maiandros is doubtful.

18. They have thickly grown smooth dark leaves, with large fruits and flowers. They cover the ground with shade. They are very lofty.

19. Four great trees which are the land-marks of the continent, have grown there. They are resorted to by Siddhas, Yakṣas and Gandharvas.

20. On the peak of mountain Mandara, there is a great tree *Keturāṭ* (the king of banners) with hanging branches. There is a *Kandara* tree also.

21. It is splendid with excessive fragrant, full-blown flowers as big as a pitcher, with filaments spread out. They bloom in all seasons.

22. Wafted by the gentle wind, the fragrance fills up the quarters to more than a thousand Yojanas around.

23-25. O Brāhmaṇas, the continent Bhadrāśva[1] is well-known as *Varaketu*. Here Viṣṇu is directly worshipped by groups of Siddhas. Formerly Hari (Indra), the most excellent among Devas, riding a white horse and accompanied by a group of Rudras, travelled over the entire continent. O leaders of Brāhmaṇas, the continent is, therefore called Bhadrāśva.

26. There is a Jaṁbū tree (Rose Apple) on the top of the southern mountain. It is resorted to by Devas. It ever blooms and bears fruits. It shines with garlands of flowers.

27. Its roots and branches are very extensive. Its branches are of pleasing colours. The tree is always bedecked with fresh flowers, fruits and branches.

28. The sweet and soft fruits of huge size falling on the peak of the mountain are nectar-like in taste.

29. From the table-land on the top of this excellent mountain, flows the river Jaṁbū with currents of honey.

30. Gold known as Jāṁbūnada, with the lustre of burning fire, is formed here. It is the incomparable ornament of Devas and the destroyer of sins.

31. Devas, Dānavas, Gandharvas, Yakṣas, Rākṣasas and Pannagas (serpents) drink the honey, the juice exuding from the Jaṁbū tree which is as sweet as nectar.

---

1. Bhadrāśva is the Tarim-Hwango-Ho basin or North China (AGP 64, 65, 73).

32. That eternal Jaṁbū tree which is well-known in the world is the landmark in the southern continent.[1] The continent is called Jaṁbūdvīpa after its name.

33. A great Aśvattha tree grows on the peak of the great western mountain Vipula.[2]

34. It has hanging garlands, and golden platforms set with gems. Its trunk and branches are very lofty. It is the abode of many living beings. It abounds in good qualities.

35. That tree is the landmark of the people of Ketumāla. It is embellished with auspicious fruits growing in all seasons. They are of the size of big pots and very pleasing. The tree is resorted to by Devas and Gandharvas.

36. How the continent came to be known as Ketumāla, O great Brāhmaṇas, hear. I shall tell you the etymology of the name.

37-38. After the churning of the milk ocean the Daityas were defeated; on being pressed in the tumult of the battle, when the trees shook, a garland wreathed by the thousand-eyed lord Indra was put round the trunk of that Aśvattha tree (as a form of worship).

39. It still retains its excessive fragrance. It never fades. It bestows all desires. That blessed garland is worshipped by Siddhas and Cāraṇas.

40. The garland, as it were a flag-staff bestowed by Indra, shines in a divine way. Blown by the wind, it wafts pleasing fragrance.

41. Symbolised with the two names (Ketu and Mālā) joined together, the continent is known as Ketumāla.[3] It lies in the western region. It is very extensive, well known here as well as in the heaven.

---

1. It appears that certain climatic zones favourable for the growth of some typical trees are regarded as 'continents'. Thus *Jaṁbūdvīpa* has *Jaṁbū* (Rose-apple) as its representative tree implying the climatic zone (and other condition) conducive to its growth.

2. This is located in Ketumāla. Ketumāla is bounded on the south by Niṣadha (Hindukush-Kunlun), in the north by Nīla (Zarafshan—Tien Shan), on the west by the (Caspian) Sea—the 'Western Sea' of Purāṇas, and on the north by the Turan desert (AGP, 83).

3. A popular etymology.

42. On the northern peak of the mountain Supārśva, a great fig tree grows up with extensive branches. It covers an area of many Yojanas.

43. It is resorted to by Siddhas and Cāraṇas. From its branches clusters of garlands of sweet fragrance hang loose. It shines with them.

44. This tree is the landmark of the northern Kuru country. It shines with fruits full of honey. The fruits resemble the coral cup.

45. Seven mental sons of Brahmā, the blessed younger brothers of Sanatkumāra, stay there. They are known as Kurus.

46. They attained (spiritual) knowledge in that region. They are characterised by piety and good qualities. They are of meritorious fame. This eternal, imperishable, great region has been attained by them.

47. This continent has derived its name from those seven great souls. The northern Kurus[1] are famous here and in the heaven for ever.

CHAPTER THIRTYSIX

(*Geographical*) *Arrangement of the World*

Sūta said :

1 shall explain in due order the adjuncts of the four leading mountains. They are very charming at all times and seasons.

2. The place abounds in *Sārikās* (the bird *Turdus Salica*), peacocks, inebriated *Cakoras*, parrots, kingly bees and leopards all round.

3-4. The spots are everywhere charming with the melodious sounds of the *Jivaṁjivaka* (Cakora) birds, the sounds of *Hemakas* (?), the cooing notes of inebriated cuckoos and the bleating sounds

1. M. Ali identifies Uttara Kuru with Western Siberian Region including the basins of the river Irtysh, the Op and the Tobol (AGP. p. 85).

of goats. There are the charming sounds of the golden swans, sparrows and other pleasing chirping sounds.

5. The forest regions appear to be singing with the sweet humming sounds of the excessively lazy and intoxicated bees. They are resorted to by Kinnaras in some places.

6. The trees, shaken by the gentle winds, rain flowers there. They shine with their charming tender sprouts.

7. They are equipped with bunches and clusters of flowers and copper-coloured tender sprouts swinging gently due to the mild wind.

8. O excellent Brāhmaṇas, hundreds of shining pebbles and diverse minerals get mixed with the barks of trees and rinds of fruits scattered splendidly.

9-10. There are four divine play-grounds. They are splendid and charming. They are resorted to by Devas, Dānavas, Gandharvas, Yakṣas, Rākṣasas, Nāgas, Siddhas and Apsaras-s. Listen to their names.

11. On the eastern side is the forest named Caitraratha, on the southern (mountain), the forest Nandana, on the western (mountain), the forest Vaibhrāja and on the northern mountain, the forest of Savitṛ (the Sun-god).

12. In these great forests (parks) charming adjuncts are fitted in due order. Here birds chirp melodiously.

13. Extensive holy centres and great sanctifying gardens are the residences of great Nāgas and those are resorted to by noble souls.

14. Sweet and pure waters are auspicious and very pleasing. They are drunk by Siddhas, Devas and Asuras.

15. There are four great lakes shining with lotuses and lilies, with huge leaves, charming, fragrant and full-blown. These are umbrella-like in appearance and size. I shall mention their names.

16. On the east is the lake Aruṇoda;[1] in the south is the

---

1. The lake Aruṇoda is the Kara Kul which lies on the north-eastern corner (here called 'The East') of the Pamirs (Meru) near the source of Kizil-Su or the Sītā river (AGP. 101). The Mānasa is well-known. Sitoda is Victoria (in Pamirs) and Mahābhadra is Son Kul (AGP. 201).

Mānasa lake; on the west is the Sitoda and on the north, Mahābhadra.

17. The mountains to the east of Aruṇoda are being narrated by me in detail. Please hear.

18-20. On the east of Mandara are the mountains Śītānta,[1] Kumuñja, the excellent mountain Suvīra, Vikaṅka, Maṇiśīla, Vṛṣabha the best of mountains, Mahānīla, Rucaka, Sabindu Mandara, Veṇumān, Sumedha, Niṣadha, Deva-Śaila and others. They are the abodes of Siddhas.

21. Understand that these great mountains lie on the south side of the Mānasa lake. Listen to their names as narrated by me.

22-25. The excellent mountains Triśikhara, Śiśira, Kaliṅga, Pataṅga, Rucaka, Sānumān, Tāmrābha, Viśākha, Śvetodara, Samūla, Viṣadhāra, mount Ratnadhāra, Ekaśṛṅga, Mahāmūla, Gajaśaila, Piśācaka, Pañcaśaila, Kailāsa and the excellent mountain Himavat lie on the southern side of Meru of divine splendour. These are excellent mountains of godly nature.

26. O excellent Brāhmaṇas, I shall mention in due order, those excellent great mountains which lie on the western side of lake Sitoda.

27-29. Suvakṣas,[2] Śikhiśaila, Kāla, Vaidūrya, Kapila, Piṅgala, Rudra, Surasa, Mahācala, Kumuda, Madhuman, Añjanīmukuṭa, Kṛṣṇa, Pāṇḍara, Sahasraśikhara, Pāriyātra and Triśṛṅga. These are the leading mountains in the western region.

30. I shall name in due order, as before, the mountains on the north of the glorious lake Mahābhadra.[3]

---

1. The Kashghar range, the last longitudinal range of the Pamir region. It is a climatic barrier separating the cold plateau on its west. Hence its name Śītānta. Kumuñja is an offshoot of the Tien Shan. Mt. Vikaṅka (Kungur), Maṇiśila (Mustagh range)—these mountains are associated in a way to the river Sītā (Kizil-Su).

2. In this list, Triśṛṅga is a cluster of three peaks, viz. Vashan Tagh, Khan Thag and Chimtarga, all within a radius a radius of three miles. Añjani corresponds to the spurs of the Hissar range. (AGP. 93).

3. Out of the list of mauntains, north of the lake Mahābhadra (lake Son Kul) the following mountains are identifiable: Vṛṣabha, Śataśṛṅga etc. (Chatkal Range), Nīla (Tien-Shan). Nāga (Śaila) is the Farghana

31-32. Śaṅkukūṭa, Mahāśaila, Vṛṣabha, Haṁsa, Nāga, Kapila, Indraśaila, Sānumān, Nīla, Kanakaśṛṅga, Śataśṛṅga, Puṣpaka, Meghaśaila, the excellent mountain Virāja and the leading mount Jārudhi. These are the mountains on the north.

33. Understand the valleys and canyons and lakes in the inter-spaces of these chief mountains.

CHAPTER THIRTYSEVEN

Arrangement of the World (Valleys and Lakes)[1]

Sūta said :

1. The valleys between Śītānta and Kumuñja[2] ranges are noisy with birds and resorted to by innumerable creatures.

2. They are three hundred Yojanas in length and one hundred Yojanas in breadth. There is an excellent lake with sweet and pure water.

3. The lake extends over the full length of the valley which

(i.e. former Kugart) range. Most of the mountains mentioned are thus traceable (vide GAP. p. 79-80). Jārudhi (Mt. Ula Tau) is the last mountain in this series of ranges.

1. This chapter describes three important oases on the margin of the Tarim basin where the rivers Kizil-su (Sītā), Yarkanda and Akṣu enter the sandy belt of the basin. The valley described in vv 1-15 is the Kashgar oasis, the one described in vv 16-22 is the Yarkand oasis and the last 'Palm forest' in vv 23-25 is in and about the Akṣu. The poetic description of these oases associating them with gods, goddesses and sages is no exaggeration as the cities of Kashgar, Yarkand, Akṣu (and Khotan) have been praised by ancient and mediaeval travellers for their affluence, beauty and administration. Remarks M Ali, "It is no wonder that the Puranics honoured these 'Paradises' (advanced beautiful oases in the midst of deserts) by associating them with goddess Lakṣmī, god Kāśyapa and Lord Indra to keep fresh in their memories the beauties of the land which was under their influence for a long time" (AGP p. 104).

2. The Kashgar oasis located between Mt. Śītānta (Kashghar range) and Kumuñja (an offshoot of Mt. Tien-shan).

is embellished with white lotuses of sweet fragrance and great red lotuses of hundreds and thousands of petals.

4. Great and unapproachable snakes of huge bodies are found there. The auspicious water is used by Devas, Dānavas and Gandharvas.

5. The sacred lake called Śrīsaras is famous here and in heaven. It is filled with clear water. It is a worthy refuge for all embodied beings.

6. In the middle of the vast expanse of lotuses there is a lotus which has a crore petals spread on all sides. It has the lustre of the midday sun.

7. It is always open and full blown. It never withers. It is tremulous and circular. It has many charming filaments. It is resonant with the buzzing sound of inebriated bees.

8. The goddess Lakṣmī herself always abides in that lotus. Undoubtedly, the lotus is the abode of Lakṣmī in an embodied form.

9. On the eastern side of the lake resorted to by Siddhas, there is a charming Bilva forest which is full of flowers, and fruits.

10-12. It is a hundred Yojanas in breadth and three hundred Yojanas in length. It is full of thousands of large trees with big trunks and extensive branches and tops half a Yojan in height. The ground is littered with sweet smelling fruits as sweet as nectar, as huge as war-drums, some golden, some green, some pale, some white in colour, all falling down and shattering themselves.

13. It is known as Śrīvana. It is resorted to by Kinnaras, Yakṣas and Mahānāgas (big serpents).

14. It is resorted to by Siddhas who subsist on Bilva fruits. Various groups of living beings (or goblins—*Bhūtas*) always reside in it.

15. The goddess Lakṣmī herself dwells there perpetually. She is worshipped by (groups of) Siddhas.

16-17. In the midst of the leading mountain Vikaṅka and Maṇiśaila, there is an extensive Campaka forest,[1] one hundred

1. This Campaka forest is located between Vikaṅka (Kungur) and Maṇiśaila. It corresponds to the Yarkand oasis.

Yojanas wide and two hundred Yojanas long. It is resorted to by Siddhas and Cāraṇas surrounded by rich and glorious crop of flowers. It appears to be glowing as if it were on fire.

18. That forest appears to be yellow with trees with huge trunks and branches blooming with flowers and tops spread about half a Krośa upwards.

19-20. The flowers measure two *Hastas* (cubits) in girth and three *Hastas* in length. Their pale yellow filaments contain pollen powder resembling red arsenic. They are always in bloom and sweet smelling. The forest shines with these flowers. It is resonant with the humming of inebriated bees.

21. It is resorted to by Dānavas, Devas, Gandharvas, Yakṣas, Rākṣasas, Kinnaras, Apsaras-s and big serpents.

22-23. Here is also the hermitage of the holy Lord Kaśyapa Prajāpati, where Siddhas and Sādhyas are found in large numbers and is (as if) decorated with the sound of Vedic recitations. In the midst of the mountains Mahānīla and Kumuñja,[1] on the banks of the great river Sukhā, resorted to by Siddhas, there is a charming palm forest fifty Yojanas in length and thirty Yojanas in width, with the top reaching a height of half *Krośa*.

24. The Kumuda and Añjana trees have great roots and are very strong. They cluster together without any interstices between them. They are firm, great and circular in shape. Their smell and juice are sweet. This forest is inhabited by Siddhas.

25. It is the abode of the auspicious (type of elephants called *Bhadra*) Airāvata, the Lord of elephants of the great Indra. It is well known in all the worlds.

26-27. To the north of the mountain Veṇumān and Sumedha[2], there is a big stretch of Dūrvā grass, a thousand Yojanas long and a hundred Yojanas wide, devoid of trees, hedges, creepers, winding plants and all kinds of animals.

---

1. This is the Akṣu oasis located at the foot of the Tien-shan. The ancient city of Akṣu (and Khotan) has been described highly by ancient and mediaeval travellers.

2. Identified with the Taklamakan desert, the core of the Tarim basin—the Dead Heart of Asia(AGP 104).

28-29. Similarly, north of the mountains Niṣadha and Deva, there is a big rocky piece of land, a thousand Yojanas long and a hundred Yojanas wide. The ground is devoid of trees and creepers although it is moistened with ankle deep water.[1]

30. Thus, in due order, O leading Brāhmaṇas, are described the valleys between the mountains. They are to the east of Meru and are of various shapes and sizes.

CHAPTER THIRTYEIGHT

Valleys between Mountains

Sūta said :

1. I shall now describe the valleys of the southern quarter, frequented by the Siddhas. Listen to them in due order.

2-3. In the midst of the leading mountain Śiśira and Pataṅga, there is the charming forest of Udumbara.[2] Its ground is gloriously smooth and polished. The creepers there embrace (twine round) the trees. It shines with huge trees with lofty tops. It is resorted to by the flocks of birds.

4. The glittering forest shines with ripe fruits as big as great pitchers. They are ripe, coral-coloured, charming and full of honey.

5. Siddhas, Yakṣas, Gandharvas, Kinnaras, Serpents and jolly Vidyādharas subsist themselves perpetually on them.

6. There, the rivers contain ample water, clear and sweet. There are lakes all round with tasty pure water.

7. There is a charming hermitage of the holy lord Kardama Prajāpati, where Devas live. All around, it is surrounded

1. M. Ali locates this region to the outer slopes of Mt. Kunlun and the subjacent range, the Altin Tagh. The region is on the southern border of the Tarim basin.

2. Śiśira and Pataṅga—mountains to the south of the Mānasa Lake—CGEIL p. 45.

by forests of variegated colours. It is circular extending to a hundred Yojanas.

8-11. Between the mountains Tāmravarṇa and Patańga, there is a highly sacred lake, a hundred Yojanas wide and two hundred Yojanas long. It is beautified with white lotuses as refulgent as the midday sun and full-blown red big lotuses with thousand petals. The water therein shines with sweet-smelling, blooming, red and blue lilies with the honey bees resting within. The lake is resorted to by Devas, Dānavas and great serpents. It is decorated with clusters of blue lotus flowers.

12. There is a country within, a hundred Yojanas long and thirty Yojanas wide. It is embellished with red minerals.

13-15. There is a flourishing city with beautiful ramparts and high archways. It is teeming with men and women. The houses have turrets with stable sloping roofs studded diversely and separately with jewels. The grounds are paved with gem-slabs of various colours. There are bed-coverings smooth and variegated. There are rows of mansions excellent and lofty. Such a beautiful city of Vidyādharas splendidly shines there.

16. The famous lord of Vidyādharas, Puloman, is there. His dress and features are variegated. He wears garlands. His lustre resembles the splendour of Lord Indra.

17. He is the emperor of thousands of resplendent Vidyā-dharas having the splendour comparable to the sun, wearing variegated dresses.

18-19. Between the great mountain Viśākha and Patańga, on the eastern bank of the lake Tāmravarṇa is the famous mango grove. It is hit by the five arrows of the Cupid. The trees have splendid boughs. They shine in various colours, bearing fruits in all seasons. The grove is flourishing and prosperous.

20. The fruits are golden in colour and very tasty. They are sweet-smelling and of the size of big pitchers. They spread their branches on all sides thickly.

21. Gandharvas, Kinnaras, Yakṣas, Nāgas and Vidyādharas drink the sweet ambrosial juice of the mango fruits.

22. The exhilarations of those who drink the mango juice merrily and are thus delighted and nourished, are heard in the great forest.

23-24. O Brāhmaṇas, between the lordly mountain Sumūla and Vasudhāra, there is a Bilvasthalī, fifty Yojanas long and thirty Yojanas wide. It is a level land sweet-smelling and flourishing. It is lovely due to the presence of birds. It is pure. The trees bear fruits which are hanging very low.

25. The soil on the ground is wet and damp with the shattering and shattered sweet Bilva fruits resembling coral (in colour) and comparatively large.

26. Yakṣas, Gandharvas, Kinnaras, Siddhas and Nāgas mostly eating only the Bilva fruits, live in that natural region.

27-28. In between Vasudhāra and Ratnadhāra is the beautiful fragrant forest of *Kiṁśuka* (*Butea frondosa*) a hundred Yojanas long and thirty Yojanas wide, where the trees always bloom. With the rich growth of flowers, it seems to be blazing all round.

29. By its divine fragrance the whole region is sweetened upto a hundred Yojanas in the forests all round.

30. That beautiful forest of *Kiṁśuka* trees is resorted to by Siddhas, Cāraṇas and Apsaras-s. It is bedecked with various water-sheds.

31. There is a great brilliant abode of lord Āditya there. Every month Prajāpati Sūrya descends there.

32. There, multitudes of Siddhas bow to the thousand-rayed excellent lord Sun who is honoured by all the worlds and who is the creator of Time.

33-34. In between the mountains of Pañcakūṭa and Kailāsa is an impassable land, a hundred Yojanas long and thirty-six Yojanas wide. Small animals cannot live there. It is as white as a swan all round. No animal can cross it. It is awe-inspiring.

35. Thus the valleys in the southern tract have been enumerated in due order, wholly. They are resorted to by the groups of Siddhas.

36. O excellent Brāhmaṇas ! Now listen to the description of the valleys which are located on the west.

37. In the central part between Suvakṣa and Śikhiśaila mountains, is a rocky and stony stretch of land extending to one hundred Yojanas on all sides.[1]

---

1. Verses 37-44: This is the Kulyab region in Tajikistan (USSR). Near

38. It is alway hot. People are afraid of touching that surface. It produces horripilation. It is inaccessible to creatures. It is terrible even to gods.

39. In the central part of that rocky surface, the zone of which is thirty Yojanas, there is a terrible abode of the Fire-god where thousands of flames are thrown out.

40. There the Fire-god is always burning without any fuel. He blazes there perpetually.

41. That *Saṁvartaka* (the fire that ultimately destroys the world) blazes there eternally. As tutelary deity it receives its share in the sacrifice.

42. Between the two great mountains there is an auspicious pond of Devas (Deva-vāpī[1]?). There is a tract (of land) of ten Yojanas known as Mātuliṅga.

43. That great region is wholly splendid with ripe fruits of golden lustre and juice sweet as honey.

44. The holy hermitage of Bṛhaspati is there. It is resorted to by saints. It gives pleasure and fulfils desires.

45. There is the valley between two great mountains Kumuda and Añjana. It is called Kesara[2] and it covers several Yojanas and is abounding in Bakula trees.

46-47. The forest shines with spotted and brindled flowers blooming in every season. These flowers are two *Hastas* (cubits) in length and three *Hastas* in girth. They have the colours of

---

Kulyab two mountains Devāpi (Hoja Sartis) and Caya are the biggest salt cupolas and as such have sub-terranean gas. "Scientific investigation has shown that the Kulyab district is one of the biggest gas bearing districts in Tajikistan", States P. Luknitsky in *Soviet Tajikistan*, p. 209. The Āśrama of Bṛhaspati is probably modern Kulyab—AGP 93-95.

The subterranean gas explains the phenomenon in vv. 38-41 attributed to Saṁvartaka fire by the Purāṇa writer.

1. The text *Devā vāpi* is obscure. *Deva-vāpī* which also suits the metre and meaning, is a conjectural emendation.

2. Verses 45-48: This valley between mountains Kumuda and Añjana (i.e. modern Rangan Tau Range and the southern longitudinal spurs of the Hissar Range) was famous for the production of saffron (*Kesara*). In the Middle Ages the two areas—Shuman (mod. Dushambe) and Veshagird (mod. Foyzabad on the Illaq) in this valley were famous for production of saffron. M. Ali suggests that the Viṣṇu temple (in v. 48) is the Anzob peak of the Hissar Range—AGP 95.

lunar rays. They are full-blown. They are resonant with the humming sounds of inebriated bees. They are charming and fragrant with honey, ghee and pollen-powder.

48. The great resplendent temple of Viṣṇu, the leader of the Devas, is there. It is well-known in three worlds and respected by all.

49-50. In the middle of the excellent mountains Kṛṣṇa and Pāṇḍura, there is a single tract of smooth rocky land ninety Yojanas in length and thirty Yojanas in width.[1] It is devoid of trees and creepers. There walking is easy and pleasurable because the surface is nowhere uneven.

51. In the middle there is a charming grove of land-lotuses. It is decorated with full-blown lotuses of thousand petals of the size of huge umbrellas.

52-54. That extensive grove of land-lotuses is frequented by Yakṣas, Gandharvas, and resorted to by Siddhas and Cāraṇas. Hovering round these flowers, the inebriated honey bees hum and buzz. Kinnaras with voices of sweet and choked throats sing the glory of the flowers. There are white lotuses of charming appearance, fragrant hundred-petalled lilies and full blown flowers with blue petals.

55-57. In the midst of that lotus-grove, there is a Nyagrodha tree extending over an area of five Yojanas. It has stout trunk and various steps of ascent (several branches). There, the glorious moon-lustred lord Viṣṇu is worshipped by Yakṣas, Gandharvas and Vidyādharas. The lord has a thousand faces. He is the destroyer of the enemies of Devas. He wears blue clothes. His face resembles the full moon. He wears the garland of lotuses. He is blessed and ever victorious.

58. In that abode the immortal Viṣṇu himself is worshipped by Siddhas and Cāraṇas with different lotuses as presents.

59. That place is known in all the world as the home of Ananta (*Ananta-Sadas*). It is brightened with garlands of lotuses and other flowers suspended there-in.

60-61. In the central part of Sahasra-śikhara and Kumuda[2]

1. Verses 49-59 describes the basin of the lower Surkhan. The *Ananta-Sadas* (the home of Ananta) in v.59 is somewhere near modern Termez (AGP 95).
2. This peak is the snowcovered peak Bazzengi (16456 feet) at the meeting place of the Hissar and Zarafshan ranges (Kumuda and Sahasra-Śikhara)—AGP 96.

there is a peak, an arrow's range high, fifty Yojanas long and thirty Yojanas wide. It is resorted to by various birds. It abounds in tall trees all round, dripping with honey and bearing fruits as big as an elephant. They are sweet-smelling and most delicious.

62. The highly meritorious and well-known hermitage of Śukra of holy rites is there. It is resplendent and resorted to by multitudes of sages and gods.

63. Between mountains Śaṅkukūṭa and Vṛṣabha, there is a beautiful region of Parūṣaka (*Grewia Asiatica* ?) which extends to many Yojanas.

64. The ground is moistened with the fruits of Parūṣas fallen from their stalks. They are as big as Bilvas. They are auspicious, sweet and fragrant.

65. Kinnaras, serpents and Saints live in that region. They are elated by the juice of Parūṣaka. The Cāraṇas thereof are highly honoured.

66-67. In the middle of Kapiñjala and Nāga mountains, there is a beautiful region two hundred Yojanas long and a hundred Yojanas wide. It is decorated with various forests and endowed with various flowers and fruits. It is resorted to by Kinnaras and Uragas (serpents).

68-70. There are charming groves of grapes, Nāga-leaves, Kharjūras, blue Aśoka groves, tasty pomegranates, Akṣoṭaka (walnuts), Atasī (linseed), Tilaka, gingelly seeds and plantain groves. There are small plots of tasty Badarī fruits. They are auspicious regions brightened by rivers full of tasty, cool water.

71. The ground between the mountains Puṣpaka and Mahāmegha is a hundred Yojanas long and sixty Yojanas wide.

72. That is a level land like the palm of the hand, firm, thick and white. It is devoid of trees, hedges, creepers and grass.

73. It is devoid of animals too. It is a forest region, terrible and horripilating.

74. There are great lakes, great trees, great forests all round.

75. This region of lakes and forests is the abode of Prajāpati. There is no end to the number of minor lakes there.

76. The lakes, chasms, forests and regions are of various sizes—ten, twelve, seven, eight, twenty or thirty Yojanas.

77. Some of them are dark and terrible. The caves of the mountains are never touched by the rays of the sun. They are always cold and inaccessible.

78. O Excellent Brāhmaṇas, there are lakes with hot water within the mountains, hundreds and thousands in number.

CHAPTER THIRTYNINE

Abodes of Devas

Sūta said :

1. Henceforth I shall tell you about the excellent abodes of Devas situated on different mountains.

2-10. The forest of sport of Mahendra is on the great mountain Śītānta. The forest is endowed with all desirable qualities. The mountain contains many belly-like caves, which are the abodes (of Devas). The mountain is very extensive with hundreds of variegated minerals and jewel mines. It is the abode of animals of good qualities. Its ridges and slopes are laden with flowers where the bees hum and buzz. It is decorated with the assemblage of gold pieces veriegated with valuable jewels. The slopes hum with the buzzing sound of bees. There are corals mixed with gold. The ridges are covered with flowers where the bees hum. There are hanging creepers of various colours. Hundreds of minerals are spread over the peaks and precipices. Gems of different colours along with flowers decorate the mountain. There are fountains and springs of pure and tasty water. It is embellished with many hedges abounding in flowers. It is beautified with streamlets wherein flowery rafts float. The inner crevasses of the mountain are frequented by Kinnaras. There are many caves and cavities frequented by Yakṣas and Gandharvas. Some of them are comfortably resorted to and some are dense and impassable. Many animals frequent it. Good potable water is abundant. The mountain is embellished with trees bearing various fruits and flowers.

11. The great Pārijāta forest of the king of Devas is also there. It is well—known in the three worlds and is praised in song as can be ascertained from reports.

12. By means of the excessively fragrant and charming flowers blazing like the midday sun, the excellent mountain is illuminated as it were all around.

13. The wind blowing from that forest wafts the fragrance of Pārijāta flowers full hundred Yojanas.

14-15. The tanks therein are adorned with blue lotuses resembling *lapis lazuli* with golden and diamond-like filaments, possessed of fragrance and resonant with the buzzing of bees. There are full-blown, hundred-petalled, charming, large-leafed red lotuses also.

16. Thousands of fishes shine within the waters with unwinking eyes and decorated with golden gems.

17. With tortoises richly embellished with gold and occupying many positions, the water gets splashed all round and shines well.

18-19. That beautiful forest of the intelligent thousand-eyed Indra is beautified by birds of different colours and of gem-like hairs emerging out of their bodies. The birds have gemset beaks decorated with flowers of good colours; They are always elated while they fly all around chirping sweet attractive sounds.

20. Hence that forest of sport has become a resort of perpetual pleasure, by the sounds of the elated bees and the chirpings of the birds.

21-22. The forest is full of monkeys of variegated colour and gem-like hairs. It abounds in the animals of various types, colours and shapes. The mountains have glorious golden sides set with gems and pearls. Their peaks too are set in gems.

23. The tender creepers and the Pārijāta trees, when gently shaken by the mild wind, make a shower of flowers.

24. O Brāhmaṇas, when gemset couches and seats are laid all round the playing grounds, the forest looks very splendid. There the sun is neither hot nor cold. He is of equable nature. The climate is always temperate.

25. The wind blowing in the months of spring is rendered fragrant by various flowers and produces excessive elation. It

dispels fatigue caused by exertion and gives pleasure by its mere contact.

26-27. In that splendid forest of Indra Devas, Dānavas, Pannagas, Yakṣas, Rākṣasas, Guhyakas, Gandharvas of unmeasured splendour, Vidyādharas, Siddhas and Kinnaras are joyous. Groups of Apsaras-s too are engaged in sports.

28. On the eastern side of that royal mountain is the lordly mountain of Kumuñja with many streams and caves.

29. On the summit abounding in variegated minerals, there are eight big cities of noble-souled Dānavas.

30. The abode of Rākṣasas crowded with men and women is situated on the mountain Vajraka with many peaks and caves.

31. These terrible Rākṣasas known as Nīlakas can assume forms as they please. They are endowed with great strength and exploit. They live there for ever.

32. On the great mountain Mahānīla, there are fifteen famous cities of the horse-faced Kinnaras.

33. Devasena, strong as Indra, is a powerful ruler. There the fifteen Kinnara kings are very haughty.

34. The great mountain is decorated with the enclosed settlements which have golden flanks mostly and which possess people of different races.

35. Hundreds of great Uragas (serpents) live there under the control of Garuḍas. They are terrible, fiery and inaccessible and of venomous sight.

36. In the great mountain Sunāga, there are thousands of abodes of Daityas. These consist of mansions and palaces with huge ramparts and archways.

37. On the great mountain Veṇumanta, there are three cities of Vidyādharas, fifty Yojanas long and thirty Yojanas in breadth.

38. The rulers of the Vidyādharas, there, as valorous as Indra, are Ulūka, Romaśa and Mahānetra.

39-40. On the top of the great peak Vaikaṅka with caves and rivulets within, there lives Sugrīva, the fierce and powerful, the unthwartable enemy of serpents and the son of Garuḍa with the great speed of the wind. This peak is of variegated colours due to jewels and minerals.

41. The whole of that mountain is teeming with birds which destroy serpents. They are of huge size, valorous and powerful.

42. Śiva, the Lord of Yogins and Bhūtas, whose emblem is the Bull, lives on the mountain Karañja.

43. All round the ridges and slopes are scattered the Bhūtas, the unassailable Pramathas, with diverse dresses and features.

44. They say that the eight illustrious abodes of the eight Vasus, the noble souls of unmeasured power, are situated on the mountain Vasudhāra.

45. The seven holy hermitages of the seven sages and the abodes of the Siddhas are on the mountain Ratnadhātu.

46. The abode of the four-faced lord, the great Prajāpati (Brahmā) is on the excellent mountain Hemaśṛṅga. It is revered by all living beings.

47. On mountain Gajaśaila, holy lord Rudras rejoice for ever along with (the groups of) Bhūtas. They are respected by all living beings.

48-49. The constructed abodes of Ādityas, Vasus and Rudras of unlimited splendour are on the great mountain Sumegha which resembles a cloud and is richly endowed with minerals. The mountain is beautified with many caves, bunds and hedges. The charming mansions of the Aśvin gods too are there.

50. The abodes of Devas have been established by Siddhas on the excellent mountain. Yakṣas, Gandharvas and Kinnaras, are engaged in worship there for ever.

51. On the excellent mountain Hemakakṣa is the prosperous Gandharva city Aśītyā as refulgent as the celestial Amarāvatī. It has great ramparts and archways.

52. The Siddhas are known as *Apattanas* (city-less). Gandharvas are of fighting nature. Their ruler is Kapiñjala, the king of kings.

53. The abodes of Rākṣasas are on Anala. Dānavas live on Pañcakūṭa. They are inimical to Devas. They are powerful and valorous.

54. On the Śataśṛṅga mountain are the hundred cities of Yakṣas of unmeasured valour. The excellent city of Takṣaka, son of Kadru, is on the Tāmrābha mountain.

55. The great mansion of Guha, fond of residing in a cave

is on the excellent mountain Viśākha, auspicious with various bunds and caves.

56. There is the city of noble Sunābha, son of Garuḍa on the mountain Śvetodara, embellished with great mansions.

57. There is a mansion embellished with palaces on the excellent mountain Piśācaka. That is the great abode of Kubera, frequented by Yakṣas and Gandharvas.

58. Lord Hari is revered by all living beings on Harikūṭa. By the influence of the lord, this mountain shines with great refulgence.

59. The abodes of Kinnaras are on the mountain Kumuda. The Nāgas (and their tribe) live on the Añjana mountain. The cities of Gandharvas, with many mansions, are on the mountain Kṛṣṇa.

60. On the beautifully peaked Pāṇḍura, with ramparts and archways the city of Vidyādharas is situated. It has a series of big houses.

61. On the mountain Sahasra-śikhara, there are thousand cities of Daityas of fierce activities, wearing gold necklaces.

62. There are residences of Pannagas (serpents) on the Mukuṭa mountain and multitudes of sages always live happily on Puṣpaka mount.

63. On the excellent mountain Supakṣa, there are four mansions of Vaivasvata (Yama), Soma, Vāyu and the king of serpents.

64. In their respective places, their respective gods are highly worshipped by Gandharvas, Kinnaras, Yakṣas, Nāgas (serpents) and excellent Vidyādharas and Siddhas.

CHAPTER FORTY

Boundary and the Limits of Mount Devakūṭa

Sūta said :

1-2. Know that the place of birth of the intelligent Suparṇa (Garuḍa), son of Vinatā, extends to a hundred Yojanas

all round. It is embellished with a great mansion on the extensive peak of the excellent boundary-mountain Devakūṭa.

3. (It is resorted to) by many multitudes of swift, valorous big birds. They are of perfect vigour, enemies and suppressors of serpents.

4. There is the first mansion of the noble king of birds who has the velocity of the wind and residence in Śālmalī Dvīpa.

5-7. On the seven southern peaks of its charming hill, there are seven cities of Gandharvas where men and women live. They are forty Yojanas in length and thirty Yojanas in breadth. The golden ramparts and archways rise up. They are built by Devas and beautified with a series of great mansions. They resemble clouds at dusk. The peaks are of variegated shapes and colours. They are prosperous.

8. There are very powerful and valorous Āgneya Gandharvas. They are the brilliant followers of Kubera. These are their excellent mansions.

9-10. On the northern peaks of the lofty mountain Bhuvana, there is a city teeming with serpents. It is full of mansions and palaces and is beautified with gardens and parks. It has great ramparts and archways. The interior of the parks is rendered pleasant by the sound of hundreds of musical instruments.

11. Know that there is on the mount Devakūṭa the city of Saiṁhikeyas, the enemies of gods. It is unassailable by enemies. Its outer wall measures thirty Yojanas. It is frequented by Siddhas and divine sages.

12-15. O Brāhmaṇa, there on the charming ridge of Devakūṭa is founded the invincible and inaccessible city of the demons known as Kālakeyas. It looks like a cluster of clouds. It is well-known as Sunāsa. It is on the next boundary mountain. It has a series of great mansions of different colours. It is decorated in various ways with gold and precious stones. Its streets are broad. It is full of joy, auspiciousness and teeming with men and women. Its ramparts and archways are very high. The city is hundred Yojanas in length and sixty Yojanas in breadth.

16-17. On the southern peak of the same mountain, there is the jolly big city of Autkaca Rākṣasas. They are joyful, well-nourished, proud and can assume any form at will. The city is

sixty-two Yojanas in length and twenty Yojanas in breadth. Its ramparts and archways are made of gold.

18-20. On the central peak of the mountain Devakūṭa, there is the famous resplendent temple (abode) of the noble-souled, three-eyed god Mahādeva, known in all the worlds as Bhūtavaṭa. It is the resort of various groups of *Bhūtas* (goblins). It is built of smooth and splendid pieces of gold and precious stones. There are trees of hundreds and thousands of branches with many off-shoots and overgrowths. The leaves are very smooth and splendid. There is a perpetual thick shade. The trees have their roots deep into the earth bearing vast trunks. The place is a circular zone extending to ten Yojanas.

21-24. The city is full of Bhūtas (people) fierce, valorous, and with terrible faces like those of boars, elephants, lions, bears, mules, vultures, owls, rams, goats and camels. They are hideous and stout with long hairs, both on the heads and bodies. They have various complexions and features. They congregate into groups and worship the lord of Bhūtas (Śiva) by playing drums, *Jharjhara*, *Bherī*, *Paṭaha*, *Ḍiṇḍima*, *Gomukha* and conches.

25-26. With the jingling sounds of instruments and high pitched vocal music, the leading Gaṇas are hectically engaged in worship. The Pramathas, the enemy of the Tripuras too, are engaged in sports. Here lord Śiva, the benefactor of the worlds is worshipped by Siddhas, Devas, sages, Gandharvas, Yakṣas and Nāgas.

CHAPTER FORTYONE

Description of Kailāsa[1]

Sūta said:

1. Kailāsa is the abode of the devotees of the lord who are of meritorious souls. It has isolated, charming summits. It is full of vegetation. It has the lustre of the conch.

1. This is a poetic description of the peak near Lake Mānasa and not of the trans-Himalayan Kailasa range. The climatic conditions of those days seem favourable for vegetation and human habitation.

2-4. In the central ridge, as beautiful as Kunda flower, there is the invincible city of the noble-souled Kubera,[1] the presiding deity of wealth. It is a hundred Yojanas in length and fifty Yojanas in breadth. It is beautified with a series of big mansions, set in diverse ways in gold and silver. It is very extensive, affluent and joyful.

5. There is a charming assembly-hall in the centre, embellished with variegated pieces of gold. It is known as *Vipulā* because it abounds in archways and pillars.

6. The aerial chariot Puṣpaka, decorated in jewels, is there. It is very charming and endowed with all desirable qualities.

7. As quick as the mind, it can reach any desired goal. It is decorated with clusters of gold pieces. It is the vehicle of Kubera, king of Yakṣas.

8. Lord Kubera the companion of Mahādeva lives there. He is the king of Yakṣas revered and honoured by all living beings.

9. Kubera, excellent among Devas, lives there along with Apsaras-s, Yakṣas, Gandharvas, Siddhas and Cāraṇas.

10-11. Here the Lord of Wealth has eight treasures:[2] Padma, Mahāpadma, Makara, Kacchapa, Kumuda, Śaṅkha, Nīla and Nandana. These being inexhaustible, divine great Treasures hoarding jewels are kept in the assembly-hall.

12. Similarly this mount Kailāsa is the abode of Indra, Agni, Yama, Devas and Apsaras-s where Kubera, the Lord of Yakṣas, is the ruler.

13. The attendants of Devas first pay their respects to the king of Yakṣas and then proceed to their respective lords.

14-17. The great and charming water-reservoir 'Mandākinī'[3] is there. It has abundance of water. Its embankment has steps plated with gold and studded with gems. There are

---

1. This city is Alakā immortalised by Kālidāsa in the *Meghadūta*. The city was either on or near the Kailāsa peak.

2. This list agrees with that in Mt. Purāṇa (SKD. 982 b). But normally nine treasures of Kubera are enumerated (MW 548 C). *Kharva* from the list in MW is not mentioned here. The geographer M. Ali regards these 'Treasure-houses' as the minor peaks of Kailāsa (AGP 57).

3. Verses 14-18 show the author's familarity with this topography.

golden lotuses with sweet smell, touch etc., great blue lotuses with leaves and petals as blue as *lapis lazuli*. The reservoir is beautified with lilies and lotuses of great fragrance. It appears splendid with the womenfolk of Yakṣas, Gandharvas and Apsaras-s. The waters of the reservoir are used by Devas, Dānavas, Gandharvas, Yakṣas, Rākṣasas and Pannagas (serpents).

18. Then, there are excellent rivers, the Nandā and the Alakanandā. These rivers are endowed with excellent qualities and are used by celestial sages.

19-20. On the eastern peak of this lordly mountain,[1] there are ten famous cities of Gandharvas endowed with prosperity. They are one thousand Yojanas in length and thirty Yojanas in breadth. They are decorated with a series of great mansions.

21. There are ten Gandharva kings as valorous as the blazing fires. They are named as Subāhu, Harikeśa, Citrasena, Jara and others.

22-23. On the western peak of Kailāsa, as lustrous as the Kunda flower, is the abode of each of the Yakṣas, eight Yojanas in length and forty in breadth. The place is resorted to by Siddhas and celestial sages. It abounds in various minerals and has long rows of lofty mansions.

24. There are thirty rich and flourishing abodes of Mahāyakṣas that are joyous and prosperous all round.

25. Thirty prosperous kings of Yakṣas (e.g.) Mahāmāli, Sunetra, Maṇivara and others rule over there.

26. Thus have I mentioned Yakṣas as lustrous as Vāyu and Agni, whose ruler is the prosperous lord Kubera.

27-28. South of Himavat, stretching from the eastern to the western sea,[2] hundreds of cities of Kinnaras are established on the ridges abounding in hedges, bushes, fountains, caves and precipices.

---

1. Verses 19-25: It appears that in those days people were fond of hills. The eastern region of Kailāsa still has a lot of sunshine, more fertile soil than its western region (AGP 57 58).

2. Verse 27 gives a poetic yet accurate information about the Himālayan region, viz. location of the Himālaya to the south of the Kailāsa range, its extension from sea to sea, having a large number of peaks, tracts and lower cultural level of inhabitants, though a great number of hermitages were there (AGP 58).

29. In the bosom of the lord of mountains with many peaks, men and women rejoice. The place is full of delighted and well-nourished people.

30. There are a hundred kings for these bright and powerful people. They are Druma, Sugrīvasainya, Bhagadatta and others.

31. It was here that the marriage of Rudra with the great goddess Umā took place. It was here that she, the great goddess, performed penance.

32. It was here that Rudra sported as a hunter. It was from here that the couple surveyed Jambūdvīpa.

33. The play-grounds of Rudra abounding in flowers of manifold colours and fruits of various shapes and sizes are here. These, with the different groups of living beings, are delightful.

34. It is the place where the beautiful Kinnara maidens, the slender-bellied, bright-eyed, joyous dwellers of the mountain caves sport about.

35. Similarly it is here that the long-eyed Yakṣas, groups of Apsaras-s and Gandharvas of charming physique move about with pleasure.

36. The famous garden of Umā is also there. It was here that Śiva assumed the form of half-man and half-woman.

37. Śaravaṇa where the six-faced Kārttikeya was born and whence enthusiastically he started to the Krauñca forest, is also there.

38. Here itself is the chariot of Kārttikeya with lions yoked, which has a flagstaff and banners, and which sparkles with clusters of tinkling bells.

39. It was here on the ridge of the Krauñca mountain where there are flower bushes of various colours, that Skanda, the destroyer of foes of Devas discharged his spear (*śakti*).

40. It was here that Guha, brilliant as the twelve suns, the enemy of Daityas, was crowned as the commander-in-chief of the army by the excellent Devas including Indra and Viṣṇu.

41. O Brāhmaṇas, these and other spots and abodes associated with Kumāra and abounding in living beings are also there.

42. Similarly, on the auspicious summit of Himavat abounding in living beings, there is a play-ground called Pāṇḍu-śilā, of the destroyer of Krauñca.

43. On its beautiful eastern ridge is the residence of Siddhas. It is known as Kalāpagrāma.

44-47. There are hundreds and thousands of hermitages of the sages Mṛkaṇḍa, Vasiṣṭha, Bharata, Nala, Viśvāmitra, Uddālaka and others, of severe penance and purified souls, on the mountain Himavat. This excellent mountain, the abode of many Siddhas, is decorated by their temples and holy spots. Yakṣas and Gandharvas move about here and there. Several groups of Mlecchas too live there. It abounds in mines of jewels. It is resorted to by different animals. It is the source of origin of thousands of rivers.

48. O Brāhmaṇas, now listen to the special features of the western lofty mountain Niṣadha[1], as it is being narrated wholly and precisely.

49. On the extensive central summit embellished with gold and minerals is the brightly illuminated abode of Viṣṇu. It is resorted to by multitudes of Siddhas, sages, Gandharvas and crowds of Yakṣas, Apsaras-s.

50. There the great lord, the yellow-robed Viṣṇu, the bestower of boons, the eternal maker of the worlds, is served by Siddhas.

51-54. On its interior peak embellished with different minerals, on the ridge of the Niṣadha mountain where the rocky surface is smooth and charming, is the delightful city of Rākṣasas (called) Ulaṅghis. The city extends to thirty Yojanas. There are series of gardens there. The city cannot be thwarted by enemies. It is full of (Rākṣasas) as cruel as poisonous snakes.

The palaces have golden turrets and pinnacles. The archways are made of molten gold. There are hundreds of lofty buildings with sloping roofs, in the main streets and thorough-fares.

The mansions and palaces (in it) are incomparable. They are embellished with pieces of molten gold. It is very extensive and always joyous.

1. The southern ridge of the Hindukush which merged into Northern Karakorum and the Kunlun (AGP 58-59).

55. South of the same mountain with many abodes of Daityas, there is an inaccessible city within the (belly of) the mountain, with only a cave as the main entrance.

56. Similarly, on the western peak, on a lofty rock of Pārijāta, there are flourishing cities of Devas, Dānavas and Nāgas.

57. On the great ridge of the mountain, there is the rock called Somaśilā where the moon descends on Parvan days.

58. The sages, Kinnaras and Gandharvas worship the glorious lord of stars, dispeller of darkness, the praiseworthy (uncensured) lord, the moon.

59. North of the same mountain, there is the spot known as Brahmapārśva. It is the abode of Brahmā, lord of Devas, It is well-known in heaven.

60. Siddhas, Yakṣas, Gandharvas and Dānavas worship the self-born lord with sacrifices, worships and prostrations.

61. Similarly, the abode of the Fire-god is famous in all the worlds. There the embodied god Fire is worshipped by Siddhas and Cāraṇas.

62. Similarly, on the excellent mountain Triśṛṅga, to the north, is the city Hemacarita, well-known in the three worlds. This mountain is frequented by sages and Siddhas. It is the abode of different living beings.

63. There are three abodes of the three chief deities. O Brāhmaṇas, the abode of Nārāyaṇa is on the eastern peak, that of Brahmā is in the middle and that of Śiva is on the west.

64. These mighty lords of Devas, worthy of worship, are revered by Daityas, Dānavas, Gandharvas, Yakṣas, Rākṣasas and Nāgas.

65. Here and there, on the excellent mountain Triśṛṇga and adjoining places, are the beautiful cities of Yakṣas, Gandharvas and Nāgas.

66-67. Similarly, to the north, on the divine mountain Jārudhi, which abounds in peaks and which is resorted to by Siddhas and sages, are the cities of Yakṣas, Kinnaras, Gandharvas, Nāgas, Rākṣasas and Daityas in hundreds and thouands.

68-72. On the central summit of that mountain resorted to by Siddhas, Devas and sages, embellished by jewels and min-

erals, there is a circular zone of thirty Yojanas. It looks splendid with expanses of full-blown lotuses, lilies, *Saugandhika* grass (or white water-lilies), night lotuses (opening at moon-rise). It is resounded with the chirping of and is beautified by birds. It is the haunt of various animals, beasts and birds. It is crowded with swans and ducks and is resorted to by inebriated bees. The place abounds in sweet, pure water used by Siddhas. There is a sacred lake called Ānandajala.

73. The fierce lord of Nāgas, invincible Caṇḍa, with a hundred heads, the blessed one marked by Viṣṇu's discus, resides here. There eight wonderful mountains are known as Devaparvatas.

74-77. Thus, the earth is full of cities, abodes, excellent and sacred lakes of holy waters, silver and jewel mountains having the lustre of gems, mountains of yellow orpiment, vermilion and gold, vast expanses of pure red arsenic shining in their red hue, and mountains of precious stones with minerals of variegated colours. There are very extensive mountains with the rivers, caves, ridges and precipices of variegated colours and many shapes.

78-79. These mountains are the abodes of Daityas, Rākṣasas, saints, Kinnaras, serpents, Gandharvas of wonderful features, Siddhas, Cāraṇas. These are resorted to by Gandharvas and divine damsels. They are extensive and are inhabited by meritorious persons. They appear like filaments of lotuses.

80. The circle of mountains of the Meru (region) is known as the Siddhaloka. It has various resorts for shelter. Meritorious persons frequent the place.

81. The images of Siddhas of no fierce activities, stand in the middle. That place (also) is known as heaven. Its order is thus stated.

82-83. This earth is declared as having four Dvīpas. It is inhabited by people of all castes, statures, complexions and powers. They partake of different kinds of food and beverages. They wear different sorts of dress and ornaments. They have different emotional reactions.

84-85. The four big continents inhabited by many castes are known as Bhadra, Bhārata, Western Ketumāla (i.e. Ketumāla to the western side) and the Northern Kuru. They are the abodes of meritorious people. O Brāhmaṇa, this earth, in the shape of a lotus, and divided into four continents and many sub-continents, has thus been described by me.

86. This wide earth along with the interspersed continents, mountains, forests, and groves is called *Padmā* (lotus-shaped). It is very extensive.

87-89. The worlds of Brahmā, Devas, Asuras and human beings are three. That which is heated by the moon and the sun is known as the world (the earth). It has the qualities of smell, colour, taste, sound and touch. This lotus-shaped universe is known as Lotus in the Vedas. This is the accepted order in the Purāṇas as well.

CHAPTER FORTYTWO

The Divine Rivers

Sūta said :

1. The divine rivers of holy waters have sprung from excellent lakes.[1] These have great volume of waters. Listen to them in due order.

2. What is called the moon (Soma) of the ocean of the firmament, the support of all living beings, is the reservoir of nectar for Devas.

---

1. Purāṇa writers believed in the following notions about river systems in general :

1. A river normally originates from a lake either overground or underground and is associated with a mountain.
2. A river can penetrate through sub-terranean channels, mountain ranges and can flow in more than one current if intervened by ridges.
3. A river along with tributaries is treated as one single river.

3. The celestial river of sacred waters springs from it (the reservoir or nectar). That river of clear transparent water flows through the sky through the seventh path of the wind.[1]

4. It turns back on reaching the mass of brilliance. It is resorted to by luminary bodies. It extends to the full length of the sky, with thousands of crores of stars.

5. While the lordly elephant of lord Indra moves about in the firmament, he sportively agitates the water within it.

6. When Siddhas pass through the sky in their aerial chariots (great many in number), they have a sip in the sacred and healing water of this river.

7. Just as the sun revolves everyday, so this river urged by the wind, flows through various places.

8. It extends to eighty-four Yojanas all round. It circumambulates the Meru with great velocity.

9. The water currents are split by the fiery wind and the river falls upon the four northern peaks of Meru.

10. After emerging on the excellent sides of ridges of these peaks of Meru, the waters, divided into four, flow thus.

11. After flowing through the supportless firmament for sixty thousand Yojanas, the glorious river falls through the four sides of Meru.[2]

12. This splendid, sacred river flowing through the four bases (feet) of Meru, falls again on the eastern Mandara.

13-15. The eastern branch of the river flows over the Mandara which is the abode of Devas and all the groups of Siddhas, which has many rivulets, caves, golden and variegated lands, ridges. It flows with the crystal clear water that subdues the arrogance and valour of the side-bunds. It flows round the beautiful Caitraratha overflowing the path. This river of the firmament then enters the excellent lake Aruṇoda (Kara Kul, NE Pamirs).

---

1. Verses 3-11: This poetic synthesis of the heavenly Gaṅgā (Galaxy) as the source of glaciers and rivers of Asia is repeated in other Purāṇas like Bd. P., Mt. P.

2. Though the river system described in the remaining part of the chapter is the traditional knowledge of the Purāṇa writers, it was to a great extent correct and reliable (vide AGP. Ch. iv 'The river system of Purāṇas').

16. After coming out from Aruṇoda, the gently-flowing river falls on the mountain Śītānta (Kashghar range) abounding in beautiful fountains. This mountain is the abode of (multitudes) of Siddhas.

17. The sacred and excellent river is called Sītā. Being held within the various groves and bushes, it is further divided into several branches.

18. From the peek of Śītānta,[1] it falls on the mountain Sukuñja.[1] From that mountain, it falls on the the mountain Sumañjasa.[1]

19. Therefrom it falls on the mount Mālyavān[2] and comes to Vaikaṅka and from Vaikaṅka it passes to Maṇiparvata and then falls on the mountain Ṛṣabha full of caves.

20. Piercing through thousands of mountains thus, the river falls on the mountain Jaṭhara resorted to by Siddhas.

21. From there the river again falls on the Devakūṭa mountain, the lower part of which extends upto the sea. In this way, the river gradually reaches the plains.

22-24. Thus flooding through thousands of valleys, hundreds of mountains, strange forests, a variety of lakes, the river, creating eddies in its expanses and joined by thousands of tributaries, flows over the great eastern continent[3] Bhadrāśva and falls into the eastern sea.

25-26. The river (Alakanandā) that flows over Gandhamādana, the lord of mountains in the south, has many waterfalls and splashes waves and ripples in various ways. It then irrigates the Nandana park, the pleasant resort of Devas. This blessed river then circumambulates the forests of Gandhamādana.

27. It is known in the worlds as the Alakanandā. It enters the northern lake Mānasa which is as clear as the minds of Devas.

28. From the Mānasa lake, the river flows to the beautiful Triśikhara, the lord of mountains. From the summit of the mountain Trikūṭa, it falls on the peak of Kaliṅga (?) mountain.

---

1. Offshoots of Tien Shan mountains.
2. Modern Mustagh Ata.
3. The Hwang Ho of China was believed to be the eastern extension of the Sītā.

29-30. Falling from the peak of Kaliṅga, it flows on to the mountain Rucaka. From there it flows to Niṣadha and then to Tāmrābha. Falling from the peak of Tāmrābha, it flows to mount Śvetodara, thence to the lordly mountain Sumūla and then to the mountain Vasudhāra.

31. From there it flows to Hemakūṭa and thence to Devaśṛṅga, thereafter it flows to Mahāśaila and then to Piśācaka mountain.

32. From the excellent mountain Piśācaka, it flows to Pañcakūṭa and from Pañcakūṭa to Kailāsa, the mountain residence of Devas.

33. Whirling about in its bowels of caves and ridges, it falls on the excellent mountain Himavat.

34-35. Piercing through thousands of mountains thus, it flows quickly irrigating hundreds of land surfaces. Then it flows through thousands of forests and hundreds of caves and falls into the southern sea.

36-37. This river is one Yojana in breadth; it is hidden in the bowels of the peaks of mountain. It is held on head by noble-souled Śaṅkara, lord of Devas. It is sanctifying, O leading Brāhmaṇa. It quells even terrible sins. By virtue of the contact with the body of lord Śaṅkara, the great river has its waters rendered doubly sanctimonious in all the worlds.

38-40. From all round that mountain Himavat, through its many openings, thousands of rivers spring forth. They are known by other names. The river Gaṅgā is resorted to by Siddhas and its waters are drunk by Rudras, Sādhyas, Anilas and Ādityas. Blessed are the lands through which this great and reputed river flows.

41. Now I shall describe the western side of Meru mountain which is holy and contains several mines of precious stones and which is resorted to by pious persons.

42-45. Meru, the lord of mountains, is very massive with large bowels and caves. Its central region is embellished with table-lands, ridges and bushy growths. The water of this river is used by Devas and the river is held by the three-eyed deity. Urged by the wind, it flows far and wide, and whirls again like a creeper. It falls from the peak of Meru. Its water is used by many living beings. It is pure like the spotless silk and is

splashed extensively. This river of the firmament resorted to by Siddhas and Cāraṇas on its peak, circumambulates the mountain and goes ahead.

46-47. This blessed river of many flowers and fruits irrigates the great forests of Devabhrāja, Mahābhrāja and Vaibhrāja. Decorated by various forests and circumambulating the mountain, it enters the western lake of pure waters, Sitoda.

48-49. From Sitoda is goes to mount Supakṣa. Again this river of holy clear water which is used by divine sages, falls from the peak of Supakṣa. Thence this river of blessed waters falls on the Śikhi mountain.

50-53. (The river flows from one mountain to another:)

Thereafter the river flows from mountain Śikhi to mount Kaṅka, thence to Vaidūrya, then to mount Kapila and thence to Gandhamādana. From that excellent mountain it flows to Piñjara, the splendid mountain; from Piñjara it flows to Sarasa and from there it flows to Kumudācala mountain.

It flows to the mountains Madhumān, Jana, Mukuṭa. From the peak of Mukuṭa, it flows to the great mountain Kṛṣṇa, from Kṛṣṇa it flows to the great mountain Śveta, served by (other) great mountains. From Śveta it ultimately comes down to thousand-peaked Śailendra, the lord of mountains.

54. With its waters augmented by tributaries, this auspicious river denudes thousands of mountains. It then flows at full speed and falls on the great mountain Pāriyātra.

55-57. It glides among fountains, streams, caves and ridges. With numerous waves, it wanders through its many bowels. Its current is impeded by several rocks and boulders accidentally falling therein and its waters are split in various ways. It descends on the plains (the earth). The blessed river then irrigates the great continent Ketumāla, populated by Mlecchа tribes, and falls into the western sea.

58-60. The great river flows through the supportless auspicious firmament for a distance of sixty thousand Yojanas, throwing cascades of water like a garland being scattered. It falls from the peak of Meru, its waters being urged by the wind. Being cast in the sky, it takes a curved (circle-like body). It falls at the foot of Meru on the northern mountain Supārśva which

is inhabited by living beings and whose flanks are variegated due to brilliant colours.

61-64. Then it drops from the ridges of the peaks resorted to by Devas and sages, with its waters scattered by flowery rafts. The blessed river irrigates and circumambulates the forest of the Sun-god which is the sylvan place of origin of variegated jewels. It then falls into the sacred lake Mahābhadra resorted to by blessed people. The beneficent white river is called Bhadrasomā. It flows rapidly and its shores are far apart. The great and holy river Mahābhadrā flows thereafter.

65. Flowing rapidly with many rivulets flowing into it, and dashing against many bunds, the river falls on the ridges of Śaṅkhakūṭa.

66. Falling down the ridges of Śaṅkhakūṭa, it proceeds to Vṛṣa Parvata. From Vṛṣa Parvata, it flows then to Vatsagiri and then to Nāgaśaila.

67-71. From Nāgaśaila, it reaches the excellent mountain Nīla, the Varṣa mountain. From Nīla, it flows to Kapiñjala, and then the river flows to Indranīla, thereafter it flows to Mahānīla, and Hemaśṛṅga. From Hemaśṛṅga it flows to Śveta, and from Śveta to Sunāga. From Sunāga, it flows to Śataśṛṅga. Then the great river flows from Śataśṛṅga to the flower-carpeted Puṣkara. From Puṣkara to Dvirāja, the great mountain of great strength (*Sumahābala*). From there, it flows to Varāha Parvata and the mountain Mayūra. From the mountain Mayūra the rapid river flows to Ekaśikhara bedecked with caves and crevasses, and then to the peak of the Jārudhi mountain.

72. After piercing (forcing its way) through thousands of mountains thus, the great river reaches Triśṛṅga, the boundary mountain with many peaks.

73-74. Falling from the ridges of Triśṛṅga inhabited by blessed people this river of pure water falls off the ridges of Meru, and urged by the wind flows to the excellent mountain Viruddha. After irrigating the mountain the river flows into the western ocean.

75-77. On the wonderful great foot of Meru inhabited by living beings, on the northern mountain Supārśva whose sides are the sources of gold, the river falls into the bowels of caves,

into various divisions and descends to the earth with wonderful flowery rafts. Irrigating the Northern Kuru region, the delightful auspicious river runs through the middle of the continent and flows into the northern ocean.

78. In this way the four great rivers of pure waters, falling down the ridges of great mountains, flow into the four directions.

79. Thus the earth of vast expanse I have almost explained to you. It is surrounded on all sides by Meru and other mountains.

80. The earth has four great continents, four forests of sports, four great trees as the four land-marks and four excellent lakes.

81. It has four great mountains and has four serpents for support, eight superior mountains and eight inferior.

CHAPTER FORTYTHREE

Description of Bhadrāśva

Sūta said:

1-3. Near Gandhamādana there is a large and bulky boulder above, thirty-four thousand Yojanas long, and thirty-two thousand Yojanas wide, east to west. The residents of this area perform auspicious rites. They are well-known as Ketumālas. The men are black in complexion. They are vigorous and powerful. The women have the lustrous complexion of the petals of a lotus. All of them have pleasing appearances.

4. There is a great divine Panasa (Jack-fruit) tree there. It has six tastes. It is the son of Brahmā, capable of moving about according to its pleasure. It has the speed of mind. It is veritable Īśvara himself. Imbibing its juice, the people there live for ten thousand years.

5. On the eastern side of Mālyavat, there is another big boulder. In length and width, it is like the former one.

6. The people of the area are called Bhadrāśvas. They remain always joyous in mind. There is a splendid forest of huge trees called *Kālāmra* (black mangoes).

7. The men are fair-complexioned, vigorous and powerful. The women are charming and comely in appearance, with the hue and lustre of lilies.

8. They have the complexion and lustre of the moon and their faces resemble the full moon. Their bodies are as cool as the moon. They have the fragrance of lotuses.

9. Their span of life is ten thousand years. They are free from ailments. Imbibing the juice of the black mangoes, they enjoy perpetual youth.

The sages said :

10. The magnitude, lustre and the span of life of the people of all the four great continents have been explained precisely and succinctly, but not in detail.

Sūta said :

11. O Sages of enhancing reputation ! The characteristics of the people of Bhadrāśva mentioned by me are what have been cited by earlier Siddhas. Now listen to them in detail.

12-13. I shall narrate fully and in detail what I have seen and heard, of the five principal mountain ranges, countries and rivers which surround the famous Devakūṭa mountain.

14. The five principal mountains are Śaivāla, Varṇamālāgra, the excellent mountain Korañja, Śvetavarṇa and Nīla.

15. There are hundreds, thousands and crores of small mountains besides, which are offshoots of these five ranges.

16. (In and near these mountains) there are many lands and countries where a great variety of people live, which abound in various types of animals and which are looked after by many kings.

17. The lands are occupied by prosperous leading men of well-known names and valour. They are splendid and worthy of being glorified.

18. Many kingdoms are established between the mountains in the lands whether plain or rugged and uneven. Their names are as follows :

19-23. Sumaṅgalas, Śuddhas, Candrakāntas, Sunandanas, Vrajakas, Nīlaśaileyas, Sauvīras, Vijayasthalas, Mahāsthalas,

Sukāmas, Mahākeśas, Sumūrdhajas, Vātaraṁhas, Sopasaṅgas, Parivāyas, Parācakas, Saṁbhavaktras, Mahānetras, Śaivālas, Stanapas, Kumudas, Śākamuṇḍas, Uraḥsaṁkīrṇas, Bhaumakas, Sodakas, Vatsakas, Vārāhas, Hāravāmakas, Śaṅkhas, Bhāvisandras, Uttaras, Haimabhaumakas, Kṛṣṇabhaumas, Subhaumas and Mahābhaumas. These and other lands and countries are very famous.[1]

24. They drink from the holy river Mahāgaṅgā[2] which was, in the beginning, known in the three worlds as Śītā bearing down volumes of cold water.

25-31. The other rivers are Haṁsavasati, Mahācakrā, Cakrā, Vaktrā, Kañcī, the excellent river Surasā, Śākhāvatī, Indranadī, Meghā, Maṅgāravāhinī, Kāverī, Haritoyā, Somāvartā, Śatahradā, Vanamālā, Vasumatī, Paṁpā, Paṁpāvatī, Suvarṇā, Pañcavarṇā, the holy Vapuṣmatī, Maṇivaprā, Suvaprā, Brahmabhāgā, Śilāśinī, Kṛṣṇatoyā, Puṇyodā, the auspicious Nāgapadī, Śaivālinī, Maṇitaṭā, Kṣārodā, Aruṇāvatī, Viṣṇupadī, Mahāpuṇyā, Mahānadī, Hiraṇyavāhinī, Nīlā, Skandamālā, Surāvatī, Vāmodā, Patākā, Vetālī and Mahānadī Gaṅgā and these rivers are glorified as the heroines (important rivers). Besides there are other rivers small and innumerable—hundreds and thousands.

32. Thus the holy rivers in the eastern continent have been enumerated to you. A person becomes sanctified by merely enumerating them.

33. The kingdom is flourishing and prosperous. It consists of many provinces where trees and forests grow in abundance. These are encircled by many hills.

34. It is teeming with groups of men and women. The kingdom is auspicious and joyous. People are governed by many kings. They are rich in money and foodgrains. There are many mines of jewels, glorified in many ways.

35. In that country, men are said to be lustrous in comple-

1. Verses 35ff: These seem to be provinces in China as the people, thereof are 'gold-complexioned'.

2. This is the Hwang Ho river of China. The Purāṇic belief that the Sītā (which flows to the western sea) has emerged in the east in Bhadrāśva through underground channels is shared by Chinese, Arabs and Persians (AGP 102).

xion like gold and conch-shell.[1] They are big-bodied, extremely vigorous like bulls.

36. They can meet, talk and associate with Devas and occupy the same seats with them.

37. Their span of life is ten thousand years. There is no difference of Dharma and Adharma among them (all people are equal). They are naturally truthful and non-violent.

38. Everyday they perform sacrifices, worships and obeisance with devotion to Lord Śaṅkara and Gaurī, the great Vaiṣṇavī (Śakti).

CHAPTER FOURTYFOUR

Description of Ketumāla

Sūta said :

1. The natural characteristics of the Bhadrāśvas have been narrated precisely. Now Listen to a detailed description of Ketumāla.[2]

2-3. It behoves you to hear in detail the description of the seven principal mountain ranges, countries and rivers in particular, situated in all the quarters to the west of the western lordly mountain Niṣadha.

4. The seven ranges of *Kulaparvatas* are Viśāla, Kaṁbala, Kṛṣṇa, Jayanta, Hariparvata, Aśoka and Vardhamāna.

5. There are other hills by hundreds, thousands and crores of other massive and extensive mountains, the offshoots of the seven ranges of *Kulaparvatas*.

---

1. Verses 35-38 describe the people of Bhadrāśva (N. China, Sinkiang).

2. Roughly Ketumāla corresponds to old Bactria, the basin of the Oxus. The latitudinal range Niṣadha (i.e. Hindukush-Kunlun) is to its south and the Nīla (Zarafshan-Tien shan) range is to the north and to the west is the Western Sea (the Caspian). For the mountains, valleys, settlements on mountains and the rivers of Ketumāla *vide supra* chs. 36,38,39,42.

6. In and near them, there are lands and kingdoms where people of various castes and creeds dwell and which are governed by many rulers.

7. They are famous on the earth, well-known by their names and valour. They are embellished (as it were) by the praises of their exploits (sung) by the people of the country they occupy.

8. Their kingdoms are established on even and uneven lands among mountains. They are known by their own respective and varied names.

9-15. The nationalities are:[1] Gomanuṣya, Kopataka, Tatsukhas, Bhramara, Yūtha, Māheya, Acalakūṭaka, Sumaula, Stāvaka, Krauñca, Kṛṣṇāṅga, Maṇipuñjaka, Kūṭakaṁbala, Mauṣīya, Samudrāntaraka, Karaṁbhava, Kuca, Śveta, Suvarṇakaṭaka, Śubha, Śvetāṅga, Kṛṣṇapāda, Viha, Kapilakarṇikā, Atyākarālā, Gojvālā, Hīnāna, Vanapāṭaka, Mahiṣa, Kumudābha, Karavāṭa, Sahotkaca, Śukanāsas, Mahānāsa, Vanāsa, Gajabhūmika, Karañja, Mañjama, Vāha, Kiṣkindī, Pāṇḍubhūmika, Kubera, Dhūmaja, Jaṅga, Vaṅga, Rājīva, Kokila, Vācāṅga, Mahāṅga, Madhaureya, Surecaka, Pittala, Kācala, Śravaṇa, Mattakāśika, Godāva, Bakula, Vāṅga, Vaṅgaka, Modaka and Kalā.

16. These blessed people drink the holy waters of the river Suvaprā resorted to by Nāgas.

17-23. They also drink the waters of the rivers Kaṁbalā, Tāmasī, Śyāmā, Sumedhā, Bakulā, Vikīrṇā, Śikhimālā, Darbhāvatī, Bhadrā, Śukanadī, Palāśā, Bhīmā, Prabhañjanā, Kāñcī, Kuśāvatī, Dakṣā, Śākavatī, Puṇyodā, Candrāvatī, Sumūlā, Ṛṣabhā, Samudramālā, Campāvatī, Ekākṣā, Puṣkalā, Vāhā, Suvarṇā, Nandinī, Kālindī, Bhāratī, Sītodā, Pātikā, Brāhmī, Viśālā, Pīvarī, Kuṁbhakārī, Ruṣā, Mahiṣī, Mānuṣī and Daṇḍā. These are excellent rivers frequented by Devas, Siddhas and sages. Their waters are holy and auspicious and they dispel sins.

24. The land is flourishing with various countries. It is beautified by great rivers. It is full of many gems and jewels. It is perpetually rejoicing and splendid.

---

1. Some of the nationalities or sub-regions mentioned in vv. 9-15 are identified with their mediaeval names as follows:

Gomanuṣya (Gonaridh), Kapotaka (Murghab), Karambhava (Karmina), Kuca (Kuz-Panjdeb)—(AGP 98).

25. The whole continent is prosperous with wealth, food-grains, and other articles and abodes of human beings spread all around. This is the abode of pious persons. Thus the natural characteristics of Ketumāla have been narrated to you.

CHAPTER FORTYFIVE

Description of Bhāratavarṣa

Śaṁśapāyana said :

1. O holy lord, the two continents in the east and the west have been narrated to us. Now tell us about the people dwelling in the northern and southern continents as well as those on the mountains.

Sūta said :

2. South of the Śveta mountain and north of the Nīla, there is a sub-continent called Ramaṇaka[1] where human beings are born.

3. Animals (thereof) fulfill desires in all seasons. People are free from the stink of old age (They do not become senile or decrepit). They are a good-looking people descended from a noble, fair-complexioned race.

4. There is a great divine *Nyagrodha* tree (the Indian fig tree) called Rohiṇa. The people subsist on the juice of its fruit.

5. Those excellent people are always delightful and happy. They live for eleven thousand five hundred years.

6. To the north of the Śveta and to the south of the mountain called Śṛṅgavān, there is a sub-continent called Hiraṇyata[2] (*Hiraṇvat* in A) where a river Hairaṇyatī (*Hairaṇvati* in A) flows.

---

1. Identified with ancient Sogdiana (AGP 83-84).

2. This Varṣa is closely associated with the river Hiraṇvatī (mod. Zarafshan). Both forms of the name mean 'possessor or scatterer of gold'. Due to its association with this river, this Varṣa must be presumed to be adjacent to Sogdiana—AGP 84-85.

7. Very strong and brilliant men are born there who are Sattvic in quality, bestower of desires in all seasons. They are rich and comely in appearance.

8. These people of unlimited splendour live upto twelve thousand five hundred years.

9. In that country there is the great *Lakuca* tree (Bread-fruit tree) yielding six tastes. Men maintain themselves on the juice of its fruits.

10. There the Śṛṅgavān mountain has three great and lofty peaks. Out of them one is full (lit. consists) of diamonds, the second, of gold and the third, full of all kinds of precious stones. They are embellished with mansions.

11. On the southern shore of the northern sea is the holy country of the Kurus[1] which is resorted to by the Siddhas.

12. The trees there provide sweet fruits and flowers throughout the year. They put forth clothes and ornaments along with fruits.

13. Many are the charming trees that bear fruits desired by all. They exude excellent honey of exquisite taste, colour and fragrance.

14. There are other charming trees called *Kṣīrin*. They always yield milk like nectar yet presenting six types of tastes.

15. The entire ground is full of jewels, even the fine sand being gold which is pleasant to touch. It is auspicious, free from impurities and thorns.

16. Descending from the world of Devas, people are born as auspicious men. They are born in fair complexioned families and have perpetual youth.

17. The charming women give birth to twins who imbibe the nectarine juice of the *Kṣīrin* (milk-yielding) tree.

18. The twins are born simultaneously and grow up together. They are of similar forms, traits and conduct of life. They also die together.

19. Like the couples of Cakravāka birds, they are affectionate to each other. They enjoy life, not knowing disease, sorrow or suffering.

---

1. Kuru or Uttara-Kuru as described here and in other Purāṇas includes the basin of rivers Irtysh, Obe, Tobol i.e. modern western Siberia—AGP 84-85.

20. They have great vigour and vitality. They live upto fourteen thousand five hundred years. They never resort to others' women.

21. North of Jārudhi, the king of mountains, are the northern Kurus. The land is glorified in all directions. Now listen to its detailed description.

22-23. There are two lofty *Kula-Parvatas*, Candrakānta and Sūryakānta.[1] They are embellished by many caves, crevasses, cavities and rivulets; they possess many bushes and hedges. They are decorated with minerals of various colours. They contain many kinds of metals; they are adorned with all kinds of mineral ores. They have trees with perpetual fruits, flowers and roots; they are resorted to by Siddhas and Cāraṇas.

24-25. The whole of that country is pervaded by hundreds of their peaks and ridges. The great river Bhadrasomā[2] flows in between the two mountains, Candrakānta and Sūryakānta.

26. There are thousands of other rivers with pure and tasty water, sufficient for the Kuru people for drinking.

27. Similarly there are thousands of great rivers flowing with milk, honey, butter and the intoxicant beverage Maireya.

28. There are hundreds of pools full of curds. There is a huge mountain rich in tasty food, nectarine, ripe fruits of different kinds.

29. There are roots and fruits of sweet fragrance, taste and colour. Their fragrance can be smelt from a distance of five Yojanas.

30. There are thousands of flowers of different colours and shapes, large, pleasant and conducive to welfare.

31. There are forests of Tamāla, Aguru and sandal-wood pleasant to touch and rich in fragrance, colour and taste.

32. The forests are in full bloom. Bees hum and hover round. The forests abound in pleasant trees, hedges and creepers.

33. O excellent Brāhmaṇa, there are thousands of lakes abounding in lotuses and lilies wherein bees hum and birds chirp.

---

1. Identified with mod. Tarbagatai and Jingar—Ala Tau mountains.
2. Mod. Irtysh river.

34-35. There are many charming grounds of sports affording pleasure in all the seasons. There foodstuffs, garlands, unguents, beds, seats and other articles of enjoyment are ever available. Birds of beautiful shape and variegated colours chirp there.

36. The grounds of sports are flourishing and richly embellished in gold and jewels. There are bowers and grottos of plantain and other trees as well as rocks.

37. There are thousands of bowers of creepers all around. They are very pleasant. There are hundreds of underground houses as lustrous and pure as conch shells.

38. The windows are made of gold adorned with a network of diamonds. They are very large and of various sizes with wonderful workmanship in gold and gems.

39. There are thousands of excellent trees. The clothes are of various shapes (and fashions). They are of fine texture and very pleasant (to the sight).

40. There are various musical instruments like *Mṛdaṅga*, *Veṇu*, flute, *Paṇava* which are widely used. There are hundreds and thousands of Kalpa trees bearing fruits.

41. There are parks of that description everywhere and so are the cities all over (the Kurus). The whole land is joyous, full of men and women. The wind blows wafting the fragrance of different flowers.

42. That country is always the abode of happiness, providing relief from fatigue. There, the gods descend from heaven in the shape of human beings and take their birth. Thus this excellent land is heaven itself, (maybe) even better than that.

43. The men living on the eastern ridge of the Candrakānta mount are dark in colour, while those on Sūryakānta are dark as well as fair. They are excellent and happy.

44. In that land, there are excellent men, strong and valorous like the Devas. They always enjoy themselves as much as they please. They look very refulgent.

45. They are bedecked in bangles, bracelets, shoulderlets, necklaces and earrings. They wear garlands of various colours and coronets. Their upper garments and clothes are of various colours.

46. They never grow old. They have perpetual youth. They are fond, affectionate and comely in appearance. They live upto many thousand years.

47. They do not procreate nor do they decline in numbers. Pairs are born of the tree unlike each other but befitting each other.

48-49. The riches are common to all. They do not have the sense of possession. There is no virtue, no vice, no sickness, no old age, no mental confusion, no feeling of exhaustion. On completing their full length of time, they disappear like bubbles of water.

50. They are extremely happy, devoid of all miseries. Being passionately attached, they do not observe (the restrictions of) Dharma. For Dharma grows from misery.

51-52. To the southern side of Northern Kurus, there is the famous country called Candradvīpa[1] shaped like the disc of the moon. It is at a distance of five thousand Yojanas beyond the region of gods. (Being a seaside land) it is ever decorated with garlands of sea waves and is resonant with many sounds.

53-55. It extends to one thousand Yojanas in area and is full of fruits and flowers. It is fertile and flourishing. It is one hundred Yojanas in breadth and so much in height. There is an excellent mountain Kumudaprabha in its centre, inhabited by Siddhas and Cāraṇas. It has various gems equal in lustre to the moon. These have all good traits and shine in their lunar shape. There are lilies of diverse colours, parks and gardens of variegated hues. There are many rivulets and caves. It is decorated with great ridges, precipices, crevasses and bushy hedges.

56. The excellent river of many waves, Candrāvartā flows from this mountain. It is full of pure and holy water, bright like the moon's rays.

57. There is the excellent abode of the moon, the lord of stars. The moon, the lord of planets, always resides there.

58. There is a famous mountain known by the name of the moon. The great land called Candradvīpa is famous both in this world as well as in heaven.

---

1. The Tuva region in southern Siberia where the river Yenisi flows.

59. All the people here shine like the moon. They resemble the moon, with their faces shining like the moon. They are free from dirt and consider the moon their deity.

60. The people there, are very virtuous, gentle, truthful and brilliant. Their conduct is good and their span of life extends to a thousand years.

61-62. To the west of this western continent is the land called Bhadrākara four thousand Yojanas from the ocean. It is a circular zone ten thousand Yojanas in diameter. It looks splendid with different kinds of flowers.

63. The place is rich and abounds in foodgrains. It is ruled over by many kings. It is joyous, prosperous and beautiful on account of the great mountains.

64. There is a very splendid seat of Vāyu there, embellished with various jewels. There, the embodied form of Vāyu is worshipped always on *Parvan* days.

65-66. The people living there have golden complexion. They are bedecked in gold. They are as refulgent as the immortal Devas. Their garments and garlands are of variegated colour. They are blessed, vigorous, joyous and truthful. They live upto five hundred years. They consider Vāyu their deity.

Sūta said :

67. These are the natural characteristics of the countries in Bhārata as seen by the knowers of the supreme truth. What else shall I narrate to you ?

68. When this was said by the intelligent son of Sūta, the sages eager to listen to the sequal asked him thereafter.

The Sages said :

69-71. O excellent one, it is in this Bhārata country that the fourteen Manus, Svāyaṁbhuva and others, are born at the time of the creation of subjects. We wish to know this further. Please narrate.

On hearing their words Sūta Lomaharṣaṇa, well-versed in the Purāṇas and of pious mind, described this in detail to the sages of purified souls.

Sūta said :

72. The natural traits of the Kurus have been precisely recounted. Now I shall mention the features of Bhārata.[1] Understand them.

73-74. O excellent Brāhmaṇas, in the sacred centre to the south of the southern mountain Himavat, extending from east to west is the Bhārata sub-continent. It behoves you to listen now to the details of the countries in the Bhārata Varṣa and of the people there.

75. With its diverse features giving rise to auspicious and inauspicious results, this sub-continent is in the middle, to the north of the ocean and to the south of Himavat.

76. Since the country (*Varṣa*) is called Bhārata the people are Bhāratīs. Since Manu ruled over the people, he is called Bharata.[2] Etymoligically derived thus the Varṣa (country) is called Bhārata.

77. It is from here alone that one goes to heaven or attains salvation.[3] The middle course—heaven as well as the end, the final emancipation—is attained from here. Rituals for human beings are not ordained anywhere else on earth.

78. There are stated to be nine divisions of this Bhārata Varṣa.[4] Being separated by oceans, they are mutually inaccessible.

---

1. The description of Bhārata is repeated in other Purāṇas also e.g. AP. 118, Bd.P. I.2.16, VP.II.3.

2. This etymological explanation of 'Bhārata' attributing its credit to Manu who is called 'Bharata' due to his act of maintaining (and feeding) the people, supersedes the Jaina tradition which attributes it to Bharata, the son of Tīrthaṅkara Vṛ(Ṛ)ṣabha.

3. Due to this special importance of Bhārata, it is called *Karma-bhūmi*. Cf. Bd.P.I.2.16.7, Bm.P.27.2, Mk.P. 55. 21-22, Mt.P. 114. 6-7, *Siddhānta Śiromaṇi* III.41.

4. Cf. Mk. P. 57.5, Mt.P. 113.7-9. The names of the nine regional divisions of Bhārata Varṣa indicate a period when Hindu culture was assimilated by countries in South and South-East Asia. There are differences among scholars about their identification from the days of Al Biruni to De, M.Ali and V.S. Agrawala. Thus Indradvīpa is identified with Madhyadeśa (Al Biruni), region between Laṅkā and Mahendra Hills (Abul Fazl in *Ain-e-Akbarī*), Burma (Majumdar), Andamans (V. S. Agrawala), Trans-Brahma-

79-81. They are Indradvīpa, Kaseru, Tāmravarṇa, Gabhastimān, Nāgadvīpa, Saumya, Gandharva and Vāruṇa. This Bhārata, the ninth among them, is surrounded by the sea. From south to north it extends to a thousand Yojanas, from Kumārī to the source of Gaṅgā. Sideways in the north it extends to nine thousand Yojanas.

82. On the eastern boundary are Kirātas and Yavanas at the western boundary.

83. Within it dwell Brāhmaṇas, Kṣattriyas and Vaiśyas attending to sacrifices, war and trade respectively. The Śūdras live in different parts.

84. There are mutual dealings among these based on virtue, wealth and love. The different castes are engaged in their own functions.

85. People perform the duties of the five stages of life, the fifth being that of *Saṅkalpa*. They possess the human tendency to endeavour to attain heaven and salvation.

86. He who conquers this ninth Dvīpa entirely, along with the countries extending sideways, is declared an emperor (*Samrāṭ*).

87. He who conquers this world is remembered as Samrāṭ, the conquerer of Antarikṣa as *Virāṭ*, while the conquerer of the other world is called *Svarāṭ*[1]. I shall explain this later on.

88. There are seven great mountain systems with excellent knot-like ridges in this Varṣa. They are Mahendra, Malaya,

---

Putra region (M.Ali). These are mere speculations of scholars. After discussing the regional classification (AGP 126-132), M.Ali comes to the following conclusion:

Indradvīpa=the trans-Brahmaputra region.

Kaseru=The coastal plain between the deltas of Godāvari and Mahānadi.

Tāmravarṇa=The sector of Indian Peninsula south of Kāverī.

Gabhastimān=The hilly belt between Narmadā and Godāvari.

Saumya=The coastal belt west of Indus.

Gandharva=The trans-Indus region.

Vāruṇa=The western coast of India.

1. The precise meaning of terms *Samrāṭ*, *Virāṭ* and *Svarāṭ* is worth noting.

A farfetched interpretation of this verse is suggested as follows: "This region is known as monarchical, Antarikṣa as non-monarchical (*vi-rāṭ*) and other region as self-governing (*sva-rāṭ*)".

Sahya, Śuktimān, Ṛkṣaparvata, Vindhya and Pāriyātra.[1]

89. There are other thousands of mountains adjacent to these. They are endowed with all qualities, and have broad and variegated summits.

90-92. The chief of them[2] are the excellent mountain Mandara, Vaihāra, Dardura, Kolāhala, Surasa, Maināka, Vaidyuta, Pātandhama, Pāṇḍura, Gantuprastha, Kṛṣṇagiri, Godhana, Puṣpagiri, Ujjayanta, Raivataka, Śrīparvata, Kāru and Kūṭaśaila.

93. There are other smaller mountains with thin population. The land strips between them have a mixed population consisting of Āryas and Mlecchas.

94-96. The rivers rising from the foot of Himavat,[3] of which those people drink the water are : Gaṅgā, Sindhu, Sarasvatī, Śatadru, Candrabhāgā, Yamunā, Sarayū, Irāvatī, Vitastā, Vipāśā, Devikā, Kuhū, Gomatī, Dhūtapāpā, Bāhudā, Dṛṣadvatī, Kauśikī, Tṛtīyā, Niścīrā, Gaṇḍakī, Ikṣu and Lohitā.

---

1. Out of these mountain systems, Mahendra, Malaya and Sahya ranges are well-known. The Vindhya of the Purāṇas includes the Satpura range, south of the Narmadā. According to De (p. 196) Śuktimān is that portion of the Vindhya range joining Pāriyātra and Ṛkṣa mountains including the hills of Gondwan and Chhota Nagpur. But M. Ali in the topographical Map of Bhārata, shows it as a ring of ranges encircling the Mahānadī basin, very nearly coinciding with Purāṇic Dakṣiṇa Kosala (mod. Mahakosal area in MP).

The Pāriyātra mountain is a ring of ranges north of Narmadā, nearly encircling the catchment area of Chambal and Betwa and thus corresponds to the Aravallis and (modern) Western Vindhya.

The Ṛkṣa mountain represents the modern Vindhya from the source of Sonar to the eastern ranges marking the catchment area of the river Śoṇa (AGP 112-113).

2. Mandara=A portion of Himālaya to the east of Sumeru in Garhwal (De, p.124- 25).

3. The mountain ranges described in note 1 above are watersheds which bound wholly or partly the catchment areas of important rivers in India.

It is significant that the names and order or enumeration is practically the same as in Mt.P. and Bd.P.

Here is the list of rivers rising from Himālaya. The modern names are given in brackets:

97-98. The rivers issuing from Pāriyātra[1] are: Vedasmṛti, Vadavatī, Vṛtraghnī, Sindhu, Varṇāśā, Candanā, Satīrā, Mahatī, Parā, Carmaṇvatī, Vidiśā, Vetravatī, Śiprā and Avantī.

99-101. The rivers originating from Ṛkṣaāda and having crystal-clear water are : The great Nada Śoṇa, Narmadā, Sumahādrumā, Mandākinī, Daśārṇā, Citrakūṭā, Tamasā, Pippalā, Śroṇī, Karatoyā, Piśācikā, Nīlotpalā, Vipāśā, Jambulā, Vāluvāhinī, Siterajā, Śuktimatī, Makruṇā, and Tridivā.

102-103. The auspicious rivers of holy waters issuing from the slopes of the Vindhya mountains[2] are: Tāpī, Payoṣṇī, Nirvindhyā, Madrā, Niṣadhā, Veṇyā, Vaitaraṇī, Śitibāhu, Kumudvatī, Toyā, Mahāgaurī, Durgā and Antaśilā.

Śatadru (Sutlej), Candrabhāgā (Chenab), Irāvatī (Ravi), Vitastā (Jhelum), Vipāśā (Beas), Devikā (Deeg, a tributary of Ravi), Kuhū (Kabul), Dhūtapāpā (Śāradā, with its headstreams), Bāhudā (Rapti), Dṛṣadvatī (Chitang, a tributary of Ghaggar), Kauśikī (Kosi with its three headwaters), Lohitā (Brahmaputra).

1. Pāripātra is a variation of Pāriyātra. The modern names of these rivers are mentioned in the brackets:

Vedasmṛti (Banās), Vedavatī (Berach), Vṛtraghnī (Bāṇgaṅgā—Utangan). These were big, perennial rivers of ancient Matsyadeśa (now a part of M.P.)

Varṇāśā is W.Banas which flows west of Aravallis, Nandanā (Sābarmati); Sadānīrā (Sarasvatī) is probably the correct name for Satira. Pārā(Pārbatī), Carmaṇvatī (Chambal), Vidiśā (Bes), Vetravatī (Betwa).

The names of Purāṇic mountain ranges are so mixed in modern times thatsome rivers are attributed to both.

Śoṇa, Mahānada and Narmadā do not rise in Purāṇic Ṛkṣa Parvata. Rivers from Mandākinī onwards are from Bundelkhand (M.P.). The modern names of the rivers are juxtaposed in brackets:

Daśārṇā (Dhasan), Tamasā (Tons); Pippalā and Śroni (Śyenā in Bd.P.) seems to be one river, viz. Pippali-Śyeni as in Mt.P. (mod. name: (Paiśunī).

Vipāśā is probably Viśālā as in Bd.P. It is Bewas near Sagar in M.P.

Jambūlā (Jammi) a tributary of Betwa, Śuktimatī (Ken) (AGP 118-119).

2. As stated above, Purāṇic writers include even the Satpura hills in the Vindhya ranges.

The modern names of the rivers are given in brackets:

104. The rivers of the southern land rising from the slopes of Sahya mountains are the Godāvarī, Bhīmarathī, Kṛṣṇāvaiṇī, Vañjulā, Tuṅgabhadrā, Suprayogā and Kāverī.

105. The rivers issuing from the Malaya mountains[1] are Kṛtamālā, Tāmravarṇā, Puṣpajātī and Utpalavatī. All of them are very splendid. Their waters are very cool.

106. The rivers originating from Mahendra mountains[2] are Trisāmā, Ṛtukulyā, Ikṣulā, Tridivā, Lāṅgūlinī and Vaṁśadharā.

107. The rivers issuing from the mountain Śuktimān[3] are Ṛṣikā, Sukumārī, Mandagā, Mandavāhinī, Kūpā and Palāśinī.

108. All of them are sacred like Sarasvatī. All of them flowing into the sea are (holy like) Gaṅgā. These are the mothers of the world and are declared as removers of the sins of the world.

Tāpī (Taptī or Tāpī), Payoṣṇī (Pain-ganga—De, p. 150), Nirvindhyā between Ujjain and Vetravati (in *Meghadūta*) (mod. Newuj), Niṣadhā (Sind, on this Narwar, the capital of Niṣadhas was located).

Veṇyā (Van-gaṅgā), Vaitaraṇī (Baitaraṇī), Kumudvatī (Suvarnarekhā), Toyā (Brāhmaṇī), Mahāgaurī (Damodara). *Durgā* (difficult to cross) and *anta-śilā* (full of rocks) are probably the adjectives of that wild river—AGP 120-121.

Most of the rivers are known by their old names with a few modifications such as Bhīmarathī (Bhīmā), Kṛṣṇā-vaiṇī (also in inscriptions for mod. Kṛṣṇā), Vañgulā (Manjirā), Suprayogā (Vedavatī).

1. The modern names are bracketed:

Kṛtamālā (Vai-gai), Tāmravarṇā (Oparṇi), Puṣpajāti (Pambiar), Utpalavatī (Periyar)—AGP 122-123.

2. Modern names of these and explanatory remarks are siven in the brackets.

Trisamā (the three headwaters of the Ṛṣikulyā, viz. Ghod-hada, Bhagava and Patana, have this collective name); Ṛtukulyā is Ṛṣikulyā (repeated under rivers from the Śuktimān)

Tridivā (a collective name for Vegavatī, Nāgavatī and Suvarṇamukhi—the three headwaters of Lāṅgūlinī, mod. Langulia).

3. Modern names of these rivers are brackated.

Ṛṣikā (probably Ṛṣṛikulyā mentioned above); Sukumārī (Suktel, joins the Mahānadi near Sonpur, Orissa), Mandagā (Mand), Manda-vāhinī (-gāminī in Bd.P., Mahānadi proper), Kūpā (Krpā in Bd.P., Arpā), Palaśini (Jonk in Raipur Dist. in M.P.)

109-111. The branches and tributaries of these rivers are hundreds and thousands. The countries in Central Region (Madhyadeśa)[1] are chiefly Kurupāñcālas, Śālvas, Jāṅgalas, Śūrasenas, Bhadrakāras, Bodhas, Śatapatheśvaras, Vatsas, Kisaṣṇas, Kulyas, Kuntalas, Kāśikosalas, Tilaṅgas in the borderland, Magadhas and Vṛkas.

112. Now along the northern half of Sahya mountains where the river Godāvarī flows is the most delightful region within the whole of this earth.

113-114. There is a heavenly city named Govardhana.[2] It was built by the king of Devas for Rāma's spouse. Trees and herbs were planted by the sage Bhāradvāja for the sake of Rāma's spouse. He made this delightful wooded tract the private part of the palace.

115-119. The colonies of Kṣattriyas[3] are Vāhlīkas, Vāḍhadhānas, Ābhīras, Kālatoyakas, Aparītas, Śūdras, Pahlavas,

---

1. At the time of the final redaction of the Purāṇa, the following parts of India were included in "Madhyadeśa". These are originally the names of the tribes applied to the land where they were then settled:

Kurus—Between Ghaggar in the west and Gaṅgā in the east and with forest belt on the south and the north.

Pāñcālas—Co-terminus with modern Rohilkhand with the central portion of the Gaṅgā-Yamunā doab added to it.

Śālvas—Near Kurukṣetra to the west of Matsyadeśa. De thinks that it comprised some parts of former Jodhpur, Jaipur and Alwar states (De p. 175).

Jāṅgalas—Generally associated with Kurus as "Kurujāṅgala". Probably, it occupied the NE part of Kurus (AGP 135).

Bhadrakāras and Bodhas along with Śālvas occupied the borderland of the Madhyadeśa of Purāṇas.

2. Now a village in Nasik district of Maharashtra. Formerly it was an important centre of learning. Brāhmaṇas coming from that place formed a sub-caste 'Govardhana Brāhmaṇas". It is mentioned several times in the famous Nasik inscription of Uṣavadāta (100 B.C.) (*Epigraphica Indica* VIII, p. 78).

3. Generally realms or countries are named after the names of tribes or peoples who colonise them. The identification of these realms is based on AGP pp. 137-147. D.C. Sircar's GAMI is also referred to and only the page no. is mentioned.

(1) The Vā (Bā) hlikas=People of Balistan region covered by the Bolon, Nari and Gokh rivers. It coincided with former British Baluchistan. But according to D.C. Sircar (p. 32) it is Balkh (N. Afghanistan).

Carmakhaṇḍikas, Gāndhāras, Yavanas, Sindhus, Sauvīras, Bhadrakas, Śakas, Hradas, Kulindas, Paritas, Hārapūrikas, Ramaṭas, Raddhakaṭakas, Kekayas and Daśamānikas. The tribes of Vaiśyas and Śudras are : Kāmbojas, Daradas, Barbaras, Priyalaukikas, Pīnas, Tuṣāras, Pahlavas, Bāhyatodaras, Ātreyas, Bharadvājas, Prasthalas, Kaserukas, Laṁpākas, Stanapas, Pīḍikas and Juhuḍas.

120. Apagas, Alimadras, Tomaras, Haṁsamārgas, Kāśmīras and Taṅganas are the tribes of Kirātas.

121. These along with Cūlikas, Āhukas and Pūrṇadarvas are the northern peoples. Now hear from me the people in the East.

122-123. People in the east :[1] Andhravākas, Sujarakas,

---

(2) The Vāḍhadhānas (Vātadhānas)=Prob. Waziristan. But in Sircar (p. 32) the Panjab-Rajastan region.

(3) The Ābhīras=South of Sauvīra but east of the Indus=Western part of Hyderabad dist., Sind.

(4) The Kālatoyakas=Residents of Kalat region in Baluchistan.

(5) The Pahlavas=The region adjoining the Hingol valley on the Parikan river. They included Vaiśyas and Śudras as well.

(6) The Carmakhaṇḍikas=At the mouth of the river Hab and the Churma island.

(7) The Gandharas=Kandahar-lower Kabul valley.

(8) The Yavanas=Ionians, Greeks.

(9-10) The Sindhus and Sauvīras=Though usually linked together, they are different regions. Sauvīra coincides with Rohri-Khairpur region of Sind and the remaining portion is Sindhus.

(11) The Śakas=Scythians.

(12) The Ku(Pu)lindas=Kunets of Kulu. But formerly they extended to Saharanpur and Ambala (Sircar, 33).

(13) The Kekayas=People of the country between the Beas and the Sutlej.

(14) The Kambojas=People from Kafirstan who colonised the Kunar basin.

(15) The Daradas=The same ancient tribe living in the valley of the Kisenganga in Kashmir.

(16) The Barbaras=People migrated from Barbary or North Africa.

(17) The Tuṣāras=Tokharians in N. Afghanistan, but people on the Tochi according to AGP 142.

(18) The Lampakas=Lamghans associated with upper Kabul.

1. The ancient tribes and their locations from Eastern India are identified as follows:

Antargiris, Bahirgiris, Pravaṅgas, Vaṅgeyas, Māladas, Mālavartins, Brahmottaras, Pravijayas, Bhārgavas, Geyamarthakas, Prāgjyotiṣas, Muṇḍas, Videhas, Tām(r)aliptakas, Mālas, Magadhas and Govindas are the counties in the east.

124-131. Now the other people who dwell in the southern region[1] are: Pāṇḍyas, Keralas, Caulyas (Colas), Kulyas, Setukas,

---

Antargiri=Rajmahal hills in Santhal Pargana, Bengal (De 8). But Sircar locates Antargiri and Bahirgiri towards the north of Assam.

Vaṅgeyas=Bengal proper—the deltaic triangle between Bhāgirathi-Hooghly (the main outlet of Gaṅgā in ancient times) and Padmā (AGP 151).

Māladas—A Part of the district of Shahabad—the site of Viśvāmitra's Āśrama in Buxar (De, 100); Malda district of Bengal, Rajashahi and West Dinajpur of Bengal (AGP, p. 151).

The Bhārgavas=Probably the same as Bhargava-Aṅgaya (in AGP, p. 152) i.e. the Yamuna-Meghna Doab.

The Prāgjyotiṣas=Kāmarūpa Dist. in Assam.

The Muṇḍas=Chhota Nagpur, especially the Ranchi district (De, p. 134).

The Videhas=Tirhut country between the Kosi and the Gandak to the north of the Ganga (De, p. 35).

The Tāmraliptakas—Tamluk in Midnapur district including Kontai (De, p. 203) (AGP, p. 152).

The Mālas (The Mallas in Bd.P.)—The country round the Parasnath Hills (Part of Hazaribagh and Manbhum Districts). The Mallas were at Pāvā and Kuśinagara at the time of the Buddha (De, p. 123).

The Magadhas=South Bihar.

The Govindas or Gonarda (in Bd.P., Mt.P.)=De (p. 71) identifies it with Gonda in Oudh.

1. The following identifications are based on De, (page no. indicated in notes) and Sircar (GAMI).

The Pāṇḍyas—Modern districts of Tinnevelly and Madura in Tamil Nadu (p. 147).

The Caulas (Colas)=The Coromandal coast to the south of the Pennar including Tanjor (p. 151).

The Setukas=People of Setubandha, Rameshwar (Sircar p. 38).

The Mūṣikas=Travancore on the Malbar coast (p. 134). But Sircar (p. 36) suggests people living on the Muri river (in Nellore and Guntur dists., A.P.)

The Vanavāsikas=Banwasi in North Kanara Dist. Karnatak (CGEIL p. 79). The Kingdom of the ancient Kadamba dynasties.

The Mahārāṣṭras=Roughly identified with Marathi speaking people.

The Mahiṣakas=Southern Mysore (p. 120), also Sircar (p. 39).

The Kaliṅgas=South Orissa (Puri and Ganjam Districts)—Sircar(p. 39).

Mūṣikas, Kumanas, Vanavāsikas, Mahārāṣṭras, Māhiṣakas, Kaliṅgas, Ābhīras, Caiṣīkas, excellent Āṭavyas, Pulindras, Vindhyamūlikas, Paunikas, Maunikas, Aṣmakas, Bhogavardhanas, Nairṇikas, Kuntalas, Āndhras, Udbhidas, Nalakālikas.

Now hear from me the names of other people : Śūrpākāras, Kolavanas, Durgas, Kālītakas, Puleyas, Surālas, Rūpasas, Tāpasas, Turasitas, all the Parakṣaras, Nāsikyas and others; those lands in the valley of Narmadā[1], viz. : Bhānukacchas, Samas, Heyas, Sahasas, Śāśvatas, Kacchīyas, Surāṣṭras, Ānartas, Ānartas, Arbudas and Saṁparītas. Now listen to the residents of the Vindhya mountains.[2]

The Ābhīras=South-eastern portion of Gujarat about the mouth of the Narmada (Sircar, p. 1).

The Pulindras (also Pulindas)=Region between the Pranahita and Bandia rivers, both tributaries of the Godavari.

The Paunikas or Paurikas=A small territory occupying the valley of the Pūrṇā, a tributary of the Godāvarī.

The Āśmakas=Aurangabad district and Bodhana country round about in Nizamabad Dist. (Sircar, p. 40).

The Bhojavardhanas=The valley of the upper Pūrnā river below the Sahyadri. Bhokardan about 30 miles from Ajanta (Sircar, p. 40).

The Kuntalas=The southern Maharashtra and northern Canara Dist.

The Āndhras=Not the present big state in south India. Region comprising Krishna and Guntur district of Andhra Pradesh together with its neighbouring area (CGEIL p. 80).

1. Some identifications proposed:

The Kacchast=Cutch, now in Gujarat state.

The Surāṣṭras=Saurashtra (former Kathiawad) now in Gujarat.

The Ānartas=Gujarat and a part of Malwa (De, p. 8).

The Arbudas=The country around Mt. Abu (De, p. 16).

2. The Mālavas=Though Malavas settled in Avanti (around Ujjain) finally and gave their name to the ancient Avanti deśa, it is possible that they were in south Marwar (in Rajasthan) at the time of this Purāṇa.

The Kāruṣas=The country around Reva (De, p. 95).

The Mekalas=Country around Amarkantak, the source of the Narmada

The Utkalas=Orissa.

The Daśārṇas=Modern eastern Malwa (Sircar, p. 43).

The Bhojas=Country around Bhilwara in the Chambal basin (AGP, p. 159). Sircar identifies them with the people of Vidarbha who founded a kingdom in Goa (p. 43).

The Kiṣkindhakas—Sircar identifies it with modern Kalyanpur, south of Udaipur Division (p. 43)-

132-134. Mālavas, Karūṣas, Mekalas, Utkalas, Uttamarṇas Daśārṇas, Bhojas, Kiṣkindhakas, Tosalas, Kosalas, Traipuras, Vaidikas, Tumuras, Tumburas, Ṣaṭsuras, Niṣadhas, Anupas, Tuṇḍikeras, Vītihotras, Avantis. These are the kingdoms on the Vindhya mountains.

135-137. Now I shall mention mountainous territories.[1] These are : Nigarharas, Haṁsamārgas, Kṣupaṇas, Taṅgaṇas, Khasas, Kuśaprāvaraṇas, Hūṇas, Darvas, Hūdakas, Trigartas, Mālavas, Kirātas and Tāmasas. The learned know of four ages in this Bhārata, viz. Kṛta, Tretā, Dvāpara and Kali. I shall explain their natural features later.

The Tosalas=The southern part of Kosala or Gondwan District around Tosali (mod. Dhanti) in Puri District (De, p. 43).

The Kosalas=Sircar identifies this with Dakṣiṇa (Southern) Kosala—modern Raipur, Bilaspur and Sambalpur region (p. 43).

The Traipuras=The region around Tewar. This covers present Jabalpur, parts of Mandla and Narasimhapur Districts.

The Vaidikas=A misprint for Vaidiśas: Eastern Malwa with Vidiśā or Bhilasa as the capital (p. 43).

The Tumuras=Modern Tumain in Guna Dist., M.P.—(Sircar, p. 44).

The Niṣadhas=Marwar with Narwar as its capital (ibid).

The Anupas=South Malwa country about Nimar (De, p. 8).

The Tuṇḍikeras=The Narmada basin around the town Sainkheda (AGP 161).

The Vītihotras=The country around Satwar 30 miles north-west of Harda. It is bounded on the north-east and west by the Vindhyas and by the Narmadā in the south.

The Avantis=The country around Ujjain.

1. Sircar identifies some as follows:

The Haṁsa-mārgas=People of Hunza in N-W Kashmir (p. 45.)

The Khasas=Mod. Khakkas. They lived in Kashmir.

The Trigartas=Modern Jalandhar region (Panjab).

The Kirātas=Himalayan Mountaineers.

CHAPTER FORTYSIX

Description of Kiṁpuruṣa Varṣa

Sūta said :

1. On hearing this and desirous of hearing further, the delighted sages asked Lomaharṣaṇa:

The Sages said :

2-3. The sub-continent of Bhārata has been described by you. Now describe the Kiṁpuruṣa[1] and Hari Varṣas.[2] Thus requested by the Brāhmaṇas, Lomaharṣaṇa replied suitably this question as follows (lit. in the manner indicated in this Purāṇa).

Sūta said :

4. Please listen, O Brāhmaṇas, to what you are pleased to hear. In the Kiṁpuruṣa country, there is a big grove of Plakṣa trees comparable to the Nandana forest.

5. The span of life in the Kiṁpuruṣa land is said to be ten thousand years. The men are gold-complexioned and the women resemble Apsaras-s.

6. They do not suffer from ailments; they are devoid of sorrows; they are pure in mind; they possess the lustre of molten gold.

7. In this holy country Kiṁpuruṣa, there is a fig tree exuding honey. All the inhabitants of Kiṁpuruṣa Varṣa drink its excellent juice.

8. Adjoining Kiṁpuruṣa, there is Harivarṣa where the people are yellow as gold in complexion.

9. All the people there are descended from Devaloka and have divine forms. In Harivarṣa, all people quaff the splendid juice of sugarcane.

---

1. Kiṁpuruṣa Varṣa a mythical land—GAMI, p. 366; Kiṁpuruṣa deśa—Nepal (De, 100).

2. Hari-Varṣa—mythical territory (GAMI, p. 559); the western Tibet (De, p. 74).

10. They live joyously upto eleven thousand years. They remain delighted in their minds. Old age does not afflict them, nor do the people get decrepit or senile.

11. In the central sub-continent Ilāvṛta[1] which I have mentioned before, the sun does not blaze fiercely and men do not get aged (pre-maturely).

12. In Ilāvṛta the moon, the sun and the stars are dim. Men have the colour, lustre and fragrance of the lotus flower. Their eyes are as wide as the lotus leaf.

13. They feed on the juice of Jaṁbū fruit. They neither grow aged nor decay. They have fragrance. They are cultured and polished. They enjoy pleasures as the fruit of their auspicious rites.

14. They are fallen from Devaloka. They are non-senile and deathless. These excellent men live for thirteen thousand years.

15-16. In the sub-continent Ilāvṛta, they live the full span of life. The sub-continent is twenty six thousand Yojanas in length and nine thousand Yojanas in breadth around Meru. It is fashioned like a saucer.

17. Nine thousand Yojanas to the west of Meru lies the mountain Gandhamādana, thirtyfour thousand Yojanas long.

18. To the north and south, it stretches upto Nīla and Niṣadha mountains. Its height is forty thousand Yojanas. It penetrated downwards to a thousand Yojanas.

19. The mountain Mālyavān lies in the east. Its magnitude has already been mentioned. It is to the south of Nīla and to the north of Niṣadha. The great mountain Meru of extensive magnitude lies in the centre of these mountains, which seem to penetrate it.

20-22. Its extent is hundred thousand Yojanas since the ocean is circular and since it sanctifies the zone of the earth. Measurements are reduced in rectangular areas when they are undemarcated. Coming to the middle they split (?)

23. A river of Jaṁbū juice resembling liquified collyrium flows from the south of Meru to the north of Niṣadha.

---

1. Ilāvṛta—The country surrounding the Pamirs (AGP, p. 32, fig 2).

24-26. There is an everlasting Jaṁbū tree called Sudarśana. It blooms and bears fruits perpetually. It is resorted to by Siddhas and Cāraṇas. It is the biggest tree in Jaṁbūdvīpa, a hundred thousand Yojanas high. This lordly tree touches heaven. The length of the fruit is eight hundred and sixty one *Aratnis*. This is determined by sages who know the truth.

27. When the fruits fall on the ground, they make a loud noise. The juice of the Jaṁbū fruits develops into a flowing river.

28. The river passes around Meru and then enters *Jaṁbū mūla* and the people there drink of it. They are delighted and surrounded by the tasty Jaṁbū fruits.

29. Imbibing the juice they conquer old age. Certainly they never fall sick or die.

30. The gold called Jāṁbūnada which Devas wear as ornaments is found there. It appears as splendid as the glow-worm.

31. The splendid juice of the fruits of all *Varṣa*-trees (Jaṁbū) strengthens the people (of the continent). It is the gold that is used for ornaments of Devas.

32. Their excretions (faeces and urine) are scattered all round. Thanks to the blessings of the Lord, the earth absorbs the refuge and the dead bodies.

33. The Rākṣasas, Piśācas and Yakṣas reside on Himavat. The Gandharvas and Apsaras-s live on mountain Hemakūṭa.

34. The Nāgas including Śeṣa, Vāsuki and Takṣaka live on Niṣadha. The thirtythree groups of Devas, the Yājñikas, wander over the great Meru. On the Nīla, full of lapis lazuli, Siddhas and Brahmarṣis live.

35. The mountain Śveta is the abode of Daityas and Dānavas. The mountain Śṛṅgavān is the place which the Pitṛs frequent.

36. Thus the mobile and immboile beings have settled in the nine continents in their respective places.

37. The population of Devas and human beings is too enormous to be enumerated. It should be accepted with faith by those who wish to know it (by experience).

CHAPTER FORTYSEVEN

Descent of the Gaṅgā

Sūta said:

1. The mountain Kailāsa[1] is on the left of Himavat. Here lives the prosperous Kubera along with the Rākṣasas. The ruler of Alakā rejoices in the company of Apsaras-s.

2-3. Splendid, auspicious, cool water flows from the foot of Kailāsa into a lake called Manda. It is full of lilies and is sparkling like autumnal clouds. From that (lake) proceeds the auspicious, heavenly river Mandākinī.[2] On its bank stands a great celestial forest called Nandana.

4-5. To the north-east of Kailāsa, there is a mountain called Candraprabha near mount Suvarṇa which abounds in celestial animals, medicinal herbs and minerals for the use of Devas. The mountain Candraprabha[3] is like a pure jewel. There is a divine lake Acchoda at its foot.

6. From that lake rises the divine river Acchodā. On its banks there is a great, sacred forest Caitraratha.

7. Maṇibhadra, a general of Yakṣas, lives on that mountain along with his attendants. He is surrounded by his retinue of fierce Guhyakas.

8. The holy river Mandākinī and the river Acchodā flow into the great ocean through this zone of the earth.

9-11. South-east of Kailāsa, there is the great mountain Lohita. It is brilliant like the sun and has peaks of gold. It is adjacent to the heavenly mountain Piśaṅga that abounds in red arsenic. It is full of auspicious animals and medicinal herbs. At the foot of the mountain (Lohita), there is a great divine lake called Lohita, from which flows the great auspicious water

---

1. The description of Kailāsa here, though poetic, shows that the Purāṇa writer was conversant with the topographical features of the Mānasa Sarovar basin—AGP 55-58.

2. Probably this is the river Umā and the Zhong Chhu which flows through Gaurī Kuṇḍa on the eastern flank of mount Kailāsa into the Rākṣasa Tāl (the twin lake of the Mānasa Sarovar)—AGP 65.

3. Probably the Surange La, the NE range of Kailāsa from which water flows into Lake Kongys Tso or Lake Gounche—AGP 65.

(river) called Lauhitya.[1] On its bank there is a great divine forest of gods, called Viśoka.

12. On that excellent mountain there lives the self-controlled Maṇivara Yakṣa, along with his retinue of righteous Guhyakas.

13-14. The great mountain Vaidyuta[2] consisting of variegated minerals and metals lies near the Añjana mountain born of the body of the demon Vṛtra. It has three peaks and it abounds in ferocious animals and medicinal herbs. It is on the southern side of Kailāsa. At the foot of the mountain Vaidyuta, there is the holy lake Mānasa where Siddhas live.

15. From that lake rises the sacred Sarayū that sanctifies the worlds. The divine forest on its bank is very famous by the name Vaibhrāja.

16. The Rākṣasa Brahmapāta, an attendant of Kubera and son of Prahetṛ lives there. He has infinite valour (yet) he is self-controlled. He is surrounded by hundreds of Yātudhānas capable of traversing aerial regions.

17-19. To the west of Kailāsa, there is the excellent mountain Aruṇa.[3] It is full of important animals, medicinal herbs, gold and other minerals. Nearby is the mountain Muñjavat, a glorious mountain resembling clouds. This is a favourite haunt of the great Lord Śaṅkara. It is surrounded by clusters of rocks, pure and golden. It appears (as if) to brush the heaven with its hundreds of golden peaks. This great divine mountain is snow-capped and inaccessible.

20-21. On this mountain lives Lord Dhūmra-Lohita,[4] the king of mountains. At its foot there is the lake Śailoda[5] from

---

1. This is the Brahmaputrā. From a small lake at the foot of the mountain, the Brahmaputrā enters Tamchok Khambah, the headwater of the Brahmaputrā—AGP 66.

2. This is the peak Gurla Mandhata, since lake Mānasa Sarovar lies below its northern face and the river Karnāli (Map Chhu of Tibetans), a major tributary of the Sarayū, rises here—AGP 66.

3. This is the Ladakh or Leh range (*Ibid*).

4. According to M.Ali, it is the Nanga Parbat (for details vide AGP 66-67).

5. M.Ali identifies lake Śailoda with the Wular lake which once occupied the whole of Kashmir—AGP 67.

which flows the heavenly river Śailodā. Between the rivers Cakṣus and Śītā (Sītā), it enters the sea.

22-23. The famous divine forest Surabhi lies on its banks. North of Kailāsa there lies a mountain Gaura by name, which is the resort of auspicious beings and abounds in medicinal herbs and yellow orpiment. It is a splendid bejewelled mountain having golden peaks.

24. At the foot of the mountain, there is a splendid lake called Bindusaras.[1] Even its sands are of gold. It was to this lake that Bhagīratha came.

25. For the sake of the river Gaṅgā, that saintly king lived there for many years (thinking to himself:) "My ancestors will go to heaven, if they are bathed in the waters of the Gaṅgā."

26. The goddess Gaṅgā (lit. a river flowing through three paths, viz. the heaven, the earth and the nether-world)[2] was first initiated there. Rising from the foot of Soma mountain, she divides herself in seven streams.

27. There the sacrificial posts are made of precious stones. The *citis* (oblong quadrilateral sacrificial pits) are golden. It was after performing a sacrifice there that Indra along with attending Devas attained to Śiva.

28. The innumerable stars of the milky way in the clear sky, which look very close to each other and glitter brightly at night are nothing but the goddess Gaṅgā.

29. Having flowed through the sky and the heaven, the Gaṅgā came down upon the earth. When she fell down on the head of Śiva, he held (up) her with his Yogic Māyā power.

30. As the river became furious, some drops (of her water) fell an the earth and created a lake of drops and hence came to be known as Bindusaras.

---

1. The name is explained in two ways:

(i) A collection of drops of water. The basin between mountain Aling Kangri and Kailāsa Tanglha is dotted with innumerable small and large lakes.

(ii) A lake of frozen particles of snow. In the past the basin Aling Kangri and Kailāsa Tanglha was an extensive snowfield.

2. Verses 26-40 describe the natural phenomenon called descent of the Gaṅgā. The term *Tripathagā* indicates the three stages in the descent of the

31-33. It is reported that when (the flow of) the goddess Gaṅgā was checked by Śiva smilingly, she planned in her mind of sweeping away god Śiva: "I will cut my way (to Pātāla) and carry off Śaṅkara along with my current". On coming to know the wicked design Lord Śiva intended to keep her in obscurity in his body (head). Realizing the cruel intention of the river, he confined her on his head, as she fell down with force on the earth.

34-35. At the same time Lord Śiva saw before him King Bhagīratha who had grown emaciated, and a veritable network of (visible) veins and whose sense-organs were not functioning well due to hunger. The Lord thought to himself, "I have been propitiated by him (this king) earlier for this river." Becoming aware of the boon granted to him earlier, he controlled his anger (against the river).

36. On hearing the request of God Brahmā to keep up his promise, the Lord released the river held up by him by his prowess, for the sake of Bhagīratha by whose severe penance he felt satisfied.

37-39. As the river was being released, the flow of the river started in seven currents. Three of them flowed to the east and three to the west. The entire course of the river Gaṅgā was divided into seven parts. Nalinī, Hrādinī and Pāvanī[1] flowed to the east. Sītā, Cakṣu and Sindhu flowed to the west. The seventh current led by Bhagīratha flowed to the south.

40. Hence it is known as the Bhāgīrathī. That river entered

Gaṅgā, viz. (i) the Milky Way in the sky, (ii) Snowy or Glacial Gaṅgā and (iii) the Fluvial Gaṅgā. Out of these Ākāśa-Gaṅgā is a poetic name for the Milky Way (v. 28). The confinement of the Gaṅgā in the matted hair of god Śiva (vv. 29-33) is the glacial stage and the release of Gaṅgā (v. 36) indicates the melting of the snowfields and glaciers. M. Ali depicts the whole process graphically (*op.cit.* pp. 63-64) but he does not explain the role of Bhagīratha in this descent. Did he manage through his engineers to divert that river to India in the south ?

1. M. Ali (*op. cit.* p. 69) identifies Nalinī, Hrādinī and Pāvanī—the east-flowing rivers with Yangtse, Mekong and Salween, the rivers flowing to the west, viz. Sītā, Cakṣus and Sindhu with Yarkand, Shyok and Indus while the southern river Bhāgīrathī is the Gaṇgā. De, however, identifies Sītā with Jaxartes (p. 181) and Cakṣus with Oxus or Amudariya (p.43).

the salt ocean. All these (seven currents) offer devotion to the Varṣa called Hima.

41-43. These seven streams issuing from the Bindu lake sanctify several countries mainly occupied by Mlecchas and approach a place where Indra showers the rain. They are as follows: Sirindhras, Kuntalas, Cīnas, Barbaras. Yavasas, Druhas, Ruṣāṇas, Kuṇindas and Aṅgalokavaras. The river Sītā divides the desert of Sindhu into two and flows into the western ocean.

44. The river Cakṣu flows through these countries: Cīnamarus (Chinese desert ?), Naṅgaṇas, Sarvamūlikas, Sādhras, Tuṣāras, Taṁpākas, Pahlavas, Daradas, and Śakas. It then falls into the ocean.

45-49. The Gaṅgā sanctifies the auspicious Aryan countries: Daradas, Kāśmīras, Gāndhāras, Varapas, Hradas, Śivapauras, Indrahāsas, Vedātis, Visarjayas, Saindhavas, Randhrakarakas, Bhramaras, Ābhīras, Rohakas, Śunāmukhas, Ūrdhvamanus, the places frequented by Siddhas and Cāraṇas, Gandharvas, Yakṣas, Rākṣasas, Vidyādharas and Uragas (Serpents), Kalāpa-grāmakas, Pāradas, Sīgaṇas, Khasas, Kirātas, Pulindas, Kurus, Bharatas, Pañcālas, Kāśi, Mātsyas, Magadhas, Aṅgas, Brahmottaras, Vaṅgas and Tām(r)aliptas.

50. Obstructed by the Vindhya mountain, it falls into the southern sea. The holy river Āhlādinī (one of its eastern branches) flows to the east.

51-55. It inundates the habitations of the Niṣādas, Dhīvaras, Ṛśikas, Nīlamukhas, Keralas, Uṣṭrakarṇas, Kirātas, Kālodaras, Vivarṇas. Then it vanishes into the expanse of the sea towards the east. The branch Pāvanī also flows to the east sanctifying Apathas, Indradyumna lake, Kharapathas, Indraśaṅkupathas, the middle of the garden Maskara and Kuthaprāvaraṇa. Near Indradvīpa, it enters the salt ocean.

56-58. The branch Nalinī flows to the east sanctifying the Tomaras, Haṁsamārgas and Hūhukas. Rising in the eastern lands and piercing through mountains in several places, it reaches Karṇaprāvaraṇas and Aśvamukhas. After passing through the desert mountains, it reaches Vidyādharas. It flows into the great ocean at the Nemimaṇḍala Koṣṭha.

59. The branches and tributaries of these rivers are

hundreds and thousands. They fall into the ocean as the water is showered by Indra.

60. On the banks of the river Vasvokasā, on the peak Hariśṛṅga famous for its fragrant waters, lives the scholar Kauberaka of self-control.

61. Yajñopeta, Sumahān, Amitaujas and Suvikrama are his attendants. They are on par with him. Kauberaka is surrounded by scholarly Brahma-rākṣasas of the family of Agastya.

62. The prosperity of the inhabitants of mountains should be known thus. Through mutual cooperation their prosperity arising from Dharma (Virtue), Artha (Wealth) and Kāma (Love) becomes doubled.

63. Behind Hemakūṭa there is the lake Sāyana.[1] The rivers Manasvinī and Jyotiṣmatī emerge from this lake.

64. They flow into the eastern and western oceans respectively. On the excellent mountain Niṣadha is the lake Viṣṇupada.[2]

65. The two rivers, Gāndharvī and Nanvalī rise from it. There is a great eddy called Candraprabha rising to the west of Meru.

66. The holy river of Jaṁbū juice, the source of the splendid gold (called Jāṁbūnada) flows from here. The lake Payoda,[3] as splendid as the white lotus, is on the mount Nīla.

67. It is from this lake that the rivers Puṇḍarīkā and Payodā have their source. The holy lake Uttara-mānasa rises from mount Śveta.

68-69. The two rivers Jyotsnā and Mṛgakāntā rise from this (lake). The holy lake known as Rudrakānta is[4] full of

---

1. This lake known as Nāga in other Purāṇas is the Lake 'Naktso' which with Pangong Tso forms an extensive water sheet—AGP 71.

2. Now known as Lake Chakmaktin, the source of the Wakhan river which flows west in the land of Gandharvas. It is in the Wakhan region that mounts Meru and Niṣadha come closer to each other—AGP 71.

3. M. Ali identifies this with the Kara Kul of northern Pamirs. It is a twin lake mentioned as Payoda and Puṇḍarīka (like lakes Mānasa Sarovar and Rākṣasa Tāl in the South Kailasa region). Hence this twin lake Kara Kul is aptly called Uttara Mānasa.

4. M. Ali believes that the lakes in vv. 68-70 were in Siberia—AGP 72.

honey and lotuses and is agitated by fishes and birds. It abounds in wish-yielding trees. It is pleasant and sweet like honey. It is reported that it is created by Śiva.

70. There are twelve famous lakes full of lotuses, fishes and birds. They are named as Rudrājayas and they are (big) like seas.

71. From these lakes there emerge the rivers Śāntā and Mādhvī. There is no rainfall in the Kiṁpuruṣa continent.

72-73. Excellent rivers flow here with waters from the subterranean regions. These blessed rivers flow through the mountains Ṛṣabha, Dundubhi, Dhūmra and Mahāgiri, to the east and fall into the briny sea. Others flow to the north over the mountains Candrakaṅka, Prāṇa, Mahān and Agni and merge into the great ocean.

74. The mountains Somaka, Varāha and Nārada extend to the west upto the briny sea.

75-76. The great mountains Cakra, Balāhaka and Maināka extend to the southern ocean. In between Candra and Maināka, to the south, there is the great fire Saṁvartaka which consumes the waters of the ocean. It is known as Aurva and Vaḍavāmukha.

77-78. The twelve mountains entered the ocean because they feared Mahendra who would have cut off their wings. What is seen reflected in the form of a black hare on the white (orb of the) moon is the replica of Bhāratavarṣa divided into nine regions. It is seen in the moon that rises here and not elsewhere.

79-80. These countries become more and more flourishing in respect of good qualities, health, longevity and magnitude based on virtue, love and wealth. Different kinds and castes of people and other living beings endowed with good qualities live in the different countries. Thus the Earth holds the entire universe.

CHAPTER FORTYEIGHT

Countries of the Jaṁbūdvīpa

Sūta said :

1-4. Know that there is an ocean ten thousand Yojanas in extent to the south of Bhārata. There is a country in it three thousand Yojanas long and one-third of it in breadth. It abounds in fruits and flowers. The regional mountain (*Kula-parvata*) thereof is Vidyutvān,[1] the innumerable peaks of which embellish the land. There are thousands of rivers there, with clean and tasty water. The lakes contain pure water.

5-7. In the many long and wide caves, and crevasses of that mountain there are many prosperous jolly men and women of various shapes and features. In the many spacious and long and wide cavities (valleys?) are established hundreds and thousands of cities built into the mountain. These houses are joined to one another and have only a door each.

8. The subjects thereof have long beards and moustache. They are black and shining like clouds. They have the maximum life span of eighty years.

9. They eat fruits and roots and live like monkeys. Like cattle, they follow promiscuous, unconcealed sexual habits. They are devoid of bodily and mental purity and they have no fixed rules or conventions.

10. That continent is full of worthless men. Similarly other countries and islets shall be known in due order.

11-14. The groups of islands known as Peacock islands are extending to twenty, thirty, fifty, sixty, eighty and hundred Yojanas. There are a few, extending to a thousand Yojanas. They are long, wide and full of various living beings. Besides Jaṁbū-dvīpa there are six islands. These islands are famous all over the earth for their mines of gems and precious stones. They are known as Aṅga, Yama, Malaya, Śaṅkha, Kuśa and Varāha[2] islands.

---

1. The Vidyutvān mountain is obviously the Arakan Yoma of Burma. The islands dotting the Arakan coast are mentioned in vv. 11-12—AGP 178-179.

2. These are the lands around India.

15. Know ye that the Aṅga Dvīpa[1] comprises islands, and many people of the Mlecchа tribes live there. That continent is very large.

16. There are mines of gems, corals and gold in that land here. It is variegated with rivers, mountains and forests. It resembles the vast expanse o f the briny sea.

17-18. There is a mountain called Cakragiri full of many rivulets and caves. The caves afford shelter to various living beings. That great mountain spreads on to many places in the Nāga land with its extremities reaching the lord of rivers, the abode of serpents (ocean).

19. What is called Yamadvīpa[2] is also full of mines of gems. There is a mountain called Dyutimān, embellished with minerals and is the source of many rivers and gold (mines).

20-21. Similarly, the Malaya Dvīpa[3] is also surrounded by the ocean. It is the source of gems, jewels and gold. It is very prosperous. It is the place of origin of sandalwood and is surrounded by gulfs (*lit.* seas). Many kinds of Mlecchа tribes live there. There are many rivers and mountains.

22. The glorious mountain Malaya is the source of origin of silver. This excellent moutain is famous as Mahāmalaya.

23. It is known as the second Mandara mountain. The abode of Agastya, bowed to by Devas and Asuras, is also there.

24-25. There is another mountain Kañcanapāda which is a second Malaya. There are many hermitages there, resorted to by pious persons and full of hedges of grass and Soma plants. It abounds in flowers and fruits of all kinds. It excels even the heaven. On festive occasions, on all Parvan days, heaven descends to that place.

26-28. There is a great city Laṅkā on the beautiful ridge and peak of the mountain Trikūṭa decorated with different

---

1. Verses 16-18 describe Aṅga-dvīpa. Ali identifies it with the Malaya Peninsula due to pointers such as Mlecchа population, gold, corals (AGP 179).

2. Yama-dvīpa is tentatively traced to Sumatra, Malaya, and Java.

3. M. Ali identifies it with the southernmost peninsular India—AGP 179-180.

minerals. The mountain is many Yojanas in height. Its variegated precipices and caves resemble houses. The city has gold ramparts and archways. There are many mansions and palaces with turrets and gables of variegated colour. It is a hundred Yojanas long and thirty Yojanas broad. It is flourishing and the people there are happy and gay.

29. It is the abode of noble Rākṣasas who can assume various forms as they please. Know that to be the habitation of the enemies of Devas, proud of their strength. Free from all harassments, this city is inaccessible to human beings.

30. In that island, on the eastern shore of the sea there is Gokarṇa, the great shrine of Śaṅkara.

31. Śaṅkhadvīpa[1] is ruled as a single kingdom extending to a hundred Yojanas. It is the abode of many Mleccha tribes.

32. The mountain Śaṅkhagiri has the lustre of white conch-shell. It is sacred and is the source of many gems. It is resorted to by pious persons.

33. From this mountain rises the holy river Śankhanāgā. Śaṅkhamukha, king of Nāgas, has his abode there.

34. Similarly, the Kumudadvīpa[2] is brightened by variegated flowers. Full of many villages, it is the source of many gems and jewels.

35. There the blessed sister of Mahādeva, named Kumudā, the destroyer of evil persons, is worshipped by the people.

36-38. Similarly in the island called Varāha[3], there is a beautiful mountain known as Varāha containing many caves, crevasses and rivulets. The island is densely populated by different Mleccha tribes and people of different castes. There are many habitations and cities flourishing and prosperous with wealth and foodgrains. It is full of righteous people. The rivers, mountains and forests thereof contain various kinds of fruits and flowers of various colours.

---

1. Śaṅkha-dvīpa is Zangistan of Arab geographers. It represents a part of the eastern shore of Africa from Abyssinia to Madagascar.

2. Kumuda-dvīpa or Kuśadvīpa identifiable with western Asia, Arabian Peninsula—AGP 183.

3. Varāha-dvīpa is identifiable with 'Horn of Africa'. Scholars differ about these identifications.

39. A great river known as Vārāhī emerges from that mountain. Its waters are tasty. There are holy centres on its banks. This river is bestower of bliss.

40. O Brāhmaṇa, the people bow to Viṣṇu the powerful deity in the form of a Boar. They do not honour any other god.

41. Thus the six southern islands of the Bhārata country have been described in detail.

42. In this single Bhārata there are many islands separated by the ocean. They have been divided into various parts.

43. Thus have been described in details the four great continents adorned with islands interspersed in between as well as Jaṁbūdvīpa together with its adjacent islands.

CHAPTER FORTYNINE

Description of Plakṣa Dvīpa and other Dvīpas

Sūta said :

1. O excellent Brāhmaṇas, I shall describe the Plakṣa-dvīpa[1] precisely but succinctly. Listen to it as I narrate it exactly.

2. Its extent is twice that of Jaṁbūdvīpa. Its circumference (perimeter) is thrice its breadth. This briny sea is surrounded by that continent.

3. The people over there are righteous and have a great longevity. There is neither famine nor fear of old age and ailments.

---

1. The dvīpa derives its name from Plakṣa tree (a fig tree) (v. 26). It indicates Mediterranean climate V.V. Iyer identifies Plakṣa with Greece and adjoining lands in 'The Seven Dvīpas of the Purāṇas', *Quarterly Journ. of Mythic Society* (London) XV. 62. 75. M. Ali identifies it 'without hesitation' as the basin of the Mediterranean (AGP 41). Placia, a town in Mysia is traceable to Plakṣa.

4. There are seven mountains and seven rivers there also. They are splendid sources of precious stones. I shall mention their names.

5. In the seven continents, Plakṣa and others, there are seven great and steep mountains established in all directions.

6. I shall first mention the seven great mountains in the Plakṣa Dvīpa. The first is Gomedaka resembling a cloud. The country too is named Gomedaka after the name of this mountain.

7. The second mountain named Candra is full of medicinal herbs. For the preparation of *Amṛta* (nectar) (gods) Aśvinī Kumāras planted the medicinal herbs here.

8. The third is named Nārada. It is an impassable mountain of great height. It was on this mountain that the sages Nārada and Parvata were born.

9. The fourth mountain is called Dundubhi. On this mountain, formerly a drum was beaten by the Devas, the sound of which killed living beings. The Śālmala tree by its drum Rajjudāra full of ropes slays the Asuras.

10. The fifth is named Somaka where the nectar was collected formerly by Devas. It was taken away by Garuḍa for his mother.

11. The sixth is named Sumanas and also Ṛṣabha. The demon Hiraṇyākṣa was killed by Varāha on this mountain.

12. The seventh mountain is Vaibhrāja. It is great and glittering like crystal. Since it shines with rays, it is known as Vaibhrāja.

13-14. I shall mention the names of the countries of these mountains in due order. The first country is Gomeda. It is a peaceful country (where fear is quelled.) The country of Candra is Śikhara; that of Nārada is Sukhodaya; that of Dundubhi is Ānanda; that of Somaka is Śiva; that of Kṣemaka is Ṛṣabha; and that of Vaibhrāja is Dhruva.

15. In these countries Devas, Gandharvas, Siddhas, and Cāraṇas reside, and are seen playing about.

16. The rivers flowing into the sea, in this continent, are seven, one for each country. I shall mention the names of these rivers known as the seven Gaṅgās.

17. These rivers along with thousands of their tributaries flow (towards the ocean). They are always in flood with abundant water, as the rain-god Indra showers (rains) profusely.

18-19. The people in these realms drink from these rivers and are delighted. The seven rivers are Śubhā, Śāntavahā, Pramodā, Śivā, Ānandā, Dhruvā and Kṣemakā. There the people are righteous. They observe the duties and rules of their castes and stages of life.

20. They are all free from ailments. They are strong and never suffer from illness. Among them there is no (influence of) *Utsarpiṇī* (evolutionary) and *Avasarpiṇī*[1] (involutionary) eras.

21. There is no division of time based on the peculiarities of the four Yugas. The condition of Tretā Yuga is perpetually prevailing there.

22. In the five continents beginning with Plakṣa, the activities of the seasons accord with those of the (particular) continent.

23. The people live for five thousand years. They are handsome, well-dressed, strong, and free from sickness.

24. In the continents beginning with Plakṣa and ending with Śāka, happiness, longevity, strength, beauty, health and virtue are exquisite.

25. Plakṣadvīpa is large and glorious. It abounds in riches and foodgrains. It is endowed with divine medicinal herbs and fruits. It has many kinds of plants and herbs.

26. There are thousands of domestic and wild animals there. O excellent Brāhmaṇas, the details of Plakṣa Dvīpa are covered by the details of Jaṁbū Dvīpa. (Just as Jaṁbū Dvīpa is named after Jaṁbū tree) Plakṣa Dvīpa derives its name from the Plakṣa tree thereof.

27-28. The deity (Śiva) is worshipped in the centre of this continent. The continent is surrounded by the sea of sugarcane-juice. Thus the situation of Plakṣa Dvīpa with its extensiveness (etc.) has been explained. Now listen to the description of Śālmala Dvīpa in brief and in due order.

---

1. This Purāṇa uses the Jaina terms '*Utsarpiṇī*' and '*Avasarpiṇī* for time cycles, the former indicating 'ascending time cycle' and the latter 'descending one' (MW, p. 105).

29. The third among the Dvīpas is the excellent Dvīpa Śālmala.[1] The ocean of sugarcane juice is encircled by the Śālmala Dvīpa. It is twice Plakṣa Dvīpa in extent.

30. There also, in its countries, there are seven mountains and rivers. They should be known as sources of precious stones.

31. The first mountain is named Kumuda. It is as refulgent as the sun. Its peaks are rocky and abound in all minerals.

32. The second mountain there is famous by the name Unnata. It envelops the heaven by its peaks, full of yellow orpiment.

33. The third mountain thereof is known as Balāhaka. With its peaks of collyrium, it stands enveloping the sky.

34. The fourth is named Droṇa[2] where the strong medicinal herbs *Viśalyakaraṇī* (remover of darts or splinters) and *Mṛtasañjīvanī* (that which re-suscitates the dead) are found.

35. The fifth mountain is Kaṅka of excessive height. It is covered with trees and creepers endowed with divine flowers and fruits.

36. The sixth mountain is Mahiṣa resembling clouds. A fire, born of water and known as Mahiṣa, exists there.

37. The seventh mountain is called Kakudman. Indra himself showers innumerable gems there. This is the procedure to be performed in Prājāpatya rite in honour of Prajāpati.

38. There are seven mountains in the Śālmala Dvīpa. They are bedecked in jewels. I shall now describe the seven auspicious countries (*Varṣas*) associated with them. The first (*Varṣa*) is Śveta connected with mount Kumuda, and the second is Lohita connected with Mt. Unnata.

39-40. The Varṣa associated with Balāhaka and Jīmūta and that with Droṇa is Harita, that of Kaṅka is Vaidyuta, that of Mahiṣa and that of Kakuda is Suprabha. These are the seven countries and their seven mountains. Now know the rivers there.

---

1. From its description in vv. 29-45, M. Ali identifies it with tropical Africa bordering on the Indian Ocean, including Madagascar—AGP 45.

2. Mount Droṇa is noted for its medicinal plants. VR vi. 50.31 locates it in Kṣīrasāgara. De (p.58) identifies it with mount Doonagiri in Kumaun while it is located here in the Śālmaladvīpa (land of silk cotton trees).

41. Pāni, Toyā, Vitṛṣṇā, Candrā, Śukrā, Vimocanī and the seventh (river) Nivṛtti are the rivers of their respective countries.

42. There are hundreds and thousands of adjacent rivers which cannot be enumerated. They are to be believed (taken for granted) by one who wishes to know them.

43-44. Thus the locus of Śālmala Dvīpa has been described to you. Like the great Plakṣa tree in Plakṣa Dvīpa, there is a Śālmali (silk-cotton) tree in the middle of the Dvīpa which is named after it. It is surrounded by the ocean of wine equal to Śālmala (dvīpa) in extent.

45. O knowers of Dharma, now listen to the description of the people in the northern continents. Understand as I relate to you in accordance with what I have heard.

46. I shall describe the fourth continent Kuśa Dvīpa[1] succinctly. The ocean of wine is surrounded on all sides by this continent (Kuśa).

47. It is twice the extent of Śālmala. There are seven mountains there. Listen as they are being described to you.

48-50. The first mountain in the Kuśa Dvīpa is known as Vidrumoccaya; the second is Hema; the third is Dyutimān, a mountain resembling clouds; the fourth is Puṣpavān; the fifth is Kuśeśaya; the sixth is Hari; and the seventh is Mandara. The word *Manda* means waters and *Mandara* means that which splits the waters.

51-52. The distance between these mountains is twice their magnitude. The first country is Udbhida; the second is Veṇumaṇḍala; the third is Svairathākāra; the fourth is Lavaṇa; the fifth is Dhṛtimat; the sixth is Prabhākara; and the seventh is Kapila. These are the seven countries and mountains.

53. In these *Varṣas* Devas, Gandharvas, Prabhas, Prajāpatis are seen residing and sporting about.

54. In these countries there are neither robbers nor Mlecchas. The people are mostly fair in complexion. They die according to seniority in age.

---

1. After detailing the main features of Kuśadvīpa, M. Ali identifies it with tropical grasslands such as Iran, Iraq and the fringing lands of the hot desert (AGP 40-41).

55. Here also are the seven rivers which are auspicious and which dispel sins. The chief of them are Pavitrā, Santati, Dyutigarbhā and Mahī.

56. Hundreds and thousand of others are known as their branches. They flow on as Indra showers in plenty.

57. The Kuśa Dvīpa is surrounded by the ocean of ghee. In extent it is equal to Kuśa Dvīpa.

58. Thus the position of Kuśadvīpa has been described to you. Now I shall explain the extent of Krauñca Dvīpa.[1]

59. It is remembered to have twice the area of Kuśa Dvīpa. The ocean of ghee is encircled by this continent.

60. In this continent the chief mountain is Krauñca. The next after Krauñca is Vāmana and the next after Vāmana is Andhakāra.

61. After Andhakāra comes Divāvṛt. After Divāvṛt comes Divinda.

62. After Divinda is the great mountain Puṇḍarīka. After Puṇḍarīka is the mountain Dundubhisvana.

63. These are seven bejewelled mountains of Krauñca Dvīpa. They abound in fruit trees and a number of creepers.

64. The Varṣa mountains are twice in height as compared with the previous ones. Now I shall mention the names of the Varṣas. Listen and understand them.

65-66. The main land-tract of the Krauñca mountain is Kuśalin; that of Vāmana is Manonuga. Beyond Manonuga is the third land tract Uṣṇa. Beyond Uṣṇa is Prāvaraka and beyond Prāvaraka is Andhakāra. Beyond Andhakāra is Muni Deśa.

67. Beyond Muni Deśa is Dundubhisvana full of Siddhas and Cāraṇas. There the people are mostly fair in complexion.

68. There also the rivers are seven in number one for each country. They are Gaurī, Kumudvatī, Sandhyā, Rātri, Manojavā, Khyāti and Puṇḍarīkā. These seven appear as Gaṅgā divided into seven rivers.

69. Other rivers flow into these or nearby and meet the ocean. They are large and flow with great volume of water.

1. M. Ali examines the description of this Dvīpa from different sources and identifies it with the basin of the Black Sea (AGP, 45-46).

70. The glorious Krauñca Dvīpa is surrounded by the ocean of whey which is equal to Krauñcadvīpa in extent.

71-72. Thus Plakṣa and other continents have been briefly described to you. It is impossible to describe the growth, decay (creation and annihilation) and other details of these continents even in hundreds of years.

73. I shall henceforth explain the features of the entire Śāka Dvīpa[1] exactly as they are. Listen as I recount them precisely.

74. Its extent is twice that of Krauñca Dvīpa. It encircles the ocean of whey.

75. All the countries there are very sacred. People die only after a long life. There is neither famine nor fear of old age and sickness.

76. There also are seven bejewelled mountains which as well as the rivers are the sources of gems and precious stones. Listen to their names.

77. The first mountain, called Udaya, extends to the east. It is golden and is the abode of divine sages and Gandharvas. Hence it is like Meru.

78-79. Clouds rise and pass pouring down showers. There is a great mountain Jaladhāra where Indra showers plenty of water. There in the rainy season people get ample showers.

80. There is mountain Raivataka raised by god Brahmā. It is here that the Star Revatī is always established in the heavens.

81. Beyond that there is a very great mountain called Śyāma. It was due to it that people got dark complexion from the outset.

82. Next is the massive mountain Astagiri, full of silver. The next mountain is Ambikeya, an impassable snowclad mountain.

83. Next to Ambikeya is Ramya where all medicinal herbs grow. It is called Kesarī and the winds blow on it.

---

1. M. Ali identifies this with the monsoon lands of Asia where teak abounds, viz. Malaya, Siam, Indi-China (AGP 39), while De (pp. 172-173) identifies it with Tartary including Turkestan in central Asia.

84-86. Listen to the names of the countries of these mountains in due order. The country (*Varṣa*) of the mountain Udaya is Udaya well known as Jalada. The second Varṣa, that of Jaladhāra is Sukumāra; that of Raivata is Kaumāra; that of Śyāma is Maṇīcaka; the splendid Varṣa of Asta is Kusumottara; of Ambikeya is Modaka; and that of Kesaras is Mahādruma.

87. The extent, magnitude, length and breadth of this continent are as those of Śāka dvīpa (?) A great tree called Śāka (teak) grows in its centre and is worshipped by the people.

88. Devas, Gandharvas, Siddhas and Cāraṇas are visible and play about here in the midst of people.

89. The people (in the countries thereof) are virtuous and observe (the distinctive rules of) their respective four castes (*Varṇas*). There are seven rivers flowing to the sea, one in each Varṣa and these seven rivers are remembered as the seven streams of Gaṅgā.

90-91. The first river is known by the names Sukumārī, Gaṅgā, Śivajalā; and Anutaptā, the second is known as Kumārī, Siddhā and Satī; the third is designated as Nandā and Pārvatī.

92. The fourth is Śivetikā which is also remembered as Tridivā; the fifth is known as Ikṣu as well as Kratu.

93. These seven great Gaṇgās of auspicious waters sanctify all the people residing in Śāka dvīpa every year.

94. There are thousands of others rivers joining them. They have abundant of waters since Indra showers rain profusely.

95. It is impossible to enumerate their names and magnitudes. These excellents river are very holy. The joyous people drink from them.

96-97. O Śaṁśapāyana, this continent is very extensive. It is like a wheel, covered by rivers and cloud-like mountains wonderful and variegated with minerals and decorated with jewels and corals. The cities are of various shapes. They abound in flourishing and prosperous people.

98. The continent is full of trees laden with flowers and fruits. It is flourishing with wealth and foodgrains. It is surrounded by the ocean of milk equal in size to it.

99-100. The land-tracts amongst those mountains are seven in number. They are holy and splendid. The people thereof abide by the rules of castes and stages of life and admit no

mixture of castes or stages of life. Since they do not swerve from the path of virtue, they are invariably happy.

101. They are neither greedy nor deceptive and neither jealous nor malicious. There is no loss of fortitude nor adverse results. Everything is natural with them.

102. No tax is raised. No punishment is meted out. There is none to punish. They know of virtue by natural righteousness. They protect one another.

103. This much and no more can be mentioned about the residents of this continent.

I shall now describe the seventh continent Puṣkara. Please listen.

104. The ocean of milk is surrounded by Puṣkara Dvīpa,[1] which is twice the Śāka Dvīpa in extent.

105. There is only one glorious mountain called Mahāśila having lofty peaks full of variegated jewels.

106. This great mountain with wonderful and variegated ridges and precipices stands in the eastern half of the Dvīpa. Its circumference is twentyfive thousand Yojanas.

107-109. Its height is thirty-four thousand Yojanas. The excellent Mānasa mountain encircles half this Dvīpa. It stands on the seashore looking like the newly risen moon. Its height is fifty thousand Yojanas. Its girth too is so much. This mountain Mānasa is on the western half of the Dvīpa.

110. In fact the two mountains constitute but a single mountain with peaks and ridges divided into two. It is surrounded by the ocean of fresh water.

111-112. The whole mountain-range spreads over the full extent of Puṣkara Dvīpa. There are two holy and splendid provinces in that Dvīpa on either side of the mountain Mānasa. The Mahāvīta Varṣa is exterior to the mountain while Dhātakī is the interior.

113. The people there live upto ten thousand years with splendid health and happiness. They have attained mental Siddhis.

---

1. M. Ali identifies Puṣkara Dvīpa with Japan, Manchuria and south-eastern Siberia (AGP 42), while De (p. 163) regards it as the portion of Central Asia north of the Oxus (including western Tartary). He regards Puskara as the Sanskritisation of Bhushkara or Bokhara.

114. In the two countries (*Varṣas*) the forms and features and the span of life are similar. There is no distinction of high and low among them. In appearance and conduct of life all of them are equal.

115. None defrauds (anyone); none is jealous. There are neither thieves nor fear nor imprisonment nor punishment, nor greed nor illegal acceptance of gifts.

116. There is neither truth nor falsehood nor virtue nor evil nor the rules of caste nor the stages of life. There is no trade, no cattle breeding, no business enterprise.

117. The lore of the three Vedas, the system of civil and military administrarion, acts of service to others in return for payment, wounding others with harsh words or sharp implements—these are absent in the two Varṣas of Puṣkara.

118. There are no rivers, no rainfall, neither bitter cold nor oppressive heat, no vegetation, no water, no mountains, no rivulets.

119-120. The season is perpetually the same as in Northern Kurus. The people are happy, devoid of old age and exhaustion. This is the condition in Dhātakī and Mahāvīta countries. Thus the entire situation in Puṣkara Dvīpa has been nararted.

121. Puṣkara is surrounded by the ocean of sweet water equal in extent to that continent.

122. The seven continents are encircled by the seven oceans. The ocean immediately adjacent to a continent encircles it.

123. The relative increase in the size of the continents and oceans should be known thus. Since they have abundant increase of waters, the oceans are called *Samudras*.

124. Since in the land-tracts the four groups of people and sages live, they are called Varṣas. They afford happiness to the people.

125. The word *Ṛṣi* is derived from the root √*Ṛṣ*. The root √*Vṛṣ* means the continuance of energy. Since the land-tracts afford continuance of energy they have the designation *Varṣa*.[1]

126. In the bright half, when the moon waxes, there is

---

1. A Popular etymology of *Varṣa*—'a continent'.

high tide in the ocean. When the moon wanes in the dark half and sets there is low tide.

127. In the bright fortnight, the ocean gets filled with water by itself. In the dark fortnight, the ocean recedes by itself.

128. Just as water in a cooking pot boils up by its contact with fire, similarly water in the vast ocean swells in quantity and magnitude.

129. The increase and decrease of water is of fixed quantity, neither more nor less in the bright and dark fortnights at the rise and setting of the moon. The increase and decrease in the ocean again is the result of the waxing and the waning of the moon.

130. It is observed that the increase and decrease of (the level of water in) the ocean is upto five hundred and ten *aṅgulas*. This (increase and decrease) is seen (occurring) on the parvan days.

131. The term *dvīpa* (island) is so called on account of waters being on either side.[1] They are surrounded on all sides. As it is a store-house of waters, the ocean is called *Udadhi*.

132. Mountains without knots and peaks are *Giris*. Those with knots are *Parvatas*. Hence in the Plakṣa Dvīpa, Gomeda, having knots is called a *Parvata*.

133. The great Śālmali (silk-cotton) tree is worshipped in the Śālmala Dvīpa. In the Kuśa Dvīpa, a stump of Kuśa grass is worshipped. Hence the continent is called by its name (viz. Kuśa).

134. In the Krauñca Dvīpa, the mountain Krauñca stands in its centre. The tree in Śāka Dvipa is *Śāka* (teak). (Hence) the *dvīpa* (continent) is named after it.

135. In the Puṣkara Dvīpa, the Nyagrodha tree is worshipped by the people. The great lord in Puṣkara is Brahmā, the lord of the three worlds.

136. Brahmā, the Prajāpati, lives there along with Sādhyas. The Devas numbering thirtythree, along with sages worship him. The most excellent of the Devas is worshipped there.

---

1. Verses 131-105 give explanatory etymologies of *dvīpa* 'an island', *udadhi* 'Sea', *giri, parvata* 'a mountain' and explain the names of Dvipas.

137-138. Various gems and precious stones are obtained in Jaṁbū Dvīpa. In all these continents people observe truth, celibacy and self-control. Thereby, their health and span of life is increased twofold.

139. In the above-mentioned two sub-continents of Puṣkara Dvīpa, god Brahmā himself protects the subjects who are (as if) adorned with good people.

140. The supreme ruler Brahmā, the lord of three worlds, holds the rod (*Daṇḍa*) of chastisement (to govern them). He is their lord, Viṣṇu, Śiva, father and grandfather.

141. (Their) food comes to them automatically without any effort on their part. The people always take that nutritious food of six tastes.

142. The great ocean of sweet water encircles the Puṣkara Dvīpa on all sides.

143. There is a great world beyond it. The ground is golden and flat as if it is a single slab. It is twice (?) in extent.

144. Beyond that there is a mountain. At the end of the boundary, there is a circular horizon. It is both lighted (on the hither-part) and dark (on the rest). It is called *Lokāloka*.

145. Its height is ten thousand Yojanas. Its hitherward side is bright and its side beyond is dim (dark).

146. Its breadth is as much (as its height). It can rise above the earth (to any height) according to its will.

The word '*loka*' in '*āloka*' is understood in the sense of illumination (the bright interior side) and indicates the world. And '*Nirāloka*' is the dark, external side.

147. The illuminated part extends to (the world or the area where people live). Beyond that, it is surrounded by water. The *Nirāloka* (the dark part and portion beyond) covers the Cosmic Egg.

148-149. Within the Cosmic Egg there are the worlds, viz. Bhūr i.e. the earth consisting of seven continents, Bhuvar, Svar, Mahar, Jana, Tapas and Satya. This much constitutes the world which can be known. Beyond that, there is the end of the world.

150-151. The cosmos is shaped like the new moon on the western horizon (at the beginning of the bright half) when the sun is in the Aquarius Zodiac.

There are thousands of crores Cosmic Eggs like this, above, below and on all sides. They are caused and pervaded by the seven effects of Prakṛti (viz. the elements, *Mahat* and *Bhūtādi*).

152. They support one another. The later is ten times bigger than the former. They are caused and pervaded by one another.[1]

153. All round this Cosmic Egg, there is a 'solid' sea. With its waters it holds the Cosmic Egg.

154. Outside the solid water, on all its sides and above, the 'solid' fire holds and supports it.

155. The fire stands like an iron ball circular and globular in shape. It is supported and held all round by solid wind. The solid wind supports the ether as well.

156. *Bhūtādi* (Cosmic Ego) holds and supports the Ether. *Mahat* (Cosmic Intellect) supports the Cosmic Ego and is itself pervaded and supported by the infinite Unmanifest (*Prakṛti*).

157. The infinite Unmanifest (*Prakṛti*) is subtle and divided into ten. It is infinite, immobile (with no Soul). It has neither beginning nor end.

158. It is beyond everything. It is terrible. It has no support. It is free from ailments. It is many thousand Yojanas in distance. It is covered with darkness (*Tamas*).

159. It is darkness itself. It is devoid of light. It is unlimited. It does not occupy space. Even Devas cannot comprehend it. It is devoid of activity.

160. There is a great, famous, refulgent shrine of Śiva at the end of darkness and the Ether and hence at the very border. It is well-known for its splendour.

161. They say that spot is inaccessible even to Devas. It lies in the premises of the great lord of Devas.

162. In the universe, the worlds getting the light and heat of the sun and the moon, are called *Lokas*. There is no doubt about this.

---

1. Verses 152ff give the Purāṇic concept of the seven protective 'sheaths' round the universe (Brahmāṇḍa)? The influence of Sāṅkhya categories is obvious.

163. There are seven worlds beneath and seven above the Earth. O Brāhmaṇas, there are seven pathways of the wind and god Brahmā's abode.

164. From Pātāla to heaven there is a fivefold course. This is the extent of the Universe. This is the ocean of the worldly existence.

165. The activity of the Universe with neither beginning nor end goes on like this arising from different types and groups of people. This unsteady activity of the Universe is really wonderful.

166. The physical creation of this is very extensive. It cannot be comprehended even by the blessed Siddhas who know things even beyond the scope of sense-organs.

167-168. O excellent Brāhmaṇas! There is no limit, decline or end to the magnitude of (the elements, viz.) Earth, Water, Fire, Wind, *Mahat*, *Tamas*, the infinite, omnipresent Lord Īśvara. While enumerating the names of the Lord (Śiva), I have mentioned this before.

169. The Lord who is called by the name Śiva has been glorified to you. He pervades everything and is worshipped in all places.

170. He is worshipped on the earth, in rasātala, ether, wind, fire, seas and heaven. There is no doubt in this.

171. He is to be realized through penance as the Lord of great splendor. This great God, the great Yogin has divided himself in various forms. He, the Lord of the worlds, is worshipped in various ways in all the worlds.

172. Thus the worlds orginating from one another support one another by the relationship of the supporter and the supported or as the effects of their cause.

173. The elements earth etc. are the evolutes covered up by one another. They enter into one another, the lesser into the greater.

174. Since they penetrate one another, they have attained stability. Formerly they were without special features. But by intermingling they became possessed of speciality. The earth, fire and the wind, these three are separately and accurately ascertained.

175. Their accurate ascertainment is specially noticed by the decline in attributes and essence. The accurate determination of the rest is not observable due to their subtleness.

176. *Āloka* is beyond all the *Bhūtas* (elements). They are discernible separately only in the illuminated Ether (*Ākāśa*).

177. Just as in a big vessel smaller vessels are placed and are mutually supported by it though separate from each other, similarly the separateness of the elements is internal within the illuminated Ether (Ākāśa).

178. All these four elements are consecutively bigger, the later bigger than the former. The creation can function as long as the elements exist.

179. The perfection (creation) of creatures is regarded as being within (i.e. based on) *Bhūtas* (elements). The creation of effects cannot take place without *Bhūtas*.

180. The *Bhūtas* being of the nature of effects are restricted. The entities e.g. the *Mahat* (Cosmic Intellegence etc.) are of the nature of causes.

181. Thus, O Brāhmaṇas, the arrangement of this earth with seven continents and oceans has been explained to you along with their divisions precisely as they are.

182-183. The cosmic form of *Pradhāna* (the Unmanifest Nature) which has been described (lit. enumerated) to you by its extents and zones, is only a partial modification. Its cosmic form is the abode of the Lord to whom belongs the whole Universe. In this way, the elements have interpenetrated each other.

184. Only this much of established arrangement (of the Universe) can be explained by me. O King, only this much need be heard in regard to the constitution and arrangement of the world.

185. The seven *Prakṛtis* support one another. There are many *Prakṛtis* above and below and on all sides. I shall explain them to a little extent.

186. O excellent Brāhmaṇas, now I shall describe the position of the luminaries, the boundaries, the horizon and sub-horizon of the earth.

CHAPTER FIFTY

The Nether-worlds : Manifestation of the Luminaries*

1. Understand the magnitude of the earth below and above. The earth, wind, sky, water and the fifth (element) fire are proclaimed as infinite primary elements which are all-pervading.

2-3. The earth is the mother of all beings. It is called *Dharā* as it sustains all animals and living beings. It is spread over with various countries and is teeming with many towns and abodes. It has many (big) rivers, rivulets and mountains. It is crowded with all classes of people. (Hence) this extremely extensive goddess earth is praised as infinite.

4-5. Water is present in rivers, oceans, small receptacles such as ponds or puddles, mountains, firmament and the bowels of the earth. Hence water should be regarded as infinite. Similarly, the element of fire pervades all the worlds. It is said to be infinite, all-pervasive and born of everything.

---

*The Cosmic Egg is supposed to consist of fourteen worlds arranged vertically as follows :

I. The Upper Regions:
- Satya Loka
- Tapo Loka
- Jana Loka
- Mahar Loka
- Svar Loka
- Bhuvar Loka

II. The Middle Region :
- The Earth (Bhūr-loka)

III. The Lower Regions or Nether Worlds:
- Atala
- Sutala
- Vitala
- Gabhastala
- Mahātala
- Śrītala
- Pātāla

6. Similarly, the firmament is well-known as supportless, charming, the support (accommodater) of various things and infinite. The wind is born of the Ether.

7. Waters lie within the earth and the earth is established over waters. The sky is above, the earth is below (it) and again waters are underneath.

8. In this way there is no end to the evolutes of the *Bhūtas*. They are infinite. Know that this has been decisively mentioned by gods formerly.

9. The sequence should be known thus. First the earth, then the water and the sky thereafter. This order prevails upto the seventh world—Rasātala.

10. The nether world extends[1] to ten thousand Yojanas at each rung. Each of these rungs has been explained in detail by the sages.

11. The first rung is Atala, below that is Sutala. The widely extensive Vitala is below that.

12. Thereafter come Gabhastala, Mahātala, Śrītala and Pātāla is known as the seventh.

13-14. The ground surface of the first (nether-world) is black; of the second, pale white; of the third, red; of the fourth, yellow; of the fifth, sandy, gravel-covered; of the sixth, rocky; and of the seventh, golden.

15-19. In the first nether-world, there stands the palace of the lord of Asuras, Namuci, the enemy of Indra. The following abodes too are in the first nether-world, viz. the abode of Mahānāda, the city of Śaṅkukarṇa, the palace of Kabandha, Niṣ-

1. Verses 10-44 describe the Nether-worlds. Their main features are tabulated below :

Name of the Nether world	*Ground Surface*	*Kings*
Atala	Black	Namuci
Sutala	Pale White	Mahājambha
Vitala	Red	Prahrāda and Anuhrāda
Gabhastala	Yellow	Kālanemi
Mahātala	Sandy	Virocana
Śrītala	Rocky	Kesari
Pātāla	Golden	Bali

kulāda's town fully inhabited by delighted (jolly) people, the abode of the demon Bhīma, the mansion of Śūladanta, the city of Lohitākṣas and Kaliṅgas, the town of Śvāpada, the city of Dhanañjaya and of the noble-souled Nāgendra* (Lord of Serpents), the city of Kāliya, the serpent and that of Kalasa. Thus it should be known undoubtedly that there are thousands of cities (and abodes) of Serpents, Dānavas and Rākṣasas in the first nether-world with black-soil.

20-24. In the second Nether-world (Su)Tala, O Brāhmaṇas, there are the abodes of the following: the city of the first lord of the Daityas and Rākṣasas (namely) of Mahājaṁbha; the palaces of Hayagrīva, Kṛṣṇa and Nikuṁbha; the cities of the (demon) named Śaṅkha and that of Gomukha, demon Nīla, Megha, Krathana and Kurupāda; the abode of Mahoṣṇīṣa; the city of Kaṁbala, the serpent and that of Aśvatara and the city of Takṣaka, the noble-souled son of Kadru.

Thus, O Brāhmaṇas, there are thousands of cities belonging to Serpents, Dānavas and Rākṣasas in the second Nether-world of pale-white coloured soil. There is no doubt about this.

25-30. In the third Nether-world, there stands the famous city of the noble-souled Daitya king Prahrāda and Anuhrāda; the city of (the Daitya) named Tāraka; the city of Triśiras; the demon Śiśumāra's city full of commotion, due to the gay, well-nourished citizens; the palace of Cyavana, the Rākṣasa; of Kumbhila and Khara; the city of the ruthless Virādha of fire-emitting mouth; the city of Hemaka, the Serpent and that of Pāṇḍuraka and Maṇimantra; the palace of Kapila and that of Nanda, the Lord of Serpents and of Viśāla.

Thus there are undoubtedly thousands of cities of serpents, Dānavas and Rākṣasas, O Brāhmaṇas, in the third Nether-world with yellow soil.

31-33. In the fourth Nether-world is the city of Kālanemi the lion among Daityas, that of the noble-souled Gajakarṇa, the city of Kuñjara, the vast and extensive city of Sumāli the leading Rākṣasa, the abode of Muñja, Lokanātha and Vṛkavaktra and the city of Vainateya. The latter city extends to

*'Māhendra' in the text is a misprint.

many thousand of Yojanas and that is crowded with many birds. All these are in the fourth Nether-world.

34-37. In the fifth Nether-world that is covered with sand and full of gravel extending to many Yojanas, there is the city of the intelligent Daitya chief Virocana, the lion among Daityas, the abodes of Vaidūrya, Agnijihva and that of Hiraṇyākṣa, the city of the intelligent Vidyujjihva, the lord of Rākṣasas, the city of Mahāmegha, that of Mālin, the leading Rākṣasa, the city of the serpent Karmāra and those of Svastika and Jaya.

Thus there are thousands of cities of the serpents, Dānavas and the Rākṣasas in the fifth Nether-world full of gravel. This should be known [as the situation] for ever.

38-40. In the sixth Nether-world, there is the excellent city of Kesari, the lord of the Daityas, the cities of Suparvan, Suloman and Mahiṣa, and the city of the noble-souled Utkrośa, the leading Rākṣasa. It is there that Śataśīrṣa the son of Suramā, lives joyfully. The king of serpents named Vāsuki, the son of Kaśyapa (stays there).

Thus there are thousands of cities of the serpents, Dānavas and the Rākṣasas in the famous sixth Nether-world, Rasātala, with rocky ground.

41. It should be known that the city of Bali is in the seventh and the last Nether-world, Pātāla. It is beyond every world. It is gay and full of men and women.

42. It is full of Asuras, serpents and teeming with haughty enemies of the Devas. There itself is the great city of Mucukunda, the Daitya.

43. It is teeming with innumerable great cities of Daityas, full of bustle and commotion and thousands of the rich and prosperous city of the serpents.

44. It is crowded with great rising (flourishing) cities of Daityas and Dānavas and the many flourishing abodes of Rākṣasas.

45-53. O leading Brāhmaṇas, at the (lowest) extremity of Pātāla extending to many Yojanas, lives the excessively brilliant Śeṣa, king of all serpents. His eyes resemble a red lotus. He is noble-souled, free from death and old age. His complexion is white as the interior of a shining conch-shell. He wears blue garments. His arms are mighty. His body is large and expansive.

He is brilliant and powerful. He wears garlands of various colours. He has a thousand faces (hoods) as bright and sparkling as the gold-peaked mountain. He shines with ear-rings. He appears like mount Kailāsa encircled by ringlets of blazing flames due to his tongues emitting the lustre of blazing fire with leaping flames. With a splendid halo round him and two thousand sparkling eyes as lustrous as the rising sun, he shines gloriously. He has the colour of the moon and the Kunda flower. His string of beads shines like a cluster of midday suns on the top of Śveta mountain.

He is brilliant and terrible with his matted hair. While lying down or sitting, he appears like a mountain with a thousand peaks sprawling over the Earth. He is the excessively refulgent lord of Nāgas and is attended by blessed Nāgas of great strength and huge bodies. He is the Śakti of Viṣṇu in the form of a Serpent. That is the final established boundary (of Nether-worlds).

54. Thus the seven Nether-worlds that could be discussed have been recounted. They are always inhabited by Devas, Asuras, great Serpents, and Rākṣasas.

55. Beyond this is total absence of light. It cannot be traversed by Siddhas and Sādhus (good people or sages). It is unknown even to Devas and is traffic (life)-less.

56. O excellent Brāhmaṇas, thus is the grandeur of earth, fire, water, wind and ether described by the sages. There is no doubt about this.

57. I shall now describe the rotation of the sun and the moon.[1] These are stationed in the ether along with their discs and shine with their lustre as long as they move.

58-59. The extent of the earth is half of the extent of the seven oceans and continents (?). The sun and the moon illumi-

---

1. This is a new section dealing with Purāṇic astronomy. Bd. P. has given a separate chapter (I.2.21) to this and the text corresponds to our text to a great extent.

These Purāṇic astronomical ideas—the position, size, movements of the stars etc. are of the pre-telescope age and unacceptable to-day. They are found in other Purāṇas also, e.g. Bh. P. V. Chs. 21-24, Mt. P. Chs. 124-128, VP. II. Chs. 8-12.

nate the earth on its globular outer surface to the extent of the magnitude of its outer circumference. The magnitude of this outer circumference is equal to the extent of the firmament.

60. Revolving all round, the Sun illuminates and protects the three worlds. Hence on account of illumination and protection, he is called '*Ravi*'. The root $\sqrt{av}$ means 'illumination' (and protection).[1]

61. Now I shall mention the magnitude of the moon and the sun. The word *Mahī* is derived from $\sqrt{Mah}$ 'to celebrate'. The word denotes the celebrated Bhārata Varṣa.

62. The extent of Bhārata is equal to the extent of the vastly extensive disc of the sun. Now listen to the number of Yojanas it covers.

63. The extent of the sun is nine thousand Yojanas. The girth or the extent of its disc is thrice its diameter. The lunar disc is twice the solar disc (in diameter as well as girth).

64-65. Now I shall recount the extent of the earth in Yojanas. The extent and girth (circumference) of the earth consisting of seven continents has been reckoned in proper measure in the Purāṇas. I shall recount that after enumerating the current *Abhimānins* (Deities etc. who preside or have the sense of possession etc.).

66. Those *Abhimānins* who have gone were on a par with the current ones. The Devas who have gone are on a par with the current ones in forms and names.

67. Hence, I shall describe the surface of the earth through the current Devas. (I shall recount) the situation of the heavenly world entirely through the current (Devas).

68. The entire earth is known as fifty crores (of Yojanas) in extent. From the middle of Meru on all four sides is half of it.

69-70. Half the extent of the earth is stated in terms of Yojanas. The extent of the earth towards all the sides (quarters) from the middle of Meru is said to be eleven crores and eighty-nine lakhs (of Yojanas) and fifty thousand[2].

---

1. A popular etymology : *ravi* is normally traced to $\sqrt{ru}$ according to Uṇādi IV. 138.

2. It is considered as the radius of the circular zone.

71-72. Understand the entire extent of the earth in terms of Yojanas. The extent over the four quarters is calculated as three crores one hundred and seventy-nine thousand. This extent of the earth includes seven continents and oceans.

73-74. The sphere at the extremity is thrice this in extent. On being calculated thus the spherical zone of the extremity of the earth has the overall area of eleven crores one hundred and thirty-seven thousand Yojanas. Thus the measurement upto the extremity of the earth has been specified.

75. The outer surface of the globular sphere of the earth is co-extensive with the sphere of the stars in the firmament.

76. In regard to the magnitude of the outer surface the firmament is equal to the earth. The same is the measure of all the seven worlds.

77-78. The worlds are situated above one another spreading like an umbrella with their outer spheres. They are all populated. Thus the cauldron of the Cosmic Egg has been explained.

79. It is within the Cosmic Egg that the earth with its seven continents and seven worlds, viz. Bhūr, Bhuvaḥ, Svaḥ, Mahar, Jana, Tapas and Satya is stationed.

80-81. These seven worlds shaped in the form of umbrellas are severally supported by their own subtle outer coverings, which are ten times bigger in order. They are created with specific attributes and they support the seven worlds.

82. All round this Cosmic Egg there is a solid ocean. The entire sphere of the earth is supported by the solid water.[1]

83-85. Beyond the solid ocean is the solid fire by which the sphere of the world is supported. Beyond and outside the solid fire is the sphere of solid wind that covers the earth on all sides round and above. Beyond the solid wind is the firmament which is surrounded by Cosmic Ego entirely. That Ego is surrounded by Mahat (the Great Principle or Intellect) which again is surrounded by the infinite Unmanifest Prakṛti of unchanging form.

86. I shall enumerate in order the cities of the guardians

---

1. This Purāṅic concept of seven protective sheaths of our Cosmic Egg shows the influence of Sāṅkhya *Tattvas*.

of the worlds.[1] The proof of the movements of the luminary bodies will also be mentioned.

87. To the east of Meru and above Mānasa is the holy city of Mahendra abounding in all essential riches and richly inlaid with gold.

88. To the south of Meru and above Mānasa lives Yama, son of Vivasvān, in his city Saṁyamana.

89. To the west of Meru and above Mānasa is the charming city of the intelligent Varuṇa. It is called Sukhā.

90. To the north of Meru and above Mānasa is the city Vibhāvarī of Soma (the moon) which is comparable to the city of Mahendra.

91. Above Mānasa in all the four quarters the guardians of the worlds are stationed for the establishment of virtue (Dharma) and protection of the worlds.

92. Understand the solar movement when the sun reaches south during the southern transit all round above the guardians of the worlds.

93. In his transit to the south, the sun moves fast like a discharged arrow. It takes the group of luminary bodies with it and revolves always.

94. When the sun is in the mid-horizon in Amarāvatī, it is called sunrise in the city of Saṁyamana of the son of Vivasvat.

95. Then it is midnight in Sukhā. When the sun is in mid-horizon (in Saṁyamana) the sun is seen rising in Sukhā, the city of Varuṇa.

96. When it is midnight at Vibhāvarī, it is sunset in Amarāvatī, the city of Mahendra. To the people of the south-east (or south and the east) it is afternoon.

97. What is (when it is) the forenoon of the people of the southern and western countries it is the late night to the people in the northern territories.

98. It is early in the night for the territories that are in the north and east. Similarly (the following is the situation) when the sun shines in the abodes of the north, during the northern transit.

---

1. Compare *Supra* p. 242 note 2.

99. When the sun is in midday in Sukhā, the city of Varuṇa, it rises in Vibhāvarī, the city of Soma.

100-101. It is midnight in Amarāvatī and the sun sets in the city of Yama. Then the sun is in midday in Vibhā, the city of Soma. When the sun rises in Amarāvatī, it is midnight in Saṁyamanā and the sun sets in the city of Varuṇa.

102. Making the stars (and planets) whirl and revolving itself like a firebrand, the sun sets and then rises quickly.

103. Thus the sun moves in the four continents ending with the southern one. It rises and sets again and again.

104. The sun gives warmth to two abodes of Devas in the forenoon and two in the afternoon. With its rays alone it heats one of them during midday.

105. After rising the sun blazes with its rays of increasing heat till midday. Thereafter with its rays of decreasing heat it sets.

106. The eastern and western direction is determined by sunrise and sunset. While the sun blazes in front (its heat is felt) behind as well and on sides also.

107. Where the sun appears rising, it is known as sunrise to the people thereof; (while) where the sun vanishes, it is called sunset in regard to the people there.

108. Due to the far distant position of the sun and being covered up by the line (horizon) of the earth, its rays become invisible (being obstructed from sight). Hence it is not seen at night.

109. The appearance of the planets, stars and the sun as well as their rising and setting should be known by the magnitude of their height.

110. Fire and water have white lustre and the earth has black shadow. Since the sun is at a great distance at the time of rising, it appears to be without rays. Since it is without rays, it has the red lustre, and the absence of heat is due to its redness.

111. Wherever the sun is seen to be stationed on the line (of horizon) it is seen a thousand Yojanas above.

112. When the sun sets, the brilliance of the sun partially enters fires. Hence fire shines more brilliantly at night, even from a distance.

113. When the sun rises again, the brilliance of fire enters the sun. This together with the brilliance left in the sun at the time of sunset, makes it all the more brilliant. So the sun blazes during the day.

114. The light and heat of the sun and fire getting mixed together nourish people during day and night.

115. In the northern and southern halves of the earth, when the sun rises, night enters waters. Hence, during day waters are copper-coloured as a result of the entry of night.

116. When the sun sets, day enters waters. Hence during night, water appears white and bright as a result of the entry of day.

117. In this manner, in the southern and northern halves of the earth, day and night enter waters at the time of sunset and sunrise.

118. Day is the time when there is sunlight and night is the time when there is darkness. Hence, night is established (independently) due to this, while day is dependent on the sun.

119. When the sun passes through the middle of the sky, it traverses one-thirtieth of the diameter of the earth in a *Muhūrta* (forty-eight minutes).

120-121. In regard to the distance traversed in Yojanas, know that it is three million one hundred and fifty thousand in full. This is the distance traversed by the sun in one *Muhūrta*.

122-124. Traversing thus the sun reaches the southernmost limit in the month of Māgha and moves about there. The distance traversed by the sun during a day and a night is nine crores and fortyfive hundred thousand Yojanas.

125-126. When the sun returns from the south and traverses the equinox, it goes to the quarters north of the ocean of milk. Know the distance in Yojanas, of the zone traversed during the transit in the equinox. It is thirty million and eighty-one hundred thousand Yojanas.

127. When the sun, while traversing in the north, is in the (constellation) Śravaṇa, it traverses the northern regions of the sixth continent (called) Śāka-dvīpa.

128-129. The extent of the zone in the northern quarter in Yojanas as calculated by the Brāhmaṇas is one crore eight million and fiftyeight Yojanas.

130. The northern orbit is called Nāgavīthī[1] and the southern one is called Ajavīthī. When the sun rises in the constellations Mūla, Pūrvāṣāḍhā and Uttarāṣāḍhā it is called Ajavīthī. When the sun rises during the rise of the three stars after Abhijit (i.e. Aśvinī, Bharaṇī and Kṛttikā) it is called Nāgavīthī.

131-132. I shall mention the distance in Yojanas between these two quarters. This distance is three million one hundred and three thousand three hundred and thirtythree Yojanas.

133. Now I shall mention the distance between the southern cardinal points and meridians in Yojanas. Understand it.

134-135a. The external and internal distances between the two quarters and meridians are seven million and one hundred and seventyfive Yojanas.

135b-136a. During Uttarāyaṇa (the northern transit of the sun) the sun goes round the internal zones. During Dakṣiṇāyana (the southern transit) the sun goes round the external zones. This is the usual order.

136b-137. In the north there are one hundred and eighty zones. In the south also the sun traverses that much. Know the distance of the Maṇḍala (zone) in Yojanas.

138-139. The magnitude of this zone is twentyone thousand two hundred and twentyone Yojanas. This is the measurement of the zone calculated in Yojanas.

140. The diameter of the zone is laid obliquely. Everyday the sun traverses those (zones) in due order.

141. Just as the outer rim of the potter's wheel comes back (revolves) quickly, so also the sun returns quickly during its southern transit.

142. Within a short time, therefore, the sun traverses the extensive earth. Within twelve Muhūrtas it traverses quickly from the south to to the north.

---

1. According to Varāhamihira's *Bṛhat-Saṁhitā*, Vithi is a particular division of the planetary sphere comprising of three asterisms. Thus Nāgavīthī is constituted of asterisms Aśvinī, Bharaṇī and Kṛttikā while Ajavīthī is formed of Mūla, Pūrvāṣāḍhā and Uttarāṣāḍhā.

143. The sun passes through thirteen and a half constellations of stars during the day. During the night in eighteen Muhūrtas it passes through as many (i.e. thirteen and a half) of stars.

144. Just as the central region of the potters wheel moves slowly, so also in the course of the northern transit the sun moves slowly.

145. The sun passes through thirteen and a half stars. Hence it covers less extent of the earth in longer time.

146. In the later part of the northern transit, a day has the duration of eighteen Muhūrtas. Then also the sun proceeds very slowly.

147. The sun passes through thirteen and a half stars during half the time (i.e. the day time). During night, it passes through as many stars in the course of eighteen Muhūrtas.

148. Just as a ball of clay placed on the middle of the wheel whirls slowly, so also does the Pole Star.

149. They say that day and night together constitute thirty Muhūrtas. The whirling Pole between the two quarters revolves in a circle.

150. Just as the nave of the potter's wheel remains there only, similarly it should be known that the Pole Star whirls there only (without changing its place).

151. Thus the rotation of the sun in a circle between the two quarters is slow during day and fast during night.

152. During the northern transit, the movement of the moon (?) is slow during day and fast during night.

153. During the southern transit the sun's movement is fast during day and slow during night.

154. Dividing nights and days thus by its special diverse movements, the sun traverses the path by its even (regular) and uneven (irregular) movement.

155. Agastya (the star Canopus) traverses quickly over the guardians of the worlds stationed in the four quarters over the mountain Lokāloka. He divides days and nights by diverse movements.

156. He is the protector of the worlds to the south of Nāga-

vīthī and north of Lokāloka[1] and outside the path of Vaiśvānara.

157. There is as much of sunlight at the sides, behind and all round Lokāloka as there is on its top in front.

158. This mountain is above ten thousand Yojanas in height. It is partly bright and partly unilluminated. It is circular all round.

159. The stars, the moon, the sun and planets shine within the internal part of mount Lokāloka.

160. The world is only so far and no further. Beyond this there is darkness. The Lokāloka is single but Nirālokas (the darker sides) are numerous.

161. Since the sun in its circular movement unites the Lokāloka, the wise call the inter-space between Uṣā and Vyuṣṭi by the name Sandhyā. Uṣā is night and Vyuṣṭi is day.

162. A curse was cast on the wicked demons who were bent on devouring the sun at the time of twilight that they would have imperishability of bodies but they would be made to die (everyday).

163. Three crores of demons who are well-known as Mandehas seek everyday the rise of the sun. The wicked ones harass and desire to devour the blazing sun.

164-165. Then there was a terrific fight between them and the sun. The excellent Brāhmaṇas, Devas and Brahmā who had been performing the worship of Sandhyā sprinkled the holy water sanctified by Oṁkāra and Gāyatrī. As the water became adamantine, the Daityas were burnt.

166. Then the sun of great splendour, excessive lustre and valour rises up a hundred thousand Yojanas.

167. Then goes forth the Lord (the Sun-god) with his brilliant rays. He is surrounded by Brāhmaṇas and Vālakhilya Sages who have achieved their object (of protecting the Sun).

168. Fifteen *Nimeṣas* (winking time of the eye) make one *Kāṣṭhā*, thirty *Kāṣṭhās* make one *Kalā*; thirty *Kalās* make a

1. This is a mythical mountain encircling the world. The area within its circle is lighted (that gets light) while on the other side of this dividing mountain, there is utter darkness.

Muhūrta and thirty *Muhūrtas* make (a full day consisting of) a night and a day.

169. There is increase and decrease in the length of day by a few parts. But whether (it) is increased or decreased, the duration of twilight remains constant one *Muhūrta*.

170. The three *Muhūrtas* from the time when the sun rises from the horizon constitute the *Prātastana* (early morning) period which is one-fifth part of day.[1]

171. The period of three *Muhūrtas* from the early morning is called *Saṅgava* (forenoon). The period of three *Muhūrtas* after forenoon is called *Madhyāhna* (midday).

172-173. The period of three *Muhūrtas* from midday is called *Aparāhṇa* (afternoon).

The period of three *Muhūrtas* from afternoon is called *Sāyāhna*. There are only three (sacred?) Muhūrtas out (of a day) of fifteen Muhūrtas.

174. When the sun is in the equinox, day and the night each consists of fifteen Muhūrtas.

175. During the transit of the sun to the north and south the duration of day increases and decreases accordingly. Day swallowst night and night swallows day.

176. The equinox occurs between autumn and spring. The moon attains his seven[2] (?) Kalās during the day and the night.

177. Fifteen days make one Pakṣa (half of a month). Two halves make one month and two months make a *Ṛtu* (season). Three *Ṛtus* (seasons) make one *Ayana* and two *Ayanas* make a year.

178. The unit of time constituted by fifteen *Nimeṣas* is *Kāṣṭhā*. Thirty *Kāṣṭhās* make a *Kalā*. It consists of one hundred and sixty *Mātrās*.

179. The unit of time *Calā*[3] (*Kalā*?) is thus defined. It consists of ninetynine, thirty, thirtysix, sixtytwo or twenty-three Mātrās (Defective Verse).

---

1. Verses 170-173 give the five divisions of day, each consisting of three *Muhūrtas* in duration.
2. *Samam* 'equal number of Kalās' in Bd. P. I. 2.21.124.
3. A misprint for *Kalā*.

180. Forty thousand and eight hundred and seventy *Mātrās* make the unit of time called *Vidyuti*.[1] To be precise, it is ninety (instead of seventy).

181. In *Vaidhasaṁyuga* (?) they say that there are only four hundred *Mātrās* in a *Vidyuti*. This is known as *Carāṁśa*. The cause is Nālikā [Ghaṭikā = 24 minutes].

182. The five units of time, Saṁvatsara etc., have four alternative calculations.[2] The fixation[3] of Yuga is decisively done on this basis in all the units of time.

183. The first year is *Saṁvatsara*; the second is *Parivatsara*; the third is *Idvatsara*; the fourth is *Anuvatsara*; the fifth is *Vatsara*. Thus the various units of time are termed.

184-185. Twenty hundreds of *Parvans* (i.e. a thousand months) constitute a Yuga of the sun. These eighteen plus thirty (i.e. 48) Yugas make one *Udaya* of the sun. Thirty *Ṛtus* of the sun make ten *Ayanas*. Three thousand five hundred *Ayanas* make sixty months of the sun.

186. Thirty days and nights make one month of the sun. Sixtyone days and nights make one Danu.

187. One hundred and eightythree days constitute the time of one transit of the sun over the world.

188. The four types of calculation, viz. *Saura* (solar), *Saumya* (lunar) *Nākṣatra* (stellar) and *Sāvana* (sacrificial) should be clearly understood.

---

1. A new unit of time. In Bd. P. I. 221. 126-29 it is *Vidyut*. Its duration is not clear.

2. *Vide* verse 188 below. The calculation systems were : *Saura* (based on the sun, solar), *Saumya* (the lunar), *Nākṣatra* (stellar), *Sāvana* [relating to the three soma libations per day corresponding to the solar time (day, month etc.)] —MW 1210.

3. The Purāṇa records the age-old tradition that the Yuga period consists of five years. In Vedic times a Yuga was a period of five years and the names of those five years (with a slight variation in the name Idavatsara, viz. Ida-or Idu-vatsara) are the same as recorded here (*vide* Tai. S. V. 7. 1-3; Vāj. S. 27. 45; Atharva VI. 55. 3). Tai. Br. I.4.10.1 identifies Saṁvatsara, Parivatsara etc. with gods Agni, Āditya etc.

Kauṭilya in *Arthaśāstra* II. Ch. 20, declares : "A Yuga consists of five years", the same as in this Purāṇa.

189. There is a mountain Śṛṅgavān to the north of Śveta. Its three peaks appear to touch the sky.

190. Due to these peaks the mountain is known as Śṛṅgavān. The single path (leading to it), its extent and girth have been already mentioned.

191. Its eastern peak in the middle is golden. The southern peak consists of silver. It has crystalline lustre.

192. The excellent peak in the north consists of precious stones and jewels. Thus with the three peaks the mountain is well known as Śṛṅgavān.

193. Betwixt autumn and spring, the sun proceeds with medium velocity, neither fast nor slow. It reaches that peak of the mountain which is near the equinoctical line. The Dispeller of darkness, i.e. the sun, makes the night equal to the day.

194. Divine green-coloured horses are yoked to his great chariot. They appear (shining) as though they are smeared with the (solar) rays red like lotus.

195. During the *Meṣa* and *Tulā* zodiacal transit of the sun days and nights contain fifteen *Muhūrtas* beginning with sunrise.

196. When the sun is in the first quarter of the constellation Kṛttikā (Pleiades), the moon is known to be in the fourth part of the constellation Viśākhā.

197. When the sun traverses through the third part of Viśākhā, know that the moon has occupied the top of Kṛttikā.

198. The sages call that as equinox. Equinox shall be known through the (position of the) sun and the time through (that of) the moon.

199. When days and nights are equal it is equinox. During equinoctical transit oblations to the Pitṛs and charitable gifts to the Brāhmaṇas should be made. Brāhmaṇas are the mouths of Devas.

200. In view of the differences due to *Kalās*, *Kāṣṭhās* and *Muhūrtas*, the night of short duration and intercalary month occur. The full moon is of two types: Rākā and

Anumati[1]. The new moon too is of two types: Sinīvālī and Kuhū.[2]

201. The six months, viz. Māgha, Phālguna, Caitra, Vaiśākha, Jyeṣṭha and Āṣāḍha are the months of *Uttarāyaṇa* (northern transit of the sun). The six months, viz. Śrāvaṇa, Bhādrapada, Āśvina, Kārttika, Mārgaśīrṣa and Pauṣa are the months of *Dakṣiṇāyana* (southern transit of the sun).

202. These months make a year. The five years are the sons of Brahmā. *Ṛtus* are born of them. These are their parts.

203. Hence the New Moon Day (Amāvāsyā) is known as the leader of the Parvans. More than that the equinox should be known as favourable to Devas and Pitṛs.

204. After knowing this, a man should not get deluded regarding rites concerning Devas and Pitṛs. Hence equinox is remembered as all-pervasive by the people.

205. The worlds (*Lokas*) should be known (to exist) as far as light (the space illuminated by the sun) extends. The end of the world is also called *Loka* (of the Lokāloka mountain). The guardians of the worlds are stationed there in the middle of the Loklāoka mountain.

206. They (the Lokapālas) are the four noble souls who stay till the final dissolution of the world. They are Vairāja of good (brilliant) splendour, Kardama of good and merciful disposition, Parjanya of golden hair, and Ketumān of fixed determination.

207. The guardians of the worlds are stationed in the four quarters in Lokāloka, free from *Dvandvas* (mutually clashing opposites), devoid of arrogance, without an attendant, and absolutely uncontrolled by anyone else.

208. The path that is to the north of Agastya, south of Ajavīthī and outside the path of Vaiśvānara is called *Pitṛyāna*.

---

1. According to Nirukta XI-29, Paurṇamāsī (the full moon day) when mixed with the 14th Tithi, is *Anumati* and when mixed with the 1st day of the next (i.e. dark) fortnight is *Rākā*.

2. When Amāvāsyā (the new maon day) is mixed with the 14th Tithi, it is *Sinīvālī* and when mixed with the 1st Tithi of the next (i.e. bright) fortnight it is *Kuhū*.

209. Stationed there in the path of *Pitryāna* are the sages blessed with progeny who perform Agnihotras and who perpetuate the lineage of the world.

210. Desirous of the welfare of the worlds, they bless the activities of living beings and begin the activities of Ṛtviks. Theirs is the southern path.

211. In every Yuga they re-establish Dharma that has gone astray (being rudely shocked and shaken) by their progeny, penance, adherence to the bound of decency and persuit of learning.

212. The earlier ones on their death are reborn in the houses of the later ones. This series of births and deaths makes them live upto the hour of final dissolution of the universe.

213-215. There are eighty thousand householder-sages resorting to the path south of the sun. They stay there as long as the moon and the stars exist. In view of their worldly activities, the creation of living beings, natural desires and hatred, sexual intercourse and other sorts of enjoyments of pleasures as well as due to other causes, the Siddhas have resorted to cremation grounds. These sages, desirous of progeny, were born in the Dvāpara age.

216. The path north of Nāgavīthī and south of the Sapta Ṛṣis (Great Bear) is Devayāna, the northern path of the sun.

217. The Siddhas residing there are unsullied and celibate. They hate sexual intercourse. They have conquered death.

218. These *Ūrdhvaretas* sages (who have sublimated their sexual desire) are eighty thousand in number. They have resorted to the northern path of the sun and stay there till the final dissolution overtakes the universe.

219. In view of these pious causes they have attained deathlessness that will last as far as the final dissolution of the *Bhūtas* (elements). Deathlessness is predicated of those who survive till final dissolution.

220. This is the period (of life) till the three worlds last, for sages who do not return to the path of Saṁsāra. Others of

sublimated sexual urge are sinners as well as meritorious ones on account of their (sins of) murdering a Brāhmaṇa or the performance of the Aśvamedha (Horse sacrifice). The Ūrdhvaretas sages pass away at the end of the annihilation of all living beings.

221-222. To the north and above the world of sages, where Dhruva is said to be present, is the divine shining region of Viṣṇu. On reaching that region none is affected by sorrow or pain. It is the greatest region of Viṣṇu where Dharma, Dhruva and other Sādhakas of the world stay.

CHAPTER FIFTYONE*

Movements of the Luminary Bodies

Sūta said :

1. While narrating the details of Svāyaṁbhuva Manvantara, events of past and future have been narrated. Now I shall recount them in their proper order.

2. On hearing this, the sages asked Lomaharṣaṇa about the movements of the sun, the moon and the planets.

The Sages enquired :

3. How do these luminary bodies revolve in the firmament ? They all move in circular orbits and laterally. Still they do not collide with one another. Who makes them revolve ? Or do they revolve of their own accord ?

4. O excellent one, we wish to know this. Narrate it to us. This is a matter that deludes living beings. We have a desire to hear about this.

Sūta said :

5. Listen to and know this wonderful thing which though very clear and visible, deludes people.

6. It is Dhruva, son of Uttānapāda, who is stationed at the tail-end of what appears like the Gangetic porpoise with tails

*This chapter corresponds to Bd. P. I. 2.22.

towards the four quarters in the sky.[1] He has become the pivotal peg in the sky.

7. It revolves itself and makes the sun and the moon revolve along with the planets. While it revolves like a wheel, the stars follow it.

8-10. The group of stars moves at the will of Dhruva.[2] The sun, the moon, the fixed and moving stars and the planets are bound to Dhruva through the bonds in the form of groups of winds. It is from Dhruva that their combination, difference, seasonal movement, rising and setting, portentious phenomena, southern and northern transit, the equinoxes and colours begin to function.

11. Rain, heat, snow, night, twilight, day and the auspicious and inauspicious events befalling the subjects—everything begins to function from Dhruva.

12. The sun covers the stars etc. activised by Dhruva and stands by. Hence his rays are illuminated. The sun is the deadly fire (that ends the world).

13. O Brāhmaṇas, in the course of his revolution, the sun brightens the quarters by his brilliance. With the mass of his rays in the company of the wind all round, O excellent Brāhmaṇas, the sun takes up the waters of the universe.

14. The water drunk in by the sun gets transferred to the moon from the solar fire. Through the Nāḍis (tubular veins) full of wind the activity of sustaining the worlds begins.

15. What exudes from the moon, the sun receives at its tips. When the wind blows the clouds let it shower on the earth.

16. Thus the water is poured and it falls again and again. The same water assumes various shapes.[3]

17. For the up-keep of the living beings, Māyā has been created. The three worlds including the mobile and immobile beings are pervaded by this Māyā.

---

1. Cf. Bh. P. V. 23.4.7 and Bd. P. I.2.22.6.
2. Bh. P.V. 23.2 attributes this driving power to Kāla (Time).
3. This belief in indestructibility of water is surprisingly modern, though the concept of water-cycle is archaic.

18. The sun is the lord of the universe; he is the creator of the worlds; he is the thousand-rayed lord; he is the lord of the subjects; he is the sustainer of the world; he is lord Viṣṇu himself.

19. The water of the worlds has exuded from the moon in the sky. The universe is, therefore, supported by the moon. This fact has now been declared.

20. The hot rays emanate from the sun; the cool rays from the moon. These two powerful hot and cool rays sustain the universe.

21. The holy Gaṅgā with pure waters has the moon for support. O excellent Brāhmaṇas, the great rivers have the son of the moon as their leader.

22-23. Water is present in the bodies of living beings. When the bodies of the mobile and immobile beings burn, the water becomes vapour and rises on all sides. Thereby clouds arise and they are the receptacles of water. The brilliance of the sun takes up the water from the living beings through the rays.

24. The rays take the waters from the ocean through the wind. The revolving sun imparts water to the clouds by means of his white rays in the proper seasons.

25. When blown by the wind, the water drips from the clouds. The clouds scatter showers for the benefit of living beings when they are blown by the winds in all directions.

26. The clouds shower for six months in order to nourish and develop all living beings. They produce the rumbling sound of thunder arising from the wind and brilliant lightning arising from the fire.

27. The root √*mih* means 'to exude', 'to sprinkle'. Since the clouds exude water, they are called *Megha*. That from which water does not fall off they call *Abhra*.[1]

28. Clouds arise in three ways. Their source of origin are three. The types of clouds are *Āgneyas*, *Brahmajas* and *Pakṣajas*.[2]

---

1. *Abhra* from √*bhraṁs* is a fanciful derivation. It is usually derived from √*abhr* 'to wander about' + suffix *ac* (i.e. *a*) or from *ap* + √*bhṛ* + suffix a.

2. Verses 21-52 give a pseudo-scientific classification of clouds by ancient Indians. It contains some interesting poetic flashes of imagination.

Thus the three types of clouds have been narrated. I shall mention their mode of origin.

29. Clouds arising from the waters of ocean are *Āgneyas*. They function therefrom. Chilliness and winds on a cloudy day are their attributes.

30. They assume the shapes of buffaloes, boars and elephants in their rut. They roam about and sport very near the earth.

31. The clouds are called *Jīmūtas* since they are the source of living beings. They do not have the attributes of thunder. They hang down due to the water-content in them.

32. These clouds are huge and silent. They follow the current of the wind submissively. They shower water within a half to one Krośa (from the earth).

33. They shower on the tops and ridges of mountains and sport. They pierce the wombs of the flocks of the white cranes. They make them conceive.

34. The types of clouds called *Brahmajas* are born of the breath of Brahmā. They have the attribute of lightning. They are fond of rumbling sounds. They thunder.

35. Due to their loud report the earth gets a thrill. Like a queen crowned by a king earth attains youth once again. Being the cause of the birth of the living beings, the earth endears itself to the clouds.

36. The birth of living beings is from these clouds called *Jīmūtas*. These clouds resort to the second layer of wind called *Pravaha*.

37. These clouds shower from a distance of a Yojana, half a Yojana or one-fourth of a Yojana from the earth. They rain in continuous torrents.

38. The wings of the powerful mountains who could go as per their will and pleasure, had grown very large. Indra cut them off for the (welfare of all) living beings.

39. These clouds are called *Puṣkaras*. They are huge and they are exhilarated with their waters. For that reason they are called *Puṣkarāvartakas* (revolving Puṣkaras).

40. They assume different forms. They are very terrible.

The winds viz. *Āvaha, Pravaha, Vivaha, Udvaha, Saṁvaha* and *Parivaha* are cloud-bearing. They are winds of different types with different functions.

They pour forth showers at the end of Kalpas. They control the Saṁvartaka fire.

41. The third type of clouds mentioned before shower at the close of the Yugas. They assume many forms and fill the surface of the earth. They resort to the wind called *Paravāha* and conclude a Kalpa.

42. All the clouds are reputed to have been born of the same Cosmic Egg-shell of Prākṛta form from which the self-born four-faced Brahmā was born.

43. It is the smoke that makes them all fully developed without any difference. The most excellent among them is *Parjanya*. And there are four elephants of the quarters.

44. Elephants, mountains and clouds along with serpents belong to one and the same family, though they are severally manifested, since water is known as the source of (their) origin.

45. During Hemanta (early winter) *Parjanya* and the elephants of the quarters born of chilliness shower snow (drops) for making the corn flourish.

46. The great wind called *Parivaha* is their support. It is that lordly wind which sustains the Gaṅgā that flows through the sky. It is the sacred, heavenly river, flooded over with water, stationed in the heavenly path like the divine Lore (Vidyā).

47. The elephants of the quarters spray all round drops of water from the Gaṅgā by means of their huge trunks. That (spray of water) is called the hoarfrost.

48. The mountain to the south of Meru is Hemakūṭa. There is a city called Puṇḍra to the south of this mountain and to the north of Himālaya.

49-50. The rain arising from this shower of mist, falls on this mountain. The wind Āvaha blowing from Himavat brings drops of mist with it and sprinkles them over the great mountain. The remnant of the shower crosses Himālaya and comes here thereafter in order to make the western region flourish.

51. The two types of clouds that make the regions flourish have been already described. The sun alone is mentioned as the maker of showers.

52. Controlled by Dhruva, the sun causes the rainfall through these two (types) of clouds. The wind encompassed by Dhruva withdraws the rain.

53. The wind starts from the planet sun and traverses the entire stellar zone. At the end of the day it enters the sun encompassed by Dhruva.

54. Now listen to the description of the Sun's Chariot.[1] It has one wheel with five spokes and three naves.

55. The Lord Sun goes ahead on his Chariot that has golden wheel, that is very powerful, that has knotty joints, that has six-fold rim and one felly, which dispells darkness on the way.

56. Its width is ten thousand Yojanas. Its length from the middle (cockpit) to the shaft is twice of it (twenty thousand Yojanas).

57. This Chariot had been made by Brahmā for some specific purpose. It is divine and golden. Swift horses have been yoked to it.

58. It is the Vedic metres that have assumed the forms of the horses. It is stationed in the sphere of Śukra (Venus). It has the characteristics similar to those of Varuṇa's chariot. In this shining Chariot the Sun traverses the sky.

59. These parts of the Chariot of the Sun are fashioned out of the parts of the year in due order.

60. The day is the nave of the wheel. The Chariot has one wheel. The spokes are the five seasons and the rim is the sixth season.

61. The year is the inner seat of the Chariot; the two *Ayanas* are the two shafts; the *Mnhūrtas* are the fastening ropes and the *Kalās* are the pins of the yoke.

62. The *Kāṣṭhās* constitute its nose and the *Kṣaṇas* (moments) make up the shaft; the *Nimeṣas* are the axle-trees and the *Lavas* make up the poles.

63. The night is the frontal fender; *Dharma* is its highly rising banner. *Artha* and *Kāma* are the two tips of the pole and axle.

1. Verses 54 ff. give a symbolic description of the Chariot of the Sun.

64-65. The seven Vedic metres, viz. Gāyatrī, Triṣṭup, Anuṣṭup, Jagatī, Paṅkti, Bṛhatī and Uṣṇik, have assumed the forms of horses and bear the burden. The wheel is fixed to the axle and the axle is fastened to Dhruva.

66. The axle turns along with the wheel; Dhruva turns along with the axle. Urged by Dhruva the axle turns along with the wheel.

67. This is the description of the peculiar construction of the chariot. By means of the parts joined together a shining chariot is fashioned out.

68-69. With that the lord Sun moves quickly in the heaven. There are two reins of the chariot tied to the tips of the pole and the axle. Propelled by Dhruva the chariot moves in the sky in a circular fashion.

70. Handled by Dhruva the tips of the pole and the axle on the right side of the chariot appear like white reins in a chariot of two wheels.

71. The two rays (reins) follow the whirling Dhruva. The tips of the pole and axle of the chariot are wind-waves.

72-73. Just as the rope tied to a peg revolves in all directions, so the two rays (reins) shrink in the zones in the Uttarāyaṇa. They increase in the Dakṣiṇāyana. The two reins handled by Dhruva lead the Sun.

74. When these are dragged by Dhruva, the Sun takes the internal revolutions.

75-76. The Sun thus traverses the one hundred and eighty circular zones of the two quarters. When the reins are released by Dhruva, it revolves round the external zones. Encircling them the Sun moves fast round the zones.

CHAPTER FIFTYTWO

Movement of Dhruva

Sūta said :

1. That chariot is occupied by the Devas, Ādityas, Sages, Gandharvas, Apsaras-s, Grāmaṇīs (Yakṣas), Serpents and Rākṣasas[1].

2-5. The following reside in the Sun in succession for a period of two months each[2]. Among them (gods) Dhātṛ, Aryamā, (sages) Pulastya, Pulaha the Prajāpati, the Serpents (Nāgas) Vāsuki and Saṅkīrṇāra, (Gandharvas) Tuṁburu and Nārada, the foremost among the singing Gandharvas, the Apsaras-s Kratusthalī and Puñjikasthalī, Grāmaṇīs or Yakṣas Rathakṛcchra, Taporya[3] (?), Rākṣasas and Yātudhānas Heti and Praheti—these reside in the Sun during the months of Madhu and Mādhava[4] (i. e. Caitra and Vaiśākha). [These are the months in the season Vasanta (the Spring)]

---

1. The sublime concept of the Solar Chariot is based on Vāj.S. 15.15-19. Here Devas, Sages and Gandharvas represent light and immortality—the actinic portion of the Solar Spectra. The Serpents, Grāmaṇis (Yakṣas) and Rākṣasas signify heat or death, the thermal field of the Spectra. This Heptad of the Sun signifies the mutual difference in the different "wavelengths" of the seven colours. This may be regarded as Purāṇic VIBGYOR.

2. Verses 2-26 enumerate the names of the different Devas, Sages etc.—the heptad who occupy the Solar Chariot every two months. These verses are common to other Purāṇas such as the Mt. P. Ch. 125, Bd. P. I.2. 23.2.24. The Vedic names of these occupants of the Chariot are somewhat different.

3. 'Rathaujas' in Bd. P. I.2.23.2-5.

4. The following are the names of modern months for the old ones.

Old names	*New names*
Madhu	Caitra
Mādhava	Vaiśākha
Śuci	Jyeṣṭha
Śukra	Āṣāḍha
Nabhas	Śrāvaṇa
Nabhasya	Bhādrapada
Iṣa	Āśvina
Ūrja	Kārtika
Saha	Mārgaśirṣa
Sahasya	Pauṣa

6-8. During the months of Śuci and Śukra (i.e. Jyeṣṭha and Āṣāḍha), the months of the season grīṣma (summer), the following reside in the Sun: (gods) Mitra, Varuṇa; (sages) Atri, Vasiṣṭha; (Nāgas) Takṣaka, Raṁbha; (Apsaras-s) Menakā, Sahajanyā; Gandharvas Hahā and Huhū; Grāmaṇīs (Yakṣas) Rathasvana and Rathacitra; and Yātudhānas (Demons) Pauruṣeya and Dhava (Vadha in Bd. P.).

9-11. Then during the months of Nabhas and Nabhasya (i.e. Śrāvaṇa and Bhādrapada) the (following) other deities reside in the Sun: (gods) Indra and Vivasvān. So also (sages) Aṅgiras, Bhṛgu; the two Nāgas Elāparṇa and Śaṅkhapāla; (Gandharvas) Viśvāvasu and Ugrasena, Prātaḥ and Aruṇa; Apsaras-s Pramlocā and Nimlocā; the Yātudhāna Vyāghra; and the Nāga Śveta.

12-15. During the autumn, in the months of Iṣa and Ūrja (i.e. Āśvina and Kārttika) noble sages and deities occupy the Sun: (gods) Parjanya and Pūṣan; (sages) Bhāradvāja and Gautama; Gandharvas Viśvāvasu and Suṛabhi; the two Apsaras-s of auspicious characteristics Viśvācī and Ghṛtācī; the famous Serpents Airāvata and Dhanañjaya; the leaders of armies and Grāmaṇīs Senajit and Suṣeṇa; and the two Yātudhānas Āpa and Vāta.

16-19. During the two months of Saha and Sahasya (i.e. Mārgaśīrṣa and Pauṣa), the two months of early winter, the following reside in the Sun: (gods) Aṁśa and Bhaga; the sages Kāśyapa and Ṛtu; the two Senānīs and Grāmaṇīs Tārkṣya and Ariṣṭanemi; the two fierce Yātudhānas Vidyut and Sphūrja; and the Nāgas Mahāpadma and Karkoṭaka; the two Gandharvas Citrasena and Ūrṇāyu; and the splendid Apsaras-s Urvaśī and Vipracitti.

20-23. During the two months of late winter the following reside in the Sun for two months: (gods) Tvaṣṭṛ and Viṣṇu; (the sages) Jamadagni and Viśvāmitra; the two Serpents Kambala and Aśvatara, the sons of Kadru; the two Gandharvas

---

Tapas	Māgha
Tapasya	Phālguna

The new year begins in Māgha according to this Purāṇa and Bd. P. (I.2.21.151).

Dhṛtarāṣṭra and Sūryavarcas; the two Apsaras-s Tilottamā and splendid Raṁbhā; the world-famous Grāmaṇīs; Ṛtajit and Satyajit; and the Rākṣasas Brahmopeta and Yajñopeta.

24. The twelve sets of seven deities (heptads) identifyng themselves with their place of residence augment the excellent splendour of the Sun with their extra refulgence.

25. With well-known hymns of prayer the sages eulogise the Sun. Gandharvas and Apsaras-s attend upon him with dance and music.

26. The Grāmaṇīs, Yakṣas and Bhūtas collect hideous and terrible things. The Serpents bear the Sun and the Yātudhānas follow him. Worshipping the Sun from the time of rising, the sages Vālakhilyas lead him to the mountain of Sunset.

27-28. The Sun blazes with his brilliance and in accordance with the prowess, penance, Yogic power, truthfulness, righteousness and strength of these deities. These stay with the Sun for (a period of) two months.

29. They are the (sets of seven): the Sages, Devas, Gandharvas Serpents, groups of Apsaras-s, Grāmaṇīs and most of the Yakṣas and Yātudhānas.

30. On being glorified, these blaze, rain, shine, blow, create, and dispel the inauspicious demerits of living beings.

31. They remove the auspicious merit of the wicked people and in some cases remove the sins of mobile beings.

32. They are seated in the celestial aerial chariot. They go as they please. They have the velocity of the wind. They revolve along with the Sun and follow him throughout the day.

33. Showering rains, blazing and delighting people, they protect living beings till the end of Manvantara.

34. This position of the deities (who identify themselves with it) exists in all the Manvantaras in the same manner whether past, present or future.

35. These sets of seven reside in the Sun and the space around him in all the fourteen Manvantaras and creations.

36. In accordance with the seasons, the Sun changes his rays, releasing heat in the summer, mist and fog in the winter and rain during the rainy season and demarcates day and night. He (thus) propitiates Devas, Pitṛs and human beings.

37. By means of the ray (Suṣumṇa), the Sun develops the Moon in the bright half (of the month) day by day and it is complete (full on the full-moon days). Devas imbibe its nectar during the dark half. Thus he propitiates Devas with the nectar.

38. After being sucked thus, the moon has only two Kalās (digits) left. Pitṛs take it as Kavya offering. Devas and Saumyas consider it as nectar and drink it.

39. Men conquer (satisfy) hunger by means of foodstuffs, beverages and medicinal herbs developed by means of rains, with water lifted up and released as rain-showers by means of his rays by the Sun.

40. For half a month Devas are propitiated through nectar. For half a month Pitṛs are propitiated by Svadhā food. The Sun sustains human beings perpetually through food. The Sun sustains them through his rays.

41. The Sun moves ahead in his chariot of green horses. Through his rays he takes up waters. At the time of their release he discharges them. Thus the Sun sustains the mobile and immobile beings perpetually.

42. He is carried by green horses. By means of his thousands of rays he drinks water. While being carried by green horses he showers it again.

43. Thus the Sun moves ahead quickly in his celestial sphere by means of his single-wheeled chariot dragged by the unimpaired gentle horses.

44. In the course of a day and night he traverses over the world of seven continents and oceans by means of his single-wheeled chariot dragged by the seven horses.

45. The Vedic metres that have assumed the form of horses are yoked to the chariot near the wheel. They can assume any form they please. They are yoked but once. They have the unlimited speed of the mind.

46. They (are accompanied) by tawny coloured masters expounding the Brahman (or the Vedas). They cover one hundred and eighty zones within one year.

47. They are yoked in the beginning of the Kalpa. They continue their journey till the final dissolution. They traverse the

external and the internal zones day by day. Surrounded by Vālakhilyas they wander day and night.

48. The Sun is eulogised by the sages through well-known words of prayer. He is served by Gandharvas and Apsaras-s by means of songs and dances. The lord of the heaven, the Sun thus traverses by means of his horses.

49. The Moon too moves among the stars that stay in the pathway of heaven (vīthī). The increase and decrease of its rays are similar to the increase and decrease of the Sun.

50-51. The chariot of the Moon has three wheels.[1] The horses are tied in pairs on either side. The chariot along with the horses and the charioteer has come out of the womb of the waters. The three wheels have a hundred spokes. Excellent white horses have been yoked thereto. They are ten in number. They are slender and divine. They are unimpeded and have the velocity of the mind. They are yoked but once (in the beginning of the Kalpa) and they travel till the end of the Yugas.

52. A white serpent acts as the rein in that chariot. All the horses are of the same colour. They carry the conch-coloured Moon.

53-54. The names of the ten horses are—Yāyu, Trimanas, Vṛṣa, Rājīvala, Haya, Vāma, Turaṇya, Haṁsa, Vyomin and Mṛga. They carry the Moon till the close of the day (?)

55-57. The gentle Moon goes ahead surrounded by Devas and Pitṛs. In the beginning of the bright half when the Sun is in front, the interior of the city of the Moon is filled duly everyday. The Sun develops the Moon drunk by Devas in the declining fortnight. The Moon is drunk for fifteen days and the Sun replenishes one part everyday. Nourished by Suṣumna the white digits flourish.

58. They decline and decrease in the dark half and develop and nourish in the bright half. Thus the body of the Moon is developed fully by the vigour of the Sun.

59. Developing gradually in the bright half day by day, the Moon attains completion on the full moon day.

---

1. Verses 50-83 describe chariots etc. of other planets like the Moon, Mercury (Budha) and others.

60. Beginning with the second day in the dark half and ending with the fourteenth day Devas drink the watery wine, the nectar of the Moon that is essentially made up of water and that by nature consists of tasty essence.

61-62. By the brilliance of the Sun the nectar is collected and prepared in the course of a fortnight. On the full moon night Devas, Pitṛs and the Sages attend the Moon facing the Sun.

63. The digits being drunk decline gradually in the dark half and become refilled in the bright half.

64. When days pass on gradually Devas drink the Moon for half a month until the new-moon day and go away. On the new-moon day Pitṛs resort to the Moon.

65. When the fifteenth part of the digits is left over in the later part of the day, that part is used up by the groups of Pitṛs.

66. The remaining digit is drunk by Pitṛs during the period of two Kalās. From the lunar rays the nectar of Svadhā comes out on the new-moon night. They drink the nectar and remain content for a month. They attain immortality.

67. All these (following) are Pitṛs : Saumyas, Barhiṣads, Agniṣvāttas and Kavyas.

68. The years, which are enumerated by Brāhmaṇas as five, are Kavyas. Saumyas should be known as *Ṛtus* (Seasons) and Barhiṣads are remembered as *Māsas* (Months). Agniṣvāttas are *Ārtavas* (Fertility period?) and these are the creations of the Pitṛs, O Brāhmaṇas.

69-71. When the digit is being drunk by Pitṛs on the fifteenth night i.e. Amāvāsyā, the last digit is left and it is refilled. The increase and decrease of the Moon are on the sixteenth day (at the beginning of each next half). Thus the increase and the decrease of the Moon are caused by the Sun. I shall now mention the increase and decrease of the stars and planets; and also describe the chariot of Rāhu later.

72. The chariot of the son of the Moon (Budha, Mercury) is bright, full of watery splendour. It is yoked with eight tawny horses and can move as fast as the wind.

73. The chariot resembles cloud. It has the frontal

fender and the axle-tree at the bottom. The charioteer is divine and great. It has all the fittings, banner and flag-staff.

74-75. The chariot of Bhārgava (Venus) is glorious. In refulgence it resembles the Sun. It is yoked with excellent horses born of the earth and having various colours. They are white (tawny), brown, blue, yellow, red, black, green, spotted and variegated. All the ten are highly blessed. They are not lean. They have the speed of the wind.

76. The chariot of Mars is glorious and golden. It is yoked with eight red, unimpeded horses. They are born of fire, and they can go everywhere. (Mars) traverses the signs of zodiac in straight, curved and circular lines.

77. Then the scholarly preceptor of Devas, Bṛhaspati (Jupiter) of the family of Aṅgiras, moves ahead in his golden chariot yoked with red horses.

78. Eight horses as speedy, as the wind and divine in nature, are yoked to it. In a constellation this planet stays for a year; then he traverses quickly.

79. Śanaiścara (Saturn) rides in a chariot made of black iron and traverses slowly. His horses are variegated in colour. They are born of the ether.

80. Rāhu's chariot is of Tāmasic nature (dark-coloured). Eight black horses, as speedy as the mind, are yoked to it.

81. Leaving the Sun, Rāhu rushes at the Moon during the lunar *Parvan* (i.e. the Full-Moon). Leaving the Moon it rushes at the Sun during the solar *Parvan* (i.e. the New-Moon day).

82. Horses yoked to the chariot of Ketu are eight. They are as speedy as the wind. They have the colour like smoke from burning straw. They are strong. They are tawny (and variegated in colour) like donkeys.

83. These horses of the planets I have explained along with their chariots. They are fastened to Dhruva by gaseous rays.

84. Being fastened by invisible gaseous rays, these (planets) being whirled, revolve in an orderly manner.

85. Being bound to Dhruva, the Moon, the Sun and the planets move about in the firmament. The planetary system united to Dhruva follows it as it whirls.

86. Just as a boat is carried along by the water in a river, so the abodes of Devas are carried by the gaseous rays. Hence all the groups of Devas are seen in the firmament by everyone.

87. There are as many gaseous rays as there are stars. They are tied to Dhruva. They whirl Dhruva and whirl by themselves.

88. Just as oil-crushers whirl and cause the wheel (of an oil-mill) to whirl, so also do the luminaries fixed (to Dhruva) on all sides by gaseous rays (bonds).

89. They move about like a fire-brand on being urged by the whirling wind. Since the wind bears the luminary bodies, it is called *Pravaha.*

90. Thus the cluster of the luminary bodies united to Dhruva traverses the firmament. The Gangetic porpoise-like appearance in the sky made up of the stars is Dhruva. If it is seen in the night, the sin committed during the day is quelled.

91. Persons looking at Dhruva regularly live for as many years, or even more, as there are stars in the "Gangetic porpoise" in the firmament.[1]

92. This permanent Gangetic porpoise shall be realised in its various divisions. Its upper jaw is known as Uttānapāda.

93. Its lower jaw is Yajña. Dharma resorts to the top of its head. Nārāyaṇa abides in its heart and Aśvins stay in its forelegs.

94. Varuṇa and Aryaman are its hind thighs. Saṁvatsara is its penis and Mitra resorts to its anus.

95. In its tail are Agni, Mahendra, Marīci, Kaśyapa and Dhruva. The four stars (?) and the Gangetic porpoise do not set.

96. The stars, Moon, Sun, planets and constellations stay in the sky with face up or in front. They are in the form of a wheel.

97. These are presided over by Dhruva. They circumambulate Dhruva which acts like the pivotal peg in the firmament.

---

1. Verses 91-95 describe the heavenly Gangetic porpoise with various stars forming parts of its body.

98. Among Dhruva, Agni and Kaśyapa Dhruva is the most excellent. It alone whirls round at the top of the mountain Meru.

99. With its face downwards it attracts the group of luminaries. Looking at Meru, it circumambulates it.

CHAPTER FIFTYTHREE

Arrangement of Luminaries

Śāṁśapāyana said :

1. Hearing this the sages became doubtful. They asked Lomaharṣaṇa again for its clarification.

The Sages said :

2. Sir, you have mentioned the famous abodes of Devas. How are these abodes ? How are these luminaries ? Please describe.

3. Please say everything precisely about luminaries.

On hearing their words the pious *Sūta said*:

4. I shall explain to you what has been mentioned by great intellectuals of perfect knowledge, in connection with the origin of the Sun, the Moon, how the Moon and the Sun are the abodes of gods.

5. Now I shall mention the origin of three fires[1]: celestial, elemental (atmospheric) and terrestrial.

6. When the great night came (lit. dawned) on Brahmā, born of the Unmanifest, the universe became undefined and enveloped by nocturnal darkness.

---

1. Vedic Aryans regarded Agni (Fire-god) as a great deity and it was given designations according to its functions. Purāṇas amplified the tradition and attributed cosmic functions in verses 5-18. Heating being the common factor between the Sun and fire, they are in a way identified. The credit of creating seasons through the rays of the Sun is given to Fire-god also.

7. Only four elements were there. That which blazed at first is called terrestrial fire. The fire that blazes in the Sun is called *Śuci* (celestial).

8. I shall now mention the characteristics of the fire called *Vaidyuta* (atmospheric) fire. Three fires—Vaidyuta (lightning), Jāṭhara (gastric) and Saura (solar) are born of the womb of waters. Hence by drinking water the Sun blazes in the sky with his rays.

9. The fire from lightning that burns trees cannot be quelled by water. Nor the fire in human bellies can be quenched by it.

10. The fire existing in the belly is full of rays. It is a great fire. The diffused light of the Sun devoid of heat is white and spreads everywhere.

11. It partially (with its quarter part) enters the fire at night, when the Sun sets. So the fire is seen blazing from a distance.

12. The heat of the fire permeates the Sun when he rises again. With a quarter of the heat the terrestrial fire blazes forth.

13. The light and heat of the Sun and fire develop by day and night, thanks to this mutual permeation.

14. In the northern or southern hemisphere, when the Sun rises, the night enters the water. Hence the water becomes copper-coloured during the day, because of the entry of the night.

15. When this Sun sets again, the day enters the water. So during the night the water sparkles due to the entry of day.

16. In this manner, in the southern and northern hemispheres, at the time of sunrise and sunset, the day and the night enter the waters.

17. That which blazes in the Sun drinking the waters through the rays is the celestial fire mixed with the terrestrial one.

18-19. The celestial fire of a thousand rays is circular and shaped like a jar. With its thousand rays it takes up the water of the rivers, oceans, wells, desert lands, both mobile, i.e. flowing, and stationary. The Sun of golden form has a thousand rays that exude rain, chillness and heat.

20. Four hundred of those rays having variegated forms shower rain. The rays that generate rain are called Vandanās, Vandyās, Ṛtanās, Nūtanās and Amṛtās.

21. Apart from these, there are three hundred rays that exude chilliness. These are called Dṛśyās, Medhyās, Vāhyās and Hrādinīs.

22-23. These are called Candrās. All these rays are yellow-coloured.

The rays that generate hot energy are Śuklās, Kakubhs, Gaus and Viśvabhṛts. They are also three hundred. All of them are white. With these the Sun sustains human beings, Pitṛs and Devas alike.

24. He gratifies human beings through medicinal herbs; the Pitṛs by means of Svadhā; and Devas by means of nectar.

25. During spring and the summer he blazes with the three hundred rays. During rains and autumn he generates rain by the four (hundred rays).

26. The Sun creates mist and fog by means of the three (hundred rays) during early and late winter. He deposits energy on the medicinal herbs. By means of Svadhā he propitiates Pitṛs. By means of nectar of three varieties he bestows immortality.

27. Thus thousand rays of the Sun achieve the purpose of the worlds. They differ according to the season by exuding water, chilliness and heat.

28. Thus the bright and sparkling solar zone is described. It is the support and source of origin of the stars, planents and the Moon. All these, the stars, the Moon and the planets should be known to have originated from the Sun.

29. The Moon is the lord of stars; the Sun is the king of planets. The remaining five planets are known as Īśvaras having forms as they please.

30. It is said that the fire is Sun and (the source of) water is the Moon. Now listen to the source of other planets as explained in detail.

31. The commander-in-chief of the army of Devas, Skanda, is said to be the origin of Aṅgāraka (Mars). Those who have perfect knowledge know that Nārāyaṇa is the origin of Lord Budha.

32. Lord Rudra himself who is the prototype of Dharma, the son of Vivasvat, in the world, is the origin of the great planet Saturn, the slowest of all planets. He is the most excellent among Brāhmaṇas.

33. The two great planets with bright rays are Śukra (Venus) and Bṛhaspati (Jupiter), the preceptors of Asuras and Devas. They are the sons of Prajāpati.

34. There is no doubt that the entire universe, all the worlds including Devas, Asuras and human beings, have their roots in the Sun.

35. It is his universal splendour, O leading Brāhmaṇas, that shines as the refulgence of all heaven-dwellers such as Rudra, Indra, Viṣṇu and the Moon.

36. He is the Ātman of all, the lord of all the worlds. He is the primordial great deity. Everything originates from him and merges in him.

37. O Brāhmaṇas, the creation and dissolution of the worlds arose from the Sun formerly. The Universe is known as a planet. The Sun is the most excellent and refulgent planet.

38. From him are born again and again and into him merge after death, all the moments, Muhūrtas, days, nights, fortnights, months, seasons, years, sets of five years and Yugas.

39. Their time-calculation is impossible without the Sun. Without time there is no sacred scripture, no initiation, and no daily routine.

40. Without him how can the seasons be named and classified? How can the foodgrains and plants grow? How can there be medicinal herbs of good quality?

41. Without the Sun, the thief of water, the scorcher of the Universe, all the affairs of Devas here and in heaven cannot go on.

42. O excellent Brāhmaṇas, he alone is Kāla (Time) and fire. He is the twelve-souled Prajāpati. He blazes the three worlds including mobile and immobile beings.

43. He alone is a mass of splendour. He is the entire world and benefactor of all the worlds. Resorting to the uppermost path of Vāyu, he blazes this Universe by means of his splendour at the sides, above and below.

44. Seven among the thousand rays of the Sun already mentioned by me are the most excellent. They are the causes of the planets.[1]

45. They are—Suṣumna, Harikeśa, Viśvakarman, Viśvaśravas, Sampadvasu, Arvāvasu and Svarāṭ.

46. The Sun's ray called Suṣumna develops the declining Moon. It is said to be exerting power laterally and from above.

47. The ray Harikeśa is said to be the primordial cause of the stars. It spreads forward. Towards the south the ray Viśvakarman makes Budha.

48. The next ray called Viśvaśravas is the source of Śukra (Venus). The ray Sampadvasu is the cause of Lohita (Mars).

49. The sixth ray Arvāvasu is the source of origin of Bṛhaspati (Jupiter). The ray Svarāṭ develops Śanaiścara (Saturn).

50. Thus all the planets, stars and constellations flourish by the energy of the Sun. The entire Universe too flourishes thereby. The *Nakṣatra-hood* (i.e. the term Nakṣatra) is so called due to (fact that) they do not decline.[2]

51. The Sun too is a Nakṣatra because he falls into their Kṣetras (spheres) and then by means of his rays he takes them up.

52. The constellations (*Tārakas*) are so called because they have crossed (the ocean of existence) by means of merit, because they resort to the planets at the end of their pious actions. They are called *Tārakas* because they enable others to cross (the ocean of existence) and because they are sparkling.

---

1. Verses 45-49 trace the origin of planets to the specific rays of the Sun.

2. Our author gives popular etymologies which are not tenable, e.g. in vv. 51-55 we have derivations as follows :

(1) *Nakṣatra* 'a Star' traced to √*kṣi*, 'to get diminished'. 'That which does not get diminished' (*na kṣīyate*) is *Nakṣatra* but grammatically, it is from √*nakṣ* 'to go'+*tran* (uṇādi). *Āditya* is normally derived as *Aditi*+*ṇya* (=ya), 'the son of Aditi' but our author traces it to *ā*+*dā* 'to take away'.

53. The Sun is called Āditya, because it always removes (lit. takes away √*ā-dā*) darkness of the night both celestial and terrestrial. He is great by his refulgence.

54. The root √*su* means 'to throb' and 'to exude.' Since it diffuses light and exudes water it is called "*Savitṛ*".

55. The root √*cad* which gives the word 'Candra' has many meanings: 'to delight,' 'to sparkle', 'to act as nectar' and 'to be cool.'

56-57. The divine and sparkling orbs of the Sun and the Moon are in the sky. They sparkle like blazing fire. They are auspicious and they resemble a circular jar. The orb of the Moon is of solid water and the orb of the Sun is of solid refulgence.

58. Devas resorting to the stars, the Sun and the planets enter these spots in all the Manvantaras.

59. These abodes of Devas are named after them. The Sun enters the abode *Saura*; the Moon enters the abode *Saumya*.

60. The valorous sixteen-rayed Śukra (Venus) enters the abode *Śaukra*. Bṛhaspati (Jupiter) enters the abode *Bṛhat*; Lohita (Mars) enters the abode *Lauhita*; Śanaiścara (Saturn) enters the abode *Śānaiścara*.

61. The planets are brightly illuminated due to their contact with the rays of the Sun.[1] The diameter of the Sun is nine thousand Yojanas.

62. The girth of the Sun is three times its diameter. The width of the Moon is twice that of the Sun.

63. Equal to them, Svarbhānu (Rāhu) goes beneath. The planet Rāhu is created in globular form out of the shadow of the earth.

64-65. The dark abode of Svarbhānu is fashioned out of darkness. During full moon days he comes out of the Sun and goes to the Moon. From the Moon he goes to the Sun (during the new-moon days) and again he goes to the Moon. He dispels (the brilliance of) the heaven with his refulgence and is, therefore, called Svarbhānu.

66. The magnitude of the diameter and girth of Bhārgava (Venus) is one sixteenth of that of the Moon.

---

1. Scientifically correct observation but the rest (vv. 62-102) is imaginary.

67. Bṛhaspati (Jupiter) is three-fourths of the planet Venus in size. Kuja (Mars) and Saura (Saturn) are three-fourths of Jupiter in the size. Budha (Mercury) is three-fourths of each of them in width and girth.

68. (Heavenly) bodies, and constellations seen in the sky are equal to Mercury in width and girth.

69-70. One conversant with reality should know that the stars are usually in conjunction with the Moon. The stars and constellations differ from one another by five hundred, four hundred, three hundred and two hundred Yojanas as well. The spheres of the stars are lesser than the earlier ones. There is no star smaller than the ones with one and a half Yojanas.

71. The three planets Saturn, Mars and Jupiter, move far above the other planets. They go slowly and their movements are crooked as well.

72. The four great planets—the Sun, Moon, Mercury and Venus, have their orbits below. They move swiftly.

73. There are crores of constellations and as many stars too. The way (orbit) of the stars is well arranged through the control of *Vithis*.

74. In the order of his transit, the movement of the Sun is either above or below. When the Moon is in the northern sphere during Parvans, Budha and Svarbhānu occupy their own abodes.

75. The stars occupy their own abodes. These luminaries are the abodes of pious persons.

76. The abodes are created by the Self-born Deity at the beginning of the Kalpa. They stay upto the dissolution of all living beings.

77. These are the abodes of the deities in all Manvantaras. These deities identify themselves with these abodes and stay till the final dissolution.

78. The abodes of those who have gone have vanished. The abodes of the future Devas and Asuras will be created along with them. The present groups of Devas stay in those abodes.

79. In this Manvantara, the planets reside in aerial cars. In the Vaivasvata Manvantara the Sun is born of Aditi and is called Vivasvat.

80. Tviṣimat, the son of Dharma, known as Vasu is the lord Moon. The lord Śukra, king of Asuras, is known as Bhārgava (Venus).

81. The excessively refulgent lord Bṛhaspati, son of Aṅgiras, is the preceptor of Devas. Budha is charming and is known as the son of Tviṣi.

82. Agni was alternatively born as the youthful lord of Lohita (Mars). The daughters of Dakṣa resort to the stars and constellations.

83. Svarbhānu is the son of Siṁhikā, who, being a demon, harasses all living creatures. Thus the deities identifying themselves with the Moon, the Sun, planents and stars have been recounted.

84. Thus the abodes and their resident deities are mentioned. The abode of the thousand-rayed Sun is full of fire and sparkling.

85. The abode of the thousand-rayed Moon is full of water and sparkling white. The abode of the five-rayed charming planet Budha is dark in colour.

86. The abode of the sixteen-rayed Venus is full of water. The abode of the nine-rayed Mars is full of water and red in colour.

87. The abode of the twelve-rayed Bṛhaspati is big and green. It is full of water. The abode of the light-rayed Saturn is dark in colour. It is full of water.

88. The abode of Svarbhānu is dark. It is the abode harassing all living beings. The constellations are single-rayed and full of water.

89. They are the abodes of persons of pious fame. They are bright and white in colour. They are of the nature of solid water. They are created in the beginning of the Kalpa in accordance with the Vedas.

90-91. Because of his loftiness, the Sun is seen quickly by his bright rays. The Sun stationed in the *Nāgavithi*, the path of southern transit, is encompassed by the line of the Earth during full moon and new moon days. He is not seen at the usual time and he sets early.

92. Hence, the Moon stationed in northern path is not

invariably seen during the new moon day in the southern path.

93. By virtue of the movement of luminaries, the Sun and the Moon rise and set at the same time during the equinox.

94. In the northern pathways, they rise and set at different times. During the new moon and full moon days they follow the circle of luminaries.

95. When the Sun is stationed in the southern path, he moves beneath the planets.

96. Making his orb extensive, the Moon traverses the orbit above (the Sun). The entire multitude of stars moves above the Moon.

97. Mercury is above the stars; Jupiter is above Mercury; Saturn is above Jupiter; and still above is the zone of Seven Sages (Great Bear). Dhruva (Pole Star) is above the Seven Sages.

98. The intermediate distances between the stars and the planets are above two hundred thousand Yojanas and vary in individual cases (obscure Text).

99. The planets, the Sun and the Moon come into contact with the stars everyday in the sky by their divine splendour and they separate also in the due order.

100. The Sun, stars and the planets may be either below or above or in the middle. When they come together or separate from one another, people see them simultaneously.

101. They stay in juxtaposition with one another coming into mutual contact. But their communion is free from intermixture.

102-103. Thus I have described to you the position of the luminaries on the earth and that also of the continents, oceans, mountains, sub-continents and rivers where they are situated*. These self-same planets formerly originated from the stars.

104. Vivasvān, the son of Aditi, the first among the planets, ie. the Sun-god, was born under the constellation Viśākhā in the Cākṣuṣa Manvantara.

105. The brilliant Moon-god Viśvāvasu, the son of Dharma,

---

*Bd. P. reads: *Ye ca teṣu vasanti vai*: 'Those who stay in them'.

the cool-rayed maker of nights, was born under (the costellation) Kṛttikā.

106. After the Sun, Śukra (Venus), son of Bhṛgu, endowed with sixteen rays, who is next to the Sun is the most excellent among constellations and planets. He is born in the constellation Tiṣya (Puṣya).

107. The planet Bṛhaspati (Jupiter) of twelve fiery flames, who is the son of Aṅgiras and is the preceptor of the universe was born under the constellation Phālgunī (Pūrvā Phālgunī in Bd. P).

108. It is reported that the nine-rayed, red-bodied planet (Mars), son of Prajāpati, is born under the constellation Pūrvāṣāḍhā.

109. The seven-rayed planet, Saturn, son of the Sun, is born under the constellation Revatī. The planets harassing the Sun and the Moon are born under the constellation Rohiṇī.

110. These stars and planets beginning with Śukra (Venus) should be comprehended (properly) because they attain evil propensities when the constellation of nativity is afflicted. They are affected by that defect (and are redeemed) due to devotion to the planets.

111. Āditya (the Sun) is called the first among these planets. Among the stellar planets Śukra is the first. Among the comets (Ketu) is the first.

112. Dhruva (Pole Star) is the pivotal peg among the planets divided in the four quarters. Among the stars, Śraviṣṭhā (Dhaniṣṭhā) is the most excellent; among the *Ayanas* (Transits) the Uttarāyaṇa (northern transit) is the most excellent.

113. Among the five years the first is Saṁvatsara; among the seasons Śiśira (late winter) is the first; among months Māgha is the first.*

114. Among the fortnights the bright half is excellent; among the Tithis (days of the lunar fortnight) *Pratipat* (the first day) is excellent; in the divisions of days and nights day is declared excellent.

---

*This shows that new year began in Māgha.

115. Among the Muhūrtas, the first is excellent. It has Rudra for its deity. *Nimeṣa* (the time taken in the winking of the eyes) is excellent among the units of time. So is the opinion of those who know Time.

116. Beginning with Śraviṣṭhā (Dhaniṣṭhā) and ending with Śravaṇa there shall be the Yuga of five years. As a result of the rotation of the Sun, it revolves like a wheel.

117. Hence the Sun is remembered as Kāla (Time). Know that he is the Īśvara (Lord), the activiser of the four types of living beings and their destroyer as well.

118. Thus, this is the regulated arrangement of luminaries as a decisive feature of the affairs of the world. It is evolved by the Lord for the regular functioning of the world.

119. It is born of Śravaṇa and consolidated in Dhruva. It extends all round in the form of a circle.*

120. It was told (ordained) so intelligently at the beginning of Kalpa by the Lord. He is the supporter and the *Abhimānin* (the identifier) with all. He is the Soul of luminary bodies. He is the cosmic form, a miraculous transformation of *Pradhāna*.

121. The movement of the luminaries among human beings cannot be precisely observed by the physical eye, nor can it be narrated exactly by anyone.

122. By means of scriptures, inference, perception and reasoning, after scrutinizing intelligently and carefully, a learned man should entertain sufficient faith in it.

123. O excellent among intelligent beings, these five functions are the means for ascertaining the true positions of the luminary bodies, viz. the eye, scriptures, water, written documents and mathematical calculations.

**Vṛkṣākāra* is probabaly a misprint for *Vṛttākāra* as in Bd. P. I.2.24.148.

CHAPTER FIFTYFOUR

Hymn to Nīlakaṇṭha

The Sages said :

1. O excessively refulgent sage, in which land has this holy and excellent incident happened in regard to persons progressing in Brahman ? At what time? Narrate this exactly in the manner it happened.

Sūta said :

2-3. O excellent Brāhmaṇas of pure rites, I shall narrate what had been heard by me before, when it was being narrated by Vāyu, the very breath of the Universe, at the sacrifice lasting for a thousand years. It refers to how the throat of Śiva, the lord of Devas, attained blueness.[1]

4-5. On the north of the king of mountains Himavat, there are lakes, rivers and eddies, where in sacred parks, holy centres, temples, high peaks of mountains, caves and gardens noble sages of pure rites and devotion eulogise the great Lord in due manner.

6. By means of Ṛk, Yajus and Sāman Mantras, dances, songs and worships, by Oṁkāra and obeisance they always worship Śiva.

7-9 The (heavenly) luminaries had come up. The Sun had reached the middle of the sky, the sages who had been performing sacred rites and discussing the holy story were so exhausted as to feel that life just clung to them. Then Vāyu said, "Obeisance to the blue-necked !" On hearing that the eighty-eight thousand sages of sublimated sexuality, who were known as Vālakhilyas, whose souls had been purified and who had performed holy rites, who were constant devotees of the Sun and whose diet was cofined to wind, leaves and water, asked the Wind-god :

---

1. The popular legend attributing the blue colour of Śiva's throat to the drinking of Kālakūṭa poison appears in the *Mbh. Ādi.* 11.41.43 and in other Purāṇas. The text of this chapter in vv. 10 ff. corresponds to Bd. P. I. 2.25.6 ff.

The Sages said :

10-11. O excellent Vāyu, what has been uttered by you as Nīlakaṇṭha is a great secret. It is the holiest of all sacred things. O most excellent one among pious persons, O Wind-god, we wish to hear about it by your favour, what made the throat of the lord of Aṁbikā blue !

12. We wish to hear it particularly from your mouth. Whatever is uttered by you, whatsoever words come out of your mouth are full of meanings.

13. When breath touches the proper place of articulation, then the activity of speech begins. Knowledge at the outset and desire afterwards gets activated from you, O Vāyu.

14. If you are motionless, the functions of sound cease. Where speech has ceased, the sustenance of body becomes difficult.

15. Even there, there is your excellence, O Vāyu, you are all-pervasive. O Wind-god, there is no god other than you who is all-pervasive.

16. O Vāyu, this world of living beings is directly visible to you from everywhere. You know the lord of speeches, Īśvara, the leader (controller) of the mind.

17. Tell us how was the deformity of the neck of Śiva brought about ?

On hearing the words of the sages of pious souls, Vāyu who possessed great brilliance and was honoured by the entire world, replied to them:

Vāyu said :

18. Formerly, in the Kṛtayuga there was a Brāhmaṇa Vasiṣṭha. He was a mental son of Brahmā. He was a righteous soul interested (expert) in deciding the (meaning of the) Vedas.

19-21. He asked Kārttikeya whose excellent vehicle was the peacock and who stole collyrium from the eyes of the womenfolk of Mahiṣa (i.e. made them widows by killing Mahiṣāsura), a great soul. His voice resembled the thundering sound of the clouds. He assumed the guise of a boy to delight the mind of Umā. He had killed Krauñca and delighted the heart of Pārvatī. Vasiṣṭha devoutly asked Kārttikeya of great power:

Vasiṣṭha said :

22. "Obeisance to you, O son of Hara; salute to you, O one born of the womb of Umā; Hail to you, O one born of the womb of Agni. Bow to you, O one born of the womb of Gaṅgā.

23. Obeisance to you, O one born of Śara (grove). Obeisance to you, O son of Kṛttikās; salute to you O twelve-eyed lord; obeisance to you, O six-faced god.

24. Obeisance to you, having Śakti in your hand, and a divine bell or a flag staff".

After eulogising Mahāsena he asked the Peacock-vehicled Lord thus:

25. "What is this auspicious colour as bright as collyrium, on the throat of Lord Śiva, which is lustrous as the Kunda flower or the Moon ? How did it happen ?

26. Please narrate this to me who am a faithful devotee with self-control. I request you, O blessed one. It behoves you to narrate the holy auspicious story quelling sins, for my pleasure."

27. On hearing the words of noble-souled Vasiṣṭha, Kārttikeya, the lord of great splendour, the destroyer of the armies of the enemies of Suras replied :

28. "Listen to the words as narrated by me, O excellent one among eloquent persons. (I am repeating) what has been heard by me formerly as I sat on the lap of Umā.

29. O great sage, this is the dialogue between the great Ātman Śiva and Pārvatī. I shall narrate it to you (for your delight).

30-43. On the beautiful peak of Kailāsa Lord Śiva who had destroyed Madana (god of love) was comfortably seated on a charming golden rocky slab embellished with pearls, jewels and gems. The peak of the mountain appeared wonderful with variegated minerals. It was over-grown with many trees and creepers. It was beautified by the Cakravāka birds. It was resonant with the humming of the bees and the continuous sound of waterfalls. The interior of the caves was resounded with the sounds of inebriated Krauñca birds and peacocks. The peak was full of Apsaras-s, Kinnaras and Jīvañjīvaka birds. It was beautified by Jāti creepers. It was sweetened with the cooings of cuckoos. It was resorted to by Siddhas and Cāraṇas. The sound of the celestial cow Saurabheyī spread everywhere. The place beneath

was resonant with the rumbling sounds of clouds. The caves were full of the trumpeting of the elephants frightened on seeing Vināyaka. (It was filled) with the sounds of musical instruments like Vīṇā (Lute) and others, fascinating to the ears. It was resorted to by the bevies of ladies swinging in *Hindolas* (swings). It was echoing (with) the tinkling sound of bells fitted to the flagstaff. (It was full of sounds) with musical (wind) instruments and drums and the stroking (of arms) by powerful people. The sounds filled all the houses there. In some places the attendants of Mahādeva were laughing boisterously. Their faces were hideous and terrible. Different odours emitted from their bodies. They sported about here and there in the steps leading to the place embedded with gems, crystal and diamonds. The Lord of Bhūtas was surrounded by his attendants whose faces resembled those of tigers, lions, elephants, horses, fierce cats and foxes. Some were short, some tall, some lean, some stout; some had protruding bellies; some had pot-bellies. The calves of some were short; the lips of some hung loose; the calves of others were as big as the palmyra; the ears of some were like those of a cow; some had a single ear; some had long ears; some had no ear at all. Some had many legs. Some had great legs. Some had only a single foot. Some had no foot at all. Some had many heads. Some had huge heads. Some had a single head. Some had no head at all. Some had many eyes. Some had large eyes. Some had a single eye. Some had no eye at all. The Lord was surrounded by great Yogins as his attendants. The daughter of the Lord of mountains spoke thus to the Lord :

The Goddess said :

44-45. "O lord, lord of past and future creations, O bull-emblemed one, O Mahādeva, there is something resembling a dark cloud shining on your throat. It is neither too bright nor too clear. It resembles the heap of blue collyrium. O destroyer of Kāma's body, O lord, what is this that shines on your throat ?

46. What is the cause of this blue tinge ? What is the reason for the blueness of your throat, O lord. Please narrate this duly to me. I am interested in it".

47. On hearing these words of Pārvatī, Śiva, the consort of Pārvatī, narrated the auspicious story.

48. "Formerly when the ocean of milk was being churned for extracting Amṛta, by Devas and Dānavas, the poison as lustrous as the deadly fire, rose up in front.

49. O splendid-faced lady, on seeing it the groups of Devas and Daityas became pale-faced and dejected. They approached god Brahmā.

50. On seeing the groups of Devas frightened, Brahmā of excessive lustre spoke: "O blessed ones, why are you frightened ? Why are you dejected in mind ?

51. O excellent gods ! Eightfold *Aiśvarya* (Lordship and prosperity) has been assigned to you by me. By whom were you deprived of that *Aiśvarya* ?

52. You are the lords of the three worlds. You are free from ailments and worries. Among my creations there is no one who dares flout my behests.

53. You move about on aerial chariots as you please. You are capable of activising people in spiritual, physical and godly rites and assign the fruits thereof.

54. Hence, wherefore are you frightened like the deer harassed by lions ? What is your affliction ? Whereby is your helplessness and distress ? What is the source of your fear ? You narrate all this precisely and immediately".

55. On hearing the words of Brahmā, the great Ātman, the leaders of Devas, Daityas and Dānavas spoke thus in the company of sages :

56. "When the ocean was being churned by the noble Devas and Asuras, the poison resembling serpents, bees and blue clouds appeared before us. It was terrible and bright as the fire at dissolution of the Universe.

57. It has come up like Black Death; it has the splendour of the sun at the close of Yugas; it has the refulgence of the sun about to destroy the three worlds; it sparkles all round.

58. Viṣṇu whose complexion was fair and reddish has been burnt by the poison that rises with lustre of black fire. He has turned black (in complexion).

59. On seeing the whitish red-complexioned Janārdana rendered black, all of us got frightened. We seek refuge in you".

60. On hearing the words of Devas and Asuras, (Brahmā) of great splendour replied, desiring the welfare of the worlds:

61-62. "O ye Devas, sages and saints, all of you listen. The poison, resembling black fire, that rose up when the great ocean was being churned is known as Kālakūṭa. Even as it rose up, (Viṣṇu) was rendered black.

63. Neither Viṣṇu nor I nor the leading Devas can bear the brunt of that poison, excepting Śiva."

64. After saying this, the lotus-born Brahmā, grandfather of the worlds, the deity who has the lustre of the interior of the lotus and he who is not born of a womb, began to pray :

65. "O Virūpākṣa, obeisance to you of many eyes, who wields Pināka bow and thunderbolt in the hands.[1]

66. Obeisance to you, Lord of the three worlds. Hail to you, Lord of living beings, the destroyer of Asuras, the three-eyed sage.

67. Obeisance to you who are Brahmā, Rudra and Viṣṇu. Bow to you (the deity of) Sāṁkhya and Yoga and (to you) who are the aggregate of *Bhūtas*.

68. Obeisance to you, the destroyer of (the body) of Kāma, the slayer of Kāla. Hail to you, Rudra, the Lord and god of Devas.

69. (Obeisance to you) with matted hair, terrible (yet) propititious, bearer of a skull, the multiformed (yet) single-formed Śiva, the bestower of boons.

70. Obeisance to you, the destroyer of Tripuras, the lord of Mothers and worthy of respect. Obeisance to you the enlightened, pure, liberated and absolute one.

71. Obeisance to you, the lord holding lotus in the hand, the quarter-clad, the tufted lord, the maker of three worlds. Bow to Candra and Varuṇa.

72. Obeisance to you, the foremost of the fierce, the sage, of many eyes, possessed of Rajas, Sattva and Tamas and to one of unmanifest source of origin.

---

1. This eulogy is practically a string of names or adjectives. Śiva is equated with Para-Brahman & the highest encomium is offered to him. We find Śiva so glorified in Tait. Saṁ. IV. 5 (Rudrādhyāya). It can be claimed as a source of Purāṇic *Sahasra-nāmas*.

73. Obeisance to the eternal, non-eternal and eternal-cum-non-eternal one; to the manifest, unmanifest and manifest-cum-unmanifest.

74. Obeisance to the comprehensible, incomprehensible and comphrehensible-cum-incomprehensible one, to the Deity quelling the distress of devotees. Obeisance to you who are Nara-Nārāyaṇa.[1]

75. Obeisance to you the lover of Umā, obeisance to Śarva; obeisance to you, the deity marked by Nandicakra; obeisance to you who are fortnight, month and half a month; obeisance to you who are *Saṁvatsara*.

76. Hail to you, the multi-formed, shaven-headed, staff-bearing, armoured god. Obeisance to the bearer of a skull, the quarter-clad (naked), tuft-bearing god.

77. Obeisance to you with flagstaff and chariot. Obeisance to you the self-controlled and the celibate. Obeisance to you who are Ṛk, Yajus and Sāman. Obeisance to you O god, of such activities as these".

Śri Mahādeva said :

78. Thus I had been eulogised by Devas who bowed to me, O splendid-faced lady.

79. "On realising my devotion, the lord of Devas whose hair and tresses are flooded with Gaṅgā water still remains subtle. Thanks to the surpassing Yogic power, he is inconceivable. He remains invisible like the moon that has been hidden (by the clouds)."

80. Thus I had been eulogised by lord Brahmā, the creator of the Universe, by means of diverse hymns taken from the Vedas and Vedāṅgas.

81. Then I became delighted with Brahmā, the great and noble Ātman. After that I spoke to him in subtle words.

82. "O lord, lord of past and future, lord of the worlds, lord of the Universe, O Brahmā of good rites, what shall I do for you ?"

---

1. Purāṇas try to synthesize Vaiṣṇavism and Śaivism by identifying Śiva with Viṣṇu.

83. On hearing my words, the lotus-eyed Brahmā replied: "O Īśvara, O lord of the past, present and future, may this be listened.

84-85. O lotus-eyed lord, when the ocean was being churned by Devas and Asuras, the terrible poison, resembling a cloud, shining like a blue cloud, having the lustre of the Saṁvarta fire, refulgent like the sun at the end of the Yugas, appeared in front like the Black Death.

86. It has the brilliance of the sun capable of destroying the three worlds. It sparkles all round. The poison having the lustre of deadly fire has risen in front.

87. On seeing it we are much frightened and agitated. O Mahādeva, desiring the welfare of the worlds, you will please drink it. O Sir, you are the enjoyer of the most splendid, you are the excellent lord.

88. O Mahādeva, excepting you, there is no one to endure the poison. No other person is sung about (=glorified) as capable of it, in the three worlds".

89-90. On hearing these words of Brahmā, O splendid-faced lady, I concurred and said "So be it". Then I began to drink the poison that resembled death. As I drank the terrible poison frightening even the gods, O lady of excellent complexion, my throat immediately turned black.

91-92. On seeing the poison that had the lustre of the petal of blue lotus and that had appeared like the king of Serpents, Takṣaka, clinging to my throat and putting out its tongues, Brahmā, the grandfather of the worlds, possessor of excessive splendour, spoke: "O Mahādeva, of good rites, really you shine due to this throat".

93-94. O daughter of the excellent mountain, on hearing his words, even as the Devas and Daityas were watching along with Yakṣas, Gandharvas, Bhūtas, Piśācas, Nāgas and Rākṣasas, O sweet-faced lady, the terrible poison was contained in the throat. Hence I became famous as Nīlakaṇṭha (Blue-throated).

95. O daughter of the king of mountains, on seeing the Kālakūṭa, that poison of fierce potency, being retained by me in the throat, Devas and Daityas were wonder-struck.

96. Then, O fair lady with the gait of inebriated elephant,

all the Devas and Daityas, Nāgas and Rākṣasas spoke thus with palms joined in reverence:

97. "Wonderful is your strength, prowess and valour. Oh, wonderful is the strength of your Yoga. O lord of Devas, wonderful is your lordship, O lord, whose dishevelled hair is flooded with Gaṅgā water.

98. You alone are Viṣṇu, the four-faced Brahmā and Yama, the god of death; you alone are the bestower of boons; you alone are the sun, the moon, the earth and the water.

99. You alone are sacrifice, the rites and observances; you alone are the past and future. You alone are the origin and end; you alone are both gross and subtle Puruṣa.

100. You alone are the subtlest of the subtle; you alone are the fire and the wind; you alone are the creator, protector and annihilator of the world, both mobile and immobile."

101. After saying these words and bowing their heads, the leading Devas, the noble souls, went to Meru in their aerial chariots.

102. Thus the greatest of secrets, the holiest of holy things, the story of what is famous as Nīlakaṇṭha has been narrated to you.

103. This story has been narrated by the self-born deity. It is the sacred story that quells sins. I shall now mention the fruit accruing to that person who retains this story recounted by Brahmā.

104. O fair lady of good loins, on reaching his body, poison from mobile and immobile things becomes ineffective immediately.

105. It quells inauspiciousness and removes (the effect of) bad dreams. The person attains the love of women and leadership in royal assembly.

106. In disputes he becomes victorious; in battle he attains valour; on expedition he attains welfare; he has perpetual riches in his house.

107-109. I shall tell his goal at the dissolution of his body, O excellent-faced lady. He becomes blue-throated, green-moustached and moon-crested; he attains three eyes; he holds the trident in his hand, and has bull as his vehicle; he holds the Pināka

bow;[1] he becomes as strong as Nandin with deeds as glorious as the exploits of Nandin. At my behest he wanders over all the worlds; his movement is unimpeded like that of the wind. He gains my strength and lives as such till the final dissolution of the world.

110. O beautiful lady, I shall now mention the goal both here and hereafter of those persons who are my devotees and who hear this story.

111. A Brāhmaṇa secures (attains mastery over) Vedas; a Kṣattriya conquers the earth; a Vaiśya derives profit; and a Śudra attains happiness.

112. A sick man is freed from ailments; a man in bondage attains release; a pregnant woman gets a son; and a virgin gets a good husband. Everyone regains everything he loses in this world as in the other.

113. On hearing this divine story of the Lord, one obtains the same fruit as is obtained when one hundred thousand cows are duly gifted away.

114. He who commits to memory one verse or half of it, one quarter of a verse or even half of it, attains Rudra's Loka.

115. After recounting this story of pious fruits to the Goddess, the Lord with the moon embellishing his crest, the Lord beloved of Guha, went along with Umā to the cave of Kiṣkindha seated on his bull.

116. After recounting this story of great length quelling sins, Vāyu went away. After studying everything, the excellent Brāhmaṇas went to the auspicious path of Āditya.

1. This type of liberation is called *Sārūpya*, 'similarity of appearance'.

CHAPTER FIFTYFIVE

Hymn to the Liṅga of Śiva[1]

The Sages enquired :

1. O eloquent one, who is the greatest in regard to attributes, activities and power ? We wish to hear clearly the description of his good, wonderful qualities in detail.

Sūta said :

2. In this connection they cite this ancient anecdote about the greatness and omnipotence of the great Ātman, Mahādeva.

3. Formerly this was narrated by Viṣṇu when he had conquered the three worlds after binding Bali. The deity of great prowess became the lord of the three worlds formerly.

4-6. When the Daityas were destroyed, when the Lord of Śacī was delighted, all the Devas including Indra came to see the Lord. They came near the ocean of milk where Viṣṇu, the Ātman of cosmic form, stayed. After approaching the noble-souled, the Puruṣa, Viṣṇu, all the Siddhas, Brāhmaṇas, Yakṣas, Gandharvas, Apsaras-s, Nāgas, celestial sages, rivers and mountains eulogised him.

7. "O Lord, you are the creator and sustainer of the worlds. By your grace the three worlds attain imperishable welfare. The Asuras have been conquered and Bali has been bound by you".

8. On being thus addressed by Devas, Siddhas and the sages, Viṣṇu, the excellent of Puruṣas, replied to them.

9-10. "May this be heard, O excellent Devas, I shall mention the cause; the achievement has come at the very outset, thanks to the grace of that Lord alone who is the creator of all living beings, who is Time (*Kāla*), the creator of Time, and by whom the worlds have been created along with Brahmā by means of his Māyā power.

---

1. Rudra and Agni (Fire-god) have been identified in Vedic times. Liṅga worship is not Phallus-worship but the Purāṇic transformation of Vedic fire worship. The origin of or manifestation of the Liṅga of Śiva is told in different Purāṇas, e.g. Liṅga 17, KP II. 38, Bd. P. 2.26.

11. Formerly, when the three worlds were plunged in unmanifest darkness and when the living beings had been retained inside my belly, I lay myself down.

12. Assuming the form of the thousand-headed, thousand-eyed thousand-legged deity, holding the conch, discus and mace in the hands, I lay down in the pure limpid waters.

13-14. In the meantime, from a distance I espied a person of unmeasured splendour who blazed with his brilliance resembling a hundred suns.

The person, endowed with great Yogic power, had four faces and was of golden lustre (complexion). He wore a deer-skin and was embellished with a water-pot (*Kamaṇḍalu*). Within a moment that excellent person came near.

15-16. Then he who was Brahmā, who was bowed to by the worlds, spoke to me—"O lord, who are you ? Whence have you come ? Why do you stay here. Tell me. I am the maker of the worlds. I am self-born. I have faces all round". Thus addressed by Brahmā, I spoke to him.

17. "I am the creator and destroyer of the worlds again and again". While we were talking like this with a desire to overpower each other, a well established flame was seen on the northern side.

18. On seeing that flame we two were surprised. By that splendour all the waters sparkled.

19. When that excessively surprising and mysterious flame began to increase in size, Brahmā and I hastened towards that flame.

20-22. The massive column of flame stood touching heaven and earth. In the midst of it we saw the unmanifest Liṅga of excessive brilliance[1], highly illuminated and of the size of *Pradeśa* (the distance between the thumb and the little finger). The Liṅga shone in the middle. It was neither made of gold nor of silver nor of stone. It could not be specified. It was inconceivable. It was sometimes perceptible and sometimes imperceptible. It had great splendour and was very terrible. It

1. The identity of Rudra and Fire-god is stated in RV.II.1.7; Śatapatha Br. III. 3.1.10, VI.1.3.10; Tait. Br. I.1.5.8-9; Tāṇḍya Brāhmaṇa XII.4.24.

increased in size excessively at that time. It appeared extensive through the series of flames and appeared terrific (to all beings).

23. Who can reach the limits of this terrible looking Liṅga, the cause of Mantra (Vedas), which was piercing through the heaven and the earth?

24. Then Brahmā told me, "You go down cautiously. Let us know the limits of this Liṅga, the great Ātman.

25. I shall go up as far as the limit is reached". Thus we came to an agreement and went up and down.

26. I went downwards for a thousand years. But I did not see the limit. Undoubtedly I was frightened.

27. Similarly Brahmā too was exhausted. He could not see the limit. There itself in that great expanse of water, Brahmā met me again.

28. Both of us were surprised. We were deluded by the Māyā of that great Ātman. We stood there (as if) we had lost our consciousness.

29. We bowed to the Lord engaged in meditation—the Lord who is the source of origin and the cause of (destruction) of all the worlds.

30. With palms joined in reverence Brahmā (and I) paid obeisance to the trident-bearing Śarva (Śiva), the unmanifest, the mighty god of terrible roar and a frightening form having curved fangs.

31. "O lord of the worlds and Devas, obeisance be to you. O great lord of Bhūtas, obeisance be to you. Hail to you, O external one, the cause of origin of the Siddhas. O lord, the support of the universe, obeisance be to you.

32. You are the great Brahman, the Supreme Lord and the imperishable. You are the great region and the excellent Vāmadeva. You are Lord Rudra, Śiva and Skanda.

33. You are Yajña (Sacrifice), Vaṣaṭkāra, Oṁkāra, the great goal. You are Svāhākāra and Namaskāra. You are the purifier of all sacred rites.

34. You alone are Svadhākāra. You are the Mantra for repetition. You are the sacred rites, observances, the Vedas, the worlds and all the Devas.

35. You are the sound (the quality) of Ākāśa; you are the eternal source of living beings. You are the attribute of smell in

the earth, of taste in the waters and of colour in the fire, O Maheśvara.

36. You are the attribute of touch in vāyu. You are the lord Moon in the embodied form. You are the perfect knowledge in Budha. O lord of Devas, you are the seed in the Prakṛti.

37. O lord, you are the maker of living beings. You are Kāla, Mṛtyu, Yama, the destroyer. You support the three worlds. You alone create them.

38. By means of your eastern face, you manifest Indra-hood. O lord, by means of your southern face you annihilate the worlds (as Yama).

39. By means of the western face you exhibit your Varuṇa-hood. Your Moon-hood is established by means of your northern face.

40-42a. O Lord, you shine in various forms. You are the eternal source of all the worlds. O Lord of Devas, the Ādityas, the Vasus, Rudras, Maruts, the two sons of Aśvinī, Sādhyas, Vidyādharas, Nāgas, Cāraṇas, the noble-souled Vālakhilyas and all those persons accomplished and those others who perform rites regularly, are also born of you.

42b-43. Umā, Sītā, Sinīvālī, Kuhū, Gāyatrī, Lakṣmī, Kīrti, Dhṛti, Medhā, Lajjā, Kṣānti, Vapus, Svadhā, Puṣṭi, Kriyā, Sarasvatī, the goddess of speech, Sandhyā and Rātri too are born of you, O Lord of Devas.

44. O Lord having the lustre of ten thousand suns, obeisance be to you. Bow to you, O Lord having the lustre of thousand moons. Hail to you, O Lord assuming the form of a mountain. Obeisance to you, O reservoir of all good qualities.

45. Obeisance be to you, O Lord holding a spear with a sharp edge. Obeisance to you, O Lord applying ashes to the skin. O Rudra, bow to you having the Pināka in your hand and bearing a discus and an arrow.

46. Obeisance be to you, O Lord, whose body is embellished (besmeared) with ashes. Obeisance be to you, O Lord, who destroyed Kāma. O Lord, hail to you, wearing golden apparel. Obeisance be to you, O Lord, having golden arms.

47. Obeisance be to you, O gold-formed lord. Bow to you, O gold-naveled Lord. Bow to you of wonderful form with a thousand eyes. Obeisance be to you, O Lord of golden semen.

48. Obeisance be to you, O gold-complexioned Lord. Hail to you, O gold-wombed Lord. Obeisance be to you, O Lord with gold bark-garments. Obeisance be to you, O lord, the bestower of gold.

49. Obeisance be to you, O Lord with golden necklace. Obeisance be to you, O Lord roaring terrifically.

50. Obeisance be to you, O Lord of terrific speed. Bow to you, O Śaṅkara, O blue-throated one. Obeisance be to you, O Lord with a thousand arms. Hail to you, O Lord, fond of dance and playing on instruments."

51. On being eulogised thus, the lord, the great Yogin of great intellect, became manifest. He had the lustre equal to that of a crore suns.

52-55. Then the delighted Mahādeva, appeared worthy of being addressed. He seemed to be devouring the sky with his thousands and crores of mouths, though he had only a single neck and a single mass of hair. He was bedecked in different kinds of ornaments. His body looked wonderful and variegated. He wore different (kinds of) garlands and (besmeared himself) with unguents. He held Pināka bow in his hand. The Lord wielding a spear was seated on a bull. He wore the hide of a black antelope. He assumed a terrible form with a skull in his hand. Wearing a serpent for the sacred thread, he offered protection to Devas. He laughed boisterously producing sound like a kettle-drum and the rumbling cloud wherewith the sky was reverberated.

56. At that loud sound of the great Ātman, we became frightened. Then the great Yogin said : "O excellent Devas, I am greatly delighted.

57. Both of you, see this Māyā. Give up fear. Both of you are born of my body. You are ancient and former beings.

58. This Brahmā, grandfather of the worlds, is my right arm. Viṣṇu is my left arm. He always stands by me in times of war. I am delighted with you. I shall grant whatever you desire."

59. Then both of us were delighted in the mind. We fell at his feet again. Then we, the pious great souls, spoke again.

60. "If you are pleased and if boons are to be bestowed on us, O Lord of Devas, let there be devotion in us for you."

61. "O blessed ones, may it be thus. Both of you create different kinds of subjects". After saying thus the Lord vanished there itself.

62. Thus the great power of that Yogin has been narrated to you. All this has been created by him. We are only nominal causes.

63. This form termed 'Śiva' is unknown and unmanifest. It is incomprehensible and unperceivable. Persons with intellectual vision alone can perceive it.

64. Perform obeisance to that Lord of Devas by whose grace persons with intellectual vision can perceive subtle and incomprehensible things.

65. O Mahādeva, obeisance be to you. O Maheśvara, obeisance be to you. O most excellent one among Devas and Asuras, O swan of the mind, obeisance be to you."

Sūta said :

66. On hearing this, Devas paid homage to the great Ātman, Śiva and went to their abodes.

67. He who recites this hymn of Īśvara, the great Ātman, obtains all desires and becomes free from sins.

68. All this in respect to the ancient Brahman was mentioned by the mighty Viṣṇu only due to the grace of Mahādeva. Everything in respect of the power of Maheśvara has been thus recounted to you.

CHAPTER FIFTYSIX

Description of Pitṛs

Śāṁśapāyana enquired :

1. O Sūta, how the king Purūravas, son of Ilā, used to go to heaven during the new moon day in every month? How did he perform (libation) to Pitṛs?

Sūta replied :

2. O Śāṁśapāyana, I shall now recount to you the superhuman power of (Purūravas), the son of Ilā. I shall mention how he contacted with the Sun and the noble-souled Moon.

3-5. I shall mention all these things in order—the increase and decrease of the Moon consisting of the essence of the waters during the bright and the dark halves of the month, the fixation (decision) about the fortnight dedicated to Pitṛs, the acquisition of nectar from the Moon, the *Tarpaṇa* offerings to Pitṛs, the vision of the Pitṛs who had extracted the Soma juice from the Kavya fire, and how Purūravas, the son of Ilā, propitiated Pitṛs. I shall mention the *Parvans* also (all in due order).

6. When both the Moon and the Sun come into conjunction with the same constellation, on the same night, in the same orbit, it shall be known as *Amāvāsyā* (the New Moon).

7-8. He (Purūravas) used to go to see his maternal and paternal grand-fathers, the Moon and the Sun, on every *Amāvāsyā*. After making obeisance to them, he used to keep waiting. For the sake of the Pitṛs, he used to extract exudation from the delighted Moon. In every month Purūravas, son of Ilā, stayed in the heaven and worshipped the Moon with devotion along with Pitṛs.

9-10. Pitṛs and the Moon partake of the Kavya offerings for two lavas.[1] Worshipping Sinīvālī[1] during the time of its appearance, Purūravas understood the duration of the new moon called Kuhū and worshipped Kuhū too.[2] Biding his time he used to see the Moon in conjunction with the Sun (?)

11-13. Whence will the nectar ooze out from Soma for the satisfaction for a period of a month ? It is by (replenishment) for fifteen days (of the bright half) by the flow of nectar. After drinking it in the dark half, it is being milked by the rays with

---

1. *Lava*=the 60th part of twinkling of the eye.—MW 898.

2. Verses 9-10 etc. state, Amāvāsyā is of two kinds: (i) when Amāvāsyā merged with the 14th *tithi* of the dark half, it is Sinīvālī and (ii) when it merged with the 1st *tithi* of the next day (of the bright half) it is Kuhū. Sinīvālī is a divinity in RV. She is the sister of gods and bestower of progeny (RV II. 32. 6-7). Kuhū is a divinity invoked for wealth and sons (AV. VII. 47.1).

that lunar honey (nectar) given to him for oblating them to Pitṛs. The King propitiated his Pitṛs namely Saumyas, Barhiṣads, Kāvyas and Agniṣvāttas[1] by offering the nectar in accordance with injunctions.

14. *Ṛtu* (Season) which is spoken of as Agni is considered as Saṁvatsara, since Ṛtus are born of it. *Ārtavas* (smaller division of time such as a fortnight) are born of *Ṛtus* (Seasons).

15. *Ārtavas* are called half-months. Pitṛs are the sons of the year. *Ṛtus* are grandfathers. The months and the *Ṛtus* are the sons of the year.

16. Devas are the great-grandfathers. The five years (forming a Yuga) are the sons of Brahmā. Saumyas are born of the Moon. Kāvyas are the sons of Kavi.

17. Devas born of Soma, and the imbibers of the Soma juice, are known as *Upahūtas*. The Kāvyas are known as *Ājyapās*. (All) the classes of Pitṛs become satisfied thus.

18-19. Pitṛs are classified into three (only): Kāvyas, Barhiṣads and Agniṣvāttas. *Ṛtus* who are householders and performers of sacrifices are definitely Barhiṣads. Agniṣvāttas are also householders and performers of sacrifices. They are *Ārtavas*. Understand that Kāvyas are *Aṣṭakāpatis* (Lords of Aṣṭakas). Now understand the five years.

20. Among them Agni is *Saṁvatsara* and the Sun is *Parivatsara*. The Moon is *Idvatsara* and Vāyu is *Anuvatsara*.

21. Rudra is the *Vatsara* among them. The five years of the nature of Yugas are known as *Lekhas*, *Uṣmapās* and *Divākirtyas*.

22. These imbibe the nectar in heaven every month. As long as he lived, Purūravas gratified them with that.

23-25. Since the nectar oozes out of the Moon every month, understand that it is the nectar for Pitṛs, the drinkers of Soma

1. According to Śatapatha Br. II. 6.1-7, those who performed a Soma sacrifice are *Somavantaḥ Pitaraḥ* (prob. Saumyas hereof); those who offered cooked oblations like *Caru* were *Barhiṣadaḥ Pitaraḥ*; those who offered no sacrifices but were consumed by fire in cremation after death were *Agniṣvāttāḥ Pitaraḥ*. Later during Smṛti period classes of Pitṛs increased and their connotation was changed. Thus we find in vv. 16-19 here, *Saumyas* are the sons of Soma & the imbibers of Soma; *Kāvyas* are the sons of Kavi (Śukra?) imbibers of ghee. *Ṛtus* are householders and performers of sacrifices; they are Barhiṣads. The non-performers of sacrifices are *Ārtavas* and *Agniṣvāttas*.

juice. The nectar is called *Amṛta*, *Saumya*, *Sudhā* and *Madhu*. The thirty-three Devas known as *Chandajas* drink the fifteen watery Kalās of the Moon gradually in the dark half. After drinking the nectar for a month till caturdaśī (fourteenth day), they depart.

26. Being thus drunk by Devas, the Moon remains with only the fifteenth part left on the Amāvāsyā day.

27. Pitṛs then drink the nectar for two Kalās on the new moon day, when the Moon develops by the Suṣumna ray of the Sun.

28. When the Moon is completely exhausted after being drunk, the Sun develops it by his Suṣumna ray for Pitṛs, the drinkers of Soma.

29. When the digits of the Moon are exhausted completely, the Sun develops it gradually by one fraction everyday. When the digits dwindle it becomes dark and when they develop it becomes white.

30. Thus the body of the Moon is developed by the power of the Sun. On the full moon day the Moon is complete in disc and white in colour. Thus is the decrease and increase of the Moon in the dark and bright halves.

31. The Moon with Pitṛs is known as *Idvatsara*. He is surrounded by fifteen rays shedding the nectar Sudhā.

32-33. I shall now explain the *Parvans* and the junctions of *Parvans*. Just as the sugarcane-stem and the bamboo have knots in their joints, so also the bright and dark halves have *Parvans*. Their knots and joints differ in respect of the full moon day and the new moon day. *Tṛtiyā* (the 3rd *Tithi*) and other tithis (lunar days) are the *Parvans* of the fortnight.

34. Since the rites such as of kindling fire are performed during the *Parvans*,[1] they are auspicious. If there is the overlapping of Pratipad in the evening, that time belongs to the full moon.

---

1. According to VP III.11.118-119, the 14th Tithi, 8th Tithi, Amāvāsyā and Purṇimā, the Sun's passage from one *rāśi* to another are called Parvans.

35. When the Sun is stationed in *Vyatipāta*[1] at a deviation of half meridian (?) line at a distance of a Yuga the meridian of the Moon is risen duly by the distance of a Yuga.

36. This is because (the Sun and the Moon) glance each other after the elapse of the full moon (period), and that time their minutes of declination are the same.

37. Calculation proceeds on the basis of the time and direction of the Sun. That is the time prescribed for the rite to be performed instantly.

38. When the Moon is full after a complete period of a *pakṣa* (half-month) but the *Pūrṇimā* is the joint of the night (i.e. when it rises one digit less than the full) it is looked after by Pitṛs along with Devas, and hence it is known as *Anumati Pūrṇimā.*

39. The Moon shines very brilliantly on the full moon night. Sages call it *Rākā* because the Moon delights then.

40. The night on which the Moon and the Sun stay together in the same constellation is called Amāvāsyā. It is the fifteenth night (after the full moon).

41. The Moon is clear on the full moon day. The moon and the Sun are full in the afternoon and see each other in the Vyatīpāta. That is the full moon day.

42. When (the period of Amāvāsyā) is over, the Sun and the Moon coming together see each other, it is called *Darśa.*

43-44. In the Amāvāsyā, at the joints of the *Parvans,* there is the short time of two *Lavas*—the time taken to utter the two syllables ku-hu. It is remembered to be the time (for the sacred rites). In the Amāvāsyā when the Moon is completely invisible, it comes into contact with the Sun from the midday to the midnight. It suddenly gets released from the Sun in the morning. The Sun comes out in the midday, after remaining in conjunction for two *Kalās.*

45-46. On the *Pratipad* day of the bright half, the Moon gets released from the Sun's disc. The time of getting released from the disc is the appropriate time for *Āhuti* of *Darśa* and *Vaṣaṭkriyā.* The

1. The text is rather obscure. *Sūrya-Siddhānta* XI.1.2 defines Vyatīpāta as follows:

"When the Moon and the Sun are on apposite sides of either solstice and their minutes of declination are same, it is Vyatipāta. The sum of their longitudes is half a circle i.e. 180.° Normally there are 13 Vyatipātas in a year.

time of Amāvāsyā shall be known as *Ṛtumukha* (first day of the season).

47. During the day in the Amāvāsyā Parvan (in the dark half) the Moon remains emaciated. Therefore, on the Amāvāsyā day the Sun is swallowed by the evil planets in the firmament.

48. The names of the Tithis have been assigned by the honoured and sensible scholars in accordance with the digits of the Moon.

49-50. The Sun and the Moon see each other on that day. It comes out and separates itself from the disc of the Sun gradually. For the duration of two *Lavas*, the Moon touches the Sun in the course of the day and the night. That is the (auspicious) time for *Darśa* and *Vaṣaṭkriyā*.

51. The Amāvāsyā (which gets mixed with the *Pratipad*, the first day, of the next fortnight for) the duration of as much time as is required for the cuckoo to utter Ku-hū is called Ku-hū.

52. (Defective) When the Moon is emaciated (due to loss of digits) yet has the remnant of a (slight digit of the measure of) Sinīvālī and the Amāvāsyā enters the Sun (gets mixed up with the last part of the *caturdaśī* day), it is called *Sinīvāli*.

53. The duration of *Parvan* in both is equal. Vaṣaṭkriyā in the Vyatīpāta of the Sun and the Moon (is forbidden?). The two types of full moon (i.e. *Anumati* and *Rākā*) have already been explained.

54. The auspicious time on the Pratipad and Pūrṇimā is for the duration of two Mātrās. The auspicious time in Ku-hū and Sinīvālī is also the same (two mātrās).

55. The auspicious time when the Moon is in the spheres of the Sun and fire has the duration of one *Kalā*.

56. Thus, it is the bright half (in which) during the 'joints' of Parvans of night the glorious Moon with its full disc gets eclipsed.

As the Moon is replenished in the fifteenth (day) it is Pūrṇimā (the full moon day).

57. In fifteen nights the Moon develops fully by putting on fifteen Kalās, adding one everyday. There is no sixteenth Kalā in the Moon. On the fifteenth day after the full moon, it becomes emaciated completely.

58. Thus are these Pitṛs, Devas, the drinkers of Soma and the replenishers of Soma, *Ārtavas* and *Ṛtus* (seasons). Hence Devas worship them.

59. Henceforth I shall describe the Pitṛs who partake of the monthly *Śrāddha*. I shall mention their goal, their inherent strength and the procedure of the *Śrāddha*.

60. The departure of the deceased and their return cannot be comprehended even by well-accomplished penance. Then how can it be perceived through the physical eye ?

61. These *Pitṛs* who are *Śrāddhadevas*, are known as Laukika (Worldly) *Pitṛs*. Devas, Saumyas and Yajvans are all *Ayonijas* (not born of a womb).

62. All these *Pitṛs* are Devas, for the latter make them flourish. There are human *Pitṛs* while others are proclaimed as *Laukika* (worldly) *Pitṛs*.

63. (The human *Pitṛs* are) father, grand-father, great-grand-father. Those who perform *Yajñas* with Soma are known as Soma-sacrificers.

64. Those who are mentioned as Yajvans are *Barhiṣads*. Engaged in holy rites, they remain happy and content till they take another body.

65-67. Those who perform sacrifices and preside over them are known as *Agniṣvāttas*. Those who adhere to their duties in virtue of their stages in life, those who closely follow the traditions, those who do not blunder in the performance of their rites with faith, those who are engaged in the holy rites till death, after being endowed with celibacy, penance, *Yajña*, progeny, faith, learning and charitable gifts (are also called *Agniṣvāttas*.)

68. After reaching heaven they rejoice along with Devas, Pitṛs and the subtle-bodied Soma-drinkers and they worship *Pitṛmāns* (?)

69. Only those who performed holy rites and were blessed with progeny are praised. Oblations and food-offerings are given to them by their kinsmen and persons born of their families.

70. Partaking of the monthly *Śrāddha*, the *Somalaukikas* become satisfied. They are human *Pitṛs* and partake of monthly *Śrāddhas*.

71-73. Others get entangled in their actions and rebirths in wombs. Fallen from their *Āśrama* duties and devoid of Svadhā

and Svāhā, these wicked persons with their bodies pierced become ghosts in the abode of Yama. They bewail their former acts in their abodes of torture. They live long, (are) dry, pale, naked, hungry and thirsty, wandering here and there.

74. Desirous of water, they roam hither and thither near rivers,lakes, tanks and wells. They covet foodstuffs left by others. They tremble and move about here and there.

75-76. They move from one place of torture to another. They are thrown in different hells like Śālmalī, Vaitaraṇī, Kumbhīpāka, Karambhavālukā, Asipatravana and Śilāsaṁpeṣaṇa by (as a result of) their own activities.

77-78. It is here that they have their miserable hellish abodes devoid of joys of heaven. Offering three Piṇḍas to those who passed to the other world by uttering their names and Gotras, they offer Piṇḍas anticlockwise on the ground strewn over with Kuśa grass. Thus they propitiate the Pitṛs abiding in their places after death (or in their abodes as *Pretas* or Ghosts).

79-80. Those who do not go to the abode of torture are born in any of the five types of living beings according to their (previous) activities. Whatever may be the birth taken by them, whether of animals or of immobile beings, they get their natural food in their respective births as a result of the offerings of food by the kinsmen in the course of Śrāddha.

81. The offering of food in *Śrāddha* shall be made at the auspicious time to deserving persons. Then alone it reaches the place where the departed kinsman stays.

82. Just as the calf is able to seek and find out its mother-cow even if it is lost among other cows, so also the *mantra* chanted in the course of *Śrāddha* carries the gifts to the *Pitṛs*.

83. So also the *Śrāddha* offered through the Mantras reaches the manes. So Sanatkumāra, who had discovered the movements of the departed souls by his divine vision, could explain how food in *Śrāddha* could reach the manes.

84. These *Pitṛs* are known as Bahvīkas, Uṣmapās and Divākīrtyas. The dark half is their day-time and the bright half is their night for sleep.

85. Thus these Pitṛs are Devas and Devas are Pitṛs. Ṛtus and Ārtavas are declared as Pitṛs mutually.

86. Thus these godly Pitṛs and the human ones are delighted by *Śrāddha* rites offered to them.

87. Thus *Pitṛs* have been explained. The greatness of Pitṛs, the imbibers of Soma, is decisively mentioned in the Purāṇas.

88-89. Thus all these have been briefly explained: the contact of Purūravas with the Sun, Pitṛs and the Moon, his acquisition of the nectar and the performance of the *Tarpaṇa* to *Pitṛs*, the duration of the full moon and the new moon and the abode of Pitṛs. This is the eternal *Śarga* (Creation).

90. The Universal form of all has been mentioned but partially. It is impossible to enumerate (describe) it in full. It should be trusted faithfully by one who wishes prosperity.

91. The creation of Svāyambhuva Manu has indeed been described by me in detail and in accordance with the sequence.

What more should I describe to you ?

CHAPTER FIFTYSEVEN

The Cycle of Yugas :[1] *Their Characteristics*

The Sages said :

1. We wish to know the nature and reality of the (sets of) four Yugas which occurred formerly in the Svāyaṁbhuva Manvantara.

---

1. Although this Purāṅa accepted the Vedic tradition and regarded a Yuga period as consisting of five years (*vide supra* ch. 50 p. 343, fn. 3), here it follows Manu I.61-74, 79-86. According to Manu, the 1st Yuga, Kṛta, has a duration of 4000 years of Devas with 400 divine years of the dawn (*Sandhyā*) of the Age and 400 divine years of transition from Kṛta to the next Age (*Sandhyāṁśa*). The other Yugas, viz. Tretā, Dvāpara ahd Kali consist respectively of a period of 3000,2000 and 1000 years of Devas, each yuga preceded by and followed by *Sandhyā* and *Sandhyāṁśa*, each extending over a period of 300, 200, 100 years of Devas. This theory superseded the Vedic one and has been adopted by Purāṇas e.g. KP. I chs. 51 and 53, NP. I ch. 41, VP. I.3., Bd. P. I.2.29 &30 and Mbh. Vana. chs 149 and 188.

Sūta said :

2. In the context of the description of the earth etc. I have already said about the four Yugas. Now I shall recount them in detail. (Listen and) understand them.

3-4. Calculating everything and mentioning in detail, I shall narrate in full the six aspects viz. : *Yuga*, *Yugabheda* (difference in Yugas), *Yugadharma* (the particular characteristics of each Yuga), *Yugasandhi* (the junction of Yugas), *Yugāṁśa* (the parts of Yugas) and *Yugasandhāna* (the joints of Yugas).

5. The human year can be understood (calculated) by means of valid working knowledge. Calculating on the basis of that year, I shall explain the four Yugas.

6. The time taken to utter a short syllable is equal to a Nimeṣa. Nimeṣa, Kāṣṭhā, Kalā and Muhūrta are the units of time.[1]

7. Fifteen Nimeṣas constitute a Kāṣṭhā, thirty Kāṣṭhās make one Kalā, thirty Kalās make one Muhūrta. Thirty Muhūrtas make one full day and night.

8. The sun demarcates the human as well as the divine days and nights. The day is intended for activity and the night is meant for sleep.

9. A (human) month constitutes the day and night of the Pitṛs. Its division is thus: The dark half is the day for them and the bright half is their night for sleep.

10. Thirty human months make one month of the Pitṛs. On

---

1. Verses 6-20 give the units of Time, the smallest unit being Nimeṣa, the time required to utter one *mātrā* (a short vowel). The following are the terms to denote the particular periods.

15 Nimeṣas (18 according to Manu) = 1 Kāṣṭhā; 30 Kāṣṭhās = 1 Kalā; 30 Kalās = 1 Muhūrta; 30 Muhūrtas = complete day (day and night); 30 days = 1 month = one day + night of Pitṛs.

30 Human months = 1 Month of Pitṛs
360 Human months = 1 year of Pitṛs
Human Uttarāyaṇa (6 months) = Day of Devas
Human Dakṣiṇāyana (6 months) = Night of Devas
360 Human Years = 1 Year of Devas.
3030 Human Years = 1 Saptarṣi Year.
9090 Human Years = 1 Krauñca (Dhruva in Bd. P. I.2.29.18) Year.
360000 Human Years = 1000 Years of Devas.

the basis of the human calculation, three hundred and sixty months constitute a year of the Pitṛs.

11. A hundred human years constitute three years and four months of Pitṛs.

12. A human year in accordance with the human calculation is one day and one night of the Devas. This is the conclusion in this scripture.

13. The divine day and night together make a human year. A further classification is that the Uttarāyaṇa period (northern transit of the sun) is the day and the Dakṣiṇāyana period (southern transit of the sun) is the night (of Devas).

14. Thirty of the days and nights of the gods or thirty human years make one divine month.

15. One hundred human years make three divine months and three divine days. Thus is the divine reckoning for division of time.

16. Three hundred and sixty years according to the human calculation constitute one divine year.

17. Three thousand and thirty years according to human calculation constitute one year of the Seven Sages (Saptarṣis) or the Great Bear.

18. Nine thousand and ninety human years make one Krauñcan year (Dhruva year in Bd. P.I. 2.29.18).

19. Thirty-six thousand human years should be known as one hundred divine years. Thus is the calculation of the divine unit of time.

20. Persons well versed in calculation say that three hundred and sixty thousand years reckoned on the basis of human time units constitute a thousand divine years.

21. It is thus that the sages sang about the divine calculation. They have formulated reckoning of the Yugas and their duration on the basis of the divine calculation.

22. Wise people know that there are four Yugas in Bhārata Varṣa.[1] The first one is Kṛta, then follow Tretā, Dvāpara and Kali. One should reckon these Yugas in this order.

23. They say that Kṛta Yuga consists of four thousand years. The *Sandhyā* (Transition period) consists of as many (i.e.

1. It is strange that the yuga-system should be restricted to India only.

four) hundred years. The *Sandhyāṁśa* (part of the junction with the next Yuga) is equal to the *Sandhyā* period.

24. In the other Yugas, their *Sandhyās* and *Sandhyāṁśas* there is gradual reduction of thousand and hundred years.

25. Tretā contains three hundred years. Its *Sandhyā* and *Sandhyāṁśa* consist of three hundred years.

26. The wise say that Dvāpara contains two thousand years. The *Sandhyā* consists of two hundred years and the *Sandhyāṁśa* is equal to *Sandhyā*.

27. The learned say that Kaliyuga consists of a thousand years. Its *Sandhyā* is of a hundred years and the *Sandhyaṁśa* is equal to *Sandhyā*.

28. This period of twelve thousand (divine) years is known as (Mahā) Yuga. The four Yugas are Kṛta, Tretā, Dvāpara and Kali.

29. In this world the calculation of years is based on human level. Now I shall mention the duration of Kṛta Yuga in accordance with that type of calculation.[1]

30. The duration is one million four hundred and forty thousand years. As for Kali Yuga, it is one-fourth of the adove.

31. Thus the specific duration of time of the four Yugas excluding the *Sandhyās* and *Sandhyāṁśas* is declared.

32. Including the *Sandhyās* and *Sandhyāṁśas* the duration of the four yugas is four million three hundred and twenty thousand human years.

33. Thus seventyone sets of Caturyugas consisting of Kṛta, Tretā etc., constitute a Manvantara.

34-36. Now understand the unmber of human years constituting a Manvantara. It will be thirty crores, six millions and seven hundred and twenty thousand human years (306720000 years). The number of years constituting a Manvantara has been calculated by Dvijas, the experts in calculating time. Thus the duration of a Manvantara and that of Yugas has been stated.

37. The first (Kṛta) Yuga has four thousand years. The remaining Yugas, viz. Tretā, Dvāpara and Kali, I shall explain.

---

1. Our text records the duration of Kṛtayuga and the total number of human years in *Caturyugas*. It means verses pertaining to the periods of other Yugas are deleted (For these vide Bd. P.I.2. 29-31-36).

38. Previously, while engrossed in describing the lineage of the sages, the two Yugas have been mentioned to you as they had come in due order. It is not possible to describe separately the two connected Topics coming in the same context simultaneously.

39 In the beginning of Tretā, Manu and the Seven Sages popularised the sacred rites of Vedic and Smṛti origin, directed by Brahmā.[1]

40. The Seven Sages expatiated on the Vedic sacred rites such as Marriage, *Agnihotra* and the like on the basis of Ṛk, Yajur and Sāman.

41. The Svāyaṁbhuva Manu expatiated on the conduct of life based on Smṛti injunctions, traditionally handed down and referring to the duties of the different castes and stages of life.

42-44. The Seven Sages and Manu were endowed with truthfulness, celibacy, learning and penance. They had performed penace in accordance with the order of sages. Hence in the beginning of Tretā Yuga, the Mantras manifested themselves to them without their undergoing physical or mental effort. In the first Kalpa those Mantras along with *Tāraka* (Oṁkāra) and others had already appeared before the Devas.

45. When the (original) Siddhis ceased to exist, these (others) began to function. Thousands of those Mantras which existed in the past Kalpas manifested themselves in their intellect once again.

46. The Seven Sages popularised the Ṛk, Yajus, Sāman and the Atharvan mantras and Manu propagated the rites in accordance with Smṛtis.

47. In the beginning of Tretā, the Vedas were one undivided and unified whole, because Dharma alone prevailed. But they are classified in Dvāpara age due to the shortage of life.

48. In the Kali and Dvāpara ages, divine sages and Devas without birth or death were created by penance by the Self-born Deity.

---

1. Verses 39-85 describe the happy life in Tretāyuga (cf. Mt. P. 142).

49. Following their righteous conduct, along with their lineage, they perform their respective duties in different Yugas. The Vedic texts, with ancillaries, function* with uniform meaning in every age.

50. *Ārambha* (expedition or enterprise) was a sacrifice for Kṣattriyas. *Havis* (offering of ghee etc.) was the *Yajña* to Vaiśyas. Śūdras had service as *Yajña* and excellent Brāhmaṇas had *Japa* (chanting of Mantras) as their *Yajña*.

51. All the castes rejoiced in Tretā age. They were protected righteously. They performed holy rites. They were happy and flourishing. They were blessed with progeny.

52. Kṣattriyas obeyed the (advice etc. of) Brāhmaṇas, Vaiśyas obeyed Kṣattriyas, Śūdras followed Vaiśyas. People cooperated and collaborated with one another.

53. Their activities were auspicious. Their holy rites and duties of castes and stages of life too were auspicious, in thought, mind, words and actions. Thus in Tretā age their activities remained unimpaired.

54. In Tretāyuga, people were equally endowed with the same span of life, good intellect, strength, beauty, health and righteousness.

55-57. Brahmā had stipulated the duties of the different castes and different stages of life. But out of delusion the subjects strayed away from sacred rites. They argued and quarrelled with one another. They approached Prajāpati Manu. Manu, the son of Brahmā, realized the state of affairs. He, the creator, the Man, begot of Śatarūpā two sons Priyavrata and Uttānapāda. These two were the first kings.

58. Thence arose a line of kings wielding the staff of power of punishment. Since they delighted the subjects, kings were called "*Rājānaḥ*".

59-60. In order to check and control those men who commit sins in secret and (hence) are difficult to be subdued, and in order to establish righteousness on the earth, the divisions of

---

*For *vikrīḍante* in our text here, Bd. P. I.2.29.54 reads *vikriyante* 'undergo changes' (in every *yuga*).

castes have been laid down in Tretā Yuga. The compilations of Vedic texts, both Mantras and Brāhmaṇas, have been made by the sages.

61. (The institution of) Yajña has been initiated by Devas, namely Yāmas, Śuklas and Japas all fully equipped with the requisites.

62. Formerly, in the Svāyaṁbhuva Manvantara, Yajñas were set in vogue by Devas under the leadership of Indra, the enjoyer of the universe.

63. Truthfulness, Japa, penance and charity are the main virtues in Tretā age. The practice of holy rites and rituals declines and the virtue of truthfulness prevails.

64. Renouncing their staff (of punishment due to its superfluity ?) those excessively fortunate kings became performers of sacrifice and expounders of the Vedas.

65. Their eyes were as large as lotus petals. Their chests were broad, and their bodies were well-built. They were vigorous and capable of slaying lions. They walked majestically like the elephants in rut.

66. They wielded great bows. They were endowed with all good characteristics. They were *Nyagrodha-parimaṇḍalas* (as explained in the next verse).

67. The word 'Nyagrodha' denotes two (both the) arms. Hence Nyagrodha means *Vyāma* (extended arms). He whose height extends as much as a *Vyāma*, he whose girth and height are equal, should be known as a *Nyagrodha-parimaṇḍala*.

68. The following seven[1], viz. a discus, a chariot, a jewel, a spouse, a treasure, a horse and an elephant, are regarded as super-gems (*ati-ratna*).

69. They say that the following seven are the inanimate jewels of the sovereigns of the worlds, viz. a discus, a chariot,

1. The idea that an emperor possesses excellent gems (*ati-ratnas*) is found in Pali, e.g. *Sudarsana Sutta, Dīgha Nikāya*. Here verses 68 and 69 give different lists of seven 'inanāmate jewels'. V. 70 enumerates 'living, animate, jewels'. Thus an emperor is (or should be) in possession of 13 jewels. The representation of a *cakravartin* at Jagayya Petta (2nd cent. B.C.) shows a combination of both animate & inanimate jewels and one more feature—at the touch of the emperor's hand the sky, showers gold coins.

a jewel, a sword, an excellent bow (the fifth *ratna*), a flag and a treasure.

70. The seven jewels (of an emperor) possessing life are mentioned as follows : queen, family-priest, commander-in-chief, chariot-maker, minister, horse and elephant (lit. elephant-cub).

71. These fourteen jewels are divine. They have been naturally acquired by the noble-souled ones. These fourteen jewels should be assigned to all emperors (i.e. all emperors should possess these).

72. In all the Manvantaras of the past and future, the emperors are born on the earth with a part of Viṣṇu.[1]

73-74. The precious gems are conducive to the welfare of all emperors of the past, present and future born in the Yugas Tretā etc. These four are very wonderful, viz. strength, piety, happiness and wealth (among the emperors).

75. Wealth, dharma, love, fame and victory attained by kings without any conflict are on a par with one another.

76. They excel even the sages by means of (spiritual powers such as) *Aṇimā* (minuteness) and others the power of Lordship, learning and penance. They overpower Devas, Dānavas and human beings by their strength and austere penance.

77. They are born with super-human marks visible on their bodies. They have a circle of hair on their forehead (between the eyebrows) ; their tongue sweeps their mouths. Their teeth and lips are copper-coloured; their hair stand facing up; and they have the Śrīvatsa scar (on the chest).

78. Their arms extend to their knees; their palms are marked with net and bull; they are very tall (*Nyagrodha-parimāhas*) ; they have shoulders like those of lions; their penises are well shaped. Their gait is as stately as that of a lordly elephant. Their chin bones are broad.

79. There are lines of wheel and fish on the soles of their

1. Verses 72-80 state the then idea about a model emperor.

feet and of conch and lotus on their palms. They live upto eightyfive thousand years as kings without signs of old age.

80. They have unimpeded movement in four places, viz. in the firmament, in the ocean, in the nether regions and on the mountains.

81. Sacrifice, charity, penance and truthfulness are the holy rites in Tretā Age. During this age, Dharma functions in accordance with the division of castes and stages of life.

82. *Daṇḍa-niti* (administration of Justice), aims at the establishment of the bounds of decency. All the subjects are jolly, well built, free from ailments. Their minds are fully contented.

83. Only a single unified Veda with four sub-divisions prevails in Tretā Age. People live upto three thousand years.

84. Surrounded by sons and grandsons, people die in due order (of seniority in age). This is the characteristic feature of Tretā Age. (Now) understand the *Tretā-Sandhyā* (Transition from Tretā Yuga).

85. The traits of Tretā Age continue to one-fourth of the *Sandhyā* and the traits in the *Sandhyā* continue to one-fourth of the Yuga.

Śāṁśapāyana said :

86. How did Yajña function in the beginning of Tretā age formerly in the Svāyaṁbhuva Manvantara ? Please explain it precisely.

87-88. How did they again make the classification and arrangement of the castes and stages of life when the *Sandhyā* too had elapsed along with Kṛta Age and a fraction of it alone remained, and Tretā age set in ? How was *Yajña* made to function, after gathering all the requisites.

On hearing this, *Sūta said* :

O Śāṁśapāyana, now listen to this.

89-90. I shall mention how in the beginning of Tretā Age Yajña was set in vogue. When there was plenty of rain, the plants grew and agriculture became established. People set about building houses, hermitages and cities. Then Indra the,

enjoyer of the universe, arranged the division of castes and stages of life and compiled the Mantras into *Saṁhitās*. He prescribed (specific) Mantras for rites leading to fruits here and hereafter.

91. Thus, Indra, the enjoyer of the universe, along with other Devas, initiated *Yajña* (the institution of sacrifice) together with all its requisites.

92. When the horse-sacrifice was instituted, the sages arrived there and began to perform sacrifices with the holy sacrificial beasts. On hearing about it, people assembled there to witness it.

93-97. When the Ṛtviks were busily engaged in sacrificial rites, when the Vedic mantras were recited, when the leading *Adhvaryus* moved about hurriedly and quickly, when the holy sacrificial beasts were being killed, when the offerings of ghee were poured into the fire by the divine *Hotṛs*, when the noble Devas were invoked and when they partook of their shares in the sacrifice, the sages began to worship Devas in the form of sense-organs (i.e. their presiding deities) who existed in the beginning of the Kalpas. The *Adhvaryus* who were great sages got ready at the time of *praiṣa* to slay the animals. On seeing the animals in their pitiable condition, the great sages collectively asked Indra[1]—"What is this sacrificial rite of yours ?

98. Desirous of a rite involving violence to life you have started an extremely sinful activity. O leading and excellent Deva, in this *Yajña* of yours the slaughter of animals is not a desirable act.

99. An evil activity has been started by you for destroying Dharma through animal-slaughter. This is not Dharma. This is an evil, sinful act. Violence can never be a Dharma.

100-101. If Your Honour wishes to perform the Yajña do it as per injunctions in the Vedas. You may worship by means of the Yajña that will not cause the violation (dissipation) of Dharma. O great god, perform the Yajña with the sacrifice-worthy seeds, which does not involve violence (*Hiṁsā*)—the

1. Verses 97-102 record the Brahmanical protest against animal-sacrifice. A germinable seed is also prohibited as it involves Hiṁsā. Only old seeds incapable of germinating into sprouts should be used.

seeds which are kept for the maximum period of three years and which do not germinate (into sprouts). O Indra ! This great Dharma (rite) has been laid down formerly by the self-born god (Brahmā)."

102. In this way Indra, the enjoyer of the universe, was asked by the sages, the seers of Reality: 'Say with what objects, mobile (living) or immobile (inanimate), Yajña shall be performed?'

103. The great sages eagerly seeking truth got tired of the dispute. Coming to a compromise with Indra they asked lord Vasu:

The Sages said:

104. "O excessively intelligent king, O son of Uttānapāda, how was the procedure of Yajña seen by you ? Please tell us. O lord, clear our doubts."

105. On hearing their words, the king remembered the Vedic texts and, without pondering over the strong or weak points, he explained the facts about Yajña. The king said : "The Yajña shall be performed as laid down in the sacred texts.

106. It shall be performed with sacrificial animals or seeds and fruits. Violence is the nature of Yajña. This is what appears to me.

107. Inasmuch as the Mantras in the Saṁhitās, as revealed to the sages endowed with penance and the visions of Tāraka and other mantras, are indicative of violence, what I have said now is based on that authority. Hence it behoves you to forgive me.

108. O Brāhmaṇas, if those statements in Mantras are authoritative, let the *Yajña* function on those lines, otherwise those statements will become false".

Thus those sages of Yogic communion were rendered unable to reply (silenced by him).

109-110. Glancing at the world below they said—"For that purpose be quiet. Though a king, you have uttered a lie. So enter the nether world". As soon as this was uttered, the king entered the nether world. Having been a resident of the

upper regions, he now became a resident of the nether regions.[1]

111. Thanks to that statement of the sages, he became a resident of the nether regions. Attempting to clear doubts in Dharma matters, King Vasu (in the nether world) went below.

112. No person, even if he be very learned, should express a decisive opinion all by himself, in regard to the disputed points of Dharma. The way of Dharma is very subtle. It has many loopholes and is inscrutable.

113. Excepting Svāyaṁbhuva Manu, none of Devas and sages can pronounce a judgment on Dharma.

114. So, violence was not approved as a means to Dharma by the great sages.[2] Thousands and crores of sages have attained heaven by means of their activities.

115. For the same reason, the sages do not unduly praise charity or Yajña. By making gifts of even insignificant articles such as bulbous root, fruit, vegetables or waterpot, in accordance with their means, the sages have become established in heaven.

116. *Adroha* (absence of ill-feeling), *Alobha* (absence of covetousness), *Dama* (self-control), Bhūtadayā (kindness to living beings), *Tapas* (penance), *Brahmacarya* (celibacy), *Satya* (truthfulness), *Anukrośa* (compassion and tenderness), *Kṣamā* (forgiveness) and *Dhṛti* (fortitude)—these are roots of Dharma but extremely difficult to achieve.

117. Yajña consists of piety and Mantras; Tapas is of the nature of observance of fast; one attains Devas through Yajña and Vairāgya (detachment) through penace.

118. Brāhmaṇhood is attained through *Karmasannyāsa* (renunciation of the fruits of Karman). Assimilation (in the supreme Ātman) is obtained through detachment. *Kaivalya* (complete identity with Brahman) is obtained through perfect knowledge. These are the five goals of life.

119. Thus, formerly, in the Svāyaṁbhuva Manvantara, a

1. The fall of Vasu for supporting animal-sacrifice shows that violence to life even for religious purpose was condemned at the time of the Purāṇa. The legend is found in *Mbh. Śānti.* 337. 13-16.

2. Verses 114-118 establish the superiority of the path of knowledge (*jñāna-mārga*) over *karma-mārga* including sacrifices.

dispute arose between Devas and sages in regard to the practice of Yajña.

120. Then, after witnessing that wonderful procedure (of Yajña) through violence and disregarding the suggestions of Vasu, the sages returned to the place whence they had come.

121-123. When the sages had gone away, Devas completed the Yajña and attained the fruits. It is heard that many Brāhmaṇa-Kṣatriya kings had attained *Siddhis* through penance. These include Priyavrata, Uttānapāda, Dhruva, Medhātithi, Vasu, Sumedhas, Virajas, Śaṅkhapāt, Rajas, Prācīnabarhis, Parjanya, Havirdhāna and other kings. These and many other kings attained Siddhis and went to heaven. They were saintly kings of great prowess whose fame was well-established.

124. Hence by all means, in regard to everything, penance surpasses *Yajña*. It was by penance that the universe was created by Brahmā.

125. So, Yajña can never excel penance. All this (visible universe) has its roots in penance. In this manner Yajña was set in vogue in the Svāyaṁbhuva Manvantara. From that time onwards the performance of Yajñas continued as Yugas rolled on.

CHAPTER FIFTYEIGHT

Description of the Four Yugas

Sūta said :

1. Henceforth I shall explain the traits of Dvāpara[1] age. When Tretā Yuga ends, Dvāpara sets in.

2. In the beginning of Dvāpara, the attainment of *Siddhis* by the people is as it was in Tretā Yuga. But as the Yuga advances, the *Siddhis* disappear.

---

1. This chapter describes the state of society, religion, religious texts etc. in Dvāpara Age. The deterioration and confusion in social, religious and other conditions in Dvāpara show how a backround of chaotic conditions was developing for Kali Age.

3-4. Then the following vices begin to appear in the people at the time of Dvāpara. : covetousness, lack of fortitude, trading mentality, war-mindedness, indecision about principles, inter-mixture of castes, indecision about duties, destruction of sacrificial plants and animals, pride, arrogance, impatience and weakness. These vices provoked by Rajas and Tamas Guṇas prevail in Dvāpara Age.

5. In Kṛta Age Dharma is natural; in Tretā it is sought and attained. In Dvāpara it becomes agitated and intensly affected, and in Kali it perishes.

6. In Kali Age the order of the castes gets destroyed. The discipline of the different stages of life is disturbed and confused. Doubts (due to variance) in Śrutis and Smṛtis begin to rise.

7. Owing to the difference between Śrutis and Smṛtis, no decision is arrived at. Due to indecision, principles of Dharma cannot be declared. When the principles diverge, there is difference of opinion among men.

8. Owing to mutual difference in their views and delusion, no definite decision as to what is Dharma and what is not, can be arrived at.

9. In view of the defects in the causes and the indecisions therein, differences in opinion arise leading to these peculiarities of outlook (or philosophy).

10. Multiplicity of scriptures has been created by the people of different (philosophical) outlooks. A single unified Veda is divided into four in Tretā Age.

11. Due to the short span of life as found in Dvāpara Yuga, the Veda is classified into four by Vedavyāsas (in Dvāpara Yugas).

12. The Vedas are further sub-divided into Mantras and Brāhmaṇas by the descendants of sages by alterations on accents, syllables etc. in accordance with their different outlooks.

13. The Saṁhitās of the Ṛk, Sāman and Yajur Vedas were compiled by sages expert in Śrutis occasionally with general and special (known as Vedic *Vikṛtis*) changes according to different standpoints.

14. Consequently Brāhmaṇa (works), Kalpa Sūtras and Mantra-Pravacanas (different scriptural texts) came into existence.

Some were abandoned by authoritative teachers while others were retained.

15. In Dvāpara Age Brāhmaṇas began to disregard the rules of conduct and stages of life. Formerly there was one Yajurveda; later it was bifurcated (into Śukla and Kṛṣṇa Yajurveda).

16. This entire scriptural lore became confused by the general and perverted interpretations. By the discourses on (the interpretation of) the Yajurveda, it was greatly impaired.

17. So also, by means of innumerable alterations and variations, the Atharvan, Ṛk and Sāman have been confused in Dvāpara by the people of different views.

18. These diverse and different versions do not perish in spite of alterations in Dvāpara Age. They continue to function but in Kaliyuga they perish.

19. Effects of these contrarieties and errors take shape in Dvāpara itself as calamities such as draughts, premature deaths, epidemics.

20. Due to miseries born of verbal, mental and physical acts, despondency and indifference to worldly life sets in, as a result of which they begin to ponder over the ways of relief from misery.

21. The pondering leads to detachment; from detachment, defects (of the worldly life) are seen. As a result of seeing defects, there is the possibility of spiritual knowledge in Dvāpara Age.

22. In Dvāpara Age, rival (scriptures and sects) crop up against the scriptures which were honoured formerly in the first Svāyaṁbhuva Manvantara.

23. There are variations and alterations in the science of Āyurveda, Jyotiṣa and the ancillaries of the Vedas; there are doubts and variations in regard to the texts on political economy and logic.

24. There are diversities and variations in the Smṛti texts. Separate systems and schools (of theology and philosophy) are established. In Dvāpara Yuga difference of opinion starts among men.

25. The life of all living beings in Dvāpara Age becomes arduous involving bodily strain. Livelihood is possible only by mental, verbal and physical strain.

26-27. Covetousness, lack of fortitude, mercantile activities, wars, indecision in regard to philosophical principles, handling and editing of the Vedic texts, inter-mixture of holy rites, diseases, sickness, greed, slaughter, breakdown in the system and rules of castes and stages of life, and susceptibility to passion and hatred—all these are rampant in Dvāpara Age.

28-29. The traits of Dvāpara are evident in the *Sandhyā* period but a little. They become deficient in quality. In the quarter of the *Sandhyā* period, a part of it persists.

30. Now listen and understand the traits of Kaliyuga[1]. At the close of transitional period of Dvāpara, Kaliyuga begins.

31. These are the characteristics of Kaliyuga: violence, jealousy, falsehood, deception and slaughter of ascetics. These are the characteristics of Kali Age which people inherit.

32. Affected by the traits of the Age, entire Dharma deteriorates. It is doubtful whether the livelihood (of the people) can be achieved even by putting up mental strain, physical exertion or prayers.

33. In Kali Age, there are fatal diseases. There is perpetual fear of hunger. There is terrible danger of drought. Vision is blurred and rendered perverse.

34. In Kaliyuga, people do not accept the authority of Smṛtis. Some die in the womb, others die in youth. Some die in old age and some in childhood, in Kali Yuga.

35. In Kali age people are unrighteous, unmindful of the rules of conduct, fierce in anger but deficient in power and splendour. They always utter falsehood.

36. There is danger and fear to people owing to wrong performance of sacrifices, neglect of (Vedic) studies, evil conduct, misleading religious scriptures and faults in the performance of holy rites of Brāhmaṇas.

---

1. This gloomy picture of Kali Age is found in almost all Purāṇas e.g. *Mbh. Vana.* chs. 188, 190, Br. P. chs. 229-230, Mt. P. 144. 32-47, VP. VI. 1.

The consensus of Purāṇas shows that this was probably the actual state of Indian society when the Purāṇas came to be written.

37. In Kali age creatures are affected by passion and greed. They become violent, deceptive, malicious, hot-tempered, impatient and untruthful.

38. There is much of agitation and turbulence at the advent of Kaliyuga. There is no regular study of the Vedas. The Brāhamaṇas do not perform Yajñas. All men inclusive of Kṣattriyas and Vaiśyas gradually decay.

39. Low-born and insignificant persons have contact with Brāhmaṇas in sharing beds, seats and food in Kali Age.

40. Kings are mainly Śūdras propagating heretic ideas. People never hesitate to kill a child in the womb. They behave in such a way.

41. Longevity, intellect, strength, beauty and familyprestige decline. Śūdras behave like Brāhmaṇas and Brāhmaṇas adopt the ways of Śūdras.

42. When the end of the Yuga approaches, thieves and robbers administer kingdoms like kings; kings adopt the methods of thieves and robbers. Servants are bereft of love, friendship and loyalty (to their masters).

43. Women become unchaste and disinterested in holy rites. They become fond of wine and meat. When Kali Age sets in, they resort to deceptive means.

44. In Kali Age beasts of prey become more numerous and owerful. Cattles die and dwindle. Saintly men withdraw and keep aloof.

45. At that time excessively fruitful but very subtle Dharma becomes difficult of access. Since the conduct of life of those who enjoy, in the various stages of life, is loose and unbridled, Dharma gets shaken.

46. Then, when the end of the age approaches, even the great goddess like the earth will yield but little fruit. Śūdras will begin to perform penance.

47. But piety practised for one day (in Kali Yuga) is equal to that practised for a month in Dvāpara and a year in Tretā Age.

48. The kings never protect the subjects. They appropriate their shares in oblations. Towards the end of the Yuga, they become eager solely to protect themselves.

49. The kings do not belong to the Kṣattriya clan. Vaiśyas maintain themselves with the help of Śūdras. The noble Brāhmaṇas perform obeisance to Śūdras at the end of Kali Age.

50. In Kali Age there will be (wicked) persons in the guise of sages. When the Yuga is about to come to a close, the god of rains will shower in a mysteriously haphazard manner.

51. In this base Yuga, people will have trading propensity, By false measures, the buyers will be deceived of their due share in the commodities.

52. The whole society abounds in heretics of foul conduct and activity with their false appearance. Men will be in a minority and women will be many, when the end of Kaliyuga is imminent.

53. People will be begging too much of one another. They will habitually eat meat. They will be using harsh words. They will not be straightforward or free from jealousy.

54. No one helps in return for the help received. People will get emaciated and weak. They will indulge unhesitatingly in the activities causing downfall. That is the characteristic of the Yuga coming to a close.

55. The earth will be devoid of good men. It will be desolate. In countries and cities, there will be groups and cliques.

56. The earth will be deficient in water and less fertile. Protectors (i.e. those who ought to protect) will not protect. They will not exercise control over the administration.

57. People will take away others' gems and jewels. They will molest other men's wives. They will be passionate with a wicked heart. They will revel in violent sinful activities.

58. The men have unlikeable consciousness (?) They keep their hair untied and dishevelled. Towards the close of the Yuga, men less than sixteen years will begin to procreate.

59. When the close of Yuga is imminent, Śūdras exhibiting their white teeth, with clean shaven heads and wearing ochre-coloured robes will perform sacred rites, proclaiming that they have conquered the sense-organs.[1]

1. Probably a reference to Buddhist monks, as Buddhism prevailed all over India at the time of these Purāṇas.

60. There will be thieves stealing foodcrops and garments. There will be looters robbing other robbers and abductors of murderers.

61. When perfect knowledge and holy rites disappear in the world, when people become inactive (in religious matters) even worms, mice and serpents will attack men.

62. Abundance, welfare, good health and ability will become rare. Owls will begin to infest the countries afflicted by the fear of hunger.

63. The maximum life expectation of the people afflicted by misery will be a hundred years. In Kali Yuga, the Vedas will be seen in some places and not seen in some places.

64-66. Yajñas are forsaken when Dharma receives a setback. There will be many types of heretics like wearers of ochre-coloured robes (Buddhists), Jainas and Kāpālikas (skull-bearing mendicants). There will be sellers of the Vedas and of the sacred places. Heretics antagonistic to the discipline and arrangement of different castes and stages oflife will be born. When Kali Yuga sets in, the Vedas will not be studied. Śūdras will be experts and authorities in the affairs of Dharma.

67. Kings born of Śūdra women will not perform Yajñas. The subjects will murder women and slaughter cows. Coming to mutual clash, they will kill one another. And in this way, people will try to accomplish (their object).

68. Due to the spread of misery, people will be short-lived. Realms will be exterminated. Sickness, delusion, dejection, unhappiness and all *Tāmasic* activities prevail in Kali Age.

69. People will kill and destroy children in wombs. With the advent of Kali, longevity, strength and beauty begin to decline. The highest life expectation of men afflicted by misery will be a hundred years.

70. The Vedas will be seen somewhere and not seen in some places. When Dharma is harassed Yajñas are forsaken.

71. At that time men will attain *Siddhi* in a short time. Blessed people, leading excellent Brāhmaṇas will perform holy rites at the end of the Yuga.

72. For those who perform the holy rites enjoined by the Śrutis and Smṛtis, without the least tinge of jealousy, the

performance of holy rites for a year in Tretā Yuga is equal to that for a month in Dvāpara Age. An intelligent man performing these in Kali Age according to his capacity, shall attain the same fruit in a day.

73-74. This is the condition in Kali Age. Now understand the condition in the part of the junction (*Sandhyāṁśa*) from me. In every Yuga the achievements (*Siddhis*) shrink and dwindle by three-fourths. In accordance with the nature of the Yuga, the *Sandhyās* stay by a quarter. In accordance with the nature of the *Sandhyās* they are established in their parts by a quarter.

75-76. Thus when the period of junction (*Sandhyāṁśa*) approaches at the close of the (Kali) Yuga, a king, the chastiser of the wicked people, will be born after the death (fall) of Bhṛgus. He (will be) Candramas by *Gotra* (of the Lunar race). He will be called Pramiti. He was born of a part of Viṣṇu formerly in the Svāyaṁbhuva Manvantara.

77. He wandered over the earth for full twenty years. He led an army consisting of cavalry, chariots and elephants.

78. He was surrounded by hundreds and thousands of Brāhmaṇas armed with weapons. He killed Mlecchas in thousands.

79. He went everywhere. After killing the kings born of Śūdra women, he exterminated the heretics.

80. He killed thousands of persons who were not religious and righteous. He killed those born of mixed castes as well as those who depended on them.

81-83. He killed the *Udicyas* (northerners), *Madhya Deśyas* (people of the Middle Land), mountain-dwellers, easterners, westerners, dwellers in Vindhya and Aparānta. He killed the southerners, Draviḍas, Siṁhalas, Gāndhāras, Pāradas, Pahlavas, Yavanas, Tuṣāras, Barbaras, Cīnas, Śūlikas, Daradas, Khasas, Laṁpākas, Ketas, and the different tribes of Kirātas.

84. Setting his wheel (of religious victory) in motion, the powerful lord, the destroyer of Mlecchas, roamed over the earth. He could not be thwarted by any living being.

85. He was born of a part of Lord Viṣṇu. This valorous hero was known as Pramiti by people knowing what happened in the previous birth.

86-88. In the previous Kali Yuga, he was of Candramas Gotra (Lunar race). When he was thirtytwo (he started his victorious march). For twenty years, he continued to slay men and other living beings in thousands. By his firm action, he rendered the earth a relic (memento) of his valour. Due to his anger provoked by mutual causes (bilateral relations) or suddenness, he subdued Vṛṣalas who were generally unrighteous. Thereafter, he attained eternal rest along with his followers in the region (confluence ?) of Gaṅgā and Yamunā.

89-91. When he thus passed away along with his ministers and faithful soldiers, after exterminating all the kings and Mlecchas in thousands, when the period of the part of *Sandhyā* arrived at the end of the Yuga, and when only a few of the people remained scattered here and there, the unchecked people became active in the world in groups. They harassed one another and sought help of one another.

92. When anarchy prevailed as a result of the Yuga (coming to a close), and when there was doubt and suspense everywhere among the subjects, they became frightened of one another.

93. They were exhausted and agitated. Eager to preserve their own lives, they left their wives and homes. They became extremely miserable and died.

94. When Dharma based on the Vedas and Smṛtis became defunct, people killed one another devoid of the bounds of decency, affection, friendship or shame.

95. Their span of life dwindled to twentyfive years. They became short-sized. They abandoned their wives and sons. Their sense-organs became agitated and their minds dejected.

96. Oppressed by drought and scanty rain, they were forced to abandon cultivation. Being utterly miserable, they left their lands and countries and lived in the frontier.

97. They began to resort to rivers, oceans, wells and mountains. They maintained themselves on fruits and roots, wine and meat. They became very miserable.

98. They wear bark garments and deer skins. They have no wives or sons. They fall off from the system of castes and stages of life. They resort to a terrible promiscuous intermixture of castes.

99. They reach the limit of misery. Only a few of them survive. They are oppressed by old age, sickness and hunger. Due to misery they become indifferent to worldly existence.

100. Due to this despondency and indifference, they begin to ponder. By pondering over they attain the state of equanimity. In the state of equanimity they are enlightened. Due to enlightenment they become pious.

101. When those subjects surviving at the end of Kali Age are thus enlightened, in a single day and night the Yuga is transformed.

102. After making their minds enchanted Kṛtayuga sets in due to the power of the inevitable destiny.

103. When Kṛtayuga begins to function again, the few subjects surviving from Kaliyuga become the subjects of Kṛtayuga.

104. Those Siddhas who stay move about and are seen clearly. The Seven Sages are also ever present there.

105. Brāhmaṇas, Kṣattriyas, Vaiśyas and Śūdras who are to serve as seeds for future generation become non-differentiated from those who are born of Kali.

106. The Seven Sages instruct them and the others too in the two types of Dharma prescribed by Śrutis and Smṛtis as well as in the conduct pertaining to the castes and stages of life.

107. Then in Kṛta Yuga, people (subjects) perform the sacred rites. To the subjects of the Kṛta Age Dharma based on Śrutis and Smṛtis is laid down by the Seven Sages.

108. For establishment of Dharma among the subjects, the Sages remain in authority over the whole of Manvantara and stay on (live) to the end of the Yuga.

109-110. Just as new shoots grow from the roots of grasses that are burnt during the summer in the forest-fire, so also the new Yuga grows out of the old Yuga. Till the end of the Manvantara this series goes on without break.

111. Happiness, longevity, strength, beauty, virtue

(Dharma), wealth and love—all these become reduced by one fourth from one Yuga to another.

112. In the parts of junctions of Yugas (*Sandhyāṁśas*) the *Siddhis* of Dharma become almost extinct. Thus, O Brāhmaṇas, the *Pratisandhi* (the period of transition between Yugas) has been narrated to you.

113-114. By means of this alone should all the sets of four Yugas be known. When the set of four Yugas repeats a thousand times, it is the day of god Brahmā. His night is also of the same duration. In it, there is simplicity and inactiveness of the Bhūtas (elements).

115. This alone is the trait of all Yugas. Seventy-one cycles of the sets of four Yugas occurring successively constitute a Manvantara.

116. In a single set of four Yugas everything happens in the manner you have heard now. In the other sets of four Yugas also the same thing happens in the same order.

117. The differences that occur in the various creations are confined to twentyfive, neither more nor less.

118. So also the Kalpas and the Yugas are similar in characteristics. This alone is the characteristic sign of all the Manvantaras.

119. So also the transitions of the Yugas occur naturally. They are eternal as well. But the living beings that undergo modifications in the form of dissolution and re-creation cannot be permanent.

120. Thus the characteristics of Yugas have been briefly mentioned, the Yugas of the past and future in all Manvantaras.

121-122. In respect of the future Manvantaras the traits shall be inferred from the previous one. In the Manvantaras whether of the past or of the future, know that the Manvantaras shall be explained by the present one; one Kalpa is explained by explaining another.[1]

123-124. The eight classes of Devas, sages and Manus are also similar in all Manvantaras in names, forms and purposes.

---

1. cf. *Dhātā yathāpūrvam akalpayat*
—Mahānārāyaṇīya Up. 5.7.

The division of the four castes and stages of life is the same in every Yuga.

125. The Lord arranges for the creation and the division of castes and stages in the different Yugas in accordance with the nature of those Yugas for the purposes of fulfilling the functions, in the respective Yugas.

126. The topic has been narrated in brief. Now listen to and understand the creation of the world. I shall explain the situation in different Yugas in details and in proper order.

CHAPTER FIFTYNINE

Yugas and Classes of People : Lineage of Sages

Sūta said :

1. Listen to and understand the details of those subjects who are born in the different Yugas. I shall mention in which Yuga demons, serpents, cattles, birds, Piśācas, Yakṣas and Rākṣasas are born and how long they live.

2. Piśācas, Asuras, Gandharvas, Yakṣas, Rākṣasas and Pannagas (serpents) live for the whole period of the Yuga, unless they are killed by someone.

3. The span of life of human beings, animals, birds and immobile beings fluctuates everywhere in accordance with the traits of the Yuga.[1]

4. Instability in regard to the span of life of living beings is seen in Kali Yuga. The maximum life expectation of human beings in this Yuga is a hundred years.

5-7. The height of Devas and Asuras is one hundred and fiftyeight *Aṅgulas* in Kali age. In human beings (?) the height is gradually reduced by seven times seven *Aṅgulas*

1. The Purāṇic author believes (as will be seen later) that there has been a continuous deterioration in height or physical built and other faculties of *all* the subjects of creation.

from that of Devas and Asuras. It is remembered by persons born in Kali Age that their height from foot to head is eightyfour *Aṅgulas* as measured with their own fingers. This stature of human beings is further reduced towards the end of the Yuga.

8. In all the periods of Yugas of the past and future man has the height of eight spans (*Tālas* i.e. *Vitasti* or the distance between the tips of the little finger and the thumb when both are extended) measuring with his own fingers.

9. He who is nine *Tālas* high from foot to head with arms extending upto the knees when they are close together, is worshipped even by Devas.

10. In every Yuga the height of cows, horses, elephants, buffaloes and immobile beings varies as follows :

11. The hump of bulls is seventysix *Aṅgulas*. The height of elephants is full hundred and eight *Aṅgulas*.

12. The height of horses is fifty *Aṅgulas* and that of trees is a thousand *Aṅgulas* less by forty *Aṅgulas* (i.e. nine hundred sixty).

13. The constitution of the bodies of Devas is as a matter of fact similar to that of human beings.

14. It is said that the body of Devas is endowed with exceptional intellect. The human body is said to be equipped with less intelligence than that of Devas.

15. Thus the life of gods and human beings has been explained. Now listen to the description of animals, birds and immobile beings.

16. Cows, goats, buffaloes, horses, elephants, birds and trees are useful in sacrificial and all other rites.

17. They are born again in the same form in the abodes of Devas. They, of auspicious forms, are such as can be enjoyed by the Devas as they pleased.

18. With the forms befitting them, either mobile or immobile, and with charming sizes as are known to those conversant with reality, they become happy.

19. I shall now explain the remaining ones (*Śiṣṭas* or cultured people) constituting *Sat-s* and *Sādhus* (saints).[1] The

1. Verses 21-32 explain the concept of *Dharma* and what is *Śrauta Dharma* and *Smārta Dharma*. The characteristics of Dharma are given in vv. 40-55.

word *'sat'* indicates Brahman. Those who possess it, are called *santas* due to their similarity with Brahman.

20. Those who are neither infuriated nor elated in regard to the tenfold object of senses and eight types of causes of bondage, are called *Jitātmans* (who are self-controlled).

21. Inasmuch as Brāhmaṇas, Kṣattriyas and Vaiśyas are engaged in two types of Dharma, the general and the special, they are called *Dvijātis*.

22. The knowledge of Śrauta and Smārta rites utilised by the different castes in their different stages of life and leading to heaven or salvation is called Real Dharma.

23-25. A Brahmacārin acting in the interest of his preceptor is an ascetic because he amasses learning. A householder is an ascetic because he accomplishes holy rites. A Vaikhānasa is called an ascetic, because he performs penance in the forest. The aspiring ascetic is called *Sādhu*, because he practises Yogic exercises. Thus all these—the religious student, the householder, the forest-dwelling hermit and the recluse are called *Sādhus* because they perform the *Āśrama Dharmas* (duties of their stage of life).

26. Neither Devas, nor Pitṛs, nor sages nor human beings can be of different views if they correctly say "This is Dharma", "This is not".

27. The two words, "*Dharma*" and "*Adharma*" refer to rites. Auspicious rites are *Dharmas* and inauspicious rites are *Adharmas*.

28. The word *Dharma* is derived from $\sqrt{dhṛ}$ 'to hold' or 'to support. If *Dharma* does not sustain or if it is not conducive to greatness it is *Adharma*.

29. The *Dharma* that leads a person to achieve his desire is taught by preceptors. They call these persons *Ācāryas*—preceptors : old persons devoid of greediness, self-possessed, non-arrogant, well disciplined and straightforward.

30. A preceptor practises those principles himself; he establishes a code of good conduct; he collects (and masters) meanings of scriptures and is endowed with (practices) restraints and observances.

31. After learning the Vedas from the ancients, the Seven

Sages expatiated on the Śrauta Dharma. The Vedas are Ṛk, Yajus and Sāman. They are the very limbs of the Veda.

32. After remembering the code of conduct of life current in the previous Manvantara, they explained it once again. Hence that Dharma is known as Smārta Dharma. It refers to different castes and stages of life.

33. Both the types of Dharma are called "*Śiṣṭācāra*" (the conduct of the cultured). The word *Śiṣṭa* has come from the word *Śeṣa* (survivor, remainder).[1] Hence *Śiṣṭācāra* is the conduct of life for those who remain (i.e. survived the Manvantara).

34-35. The righteous persons who survive after a Manvantara are Manu and the Seven Sages. They remain for the continuity of the people and for the purpose of establishing virtue (*Dharma*). Manu and other Śiṣṭas have been enumerated by me before. That which has been practised regularly in every Yuga by those *Śiṣṭas* (shall be known as *Śiṣṭācāra*).

36. Study of the three Vedas, agriculture, administration of justice and government, sacrifice, adherence to the (the duties of) castes and stages of life—all these are practised by the *Śiṣṭas* including Manu and his predecessors. That *Śiṣṭācāra* is eternal.

37. The following eight are characteristic *Śiṣṭācāras*: charity, truthfulness, penance, absence of greed, learning, sacrifice, procreation and sympathy.

38. Since the *Śiṣṭas* (survivors), Manu and the Seven Sages, practise this in all the Manvantaras, it is known as *Śiṣṭācāra*.

39. That which is heard (i.e. refers to Śrutis) shall be known as Śrauta (Dharma); that which is remembered (i.e. refers to *Smṛtis*) is called Smārta (Dharma). Performance of sacrifice, study of the Vedas etc. are Śrauta Dharmas and observance of the duties of castes and stages of life is called Smārta Dharma. I shall state the characteristics and the various parts of this Dharma.

40. After seeing and on being asked about it (if) a person does not conceal facts and states them in proper sequence

---

1. Verses 33-38 present a unique definition of *Śiṣṭa* and what is *Śiṣṭācāra*. Manu XII. 109 and Vasiṣṭha (Smṛti) VI. 143 differ. They insist on scholarship (Vedic), ability to draw correct inference and persuade people to follow Vedic teaching. Mt. P. 145.34-35 supports our text & derives it from √*śiṣ* 'to remain'

(as they occurred), it is the characteristic (sign of) *Satya* (truthfulness).

41. Celibacy, Japa, silence and fasting—these are the roots of penance. Penance is hard and very difficult of achievement.

42. The sacrificial animals, the requisite materials, the ghee offerings, the Ṛk, Sāman and Yajus Mantras, Ṛtviks and the sacrificial gifts—the collection of all these constitutes Yajña*.

43. Viewing all living beings as one's own self, looking impartially towards friends and foes is called *Dayā* (sympathy, mercy).

44. One shall not strike back or rebuke when struck or rebuked. Restraint in thought, speech and action and forgiveness is called endurance.

45. Refraining from taking other man's belongings left unprotected by the master, or thrown out on the ground, is called here as non-covetousness.

46. Abstinence from sexual acts, neither brooding nor imagining about it and complete sexual detachment is called celibacy (*Brahmacarya*).

47. If the sense-organs do not adopt a wrong path either for oneself or for others, it is the sign of quiescence or restraint.

48. He who does not get infuriated when thwarted in the ten-fold sensual object and in the eight causes of worldly bondage is considered a conqueror.

49. If a person feels that he must give unto a deserving person whatever is liked by him most or the money (or things) that has come to him duly and justly, that is the characteristic sign of *Dāna* (Charity).

50. Charity is of three types: the lowest, superiormost, and middling. That which leads to liberation (from *Saṁsāra*) is of the highest type; that which is given for the achievement of one's selfish ends is the lowest; that which is given to all beings out of pity or their proper sharing with the kins is the middling (type of *Dāna*).

51. That which is enjoined by Śrutis and Smṛtis, that which conforms to the observance of the duties of castes and stages of

---

**Yoga* in the text obviously a misprint.

life, that which is not contrary to the practice of the cultured (*Śiṣṭas*) and that which arises from contact with the saintly and the good, is *Dharma.*

52. Absence of hatred for what is not liked, abstention from undue praise of what is liked, refraining from overdelightedness, repentance and dejection is called detachment.

53. *Sannyāsa* means eschewing the fruits of actions performed or intended to be performed. Abandonment of what is good and what is not good is called *Tyāga.*

54. The knowledge of the transformation from the unmanifest and undifferentiated into the non-sentient and the difference and distinction between the sentient and non-sentient is called *Jñāna* (real knowledge).

55. These are the characteristic signs of the various ancillaries of Dharma as mentioned by the sages who knew the principles of Dharma in the previous Svāyaṃbhuva Manvantara.

56. I shall now mention the procedure of the Manvantara and the mode of behaviour of the people of one caste with the members of the other castes and among themselves. In every Manvantara, the system of the Vedas differs.

57-58. (The Vedic Mantras of) Ṛk, Yajus and Sāman remain the same in respect of every deity as before. In spite of the dissolution of elements, *Śatarudriya,* the procedure of sacrificial offerings as well as *Stotra* (hymns or prayers) function as before.

The *Stotras* are of four types: *Dravya-stotra* (prayer for sacrificial material); *Guṇastotra* (prayer for qualities); *Karma-stotra* (eulogy of proper rites), and the fourth is the eulogy of *Abhijanas* (lineage).

59. In all the Manvantaras Brahmā initiates the four types of *stotras* in regard to Devas even as they come into being. Thus the origin of the collection of Mantras is of four types.

60-62a. As the sages perform severe and extremely difficult penance, the Mantras of different Vedas, Atharva, Ṛk, Yajur and Sāman, appear before them severally in the same manner as in the previous Manvantaras. They (the Mantras) appear from five sources: satisfaction, fear, misery, happiness

and sorrow, born of the totality of their penance, vision or by chance.

62b. Now (here) I shall explain the *Ṛṣitva* (the state of being a Ṛṣi) of sages along with their characteristics.

63. Among the past and the future, the sages are said to be of five types. Hence I shall recount the origin of sages and of *Ārṣa* (whatever pertains to the Ṛṣis).

64-65. When the Guṇas were in (a state of) equilibrium, there was the annihilation of everything. There were no Devas anywhere. As if due to their assimilation (*atideśa*) it (*Pradhāna*) unintelligently functions for the sake of *Cetana* (the conscious one). Thereby it was presided over by *Cetana* (the conscious principle) without its awareness.

66. Both of them function like the fish and the water. The *Tattva* (Pradhāna) presided over by consciousness (the conscious Puruṣa) functions through Guṇas.

67. Since the cause is present the effect functions in the same way. The object functions due to the subject. The *Artha* (meaning) functions due to its meaningfulness (state of possessing meaning).

68. The differences which are materialised by *Kāla* (Time) are due to the intrinsic nature of the cause. They become explicitly manifest in due course as Mahat and other principles.

69. From *Mahat*, *Ahaṁkāra* (Cosmic Ego) is evolved; from Ego the (Subtle) elements. The different elements are evolved due to mutual interaction. The cause immediately transforms (itself) into action.

70. Just as a burning fire-brand spreads its sparks all round simultaneously while falling, so also the conscious Principle (*Kṣetrajña*) that transforms itself due to the action of Time manifests himself.

71. Just as a glow-worm is suddenly seen in blinding darkness, so also *Mahat* is evolved out of the unmanifest and shines like a glow-worm.

72. The Principle of Consciousness stays at the entrance to the great chamber where the embodied principle *Mahat* stays.

73. *Mahat* is seen beyond *Tamas* (the dark principle) on account of its distinct disparity. The Śruti says, "The con-

scious Principle, the knower, stays there itself at the end of darkness".

74. As it (*Mahat*) was transforming, *Buddhi* (Intellect) manifested itself in four ways viz. perfect knowledge, detachment, glory and Dharma.

75. All these are its evolutes and well-shaped too. It is called *Siddhi* (Evolute) as it is effected through the transformation of embodied *Mahat*.

76. He (*Puruṣa*) stays in the body (*Pur*) and possesses the knowledge of the body. He is called *Puruṣa* as he dwells in the *Pur* (body), and is called *Kṣetrajña* due to his knowledge of the body.

77. Since he has knowledge of the *Kṣetra* (body), he is called *Kṣetrajña*. Therefore the Lord is called Intellect (*Mati*). Since he abides with *Buddhi* (Intellect), he is of the nature of knowledge (Bodha). For the accomplishment (of task of the world?) this non-intelligent entity, both manifest and unmainfest, is pervaded (by the Intelligent Principle).

78. Thus it is the conscious principle that dissociates itself from the objects of sense-organs. It is this very principle that cognizes the objects as worthy of being enjoyed.

79. The root √*ṛṣ* means 'to go'. It refers to the Vedas, truthfulness and penance. He who is devoted to these three and attains Brahman is called '*Ṛṣi*'.[1]

80. The *Ṛṣi* who attains the knowledge of the great unmanifest principle and abstains from worldly attachment simultaneously is called *Paramarṣi*.

81. From the root √*ṛṣ* meaning "to go", the name *Ṛṣi* has been derived. Since the mental sons of Brahmā are self-born, they are Īśvaras (endowed with spiritual power).

82. He who is not restricted or delimited by measures is called great. Those who attain the Great Principle by means of attributes are called *Maharṣis*. They are the seers who can penetrate beyond intellect.

83. The hearts of those powerful (mental sons) are auspicious. Eschewing ego and ignorance (*Tamas*), they have attained sagehood.

1. Verses 79-107 clarify the concept 'Ṛṣi' and give the details of the different classes of Ṛṣis, e.g. composers of the Mantras and Brāhmaṇas etc. and explanations of 'Maharṣi' etc. These also give the families of sages.

84. Hence those who have a real insight and knowledge of the *Bhūtādi* (Cosmic Ego) are called *Ṛṣis* (Sages). The sons of *Ṛṣis* (Sages) who are born of womb through sexual intercourse are called *Ṛṣikas*.

85. Those (spiritually) powerful ones realize the *Tanmātras* (subtle elements) and *Satya* (the truth). The Seven Sages, therefore, are the supreme realizer of the Truth.

86. The sons of the sages are known as *Ṛṣiputras*. Since they have attained learning and the mastery of the principles, they are called *Śrutarṣis*. They are keen observers of the true wisdom.

87. They are of five classes. Their names are *Avyaktātmā*, *Mahātmā*, *Ahaṁkārātmā*, *Bhūtāmā* and *Indriyātmā*. They practise five kinds of knowledge. Listen to the five classes of sages by their names.

88. The following are powerful lords self-born as the mental sons of Brahmā: Bhṛgu, Marīci, Atri, Aṅgiras, Pulaha, Kratu, Manu, Dakṣa, Vasiṣṭha and Pulastya, ten in all.

89. As they are born of the sage and are hence (spiritually great), they are called *Maharṣis*. Know the names of the sages who were the sons of these great sages (*Maharṣis*).

90-91. Kāvya, Bṛhaspati, Kaśyapa, Uśanas, Utathya, Vāmadeva, Apojya, Aiśija, Kardama, Viśravas, Śakti, Vālakhilya and Dhara. These are called sages because they had attained that stage through their knowledge.

92-94. Understand that the *Ṛṣikas*, sons of sages, were born of wombs. Vatsara, Nagrahū, Bhāradvāja, Bṛhaduttha, Śaradvān, Agastya, Auśija, Dīrghatamas, Bṛhaduktha, Śaradvata, Vājaśravas, Suvitta, Suvāk, Veṣaparāyaṇa, Dadhīca, Śaṅkhamān and king Vaiśravaṇa—these are called *Ṛṣikas*. They attained *Ṛṣihood* (status of *Ṛṣis*) through truthfulness.

95. Īśvaras, Ṛṣikas and others are the seers (creators of Mantras). Now listen to their names.

96-97. Bhṛgu, Kāvya, Pracetas, Dadhīca, Ātmavān, Aurva, Jamadagni, Vida, Sārasvata, Advīṣeṇa, Arūpa, Vītahavya, Sumedhasa, Vainya, Pṛthu, Divodāsa, Praśvāra, Gṛtsamān and Nabha : these nineteen sages were the expounders of Mantras.

98-102, Aṅgiras, Vedhasa, Bhāradvāja, Bāṣkali, Amṛta, Gārgya, Śeni, Saṃhṛti, Purukutsa, Māndhātā, Ambarīṣa, Āhā-

rya, Ajamīḍha, Ṛṣabha, Bali, Pṛsadaśva, Virūpa, Kaṇva, Mudgala, Yuvanāśva, Paurukutsa, Trasaddasyu, Sadasyumān, Utathya, Bharadvāja, Vājaśravas, Āyāpya, Suvitti, Vāmadeva, Augaja, Bṛhaduktha, Dīrghatapas and Kakṣīvān : these thirty-three are excellent descendants of Aṅgiras. These are *Mantra-kṛts* (Composers i.e. seers of Mantras). Now understand the descendants of Kāśyapa.

103. Kāśyapa, Vatsara, Vibhrama, Raibhya, Asita and Devala these six belong to the family of Kāśyapa and they are the expounders of Brahman.

104. Atri, Arcisana, Śyāmāvān, Niṣṭhura, the intelligent sage Valgūtaka and Pūrvātithi—these are the descendants of Atri. They are great sages (*Maharṣis*) and seers of Mantras.

105-106. Vasiṣṭha, Śakti, Parāśara, (the fourth one) Indrapramati, (the fifth) Bharadvasu, (the sixth) Maitrāvaruṇa, (the seventh) Kuṇḍina, (the eighth) Sudyumna, the ninth Bṛhaspati and the tenth Bharadvāja—these ten are the composers of Mantras and Brāhmaṇas.

107. These are the creators (seers of Mantras) and destroyers of unrighteousness. This characteristic of the Vedas is prescribed for all the branches of the Veda.

108-110. The word *Hetu* (reason of inference) is derived from √*hi* 'to destroy'.[1] 'That which destroys what is argued by the opponent' is called *Hetu*. Or it may be from √*hi* 'to go'—'that which enables one to the acquisition of the meaning' is *Hetu*. It helps to arrive at a definite (decisive) meaning of a statement after refuting the opponent's standpoint. Preceptors say that it means *Nindā* (censure) when the statements (of the opponents) are censured due to their defects.

111. The word '*Praśaṁsā*' (Praise) is derived from the root √*śaṁs* with the prefix *Pra*—. A statement is praised by virtue of its merits. 'This is this', 'This is not this'—this sort of indecision is called *Saṁśaya* (Doubt).

112. The concept of *Purākalpa* is due to its having taken place in the past.

113. The events of ancient times cannot be decided by Mantras, Brāhmaṇas, Kalpas and Nigamas, howsoever genuine

1. Verses 108-117 explain some terms such as *Hetu, Praśaṁsā, Sūtra etc.*

and detailed. What is said indecisively is called a make-believe.

114. Just as this, so also is that; this is also so, this is the tenth instruction of the Brāhmaṇa.

115. This is the early definition of the Brāhmaṇa laid down by the learned. Later on its *Vṛtti* (commentary) (on every word) was composed by Brāhmaṇas.

116. The utility of the Mantras is in the prescribed rites through injunctions. The word '*Mantra*' is derived from √*mantṛ* —'to whisper'. And the word Brāhmaṇa signifies a person who maintains the injunctions of Brahmā.

117. The knowers of Sūtras called that (statement) as *Sūtra* which consists of very few syllables, is free from ambiguity, full of essence, which is comprehensive in application yet devoid of superfluous adjuncts and contains no objectionable word.

CHAPTER SIXTY

Description of Holy Places : *The Death of Śākalya*

1. On hearing his words the sages said to Sūta of wide knowledge—"O intelligent Sir, how were the Vedas classified before ? Please tell us that."

Sūta said :

2. O highly intelligent sage, in the Svāyaṁbhuva Manvantara, when Dvāpara had set in, Brahmā said this to Manu. I shall repeat it.

3. "O dear one, when a Yuga passes away, Brāhmaṇas become deficient in energy and vigour. All of them become enveloped by the defects of the new Yuga.

4. Only very little (of the previous glory) remains to be seen. Only a ten-thousandth part of what existed originally at the beginning of Kṛta Age remains.

5. Power, splendour, strength and eloquence—everything

perishes. Hence Vedas should be classified, lest there should be utter destruction (of that lore).

6. When the Vedas perish, Yajña perishes. When Yajña perishes, Devas perish. Then everything perishes.

7. The original Vedas consisted of four Pādas and a hundred thousand Mantras. It has increased ten times. The entire Yajña yields all desires".

8. On being addressed thus, Lord Manu, engaged in the welfare of the worlds said, "So be it". He divided the Vedas into four books (compendia).

9. It was at the instance of Brahmā and with a desire for the well-being of the world (that he divided the Veda). It is by the present classification of the Vedas that you have to imagine the (extent etc. of) the Vedas.

10. I shall narrate to you (the classification of the Vedas) in accordance with present Manvantara. It is by adopting the process of inference of what is beyond perception that you understand (the classification), O excellent ones.

11. In this Yuga, the son of Parāśara who is glorified as a part of Viṣṇu and who is well-known as Dvaipāyana, the scorcher (vanquisher) of enemies, was made Vyāsa[1] (the arranger of the Vedas).

12-13. Urged by god Brahmā, he undertook the work of classifying the Veda. He adopted four disciples for (preservation and continuity of) of the Vedas. (They were) Jaimini, Sumantu, Vaiśaṁpāyana, Paila (was the fourth of them) and the fifth Lomaharṣaṇa.

14. He formally made the Brāhmaṇa Paila the propounder of the Ṛgveda and Vaiśaṁpāyana the expounder of the Yajurveda.

15. He accepted Jaimini as the propounder of the Sāma Veda. Similarly he took the excellent sage Sumantu as the expounder of the Atharva Veda.

---

1. Verses 11-23 describe how Kṛṣṇa Dvaipāyana classified the Vedic lore and gave it to his students as follows :

N. of Student	*Veda assigned*
Jaimini	Sāma Veda
Sumantu	Atharva Veda
Vaiśaṁpāyana	Yajur Veda
Paila	Ṛg Veda
Lomaharṣaṇa	Itihāsa & Purāṇa

16. The saintly Lord accepted me as the narrator of Itihāsa and Purāṇas.

17. The Yajurveda was one single compilation. He divided it into four. There were four sacrificial priests. He organised sacrifice through them.

18. He ordained the work of the priest *Adhvaryu* by means of Yajur Mantras, that of *Hotṛ* by Ṛk mantras, that of *Udgātṛ* by the Sāman Mantras and that of *Brahmā* (the presiding priest) by Atharvan Mantras. He established Brahmā in the Yajña by means of the Ātharvaṇa (Veda).

19. Thereafter, he picked up (selected) Ṛk Mantras and compiled the Ṛg Veda. He ordained the duties of Hotṛ, the performer of a sacrifice and the benefactor of the world.

20. With the Sāmans, (he) arranged Sāmaveda and thereby evolved Udgātṛ. By means of Atharva Veda he established rites for kings.

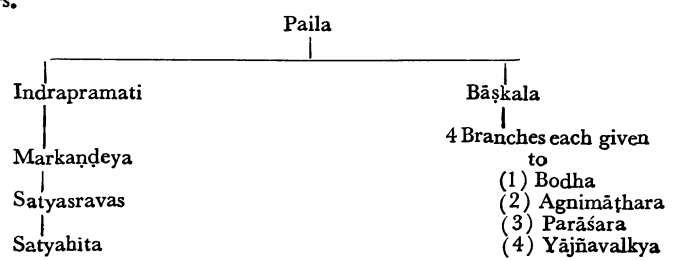
21. He, an expert in the meanings of the Purāṇas, composed the compendiums of Purāṇas by compiling narratives, sub-narratives, poems and songs, and the traditional conduct of the ancient races.

22. Whatever remained he included in the Yajurveda and organised it with sacrifice. It is the definite decision of scriptures that Yajurveda is that which enables one to perform sacrifice.

23. He gathered the scattered Yajur Mantras duly, with the collaboration of Ṛtviks who were the masters of the Vedas. By means of it the horse-sacrifice is performed. It is utilised in it.

24-25. Taking up the Ṛk Mantras, Paila divided them into two groups.[1] He handed them over to his two disciples, one

1. Verses 24-31 describe the division of the Ṛgveda & the line of teachers.



section was given to Indrapramati and the other was given to Bāṣkala. The excellent Brāhmaṇa Bāṣkali composed four Saṁhitās (compendiums) and taught his disciples who were suitable and who served him attentively.

26. He taught the first branch (compilation) to Bodha, the second to Agnimāṭhara, the third to Parāśara and the last to Yājñavalkya.

27. The excellent Brāhmaṇa Indrapramati taught the blessed and renowned Mārkaṇḍeya one of the Saṁhitās.

28. Mārkaṇḍeya of great fame, taught his eldest son Satyaśravas. Satyaśravas taught to Satyahita.

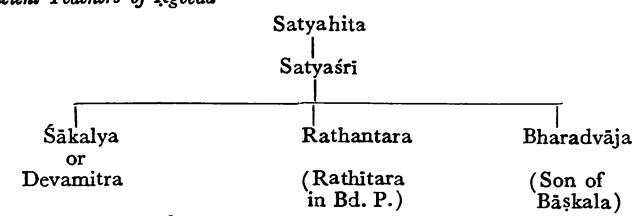
29. That master (of Vedic Lore) taught his son Satyaśrī who was truthful, noble-souled and eagerly devoted to truthfulness and piety.

30. Satyaśrī had three very brilliant disciples. They were highly learned and very anxious to learn scriptures.

31. Śākalya was the first among them. Another was Rathantara. The third was Bharadvāja, son of Bāṣkala. The three were the expounders of the branches of that Veda.

32. In the horse-sacrifice of Janaka the Brāhmaṇa Śākalya (also known as) Devamitra, perished as he was too proud of his knowledge.[1]

Ancient Teachers of Ṛgveda



1. The story how Śākalya lost his life in his disputation with Yājñavalkya is told in vv. 33-63. The story is based on the legend recorded in *Bṛhadāraṇyaka Upa.* III. 8.12-26 Our Purāṇa does not mention that Gārgī Vacaknavī accepted defeat from Yājñavalkya before Śākalya accepted Yājñavalkya's challenge. It also does not state that it was Śākalya's inability to state about "Upaniṣadic Puruṣa" that cost him head and not about the superiority of Sāṅkhya or Yoga as given in this Purāṇa.

The episode throws light on the philosophic disputations in the royal courts of ancient India, though the Purāṇa gives a brief summary of the disputation.

Śāṁśapāyana said :

33. How did that sage, too proud of his knowledge, perish ? How did the argument arise in the horse-sacrifice of Janaka ?

34. Why did the argument arise at all and with whom ? Narrate all this in the manner that happened, as far as you know.

On hearing the words of the sages Sūta replied:

Sūta said :

35. At the horse-sacrifice of Janaka there was a great congregation of sages. Thousands of sages, desirous of witnessing the sacrifice of the saintly king Janaka, came there from various places.

36. On seeing the Brāhmaṇas assembled there, a desire to know more about them arose in him. "Who is the most excellent Brāhmaṇa among these ? How shall I decide it ?". Thinking thus in his mind, he conceived of an intelligent method.

37. He collected a thousand cows, more than a thousand gold pieces and gems, slaves and villages. He then announced to the sages : "O excellent and blessed ones, I bow to you all with my head.

38. O excellent Brāhmaṇas, the wealth that is brought here is offered to the most excellent sage among you. It is offered as the price of your learning".

39. On hearing the words of Janaka, those sages, experts in the Vedas, saw and coveted the vast wealth. With full confidence in their knowledge, they began to challenge one another.

40. With their minds hovering round the wealth, one said, "This wealth (should be) mine". Another said, "Tell me. Is this not mine ? Why are you in doubt ?" Thus as a result of the allurement of wealth, they began to argue with one another.

41-43. There was a great scholar Yājñavalkya, son of Brahmavāha. He was highly brilliant, a great saint. He was born of the very body of Brahmā. The most excellent among the knowers of Brahman, he told his disciple clearly, "O, take away this wealth. O dear one, take this home. This is undoubtedly mine. I am the expounder of all the Vedas. None

else is equal to me. If any Brāhmaṇa wishes to challenge me, let him do so without delay".

44. Thereupon that vast concourse of Brāhmaṇas became agitated like the ocean at the time of dissolution. The cool and calm Yājñavalkya smilingly told them :

45. "O learned ones, O speakers of truth, do not be angry. Trying to know one another, we shall argue in the proper manner".

46-47. Then their arguments took various turns. They discussed thousands of important topics on the subtle subject of philosophy. The secular, Vedic and spiritual topics were also discussed. All branches of leaning were touched. In the course of argument some cursed and some exhibited their excellent qualities. The kings were excluded from discussion. Thus the Brāhmaṇas continued discussion for the sake of wealth.

48. The sages ranged on one side. Yājñavalkya stood on the other side. Thereafter, all those sages were individually questioned by the intelligent Yājñavalkya. They however failed to reply.

49. After defeating the sages in argument, the sage Yājñavalkya of great splendour, a repository of Brahmanic knowledge, spoke to Śākalya who had initiated discussion:

50. "O Śākalya, speak out what you have to say. Why are you sitting meditating quietly? Full of sluggishness and false prestige, you are like a pair of bellows inflated by wind".

51. On being attacked thus Śākalya with his face and eyes red like copper due to anger, spoke to Yājñavalkya harshly in the presence of all sages:

52. "Ignoring (abandoning) us as well as these excellent Brāhmaṇas like blades of grass, you wish to seize all by yourself the vast wealth offered for learning."

Heairng this from Śākalya, Yājñavalkya spoke:

53. "Know that the strength of persons established in Brahman, is their learning and their insight into reality.

54. Desire is connected with wealth. Hence we desire wealth. Brāhmaṇas consider that asking question freely out of desire is the wealth of Brāhmaṇas. Hence we ask questions as we please.

55. This has been the condition laid down by the saintly king Janaka. Hence the wealth is being taken by me".

On hearing his words, the infuriated Śākalya spoke to Yājñavalkya asking questions as he pleased:

56. "Now tell me the answers to these questions precisely". Then a great debate ensued between the two experts in Brahman.

57. Śākalya asked him more than a thousand questions. Yājñavalkya answered those all even as the sages were listening.

58. When Śākalya ceased arguing, Yājñavalkya said, "O Śākalya, answer a single question of mine, which I willingly put to you. The stake for this argument is a curse. If you are unable to answer you will die".

59. Urged by him, a question was asked by Yājñavalkya. Unable to understand its answer, Śākalya died immediately.

60. Śākalya died being afflicted by inability to answer the question. Thus there was a great dispute between the sages covetous of wealth and Yājñavalkya.

61-62. Answering hundreds and thousands of questions put by all of them, Yājñavalkya, who had deep penetration into the essence of those questions took the entire wealth. He spread his fame everywhere. He, the sage of controlled senses, left for home along with his disciples and was quite happy.

63. Śākalya (otherwise known as) Devamitra, was a noble, excellent Brāhmaṇa. He was intelligent and excellent among those who know the implications of grammar. He had composed five Saṁhitās.

64. He had five disciples, viz. Mudgala, Golaka, Khālīya, Matsya and Śaiśireya (the fifth one).

65. Śākapūrṇa Rathītara expounded (compiled) three Saṁhitās. This excellent Brāhmaṇa composed Nirukta as his fourth work.

66. He had four disciples, viz. Ketava, Dālaki, Dharmaśarman and Devaśarman. They were Brāhmaṇas who observed holy rites.

67. When Śākalya died those present there incurred the sin of Brahmin-slaughter. Worried thus they approached Brahmā.

68. On knowing mentally their situation, Brahmā sent them to Pavana Pura. "All of you go there, your sin will be washed off immediately.

69. After bowing to the twelve suns, the deity Vāluka, the eleven Rudras and particularly the son of Vāyu (Hanumān) and after taking a dip in the four holy pools, you will surmount (expunge) the sin of Brāhmaṇa's slaughter".

70. On hearing this, they hastened to that city. They performed holy ablution in accordance with injunctions and visited the deities.

71. They bowed to Uttareśvara. By the grace of Vāḍavas they became free from sins and attained the solar region.

72. Ever since that time, that holy centre became a destroyer of sins. This holy city of Vāyu had been built by the Wind-god formerly.

73. When Hanumān, the son of the Wind-god, born of (the womb of) Añjanā, the great god of truthful exploits was born, this holy centre was created by Vāyu, the son of god Brahmā.

74-75. Here the Śūdras born in the world and dedicated to the Brāhmaṇas were taxed heavily for their livelihood and for the performance of Brahma Yajña. In this manner, the great administration of the Brāhmaṇas took root here. Even a slayer of cow, an ungrateful person, a wine addict or the defiler of one's preceptor's bed becomes free from all sins after bowing to Vāḍāditya.

CHAPTER SIXTYONE

Lineage of Prajāpati

The sages said :

1-2. Bhāradvāja, Yājñavalkya, Gālaki, Sālaki, the intelligent Śatabalāka, the excellent Brāhmaṇa Naigama and Bhara-

dvāja, son of Bāṣkala[1]—all these expounded three Saṁhitās. Rathītara composed the fourth work called Nirukta.

3-4. He had three noble-souled disciples endowed with good qualities. They were the intelligent Nandāyanīya, the wise Pannagāri and the third one Āryava (Ārjava in Bd. P.). They were of praise-worthy, holy observances due to their penance. They were devoid of passions, endowed with very great splendour and masters of the knowledge of Saṁhitās. Hence they were called *Bahvṛcas* by whom Saṁhitās were propagated.

5-6. The sage of the spiritual lineage of Vaiśaṁpāyana composed Yajurveda. Eightysix auspicious Saṁhitās of Yajus (r) Mantras had been composed by him.[2] He passed them over to his disciples. They grasped them in accordance with the injunctions. The sage Yājñavalkya of great penance alone was left out. But he too composed eightysix alternative Saṁhitās.

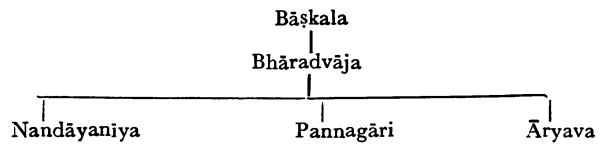
7. Each of these three had three subdivisions. Thus there arose nine different schools.

8. The three main schools are Udīcyas (the northerners), Madhyadeśas (those of the middle countries) and Prācyas (the easterners). Śyāmāyani became the chief of the northern school.

9. These are the three regional heads.[3] Āruṇi was eulogised as the first and foremost of those who had been established in the Madhyadeśa. Ālambi was the first among the easterners.

---

1. The academic genealogy of Bahvṛcas :



2. cf. *yajur-vedasya ṣaḍaśīti bhedā bhavanti /*
—GVS, p. 31

3. Our text reads : *trayodaśyādayaḥ* 'Trayodaśin and others'. The name 'Trayodaśin' does not occur in this chapter or elsewhere. The figure 'Thirteen' is inapplicable. Bd. P. in this context reads *trayodeśyādayaḥ* (I.2.35.13) which means '(There are thus) three regional heads'. '*Trayodaśyādayaḥ*' hereof seems to have lost a *mātrā* of original '*deśya*'—a scribal error for °*deśya* in Bd.P. Hence I accepted the reading °*deśyādayaḥ*' from Bd. P.

10. All these Brāhmaṇas who expounded the Saṁhitās are also called *'Carakas'*.

On hearing his words, the sages who were desirous of hearing, asked Sūta:

11. "What was the reason whereby the Adhvaryus were called *Carakas* ? What was it that they performed ? For what reason they were termed thus ?"

Thus requested Sūta explained to them how they came to acquire the designation *Caraka.*

Sūta said :[1]

12. O excellent Brāhmaṇas, the sages had to perform a rite. They went to the top of Meru and conferred with one another as follows :

13. "O excellent Brāhmaṇas, he who does not come here within seven nights shall have to perform expiatory rite for Brāhmaṇa's slaughter. This is proclaimed as our stipulated condition."

14. Then all the sages, except Vaiśaṁpāyana, reached the place where they were required to as per condition, within seven nights. Their attendants too came along with them.

15. At the instance of the Brāhmaṇas he (Vaiśaṁpāyana) intended to perform the expiatory rite for Brāhmaṇa slaughter. Gathering together his disciples, Vaiśaṁpāyana said :

16. "O excellent Brāhmaṇas, all of you perform expiatory rite for Brāhmaṇa's slaughter on my behalf. All of you come and speak to me words beneficent to me."

Yājñavalkya said :

17. "I shall perform it single-handedly. Let these sages

---

1. While explaining the term *'Caraka'* Sūta tells the story why Vaiśaṁpāyana asked Yājñavalkya to recant Yajurveda taught to him. Yājñavalkya instantly obeyed and the blood smeared recanted Yagur Mantras went upto the Sun god who returned to him those very Mantras which went to him. The story of Yājñavalkya receiving Yajur-veda from the Sun-god is found in *Mbh-Śanti* 318.6-12. But there Yājñavalkya is not ordered by Vaiśampāyana to recant Yajurveda. It was the Sun-god and Yājñavalkya who assumed the form of a horse at the time of transmitting the Veda.

stand by. Purified by my own penance I shall raise up (develop) my (spiritual) strength."

18. On being thus addressed, the infuriated Vaiśaṁpāyana spoke to Yājñavalkya : "Return so me whatever you have learnt from me".

19. On being commanded thus, that sage Yājñavalkya, the most excellent among the knowers of Brahman, vomited the embodied forms of Yajur-Mantras smeared with blood and gave them back to his preceptor.

20. O Brāhmaṇas, then he meditated and worshipped the Sun-god. What was vomited rose up in the sky and stood near the Solar Brahman.

21. The delighted Sun handed over the Yajur-Mantras which had gone up to the solar disc. The Sun-god gave them to the intelligent Brahmarāti (in Bd. P.) Yājñavalkya who had assumed the form of a horse.

22. Thenceforth, the Brāhmaṇas who began the study of the Yajus handed over to Yājñavalkya in the form of a horse (*Vājin*) became known as Vājins.

23. Those by whom the expiatory rite for Brahma-hatyā (Brāhmaṇa-slaughter) was performed are remembered as *Carakas*[1] because of their performance of atonement (for Brāhmaṇa's slaughter). The disciples of Vaiśaṁpāyana are called *Carakas*.

24-26. These were called *Carakas*. Now understand the *Vājins*, the disciples of Yājñavalkya. They were[2] : Kaṇva, Vaidheya, Śālin, Madhyandina, Śāpeyī, Vidigadha, Āpya, Uddala, Tāmrāyaṇa, Vātsya, Gālava, Śaiśiri, Āṭavī, Parṇī, Vīraṇī and Saṁparāyaṇa. These fifteen are known as *Vājins*. Thus there are hundred and one alternative Saṁhitās.

---

1. A popular etymology of *Caraka* (SKD p. 435) derives it from √*car* 'to go,' 'to know' and hence *caraka* is a knower of Vedas and medical science' and quotes from *Bhāva Prakāśa* how Śeṣa espied diseases and sufferings on the earth and composed a medical treatise out of compassion. Here it means 'a follower of a branch of Black Yajurveda who follows special practices and rites different from those in Śatapatha Br. (vide MW. 389).

2. Cf. The list of disciples of Yājñavalkya in CVS, p. 32. It differs in some names from the list given here. Even the list in Bd. P.I.2.35.28-30 also differs from our text.

27. Jaimini taught his son Sumantu.[1] Sumantu taught his son Sutavan. Sutavan taught his son Sukarman.

28. After learning in a short while a thousand Saṁhitās, Sukarman, expounded them to his thousand disciples having the brilliance of the Sun.

---

1. Verses 27-48 give the genealogy of Sāma Veda teachers. It differs much from the list of Sāma Veda teachers in CVS pp. 43-46. The Bd. P. list (in I.2.35. 31-55) is also somewhat different from our Purāṇa. Our text gives following genealogy.

Jaimini
|
Sumantu
|
Sutvan
|
Sukarman (Studied 1000 Saṁhitas)

[1000 disciples, one per Saṁhitā. But as noted here and in CVS p. 43, Indra killed them all. After their death, two new dtsciples studied under him as shown here.]

Pauṣyañjin studied and taught 500 *Saṁhitās* to Northerners

king Hiraṇyanābha studied 500 *Saṁhitās* and taught them to Easterners

School of Pauṣyañjin—Northern Sāma-Singers

[Northern (udīcya) Sāmagas]

Lakokṣin | Kuthumi | Kuśitin | Lāṅgali

(i) *School of Lokākṣin*

Rāṇāyanīya | Taṇḍi-putra | Mūla-cārin | Kaiti-putra | Sātya-pūtra

(ii) *School of Kuthumi—His three sons*

as disciples viz. (1) Aurasa, (2) Rasapāsara (prob. Parāśara as in Bd. P), (3) Bhāgavitti.

(iii) *Disciples of Parāśara, Kuthumi's disciple*

(1) Āsurāyaṇa, (2) Vaiśakhya, (3) Vedavṛddha (4) Prācīṇa-yoga-putra (5) Patañjali.

(iv) *Disciples of Lāṅgali, disciple of Pauṣyañjin*

(1) Bhāluki, (2) Kāmahāni, (3) Jaimini (4) Lomagāyin, (5) Kaṇḍa, (6) Kolaha.

Eastern School of Sāma-singers

King Hiraṇyanābha (of Kausikagotra) composed 24 *Saṁhitās* and taught one each to the following students :

(1) Rāḍa, (2)Mahāvirya, Rāḍaviya in Bd.P., (3) Pañcama, (4) Vāhana, (5) Tālaka (6) Pāṇḍaka, (7) Kālika, (8) Rājika (9) Gautama [Māṇḍuka in Bd. P,] (10) Ajabasta, (11) Somarāja, (12) Pṛṣṭhaghna (Puṣṭi in Bd. P.),

29. Indra killed all of them because they pursued their studies even on prohibited days. Then Sukarman performed a fast unto death, for the sake of his disciples.

30. On seeing him infuriated, Indra granted him a boon : "Two disciples of great prowess and brilliance of fire you will have.

31. They will be highly intelligent and will study all the thousand Saṁhitās. They will be blessed. O excellent Brāhmaṇa, do not be angry."

32. After saying this to the renowned Sukarman and seeing him mollified, the glorious Indra vanished there itself.

33. O excellent Brāhmaṇas, the intelligent Pauṣyañjin was his first disciple and king Hiraṇyanābha of Kuśika race was the second.

34. Pauṣyañjin taught five hundred Saṁhitās. The auspicious disciples of Pauṣyañjin were generally the northerners.

35. The powerful Kauśikya taught five hundred Saṁhitās. The disciples of Hiraṇyanābha are known as the easterners and the Sāmagas.

36. Lokākṣī, Kuthumi, Kuśītī and Lāṅgali were the four disciples of Pauṣyañjin. Now know their divisions (branches).

37. Rāṇāyanīya, son of Taṇḍi, the highly learned Mūlacārin, Kaitiputra and Sātyaputra—know these to be the disciples of different branches of Lokākṣin.

38. Kuthumi had three sons, viz. Aurasa, Rasapāsara and the brilliant Bhāgavitti. These three were famous as *Kauthumas*.

39. The two sages Śauridyu and Śṛṅgiputra performed holy rites. Rāṇāyanīya and Saumitri were experts in Sāmaveda.

40. Śṛṅgiputra of great penance expounded three Saṁhitās, O excellent Brāhmaṇas, to Caila, Prācīnayoga, Surāla.

---

(13) Parikṛṣṭa, (14) Ulūkhalaka, (15) Yaviyasa, (16) Vaiśāla (Śāli in Bd. P.), (17) Aṅgulīya, (18) Kauśika, (19) Sālimañjari-satya, (20) Kāpīya (Pāka in Bd. P.), (21) Kānika (Kānini in Bd. P.), (22) Parāśara.

Two names are either missing or we have to presume that the founder teachers—Hiraṇyanābha and Prince Kṛta (mentioned in Bd. P. and accepted as an alternative explanation of Kṛta-śiṣyaḥ in v. 44)—should be added to make up the number twentyfour in the above list.

41-42. Pārāśarya, disciple of Kuthumi, expounded six Saṁhitās. Āsurāyaṇa, Vaiśākhya, Vedavṛddha, Parāyaṇa, Prācīnayogaputra and intelligent Patañjali are known as the six disciples of Pārāśarya, the disciple of Kuthumi. Lāṅgali and Śālihotra expounded six Saṁhitās each.

43. Bhāluki, Kāmahāni, Jaimini, Lomagāyina, Kaṇḍa and Kolaha—these six are known as *Lāṅgalas*. These were the disciples of Lāṅgalī and they popularised these Saṁhitās.

44. Hiraṇyanābha, who was the son of a king who had disciples [or who had as his disciple Kṛta, the son of a king] and who was the most excellent among men, composed twenty-four Saṁhitās. Listen and understand the names of those disciples whom he taught.

45-47. Rāḍa, Mahavīrya, Pañcama, Vāhana, Tālaka, Pāṇḍaka, Kālika, Rājika, Gautama, Ajabasta, Somarāja, Pṛṣṭhaghna, Parikṛṣṭa, Ulūkhalaka, Yavīyasa, Vaiśāla, Aṅgulīya, Kauśika, Sālimañjarisatya, Kāpīya, Kānīka and the righteous Parāśara—all these were ancient singers of Sāman.

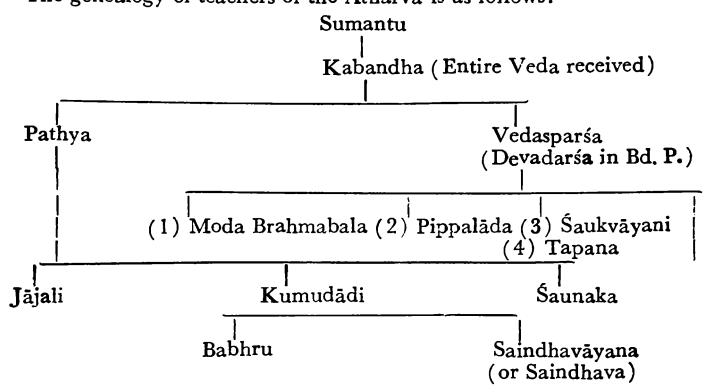
48. Two sages, the most excellent among the Sāman-singers, are said to be Pauṣyañji and Kṛti. They are the composers of Saṁhitās.

49. O Brāhmaṇas, Sumantu divided the Atharva Veda into two and handed the entire Veda to Kabandha.[1] Know its order.

---

1. Verses 49-55 give the genealogy of the teachers of the Atharva Veda and its branches. It is different from the list in CVS, pp. 46-49 and to some extent from the Bd. P.

The genealogy of teachers of the Atharva is as follows:



50. Kabandha divided it into two and taught one to Pathya and the second to Vedasparśa. Vedasparśa divided it again into four.

51. Moda Brahmabala, Pippalāda, Śaukvāyani the knower of Dharma, and Tapana—thase were the four disciples of Vedasparśa (who were) firm in holy rites.

52. Know the excellent threefold division (i.e. disciples and sons) of Pathya. They were Jājali, Kumudādi and the third Śaunaka.

53. After dividing it into two, Śaunaka gave one to Babhru. The intelligent one gave the second Saṁhitā to the disciple named Saindhavāyana.

54-55. Saindhava gave it to Muñjakeśa. The Saṁhitā was divided again into two. The alternative Saṁhitās of the Atharva Veda are five[1], viz. Nakṣatrakalpa, Vaitāna, (the third) Saṁhitāvidhi, the fourth Aṅgiras-kalpa and the fifth Śāntikalpa. O excellent sages, the Purāṇa too was expounded by me after dividing it into six.

56-57. O Brāhmaṇa! In Purāṇic lore,[2] the following are my disciples, firm in religious austerities (or persevering in Purāṇic lore): Sumati, the intelligent scion of Atri's Gotra, Kāśyapa, Akṛtavraṇa, Bhāradvāja, Agnivarcas, Vasiṣṭha, Mitrayu, Sāvarṇi, Somadatti, Suśarman and Śāṁśapāyana. Three of them composed three Saṁhitās which were further divided into three.

58. The composers of the Saṁhitās were Kāśyapa, Sāvarṇi

Muñjakeśa
[According to Bd. P. Saindhava had another name Muñjakeśa]

1. The divisions of the Atharva Veda are five (1) Nakṣatra Kalpa, (2) Vaitāna (prob. Vidhāna Kalpa as in CVS.), (3) Saṁhita Vidhi (prob. Saṁhita Kalpa of CVS p. 46), (4) Aṅgiras Kalpa, (5) Śānti Kalpa.

2. Verses 56-61 state the position of the Purāṇic lore: Although Lomaharṣaṇa had eleven disciples, only three of them—Kāśyapa, Sāvarṇi and Śāṁśapāyana composed Purāṇa Saṁhitas in addition to their Guru's work. There Saṁhitās had four *pādas* (parts) and 4000 verses. Only Śāṁśapāyana's Saṁhitā contained 8600 verses.

and Śāṁśapāyana. There is a fourth Saṁhitā named Sāmikā. It is the original Saṁhitā.

59. All of them have four Pādas. All of them expound the same matter. They were distinguished by separate readings like the recensions of the Vedas. Excepting Śāṁśapāyana's Saṁhitā each contains four thousand verses.

60. The Saṁhitās of Lomaharṣaṇa are original, then come the Saṁhitās of Kāśyapa. The third are the Saṁhitās of Sāvarṇi. All these can be readily understood by the scholars of Yajur Veda.

61. The Saṁhitās of Śāṁśapāyana are embellished by the topics of exhortation. There are eight thousand six hundred verses.

62. There are additional fifteen and ten along with ten (Ṛks ?) known as Vālakhilyas, Samapraikhas along with Sāvarṇas.[1]

63. The Sāman Mantras are eight thousand fourteen (in the Sāma Veda) including Āraṇyaka along with Homa. Sāmagas (Sāma-singers) sing them.

64. The Ādhvaryava Veda consists of twelve thousand Mantras including the Yajur (Veda) and Brāhmaṇas as compiled (classified) by Vyāsa.

65. It includes the *Grāmya, Āraṇyaka* and the *Mantrakaraṇa.* Henceforth the narratives will be known as *Pūrva-kathās* (former or ancient narratives).

66. The Ṛk, Brāhmaṇa and Yajus are remembered to have Grāmya, Āraṇya and Mantra (Sections). There are additional compilations (*Khila*) and supplementary ones (*Upakhila*) of Hāridravīya as also the Parakṣudras of Taittirīyas.

---

1. Verses 62-73 give the number of Mantras in Vedic Text. But after comparing the figures stated in this Purāṇa and those in CVS (Śaunaka's *Caraṇa-Vyūha-Sūtra*) and the published editions of Vedic texts, I am constrained to repeat what I said about the author of Bd. P. (Bd. P. I.2.35, p. 348, Footnote 2) :

"It appears that our Purāṇa writers give traditional (hearsay) round figures without verifying (and counting the mantras) in the original Saṁhitās".

67. The Ṛk verses in the Vājasaneyī Saṁhitā are a hundred less than two thousand. The Brāhmaṇa portion contains four times that number.

68. The total number of Yajur Mantras and Ṛks is eight thousand eight hundred eighty plus a quarter more along with *Śukriya* (Sāmans belonging to Pravargya) and Khila (additional) Mantras (according to) Yājñavalkya.

69. Similarly listen to the extent of the Saṁhitā of Caraṇa[1]-Vidyās (sections of Vedic School—of Atharva ?). They contain six thousand twenty-six Ṛks. Yajur Mantras, it is said, are somewhat more than this.

70-71. There are eleven thousand twenty Ṛks (in Yajus). In the Saṁhitā of Bhṛgu, there are ten thousand three hundred and eighty Ṛks and a thousand Mantras. The number of Ṛks in Atharva Veda is more.

72-73. These are mentioned as five thousand. Some sages add nine hundred and eighty Ṛks. This is mentioned by Aṅgiras who includes the Āraṇyaka portion. Thus the number of Ṛks and the different recensions have been enumerated.

74. The composers of Ṛks are the cause of the differences in recensions. In all the Manvantaras, the recensional differences are the same.

75. The Vedic text which is the creation of Prajāpati is eternal. These variations are due to the non-eternal nature of Devas. Creation of Mantras takes place again and again[2] (in every Manvantara).

76. The determination of the names of the Devas takes place in each Manvantara. The divisions of Śruti in the Dvāpara Yuga have been narrated.

77. Thus, after handing over the Vedas and other mantras to his disciples, the holy lord, the excellent sage Vyāsa went to the forest for performing penance. These different recensions have been made by his disciples and their disciples.

78. The fourteen lores are the (six) Aṅgas (ancillary subjects), the four Vedas, Mīmāṁsā, Nyāya-vistāra (logic), Dharmaśāstra and Purāṇas.

1. Bd. P. (I.2.35.78) reads *Cāraṇa*—a school of the Atharva Veda.
2. Purāṇic writer believed that Devas are not eternal but *Mantras* are so and they manifest themselves again and again in the new world order, after the new creation of the world.

79. (If four more lores viz.) Āyurveda (Science of Medicine), Dhanur Veda (Science of Archery), Gāndharva-Veda (i.e. Musicology) and the fourth Arthaśāstra (Science of Economics and Politics) (are added) the number (of lores) becomes eighteen.[1]

80. It should be known that Brahmarṣis are the earliest ones, thereafter come Devarṣis and then Rājarṣis.[2] Thus the sources of origin of Ṛṣis are three. It is through sages of well-disciplined observances, that Ṛṣis were born.

81. Expounders of Brahman are born in the five Gotras, viz. among the descendants of Kaśyapa, Vasiṣṭha, Bhṛgu, Aṅgiras and Atri. They are called Brahmarṣis because they can go to (approach) Brahmā.

82-83. Devarṣis (Celestial Sages) are the sons of Dharma, Pulastya, Kratu, Pulaha, Pratyūṣa, Prabhāsa and Kaśyapa. Listen to the enumeration of their names. The Celestial Sages, Nara and Nārāyaṇa are the two sons of Dharma.

84. Vālakhilyas are the sons of Kratu; Kardama is the son of Pulaha. Kubera is the son of Pulastya and Acala is known as the son of Pratyūṣa.

85. Parvata and Nārada are the sons of Kaśyapa. They are remembered as Devarṣis (Celestial Sages), because they approach Devas.

86. Kings born in the race of Manu and in the dynasty of Aila (Purūravas), viz. Ailas, Aikṣvākas (descendants of Ikṣvāku) and Nābhāgas should be known as *Rājarṣis* (Royal Sages).

---

1. Traditionally the number of Vidyās (lores or sciences) is fourteen, but it becomes eighteen by adding four 'Subsidary Vedas.' CVS P. 47 has given the following relation between Vedas and Upavedas.

Veda		Upaveda
Ṛg Veda	—	Āyurveda (Science of Medicine)
Yajur Veda	—	Dhanurveda (Military Science)
Sāma Veda	—	Gandharvaveda (Musicology)
Atharva Veda	—	Arthaśāstra (Politics, Economics, Administration)

2. Verses 80-93 define the terms 'Brahmarṣi,' Devarṣi', 'Rājarṣi', describe their powers and give names of some of them.

87. They are called *Rājarṣis* because they have attained (*Ṛṣanti*) the Prajās (subjects) through delighting them (*Rañjanāt*). Brahmarṣis are considered to be established in Brahmaloka.

88. The auspicious Devarṣis (Celestial Sages) should be known as established in Devaloka.

89. The Celestial Sages (Devarṣis) and Rājarṣis are proclaimed as Brahmarṣis on account of their nobility of birth, penance, ability to utter (compose and recite) *Mantras*.

90-93. I shall now mention the characteristics of Devarṣis and others. They have the knowledge of the past, present and future. They always speak the truth. They are enlightened and they are united to (their) self. They are well-known through their penance. Even while in the womb, the darkness of ignorance has been dispelled by them. They practise the repetition of Mantras. Due to their Supreme Power, they are omnipresent. Devas, Brāhmaṇas and Kings are in communion with the sages. Those who study and practise the above are considered to be Ṛṣis. Seven of them with the following seven traits are remembered as Saptarṣis (the Seven Sages).[1]

94. They are long-lived; they compose Mantras; they are possessed of noble qualities; they are endowed with divine visions; they are enlightened; they practise virtue directly and make their lineage function.

95-96. Everyday they observe the six rites; they are flourishing householders; they believe in *Adṛṣṭa* (the Unseen Principle), the cause of Karmans, and act accordingly. They maintain their lives without rustic vulgarities; they prepare their own tasty dishes; they maintain families; they are prosperous externally and internally.

97. The arrangement of castes and stages of life in the Kṛta and other Yugas is made at the outset by them in each and every Age.

98. When the Tretā Yuga begins again, these seven sages again establish the castes and stages of life entirely. In their family heroes are born again and again.

1. Verses 94-98 describe the special qualifications, duties etc. of the Saptarṣis (Seven Sages) who are credited with a very long life.

99. When a son is born to a father, and when the son turns into a father, the line of sages continues without a break. The sages thus live till the end of the Yuga. The number of sages who are householders is said to be eightyeight thousand.

100. Those who resort to the Pitṛyāna to the south of Aryaman (the Sun god), take wives unto themselves and perform *Agnihotra* (domestic sacrifices). They are known as the cause of progeny.

101. Householders are innumerable. They resort to cremation ground. Eightyeight thousand of them are in the northern path.

102. Those sages of sublimated sexuality who are reported to have attained heaven, are reborn at the end of the Yuga as the composers of Mantras and Brāhmaṇas.

103. Thus they are repeatedly reborn in Dvāpara Ages. They are the composers of *Kalpa*-Texts (Ritualistic Texts), propounders of commentatorial literature on different sciences at the end of the Yuga.

104. When this Dvāpara is over, in the further Dvāpara Aśvatthāman, the son of Droṇa, will be the Vedavyāsa of great penance.[1]

105. In the future times the different recensions of the Vedas will be composed by him. By virtue of his great penance, he will attain eternal Brahman.

106. *Karman* is attained by penance; through *Karman* fame is attained; through fame truth is attained; and through truth eternal Brahman is attained.

107. From the eternal immortality is attained and from immortality essence of every object is attained. This eternal one-syllabled (*Om*) Brahman, is established in the Self (*Ātman*). It is called Brahman due to its greatness or (inconceivable) vastness.

108. It remains in the form of Praṇava and is known as *Bhūḥ, Bhuvaḥ, Svaḥ*. Obeisance to the Brahman of the form of Ṛk Yajus, Sāman and Atharvan.

---

1. Here only one future Vyāsa, viz. the Mahābhārata hero Aśvatthāman is mentioned as the full list is given in *supra* 23.109 ff.

109. Obeisance to that excellent Brahman that is known as the cause of the annihilation and origination of the Universe and that is the esoteric secret beyond *Mahat*.

110. It is unfathomable, unlimited and inexhaustible or imperishable. It is the source of the delusion of the Universe. It is the cause of the realization of human aims through enlightenment and activity.

111. It is the culminating point of those who adhere to the tenets of the Sāṅkhya philosophy, the goal which gives its association (?) It is the unmanifest, immortal, eternal Brahman, the cause of Prakṛti.

112. It is called Pradhāna, self-born, the secret and Sattva. It is indivisible, the essence of everything (*Śukra*), imperishable and multiformed.

113-114. In the Kṛta Yuga (as) there are no religious rites, how can there be a rite not done? In this world whatever is once done or whatever is committed or omitted, whatever has been heard or should be heard, whether good or bad, what should be known, pondered over, touched or enjoyed, seen, heard or realized (is so by Brahman).

115. Whatever has been shown by Him is the (only) knowledge of Devarṣis. Who can scrutinize that which He (Brahman) has pointed out*. It is the Lord alone who has declared all things to all.

116. When anything is done by anyone, he gets identified with it. What is done by one, is previously conceived by another (i.e. by Brahman).

117. When (even) a verbal effort (*vāṅmayam*) by anyone is made anywhere that is done by Him (Brahman) only. The act (merely) appears to be done by the doer.

118. Absence of passion, over-attachment, knowledge, ignorance, pleasure, displeasure, *dharma* and *adharma* (good and evil), happiness, sorrow, death, immortality, the state of being above, below or at the sides—all these are due to the unseen (*Adṛṣṭa*, destiny).

---

*Bd. P. reads: *yan na darśitavān eṣaḥ* 'which he (Brahman) has not shown? A better reading.

119-120. In every Tretā Age Svāyaṁbhuva (Manu), the eldest son of Brahmā, the Supreme God, is the only knower of all lores which he classifies in the Dvāpara Age. In the Vaivasvata Manvantara, it is Brahmā who teaches that lore at the outset.

121. Being born frequently in the revolving cycles of the Yugas, the sages compose and propagate Saṁhitās.

122. It is mentioned before that there are eighty-eight thousand Śrutarṣis. They propagate these (Vedic) Saṁhitās again and again.

123. Those branches (of the Vedic lore) are rearranged again and again in every Yuga by them who, following the Southern Path, resorted to cremation grounds (= died).

124. In all (every) Dvāpara Age, (Vedic) Saṁhitās have been composed by Śrutarṣis. In their lineage, these recensions (branches of Veda) appear again and again. Those recensions and their composers survive till the end of the Yuga.

125. It should be known that the composition of all the different branches (of the Vedas) in the past and future Manvantaras takes place in a similar way.

126. (The composition of the branches of Veda) of the past (Manvantaras) have elapsed, those of the present (Manvantara) exist, and those of the future (Manvantara) will be described in the future.

127. The later Manvantara shall be understood through the earlier Manvantara. Both of them shall be understood through the present (Manvantara). The decision of the Manvantara is on this basis.

128. Thus Devas, Pitṛs, Sages and Manus go up and return along with the Mantras.

129-130. From Janaloka all Devas are born at the appropriate time again and again for ten[1] Kalpas. Then they are linked with inevitable destiny. Thereafter, they perceive that birth to be full of defects and associated with diseases[2].

---

1. For *Paśu Kalpa* of the Text Bd. P. I.2.35.153 reads *daśa kalpān* which makes some sense and hence accepted here.

2. *Rāgapūrvakam* 'through passionateness' is inappropriate here, hence '*roga-pūrvakam*' from Bd. P, is accepted.

131. But till they see through this defective nature of these successive rebirths, they continue. The rebirths continue for ten Celestial Yugas before they stop.

132. From Janaloka they go to Tapoloka from whence they do not return. Thus thousands of Celestial Yugas have elapsed. In Brahmaloka they meet death along with sages.

133-135. It is impossible to describe in detail and in the proper order, the Manvantaras of the previous Kalpas that have gone before, because time is beginningless and they are innumerable. Hundreds and thousands of Manvantaras and Kalpas have gone along with the Pitṛs, Sages, Devas and sets of Seven Sages that are the creatures of time.

136-137. Dissolution at the end of a Manvantara and creation at the end of dissolution, of Devas, Ṛṣis, Pitṛs and Manus cannot be described in detail and in proper order even in hundreds of years. The details of creation and annihilation cannot be stated. Now understand the duration of a Manvantara, according to the human calculation.

138-140. Experts in enumeration have calculated the duration of a Manvantara. It is thirty crores sixty-seven million twenty thousand years excluding the period of transition. This duration of a Manvantara has been enumerated according to human years. Now I shall enumerate the duration of a Manvantara in celestial years.

141. The duration of a Manvantara according to the celestial calculation is eight hundred fiftytwo thousand years.

142. Fourteen times this period constitute the *Ābhūtasaṁplava* (the period of final dissolution). A thousand sets of four Yugas constitute a day of Brahmā.

143. All the living beings will be scorched by the rays of the Sun. Keeping Brahmā at the head, and accompanied by Devas, Sages and Dānavas, they will enter lord Maheśvara, the most excellent among Devas.

144. It is He who creates all beings again and again at the beginning of Kalpas. Thus, this is considered to be the *Sthiti Kāla* (the period of sustenance) of Manu along with Devas and Sages.

145. (The period) what is called Yuga has been already

recounted to you by me before. Now listen to and understand the interim period (*Pratisandhi*) of all Manvantaras.[1]

146. That which includes Kṛta and Tretā, Dvāpara and Kali is known as *Caturyuga* (set of four Yugas). When it revolves into seventyone cycles, it is the period of a Manvantara. Thus the lord has ordained.

147. The characteristics of the Manvantaras of the past or of the future are explained through (those of) the present one.

148. Thus the mode of creation of Svāyaṁbhuva Manu has been narrated. I shall now mention the interim period which links it with the following Manvantara.

149. The Manvantaras in the future will also pass as in the previous period along with Devas and sages through the inevitability of destiny.

150. Those who have been the lords of the three worlds in this Manvantara, the Seven Sages, Devas, Pitṛs and Manus are known as *Sādhakas* throughout the period of this Manvantara.

151. Realising the expiry of their tenure and the fall from authority, they eagerly turn to go to Maharloka.

152. The deities who decline in this Manvantara survive Kṛta Yuga in the course of their life time.

153. In the meanwhile the future lords of Manvantaras, Deities, Pitṛs, Sages and Manus are born similarly.

154. In every Manvantara it is the surviving subjects at the end of Kaliyugas who constitute the earlier subjects of the Kṛta Yugas.

155. Just as the continuity of Kṛta Yuga is remembered as preceded by Kali Yuga by learned men, so also the beginning of Manvantaras is preceded by the end of (the previous) Manvantara.

156-157. When the earlier Manvantara declines and the later one begins to function, those who survive in the beginning of the Kṛta Yuga, viz. the Seven Sages and Manu, remain biding their time (performing penance).

158-161. When the creation of rain begins, they function actively for the proper working of the Manvantara and for the

---

1. Verses 145-176 describe *Pratisandhi*—transition from one Yuga or Manvantara to another.

continuity of lineage everywhere. Men and Women are born and they function as before. The plants begin to grow. In different places, the subjects build abodes and begin to live. Agricultural and other occupations begin to function according to the good and the virtuous guidance of the sages. When the mobile and immobile beings die, people become cheerless. Villages and cities are ruined. The setup of castes and stages of life is disturbed. At that time, the Seven Sages, Manu and those virtuous persons who survive the previous Manvantara exert themselves for procreation.

162-163. Even as they perform penance extremely difficult to be performed for the Devas, Asuras, Pitṛs, Sages, Serpents, Ghosts and Goblins, Gandharvas, Yakṣas and Rākṣasas are born as before on the death of the earlier persons.

164. The good people who have survived, begin to teach and propagate the good conduct of life. In the beginning of the Manvantaras, Manu and the Seven Sages initiate the holy rites. Human beings along with the Devas also perform those rites.

165-166. At the beginning of a Manvantara as in the beginning of the Tretā Yuga, when Devas and men become stabilised in Dharma, they absolve themselves from the idebtedness to Ṛṣis (sages) by observing celibacy, to Pitṛs by procereation and to the Devas by performance of sacrifices.

167. After remaining in the practice of virtue pertaining to the castes and stages of life for a hundred thousand years, and after establishing the set of three Vedas, agricultural and other occupations for livelihood, maintenance of law and order and the virtuous practice of the discipline of castes and stages of life, they desire to attain heaven.

168. After they have set out for heaven, they at the outset maintain all the virtues wholeheartedly.

169. At the end of the Manvantara, they abandon their abodes and go to Maharloka which is free from ailments, along with the Mantras.

170. Free from aberrations, endowed with mental Siddhis, these people of self-control, stay till the final dissolution, observing passage of the Manvantara.

171-172. When all these have passed away ultimately, when all the abodes become vacant everywhere in the three worlds,

other Devas who had been staying in the heaven endowed with penance, well equipped with truthfulness, celibacy and learning occupy those places.

173. Among the Seven Sages, Manu, Devas and Pitṛs those who had been before die along with the future ones (?)

174. Their final dissolution takes place at the close of (all) Manvantaras. They continue endlessly in the same order in all the Manvantaras, till the final dissolution of all beings.

175. Thus the characteristics of the inter-link of the past Manvantaras and future have been declared by Svāyaṁbhuva Manu.

176. The sequence of the Manvantaras of the past and future is snapped entirely through the final dissolution.

177. After the lapse of the Manvantaras, these attain Maharloka; from Maharloka they go to Jana, Tapaḥ and Satya Lokas.

178-179. As observed by those who have that sort of mystic experience and as proved by manifold testimony, they stay in Satya Loka, but when aberrations set in at the hour of dissolution of Manvantara, they leave off Satya Loka and with devotion they enter the body of lord Nārāyaṇa, of vast incomprehensible size.

180. In all the changes of Manvantaras that have been functioning for a long time, the world of living beings does not remain (the same) even for a moment. Due to the nature of destiny, it (the world) undergoes changes by way of decrease or increase.

181. Thus the narrative of the Manus, who are virtuous, who have been praised by the sages and who are endowed with divine vision has been recounted partly in detail and partly in brief. This narrative was originally composed by Vāyu. This can be understood by the people only by their divine power.

182. All the changes refer to saintly kings, Celestial Sages, Brahmarṣis, Devas, Serpents, the lord of Devas, the Seven Sages, the Pitṛs and Prajāpatis.

183. It is highly meritorious to eulogise the lords born of noble families, endowed with splendour, excellent intellect, fame and renown.

184. It is conducive to the attainment of heaven. It is very holy, highly esoteric, capable of granting progeny. It should be recited during great *parvan* days. It is conducive to the removal of the effects of bad dreams and is conducive to longevity.

185. Resort to the great principle Sumaheśa for attaining *Siddhis*. Resort to this Purāṇa which contains the narratives of Prajāpatis, Devas, Sages, the well-known yet sacred origination of the unborn Lord and for the fulfilment of my narration.

186. Thus I have described the Svāyaṁbhuva Manvantara in detail and in the proper order. What more shall I describe to you?

ANCIENT INDIAN TRADITION & MYTHOLOGY

TRANSLATED BY
A BOARD OF SCHOLARS

EDITED BY
Dr. G. P. BHATT

VOLUME 38

ANCIENT INDIAN TRADITION AND MYTHOLOGY SERIES

[PURĀṆAS IN TRANSLATION]

VOLUMES

ŚIVA 1-4
LINGA 5-6
BHĀGAVATA 7-11
GARUḌA 12-14
NĀRADA 15-19
KŪRMA 20-21
BRAHMĀṆḌA 22-26
AGNI 27-30
VARĀHA 31-32
BRAHMA 33-36
VĀYU 37-38

VOLUMES UNDER PREPARATION

BHAVIṢYA
BRAHMAVAIVARTA
DEVĪBHĀGAVATA
KĀLIKĀ
MĀRKAṆḌEYA
MATSYA
PADMA
SKANDA
VĀMANA
VIṢṆU
VIṢṆUDHARMOTTARA

THE
VĀYU PURĀṆA

PART II

TRANSLATED AND ANNOTATED BY
G. V. TAGARE

MOTILAL BANARSIDASS • DELHI
UNESCO • PARIS

First Edition : Delhi, 1988

MOTILAL BANARSIDASS
Bungalow Road, Jawahar Nagar, Delhi 110 007
Branches
Chowk, Varanasi 221 001
Ashok Rajpath, Patna 800 004
24 Race Course Road, Bangalore 560 001
120 Royapettah High Road, Mylapore, Madras 600 004

© 1988 by Motilal Banarsidass. All Rights Reserved.

ISBN: 81-208-0455-4

UNESCO COLLECTION OF REPRESENTATIVE WORKS—Indian Series
This book has been accepted in the Indian Translation Series of the Unesco Collection of Representative Works jointly sponsored by the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization (UNESCO) and the Government of India.

PRINTED IN INDIA

BY JAINENDRA PRAKASH JAIN AT SHRI JAINENDRA PRESS, A-45 NARAINA INDUSTRIAL AREA, PHASE I, NEW DELHI 110 028 AND PUBLISHED BY NARENDRA PRAKASH JAIN FOR MOTILAL BANARSIDASS, DELHI 110 007.

PUBLISHER'S NOTE

The purest gems lie hidden in the bottom of the ocean or in the depth of rocks. One has to dive into the ocean or delve into the rocks to find them out. Similarly, truth lies concealed in the language which with the passage of time has become obsolete. Man has to learn that language before he discovers that truth.

But he has neither the means nor the leisure to embark on that course. We have, therefore, planned to help him acquire knowledge by an easier course. We have started the series of Ancient Indian Tradition and Mythology in English Translation. Our goal is to universalize knowledge through the most popular international medium of expression. The publication of the Purāṇas in English Translation is a step towards that goal.

PREFACE

This thirty-eighth volume in the series on *Ancient Indian Tradition and Mythology* constitutes the second part (*Uttarārdha*) of the Vāyu Purāṇa in English translation comprising the last two of the four sections (*Pādas*) into which the Purāṇa is divided, viz. (1) *Prakriyā*, (2) *Upodghāta*, (3) *Anuṣaṅga* and (4) *Upasaṁhāra*.

This part contains in all fifty chapters, out of which the first three really belong to the second section ie. the *Upodghāta Pāda* of the first part or *Pūrvārdha*, which appear to have wantonly sneaked into this part. The redactors of the Purāṇa should have made these three chapters the last three of the Pūrvārdha which would in that case have 64 chapters instead of the present 61, not a big difference really, rather than transfer them to the second part, to which they have no special logical affinity.

The explanation of this anomaly is not far to seek. As Dr. Tagare has pointed out in his Introduction to Part I, the original Vāyu Purāṇa ended with chapter 41 of the *Uttarārdha* which contains the *Phalaśruti* i.e. merit of listening to the Purāṇa as well as the *Avabhṛtha* or the valedictory bath taken at the completion of a ritual undertaking, followed by a line of teachers who received and transmitted the text of the Purāṇa. From this it is obvious that chapters 42-50 of the *Uttarārdha* are later additions and not a genuine part of the Purāṇa. Apparently some zealous advocate of the Gayātīrtha which is the subject of these chapters included them in the Purāṇa at a later stage to impart sanctity to his cherished subject and an authoritative character to Gayā pilgrimage, at the same time introducing in the text a fake division into *Pūrvārdha* and *Uttarārdha* over and above the original four sections and making the two parts as two almost exact halves by the spliting and transfer of the three chapters of the *Upodghāta Pāda*, without caring for the anomaly that would thus result, in order to give to the later addition an appearance of genuineness. This would look like a most plausible explanation.

As a matter of fact fact, even the older division of the text into four sections does not appear to be quite relevant and logical as the distribution of the chapters under these four major heads does not follow any logical pattern. In view of this one could wish that someone bring out a new edition of the Purāṇa with only 102 chapters (61 of Part I & 41 of Part II) re-numbered from 1 to 102 without these artificial divisions along with the last nine chapters in the form of one or rather two Appendices.

Among the topics included in the contents of this part two have obviously received special prominence, viz. the Śrāddha cult and the glorification of Gayā. But of the total 50 chapters 12, from 10 to 21, are related to the former, which constitute slightly less than one-fourth of the whole. The last seven chapters, approximately one-seventh of the whole, have been devoted to Gayā as a great sacred place and related legends as well as the rules and procedure to be observed during the pilgrimage to Gayā. The importance of this portion is amply shown by the fact that it has to a great extent influenced the later Tīrtha literature, notably *Tirthacintāmaṇi* and *Tristhalisetu.*

The project of this series was envisaged in 1970 by the late Lala Sundar Lal Jain of Messrs. Motilal Banarsidass. Thirty-eight volumes of the series, including the present one, have so far been published and others are in progress. Complete sets of eleven major Purāṇas, viz. *Agni*, *Bhāgavata*, *Brahma*, *Brahmāṇḍa*, *Garuḍa*, *Kūrma*, *Liṅga*, *Nārada*, *Śiva*, *Varāha* and *Vāyu* are now available in English to the lovers of ancient Indian wisdom.

It is our pleasant duty to put on record our sincere thanks to Dr. R.N. Dandekar and the UNESCO authorities for their kind encouragement and valuable help which render this work more useful than it would otherwise have been. We are extremely grateful to Dr. G.V. Tagare for translating the text. We are also thankful to all those who have been helpful in our project.

—Editor

CONTENTS

PREFACE vii

ABBREVIATIONS xiii

CHAPTERS

1. Manvantaras: The Milking of the Earth 457
2. The Dyanasty of Pṛthu 474
3. Vaivasvata Manvantara: The Mārīca Creation 479
4. The Race of Prajāpati: Rebirth of Seven Sages 483
5. The Race of Dharma 497
6. Curse to Jaya Gods: Nṛsiṁha Incarnation: Race of Hiraṇyakaśipu : Birth of Marut-gods 510
7. The Race of Kaśyapa: Danu's Progeny 522
8. Dynasties Descended from Kaśyapa 525
9. The Race of Sages 553
10. The Procedure of Śrāddha 561
11. The Birth of Skanda: Rules Prescribed for Śrāddha 569
12. The Procedure of Śrāddha (Continued) 580
13. The Procedure of Śrāddha Performance (Continued) 584
14. The Procedure Regarding Performance of Śrāddha: The Five Mahāyajñas 591
15. Sacred Places for Śrāddha 596
16. The Śrāddha Ritual: Purificatory Rites 610
17. The Test for Eligibility of a Brāhmaṇa (for Śrāddha Invitation) 618
18. Benefit Derived from Charitable Gifts 627

19. Benefit of Śrāddha Performance on Various Tithis 633
20. Benefit of Śrāddha Performance under Different Constellations 636
21. Miscellaneous Topics: Qualifications of a Brāhmaṇa for Śrāddha-gifts: Merits of Performance of Śrāddha at Sacred Places 638
22. The Race of Varuṇa: Birth of Aśvin-gods 649
23. Creative Activity of Manus: The Story of Sudyumna 656
24. A Dissertation on Music: The Definition of Mūrcchanā 659
25. The Science of Music: The Embellishments 666
26. The Ikṣvāku Dynasty 672
27. The Nimi Dynasty 691
28. The Nativity of Soma and Saumya (Budha) 694
29. The Lunar Race: The Amāvasu Dynasty 698
30. The Origin of Dhanvantari; Vārāṇasī Cursed; Raji's Exploits 708
31. The Story of Yayāti 717
32. The Birth of Kārtavīrya 727
33. The Dynasty of Jyāmagha and Vṛṣṇi 732
34. The Race of Vṛṣṇi 737
35. Wars between Suras and Asuras: Bhṛgu curses Viṣṇu: The Eulogy of Śaṁbhu by Śukra 758
36. Glorification of Viṣṇu's Greatness 778
37. Royal Dynasties 789
38. The Manvantaras and Dissolution of the Universe 827
39. Worlds from Maharloka to Śiva's City 846
40. Dissolution of the Universe 877
41. Recreation of the Cosmic Egg 891
42. Dissipation of Vyāsa's Doubts 899
43. The Greatness of Gayā 910
44. The Glory of Gayā: The Story of Gayāsura 916

45. Gayāmāhātmya (Contd.): The Story of Śilā 924
46. Gayāmāhātmya (Contd.): Śilā-tīrtha and Other Sacred Spots 929
47. Gayāmāhātmya (Contd.): The Glory of Ādigadādhara 942
48. Procedure of the Pilgrimage to Gayā 947
49. Procedure of the Pilgrimage at Gayā (Continued) 954
50. The Glory of Gayā 965

INDEX 973

ABBREVIATIONS

Common and self-evident abbreviations such as Ch(s)—Chapter(s), p—page, pp—pages, V—Verse, VV—Verses, Ftn—footnote, Hist. Ind. Philo.—History of Indian Philosophy are not included in this list.

ABORI	*Annals of the Bhandarkar Oriental Research Institute*, Poona
AGP	S. M. Ali's *The Geography of Purāṇas*, PPH, New Delhi, 1973
AIHT	*Ancient Indian Historical Tradition*, F. E. Pargiter, Motilal Banarsidass (MLBD), Delhi
AITM	*Ancient Indian Tradition and Mythology* Series, MLBD, Delhi
AP	*Agni Purāṇa*, Guru Mandal Edition (GM), Calcutta, 1957
Arch.S.Rep.	Archaeological Survey Report
AV	*Atharva Veda*, Svādhyāya Mandal, Aundh
Bd. P.	*Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa*, MLBD, Delhi 1973
BG	*Bhagavadgitā*
Bh. P.	*Bhāgavata Purāṇa*, Bhagavat Vidyapeeth, Ahmedabad
Br.	*Brāhmaṇa* (preceded by name such as Śatapatha)
BS. P.	*Bhaviṣya Purāṇa*, Vishnu Shastri Bapat, Wai
BV. P.	*Brahma Vaivarta Purāṇa*, GM, 1955-57
CC	*Caturvarga Cintāmaṇi* by Hemādri
CVS	*Caraṇa Vyūha Sūtra* by Śaunaka, Com. by Mahidāsa
DB	*Devi Bhāgavata*, GM, 1960-61
De or GDAMI	*The Geographical Dictionary of Ancient and Mediaeval India*, N. L. De, Oriental Reprint, Delhi, 1971
Dh. S.	*Dharma Sūtra* (preceded by the author's name such as Gautama)
ERE	*Encyclopaedia of Religion and Ethics* by Hastings
GP	*Garuḍa Purāṇa*, ed. R. S. Bhattacharya, Chowkhamba, Varanasi, 1964

GS	*Gṛhya Sūtra* (preceded by the name of the author such as Āpastamba)
HD	*History of Dharma Śāstra*, P. V. Kane, G. O. S.
IA	*The Indian Antiquary*
IHQ	*The Indian Historical Quarterly*
JP	*Purāṇa* (Journal of the Kashiraj Trust), Varanasi
KA	*Kauṭilya Arthaśāstra*
KP	*Kūrma Purāṇa*, Veṅkaṭeśvara Press Edn., Bombay; also Kashiraj Trust Edn., Varanasi, 1971
LP	*Liṅga Purāṇa*, GM, 1960; also MLBD, Delhi, 1981
Manu.	*Manusmṛti*
Mbh.	*Mahābhārata*, Gītā Press, Gorakhpur, VS 2014
MkP	*Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa*
MN	*Mahābhārata Nāmānukramaṇi*, Gītā Press, Gorakhpur, VS 2016
MtP	*Matsya Purāṇa*, GM, 1954
MW	Monier Williams' *Sanskrit-English Dictionary*, MLBD, Delhi, 1976
NP	*Nāradiya* or *Nārada Purāṇa*, Veṅkaṭeśvara Press, Bombay
PCK	*Bhāratavarṣiya Prācina Caritrakośa*, Siddheshwar Shastri, Poona, 1968
Pd.P.	*Padma Purāṇa*, GM, 1957-59
PE	*Purāṇic Encyclopaedia*, V. Mani, English version, MLBD, Delhi, 1975
PR or PRHRC	*Puranic Records on Hindu Rites and Customs*, R. C. Hazra, Calcutta, 1948
ṚV	*Ṛg-Veda*, Svādhyāya Mandal, Aundh
Śat.Br.	*Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa*
SC or SMC	*Smṛti Candrikā* by Devanna Bhaṭṭa
SEP	*Studies in Epics and Purāṇas*, A.D. Pusalkar, Bharatiya Vidya Bhavan (BVB), Bombay

VĀYU PURĀṆA

PART II

CHAPTER ONE

Manvantaras : The Milking of the Earth

Obeisance to Śrī gaṇeśa

Śāṁśapāyana said :

1. I wish to know precisely the order of Manvantaras[1] and all the respective deities pertaining to the different Manvantaras.

Sūta said :

2. Listen to and understand as I recount succinctly and in detail, the Manvantaras which have gone and which are yet to come.

3. The first Manu was Svāyaṁbhuva and then there was Svārociṣa Manu. Thereafter the Manus were Auttama, Tāmasa,

---

1 Manvantara is a period during which a Manu presides over the world. It (the period) consists of seventyone cycles of four yugas (*catur-yugī*) or one-fourteenth part of god Brahmā's day. In other words there are fourteen Manus in one day of Brahmā at the end of which there is *Pralaya* (Dissolution) of the universe. Every Manu has his special set of gods, Indra, an incarnation of Viṣṇu, seven sages (*saptarṣis*). Thus in the 1st Manvantara, Svāyaṁbhuva (the son of god Brahmā) was the presiding Manu, Yāmas were the gods, Yajña, the incarnation of Viṣṇu officiated as Indra and the group of seven sages consisted of Marīci, Atri, Aṅgiras, Pulaha, Kratu, Pulastya and Vasiṣṭha. In every Manvantara, though the set of these functionaries is different, they have got the same powers, functions and the same tenure.

The description of Manvantaras is one of the five essential characteristics of a Purāṇa. Thus we find Purāṇas like Bh. P. VIII.1.29, NP. I.40.17-37, VP. III chs. 1 and 2, KP.I.51, Bd. P. I.2.36 describing various Manvantaras.

Raivata and Cākṣuṣa. These six Manus have already passed away. I shall explain the eight future Manus.[1]

4. They are the five Sāvarṇas, Raucya, Bhautya and Vaivasvata. I shall explain them after Vaivasvata Manu.

5. Know the five Manus who have passed away to be Mānavas. The Manvantara of Svāyaṁbhuva Manu which has already passed has been described by me.

6. Henceforth, I shall describe briefly the activity of creation by Svārociṣa, the second Manu of noble soul.[2]

7. In the Svārociṣa Manvantara, there were the Devas called Tuṣitas and the learned scholars called Pārāvatas. Only these two are remembered as the groups of Devas.

8. They were born of Tuṣitā as the sons of Kratu, the Svārociṣa (Manu). The Pārāvatas and the remaining ones—these two *Gaṇas* (groups) consist of twelve each. (Thus) all these Devas together are remembered as *chandajas* and they are twenty-four (in number).

9-10. Dhaivasyaśa, Vāmānya, Gopā, Devāyata, lord Aja, the powerful lord Duroṇa, Āpa of powerful arms, the vigorous Mahaujas, Cikitvān, Nibhṛta, Vīryavān, and Aṁśa: these were the sons of Kratu. They were then the imbibers of Soma.

11-13. Lord Pracetas, Viśvedeva, Samañja who was well known, Ajihma the suppressor of enemies, Ajihmāna and Mahīyāna endowed with learning, the blessed Aja and Uṣa, Yavīya of great strength, Hotṛ and Yajvā were the Pārāvatas of great exploit. These all were the deities who functioned in the Svārociṣa Manvantara.

14. At that time these twenty-four Devatās (deities) were the imbibers of Soma. Their Indra (ruler and leader) was Vaidha who was world-famous.

15-16. The *Saptarṣis* (the Seven Sages) were Ūrja the son of Vasiṣṭha, Staṁbha the son of Kaśyapa, Droṇa the son of Bhṛgu,

---

1. There are some variations in the names of future Manus in some Purāṇas. Our Purāṇa gives some different names (such as Raucya and Bhautya) of future Manus.

2. Verses 6-22 enumerate and describe the functionaries (gods, Indra etc.) during the second Manvantara.

Ṛṣabha the son of Aṅgiras, Dattātri the son of Pulastya, Niścala the son of Atri, and Dhāvān the son of Pulaha.

17-18. Caitra, Kaviruta, Kṛtānta, Ravi, Bṛhat, Guha, Nava and Śubha[1]: these nine are rememberd as the sons of Svārociṣa Manu who established his race. They have been enumerated in the Purāṇa. Such is the second Manvantara.

19. The Seven Sages, Manu, Devas and Pitṛs—these four constitute the root (and foundation) of a Manvantara. All the subjects are subsidiary to them.

20. Deities are the sons of Sages, Pitṛs are the sons of Devas and the Sages are the sons of Devas—This is the conclusion of the *Śāstras* (Scriptures).

21. Kṣatriyas and Vaiśyas were born of Manu and Brāhmaṇas were born of the Seven Sages. Thus the Manvantara has been described in brief, not in details.

22. The detailed description of the Svārociṣa Manvantara should be understood through (that of) Svāyaṁbhuva Manvantara. It is impossible to describe it in detail even in hundreds of years, since the progenies are many in every family and they are oft-repeated.

23. The Manvantara of Auttama is the third among the Manvantaras.[2] There are five *Gaṇas*. I shall recount them. Understand them.

24. The Devas are Sudhāmans, Vaśavartins, Pratardanas, Śivas, and Satyas. Each of these groups (*Gaṇas*) consists of twelve (Devas).

25. The names of the twelve constituting Sudhāmans are Satya, Dhṛti, Dama, Dānta, Kṣama, Kṣāma, Dhṛti (Dhvani—Bd.P.), Śuci, Īṣa, Ūrjas, Jyeṣṭha and Vapuṣmān the twelfth.

26. The Vaṁśakarin Devas (Vaśavartins) were Sahasradhāra, Viśvātman, Śamitāra, Bṛhadvasu, Viśvadhā, Viśvakarmā Manasvanta, Virāḍ. Yaśas, Jyotis, Vibhāvya and Kīrtimān.

27-28. Pramardana (Pratardana) gods are glorified. They are[3]—Avadhya, Arati, Lord Vasu, Dhiṣṇya, Vivasvasu (Vibhā-

---

1. As per A.

2. Verses 23-36 describe the Auttama or Uttama's Manvantara. As noted in v. 36 the activities of creation etc. are the same as in the previous Manvantara.

3. The reading *anyānārādhito devo* 'God not worshipped by others' is meaningless, as this is a list of Pratardana gods.—'*Pramardana*' in the text is an

vasu in Bd.P.) Dinakratu (Vitta and Kratu in Bd.P.), Sudharmā, Dhṛtavarmā, Yaśasvina (Yaśasvija in Bd.P.) and Ketumān[1].

29-30. Haṁsa, Svara, Ahihā, Pratardana, Yaśaskara, Sudāna Vasudāna, Sumañjasa, Viṣa, Jantuvāhyati, Suvitta and Sunaya—these are to be known as Śivas. They are the twelve other gods worthy of partaking their share in sacrifice.

31-33. Understand the names of those constituting the Satya category of Devas, as agreed (by sages of yore). They are Dikpati, Vākpati, Viśva, Śaṁbhu, Svamṛḍīka, Adhipa, Varcodhas, Muhyasarvaśa (?), Vāsava, Sādāśva, Kṣema and Ānanda. These are those sacrifice-worthy other twelve (Devas) famous as Satyas. These are the deities who lived in the Manvantara of Auttama.

34-35. Aja, Paraśu, Divya, Divyauṣadhi, Naya, the unequalled Devānuja, Mahotsāha, Auśija, Vinīta, Suketu, Sumitra, Subala and Śuci—these thirteen were the noble-souled sons of the Manu Auttama. These were the progenitors of the race of Kṣatriyas and made them flourish. Such is the third Manvantara.

36. The activity of creation etc. in the course of the Auttama Manvantara has been explained through (that of) Svārociṣa Manvantara. Now listen and understand the creation etc. in the Tāmasa Manvantara in detail and in the proper order.

37. In the fourth period of Manvantara[2] of the Manu Tāmasa, the Gaṇas were four, viz. Satyas, Svarūpas, Sudhīs and Haris.

38. In the Manvantara of Tāmasa, the gardsons of Pulastya (manifested themselves). Each of these Devagaṇas consisted of twentyfive (gods).

---

obvious misprint, for *Pratardana* is mentioned in v. 24 above. Verses 26ff. give the list of the twelve gods in each set or class (*gaṇa*) of Devas. The reading in our text does not satisfy the condition of giving twelve gods in the Pratardana class. Hence the reading from a corresponding verse in Bd. P. (I.2.36. 30b) viz. *avadhyo' varatir devo* is accepted here.

1. If Vitta, Kratu and Rathormi from the readings in Bd. P. is accepted, the list will have twelve names (the expected number of this group of Devas).

2. Verses 37-43 deal with Tāmasa Manvantara.

39. The hundred *Indriyas* (sense-organs) and the eighth Tamas (Darkness) which the top-most sages who value truth as life, enunciate, are remembered as the Devas in that Manvantara.

40. Śibi the lord of (great) exploit, was the Indra of those Devas. O excellent ones, understand the seven sages of that Manvantara.

41-42. Harṣa, the son of Kavi; Pṛthu, the son of Kaśyapa; Agni, the son of Atri; Jyotirdhāman, the son of Bhṛgu; Vanapīṭha, the son of Pulaha, Gotra, the son of Vasiṣṭha; and Caitra, the son of Pulastya were the (seven) sages in the Tāmasa Manvantara.

43. Janughaṇḍa, Śānti, Nara, Khyāti, Bhaya, Priyabhṛtya, Avakṣi, Prṣṭaloḍhā, Dṛḍhodyata, Ṛta and Ṛtabandhu were the sons of Tāmasa Manu.

44. In the fifth cycle of Manvantara of Cāriṣṇava Manu,[1] the groups of Devatās are well enumerated. Understand them.

45. Amṛtābha, Ābhūtarajas, Vikuṇṭha and Sumedhas were the auspicious sons of Cariṣṇu alias Vasiṣṭha, the Prajāpati. Their shining and glorious Gaṇas were fourteen and four (i.e. eighteen) (or fourteen for each of the four Gaṇas).

46-47. Svatra (Svapna in A.), Vipra, Agnibhās, Pratyetiṣṭha, Amṛta, Sumati, Vāvirāva, Vācinoda, Srava, Pravirāśī, Vāda and Prāśa were the fourteen (?) Amṛtābhas remembered as the *devas* in the Cāriṣṇava Manvantara.

48-49. Mati, Sumati, Ṛta, Satya, Āvṛti,[2] Vivṛti, Mada, Vinaya, Jetā, Jiṣṇu, Sahas, Dyutimān and Sravasa—these are the names of Ābhūtarajas Gaṇas as (they) know.

50. Vṛṣa, Bhettā,[3] Jaya, Bhīma, Śuci, Dānta, Yaśa, Dama, Nātha, Vidvān, Ajeya, Kṛśa, Gaura and Dhruva are glorified as Vikuṇṭhas. Uunderstand the Sumedhas.

---

1. Verses 44-55 describe the fifth Manvantara which the text calls Cāriṣṇava i.e. of Manu Cariṣṇu but calls the same Manu as Raivata in verses 54, 55 and 56. Manus from Svārociṣa to Raivata belonged to the lineage of Priyavrata.

2. Bd.P. ibid v. 56 adds '*Edhana*' here and makes up the number fourteen.

3. Reading in Bd. P. accepted to make up the number (14).

51-52. Medhā, Medhātithi, Satyamedhā, Pṛśnimedhā, Alpamedhā, Bhūyomedhā and others (?), the lord Dīptimedhā, Yaśomedhā, Sthiramedhā, Sarvamedhā, Aśvamedhā, Pratimedhā, Medhāvān and Medhahartā are glorified as Sumedhas.

53-54. Vibhu of well known exploits and manliness was their Indra. Then the (seven) sages in the fifth Manvantara of Raivata Manu were: Vedabāhu, son (descedant) of Pulastya; the sage called Yaju, the son of Kaśyapa; Hiraṇyaromā, son of Aṅgiras; Vedaśrī, son of Bhṛgu; Ūrdhvabāhu, son of Vasiṣṭha; Parjanya, son of Pulaha; and Satyanetra, son of Atri.

55. Mahāpurāṇasambhāvya, Pratyaṅgaparahā, Śuci, Balabandhu, Nirāmitra, Ketubhṛṅga and Dṛḍhavrata were the sons of Cariṣṇava. Such is the fifth Manvantara.

56. Svārocisa, Auttama, Tāmasa and Raivatas—these four Manus belong to the family of Priyavrata.

57. In the sixth cycle of Cākṣuṣa Manvantara[1] the Devas are remembered as consisting of five Gaṇas (classes), viz. Ādyas, Prasūtas, Bhāvyas, the heaven-dwelling Pṛthukas and the Lekhas of great dignity.

58. This creation of heaven-dwellers is mentioned in accordance with the names of their mothers. The Gaṇas of those Devas are the great-grandsons of Āraṇya, the Prajāpati, the son of Atri. Each of these groups is remembered as comprising of eight Devas.

59. Antarikṣa, Vasu, Haya, Atithi, Priyavrata, Śrotā, Mantā and Sumantā—these are glorified as Ādyas.

60. Śyenabhadra, Paśya, Pathyanetra of great fame, Sumanas, Suvetas, Raivata, Supracetas and Dyuti of great prowess—these are mentioned as Prasūtas.

61. Vijaya, Sujaya, Mana, Udyāna, Sumati, Supari, Vijñāta and Arthapati—these Devas are remembered as Bhāvyas. Now listen and understand the Pṛthuka gods.

62. Ajiṣṭa, the Lord Śākyana, Vānapṛṣṭha, Śaṅkara, Satyadhṛṣṇu, Viṣṇu, Vijaya and the highly blessed Ajita are the heaven-dwelling Pṛthukas.

---

1. Verses 57-69 describe the Cākṣuṣa Manvantara.

63-64. I shall now describe Lekhas. Understand as I recount them. Manojava, Praghāsa, Pracetas of great fame, Vāta, Dhruvakṣiti, Adbhuta of great virility, Avana and Bṛhaspati are glorified as Lekhas.

65-66. Manojava of great virility and prowess became their Indra then. The seven sages in the Cākṣuṣa Manvantara were: Unnata, son (descendant) of Bhṛgu; Haviṣmān, son of Aṅgiras; Sudhāman, son of Kaśyapa; Virajas, son of Vasiṣṭha; Atimāna, son of Pulastya; Sahiṣṇu, son of Pulaha, and Madhura, descendant of Atri.

67-68. Ūru, Pūru, Śatadyumna, Tapasvin, Satyavāk, Kṛti, Agniṣṭut, Atirātra and Sudyumna—these nine and the tenth one Abhimanyu; these were the sons of Cākṣuṣa Manu born of Nādvalī. Such is the sixth Manvantara.

69. O Brāmaṇas, the creation of that noble soul is explained through (that of) Vaivasvata Manvantara and it has been explained by me in detail and in the proper order.

The sages requested :

70. The successors and heirs of Cākṣuṣa Manu were born in the family of Kaśyapa. Please mention (enumerate) to us all those others who were born in his family.

Sūta said :

71. It behoves you to hear the creative activity of Cākṣuṣa Manu in brief. Pṛthu, the valorous son of Vena, was born in his family.

72. Other Prajāpatis and Dakṣa, son of Pracetas, too were born (of that family). Atri, the Prajāpati, adopted Uttānapāda as his son.

73-74. The son of Dakṣaka, the Prajāpati, became a king. He was given in adoption to Atri for some reason by Svāyaṁbhuva Manu after the advent of the sixth (Manvantara). O Brāhmaṇas, having reached the future Manvantara Cākṣuṣa, I shall now explain it by way of introduction.

75. The very clever daughter of Dharma and his wife Lakṣmī, the lady of sparkling smiles named Sunṛtā (Sunīti), the lady who could produce wealth, bore to Uttānapāda a son named Dhruva and became his auspicious mother.

76. Uttānapāda begot of her Dhruva, Kīrtimān, Ayasmān and Vasu and also two daughters of sparkling smiles, Manasvinī and Svarā. Their sons have been already mentioned.

77. The valorous Dhruva, praying for (desirous of) extensive fame, performed penance for ten thousand divine years observing fast.

78-79. In the first Tretāyuga, he (Dhruva), the grandson of Svāyaṁbhuva Manu, controlled himself by means of Yoga in his desire to win great fame. The delighted Brahmā granted him the excellent abode among luminaries. It is pleasing and lasting till the final dissolution of the Universe. It is devoid of setting and rising.

80. On seeing his unlimited glory and greatness, Uśanas, the preceptor of Daityas and Asuras, sang this *Śloka* (verse).

81. "How wonderful is the prowess of his penance ! How commendable is his learning ! Wonderful is his *Huta* (Holy rite) that the seven sages have kept Dhruva above themselves. The firmament depends on Dhruva. He is the controller and the lord of the firmament".

82. Bhūmi bore to Dhruva two kings (as sons), viz. Puṣṭi and Bhavya. The powerful lord Puṣṭi told his shadow, "Be a woman".

83. At his truthful utterance, the shadow of divine body became a woman immediately. She was bedecked in divine ornaments.

84. Puṣṭi begot of his Chāyā five sinless sons, viz. Prācīnagarbha, Vṛṣaka, Vṛka, Vṛkala and Dhṛti.

85. The wife of Prācīnagarbha named Bhūvarcā gave birth to a son who became a king by the name of Udāradhī. In his previous birth, he had been Indra.

86. He used to take food but once at the end of every thousand years. Thus the lord secured Indra-hood which lasted a Manvantara.

87. Bhadrā bore to Udāradhī the son Divañjaya. Varāṅgī bore to Divañjaya the son Ripu, the conqueror of foes.

88. From Ripu, Bṛhatī, bore a son Cākṣuṣa endowed with all types of brilliance. Cākṣuṣa begot Manu of Puṣkariṇī, a descendant of Varuṇa and the daughter of the noble-souled Prajāpati Araṇya.

89. O blessed one, Manu begot ten auspicious sons of Nadvalā, the daughter of Vairāja, the Prajāpati.

90. The sons of Manu and Nadvalā were Ūru, Pūru, Śatadyumna, Tapasvin, Satyavāk, Kavi, Agniṣṭut, Atirātra and Sudyumna—these nine as well as the tenth son Abhimanyu.

91. Āgneyī bore to Ūru six sons of great brilliance, viz. Aṅga, Sumanas, Svāti, Kratu, Aṅgiras and Śiva.

92. To Aṅga, Sunīthā bore a single child Vena. Due to the misdemeanour of Vena, there was a great indignant commotion.

93. For the sake of progeny, the sages (churned) his right hand. When the hand of Vena was pressed, a great king was born. The royal descendant of Vena was glorified as Pṛthu.

94. Pṛthu, the son of Vena, was the foremost of Kṣatriyas. He was born with a bow and a coat of mail. He appeared blazing with his splendour. He protected all the worlds.

95. He was the first among kings who had been crowned in the Rājasūya sacrifice. He was the ruler of the Earth. In order to eulogise him, the clever Sūta and Māgadha (Bards) were born.

96-97. For the sake of his subjects desirous of livelihood the Earth in the form of a cow was milked, yielding all sorts of plants, along with the Devas, groups of Sages, Pitṛs, Dānavas, Gandharvas, Apsaras-s, all Puṇyajanas, creepers and mountains.

98. Being milked in different vessels, the Earth (*Vasundharā* —that which contains rich deposits) yielded milk as much as they desired. Thereby, he sustained the world.

The sages said :

99-100. O highly intelligent one, narrate in detail the story of the birth of Pṛthu and how the Earth (*Vasundharā*) was milked formerly by that noble-souled (king) along with Devas, serpents, Brāhmaṇas, Sages, Yakṣas, Gandharvas and Apsaras-s.

101. To us who solicit (the information) describe their special forms of vessels, the milker, the milk and the different calves (used for milking).

102. Please mention everything to us, for what reason the hand of Vena was pressed formerly by the infuriated sages.

Sūta said :

103. O Brāhmaṇas, I shall describe the origin of Pṛthu, the son of Vena. O excellent Brāhmaṇas, listen attentively with minds purified by austerities.

104. I shall not describe this holy narrative to an impure person, nor to a sinful one, nor to one who is not a disciple, nor to one who is malevolent and never to (by no means to) one who does not observe holy rites.

105-106. This story is conducive to fame, longevity and attainment of heaven. It is holy and on a par with the Vedas. It is esoteric as the sages, have said. He who is not malicious shall hear it. The man who recounts this narrative of the birth of Pṛthu, the son of Vena, to Brāhmaṇas after bowing to them shall not bewail errors of commission and omission. This king (i.e. Pṛthu) was a defender of faith. He was equal to Atri.

107. The Prajāpati named Aṅga was born in the family of Atri. Vena was his son. He was not very pious or faithful.

108. The Prajāpati was born of Sunīthā, the daughter of Mṛtyu. Vena was the son of the daughter of Kāla. Hence on account of the (hereditary) evil trait of his maternal grandfather, Vena (was cruel).

109. He turned his back on Dharma; he indulged in covetousness as he pleased. He established institutions devoid of Dharma (Virtue and Piety).

110. Disregarding the Vedas and Śāstras he was engrossed in sinful and evil activities. While he reigned the subjects were devoid of Vedic study and utterance of Vaṣaṭkāras. The deities did not partake of the sacrificial offerings nor did they drink the Soma juice.

111. "No Yajña should be performed. No offerings should be oblated to fire". This was the cruel, solemn declaration of that Prajāpati when his (utter) ruin was imminent.

112. He proclaimed : "In all sacrifices, I deserve to be offered sacrifice (sacrificial oblations) and worship, by all twice-born castes. Yajñas should be performed unto me. I should be invoked while (performing) Homas."

113. When he crossed the limits of decency, when he took up an improper stand, Marīci and other great sages told him:

114-115. "We are going to be initiated (into a rite lasting) for many hundreds of years. O Vena, do not perform unrighteous acts. This is not the eternal Dharma. In the (family of the God of) Death you are undoubtedly born as a Prajāpati. It has been promised by you formerly: 'I shall protect the subjects.'" While they talked thus, Vena spoke to the Brahmarṣis:

116-118. The evil-minded but eloquent Vena laughingly said thus : "Who else is the creator of Dharma ? Whose words are needed by me ? Who is there on the Earth equal to me in prowess, learning, penance and truthfulness ? You all know precisely that I am inferior to none, that I am a noble soul. I am the source of origin of all the worlds and particularly of all *Dharmas*. If I wish I can burn the entire Earth or make it flooded with water. I can create it or swallow (annihilate) it. No doubts or suspicions need be entertained in this matter."

119. When the king Vena who was utterly deluded by stubbornness and sense of false prestige, could not be dissuaded, the great sages became infuriated.

120. They caught hold of that mighty one even as he was dazzling like fire. Highly infuriated, they twisted and churned his left hand.

121-123. O Brāhmaṇas, from his hand that was being twisted and churned, a man black in colour and very short in stature, was born. Formerly it was heard so (by us). He was agitated in all his sense-organs. Frightened, he stood there with palms joined in reverence. On seeing him confused and dejected, (the sages) said: "*Niṣīda* (Sit down). He, of infinite valour, became the founder of the dynasty of Niṣādas (a hill tribe). He created *Dhivaras* too (the fishermen) born of the sins and defects of Vena.

124. All those others (hill tribes) residing on the Vindhya mountains such as Tumburas, Tuvaras and Khasas and persons interested in evil actions were born of the sins of Vena.

125. Becoming indignant again, the great sages pressed and churned the right hand of Vena in great fury as though it were the *Araṇi* (a pice of wood used to kindle sacred fire by attrition).

126. From the splendid brilliance originating from the pressure exerted on the right hand, Pṛthu was born. Since he

was born of the big (*Pṛthu*) hand (palm) he was called Pṛthu.[1] He was dazzling with the brilliance of his body like the Fire-god.

127. He wielded the primordial bow of loud report, named Ājagava. Then he took up the arrows and the coat of mail of great lustre for the sake of protection.

128. When he was born, all the living beings became highly delighted. When the great king was born, Vena went to heaven.

129. Due to the birth of that intelligent noble-souled son, he (Vena) was (elevated as) a *Rājarṣi* (a royal sage). The tiger among men (Pṛthu) then protected him from the hell called *Put* (by being born as a son).

130. All the rivers and oceans brought gems and jewels and came there. They crowned the son of Vena as the king. With a great royal kingdom, he became an Emperor of great splendour.

131. That Emperor was coronated by the Devas, the sons of Aṅgiras. The valorous son of Vena, Pṛthu, became the first king and a great Emperor.

132. The subjects who had been antagonised by his father were won over by him. Hence thanks to his *Anurāga* (love and affection) he got the name *Rājā* (king).

133. When he rushed against the ocean, the waters stood steady and motionless, and mountains crumbled before him. He never experienced the breakage of his banner.

134. The Earth yielded food-grains without being cultivated. All edible things were achieved on mere thought. Cows yielded whatever one desired. Honey was obtained in every leaf-cup (cluster of flowers ?)

135. At that time, in the auspicious Yajña of Pitāmaha, the highly intelligent Sūta was born of *suti* (the extraction of Soma juice) on the day intended for the extraction of Soma juice. The intelligent Māgadha was also born in the same great Yajña.

---

1. Our text gives a number of popular etymologies, *vide* that of Niṣāda (in v. 123) and of Pṛthu here.

136. With the *Havis* of Indra the *Havis* of Bṛhaspati got mixed. The offering was made to Indra by the Devas and thereby Sūta was born.[1]

137. The *Havya* offering of the preceptor which was mingled with that meant for the disciple, was over-powered by the disciple's *Havis*. On account of the (mingling) activity of the lower and the upper, a mixed caste came into being.

138. A Sūta (charioteer) is begot of a Brāhmaṇas lady by a Kṣatriya who belongs to an inferior caste. Hence Sūta is proclaimed to have rites of the latter (Kṣattriya) one.

139. It is the middle type of Dharma of a Sūta, viz. that of Kṣattriyas. (He has these duties:) looking after and maintenance of chariots, elephants, horses. Practice of medicine is (his) lowliest of duties.

140. Both of them (Sūta and Māgadha) were called there by the Devas and Sages for eulogising Pṛthu. All the sages said to them: "May this king be eulogised. This is a befitting activity of yours. He is also a person deserving praise".

141-142. Then Sūta and Māgadha told all the sages: "We shall propitiate the Devas and the sages with our activities. We do not know the performances, characteristics and reputation of this (Pṛthu) king. Wherefore, O Brāhmaṇas, can we eulogise this brilliant king ?"

143. They were enjoined by the sages :"Let him be eulogised by his future activities. He has control over his sense organs. He is always engaged in charitable rites. He is truthful, endowed with knowledge. He is munificent and is never defeated in battles.

144. Sūta and Māgadha eulogised him by composing songs about the past achievements of the powerful king Pṛthu.

145. At the end of the eulogy, the delighted Pṛthu, the lord of the subjects, gave the land of Anūpa to Sūta and Magadha to Māgadha.

146. Ever since, all the kings are eulogised by Sūtas

1. Verses 136-146 explain how and why the mixed class called sūta came into existence and the duties assigned to that caste. The relation between Māgadha and the land called Magadha is understandable but not that between Sūta and Anūpa (South Malwa).

and Māgadhas. They are awakened by Sūtas, Māgadhas and Bandis (Bards) with benedictory songs.

147. On seeing him (King Pṛthu), the subjects were extremely pleased. The great sages told (them) : "Let this protector of men (King), the son of Vena, be the bestower of livelihood to you".

148-149. Then the subjects hurried and flocked round (literally) the blessed son of Vena saying, "As per promise of the great sages you make arrangements for our livelihood. On being hustled by the subjects, the powerful (king Pṛthu), with the desire to perform what was beneficent to the subjects, took up his bow and arrows and rushed at *Vasudhā* (the Earth). Being afraid of being hit, the Earth assumed the form of a cow and fled.

150. Taking up his bow, Pṛthu ran in pursuit of the fleeing Earth. Frightened of the son of Vena, she (the Earth) ran to Brahmaloka and other worlds (but finally) saw in front of her the son of Vena holding the bow lifted up.

151. He had his splendour brightened up by the blazing arrows and shafts. He was of never failing (power) and endowed with great Yogic power. He was invincible even to the Devas. He could not be thwarted by anyone.

152. The goddess (Earth) who is always worthy of being worshipped by the three worlds, could not get succour (from elsewhere) and so yielded to the son of Vena with palms joined in reverence.

153. She spoke to the son of Vena : "O king, you are not aware of the sin inherent in killing a lady. How are you going to sustain the subjects without me.

154. O most excellent of all kings, but for me the subjects will be ruined. O king, all the worlds rest in me. The whole universe is sustained by me.

155. O protector of the Earth, if you wish to do what is beneficial to the subjects, it does not behove you to kill me. Pay heed to my words.

156. All undertakings become fruitful if they are begun with proper means. O king, even after killing me, you will not be competent to protect and look after the subjects.

157. O extremely refulgent one, I shall become the producer of food. Refrain from fury. They say that females are not to be killed even from among the hundreds of lower animal species. O protector of the Earth, in consideration of this, it does not behove you to forsake Dharma".

158. On hearing these various statements the noble-minded king of righteous soul, restrained his anger and spoke thus to (the Earth) :

159. "If any one destroys a single life or many, whether his own or anyone else's and for the sake of one, he attains enough sin.

160. O auspicious lady, when many attain happiness, if one man is killed there is no great or small sin.

161. O Earth (repository of wealth), if you do not act according to my instructions which are conducive to the welfare of the Universe, I will kill you for the cause of the subjects.

162. If you turn your face (disobey) against my behest, I shall presently kill you with an (single) arrow. After proclaiming myself (as their Lord), I shall sustain the subjects.

163. Hence, O excellent lady, foremost among the upholders of virtue, paying heed to my words will enliven the subjects perpetually. There is no doubt about it that you are competent to do so.

164. Be my daughter. This is the great and excellent step (in the circumstances). O furious-looking lady, I control you for the sake of (establishing) piety".

165. Thus admonished, the chaste lady, the Earth, spoke to the son of Vena in reply: "O king, undoubtedly I shall carry out this thus.

166. O excellent one among the upholders of virtue, give me a calf so that I can give milk out of affection. Make me flat-surfaced and level everywhere so that I can spread everywhere the flowing milk."

167. With the tip of his bow the son of Vena pushed away the heaps of rocks everywhere. The hills were raised up by him.

168-169. In the past Manvantaras the Earth was rugged and uneven. Naturally some parts were even and some uneven. In the course of the previous creations, there was no demarcation of cities and villages, as the Earth was uneven and rugged.

170. In the Cākṣuṣa Manvantara there were no plants, no breeding of cows, no cultivation and no trade routes. All these occurred in the Vaivasvata Manvantara.

171. Wherever there was evenness (plain ground) the subjects always occupied it.

172. The diet cansisted of fruits and roots. Since the reign of the son of Vena all these things appeared in this world.

173. When the medicinal herbs were destroyed, lord Pṛthu made Cākṣuṣa Manu the calf, and with great difficulty milked with his own hand, the Earth (in the form of a cow)[1] and produced plants.

174. Food grains and plants were milked by the son of Vena from the Earth-goddess after making Cākṣuṣa Manu the calf and the bare ground the vessel. The subjects always maintained themselves with that food.

175-176. The Earth (The holder of treasures)was eulogised by the sages and milked again. Their calf was Soma (the Moon) and the milker (milkman) was Bṛhaspati. The vessel was Gāyatrī and other (Vedic) metres. Their milk was penance and the eternal Brahman.

177. Again (the Earth was) eulogised by the groups of Devas led by Purandara after taking up a golden vessel and Amṛta (Nectar) was milked by them. The Devas led by Indra sustained themselves with that alone.

178. The Earth was eulogised by the *Nāgas* (Serpents) and milked. Poison was the milk, Vāsuki the son of Kadru, was the milkman, on behalf of those highly powerful serpents.

179. O excellent Brāhmaṇas, the fierce, huge-bodied and

---

1. The story of Pṛthu and his milking of the Earth is a Purāṇic presentation of the Vedic conception of milking of the Virāj cow. The *Virāj Sūkta* (AV. VIII.10) forms the basis of this Purāṇic legend. The Purāṇic legend asserts the right ofsages (public leaders) to remove a wilful tyrant.

This Pṛthu is a Vedic king and is recorded to have worshipped the Aśvins in his sacrificial chamber (AV. XX.140.5). The milking of Virāj cow by Pṛthu with the earth as a milking pail and Vaivasvata Manu as a calf is mentioned in AV. VIII.10.24. But in our Purāṇa Cākṣuṣa Manu is made the calf. See v. 174.

This episode is depicted in various Purāṇas as in Mbh Śānti, 59.98-128, Bh. P. IV.18, Mt. P. 10.1-35, Bd. P. 12.36.177-202.

excessively aggressive ones among the Nāgas and Sarpas sustain themselves with that alone. That is their diet and sustenance. Their conduct and prowess were in accordance with that.

180. After making themselves invisible, the Earth was milked again by the Yakṣas and Puṇyajanas. They had made Vaiśravaṇa (Kubera) the calf. It was an unbaked vessel that they milked into.

181. The milker was Jatunābha, the father of Maṇivara. He possessed great strength and excessive splendour. He had full self-control. He was the son of a Yakṣa. The great sage said that they sustained themselves with that milk.

182. The Earth was milked again by Rākṣasas and Piśācas. Their milkman was Kubera endowed with the knowledge of Brahman.

183. The calf was the powerful Sumālī. Blood was the milk yielded. It was a vessel of skull that the Rākṣasas milked into by being invisible. All the Rākṣasas sustain themselves with that milk.

184. In the vessel of lotus (leaves) the Earth was milked again by Gandharvas and the groups of Apsaras-s. They made Citraratha the calf, and pure scents was the yield.

185. Viśvāvasu who was the pure son of a sage and who was the very powerful king of Gandharvas and who was a noble soul resembling the sun was their milkman.

186. The goddess Earth was eulogised and milked again by the mountains. The yield was the medicinal herbs in embodied form and various kinds of precious stones.

187. Mt. Himavān was their calf. The great mountain Meru was the milkman.[1] The mountain itself was the vessel. With that the mountain was stabilised.

188. The Earth-goddess was eulogised and milked again by the trees and creepers. They took the leafy cup of Palāśa as the vessel. The milk yielded was the ability to grow after being cut.

189. The mountain in full bloom was *Kāmadhuk* (the milkman of what is desired). Plakṣa tree was the calf. The Earth (was thus) the yielder of all desires, the benefactress of all living beings and very famous.

1. Kālidāsa echoes this in *Kumāra-saṁbhava* I.2.

190. Such is the Earth (*Vasundharā*) (the possessor of riches) who became the *Dhātri* (nurse), *Vidhātri* (the creative agent), and Dhāraṇī (the support). We have heard that it was milked for the welfare of all the people by Pṛthu. It became the foundation of the world consisting of the mobile and the immobile beings and its source of origin.

CHAPTER TWO

The Dynasty of Pṛthu

Sūta said :

1. It is reported that the Earth extended to the oceans as its limit. It is called *Vasudhā*, because it holds riches (*Vasu*—wealth, *Dhārayate*—holds).

2-3. Formerly the earth was covered with the fat of Madhu and Kaiṭabha. Hence the Earth extending to the oceans became famous as *Medini* (*Medas*—fat). Since the intelligent son of Vena, king Pṛthu, adopted her as his daughter, she is called *Pṛthivi*.[1]

4. The division of this famous, beautiful Earth was formerly made by King Pṛthu. The Earth consisting of a series of towns and mines (of various natural products) and populated by people of four castes was protected by that intelligent king.

5. That excellent king, the son of Vena, had such prowess. He was worthy of being bowed to and worshipped by all living beings.

6. Being ancient and born of Brahman, Pṛthu alone is worthy of being offered obeisance by Brāhmaṇas of great dignity (and fortune) who were experts in the Vedas and their *Aṅgas* (ancillary subjects).

7. The primordial king Pṛthu, the valorous son of Vena, should be bowed to by the excessively blessed kings who seek great fame.

---

1. As in v. 190 of the previous chapter, etymologies of other names of the Earth are given here.

8. Only Pṛthu, the first maker of men, should be bowed to by the warriors also seek victory in battle.

9. The warrior who, after glorifying Pṛthu, proceeds to the battlefield, returns safely from the terrible battle and attains glorious fame.

10. The saintly king Pṛthu, the excessively renowned one, should be bowed to by the Vaiśyas, strictly adhering to the avocation and duties of Vaiśyas, as it was he who gave them livelihood and sustenance.

11. These different calves and milkers, milk and the vessels all have been described by me in the proper order.

12. At the very outset the Earth was milked by the noble-shouled Brahmā after making Vāyu the calf.[1] The vessel was the surface of the Earth and the yield, the seeds.

13. Then in the early Svāyaṁbhuva Manvantara, the Earth was milked by Agnīdhra[2] after making Svāyaṁbhuva Manu the calf.

14. Formerly, when Svārociṣa was Manu, the Earth was milked by the intelligent Caitra, after making Svārociṣa Manu the calf. The yield consisted of plants and foodgrains.

15. In the Auttama Manvantara, the Earth was milked by the most excellent and intelligent Devabhuja, after making the Manu Uttama the calf. The yield consisted of all foodgrains.

16. Again in the fifth Manvantara, viz. the Tāmasa Manvantara the Earth was milked by Balabandhu after making Tāmasa Manu the calf.

17. When the Manvantara of lord Cāriṣṇava Manu arrived, the Earth was milked by Purāṇa after making Cāriṣṇava Manu the calf.

18. When the Cākṣuṣa Manvantara arrived, the Earth was again milked by Purāṇa, after making Cākṣuṣa Manu the calf.

---

1. Verses 12-20 give the list of persons who "milked" the earth in each Manvantara. Each 'milking' shows in a way the advancement of human civilization.

2. Bd. P. I.2-37 reads *Sarva-sasyāni caiva hi* "all types of foodgrains were the milky yield". Here *grīṣma* probably stands for Agnīdhra. But the milky yield is not mentioned in our text.

19. When the Cākṣuṣa Manvantara elapsed and Vaivasvata Manvantara arrived, the Earth was again milked by the son of Vena, as narrated by me to you.

20. Formerly in the previous Manvantaras the Earth was milked by the Devas and others, by human beings as well as by the Bhūtas (living beings or goblins) and others.

21. Thus the Devas should be known in all the past and present Manvantaras. Now listen to the sons of Pṛthu.

22. Two valorous sons, Antardhi and Pālin were born to Pṛthu. Śikhaṇḍinī bore to Antardhāna (Antardhi) the son Havirdhāna.

23. Dhiṣaṇā, the daughter of Agni, bore to Havirdhāna six sons, viz. Prācīnabarhis, Śukra, Gaya, Kṛṣṇa, Vraja and Ajina.

24. The holy lord Prācīnabarhis was a great Prajāpati. Thanks to his strength, learning, penance and prowess, he was the sole Emperor of the Earth. The tips of his Kuśa grasses pointed to the east by frequent use in Yajñas. Hence he is called Prācīnabarhis.[1]

25. That lord duly married Savarṇā, the daughter of the ocean, far beyond the extensive darkness. From the Prajāpati the daughter of the ocean, Savarṇā, bore the ten sons of Prācīnabarhis.

26. All of them are named Pracetas. They were masters of the science of archery. Performing rtghteous actions (in close association) without being separated, they performed great penance for ten thousand years lying in the waters of the ocean.

27. While the Pracetas were performing penance on the Earth the trees not being properly cared for covered the earth resulting in the decline and ruin of the subjects.

28. When (the firmament) was obstructed in the Cākṣuṣa Manvantara, wind could not blow. The sky was covered with trees. The subjects could not (carry their activities) for ten thousand years.

29. On realising it by means of their power of penance, all

---

1. Cf Bd. P. 1.2.37.25—an etymology to explain the significance of the king's name.

the Pracetas, endowed with Yogic power, became infuriated and created wind and fire from their mouths.

30. Vāyu uprooted those trees and dried them up. The fierce fire burned them. Thus the destruction of trees took place.

31. Learning of the destruction of the trees (and when only) a few trees survived, king Soma (the Moon-god) approached these Pracetas and spoke to them:

32. "O kings, O sons of Prācīnabarhis, give up your anger after considering the benefits conferred (by flourishing trees) for the continuance of the worlds.

33. The trees will grow on the Earth. May the fire and the wind calm down. This jewel of a girl of fair complexion is the daughter of the trees.

34. Knowing this future (contingency), she has been nurtured (and brought up) by me with my rays. She is named Mārisā and is created by the trees themselves. May she, nurtured in the womb of the moon*, be your wife.

35. By means of a moiety of your splendour as well as a moiety of my splendour, the learned Prajāpati named Dakṣa will be born of her.

36. He, of fiery splendour, shall again develop the subjects and protect the Earth almost burnt by the fire of your brilliance."

37. Then, at the instance of Soma (the Moon-god) those Pracetas curbed their fury and accepted righteously from the trees (their daughter) Māriṣā as their wife.

38-39. They then impregnated Māriṣā mentally. Dakṣa the Prajāpati was born of Māriṣā and the ten Pracetas. He possessed great splendour and virility, thanks to the part of Soma. At first Dakṣa created progeny by mental process and subsequently by means of sexual intercourse.

40. After creating the immboile beings, mobile beings, bipeds and quadrupeds mentally, Dakṣa created women (daughters) thereafter.

41. He gave ten (of his daughters) to Dharma, thirteen to Kaśyapa and twenty-seven engaged in the movement of time (i.e. the twenty-seven constellations) to the moon.

---

*i.e. 'by rays of the moon' (as stated in v. 34a).

42. After giving these (daughters) to them he gave four other daughters to Ariṣṭanemi, two to Bāhuputra, two to Aṅgiras and one daughter to Kṛśāśva. Now know their progeny.

43. By this time, the sixth Manvantara of Cākṣuṣa Manu ceases giving place to the seventh Manvantara of the Prajāpati Vaivasvata Manu.

44. In them (the daughters of Dakṣa) Devas, birds, cows, serpents, Daityas, Dānavas, Gandharvas, Apsaras-s and other classes of beings were born.

45. The creation of the earlier ones was due to thought, sight and touch. Thenceforth, the subjects in this world were born of sexual intercourse.[1]

The sages said :

46-48. The auspicious birth of Devas, Dānavas, Celestial Sages and the noble-souled Dakṣa has been narrated by you before. It was mentioned by you (before) that Dakṣa, the Prajāpati, was born of Prāṇa. How did he who had great penance subsequently attain the status of the son of Pracetas? O Sūta, it behoves you to clarify this doubt of ours. He was the son of the daughter of Soma. How did he become his (Soma's) father-in-law?

Sūta said :

49. O excellent ones, birth and dissolution (death) occur perpetually among living beings. The sages and those men who are endowed with learning are not deluded in this matter.

50. O Brāhmaṇas, Dakṣa and others are born in every Yuga. They undergo subsequent death too. A learned man is not confused in this matter.

51. O excellent Brāhmaṇas, formerly there was neither seniority nor juniority among them. Penance alone was considered weightier and prowess was the basis thereof.

52. He who comprehends this creation of the mobile and the immobile beings in Cākṣuṣa Manvantara passes his life-span fully and is honoured in the heavenly region (after it).

1. This is the main difference between the previous six Manvantaras and the present one. With this chapter closes the description of the Cākṣuṣa Manvantara.

53. This creation of Cākṣuṣa Manu has been succinctly narrated. Thus these six cycles of creation, in the form of Manvantaras have elapsed. They have the Svāyaṁbhuva Manvantara as their first one and the Cākṣuṣa Manvantara as the last one. They have been briefly narrated in the proper sequence.

54. O excellent Brāhmaṇas, these creations have been narrated in accordance with my understanding. The details of these creations should be known through the creation in the Vaivasvata Manvantara.

55. All the creations of Vivasvān are endless and non-different (from other Manvantaras) in the matter of states of health, duration of life, virtue, love and wealth. He who reads this without malice attains these attributes.

56. Now I shall describe the creative activity of the current noble-souled Vaivasvata Manu succinctly and in detail (as the case may be). Listen and understand even as I recount.

CHAPTER THREE

Vaivasvata Manvantara: The Mārica Creation

Sūta continued :

1. In the seventh cycle called Vaivasvata Manvantara, the Devas and the great sages were born of Kaśyapa, son of Marīci.[1]

2. The eight groups of Devas are remembered as follows: (1) Ādityas, (2) Vasus, (3) Rudras, (4) Sādhyas (5) Viśvedevas (6) Maruts, (7) Bhṛgus and (8) Aṅgiras-s.

3. (Among them) Ādityas, Maruts and Rudras are to be known as the sons of Kaśyapa. The three groups, viz. Sādhyas, Vasus and Viśvedevas are the sons of Dharma.

4. Lord Bhārgava was born of Bhṛgu and Aṅgirā was the son of Aṅgiras. In this Vaivasvata Manvantara, those Devas are

1. Hence the title of the chapter 'Mārica creation'.

perpetually *Chandajas* (born according to their own will or born of Vedic *chandas*?).

5. The current auspicious creation should be known as that of the descendants of Marīci. Their present brilliant Indra is Mahābala by name.

6. All the Indras in the different Manvantaras whether of the past or future or those who exist now should be known as having equal characteristics.

7. All of them are the lords of past, present and future objects, thousand-eyed and Purandara (destroyers of the cities of enemies). All of them are bountiful, crested (wearers of crowns with crests). They hold thunderbolt in the hand. All performed hundred sacrifices and all possessed hundreds of attributes.

8. They establish themselves after excelling all the living beings in the three worlds, whether weak or mobile, for various reasons such as Dharma (Piety) etc.

9. I shall explain everything as to how they are the lords of the past, present and future by means of splendour, penance, intellect, strength, learning and exploits; how they have become powerful; listen and understand even as I recount.

10. Three worlds have been remembered by the Brāhmaṇas as *Bhūta*, *Bhavya* and *Bhaviṣya*.[1] They are respectively remembered as follows: *Bhūrloka* or the Earth, *Bhuvarloka* or the firmament and *Bhavya* or the heaven. I shall explain how they have been accomplished.

11-12. This was uttered at the outset by Brahmā who was desirous of sons and who was meditating. The word "*Bhūḥ*" was uttered in the beginning and this *Bhūrloka* took shape. The root *Bhū* is remembered in the sense of *Sattā* (existence) as also *Loka Darśana* (visibility to the people). Since it existed and was visible it became *Bhūrloka*, hence this first *Loka* is remembered as *Bhūḥ*, because it existed.

13. When this (world) had taken shape, the second word, "*Bhavat*" was uttered again by Brahmā. That which is about to take shape in the immediate future time is indicated by the word "*Bhavat*".

1. Verses 10-18 explain these terms and how the *vyāhṛtis* originated (v. 19).

14. The word *Bhuvarloka* is derived from *bhavana* by those who know *Nirukta* (Etymology). Hence the firmament is called the second Loka i.e. Bhuvarloka.

15. When Bhuvarloka had taken shape, the third word "*Bhavya*" was uttered by Brahmā and then the *Bhavyaloka* took shape.

16. The word *Bhavya* is used in the sense of what has not yet come about (i.e. the future). Hence this future world is remembered by the name *Diva* (Heaven).

17. Another third word "*Svaḥ*" was uttered (by Brahmā). Then the *Bhavyaloka* (future world) took shape. The word *Bhavya* is used in the sense of future time.

18. The Earth is remembered by the word *Bhūḥ*; the firmament is remembered as *Bhuvaḥ*; the heaven is remembered as *Bhavya*. This is the set of three worlds in a nutshell.

19. By the utterances in combination with the three worlds the three *Vyāhṛtis* (i.e. the mantras *Bhūḥ*, *Bhuvaḥ*, *Svaḥ*) originated. The root *Nath* is remembered in the sense of 'protection' by those who know the (meanings of) roots.

20. Since they are the Lord Protectors of the *Bhūta*, *Bhavya* and *Bhavat* worlds they are the *Nāthas* (Protectors) of the three worlds. They are termed as Indras by the Brāhmaṇas.

21. The Devendras who are the chiefs in the Manvantaras as well as those Devas who are their (subordinates) become partakers of shares in the *Yajñas*.

22. Yakṣas, Gandharvas, Rākṣasas, Piśācas, Uragas and Dānavas are all proclaimed as (the products of) the glory of the Devendras.

23. The Devendras are the elders (preceptors), protectors, kings and parents. Those excellent Devas protect all these subjects righteously.

24. Thus the characteristics of the Devendras have been briefly described. I shall now recount the seven sages who are stationed at present in the heaven.

25-28. They are: (1) Viśvāmitra of great penance, the intelligent son of Gādhi who was born of the family of Kuśika, (2) Jamadagni, the valorous son of Ūru (Aurva) the scion of the family of Bhṛgu, (3) Bhāradvāja of great penance, the son of Bṛhaspati, (4) Śaradvān the learned and the virtuous son of Uta-

thya, belonging to the family of Gotama, (5) the fifth one Brahmakośa (otherwise known as) lord Atri, son of Svayaṁbhū (Brahmā,) (6) the sixth one, the son of Vasiṣṭha well known in the world as Vasumān, and (7) Vatsāra, son of Kaśyapa. All these seven are well honoured by good men. These seven sages, all of whom are Siddhas, exist in the present Manvantara.

29-31. Ikṣvāku, Nābhāga, Dhṛṣṭa, Śaryāti, the famous Nariṣyanta, Nābha, Uddiṣṭa, Karuṣa, Pṛṣadhra and Vasumān the tenth—these are the ten sons of Vaivasvata Manu glorified by me. The seventh Manvantara has been explained by me. O Brāhmaṇas, the second Pāda has been described by me in detail and in the proper order. What else shall I now explain?

CHAPTER FOUR

The Race of Prajāpati : Rebirth of Seven Sages

The Sages said :

1. On hearing the second section (in full) as narrated by the intelligent Sūta, Śāṁśapāyana thereafter asked him about (the subject matter of) the third *Pāda* (Section).

2. "The second *Pāda* has been narrated by you along with its sequel (Appendix); please recount the third *Pāda* in detail along with the (necessary) introduction" Being requested thus, Sūta began to speak with his inner soul highly delighted.

Sūta said :

3. O Brāhmaṇas, I shall recount the third pāda in detail along with (necessary) introduction. Even as I recount it, listen and understand it completely.

4. O Brāhmaṇas, listen in details and in proper order to the creative activity of the present Vaivasvata Manu of noble soul.

5-7. The (Manu) period is already calculated as being of seventyone sets of four Yugas. After bowing to Vivasvān (the Sun-god) I shall narrate the Vaivasvata creation beginning with Manu and ending with the future events. It comprises Devagaṇas, Sages, Dānavas, Pitṝs, Gandharvas, Rākṣasas, Bhūtagaṇas, human beings, animals, birds and immobile beings.

8-9. The seven great sages who had passed away in the first Svāyaṁbhuva Manvantara and who were the creators and initiators then, are reborn in the Vaivasvata Manvantara after

the lapse of the Cākṣuṣa Manvantara. It is due to the curse of Maheśvara that the noble souls, Dakṣa and the very powerful sages Bhṛgu and others manifested themselves (in this Manvantara).

10. The seven sages were born again as seven mental sons of Brahmā. They were adopted as sons by Svayaṁbhū (the self-born god Brahmā) himself.

11. The creative activity was initiated again as before and in the proper order, by those noble souls who manifested themselves and who created the series of subjects.

12. I shall mention the progeny of those people of pure knowledge and holy rites in brief as well as in detail (according to the context) and in the proper order.

13. This world consisting of mobile and immobile beings and embellished with planets and stars is filled with beings born of their families.

14. On hearing these words a doubt arose in the minds of the sages. Overwhelmed by the doubt, the sages of pure holy rites honoured Sūta and asked him for the sake of clarification of their doubts.

The sages said :

15. O excellent one, how were the seven sages born as seven mental sons at the outset ? How were they adopted as sons ? Please explain this to us.

Thereafter, the highly-splendid Sūta well versed in Purāṇas began the auspicious narration.

Sūta said :

16-17. How the seven great sages who had been great Siddhas in the Svāyaṁbhuva Manvantara, failed to attain the fruit of penance in the Vaivasvata Manvantara (I shall narrate.) Overwhelmed with the curse of Bhava (Śiva) they did not attain the (fruit of the) penance. Once they gathered together in the Jana Loka.

18-19. In the Jana Loka all the great sages spoke to one another : The blessed ones were talking to one another in the grand sacrifice of Varuṇa: "In the Cākṣuṣa Manvantara let us all be

born as the sons of Pitāmaha. Then it will be conducive to welfare".

20. In the Svāyaṁbhuva Manvantara they had been cursed by Bhava. In order to make (the curse) truthful (i.e. fulfilled), they were born again. From the Jana Loka they went to heaven.

21. We have heard that in the Yajña of the great lord, Brahmā assumed the form of Varuṇa. With a desire for progeny he had consigned the semen into the holy fire. It was then that the sages had their second birth.

22. Bhṛgu, Aṅgiras, Marīci, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, Atri and Vasiṣṭha—these eight[1] were the sons of Brahmā.

23. In his grand elaborate Yajña all the Devas had come. All the *Aṅgas* (ancillaries) of the Yajña and *Vaṣaṭkāra* had assumed corporeal forms.

24. The Sāman mantras, thousands of Yajur mantras and the Ṛgveda embellished with Pada and Krama[2] (Pāṭhas) were present there in embodied form.

25. The Yajurveda enriched with (relevant) metres, brilliant with Oṁkāra as its mouth (face) was present here along with Sūktas, Brāhmaṇas and Mantras related to the *Arthas* (objects & purposes) of the Yajña.

26. The Sāma Veda so rich in (the variety of Vedic) metres and with all Mantra-Songs (which are) to be sung at the outset was present there along with Viśvāvasu and other Gandharvas.

27. The Brāhma Veda (Atharva Veda) was (present there) accompanied by terrible rites. (But) due to (the presence of the)

---

1. There are two discrepancies here. *Saptarṣis* means a set of seven sages but here *eight* sons of Brahmā are enumerated. Apart from this discrepancy in number the names of the *Saptarṣis* of this Manvantara as given in vv 25-28 of the last chapter are different from this list even though v. 28 of that chapter asserts that "these seven sages exist in the present Manvantara" (*ete saptarṣayaḥ siddhā vartante sāmprate'ntare*).

This previous list (3.25-28) agrees more with the one in VP.III.1.32 if the names therein are regarded as *gotras* of the sages.

2. *Krama* is a special method of reciting vedic texts. It is so called as the recitation proceeds from the first member, either word or letter to the second, then the second is repeated and connected with the third and so on.

Pratyaṅgirasas, it appeared to have a single head with two bodies.[1]

28. (The following details about the recitation of the Vedas) *Lakṣaṇas* (the characteristic topics), *Svaras* (notes), *Stobhas* (chanted interjections in a Sāman-song), *Nirukta* (etymologies), *Svarabhaktis* (insertion of vowel sound for ease in pronunciation), *Āśraya* (resting places or annexation), *Vaṣaṭkāra* (pronouncing '*Vaṣaṭ*'), *Nigraha* (suppression) and *Pragraha* (vowels not subject to Sandhi rules) (all these were physically present).

29-30. The brilliantly shining goddess Earth, the quarters, the intermediate quarters, the Lords of quarters, the celestial virgins, the wives of Devas, the mothers and Āyu—all these were present there in embodied form in front of the Lord (Brahmā) who was performing the Yajña assuming the form of Varuṇa.

31. On seeing the ladies, the semen virile of Svayaṁbhū fell on the ground. There is no doubt about this that it took place on account of the dispensation of the inevitable in the case of Brahmarṣis (Brahmanical sages).

32. Pitāmaha (god Brahmā) then took it up by means of Sruks and Sruvā (sacrificial spoons and ladles) and performed the *Homa* as if it were ghee, reciting the mantras duly.

33. Thereafter, the Prajāpati began the creation of living beings (or aggregate of elements). Due to the splendour that was beside, the fiery things were born; the Guṇas Sattva and Rajas were not pervaded by the Guṇa Tamas.

34. From the Saguṇa brilliance, Tamas stayed perpetually in the sky. All the living beings were born from the *Tamas* (darkness) and the *Tejas* (brilliance).

35. When the sons born of *Karman* were created, Brahmā took up his Semen Virile in the ghee-pot and performed the Homa.

36. When the Semen Virile was consigned to the holy fire, the great sages manifested themselves. They were embodied and very brilliant. All the seven (sages) had the attributes of new born infants.

37. When the Semen Virile was once poured into the fire,

1. The AV. consists of two sets of Mantras : the auspicious ones (*Atharvans*) and the terrible ones meant for the destruction of the enemies (*Aṅgiras*). Hence AV is said to have two bodies.

Kavi (i.e. Venus) came out of the flame. On seeing him coming out splitting up the flame, Hiraṇyagarbha (Brahmā) said: "You are Bhṛgu". Thereafter he is called Bhṛgu.[1]

38. Mahādeva saw him coming out like that and said to Brahmā: "I am desirous of a son and I am initiated. He is born to me, O lord. Hence may lord Bhṛgu be my son."

39. Mahādeva was permitted by god Brahmā who said: "So be it". Mahādeva adopted Bhṛgu as his son. All the descendants of Bhṛgu are called Vāruṇas. He became a holy lord (sage).

40. A second (ladleful of) Semen Virile fell on the burning coals. Aṅgiras was born of it with his limbs firmly united on fire (burning coals). Hence he is known as Aṅgiras.

41. On seeing his birth, the Fire-god spoke to Brahmā: "It was I who held your Semen Virile. Hence may this second son be mine."

42. The Fire-god was addressed by Brahmā: "Let it be so". Hence, we have heard that all the descendants of Aṅgiras are known as Āgneyas.

43. When the Semen Virile was consigned to the holy fire for six more times by Brahmā, the creator, the six Brahmās (sons of Brahmā) were born. So it is heard.

44. Marīci was the first among them, born from the rays (of sacrificial fire). Since the (second) son was born in the *Kratu* (sacrifice), he is called Kratu.

45. "I am the third" (Ahaṁ-Tṛtīya), saying thus the third son was born. So he is called *Atri*. The fourth son was born with sharp pointed hairs. Hence he is remembered as Pulastya.

46-47. The son born with long hairs is remembered as Pulaha. He who was born out of the Vasu (fire ?) was called Vasumān. He is called Vasiṣṭha by those who know the truth, by the expounders of Vedas. Thus these six great sages are the mental sons of Brahmā.

1. Cf. *Bṛhad-devatā* V. 97-101 for the story of the births of Bhṛgu, Aṅgiras and Atri. Etymologies of these names also are borrowed therefrom though grammarians offer different derivations.

48. They maintain the continunity of the worlds. These subjects are developed and nurtured by them. Hence Brahmā's sons are mentioned as Prajāpatis.

49-50. Others called Pitṛs were created by these great sages alone. The seven groups of sages are well known in the world, viz. Mārīcas,Bhārgavas, Āṅgirasas, Paulastyas, Paulahas, Vāsiṣṭhas and Ātreyas; these groups of Pitṛs are well-known in the world.

51. These three Gaṇas have been briefly mentioned before: They are *Apūrvas* (Rare), *Prakāśas* (Brilliant) and *Jyotiṣmantas* (Illuminated ones).

52. Their king is lord Yama and they have wiped off their sins by their (religious) observances. There are other Prajāpatis also. Listen to them attentively.

53-54. There are other Prajāpatis many in number, viz. Kardama, Kaśyapa, Śeṣa (?), Vikrānta, Suśruvas, Bahuputra, Kumāra, Vivasvān, Śuciśravas, Pracetas, Ariṣṭanemi, Bahula and many others.[1]

55. Kuśoccayas and Vālakhilyas had become great sages. They had the speed of the mind. They could go anywhere. They became Emperors.

56. The groups of sages called Vaikhānasas are honoured by Brāhmaṇas. They were born of the sacred ashes. They are engaged in penance and learning.

57. The handsome Aśvinas were born of his ears. The pure ones born of the eyes are known as *Akṣarajas*.

58. The elder Prajāpatis were born of his vessels. The sages were born of the hair pores in the skin and the sweat dirt.

59. From his tears and cry were born the terrible mouths Niryāsas (?), the junctions of fortnights, years, days and nights and the terrible light of Pitṛs.

60. Raudra they say is the blood. Lohita is remembered as gold. That should be known as Maitra also. The smoke is remembered as animals.

---

1. Different Purāṇas give different lists of Prajāpatis. For example, the lists in Mbh., Mt. P. or Garuḍa differ from our text (and Bd. P) and *inter se.*

61. The flames are Rudras and Ādityas. Divine human beings were born of the burning coal and the flame.

62. Brahmā born of Brahman is the primordial being in the world. Requesting (for the hand of) a virgin, the sages told him who bestowed everything:

63. "Brahmā, the eldest among Suras, is delighted with Devas. These lords will be giving birth to all the subjects.

64. All of them are Prajāpatis. All of them are sages. These rites will uphold these worlds with his grace.

65. They have developed couples increasing your splendour. Among Devas there are learned ones in Vedas. All the saintly kings are also such.

66. All of them are devoted to the Vedic Mantras. They have been born out of the attributes of Prajāpatis. The infinite Brahman is the Truth and the greatest penance.

67. O lord, all of us are your own children, the Brahman (Vedas), the Brāhmaṇas and all the worlds including the mobile and the immobile beings.

68. Beginning with Marīci and including all the sages, we Devas are thinking about and longing for children by your (blessings)".

69. (*Sūta said*) O highly blessed ones, Devas along with sages identifying (themselves) with the abodes and the time are born in this family during the Yajña.

70. In that very form, they may not establish these subjects. They may be stabilised from the beginning till the end of the Yugas.

71. Then the preceptor of the world (Brahmā), without any further thought, spoke—"O Devas, it was after deciding like this that the subjects had been created by me. There is no doubt about this. These sages have been born in your race".

72. Among them I shall recount in detail and in proper sequence the race of Bhṛgu, the ancient noble soul and the first Prajāpati.

73. Bhṛgu had two unequalled, excellent and auspicious wives of noble families. One was the daughter of Hiraṇyakaśipu, famous by the name 'Divyā' and the other was the fair-complexioned daughter of Puloman, named Paulomī.

74-75. Divyā bore to Bhṛgu the planet Śukra (Venus) who was the preceptor of Devas and Asuras, who was the son of Kavi, and was known as Kāvya, Śukra and Uśanas. He was the most excellent among the knowers of Vedas. Śukra's wife named Aṅgī was the mental daughter of the Soma-drinking Pitṛs and very famous. She gave birth to four sons.

76-77. He was endowed with Brahman's splendour and the most excellent among the knowers of Brahman. Śukra begot four sons of her, viz. Tvaṣṭṛ, Varūtrin, Śaṇḍa and Amarka. They resembled the sun and in their prowess they were equal to Brahmā.

78. Rañjana, Pṛthuraśmi and the scholarly Bṛhadgiras were the sons of Varūtrin. They were devoted to Brahman and became the priests of Suras.

79. They approached Manu with the motive of spoiling sacrificial rites. On seeing Dharma being violated, Indra spoke to Manu:

80. "I would rather have the sacrifice performed through you than through these". On hearing these words of Indra, they fled from that place.

81. When they absconded, Indra released (their) wife Cetanā. Then he followed her.

82-83. On seeing them come there again with the evil intention of killing Indra, he struck at them (while) they slept in the altar of the lord of Devas on the southern side. While they were being devoured by (dogs, jackals and wolves) their heads fell down simultaneously and became dates.

84. Thus, the sons of Varūtrin were killed by Indra formerly. Śukra begot (of his wife) Yajanī the daughter Devayānī.

85. The three-headed Viśvarūpa was the great son of Tvaṣṭṛ. Viśvakarman is remembered as the younger twin-brother of Viśvarūpa.

86. Twelve sons were born to Bhṛgu (and were known as) Bhṛgu (Gaṇa) Devas[1]. Lord Kāvya begot of Devī those sons.

---

1. Mt. P. gives a different list of these 12 Deva Yājñika Bhṛgus in its lists of Gotras and Pravaras.

87. They were—Bhuvana, Bhāvana, Anya, Anyāyata, Kratu, Śravas, Mūrdhan, Vyajaya, Vyaśruṣa, Prasava, Aja and the twelfth one Adhipati.

88. These twelve sons of Bhṛgu are remembered as twelve sacrificial Devas. Paulomī bore a lordly son having full self-control and engrossed in Brahman.

89. Since he was sickly in the eighth month of conception, he was forcibly taken out of the womb by dire means and so his name became Cyavana. He became conscious due to Pracetas. Through the anger of Cyavana (revived by) Pracetas, Cyavana alias Prācetasa burned the man-eaters through anger[1].

90. The son of Bhṛgu (i.e. Cyavana) begot of Sukanyā two sons honoured by saints, viz. Ātmavāna and Dadhīca.

91. The son Sārasvata was born to Sarasvatī and Dadhīca. The blessed lady Ruci, daughter of Nahuṣa, was the wife of Ātmavāna.

92. The sage Ūrva (Aurva in Bd. P. and Mbh.) of great renown was born of him after breaking through the thighs (of his mother)[2] Ṛcīka was the son of Aurva. He was brilliant (in complexion) like a blazing fire.

93-94. When the *carus*[3] (sacrificial offerings) pertaining to Rudra and Viṣṇu (charged with specific *mantras*) by Bhṛgu were interchanged, Jamadagni was born, as the *Caru* pertaining to Vaiṣṇava fire was (mistakenly) eaten (by his mother). Reṇukā bore to Jamadagni the son Rāma of unmeasured splendour. He was equal to Śakra (Indra) in valour and had the traits both of a Brāhmaṇa and a Kṣatriya.

95. Aurva had a hundred sons of whom Jamadagni was the eldest. Those descendants of Bhṛgu had thousands of sons due to mutual alliance.

---

1. The text *Prācetasāc cyavana-krodhād adhvānam puruṣādajaḥ* is defective. For this the corresponding text from Bd. P. II-3-1. is accepted.

2. Mbh. Ādi 177 informs that when Haihayas tried a genocide of the Bhṛgu clan, Bhṛgu women fled to hills. While running Cyavana's wife Āruṣī concealed her foetus in her thigh. When Haihaya officers arrested her to execute her, her foetus—a son—broke through his mother's thigh and blinded all Haihayas with his supreme brilliance. As this child broke through his mother's thigh (ūru), he was called Aurva (one born out of the thigh).

3. *ruci*—is a misprint for *caru*.

96. Among other sages outside (the original family) there are many other descendants of Bhṛgu. They are divided into seven *Gotras*, viz. Vatsa, Viśva, Aśviṣeṇa, Pāṇḍa, Pathya and Śaunaka. These seven clans are alternatively known as Bhārgavas.

97. Listen to the narration of the family of Aṅgiras, the intelligent son of Agni. It was in the family of Aṅgiras, the intelligent son of Agni, that Bhāradvājas along with Gautamas were born. The most important Devas belonging to the family of Aṅgiras are Tviṣimants (?) of great prowess.

98. Atharvan, Aṅgiras had three wives, viz. Surūpā the daughter of Mārīca, Svarāṭ the daughter of Kardama and Pathyā the daughter of Manu. I shall mention their progeny.

99. The heirs of Atharvan born of those wives were the uplifters of the family. They were born as a result of the great penance of that purified soul.

100-101. Bṛhaspati was born of Surūpā and Svarāṭ gave birth to Gautama. Pathyā gave birth of Avandhya, Vāmadeva, Utathya and Uśija. Dhiṣṇu was thes on of Pathyā. Saṁvarta was the mental son (of Atharvan). Vicitta, Āyasya and Śaradvān were the sons of Utathya.

102. Dīrghatamā was the son of Aśi. Bṛhaduttha was the son of Vāmadeva. Dhiṣṇu's son was Sudhanvan and his son was Ṛṣabha.

103. Rathakāras (Charioteers) are remembered as Devas. They are well-known as Ṛṣis (Ṛbhus ?). Bharadvāja of very great fame and well-known was born of Bṛhaspati.

104. The progeny of Saṁvarta, (mental) son of Aṅgiras, are considered as Devas. Listen to them. These Aṅgiras Devas are regarded as junior to Bṛhaspati.

105-108. Ten own sons of Aṅgiras were born of Surūpā. They were ten and their names are—Audārya, Āyu, Danu, Dakṣa, Darbha, Prāṇa, Haviṣmān, Haviṣṇu, Kratu and Satya. The following ten and five (i.e. fifteen) are to be known as belonging to the *Pakṣa* (i.e. *Gotra*) of Aṅgiras—Ayasya, Utathya, Vāmadeva, Uśija, Bhāradvājas, Śāṅkṛtikas, Gārgya, Kāṇva, Rathītara, Mudgalas, Viṣṇuvṛddhas, Haritas, Vāyus, Bhākṣas of Bhāradvāja family, Ārṣabhas and Kiṁbhayas. Many others (external) sages (belonging to the families outside) are remembered among other sages.

109. I shall now describe the race of Marīci consisting of excellent men as its scions. In his race was born the Universe consisting of mobile and immobile beings.

110. Contemplating on the waters (*Āpaḥ*) with a desire for progeny, Marīci desired the waters. The lord mentally conceived thus—"A son born of a praiseworthy woman, endowed with all good qualities and having good tastes is honoured".

111-112. All the waters were called. The lord dwelt in their company. The lord procreated an unequalled son named Ariṣṭanemi who became Prajāpati and who was of well-controlled mind. Vadhauveśa[1] (?) begot the son Mārīca, having the splendour of the Sun.

113. Contemplating on the speech of good men[2] he stayed under water for seven thousand years with a desire to beget sons. Hence (the son) became unequalled.

114. Kaśyapa was the knower of the sun (?) Hence he was on a par with Brahmā. In every Manvantara, he is born through a part of Brahmā.

115. The subjects[3] were angered by Dakṣa, it is said (?) for the sake of (his) daughters. Then he drank wine. The word '*Kaśya*' means wine.

116. *Haścekasas* (?)[4] should be known as Brahma's *Kaśya*. *Kaśya* is remembered by Brāhmaṇas as wine. Because he drank *Kaśya* (wine) he is called Kaśyapa.[5]

117. He used harsh words. On being cursed by Dakṣa, he became infuriated and thereby became *Kaśyapa*.

118. On being requested by Kaśyapa and urged by Brahmā Parameṣṭhin, Dakṣa gave his daughters to Kaśyapa. All of them were expounders of Brahman. All of them were the mothers of the worlds.

---

1. Bd. P. reads *nirata* : *so'psvatītapat* 'who performed penance in waters'.
2. Chaste goddess Vāk (Bd. P.).
3. Bd. P. (ibid. v. 120) reads *Prabhuḥ* for *Prajāḥ* hereof. It means 'When the holy Lord got enraged at the over-bearing speech for his daughters'.
4. *Hāścekasa* is obscure. Bd. P. reads *hāsye kaśir hi vijñeyo* 'The word *Kaśi* should be understood in the sense of humour'.
5. A funny derivation. The sage Kaśyapa is so designated as he was a drunkard (*Kaśya*—wine) and whip-like (Kaśa—a whip) harsh in speech.

119. He who knows this holy creation of Ṛṣis through Varuṇa becomes long-lived and meritorious. He becomes Purified and attains excellent happiness. By listening to this and retaining this (in memory) he becomes free from all sins.

120. *Then all the sages spoke to Romaharṣaṇa*: "When the sixth Prajāsarga (creation of the subjects) of Cākṣuṣa Manu had been dissolved, the creation of Vaivasvata Manu began to function (How did it take place ?)."

Sūta said :

121. When the Vaivasvata Manvantara arrived, Dakṣa was commanded by the self-born lord himself—"Create the subjects". Dakṣa created mobile and the immobile living beings.

122. Then Dakṣa proceeded to create the four types of *Prajās* (subjects), viz. *Jarāyujas* (viviparous), *Aṇḍajas* (oviparous), *Udbhijjas* (plants that pierce the ground and grow), and *Svedajas* (those born of sweat).

123-125. He performed severe penance for ten thousand years. He became endowed with Yogic power and more particularly with supernatural powers like *Aṇimā* etc. As he possesses glorious power, he divided himself into human beings, serpents, Rākṣasas, Devas, Asuras and Gandharvas. All of them being endowed with divine bodies and wealth of beauty and splendour, they were lords equal to himself. He was desirous of creating other mental living beings of various kinds.

126. (He created) sages, Devas, Gandharvas, human beings, serpents, Rākṣasa's, Yakṣas, Bhūtas, Piśācas, birds, animals and deer.

127. When these mentally created beings did not flourish and multiply, he was rebuked by the intelligent lord Mahādeva.

128-129. He became then desirous of creating the different subjects by the process of sexual intercourse. He took to himself as wife the daughter of Vīraṇa, the Prajāpati. She was Asiknī who was endowed with great penance and who supported the worlds. The entire Universe consisting of the mobile and the immobile beings was sustained by her.

130-134. In this matter they quoted two verses about Dakṣa, the son of Pracetas. "When Dakṣa married Asiknī the great daughter of Vīraṇa, he created a million mobile wells

along with those identifying with them. Creating them into rivers and mountains, the powerful Dakṣa pursued them. On seeing him the sages said, "He will establish the first and the second sets of creation of subjects of Dakṣa the Prajāpati." Thus after creating a million wells Dakṣa the Prācetasa married Asiknī, the daughter of Vīraṇa. Dakṣa the lord Prācetasa begot of Asiknī, daughter of Vīraṇa, a thousand sons of unmeasured splendour.

135. On seeing those subjects desirous of flourishing the extremely powerful celestial sage, Brahmā's son Nārada, fond of arguments, spoke evil words to them resulting in himself being cursed.

136. The Brāhmaṇa (Nārada) is sometimes called son of Kaśyapa. Due to his mean action the Brāhmaṇa sage was afraid of Dakṣa's curse.

137-140. Parameṣṭhin was born as Kaśyapa's son. Again due to the fear of curse of Dakṣa, he was born as his mental son. His second birth was as the mental son of Kaśyapa. He was formerly born as Nārada (son) of Parameṣṭhin. Formerly Dakṣa's sons famous as Haryaśvas were destroyed for the purpose of censure. They were undoubtedly annihilated. Lord Dakṣa became infuriated and attempted to destroy him (Nārada). Keeping the Brahmarṣis ahead, he (Dakṣa) was requested by Parameṣṭhin (not to kill Nārada).

141. Then Dakṣa stipulated the conditions with Parameṣṭhin: "Let Nārada be born of my daughter as your son".

142. Then Dakṣa gave his beloved daughter to Parameṣṭhin. Nārada was born thereof. The sage became calm and ceased to be afraid.

143. On hearing this those Brāhmaṇas became curious. They asked Sūta, the seer of truth, the foremost among the eloquent ones:

The sages enquired :

144. How were the sons of Prajāpati, the subjects born of Prācetasa destroyed by the noble-souled Nārada ?

145. On hearing these auspicious truthful words born of a desire to know, *he* (*Sūta*) *spoke* these sweet words endowed with all good qualities :

146. Haryaśvas, the sons of Dakṣa, desirous of procreating subjects, the extremely powerful ones came there and Nārada spoke to them:[1]

147. "Alas, all of you are childish. You do not know the entire surface of the world. What is within, what is above and what is below, you do not know. How will you create the subjects?

148. What is the extent of the Earth ? What are the things to be created ? Is it possible to create without knowing these ? Small or great defects are sure to be seen therein".

149. On hearing his words they went away to various quarters. On reaching the aerial zone, they were utterly nonplussed.

150. Wandering (here and there) intermingled with the (blowing) winds, they have not returned till this day. Thus those great sages are wandering after reaching the aerial zone.

151. When his sons were lost, Lord Dakṣa, the Prācetasa, begot again of Vīriṇī a thousand sons.

152-153. These sons (known as) Śabalāśvas (having horses of diverse colours), desirous of multiplying subjects were told the same words by Nārada. On hearing those words all those powerful young men spoke to one another—"The great sage has said well. Undoubtedly the track of our brothers should be followed.

154. After knowing the magnitude of the Earth we shall easily create the subjects". They too went the same way to all the quarters. Even to this day they have not returned like the rivers (not returning) after falling into the oceans.

155. Ever since then, if a younger brother goes in quest of a lost elder brother, he too gets lost. This is not to be done by one who knows.

156-158. When the Śabalāśvas were lost, lord Dakṣa became infuriated and cursed Nārada—"Be ruined, endure the

---

1. According to Mbh *Ādi.* 75.7-8, Nārada instructed Haryaśvas, the first batch of 1000 sons of Dakṣa, in Sāṅkhya Philosophy. Thereby all became recluses and frustrated Dakṣa's plan of populating the world. Here (vv. 147-48) Nārada advised them to know the magnitude of the earth, which they were going to populate.

pain of staying in a womb". When those noble-souled (sons) were lost, Dakṣa begot of Vīriṇī sixty daughters. Those daughters were accepted as wives by Lord Kaśyapa, Dharma, Lord Soma (the Moon god) and other great sages.

159. He who knows entirely this creation of Dakṣa precisely, becomes long-lived, famous, blessed and endowed with progeny.

CHAPTER FIVE

The Race of Dharma

The sages requested :

1. Please narrate in detail the birth and origin of all Devas, Dānavas and Daityas in the Vaivasvata Manvantara.

Sūta said :

2-3. I shall now recount the progeny of Dharma. (Listen and) understand. Dakṣa, the son of Pracetas, gave these ten daughters to Dharma as wives, viz. Arundhatī, Vasu, Yāmī, Laṁbā, Bhānu, Marutvatī, Saṁkalpā, Muhūrtā, Sādhyā and Viśvā.

4. Sādhyā bore to Dharma twelve sons called Sādhyas. The highly fortunate Sādhyas were born according to their wish and were partakers of shares in *Yajñas*. Those who are conversant with Devas (Devatā-lore) know them to be greater than other Devas.

5. It is reported that the Devas (called) Jayas were created out of the mouth of Brahmā through the desire for progeny. All of them are remembered as having Mantras as their bodies in the Manvantaras.

6-7. These names of those Jayas are famous : Darśa, Paurṇamāsa, Bṛhad Rathantara, Citti, Vicitti, Ākūti, Kūti, Vijñātṛ, Vijñāta, Manas and Yajña.

8-9. As a result of the curse of Brahmā, they were born

again in Svāyaṁbhuva Manvantara as Jitas; in Svārociṣa Manvantara they were born as Tuṣitas; and in the Auttama Manvantara they were born as Satyas. In the Tāmasa Manvantara, they were born as Haris and in the Raivata Manvantara they were born as Vaikuṇṭhas. In the Cākṣuṣa Manvantara the Sādhyas were born as Suras as per their will.

10. The blessed sons of Dharma, the twelve deathless ones (named) Sādhyas, had been formerly born in the Cākṣuṣa Manvantara.

11-12. The highly powerful Devas who had passed away in the Svārociṣa Manvantara assumed the name of Tuṣitas in the Cākṣuṣa Manvantara and spoke to one another. When the duration of Svārociṣa Manvantara remained but little, the Tuṣita Devas conferred with one another—"We shall enter the blessed Sādhyas and be born in the Manvantara. That will be conducive to our welfare".

13. After saying thus, all of them were born in the Cākṣuṣa Manvantara as the twelve sons of Dharma, son of Svayaṁbhū (god Brahmā).

14. Nara and Nārāyaṇa too were born there again. Vipaścit who was Indra and Satya who was Hari were in the Svārociṣa Manvantara the Tuṣita gods.

15-16. When Tuṣitas became Sādhyas, these names are mentioned—Manas, Anumantā, Prāṇa, Nara, the powerful Yāna, Citti, Haya, Naya, Haṁsa, Nārāyaṇa, Prabhava and Vibhu. They were born as the twelve Sādhyas.

17-18. In the Svāyaṁbhuva Manvantara at the outset, then in the Svārociṣa Manvantara these were the names of the Tuṣitas. (Listen and) understand them. They were—Prāṇa, Apāna, Udāna, Samāna, Vyāna, Cakṣus, Śrotra, Prāṇa(?), Sparśa, Buddhi and Manas.

19. Formerly only these names of Tuṣitas were remembered: Prāṇa, Apāna, Udāna, Samāna and Vyāna.

20. The Vasus were the sons of Vasu. They are remembered as the younger brothers of Sādhyas. These are glorified as the eight Vasus—Dhara, Dhruva, Soma, Āpa, Anala, Anila, Pratyūṣa and Prabhāsa.

21. Draviṇa and Hutahavyavaha were the sons of Dhara;

Dhruva's son was Bhava who in the name of Kāla became the impeller of the worlds.

22. Soma's sons were lord Varcā and Budha who is known as a planet. These two were born of Rohiṇī and are famous in the three worlds.

23. Dhāra, Ūrmi and Kalila—these three too were the sons of Candramas (Moon god). Āpa's sons were Vaitaṇḍya, Śama and Śānta.

24. Skanda and Sanatkumāra were born of the fourth part of Tejas (fire). Agni's son Kumāra was born in the Śara grove (a kind of reed). Śākha, Viśākha and Naigameya were his younger brothers.

25. Anila's (Wind god) wife was Śivā and her sons were Manojava and Avijñātagati. Anila had these two sons.

26. They know that the son of Pratyūṣa was sage Devala by name. Devala had two sons Kṣamāvān and Manīṣin.

27-28. Bṛhaspati's sister was an excellent woman, celibate and having Yogic Siddhis. Unattached (to the worldly affairs or things) she roamed the entire Universe. She who became the wife of Prabhāsa, the eighth among the Vasus, had a son Viśvakarmā who was the Prajāpati of all *Śilpis* (artisans and sculptors).

29. He is the maker of all arts and crafts. He is the carpenter of the Devas. He makes and causes others to make ornaments.

30. He makes the aerial chariots of all Devas. The human craftsmen depend upon (and emulate) his mechanical arts.

31-32. The ten renowned Viśvedevas were born of Viśvā. They were—Kratu, Dakṣa, Śravas, Satya, Kāla, Kāma, Dhuni, Kuruvān, Prabhavān and Rocamāna. [They] are remembered as the ten sons of Dharma. They were the auspicious sons born of Viśvā.

33. The Marutvants were the sons of Marutvatī. The Bhānu groups were remembered as the sons of Bhānu. The

Muhūrtas (auspicious hours) were born of Muhūrta[1]. Lambā gave birth to Ghoṣa.

34. The learned Saṁkalpa (conception) was born of Saṁkalpā. The Nāgavīthīs consisting of three paths were born of Jāmī (Yāmī).

35. All the objects on the Earth were born of Arundhatī. Thus the learned and eternal creation of Dharma has been narrated.

36. O men of holy rites, I shall mention the names of the *Muhūrta's* and *Tithis* along with their presiding lords.[1] Even as I recount, listen and understand.

37. (Incidentally I shall mention) the divisions of days and nights, the constellations in brief and all the Muhūrtas and stars that appear during days and nights.

38. More than six hundred Kalās are mentioned during days and nights. The manifestation of Ṛtus is based on the special movement of the Sun.

39. Those who know Vedas calculate *Tithis* as the basis of festivals. For the purpose of charitable gifts on behalf of Pitṛs, they utilise the different occasions (even if no apparent peculiarity is seen).

40-42. The divisions (*Muhūrtas* or *Bhāgas*) in the day are Raudra, Sārva, Maitra, Piṇḍya, Vāsava, Āpya, Vaiśvadeva, Brāhma—these *Muhūrtas* cover the period till mid-day. Prājāpatya, Aindra, Indra, Nirṛti, Vāruṇa and Āryamṇa and Bhāga: these Muhūrtas of the day are caused by the Sun. They are to be known in accordance with their magnitude by means of the gnomons.

43-45. Aja, Ahir-Budhnya, Pūṣā, Yamadevatā, Āgneya, Prājāpatya, Brāhma, Saumya, Āditya, Bārhaspatya, Vaiṣṇava, Sāvitra, Tvāṣṭra and Vāyavya—these are the fifteen Muhūrtas

1. This verse and vv. 36-45 present the names of the different Muhūrtas. *Muhūrta* shows 'time fit for performance of an auspicious act'. The names of Muhūrtas in Brāhmaṇas and Smṛtis are different. The names of the 15 Muhūrtas of the day and 15 Muhūrtas of the night agree with those in Bd. P. 2.3.39-46. But of these Mt.P. 253.8-9 mentions only 8 auspicious Muhūrtas for beginning a work. Purāṇas regard Muhūrtas as deities as every Muhūrta has a presiding deity.

occurring in a single night in order. The movements and rising of the moon are to be known from the *Nālikā* or the Pāda of its rise. These are the different periods of time remembered as Muhūrtas. Their presiding deities (are also mentioned).

46-48. Only three positions have been assigned for all the planets. They must be known in order as southern, northern and middle ones.

The place Jāradgava is the middle, the place Airāvata is the northern one and the place of Vaiśvānara has been indicated as the southern one factually.

The constellations Aśvinī[1], Kṛttikā and Yāmyā (i.e. Bharaṇī) are remembered as Nāgavīthī[2]*. The constellation Puṣya, Āśleṣā and Punarvasu are considered as Airāvatī Vīthī. These three Vīthīs are mentioned to be in the northern path.

49-50. The constellations Pūrvāphālgunī, Uttarāphālgunī and Maghā are remembered as Aryamī (Vīthī). The constellations Hasta, Citrā and Svātī are termed Govīthī). The constellations Jyeṣṭhā, Viśākhā and Anurādhā are remembered as Jāradgavī Vīthī. These three Vīthīs are mentioned to be in the middle path.

---

1. The enumeration of Nakṣatras from Aśvinī shows that this portion of the Purāṇa should be assigned to A.D. 300-400 as the Vedic list of Nakṣatras starts from Kṛttikā. *Vide* H.D. V.1 pp. 501-504 for a comparative table of the list of Nakṣatras in Vedic Saṁhitās, their deities, their modern names etc.

2. *Vīthis* are the divisions of planetary sphere comprising of three asterisms, e.g. Aśvinī, Bharaṇi, Kṛttikā constitute Nāgavīthī. Verse 48 states, *vīthīs* are three in number in the northern path but actually only two Nāga and Airāvatī are mentioned. The line regarding Gajavīthī seems to be omitted.

Verses 48-52 give the distribution of different Nakṣatras to different Vīthīs. The sky is divided into three zones—the northern, the middle and the southern designated as Airāvati, Jāradgavī and Vaiśvānarī respectively. Each of these have three (sub) Vīthīs and to each (sub-Vīthi) three constellations are assigned (3+3+3=27 Nakṣatras).

*Here the line found in Bd. P. II.3-48a '*brāhmaṁ saumyaṁ tathārdrā ca gaja-vīthīti saṁjñitā* appears to be omitted. It continues the series of constellations after Kṛttikā and means : 'The constellations Rohiṇi, Mṛgaśiras and Ārdrā are termed Gajavīthī". Unless this line is included the words in 48.b

tisras tu vīthayo hyetā uttare mārga ucyate

would be meaningless as only two *Vīthīs* and *not* three are mentioned in the Vā. P.

51-52. The constellations Mūla, Pūrvāṣāḍhā and Uttarāṣāḍhā are termed Ajavīthī. The constellations Śravaṇa, Dhaniṣṭhā and Śatabhiṣak are the Gārgī Vīthī. The constellations Pūrvā Bhādrapadā, Uttarā Bhādrapadā and Revatī are glorified as Vaiśvānarī (Vīthī). These three Vīthīs are remembered by learned men to be in the southern path.

53. The twenty seven (constellations) daughters whom Dakṣa gave to Soma (Moon god) are glorified in Astronomy as Nakṣatras by name (i.e. Stars). They all bore children illuminated with unmeasured splendour.

54. From the daughters (of Dakṣa) who remained, Kaśyapa married fourteen[1] blessed ones. All of them are mothers of the worlds.

55. They were Aditi, Diti, Danu, Kālā, Ariṣṭā, Surasā, Surabhī, Vinatā, Tāmrā, Krodhavaśā, Irā, Kadru and Muni. O knowers of Dharma, listen and understand their progeny.

56. The twelve Vaikuṇṭha gods who were prominent in the Cāriṣṇava Manvantara that has passed, became Sādhyas, in the Cākṣuṣa Manvantara.

57-59. When the present Vaivasvata Manvantara had arrived, they were propitiated by Aditi. They gathered together and spoke to one another. "We shall enter this blessed Aditi alone, in the present Vaivasvata Manvantara by means of a moiety of our Yagic splendour and become her sons. That will be conducive to our welfare. Those who are born of Aditi will attain the status of Ādityas".

60. After saying this, all of them were born as the twelve Ādityas from Kaśyapa, the son of Marīci, in the Cākṣuṣa Manvantara.

61. Śatakratu (Indra) and Viṣṇu were born again as Nara and Nārāyaṇa in the present Vaivasvata Manvantara.

62. Death and birth are mentioned to happen even to those Devas. Just as the Sun rises and sets in this world, even so

---

1. Though the number of Kaśyapa's wives is stated to be fourteen, v. 55 gives the names of *thirteen* only.

there is manifestation and dissolution to Prajāpati (Brahmā), Viṣṇu and Bhava (Śiva) the noble soul.[1]

63. Since they are attached to the great Vedic tradition as well as worldly objects like sound and the eightfold superhuman powers like *Aṇimā* (minuteness) these Devas were born.

64-65. The attachment to sensual objects is declared as the cause of birth. Due to the curse of Brahmā, the Jayās were born in the Svāyaṁbhuva Manvantara as Jitas. In the Svārociṣa Manvantara, they were born as Tuṣitas and in the Auttama Manvantara they were born as Satyas. Devas were born as Haris in the Tāmasa Manvantara, Vaikuṇṭhas in the Cāriṣṇava Manvantara, Sādhyas in the Cākṣuṣa Manvantara and Ādityas in the present (i.e. Vaivasvata) Manvantara.

66-67. The follwing are remembered as the twelve Ādityas, the sons of Kaśyapa: Dhātā, Aryamā, Mitra, Varuṇa, Aṁśa, Bhaga, Indra, Vivasvān, Pūṣan, the tenth one Parjanya, Tvaṣṭṛ and Viṣṇu the last but not the least (i.e. really the great).

68-70. Purified by penance and blessed by Mahādeva the chaste Surabhī bore to Kaśyapa the eleven Rudras. They were Aṅgāraka, Sarpa, Nirṛti, Sadasaspati, Ajaikapāt, Ahirbudhnya, Ūrdhvaketu, Jvara, Bhuvaneśvara, Mṛtyu and Kapāla who was famous. With her great penance, Surabhī bore these elven Devas, the Rudras, the lords of the three worlds.

71. Then she gave birth to two daughters, viz. Rohiṇī having the lustre of Rudra and Gāndhārī the renowned.

72-74. Four daughters, very famous in the worlds were born of Rohiṇī, viz. Surūpā, Haṁsakīlā, Bhadrā and Kāmadughā. Kāmadughā and Surūpā gave birth to two sons. Haṁsakīlā gave birth to Nṛpa (king) and sages (?) and to Bhadrā were born the famous and blessed Gandharvas, the sons of Vājin (horse). The horses Uccaiśśravas were born then; they roamed about in the firmament with the speed of mind. They were of different colours, white, red, tawny, deer-coloured, green and gray and (also of the lustre of) Rudra. These horses were of Gandharva wombs. They were the vehicles of the Devas.

1. Verses 62-64 (in fact verses 56-65) stated that even gods like Brahmā, Viṣṇu and Śiva have their births and deaths due to their attachment to sensual objects. Non-attachment is the way to liberation. Cf. vv. 79-80 below.

75. Again to Surabhī was born (a bull) that was glorious, and had the good lustre like that of the moon. He had a garland on. He was lustrous with a (big) lump. He was born of the storehouse of nectar. With the permission of Surabhī he was given to Maheśvara as his banner.

76. Thus these sons of Kaśyapa, Rudras and Ādityas have been glorified. Sādhyas, Viśvedevas and Vasus are remembered as the sons of Dharma.

77. Ariṣṭanemi's wives had sixteen childern. The sons of the learned Bahuputra are remembered as Vidyuts. The excellent Ṛks honoured by Brahmarṣis are born of Pratyaṅgirasa.

78. The sons of Kṛśāśva, the celestial sage, are remembered as Devapraharaṇas. These are born again at the end of a thousand Yugas.

79-80. O Brāhmaṇas, all the thirty-three groups of Devas are *Chandajas* (born from Vedic chandas or mantras). These Devas too are said to have annihilation and birth. Just as the sun rises and sets in this world, so also these groups of Devas are born in every Yuga.

The sages enquired :

81-84. (How were) Sādhyas. Vasus, Viśvedevas, Rudras and Ādityas famous : by the nobility of their birth, greatness of the prowess or actions ? We wish to know the difference among Prajāpati, Viṣṇu and the noble-souled Bhava as to who excels whom among them ? Who originates from whom ? Who is established in whom ? Who is the eldest ? Who is the middle one ? who is the youngest among them ? Who is the most important among them ? Who is the greatest among them by means of actions, nobility of birth and prowess ? Please mention all these to us as you know these precisely.

Sūta replied :

85. In this context I shall describe the difference that is remembered among them. Listen to what I am going to say as to difference among Brahmā, Viṣṇu and Rudra.

86. The bodies of the Self-born Lord that are said to be born from time to time are proclaimed as Rājasa, Tāmasa and

Sāttvika.[1]

87. O excellent Brāhmaṇas, it is not possible to state the difference among these bodies, since they are dependent upon the increase of (a particular) Guṇa and the two-fold bondage due to *Anugraha* (blessing or favouring) and *Nigraha* (controlling).

88. O Brāhmaṇas, in accordance with my ability I shall recount *Pravṛtti* (activity), *Nivṛtti* (desistance from activity) and the increase of the Guṇas of the bodies. (Listen to it) and understand.

89. One among them, the Rājasa body creates all the subjects; the Sāttvika one staying in the ocean, blesses; and the Tāmasa one swallows the subjects and overthrows them at the proper time.

90. When god Brahmā manifests himself with the resurgence of Rajas guṇa, the Sāttvika body which is called Puruṣa vanishes.

91. With the excess of Tamas, when it assumes the form of Kāla (the destroyer), the Rājasa form designated as Brahmā disappears.

92. When with the dominance of Sattva, the lord becomes Puruṣa, the body named Kāla ceases to exist.

93. The form, name and activity of the Lord in favouring and controlling those prevailing in the three worlds disappear in due course.

94. When Brahmā manifests himself the difference is mentioned. When the lord is Brahmā, Puruṣa does not exist.

95-96. Just as the crystal jewel assumes various colours due to its purity, and as a result of the contact with other objects, the colours and sizes being in accordance with those objects, so also the self-born assumes shapes and sizes due to the

1. Verses 86-121: A philosophic synthesis of Brahmā, Viṣṇu and Śiva—'Three bodies of the single self-born lord' (v. 99) for the three activities of creation, protection and destruction (v. 104)—The Vedas, Dharma-śāstra, Sāṅkhya and Yoga hold unanimously that Reality or the Supreme Lord is one. Synthesization of the Trinity of gods (Brahmā, Viṣṇu and Śiva) as manifestation of the Supreme Lord (Brahman) is a favourite subject of Purāṇas.

Guṇas. In its singleness and separateness this is the example cited.

97-98. Just as the cloud, though single, remains (or seems) different in colour and form so also the self-born Lord though single one assumes different forms due to Guṇas and appears single, double or triple. The single entity has the three forms of Brahmā (the creator), annihilator and Puruṣa.

99. These three bodies are remembered as those of the single self-born Lord. The three bodies are Brāhma, Pauruṣa and Antakārī.

100. Herein what is (known as) His Rājasa body is verily the creator of subjects (i.e. the Universe). What is called the Tāmasa form is the annihilator of the subjects. The Sāttvika form called Pauruṣa is remembered as the bestower of blessings.

101-102. From the Rājasa part of Brahmā Marīci and Kaśyapa were born. From the Tāmasa form that causes dissolution was born Bhava. The Sāttvika or Pauruṣa form is called Viṣṇu. These three bodies of the self-born are thus remembered in the three worlds.

103. The supreme being, Kāla, assumes states for different functions (such as) creating the subjects in the capacity of Brahmā, supporting them in the status of Viṣṇu and devouring in the guise of Rudra, the subjects who had been blessed by the Vaiṣṇava form.

104. The Self-born one, Kāla, performs three activities through the three (bodies). It creates, supports and annihilates the subjects.

105. Thus the three bodies of the self-born God which are called Prājāpatya (belonging to Prajāpati or god Brahmā), Raudra (belonging to Rudra) and Vaiṣṇava (belonging to Viṣṇu) have been proclaimed.

106. Only one body is remembered in the Vedas, Dharma Śāstras and in the ancient (schools of) Sāṅkhya and Yoga by the intelligent sages who could see (both) analytically and synthetically, were conversant with nobility of pedigree and prowess and could visualize the Reality.

107. In the matter of unity and diversity people are of

different opinions. Advocates of different points of view say "This is great and this not so".

108. Some hold that Brahmā is the cause (of the Universe); some say that it is Prajāpati. Some say that Śiva is the greatest while others call Viṣṇu supreme. Out of ignorance and with the mind vitiated by passion, attachment etc. they think like this.

109. Considering the reality, time, place, cause and effects precisely, these deities are declared as working for diverse purposes.

110. He who censures one among them censures them all. He who praises one, praises all of them. They call him Brahmavādin (propounder of Brahman) who undestands one Puruṣa.

111. The attitude of non-censure must always be adopted towards the deities by one who knows (the Reality). It is impossible to know Īśvara established in all *Aiśvarya* (prosperity, power and glory).

112-113. It is one supreme Soul. He becomes three and deludes the subjects. People seek difference among these three Beings, with diverse points of view, curiously testing their forms and saying, "This is the greatest; this is not (so)", out of deluded mind.

114-115. These deities permeate even Yātudhānas, Piśacas and human beings. The Self-born stays unified and separate deluding the subjects by means of the bodies solely consisting of the Guṇas. He who worships one among them, worships all the three.

116. These three deities remain non-different (factually). So where is separatness or unity ? Where is their number ? Whence do they come and go ? Who is competent to know their unity or multiplicity?

117. Since in view of their being united with the Guṇas they create, sustain and devour the subjects in the three units of time, the supreme Being is said to be one.

118. Brāhmaṇas call that one lord, Rudra, Brahmā, Indra, guardians of the quarters, sages, Danus (Manus in Bd. P.) and Nārāyaṇa, in diverse ways.

119. The Prājāpatya body (i.e. that of Brahmā) and the Vaiṣṇava body (i.e. that of Viṣṇu) recur again and again in all the Manvantaras and Kalpas.

120. In splendour, fame, intellect, learning and strength they are born equal to Him. Know them also.

121. With the Rājasa part of Brahmā, Marīci and Kaśyapa were born. It is said that Rudra of the nature of Kāla was born with the Tāmasa part. With the Sāttvika part of Puruṣa Viṣṇu was then born in the Yajña.

122-124. The bodies born of parts of Brahmā occur in all the three units of time. Becoming Kāla, Rudra destroys the subjects again. When the end of the Kalpa approaches, the sun of seven rays becomes the Saṁvartaka Sun (the sun at the time of world dissolution) and burns the three worlds. With changes in name and form, Viṣṇu blesses i.e. sustains the subjects. In the different situations he is the cause of the origin of different things.

125. With the Pauruśa body of Bahmā which had a predominance of Sattva guṇa, the god was born here in the first Svāyaṁbhuva Manvantara as the mental son of Ākūti.[1]

126. Thereafter, when the Svārociṣa Manvantara arrived, he was born of Tuṣitā along with the previous Tuṣita groups of Devas and passed away along with them.

127. In the Auttama Manvantara also, he was known as Tuṣita. Born along with Vaśavartis (i.e. Devas of that name), Hari was again known as Vaśavartin.

128. He was born of Satyā, as Satya, along with the excellent gods Satyas. When the Tāmasa Manvantara arrived, Hari himself was born of Haryā along with the Haris.

129-132. In the Cāriṣṇava Manvantara, Lord Hari was again born of Vaikuṇṭha along with the Ābhūtarajasas. When the Cākṣuṣa Manvantara arrived that lord Vaikuṇṭha was born as Nārāyaṇa, Dharma and Sādhya along with the Sādhya group of gods. When the Vaivasvata Manvantara arrived, the lord Sādhya Nārāyaṇa, was born of Aditi and Kaśyapa, the son

1. Verses 125-132 state different incarnations of Viṣṇu in different Manvantaras, and his achievement as Trivikrama. But the unity of Brahmā, Vāmana and the great Ātman is emphasized.

of Marīci. Viṣṇu, of big steps, conquered all the worlds by means of three steps and handed them over to Indra and the Devas. Thus these seven bodies of the lord have appeared in the seven past Manvantaras. Thereby the subjects were protected.

133. Since, at the time of his birth, all the worlds were permeated by Vāmana (Lord in the form of a dwarf) he is remembered as Viṣṇu. The root √*viś* means 'to enter, to permeate'.

134. Thus the unity, separatness and the speciality of Brahmā and Vāmana, the great Ātman have been glorified.

135. The deities are born of the part of other deities. They are then born equal to them in brilliance, intellect, learning and strength, thanks to their blessings.

136. Know that whatever being exists endowed with special riches, glory and strength, is born of a part of Viṣṇu's brilliance.

137. Some men say that the lord alone is born partially. Others say that the deities are born of one anothers' part.

138. Thus arguing with one another they say after seeing them. For, there is no difference between *Manas* and *Cetas* Hence they are blessed. They become Kṣetrajñas.

139. Īśvara, though one, becomes manifold, due to the power of his lordship. For the same reason after becoming manifold he becomes one again.

140. From that (Lord) of good intentions and the diversity of brilliance are born the subjects consisting of mobile and the immobile beings in all the Manvantaras. When they are created once at the beginning of Sarga, they continue to live respectably (?)

141. Whenever any Kalpa comes to a close Rudra annihilates the subjects. Īśvaras are born by means of Yogic Māyā deluding others.

142. They are moving about due to their Aiśvarya and the non-Īśvaras (those devoid of Aiśvarya) are deluded. Hence there is nothing proper or improper in things where faults spread.

143. Those who spread scandal about living beings are wicked; those who are favourable to living beings are middling; those who slight and disregard living beings are competent. There are three Vedas for those who are eloquent.

144. (A line is missing from the the Text.) Because it is heard firmly, because it is heard before, bacause it is a rumour and because it is worldly, for these four reasons one does not get at the precise truth.

145. Formerly they meant and were used in another sense, and even after the lapse of time one does not accept the new sense out of spite.

146. He who is a solid among solids, he who becomes the attribute therein, he who is the creator of activities and minds and he who is great due to pedigree, are glorified by those who know the tradition, for these four reasons.

147. The incompetent and the infuriated know the deities only partially. They state these two verses in this connection in regard to Yogeśvara (Lord of Yogas).

148-149. The Yogeśvara makes replicas of himself and others in thousands by means of Yogic power. He moves about among them. He attains the (pleasures of) sensuous objects performing severe penance. Like the Sun withdrawing his brilliance and attributes (of heat etc.) he annihilates them all again.

CHAPTER SIX

Curse to Jaya Gods : Nṛsiṁha Incarnation
Race of Hiraṇyakaśipu : Birth of Marut-Gods

1. On hearing his words, the sages and ascetics of the Naimiṣa forest asked the most excellent one (i.e. Sūta) in due course.

The sages said:

2. How were the Devas, the extremely powerful Ādityas, the chief of whom were Indra and Viṣṇu, born in the seven

Manvantaras? O Romaharṣaṇa, please narrate all this in details to us.

3. On being urged and requested by the expounders of the Brahman (Vedas) the modest Sūta, the most excellent among eloquent ones spoke in accordance with the query of the great sages.

Sūta narrated :

4. All the Devas created from the mouth of Brahmā with a desire for progeny in the Manvantaras had their bodies constituted of Mantras.

5-8. The twelve Manus, the twelve sons of Brahmā were: Darśa, Paurṇamāsa, Bṛhad, Rathantara, Ākūta the first, Ākūti, Vitti, Suvitti, Ākūti (or Akūta the second?), Kūti, Adhīṣṭa, Adhīti, Vijñāti and Vijñata. These are the cumulative (names) of years. Seeing them Brahmā said, 'O Jayas, procreate the Devas. Perform the *Agnihotra* Yāga after marriage*'. After saying this, Brahmā vanished there itself.

9-12. But they did not act in accordance with the instruction of Parameṣṭhin (Brahmā). They found out defects even in those who abide by the mental, verbal and physical activities of a truthful nature; they saw the fruits of actions excessively reduced; they hated progeny and procreation. They were alert but free from the sense of my-ness (possession); they aspired for permanence; they were detached (from worldly objects); they saw defects (in worldly activities); they abandoned wealth, love and virtue; they adhered to knowledge pertaining to the supreme being and remained with their splendour withdrawn.

13. On realising the trend of their thought, Brahmā became angry. Brahmā spoke to those gods in despair.

14. "You have been created by me for the sake of further procreation and not otherwise. I have already told you to procreate and be victorious.

15-16. You have disregarded my words andh ave adhered to detachment. You hate your own birth. Hence you do not

*The text : *dārāgnihotrasaṁyage mithyāmārabhata* is obscure Bd. P. reads : *dārāgnihotrasaṁbandhaṁ vitatya yajateti ca* is better and hence adopted here.

appreciate (the necessity of) progeny. You have abandoned all rites in your ambition to achieve deathlessness (Immortality). Hence, having dishonoured (me) you will be born seven times."

17. On being urged by Brahmā thus, those Devas, the Jayas, began to propitiate him. "O great lord, forgive us for what has been done through ignorance".

18. When they bowed to him and implored, Brahmā said to them again: "Who deserves (i.e. is capable) to be independent in this world without being permitted by me ?

19. Everything is pervaded by me. As against my will how will living beirgs attain anything auspicious or inauspicious.

20. Whatever exists in the world or is endowed with *Sattva* (existence) or *Asattva* (non-existence) has been pervaded by me with intellect and soul. Who in the world dare to deceive me ?

21. Whatever has been conjectured, decided or considered by the living beings is entirely known to me.

22. The entire Universe consisting of the mobile and the immobile beings (created) has been established by me, thanks to the principle of hope and expectation. How can I approve of cutting it off ?

23. Since I have transformed myself for the sake of creation and not for any other purpose, who will be free from my will without beginning the performance of holy rites?"

24. After saying this to the group of Jaya Devas who accepted his punishment and who were dejected, Prajāpati spoke again to them (in consolation).

25. "Since, after open declaration to me, renunciation had been adopted by you formerly and since excessive effort, though fruitless, had been put in by you, O Devas, your future births will result in ultimate happiness.

26-27. O excellent Devas, your birth will be in accordance with your own will. In the six Manvantaras beginning with Svāyaṁbhuva and ending with Vaivasvata, O Suras, all of you will be moving ahead, deluded (by Avidyā)". After knowing

them (i.e. their reaction) this ancient verse was recited by Brahmā.

28. "Those who perform holy actions such as the study of the three Vedas, maintenance of celibacy, procreation of progeny, performance of Śrāddhas, and Yajñas and practice of charity become free from sin (Rajas) and are always praised by others".

29. After reciting thus the verse he spoke to the Devas, Jayas again—"When the Vaivasvata Manvantara is over, you will come here near me.

30. Then you will attain eternal Siddhi along with me". After speaking thus to them, Brahmā vanished there itself.

31. When the lord had disappeared those Devas who were endowed with Yogic power and who possessed *Aṇimā* and other supernatural powers, continued practising Yoga fearlessly.

32. Thereafter, their bodies turned into twelve lakes. They came to be known by the name Jaya and they resembled the oceans.

33. Then, in that Svāyaṁbhuva Manvantara, those Suras (Gods) were born as the sons Ruci and Ajitā. They were twelve in number and were known as Ajitas.[1]

34. These mental sons known as the twelve Ajitas were Vidhi, Munaya (?), Kṣema, Nanda, Avyaya, Prāṇa, Apāna, Sudhāmā, Kratu, Śakti and Vyavasthita.

35. In Yajñas they are proclaimed as the partakers of the fruits of Yajñas along with the Suras in the Svāyaṁbhuva Manvantra. Again in the Svārociṣa Manvantara, they were born as the sons of Svārociṣa and Tuṣitā.

36-37. They were known by the names Tuṣitas[2] and Prāṇas. They were the Suras and partakers of Yajñas. Again theses Tuṣitas were born as the auspicious sons of Uttama and Satyā in the Uttama Manvantara. Then those Devas were remembered as Satyas in the Uttama Manvantara.

38-39. In the Dvāpara Yuga of the third Manvantara, they became the partakers of Yajñas. When the Tāmasa

1. Only 11 are enumerated.

2. The groups of gods are named after their mothers—a relic of matriarchal society ?

Manvantara arrived, all those twelve Devas, the Satyas, were born as the sons of Tamas and Haryā?[1] They were known by the name Haris and were partakers of Yajña.

40. When the Cāriṣṇava Manvantara arrived those Devas, the Haris, were born as the sons of Vaikuṇṭhā and Cariṣṇu. In the fifth Manvantara those Devas were known by the name Vaikuṇṭha[2].

41. In the Cākṣuṣa Manvantara, those Devas, the Vaikuṇṭhas were born as the twelve sons of Dharma and Sādhyā.

42-45. When the Cākṣuṣa Manvantara elapsed and the Vaivasvata Manvantara arrived at the beginning of the first Tretā Yuga (of that Manvantara), these Sādhyas were born as the twelve Ādityas, by means of their parts as the sons of Aditi and Kaśyapa, the son of Marīci. Thus those who were originally Jayas were born as Sādhyas in the Svāyaṁbhuva Manvantara as a result of the curse of (Brahmā). Again they were born in the Cākṣuṣa Manvantara and were born as Ādityas in the present Vaivasvata (Manvantara).

46. He who faithfully reads this story of the seven births of the Devas at the bidding of the lord, does not meet with any obstacle or sin.

47. Thus the seven births of Jayas with seven characteristics have been narrated by me.[2] What else do you wish to hear ?

The sages requested :

48. Narrate to us the origin and death in detail, of the Daityas, Dānavas, Gandharvas, Serpents, Rākṣasas, all the Bhūtas (goblins), Piśācas (ghosts), animals, birds and creepers.

49. Thus requested, *Sūta told these excellent sages*: "We have heard that Diti bore two sons to Kaśyapa.

50-51. Those two sons are remembered as the eldest of all the sons of Kaśyapa. The word *Kaśipu* means 'a mat'.

1. The same set of gods, viz. Jayas is born in the beginning of each Manvantara with different names such as 'Tuṣita' in Svārociṣa, 'Satya' in Uttama, Āditya in Vaivasvata. They derived their names from their mothers.

2. It is noteworthy that these gods also are named after their mother.

The seat of the chief *Ṛtvik* in a *Yajña* is a golden mat. Kaśyapa performed an Aśvamedha (horse-sacrifice). In the course of that sacrifice, during the performance of Atiratra sacrifice, on the day of *Sutya* (the day meant for extraction of Soma juice) the son of Kaśyapa came out of the womb of Diti and seated himself on the big seat of the *Ṛtvik* in the midst of the assembly (of the priests). As a result of this action, he is remembered as Hiraṇyakaśipu."[1]

The sages said:

52. O holy lord, mention in detail to us the name, origin and prowess of the noble-souled Daitya Hiraṇyakaśipu.

Sūta said:

53. Formerly the holy Aśvamedha of Kaśyapa was performed at Puṣkara. It was graced by (the presence of) deities and Gandharvas.

54. For the purpose of discourses etc. in accordance with the excellent injunctions (in sacred scriptures) there were five golden seats kept there.

55. Three of them were sanctified by means of Kuśa grass. The (fourth had a) bundle of Kuśa grass (over it) and (the fifth) a plank (over it). The four seats were intended for the chief Ṛtviks.

56. The fifth was an auspicious, divine, golden one intended for the *Hotṛ*. It was covered with divine cloth.

57. Diti who had been pregnant for ten thousand years was occupying the seat of *Patnī* (i.e. the wife of the sacificer, viz. Kaśyapa).

58-59. The boy in the womb came out of the belly of his mother and sat on the golden seat intended for the *Hotṛ*. Seated there he narrated the verses of the four Vedas and the fifth one, the Ākhyānas (Purāṇas) like Kāśyapa. On seeing him, the sages gave him that name.

60. Thanks to that act, he became renowned as Hiraṇyakaśipu. Hiraṇyākṣa was his younger brother. Siṁhikā was the

1. The author's fondness for popular etymologies (similar to that of Brāhmaṇa-writers) leads him to create such stories as in vv. 53-59.

younger sister. She was the lady who became the mother of Rāhu after marrying Vipracitti.

61. Hiraṇyakaśipu, the Daitya (son of Diti), performed severe penances for a hundred thousand years without taking any food and standing topsy-turvy.

62. Brahmā who was delighted (at his penance) gratified him with a boon (whereby he attained deathlessness from all living beings). O leading Brāhmaṇas, conquering Devas through his Yogic power he attained the lordship of all (*Lit.* the state of being all Devas).

63. (He requested further:) "May Dānavas and Asuras be equal to Devas and attain the greatness of Marut gods. May this boon be granted."

64. Thus requested Brahmā, granted him what he wished and after granting him the divine boons, he vanished there itself. Hiraṇyakaśipu, the son of Diti, has been glorified by the ancient people by means of verses.

65. "The Devas along with great sages made obeisance to that quarter which is resorted to by King Hiraṇyakaśipu."

66. O Brāhmaṇas, Hiraṇyakaśipu, the lord of Daityas, had such prowess. In ancient times, Viṣṇu, in the form of Man-Lion, became death unto him (i.e. killed him). He was torn by him by means of his claws. Hence the nails are remembered pure[1].

67-68. Hiraṇyākṣa had five valorous sons of great strength. Utkura, Śakuni, Kālanābha, the valorous Mahānābha and Bhūtasantāpana—these sons of Hiraṇyākṣa were invincible even to Devas.

69. Their sons and grandsons composed the group (of Daityas) named Bāḍeya. They were a hundred thousand in number and were killed in (the battle?) Tārakāmaya[2].

70. Hiraṇyakaśipu had four sons of great strength. Prahlāda was the eldest and the others were Anuhlāda, Saṁhrāda and Hrada. Understand the sons of Hrada.

---

1. Another reading—His nails were neither wet nor dry—Bd.P.

2. The battle fought after the abduction of Bṛhaspati's wife Tārā by Candra. In that battle Daityas sided with Canara.

71. Hrāda and Nisunda were the sons of Hrada. The valorous Sunda and Upasunda were the sons of Nisunda.

72. Brahmaghna, Mahāvīrya and Mūka became the successors of Hrada. Mārīca, son of Sunda, was born of Tāḍakā.

73. Tāḍakā was killed by the powerful Rāghava (Rāma). Mūka was killed by Savyasācī (i.e. Arjuna) in Kirāta (i.e. when Śiva assumed the form of a hunter to test Arjuna).

74. Their descendants purified themselves by means of great penance. They were the residents of Maṇivarta and reached the number of thirty million. Invinicible to Devas they were killed by Savyasācī (Arjuna).

75. Anuhlāda's sons were Vāyu and Śinīvālī. Their descendants running to a hundred thousand constituted the group of demons remembered as Hālāhala.

76. Vairocana, the son of Prahlāda, had five sons. Gaveṣṭhī, Kālanemi, Jaṁbha, Bāṣkala and Śaṁbhu (who was the youngest of them all) are remembered as the sons of Prāhlādi (i.e. Vairocana).

77-78. I shall mention their invincible sons in accordance with their importance. Śumbha, Niśumbha and Viṣvaksena—these were the sons of the powerful Gaveṣṭhin. Jaṁbha's sons were Śatadundubhi, Dakṣa and Khaṇḍa. Those three were Jaṁbha's sons.

79. Virodha, Manu, Vṛkṣāyu and Kuśalīmukha—these were the sons of Bāṣkala. Listen to the (enumeration of the) sons of Kālanemi.

80. Brahmajit, Kṣatrajit, Devāntaka and Narāntaka—these were the sons of Kālanemi. Listen to the progeny of Śaṁbhu.

81. Dhanuka, Asiloman, Nābala, Gomukha, Gavākṣa and Gomān—these are said to be the sons of Śaṁbhu.

82. Virocana's son Bali alone was very valorous. A hundred sons were born to Bali. All of them were kings.

83-84. Among them, four were very imporant. They were valorous and extremely powerful. The thousand-handed eldest son Bāṇa was wealthy and honoured (by all). The others were Kumbhanābha, Gardabhākṣa, Kuśi and others. Śakuni and Pūtanā were the two daughters of Bali. Bali's sons and grandsons numbered hundreds and thousands.

85. They constituted a group of demons famous by the name *Baligaṇa*. They were valorous and manly. Bāṇa whose mind was like that of Indra, had his capital city Lauhitya (Śoṇitapura in Assam).

86. Diti who lost her sons gratified Kaśyapa. Well-propitiated by her, the delighted Kaśyapa asked her to choose a boon freely. She chose the boon.[1]

87. The holy lord granted her the boon requested for. The son of Marīci, of fierce splendour, asked her, "What do you wish?"

88-89. She said to her gratified husband, Kaśyapa, the son of Marīci, with palms joined in reverence—"O holy lord, my sons have been killed by your sons born of Aditi. I wish for a son who will be endowed with penance of long duration and who will kill Śakra. I shall perform penance. It behoves you to impregnate me."

90. On hearing her words, Kaśyapa, the highly brilliant son of Marīci, replied to Diti who was extremely sad:

91. "May it be so. Welfare unto you. Be pure, O ascetic lady. You will bear a good son who will kill Śakra in battle.

92. If you (continue to) remain pure for full hundred years you will bear a son who will be the foremost in the three worlds".

93. After saying this, the holy lord of great brilliance had sexual intercourse with her. After embracing her, the holy sage went on his tour of the three worlds.

94. After the departure of her husband, that extremely delighted noble lady Diti went to the forest Kuśala and performed a very terrible penance.

95. While she was performing the penance, the thousand-eyed Indra, the most excellent among Suras, served her by means of his rich attributes.

---

1. Verses 86-134 describe the birth of Marut-gods from Diti and her final reconciliation with Indra. Indra's entry into Diti's womb and splitting of his prospective killer into 49 parts and the derivation of the name 'Marut' from Indra's threat '*mā rodīḥ*' (Don't cry) is a Purāṇic elaboration of a Vedic concept where the seven Maruts are said to be seven Prāṇas, Indra being the main Prāṇa controlling the Maruts (Śat. Br. 9.3.1.7). For similar elaboration cf. VP. I.21.32-41, Mt. P. Ch. 7. Bd. P. 2.3.5.45-81 is practically identical with our text.

96. He brought and gave her sacrificial fire and twigs, wood and Kuśa grass, fruits and roots. The thousand-eyed lord gave her whatever else she required.

97. By massaging her limbs and by assuaging her weariness, Śakra served her on all occasions. Thus propitiated, Diti spoke to Śakra :

98. "O excellent one among Suras, I am delighted with you; O dear son, only ten more years remain; welfare unto you; you will then see your brother.

99. On getting such a son I will fulfil my desire for conquest. With him, O son, I will conquer the three worlds."

100. After saying this to Śakra, and when the sun reached midday, the lady was over-powered by slumber. She crouched down keeping her head on her kness.

101. Seeing her impure inasmuch as her hair spread over her feet, Śakra laughed and rejoiced on getting that opportune moment.

102. Then Purandara (Indra) entered her open body. After entering and seeing the immense (unmeasurable) foetus of great power, Indra of great fame pierced the important enemy (?) with his thunderbolt.

103. On being split by the thunderbolt of hundred knots, the foetus cried in a high and terrible pitch, quaking again and again. Śakra then spoke to the foetus—"Do not cry (*Mā Rodiḥ*)[1]."

104. With his thunderbolt, Indra cut off the foetus into seven pieces and split each of the pieces into seven pieces again. Then Diti woke up.

105. "It should not be killed. It should not be killed", so shouted Diti. With due deference to the words of his mother, Indra jumped out of her belly. Armed with his thunderbolt, Śakra spoke to Diti with palms joined in reverence :

106. "O noble lady, you went to sleep in a defiled state since the hair were spread over your feet. On seizing that opportunity I have split the foetus that would have been the slayer of Śakra in battle. It behoves you to firgive me."

1. Cf. VP. I.21-39, Mt. P. 8.62 for similar etymology of 'Marut'.

107. When that foetus became fruitless, Diti became extremely distressed. Then she spoke to the thousand-eyed Indra these consoling words:

108. "O lord of Devas, O powerful son of a sage, it is not your fault, if the foetus had been rendered incapable as a result of my mistake.

109. There is no sin in killing an enemy. Hence, O (Indra) I do not curse you. I wish to do what is pleasing to you. Do a favour unto my foetus.

110. May my sons have seven abodes in heaven. Let my seven sons roam about these wind-regions (*Vātaskandhas*)[1] (Pathways of wind). May they be renowned as the seven Maruts, the seven sets of seven.

111. May the first *Skandha* (region) be on the Earth, the second in the Sun, the third in the Moon, and the fourth should be known in the groups of luminaries.

112. May the fifth *Skandha* be among the planets, the sixth in the sphere of the Seven Sages and the seventh in Dhruva. That is the last region of the wind.

113. May my sons roam about among them on different occasions. May my sons walk through these Vātaskandhas.

114. The first *Skandha* extends from the Earth upto the clouds and it is called *Āvaha*. May the first set of my sons move therin.

115. The second *Vātaskandha* extends from the clouds upto the Sun. It is called *Pravaha*. Let the second set (of my sons) walk in the second *Vātaskandha*.

116. Above the solar region and extending upto the Moon is the *Vātaskandha* remembered as *Udvaha*. May the third set (of my sons) walk through the *Vātaskandha*.

117. Above the lunar region and extending upto the stars is the fourth *Vātaskandha* which is called *Swaha*. O lord, may the fourth set of my sons walk therein.

---

1. This psuedo-scientific classification of higher space into seven strata (vide vv. 114-120) and the assignment of a Marut-god per stratum is found in other Purāṇas also.

118. Above the stellar region and extending up to the planets is the fifth *Skandha* which is called *Vivaha.* O dear boy, may the fifth set (of my sons) walk through the fifth *Skandha.*

119. Above the planets and extending up to the Seven Sages (Great Bear) is the sixth *Skandha* which is called *Parāhata* (*Anuvāha* in Bd. P.). May my sons who are in the sixth set walk therein.

120. Above the Seven Sages and extending up to Dhruva (Pole Star) is the seventh *Vātaskandha* which is called *Parivaha*- May my sons stay therein.

121. May my sons move about all these on different occasions. There let these be known by the name Maruts."

122. Then the mother and the son named them Maruts through the actions performed by them. They separately named the seven Maruts of each set.

123-125.The first set is said to consist of these: Sattvajyotis, Āditya, Satyajyotis, Tiryagjyotis, Sajyotis, Jyotiṣmān and another one. Listen and understand the second set. The second set consists of Ṛtajit, Satyajit, Suṣeṇa, Senajit, Satyamitra, Abhimitra and Harimitra. Listen and understand the third set.

126-128. The following constitute the other sets : Kṛta, Satya, Dhruva, Dhartā, Vidhartā, Vidhāraya, Dhvānta, Dhuni, Ugra, Bhīma, Abhiyu, Sākṣipa. This is known as Āhvayagaṇa*, Īdṛk, Anyādṛk, Yādṛk, Pratikṛt, Samiti, Saṁrambha, Īdṛk, Puruṣa, Anyādṛkṣa, Cetasa, Samita, Asamitadṛkṣa, Pratidṛkṣa and others.

129. These forty-nine are the different Maruts with their own separate names. They have been enumerated by Diti and Indra.

---

*There are some omissions and scribal confusion in the names and the sets of Marudgaṇas as given here. Bd. P. II. 3.5.96 and 97 state : The fifth set (of Marud-gaṇas) is as follows : (1) Īdṛk, (2) Anyādṛk, (3) Sarit, (4) Druma, (5) Vṛkṣaka, (6) Mita and (7) Samita.

The sixth class is as follows : (1) Īdṛk, (2) Puruṣa, (3) Nānyadṛk, (4) Samaccetana, (5) Sammita, (6) Samavṛtti, (7) Pratihartṛ.

Bd. P. does not give the names of the fourth and seventh groups of the Marudgaṇas.

A critical edition is essential for supplying the lacunae.

130. On hearing their names, Diti said to Indra, "O son, may my sons roam about in the *Vātaskandha*. May my sons walk in the company of Devas. Welfare unto you."

131. On hearing her words, the thousand-eyed Purandara joined his palms in reverence and said: "Mother, be it so.

132. Undoubtedly all this will happen as mentioned by you. These sons of noble souls (shall) become Devas and will be honoured by Devas. Similarly, your sons will become partakers of the fruits of Yajñas along with Devas."

133. Hence all those Maruts should be known as Devas (shining ones), younger brothers of Indra and *Amaras* (deathless ones). All of them, the sons of Diti were ascetics and gods.

134. After knowing this decisively, the mother and the son of ascetic nature went to heaven delightedly. Śakra too went to heaven.

135. He who reads or listens to the auspicious origin of Maruts shall become long-lived. He never meets with the fear of drought.

CHAPTER SEVEN

The Race of Kaśyapa : Danu's Progeny

Sūta said :

1. Henceforth, I shall recount the sons of Danu. Listen to and understand them. The sons of Danu, the great Asuras, have been famous in their race.

2. There were hundred demons of very fierce valour of whom Vipracitti was the chief. All of them had performed good penances and had been endowed with boons.

3. They were truthful, valorous, ruthless and expert in Māyā (illusive power). These Dānavas were very powerful, unfavourable to Brāhmaṇas and disinclined to perform Yajñas. I shall enumerate them all in accordance with their importance. (Listen to) and understand.

4-13. The chief of the sons of Danu were : Dvimūrdhā, Śaṅkuvarṇa, Śaṅku, Nirāmaya, Śaṅkukarṇa, Mahāviśva, Gaveṣṭhi, Dundubhi, Ajāmukha, prosperous Śila, Vāmanasa, Marīci, Rakṣaka, Mahāgārgya, Aṅgirāvṛta, Vikṣobhya, Suketu, Suvīrya, Suhṛda, Indrajit, Viśvajit, Suravimardana, Ekacakra, Subāhu, the powerful Tāraka, Vaiśvānara, Puloman, Pravīṇa, Mahāśiras, Svarbhānu, Vṛṣaparvan, the great Asura Muṇḍaka, Dhṛtarāṣṭra, Sūrya, Candra, Indra, Tāpina, Sūkṣma, Nicandra, Ūrṇanābha, Mahāgiri. Asiloman, Sukeśa, Sada, Balaka, Adaśa, Gaganamūrdhan, Kuṁbhanābha, Mahodara, Pramodāha, Kupatha, the valorous Hayagrīva, the Asura Virūpākṣa, the great Asura Supatha, Aja, Hiraṇmaya, Śatamāyu, Śaṁbara, Śarabha and Śalabha. Sūrya (the Sun) and Candramas (the Moon) were the lords of Asuras formerly but now they are the lords of Suras. Thus the important scions of the family of Danu have been enumerated. Their sons and grandsons are unending and innumerable.

14. Those who are the sons (descendants) of Diti and Danu are (commonly known) as Asuras. Those mentioned just now are the sons and descendants of Danu. Svarbhānu is remembered as the son of Diti (i.e. a Daitya) and Anubhānu was the son of Danu.

15-16. Ekākṣa, Ṛṣabha, Ariṣṭa, Prabandha, Naraka, Indrabādhana, Keśī, Meru, Śamba, Dhenuka, Gaveṣṭhi, Gavākṣa and powerful Tālaketu—these were the sons of Danu but followed human rites and activities. So I remember.

17-20. The following sons of Vipracitti born of Siṁhikā became terrible, valorous in the clashes between Daityas and Dānavas. They are well known as Saiṁhikeyas. They are fourteen great Asuras, viz. Śatagāla, Balavān, Nyāsa, Śāmba, Anuloma, Śuci, Vātāpi, Sitāṁśuka, Hara, Kalpa, Kālanābha, Bhauma and Naraka and the eldest of all of them Rāhu who oppresses the Moon and the Sun. Thus these are the sons of Siṁhikā invincible even to Devas.

21. All of them were of terrible lineage, ruthless and haters of Brāhmaṇas. There are ten thousand other Asuras constituting the Saiṁhikeya group.

22. They were killed by the powerful son of Jamadagni of

the Bhṛgu Gotra. Prabhā was the daughter of Svarbhānu and Śacī was the daughter of Puloman.

23. Upadānavī was the daughter of Maya, Śarmiṣṭhā was the daughter of Vṛṣaparvan. Pulomā and Kālikā were the daughters of Vaiśvānara.

24. Nahuṣa was the son of Prabhā and Jayanta was the son of Śacī. Śarmiṣṭhā gave birth to Pūru and Upadānavī to Duṣyanta.

25-26. Pulomā and Kālikā, the two who were the daughters of Vaiśvānara became the wives of Mārīca. Sixty thousand leading Dānavas were the sons born of them. There were fourteen thousand other Asuras residents of Hiraṇyapura.

27. The Paulomas and Kālakeyas were Dānavas of great strength. They could not be killed by Devas, but were slain by Savyasācī (Arjuna).

28-29. All the sons born of Maya were heroic and valorous, viz. Māyāvī, Dundubhi, Vṛṣa, Mahiṣa, Bālika and Vajrakarṇa. A daughter Mandodarī was also born to him. Thus the creation of Daityas and Dānavas has been enumerated.

30. Five sons of great strength are remembered as born of Danāyuṣā, viz. Arūru, Bali, Jaṁbha, Virakṣa and Viṣa.

31. Arūru's son was a cruel great Asura named Dhundhu. It is reported that he was killed by Kuvalāśva at the instance of Uttaṅka.

32. The two sons of Bali were very valorous and unequalled in splendour. They were Kuṁbhila and Cakravarmā. (The latter) was Karṇa in his previous* birth.

33. Virakṣa had two sons Kālaka and Varaviṣa. Varaviṣa had four sons of cruel activities, viz. Śrāddhahā, Yajñahā, Brahmahā and Paśuhā.

34. The sons of Danāyuṣā have been enumerated. Now understand the sons of Vṛtra who were born of the terrible breath of Vṛtra while engaged in battle with Indra.

35. They were Rākṣasas of great strength and were the rulers mentally famous. They were a hundred thousand in number and are remembered as the followers of Mahendra.

---

*rather "in the future birth".

36. All were knowers of the Veda, gentle, righteous, subtle-formed. All were immanent in the subjects. All were very righteous.

37. Thus the creation of Daityas and Dānavas has been narrated. Pravāhī bore sons in the Yajña. They were excellent in singnig.

38-39. Sattvan, Sattvātmaka, Kalāpa, Vīryavān, Kṛtavīrya, Brahmacārin, the seventh one Supāṇḍu, Pana, Taraṇya and the tenth one Sucandra: These ten are to be known as Devas and Gandharvas. They have been enumerated.

CHAPTER EIGHT

Dynasties Descended From Kaśyapa[1]

Sūta said :

1-3. The holy Gandharvas and Apsaras-s are glorified as the children of Muni, viz. Citrasena, Ugrasena, Ūrṇāyu, Anagha, Dhṛtarāṣṭra, Puloman, Sūryavarcas, Yugapat, Tṛṇapat, Kāli, Diti, Citraratha, the thirteenth Bhramiśiras, the fourteenth Parjanya, the fifteenth Kali and the sixteenth Nārada—these divine Gandharvas are glorified as descendants of Muni.

4-8. There are their thirtyfour[2] younger sisters, the auspicious Apsaras-s, viz. Antarā, Dāravatyā, Priyamukhyā, Surottamā, Miśrakeśī Śacī, Parṇinī, Alaṁbuṣā, Mārīcā, Mārīcī, Putrikā, Vidyud, Varṇā, Tilottamā, Adrikā, Lakṣaṇā, Devī, Raṁbhā, Manoramā, Suvarā, Subāhu, Pūrṇitā, Supratiṣṭhitā, Puṇḍarīkā, Sugandhā, Sudantā, Surasā, Hemasārā, Sutī, Suvṛttā, Kamalā, Subhujā, Haṁsapādā—these are the worldly[3] Apsaras-s.

1. This chapter enumerates the prominent members of clans of Gandharvas, Apsaras-s, birds, serpents, Yakṣas, Rākṣasas, Piśācas, Yātudhānas and other species possessing supernatural powers.

2. Even after splitting Vidyudvarṇā into Vidyut and Varṇā the number of these Apsaras-s is 32 and not 34 stated here. Bd. P. 2.3.7-5 states twentyfour as the number of Apsaras-s.

3. It is not understood why the sons of Muni are called '*Deva-Gandharvas*' (Divine Gandharvas) while their sisters, the Apsaras-s are called

These Gandharvas and Apsaras-s are glorified as descendants of Muni.

9. The daughters of Gandharvas had been (will be) narrated by me. Now listen to my enumeration of their names.

10. Suyaśā was the first among them. Gāndharvī comes next. Then are Vidyāvatī, Cārumukhī and Sumukhī of excellent face.

11. The sons of Suyaśā were very powerful and valorous. Yakṣas were the sons of Pracetas. Listen to their names.

12. Kaṁbala, Harikeśa, Kapila, Kāñcana and Meghamālī are said to constitute the group of Yakṣas.

13. Suyaśā's four daughters are remembered as Apsaras-s. Listen to and understand their names, as I recount them.

14. Loheyī was the eldest; Bharatā was the next. Then were Kṛśāṅgī and Viśālā who were unequalled in beauty.

15. From them other four groups of Yakṣas were procreated by the valorous and noble-souled Viśāla.

16. Loheya, Bharateya, the renowned Kṛśāṅgeya and Viśāleya were the groups of Yakṣas famous in the Purāṇa.

17. O excellent ones among the knowers of Loka and Aloka, (the worlds) have been occupied by these terrible Asuras of great strength and prowess.

18-19. The Gandharvas called Vāleyas were procreated by the noble-souled Vikrānta. They were the leaders of great Gandharvas. They possessed great prowess, and were richly endowed with valour and liberal-mindedness. I shall mention duly and in proper order the names of those highly mighty and valorous Gandharvas.

20. They were : Citrāṅgada, Citravarmā of great prowess, the highly fortunate Citraketu and the valorous Somadatta. There were three daughters also. Their names are being mentioned.

21. The first was Agnikā. Kaṁbalā was the next. Then was Vasumatī. All these had unequalled splendour.

'*Laukikyaḥ*' 'mundane, belonging to this world'. If the reading *ca laukikyaḥ* be emended as *cālaukikyaḥ*, 'not of this world, of the heavenly world' the equality between brothers (Gandharvas) and sisters (Apsaras-s) will be established.

22-23. Three other important groups of the chief Gandharvas were begotten of them by Kumāra. They were valorous and invincible in war. They were Āgneyas, Kāṁbaleyas and sons of Vasumatī. This world consisting of the mobile and the immobile is pervaded by these various groups.

24. They possessed learning and were procreated by the noble-souled Vikrānta. They were blessed and were richly endowed with beauty, learning and wealth.

25. Listen to the enumeration of the names of those noble-souled Gandharvas of distinctive prowess.

26. They were : Hiraṇyaroman, Kapila, Suloman, Māgadha, Candraketu, Gāṅga and the highly powerful Goda.

27. These were the first among the groups who were ascetics, valorous and pure on account of deep learning.

There were two daughters also of beautiful eyes.

28-29. They were Śivā and Sumanas. The groups Śaiveya, the valorous and Saumanasa as well were begotten of them by the noble-souled Viśravas. They practised learning. This world is pervaded by these three groups of Vidyādharas.

30. From these, many hundreds of groups of firmament-walkers were born in the world due to the activities of the Vidyādharas.

31. Horse-faced Kinnaras were procreated by the same noble-souled Vikrānta. They were called Aśvamukhas and Kinnaras. (Listen to and) understand the Kinnaras.

32-33. Samudra, Sena, Kālinda, Mahānetra, Mahābala, Suvarṇaghoṣa, Sugrīva, the valorous Mahāghoṣa and others are the leading ones of the noble-souled Kinnaras with the faces of horses. They are being glorified as extensive (in number) by scholars.

34. O Śāṁśapāyana, human-faced Kinnaras too were similarly procreated by the noble-souled Vikrānta.

35-36. Hariṣeṇa, Suṣeṇa, the valorous Vāriṣeṇa, Rudradatta, Indradatta, Candradruma, Mahādruma, Bindu and Bindusāra were the Kinnaras of the lunar race. Thus these excellent and auspicious Kinnaras have become famous in the world.

37. O excellent Brāhmaṇas, in this world there are hundreds of clans of these noble-souled Kinnaras, very efficient in dance and music.

38. They are Yakṣas calmed by Yakṣas (?) The beautiful daughter of Loheyā, named Suravindā was brilliant and honoured by the Siddhas.

39. (Defective Verse) The groups of Bhūtas (goblins) had been procreated by the terrible Upāyaketana. Listen to their names (?).

40. The groups of Bhūtas (goblins) should be known as those who haunt from within and without etc. (*āveśakas, niveśakas*). They are declared as being visible in the world.

41. Those that are the excellent ones among Bhūtas that move about in the sky are to be known as the leaders of these Bhūtas in the world. Undoubtedly they move about in the sky up to the tops of trees.

42. Almost all Devas and Gandharvas have been narrated by me. Those famous persons should be known as engaged in worshipping Devas.

43-45. Along with Gandharvas, Devas who are clever musicians and experts in dance and music stay in all the worlds. They worship Nārāyaṇa who is lotus-eyed, free from Rajas Guṇa and the foremost of gods, god Brahmā who is self-born and four-faced, great god Śaṅkara who is Īśāna and the lord of the Universe. (They worship) Rudras and Ādityas led by Indra, along with Vasus.

46-48. The blessed Variṣṭhā who is honoured by gods, gave birth to eight sons. Haṁsa was the eldest and the youngest was another. The middle ones were Hahā and Huhū. The fourth was Dhiṣaṇa. Then Vasiruci (was born). Tumburu was the sixth among them. Then Viśvāvasu. These Apsaras-s(celestial artiste) are considered as divine and of auspicious characteristics.

Ariṣṭā gave birth to eight (?) daughters, viz. Anavadyā, Anavaśā, Anvatā, Madanapriyā, Arūṣā, Subhagā and Bhāsī.

49-50. Manovatī and Sukeśā were the two daughters of Tumburu.

The following ten divine (celestial) Apsaras-s are called Pañcacūḍās. They are : Menakā, Sahajanyā, Parṇinī, Puñjikasthalā, Ghṛtasthalā, Ghṛtācī, Viśvācī, Pūrvacī, the one well-known as Pramlocā and Anumlocantī.

51. Urvaśī who was faultless (exquisitely beautiful) in every

limb and was born of the thighs of the beginningless and endless Nārāyaṇa is remembered as the eleventh.

52. Menakā was the daughter of Menā, delightedly engrossed in meditating upon Brahman. All of them are expounders of Brahman (Vedas) and great Yoginīs.

53. The groups of the holy Apsaras-s are fourteen. Among these fourteen *gaṇas* Āhūtas (is the first) and Śobhayantīs is the (fourteenth)[1].

54. (Āhūtas) are the mental daughters of Brahmā and Śobhayantīs are Manu's daughters. Vegavantīs are the daughters of Ariṣṭā and Agnisaṁbhavās are the daughters of Ūrja.[2]

55.[3] Āyuṣmantīs are shining groups born of the rays of the sun. The groups born of water i.e. produced from Amṛta (water, nectar) are remembered by the name Amṛtās.

56. The Vāyu-born groups are named Mudās, those born of the Earth are Bhavās, the groups Rucs are born of Vidyut (lightning) and the daughters of Mṛtyu are Bhairavās.

57. The group Śobhayantīs have the attributes of Kāma (Cupid). Thus the fourteen groups have been narrated. They have been created with exquisitely superb beauty by the groups of Suras including Indra and Upendra (Viṣṇu).

58. The divine lady Tilottamā is of auspicious features and extremely blessed. The celestial damsel Prabhāvatī richly endowed

---

1. Our text has given only the names of the first and the fourteenth group. Probably some lines missing in our text are found in Bd. P. 2.3.7.18-20a as follows :

"The meritorious groups(*gaṇas*)of Apsaras-s are well-known to be fourteen, viz. Āhṛtis (Āhūta in Va. P.), Śobhavatis, Vegavatis, Ūrjās, Yuvatis, Sruks Kurus, Barhis, Amṛtās, Mudās, Mṛgus, Ruks, Bhīrus and Śobhayantis". But the list in Vā. P. is incomplete and different.

2. The text needs emendation : 'The Ūrjās are born of the Fire-god' as Ūrjās are a *gaṇa* of Apsaras-s (vide Bd. P. 2.3.7..21).

3. Some lines appear to be missing. This translation is of the printed text of Vā. P. The missing lines are probably the same as Bd. P. 2.3.7.21b and 22. They mention the classes of divine damsels, viz. Yuvatis, Kurus, Sruks and Barhis who are respectively born from the Sun-god, the Moon-god, Yajña (Sacrifice) and Kuśavati.

Bd. P. 2.3.7.23 corresponds to v. 55 above (of the Vā. P.)

with beauty and youth and renowned in the worlds, was born from the sacrificial fire-pit of Brahmā.

59. The celestial woman of great lustre, Vedavatī by name, was born from the bottom (surface) of the altar of the intelligent four-faced lord (Brahmā).

60. Similarly the daughter of Yama, the bright-eyed celestial woman Hemā had the lustre of excellent gold and possessed beauty and youth.

61. Thus there are many thousands of shining groups of Apsaras-s. They are the wives and mothers of Devas and Sages.

62. All the Apsaras-s are equally fragrant with the complexion of Campā (*Michelia Champacca*). During the course of their intercourse with their lovers, they are inebriated without imbibing wine. By their contact, their pleasure increases.

63. Vinatā had two sons Aruṇa and Garuḍa who had thirty-six sisters. They are remembered as their younger sisters.

64. Gāyatrī and other *chandas* (Vedic Metres), birds born of Garuḍa and also the Havyavāha groups present in the quarters (pertain to Vinatā?)

65. Kadrū[1] gave birth to a thousand serpents both mobile and immobile. They are hydra-headed noble souls, capable of traversing in the sky, since they are great in number. They have many names (but) learn the chief of them.

66-71. The most important of those serpents are Śeṣa, Vāsuki, Takṣaka, Karṇīra, Jaṁbha, Añjana, Vāmana, Airāvata, Mahāpadma, Kaṁbala, Aśvatara, Ailapatra, Śaṅkha, Karkoṭaka, Dhanañjaya, Mahākarṇa, Mahānīla, Dhṛtarāṣṭra, Balāhaka, Kumāra, Puṣpadanta, Sumukha, Durmukha, Śilīmukha, Dadhimukha, Kālīya, Śālipiṇḍaka, Bindupāda, Puṇḍarīka, the serpent Āpūraṇa, Kapila, Ambarīṣa, Dhṛtapāda, Kacchapa, Prahlāda, Padmacitra, Gandharva, Manasvika, Nahuṣa, Khararoman and Maṇi and many others like them. The sons of Kadrū have been enumerated by me. Understand those of Khaśā.

72. Khaśā gave birth to two sons who were well-known as

1. Verses 65-67 enumerate the names of most important of Kadrū's children, viz. serpents.

man-eaters. The eldest was in the latter number and the men in the east* (?)

73-76. At first, Khaśā gave birth to a very terrible son of the following description : He was excessively red in colour and devoid of ears. He had four arms, four feet, two heads and two-fold gait. He had hair all over the body. He had a huge body with a raised-up nose (like a snout) and a big belly. The head was big, the ears large and the hair like Muñja grass in accordance with his desire. The lips were like those of an elephant. The shanks were long. His fangs were like those of a horse. The chin was huge; the tongue red and the eyes had matted hair (?) The mouth was huge and the nose long. He was a Guhyaka (keeper of secrets (?)). The ears were variegated (?) in colour. He was extremely delighted and had a great face. Khaśā gave birth to such an extremely terrible son.

77-80. Khaśā gave birth to his younger brother, a second son. He had three heads, three feet and three hands. His eyes were black. The hair stood upright. The moustache was green in colour. His body was as firm as a rock. He had a huge body (short in stature). His arms were mighty and of great strength. His mouth was slit up to the ears. The eyebrows were suspended and the nose was stout. The lips were big. He had eight fangs and two tongues. He was pike-eared. His eyes were red and tawny-coloured. His complexion was tawny. He had matted hair. He had huge ears and broad chest. He was devoid of hips and the belly was slender. She gave birth to the younger brother who had claws and whose neck was red.

81. Immediately after the birth, they increased in size. Their bodies became mature and capable of sensual enjoyment. With their bodies thus grown up in size, they embellished their mother.

82. The elder one of the two who was ruthless, seized his mother. He said : "Mother, I am distressed with hunger. Come here as my prey."

83. The younger brother, however, forbade the elder one. He said frequently, "Save this Khaśā, our mother". Seizing him with both the arms, he released his mother.

---

*Obscure. But Bd. P. (2.3.7.38) : "The elder was born at dusk and the younger at dawn". *Śreṣṭham paścima-sandhyāyāṁ pūrvasyāṁ tu kanīyasam|*

84. At this time their father (sage Kaśyapa) appeared there. On seeing them hideous in form, he said, "Both of you stay here".

85. Those two strong ones, on seeing their father hurriedly (shrank in size) and began to lisp, clinging to the lap of their mother, by means of their Māyā.

86. Then the sage told his wife, "Tell us at the outset, how these two misbehaved.

87. A son adopts the traits of his maternal uncle and a daughter those of the paternal ancestors. A son adopts the same conduct of life as that of his mother.

88. Water certainly assumes the colour of that (bed of) earth on which it flows. Children become differnt due to the defects as well as the good qualities in the conduct of their mothers or through their faculty of discrimination.

89. Among (my wives), Aditi is interested in righteousness with her pious conduct and (inherent) strength[1]. She is endowed with piety, good conduct, enlightenment and strength.

90. Ariṣṭā is interested in music. Danu is remembered as fond of magic and illusiveness. The good lady Vinatā loves aerial movement.

91. Surabhi is embellished with the conduct of performance of penance. Kadrū is of a furious temperament. She is of unpleasant conduct due to anger.

92. The conduct of Danāyuṣā is characterised both by enmity and blessing. O blessed gentle lady, you are considered as of furious temperament by me.

93. The children adopt or change their character naturally or by observing other men. They are different in their activities, attempts, intellect, features, strength and patience. Changes occur due to the force of the objects conceived.

94. The forms of the whole Universe are naturally Rājasika, Sāttvika and Tāmasika. Your sons have taken after their uncle in their character and activities".

95. After saying thus to the incomparable Khaśā, he called the sons and made them fearless[2] by means of gentle words.

---

1. Kaśyapa describes the characteristics of his wives like Diti's fondness for fragrance etc. But the line is missing in the text. Hence the apparent duplication of adjectives.

2. *cakre somam abhītayaḥ* is obscure. Bd. P. 2.3.7.58 reads *cakre tābhyāṁ tu nāmanī* 'accorded names unto them'.

96. Then Khaśā told him what had been done by them to her. As the mother narrated their activities severally, the sage who saw the truth gave them names according to the meaning of the roots.

97. The root √ *yakṣ* means "to eat and to seize". Since he said '*Yakṣaye*' (I will eat), he will be a Yakṣa.

98. The root √ *rakṣ* means "to protect". Since he said "Save my mother Khaśā", your (second) son will be known by the name "Rākṣasa".

99. Then, on seeing them like that and searching (further) he was surprised*. The Prajāpati assigned to them blood and fat as their diet.

100. On seeing them hungry, the father granted them this boon: "Only at night can your hands feel the touch of anything.

101. You will move about and take your food during the night. By day, you will be enjoying sleep. You will be powerful during the night and will be sleeping during the day time.

102. Protect your mother. Let righteousness be practised." After saying thus to his sons, Kaśyapa vanished there itself.

103-105. When their father had gone, those two heroes, naturally terrible, began to behave (and do) what was exactly opposed (to their father's directions), eating anything they pleased and harassing living beings. They had great strength and energy. They were invincible and huge-bodied. They possessed the illusive *māyā* power. Sometimes they would be visible and immediately they would vanish. They assumed forms as they pleased. They were terrible and hideous naturally. Both of them became powerful by means of their diet in accordance with the forms (they assumed).

106-107. They used to roam about at night everywhere and for their food they were desirous of seizing Devas, Asuras, Sages, Gandharvas, Kinnaras, Piśācas, human beings, serpents, birds and animals. They were given the boons by Indra of not killing (not being killed?).

108-109, Once that Yakṣa (Rākṣasa) (the junior brother) was wandering alone at midnight, desirous of getting some food. Hearing a sound, he followed it. He met two Piśācas both of

*A reads: 'seeing them both hungry, he was surprised.'

whom were congenitally fierce. Their eyes were round and tawny and their hair stood upright. They were very terrible.

110-111. Their diet consisted of blood, flesh and fat. They were man-eaters of great strength. They were accompanied by their two daughters with a desire to do what pleased them. The two daughters could assume any form they pleased. Though they were splendid (in appearance), their behaviour was like that of (their father). They were wandering for the sake of food in the company of their daughters.

112-114. There they saw the highly powerful Rākṣasa who could assume any form as he pleased. As they met one another accidentally, they wanted to seize the other and save themselves. The father told the daughters, "Seize this young fellow alive-this fellow who is throbbing at every step and bring him here quickly". Then the two daughters approached him and seized him. Caught by both the hands, he was brought to the presence of their father by the daughters.

115. The two Piśācas asked that Rākṣasa who was caught hold of by the hands by them, "Who are you? Whose (son) are you?" He told them everything.

116. His antecedents were known. After knowing him as the foremost of Rākṣasas, Aja and Khaṇḍa, the two Piśācas who were delighted at his activity, gave him those two girls, their daughters.

117. (Defective Verse) By means of the Paiśāca form of matrimonial[1] alliance the Rākṣasa married the bright-toothed[2] (girls). Aja and Khaṇḍa then recounted their wealth.

118. Khaṇḍa said, "This is my daughter named Brahmadhanā. She is devoid of hair. She has Brāhmaṇas (along with their wealth) as her staple diet."

119. "This is my daughter beautiful in every limb. Her name is Jantudhanā. All the animals are her diet and wealth". (So said Aja.) Thus both of them narrated the wealth (of their daughters).

---

1. Out of the eight forms of marriage, Paiśaca is the lowest form wherein money is received by the father for the girl.

2. '*sudatyā buddha-vāhanaḥ*' in the text is obscure. Bd. P. 2.3.7.83 reads *rudantyāvudvavāha saḥ* 'He married them while they were crying'.

120. The daughter Jantudhanā had another name Sarvāṅgakeśī (having hair on every limb). The daughter who was called Brahmadhanā was devoid of hair and had no tip of the ears.

121. She gave birth to a boy Brahmadhana and a girl Dhanānā (?) Thus the two daughters of the Piśācas gave birth to two twins. Listen and understand even as I recount their progeny.

122-123. Heti, Praheti, Ugra, Pauruṣeya, Vadha, Visphūrji, Vāta, Āpa, Vyāghra and Sarpa—these were Rākṣasas, the ten sons of Yātudhāna. They were the followers of the Sun and they whirl along with him.

124. Laṅku was the son of Heti. Laṅku had two sons, Mālyavān and Sumālī. Now listen to the sons of Praheti. Praheti's son was the glorious and well-known Puloman.

125. Vadha's son was Nikuṁbha who was ruthless Brahmarākṣasa. Vāta's son was Virāga and Āpa's son was Jaṁbuka.

126. Vyāghra's son was Nirānanda who caused obstacles to all living beings. Thus all the cruel Rākṣasas have been enumerated.

127-128. Yātudhānas have been mentioned. Now understand the sons of Brahmadhāna. They were Yajña, Pitā, Dhuni, Kṣema, Brahmā, Pāpa, Yajñahā, Svākoṭaka, Kali and Sarpa. They were the ten sons of Brahmadhāna. The following are their sisters, terrible Brahmarākṣasīs.

129. They were—Raktakarṇā, Mahājihvā, Akṣayā and Upahāriṇī. Brahmarākṣasas were born of their families on the earth.

130. Generally they are found on the Śleṣmātaka (*Cardya Myxia*) trees. They live there. Thus Rākṣasas have been enumerated. Understand Yakṣas.

131-132. Yakṣa loved the Apsaras Kratusthalī otherwise known as Pañcasthūlā (stout in five limbs). Brooding over her and desirous of securing her, he wandered in the parks of Nandana, Vaibhrāja, Surabhi and Caitraratha. In the park of Nandana, he saw her seated along with Apsaras-s.

133. He did not know of any means of acquiring her despite his pondering, because he was defiled (ugly) in form and defiled and corrupt in his activities.

134. He thought, "All living beings are afraid and disgusted with me who am noxious and hurtful. So how shall I secure this lady of beautiful limbs?".

135. He thought of a plan and hastened to put it into action. The Guhyaka (Yakṣa) assumed the honoured form of a Gandharva. Then he seized Kratusthalī from the midst of (other) Apsaras-s.

136. Knowing him to be beautiful in form, she followed him with emotional attachment. Even as he was being observed by the group of Apsaras-s, he was embraced by her.

137. When he achieved his cause (i.e. desired object), a son of full-fledged sense-organs and height was born to him immediately. New-born though he was, he (as if) blazed in his glory.

138. He spoke to his father—"I am a king. I am Nābhi". The father replied, "Since you are born, there is no fear".

139. When the son emulated his mother in beauty and father in valour, Yakṣa was overjoyed and due to that exultation regained his original form.

140. Big Yakṣas and Rākṣasas regain their own form while dying, when asleep, angry or frightened and when extremely delighted.

141. Then that Guhyaka smilingly spoke to the Apsaras—"O lady of beautiful hips and excellent complexion, come to my house along with your son."

142. On seeing him who regained his form suddenly after saying this, all the Apsaras-s were furious, perplexed and frightened and they fled.

143. Kratusthalī followed the Apsaras-s who were fleeing. But the son consoled her with his words. He took her to the middle of Gandharvas and Apsaras-s and returned.

144. On seeing the birth of Yakṣa, the group of Apsaras-s spoke to Kratusthalī—"You are the mother of Yakṣas".

145. Then, accompanied with his son, Yakṣa went back to his abode named Nyagrodharohiṇaḥ (growing on the holy fig tree) where Guhyakas used to lie down. Hence the Nyagrodha tree is always a favourite place of residence to the Yakṣas.

146-148. The Yakṣa Rajatanābha was the grandfather of Guhyakas. He married Bhadrā, the excellent daughter of the

Daitya Anuhrāda. She gave birth to two sons—Maṇivara of good self-control, and Maṇibhadra who was equal to Śakra in exploit. The wives of these two brothers were sisters— two auspicious daughters of Kratusthalī. Their names were Puṇyajanī and Devajanī. Puṇyajanī bore the following (twentyfour) sons to Maṇibhadra.

149-152. (They were) Siddhārtha, Sūryateja, Sumanta, Nandana, Kanyaka, Yavika, Maṇidatta, Vasu, Sarvānubhūta, Śaṅkha, Piṅgākṣa, Bhīru, Mandaraśobhi, Padma, Candraprabha, Maghapūrṇa, Subhadra, Pradyota, Mahaujas, Dyutimān, Ketumān, Mitra, Mauli and Sudarśana. Thus there are twenty-four auspicious Puṇyajanas born to Maṇibhadra. All of them were characteristically meritorious. Their sons and grandsons were the auspicious Yakṣas and Puṇyajanas.

153-157. Devajananī (Devajanī) bore to Maṇivara the following sons—Pūrṇabhadra, Hemaratha, Maṇimān, Nandivardhana, Kustumburu, Piśaṅgābha, Sthūlakarṇa, Mahājaya, Śveta, Vipula, Puṣpavān, Bhayāvaha, Padmavarṇa, Sunetra, Yakṣa, Bāla, Baka, Kumuda, Kṣemaka, Vardhamāna, Dama, Padmanābha, Varāṅga, Suvīra, Vijaya, Kṛti, Pūrṇamāsa, Hiraṇyākṣa, Surūpa, and others. These sons of Maṇivara are remembered as Yakṣas and Guhyakas. Some are handsome and some are ugly. They are garlanded and very pleasing to see. They had hundreds and thousands of sons and grandsons.

158. There were other sons of Khaśā who became Rākṣasas who could assume forms as they pleased. Listen to and understand the important ones among them as they are being enumerated.

159-162. They were—Lālāvi, Kuthana, Bhīma, Sumālī, Madhu, Visphūrjita, Vidyujjihva, Mātaṅga, Dhūmrita, Candrārka, Sukara, Budhna, Kapiloman, Prahāsaka, Krīḍa, Paraśunābha, Cakrākṣa, Niśācara, Triśiras, Śatadaṃṣṭra, the Rākṣasa Tuṇḍakeśa, the Yakṣa Akaṃpana, Durmukha and Śilīmukha. These excellent Rākṣasas were valorous. In the form of groups, they move about in all the worlds. They have the ability to move on equal footing with the Devas.

163. She (Khaśā) had seven other daughters. Listen to them (their enumeration) in order, their progeny and the groups formed by them.

164. Ālaṁbā, Utkacā, Kṛṣṇā, Nirṛtā, Kapilā, Śivā and the blessed Keśinī are the seven sisters remembered.

165. The following auspicious groups of Rākṣasas were born of them. They are the devourers of people, meat-eaters, killers and invincible in war.

166. The group called Ālaṁbeya was cruel. Similarly the group Utkaceya was also cruel. The groups of excellent Rākṣasas were the Kārṣṇeyas and Śaiveyas.

167. The group of Rākṣasas called Nairṛta comprised the progeny created by leading Gaṇeśvara who was the follower of Śiva.

168. These Yakṣas and Rākṣasas were procreated by the powerful (Gaṇeśvaras). They were valorous and endowed with heroism. These Devarākṣasas, the Nairṛtas had the renowned Virūpaka as their leader.

169. Many hundreds of these proud and noble-souled groups mostly follow Śaṅkara, the lord of the Universe.

170-173. The Kāpileyas, the Daityarākṣasas of great prowess, of huge body and of great strength and exploit were procreated by the noble-souled king of Daityas, Kuṁbha. The Yakṣa Kampana begot of Keśinī, very powerful Yakṣas and Rākṣasas. Keśinī's daughter Nīlā bore to Ālambeya Surasika many Rākṣasas of petty mentality. They are called Nailas. They were invincible and were terrible in their exploits.

174. Endowed with divine and worldly power, they move about on the entire earth. Since they are innumerable, the details of this creation cannot be recounted.

175. The same Nīlā had a daughter, the demoness Vikacā, naturally devoid of hair and possessing mediocre strength and exploit.

176. The same (Vikacā) bore terrible Asuras by the contact of the ugly Nairṛta. Listen to them in order.

177-178. They are Hārakas, Bhīṣakas, Krāmakas, Vainakas, Piśācas, Vāhakas and Prāśakas. All of them are hideous with their terrible fangs. They have huge ears and bellies. These are Bhūmi-rākṣasas (Earthly Demons). They possess manly exploit though slow-witted.

179. They assume multifarious forms and move about here and there unseen by others. Those whose strength and energy

are excellent and extraodinary are remembered as Khecaras ('Moving in the sky').

180. Those who appear to be very small, move in the sky to a small extent. This world is pervaded by these in hundreds and thousands.

181. The different countries all round are infested with these Bhūmirākṣasas and petty Rākṣasas of diverse forms and shapes.

182. In brief, it is said that there are eight Rākṣasa mothers. Therefore there are eight well-known clans (groups) of these (Rākṣasas).

183. Some constitute the Bhadraka group (Born of Bhadrakā). The cause of their origin is Yajña* (?). They are in hundreds and thousands and they move about in the human world.

184. There are many terrible Bhūtas having the same traits as their mother Pūtanā. They harass children in the human world like the evil planets, causing dejectedness.

185. The Skandagraha and other groups, the Āpakas, the Trāsaka and other groups—all these are to be known as Kaumāras ill-disposed towards children like evil planets.

186-187. There are hundreds of the groups of these evil (Rākṣasas) like the deceitful types of Skandagrahas and Bhūtas named Pūtanās, lakhs and lakhs of them roaming about in the human world. They wander over the earth annoying the people.

188-190. There are Yakṣas called Puṇyajanas and others called Guhyakas. There are still others called Devajanas. All these are included in the group of Guhyakas. There are Rākṣasas called Āgastyas, Paulastyas and Viśvāmitras. The great king Kubera, the ruler of Alakā, is the king of all these Yakṣas and Rākṣasas including Paulastyas and Āgastyas.

191. Yakṣas drink blood, and swallow flesh and fat of men by merely looking at them. Rākṣasas do so by entering the body and Piśācas by crushing and harassing.

---

*Bd. P.V. 157 reads *ajña*—(born of) the ignorant ones.

192-194[1]. There are some beings of the following characteristics : They are endowed with all good qualities. They are equal to Devas in the matter of sphere of activities. They are brilliant and strong. They are masterly ones who can assume any form they please. Awe-struck, no one will dare to speak to them directly. They are valorous. They are bowed to by all the people. They are subtle and very powerful. They are pure and worthy of Yajñas. They are granters of boon. All these having the same characteristics as Devas are remembered as Asuras.[2] Gandharvas are inferior to Devas by three-fourths of their prowess.

195. All Guhyakas are inferior to Gandharvas by three-fourths. All Rākṣasas should be known as equal to Yakṣas in prowess. Piśācas are three times less powerful in their *Aiśvarya* (prosperity and glory) than Yakṣas.

196-197. Thus in wealth, beauty, longevity, strength, righteousness, affluence, mastery, intellect, penance, learning and exploits, the four Devayonis, beginning with Gandharvas and ending with Piśācas are (consecutively) three-fourths inferior to Devas and Asuras.

Sūta said :

198. Welfare unto you. Henceforth, hear about the progeny of the family of Krodhā. Krodhā gave birth to twelve daughters. They became the wives of Pulaha. Understand them by name.

199. They were—Mṛgī, Mṛgamandā, Haribhadrā, Irāvatī, Bhūtā, Kapiśā, Daṃṣṭrā, Niśā, Tiryā, Śvetā, Svarā and Surasā. They are well-known.

200. The sons of Mṛgī were the different types of deer, viz. *Hariṇas*, *Nyaṅkus*, *Rurus* and *Pṛṣatas* as well as such other animals as hares and *Śarabhas* (a fabulous eight-footed animal).

1. The Purāṇa-writer deserves credit for recording the greatness of Asuras and their equality with Devas.

2. Verses 192-197 describe the gradation (in descending order) of the divine and semi-divine beings as follows :

(i) Devas and Asuras
(ii) Gandharvas and Apsaras-s
(iii) Guhyakas (Yakṣas) and Rākṣasas
(iv) Piśacas.

201. The king of beasts (lion) was the son of Mṛgamandā as well as such other animals as *Gavayas* (blue cows), buffaloes, camels, boars, rhinoceros and *Gauramukhas* (a kind of black monkey with white face).

202 Hari's (Bhadrā's) sons were Haris (lions), bears, tigers, hyenas, different varieties of monkeys, Kinnaras and Kiṁpuruṣas and many other animals. Now understand the sons of Irāvatī.

203-205. Bhauvana (i.e. Viśvakarman) brought two egg-like skulls of Sūrya. Keeping them in his hands, he sang the Rathantara hymn. Suddenly an elephant arose out of the Sāman hymn.[1] Bhauvana presented that elephant to Irāvatī as her son. Being thus the son of Irāvatī, the elephant was called Airāvata. Since it was the vehicle of the king of Devas, it became the first king of elephants. It had the lustre of a pure cloud. The glorious elephant Airāvata has four tusks.

206. (Defective Verse) Only this elephant has the strength of being a vehicle, since it is born of water, has a single root, six teeth and the lustre of gold. It is of the Bhadra variety of elephants.

207. Airāvata had four sons, viz. Añjana, Supratīka, Vāmana and Padma. His mate was Abhramu.

208. Śvetā gave birth to four swift-footed sons who became the elephants of the quarters. They belonged to the varieties such as Bhadra, Mṛga, Manda and Saṁkīrṇa.

209-210. Añjana, though belonging to the Saṁkīrṇa variety is the vehicle of Yama. Supratīka who belongs to the Bhadra variety and is green in colour is the vehicle of the Lord of Waters (Varuṇa). Padma which belongs to the Manda variety and is of white colour is the vehicle of Ailavila (Kubera). (Vāmana) which was dark-coloured and belonged to the Mṛga variety was the vehicle of the Fire-god (Agni).

211.[2] (Defective) He has eight sons, viz. Padmottara

---

1. Verses 203-235 contain the Purāṇic "Elephant lore"; the geographical location of forests assigned to different types of elephants probably indicates that that type was found in that particular forest-area.

2. The text is very corrupt and is translated tentatively in the light of Bd. P. vv. 332-33a.

(Padma+Uttara?), two Gajas (Agata and Gajas ?), Varuṇa, Gaṇa, Upalepanameṣa (Upalepana and Meṣa ?).

212. In his race elephants possessing lofty stature, white nails and hair, yellowish colour are born. I shall recount Mataṅgaja and other (types) of elephants in due order.

213. The elephant Puṇḍarīka was grey-coloured and Rathānara had a flowery colour. Their sons were Supratiṣṭha and Pramardana.

214. (Defective Verse) Other types of elephants—spear-shaped, stout, with raised heads, having white (?) hair and nails, strong and energetic. They are called Ākulika elephants.

215. Puṣpadanta, Bṛhatsāman, Ṣaḍdanta, Dantapuṣpavān and Tāmravarṇa were his sons and companion tuskers.

216.[1] In his family are born elephants beautiful in appearance having protruding lips, dark-coloured, fierce and able to endure diverse kinds of ordeal (?)

217. Vāmadeva was as dark as collyrium. From Sāman was born Vāmana. His wife was Aṅgadā and the two sons were Nīlavān and Lakṣaṇa.

218. These elephants were fierce. Their necks and heads were beautiful. Their chests were broad and they were swift-footed. If they are bound by men, the elephants born become deformed.

219. There is no other elephant equal to Supratīka in beauty. He had three sons, viz. Prahārī, Saṁpātī and Pṛthu.

220. The animals with long palate and lips and with symmetrical portions of head and belly, of gentle birth (?) born in his family, become Mataṅgajas.

221. Añjanā was born to Añjanā and Añjanāvatī to Sāman. The mother of both of them is reputed to be the daughter(s) of Āyurajas.

222. In his family were born elephants with (distinctly divided) symmetrical heads, resembling the smooth clouds,

---

The verse enumerates the eight sons of that elephant the names of which are as follows: Padma, Uttama, Padmagulma, Agaja, Vātagaja, Gaja, Capala and Ariṣṭa.

1. *Pīḍāpatānanāḥ* in some editions is obscure and should be emended as *Piḍāyatānanāḥ* 'with large and stout (big) faces (heads)', as in Bd. P. V. 338.

beautiful to look at, of well-built body having the lustre of lotuses and globular in shape. They are stout and have large, yellow faces.

223. From Candramas and Sāman were born Piṅgala and Kumudadyuti. Piṅgala's sons were Mahāpadma and Ūrmimālin.

224. Know that the elephants born of his family have equal and unrivalled tusks. They are fierce. Their strength is enormous. Their belly is large. They are fond of elephant fights.

225. In the course of wars between Devas and Asuras, Suras used them for the purpose of victory. When they achieved their object, those elephants were let off by them and they went to different directions as mentioned before.

226. Devas gave unto Lomapāda, the king of Aṅga and author of a Sūtra work, elephants born in these families and well-trained.

227-228. (The various names of elephants are to be etymologically derived as follows :)

Since it has two tusks it is called *Dvirada*; the word *Hastin* is derived from *hasta* (a trunk or hand); from the word *kara* (a trunk or hand) the word *Karin* is derived. *Vāraṇāt* (since it protects) it is called *Vāraṇa*. Since it has *dantas* (tusks) (prominently displayed) it is called *Dantin*. It is called *Gaja* because it trumpets (*garjanāt*). Since it roams about in the hedges (*Kuñja*) it is called *Kuñjara*. It is called *Nāga* because it is antagonistic to *Naga* (tree or mountain). Since it is born of Mataṅga it is called *Mātaṅga*. Since it drinks with two (i. e. trunk and mouth) it is called *Dvipa*. It is called *Sāmaja* because (the first elephant Airāvata) was born of a Sāman hymn.

229. The curvedness of their tongues and their muteness are due to Agni's curse. The fact that they are unaware of their strength and that the scrotum is concealed—these two are due to the curses of Svayaṃbhū and Suras.

230. Elephants of diverse inherent strengths are born of girls of Deva, Dānava, Gandharva, Piśāca, Uraga (Serpent) and Rākṣasa tribes through their union with the elephants of the quarters (*Diṅ-nāgas*).

231. The story of the origin, development and derivation of the names of elephants whose king is Vibhāvasu, should be known.

232. (Defective Verse) The forest in the east bound by the rivers Kauśikī and Gaṅgā and the sea belongs to Añjana and the family of elephants of which he is the founder (or of one tusk ?).

233. The forest of Supratīka is situated north of Vindhya, south of Gaṅgā and in between the land of Karuṣa and the source of Gaṅgā.

234. The fifth forest west of Utkala and extending upto the land of Vedi is remembered as the forest of Vāmana who is the sole Ātman (?)

235. The forest to the west of Lauhitya extending westwards upto the sea, is said to be the forest of Yama. It is near a mountain.

236-248. Bhūti gave birth to Bhūtas (goblins) who are the followers of lord Rudra. They were stout, lean, longish, dwarfish, short-statured and normal. The ears of some were hanging down. The lips of some were suspended. Some had tongues, breasts and bellies hanging down. Some had single form, some double form. The hips of some hung down. Some had stout calves of the leg. They stayed on the banks of rivers, lakes or seas. They were of all colours, black, white, blue, grey, red and pink. Some were smoke-coloured and some had variegated colours. Some were terrible like Rākṣasas and Kadrūs (?). Some had dishevelled hair like the Muñja grass. Some had hair standing up. Some wore serpents as the sacred thread. Some had eyes removed; some had hideous eyes. Some had small eyes. Somehad only a single eye. Some had many heads. Some had no head. Some had a single head. Some had the head cut off. They were fierce and hideous. Some had no hair. Some had plenty of it. Some were blind. Some had matted hair. Some were yellow. Some were dwarfish. They resorted to the banks of rivers, lakes and oceans. Some had a single ear, some had large ears. Some were spike-eared, some had no ear. Some had fangs. Some had claws. Some had no teeth. Some had two tongues. Some had a

single hand. Some had two hands. Some had three hands. Some had no hand. Some had a single foot. Some had two feet. Some three and some even more. Some were great Yogins. Some were highly dignified. Some were very strong. Some were *sutapakvas*[1] (*Sutapaskas* ? 'of good penance'). They could go everywhere. They were unimpeded. They were the knowers of Brahman and could assume any form they wished. Some were terrible and ruthless. Some were pure, holy and auspicious. Some disputed and argued. Some had the Kuśa grass in their hands. Some had huge (long ?) tongues, long ears and large faces. Some ate with their hands, some with their mouths and some with their heads. Some wore skulls (round their necks). Some held bows. Some had iron clubs, swords or spears. Some had radiant faces and bright eyes; some wore garlands of variegated flowers and unguents. Some ate cooked food; some raw flesh. Some had many forms. Some had handsome appearance. Some roamed about at night or at dusk. Some were terrible. Some were gentle, roaming about during the day. Some were night prowlers, who were very terrible (or difficult) to look at; some were terrible night-wanderers.

249. All of them directed their minds towards lord Bhava (Śiva) as the greatest god. They had no wives or sons. All of them were celibate with sublimated sexuality.

250. These Bhūtas, the great *Ātmayogins*, numbered a hundred thousand. Thus all these noble-souled sons of Bhūti have been recounted.

251. Kapiśā, Kūṣmāṇḍī bore to Kūṣmāṇḍa twins of Piśācas who were tawny-coloured. Because they were brownish, they were called Piśacas.[2] All of them were flesh-eaters.

252. There are sixteen other twins. Their descendants are living now. I shall mention by names the man-eaters belonging to their family.

253-256. They are Chagala and Chagalī, Vakra and Vakramukhī, Sūcī and Sūcīmukha, Kuṁbhapātra and Kuṁbhī,

1. Bd. P. 2.3.7.367 reads *sumanaska* 'of very good minds'.

2. The Purāṇa distinguishes between *Bhūtas* and Piśācas. Bhūtas are noble-souled sons of Bhūti, celibate yogins and devotees of God Śiva. Piśācas are the progeny of Kūśmāṇḍi. The superstitions about Piśācas current at the time of this text are recorded in vv. 251-282.

Vajradaṁṣṭra and Dundubhi, Upacārā and Upacāra, Ulūkhala and Ulūkhalī, Anarka and Anarkā, Kukhaṇḍa and Kukhaṇḍikā, Pāṇipātra and Pāṇipātrī, Pāṁśu and Pāṁśumatī, Nituṇḍa and Nituṇḍī, Nipuṇā and Nipuṇa, Chalada and Uccheṣaṇā, Praskanda and Skandikā. The sixteen clans of Piśācas have been narrated.

257-259. These are the sixteen families born of Kūṣmāṇḍas : Ajāmukhas, Vakramukhas, Pūrins, Skandins, Vipādas, Aṅgārikas, Kumbhapātras, Prakundakas, Upacārolūkhalikas, Anarkas, Kukhaṇḍikas, Pāṇipātras, Naituṇḍas, Ūrṇāśas, Nipuṇas, and Sūcīmukhoccheṣaṇādas.

260. Those who are born as Sukalpas[1] (?) should be known as Piśācas. There are infinite number of sons and grandsons of hideous nature and ignoble activities. Hence, understand the characteristics of Piśācas.

261. Piśācas have hair on all their limbs. Their eyes are round. They have claws and fangs. Their limbs are crooked. They are man-eaters and their faces are turned down.

262. The Piśācas called Kūṣmāṇḍikas are devoid of hair on their heads or bodies. Skins and hides constitute their garments. They always eat gingelly seeds and flesh.

263. Some Piśācas have curved limbs, and feet. They walk in a zigzag manner. They should be known as Vakrapiśācas. They are of crooked gait. They can assume any form as they please.

264. Some Piśācas have protruding bellies. Their noses are like snouts. Their bodies are short. Their heads and arms are small. These are called Nituṇḍakas. Gingelly seeds form their diet. (They are fond of hearing pleasing things—*Priyaśrāvāḥ*?)[2]

265. Some Piśācas have dwarfish forms[3]. They are garrulous. They go about galloping. They are Ānarkamarka types of Piśācas. They are fond of staying on trees or taking food there.

266. Some Piśācas keep their hands lifted up (always).

1. Bd. P. *ibid* V. 384 reads *Sakulyas* 'belonging to the same family (?)'
2. This is obscure. Bd. P. V. 389 reads *Priyāsṛjaḥ* 'fond of (drinking) blood'.
3. Bd. P. V. 390 reads *Vānarākṛtayaḥ* 'having the form of monkeys'.

Their hair stands upright. Their abodes are high up on tall trees. They shed dust from their bodies. These Piśacas are called *Paṁśus*.

267. The Piśācas called *Upavīras* are very considerate about their veins*. Their bodies are dry. They have plenty of moustache. They wear bark garments. Cremation ground is their abode.

268. The Udūkhala (Ulūkhala) types of Piśācas have stable motionless eyes and long tongues with which they lick their lips. Their heads are as large as those of elephants and camels. They move about severally or jointly.

269. Those Piśācas are called Kuṁbhapātras, who take cooked food without seeing it (invisibly ?). They are small and yellow-complexioned with hairy bodies. They move about visibly and invisibly.

270. The Piśācas called Nipuṇas enter and infest those persons who go alone. Their mouths extend upto their ears. The eye-brows are long and the noses are thick.

271. (A line is missing from the text.) The Piśācas called *Bālādas* (devourers of children) are short-statured and they attack people with their hands and feet. Their eyes are turned towards the earth. They resort to lying-in-chambers.

272. Those Piśācas called *Piśitādas* (flesh eaters) drink blood from the battlefield. Their hands and feet are turned backwards. They are short and are as swift as wind.

273. The Piśācas called Skandins are naked and have no fixed abodes. They are globular in shape with long hair. There are other types of Piśācas eating leavings of food. Thus the sixteen types of Piśācas have been narrated.

274. On seeing these types of Piśācas deficient in intellect and in a dejected condition among his progeny, Brahmā sympathetically granted them the boons of vanishing and assuming forms as they pleased.

275-278. He permitted them to move about at the time of the two junctions (viz. dawn and dusk). (I shall mention) their abodes and way of maintaining themselves. Houses in

---

**dhamanī-matakāḥ*, but Bd. P. V. 392 reads *Bhramarī-sannibhāḥ* 'like black-bees'.

ruins, vacant or with very few people or completely dilapidated are their abodes. They live in those houses also where people do not follow rules of good conduct, which are not scrubbed and cleaned properly or not whitewashed or painted well. They live in the highways, sidelanes, kitchen gardens, quadrangles, portals, attics, paths of exit, sidewalks, pathways, rivers, holy centres, trees in the monasteries, trunk roads (these are assigned as their abodes). Piśacas occupy all these spots.

279-280. Unrighteous persons, those who violate the discipline of castes and stages of life and artisans and masons constitute the livelihood of these Piśācas as ordained by Suras. These Piśācas will be the presiding deities where holy rites are performed by means of money earned by unjustifiable means such as breach of trust and theft of nectar-like articles.

281-282. The oblations to Piśācas consist of honey (wine), flesh, cooked rice mixed with curds, powdered gingelly seeds, toddies and similar (intoxicating) beverages, incense, turmeric, Kṛśaras (i.e. balls of gingelly seeds in treacle), oil, rice mixed with jaggery, black cloths and flowers. At the junctions of Parvans, these things must be offered to Piśācas. Brahmā, the lord, ordained thus.

283. He made the trident-bearing Girīśa the lord of all Bhūtas and Piśācas.

The lady Daṁṣṭrā bore as sons tigers and lions.

284. Panthers, pythons and beasts of prey are also her sons.

Now listen to the progeny and procreation of Ṛṣā wholly. She had five daughters. Listen to their names :

285. Mīnā, Mātā, Vṛttā, Parivṛttā and Anuvṛttā are to be known (as her daughters). Listen to (the enumeration of) her children:

286. Sharks and crocodiles with a thousand teeth, the types of fish known as *Pāṭhina*, *Timi* and *Rohita* and other groups are called Maina (born of Mīnā) groups. They are extensive.

287. The four types of *Grāhas* (crocodiles)—Anujyeṣṭhakas, Niṣkas, Śiśumāras etc. were born of Mātā.

288. Vṛttā gave birth to different types of tortoises and other aquatic animals as well as varieties of conches.

289. Anuvṛttā gave birth to different types of toads and frogs as well as different varieties of snails and Aṇeyas (black does) and Śaṁbūkas (shells and noxious insects).

290. Parivṛttā gave birth to different varieties of oyster-shells, cowrie-shells and conchs.

291. She produced the varieties of Kālakūṭa poison and leeches as well. Thus the race of Ṛṣā consisting of five branches has been enumerated.

292. The description of the first and early animals and insects is very extensive[1]. The varieties of sweat-born insects are a part of them.

293. O Brāhmaṇas, these insects are born of the bodies of *Svastipika*[2] (?). The producers are human beings. The insects known as *Uśanas* are born of dirt and sweat of men. So also the other insects and groups of ants moving about in rows.

294. There are varieties of insects born of conchs, pebbles which work like nails.[3] These and many others are the earthly groups of sweat-born creatures.

295. Similarly, these creatures are born out of water heated by the sun as well as of the rain water. Many of these insects are born of the bodies of other animals.

296-298. The following tiny creatures are born both of water and of sweat : Small shrimps (*minaka*), ants, (mosquito-like) biting or stinging creatures (*daṁśa*), *Tittira-putrikās* (tiny partridge-like creatures?). The Alakas (hair) are bluish or variegated in colour (*nila-citrāḥ*) and very massive.

The insects called Nalada which are many-faced are born in water (stagnating) near the Kāśa grass. They are stated to be of three kinds—*Siṁhalas*, *Romalas* (Hairy) and *Picchalas* (Slimy). These and other groups of species are remembered as born of water as well as of sweat.

1. The line is corrupt. The corresponding line in Bd. P. V. 421 reads : *tiryāhetukam apyāhur bahulam vaṁśa-vistaraṃ|* 'They say that there is an extensive line of living beings procreated by Tiryā'.

2. This obscure word is a misprint for '*Sveda-Klinna* 'born of bodies moistened by sweat' (vid Bd. P. V. 422).

3. *Kīlakācārakāni* 'which work lik nails' in the text is rather obscure. Bd. P. V. 423 b reads *kīlakāvaraṇāni* 'Pebbles smaller than pins'.

299. Some creatures are born of ghee, black gram and green gram. Some are born of the fruits of Jaṁbū (Rose apple) Bilva, mango and arecanut.

300. Creatures are born of the dry hollows of trees and also of green gram, jack fruits and rice grains when kept (for a long time).

301. Creatures are born of other things also when kept for a long time. Germs and worms are born of horses and other (animals) and even from poison etc.

302. When cowdung is kept for a number of days, O Brāhmaṇas, creatures are produced from them. White ants and other creatures are born of (putrefying) wood.

303. Various kinds of blue flies are born of trees in due course. The creatures *Putrikās* (white ants ?) are born of drying and withering things.

304. Everywhere serpents are born seasonally from Śatikas (?). Scorpions and sweat-born creatures are produced from dry cow-dung.

305. O lord, many worms are born of the bodies of cows and buffaloes. Different types of fish etc. are born of eggs.

306. Different types of leeches are born of eggs such as *Caivīrikas* and *Gajas* and many other subtle creatures too.

307. Different types of flies etc. are born of eggs. These are laid generally on the leavings of food, water and sloughs.

308. Different types of mosquitoes and black bees are also born of eggs. The creatures known as nits (*Putrikās* and *Putrabhāsakas*) are produced from grass.

309. The insects *Maṇicchedas* and *Vyālas* are said to be produced from foetus with no enveloping membrane (*potajas*). Varieties of *Śataveri* (?) are born of dry cow-dung.

310. Thus innumerable groups of sweat-born creatures have been enumerated by me in brief. It is to be remembered that these are born as a result of their actions in a previous birth.

311-312. There are other beings of Nairṛta nature (i.e. born of Nirṛti). They are remembered as *Upasargajas* (born of paroxysm due to possession by devils). Some beings are born of womb (*Yonijas*)and some are *Autpattikas* (born spontaneously). Generally all Devas are to be known as *Autpattikas*. Some

Devas are born of a womb (*Yonija*). Only some are born without cause.

313. The children of Saramā are the sons Tūlālāgha and Kola and a daughter Śivā. They are known as *Saramādi* group.

314. The Kadrukas (?) are *Śyāma* (dark-coloured), *Śabala* (of variegated colour), *Arjuna* (white), *Harita* (green-coloured), *Kṛṣṇa* (black), *Dhūmrāruṇa* (smoke-coloured and pink-coloured—Aruṇa), Tulālāgha (?).

315. Surasā gave birth to a hundred (serpents) with nectar in their heads (*Śiro' mṛtam*). The king of Sarpas (serpents) is Takṣaka and that of the snakes is Vāsuki. Thus this group belonging to the family of Krodhavaśā is mostly of Tāmasa quality.

316. Now understand the bosom creation of Pulaha from Tāmrā. Many well-known daughters were born of Tāmrā.

317. They are—Śyenī, Bhāsī, Krauñcī, Dhṛtarāṣṭrī and Śukī. Śyenī who was the wife of Aruṇa gave birth to two excellent birds of great strength and prowess, viz. Sampāti and Jaṭāyu.

318. Saṁpāti procreated one son and one daughter. Crows, vultures and *Aśvakarṇins* (a variety of vultures?) were the sons of Jaṭāyu.

319. The wives of Garutmān (Garuḍa) were Bhāsī, Krauñcī, Śukī, Dhṛtarāṣṭrī and Bhadrā. Their sons are being enumerated.

320-322. Śuki bore six well known sons to Garutmān, viz. the sweet-faced Triśira, Bala, Pṛṣṭha of great strength, Triśaṅkhanetra, Susukha of good form and Surasa the powerful. The sons and grandsons of these ruthless descendants of Garuḍa, the noble-souled serpent-eaters, numbering fourteen thousand. By procreation of sons and grandsons their family became extensive.

323-329. I shall mention in due order the lands where they spread themselves—the whole of Śālmalī Dvīpa, the mountain Devakūṭa, the leading mountains Maṇimān, Sahasra-śikhara, Parṇamāla, Sukeśa, Śataśṛṅga, Kauraja, Pañcaśikhara and Hemakūṭa—all these mountains were occupied by the noble-souled descendants of Garuḍa. They were brightened with ruby stones and (while flying) they produced gusts of violent winds.

Bhāsas (the bird vulture) Ulūkas (owls), crows and cocks were the sons of Bhāsī.

Peacocks, *Kalaviṅkas* (sparrows), doves and *Lāvas* and *Tittiris* also were born of Bhāsī. Krauñcī gave birth to *Vārdhiṇasa* birds (black birds with red legs, head and eyes). Śyenī gave birth to ospreys, *Sārasas* (a kind of crane) and cranes; she gave birth to other birds of prey also like these.

The beautiful lady Dhṛtarāṣṭrī gave birth to Haṁsas (swans) and Kalahaṁsas, *Cakravākas* and other types of (acquatic) birds too. These were the birds given birth to and their sons and grandsons were infinite.

330. Garuḍa's children have been enumerated. Listen to the progeny of Irā. Irā gave birth to three daughters with eyes like lotuses.

331. They were Latā, Vallī and Vīrudhā. They are the mothers of all types of plants, trees and creepers.

332. Latā gave birth to *Vanaspatis* i.e. the non-flowering plants growing on the banks of rivers etc. She herself gave birth to *Vṛkṣas* or trees with flowers and fruits.

333. *Valli* gave birth to hedges, grasses and bamboo etc. of the same species. Vīrudhā gave birth to *Virudhās* i.e. creepers spreading all round. The description of the race is concluded here.

334. Thus the mobile and the immobile progeny of Kaśyapa have been enumerated. The whole Universe is filled with their sons and grandsons.

335. Thus a portion of the entire creation has been enumerated. The *Prajāsarga* of Mārīca (Kaśyapa) has been succinctly narrated. O Brāhmaṇas, it cannot be explained (in details) even in hundreds of years.

336. Aditi was of righteous, pious temperament. Diti is remembered as strong-minded. Surabhi was inclined towards the performance of penance. Danu was of a deceitful nature.

337. Kadrū was of ruthless mind. Krauñcī was disposed towards learning. Irā had the receptive capacity. Danāyu was interested in taking food.

338. Vinatā was capable of bearing burdens. Tāmrā was habituated to use nooses and strings. These are the natures and temperaments of the mothers of the worlds.

339. In piety, conduct, intellect, patience and strength they had the traits of qualities Sattva, Rājas and Tamas. Hence they were both righteous and unrighteous.

340. The bosom-born progeny of Kaśyapa were born with the traits of their mothers. (They were) Devas, Asuras, Gandharvas, Yakṣas, Rākṣasas, serpents, Piśācas, animals, deer, birds and creepers.

341. Since these were born of the daughters of Dakṣa who were human beings, hence human beings are the most excellent in all the Manvantaras.

342. Human beings are the aspirants of Dharma (Virtue) Artha (Wealth), Kāma (Love) and Mokṣa (Salvation). Therefore, Suras and Asuras are born as *Adhaḥ-srotas* (downward flow).

343. They are born again and again among human beings for the purpose of achieving their object. Thus the origin of the race of ascetics has been recounted.

344-346. The meritorious story of Suras, Asuras, Gandharvas, Apsaras-s, Yakṣas, Rākṣasas, Piśācas, Suparṇas, serpents, birds, pythons, peacocks, all medicinal herbs, worms, germs, insects, insignificant creatures born in water, animals and glorious Brāhmaṇas, is conducive to longevity and wealth. It is pleasing and beneficial. It is meritorious. It must be heard always and retained by one who is devoid of malice and jealousy.

347. He who regularly reads this story of the race (of ascetics) of noble souls in the assembly of Brāhmaṇas and physicians will attain children, abundant wealth and prosperity and the glorious goal after death.

CHAPTER NINE

The Race of Sages

Sūta said :

1-2. Thus when the entire mobile and immobile creations had been created and established by the noble-souled Kaśyapa, he the chief Prajāpati, crowned (the chiefs of them)

as their Lords and began to assign them their respective domains in due order.[1]

3. He crowned Soma (the Moon) in the kingdom of the twice-born Brāhmaṇas, Kṣattriyas and Vaiśyas, creepers, constellations, planets, Yajñas and penance.

4. He made Bṛhaspati the lord of all the descendants of Aṅgiras. He crowned Śukra as the ruler over the realm of Bhṛgus.

5. He made Viṣṇu, the lord of Ādityas; Fire-god the lord of Vasus; Dakṣa the lord of Prajāpatis; and Vāsava (Indra) the lord of Maruts.

6. He made Prahlāda, the delighter of Diti, the king of Daityas : Nārāyaṇa the king of Sādhyas; and the Bull-bannered lord (Śiva) the king of Rudras.

7. He directed Vipracitti to be the king of Dānavas. He ordered Varuṇa to be the king of waters. He made Vaiśravaṇa (Kubera) the lord of Yakṣas, Rākṣasas and the wealth of (worldly) kings.

8. He coronated Yama, the son of Vivasvān (the Sun), in the kingdom of Pitṛs, and the trident-bearing Girīśa in the kingdom of all the Bhūtas and Piśācas.

9. He made Himavān the ruler of mountains; ocean, of the rivers; and Citraratha the ruler of Gandharvas.

10. He crowned Uccaiśśravas as the king of horses, tiger as the king of deer and cows, and bulls the lords of quadrupeds.

11. He made Garuḍa the most excellent among flying beings, the lord of all birds. He made Māruta the lord of scents and unembodied beings.

12. He made Vāyu, the most excellent among strong beings, the lord of sound, sky and strength. He made Śeṣa, the lord of all fanged (reptiles), and Vāsuki the lord of serpents.

13. He made Takṣaka, the lord of vipers, serpents and reptiles. He crowned Parjanya, one of the Ādityas, as the lord of oceans, rivers, clouds and rains.

14-15. He crowned Kāmadeva the king of all groups of Apsaras-s.

---

1. Verses 1-20 enumerate the heads of different categories of creation. Here one is reminded of the Vibhūtiyoga (BG.X).

He made Saṁvatsara (Year) the lord of *Ṛtus* (seasons), months and groups of seasons, fortnights (*Ārtavas*), *Vipakṣas* (the day of transition from one half of a lunar month to another), Muhūrtas, Parvans, Kāṣṭhās, Kalās and their magnitudes, the movements and the transits (of the Sun), of mathematical calculations and Yogas (astronomical divisions of time or combinations of Stars).

16. The Prajāpati crowned Sudhāman, the famous son of Rajas, as the king in the eastern quarter.

17. In the western quarter, he crowned the noble-souled Ketumān, the unerring son of Rajas, the king.

18. He made Vaivasvata Manu the lord of human beings. The entire earth consisting of seven continents along with the towns therein, is being ruled righteously by them in their respective areas.

19. They had been crowned formerly by Brahmā in the Svāyaṁbhuva Manvantara. Only those who become Manu are consecrated as kings.

20. In the Manvantaras that have passed, these kings (had ruled and) passed away. When the Manvantaras occur again, others will be crowned again. All the kings, past and future, are proclaimed as Lords of Manvantaras.

21. Pṛthu was crowned by these excellent men at the time of Rājasūya. The valorous king was made so in accordance with the injunctions of the Vedas.

22-23. The lord of Prajās, Kaśyapa, procreated these sons, for the purpose of the continuity of the progeny. Thereafter, desirous of his own lineage, he performed a severe penance. He contemplated—"May sons, the founders of the lineage, be born to me".

24. As Kaśyapa, the noble soul, contemplated, two powerful sons born of Brahmā's part were born to him.

25. They were Vatsara and Asita. Both of them were propounders of Brahman. Nidhruva and Raibhya of great fame were born of Vatsara.

26. The Raibhyas should be known as the (descendants) of Raibhya. Understand (those) of Nidhruva. Cyavana begot Sumedhas of Sukanyā.

27. Nidhruva's wife[1] was the mother of Kuṇḍapāyins. Brahmiṣṭha (Devala in Bd.P.) was born of Ekaparṇā and Asita.

28. On hearing (i.e. paying heed to) the words of Śāṇḍilya, Devala became excessively famous. Nidhruvas, Śāṇḍilyas and Raibhyas all these three formed the Kāśyapa Gotra later[2].

29. Vara (Vajrī i.e. Indra in Bd. P.) and other Devas are the progeny of Devala. These subjects function in Dvāpara Yuga that remains (i.e. occurs) after eleven cycles of the sets of four Yugas have passed.

30. Cariṣyanta (Nairiṣyanta in Bd. P.) was the son of Mānasa and his son was Dama. Mānasa who was well-known as Tṛṇabindu, was his heir and successor.

31. In the beginning of the third Tretā Yuga, he became the king. His daughter Iḍaviḍā was unrivalled in her beauty. The saintly king gave her to Pulastya.

32. The sage Viśravas was born of Iḍaviḍā. He had four wives who made the family of Pulastya flourish.

33. Bṛhaspati, the preceptor of the Devas, had a famous daughter named Devavarṇinī. He (Viśravas) married that girl.

34. He (Viśravas) married Puṣpotkaṭā and Vākā, the daughters of Mālyavān as well as Kaikasī, the daughter of Mālin. Listen to their progeny.

35. Devavarṇinī gave birth to his eldest son Vaiśravaṇa who had divine fate and saintly learning, (but) had the form of a Rākṣasa and the strength of an Asura.

36-37. He had three feet, a huge body, stout head, a large chin[3], eight fangs, green moustache, pike-like ears and red complexion. His arms were short and long (i.e. one short, one long). He was yellowish in colour (?) and very terrible to look at. He had the knowledge of the illusory world. He was enlightened with knowledge.

---

1. Sumedhas as per Bd. P.

2. Bd. P. 2.3.8.33 reads *pakṣāḥ* for *paścāt* here. It means 'Nidhruvas, Śāṇḍilyas, Raibhyas are three branches of Kāśyapa Gotra'.

3. *Mahātanum* in the text is a tautology. It should be *mahā-hanum* as in Bd. P. ibid V. 42.

38. On seeing such a son assuming a cosmic form, the father himself said—"This is *Kubera* (ugly-bodied one)".[1]

39. The word '*Ku*' is used to indicate contempt. The body is mentioned by the word *Bera*. Hence he is called *Kubera* because his body was deformed.

40. Since he was the child of Viśravas and he appeared like Viśravas, he will be known in the world by the name Vaiśravaṇa.

41. Kubera begot of Ṛddhi the famous (son) Nalakūbara. Kaikasī gave birth to four children Rāvaṇa, Kumbhakarṇa and Vibhīṣaṇa (the three sons and) a daughter Śūrpaṇakhā.

42-45. (Rāvaṇa) had pike-like ears and ten necks.[2] He was yellowish in colour with red hair. He had four feet and twenty arms. He was huge-bodied and very powerful. From his very birth, he resembled collyrium. He had fang-like teeth. His neck was red. He was like Rājasena (?) and was endowed with good features and strength. He was intellectually truthful. He had a firm body. He (was surrounded) by Rākṣasas. Naturally he was terribe and ruthless. He was called Rāvaṇa because he roared.

That king was Hiraṇyakaśipu in his previous birth. That Rākṣasa king ruled for thirteen cycles of four Yugas.

46-48. His span of life as reckoned by Brāhmaṇas, experts in calculation, extended to five crores and sixtyone lakhs of years. For sixty lakhs of years[3], this Rāvaṇa made Devas and Sages terribly sleepless (by means of his atrocities). In the twenty-fourth Tretāyuga, when his merit of penance declined, he met Rāma, the son of Daśaratha, (in battle) and was slain along with his followers.

---

1. Etymology of 'Kubera', the god of wealth.

2. The Purāṇa-writer entertained fantastic ideas about Rāvaṇa. Jaina Rāmāyaṇas give a sober and a more realistic picture of Rāvaṇa, e.g. Rāvaṇa was one-headed but due to the reflection of his face in the nine precious stones of his necklace, he was (poetically) called 'ten-headed'.

3. Rāvaṇa's harrasment is not thus delimited elsewhere. It should be a part of his span of life. Bd. P. 2.3.8.53 correctly reads *Ṣaṣṭiṁ caiva sahasrāṇi* 'sixty thousand years' as a part of Rāvaṇa's total life. For, a set of the four Yugas=4320000 years, thirteen such sets=56160000 years. Rāvaṇa is credited with this span.

49. Mahodara, Prahasta, Mahāpārśu and Khara were the sons of Puṣpotkaṭā and Kumbhīnasī was her daughter.

50. Triśiras, Dūṣaṇa, the Rākṣasa Vidyujjihva and the daughter Asalikā are remembered as the children of Vākā.

51. These are the ten Rākṣasa descendants of Pulastya. They were cruel in their activities. All of their followers were terrible and unassailable even by Devas.

52-55. All of them had secured boons. All of them were endowed with sons and grandsons.

Aiḍaviḍa (i.e. Kubera) whose left side was yellowish in colour and who was the descendant of Pulastya was the king of all these—all the Yakṣas, all the Rākṣasas belonging to the family of Pulastya, the cruel Brahmarākṣasas of the families of Agastya and Viśvāmitra, who were engaged in the study of the Vedas and who performed penance and holy rites.

Then, there were the other Rākṣasas called Yajñamukhas. Hence there are three groups of Rākṣasas: Yātudhānas, Brahmadhānas and Vārtas. These are *Divācaras* (moving about during the day). There are four groups of *Niśācaras* (those who wander in the night) who have been remembered (by wise sages).

56. Thus, there are seven classes of Rākṣasas (including the above three and the following four groups) : Paulastyas, Nairṛtas, Āgastyas and Kauśikas.

57-63. I shall describe the natural features of all these (Rākṣasas)[1] : They had round eyes. They were yellowish in colour. They had huge bodies and bellies. They had eight fangs; pikelike ears and hairs standing upright. They had their mouths extending (as if) upto the ears. Some had hair like the Muñja grass. Some had smoke-coloured upright hair. Some had stout heads shedding white lustre. Some were short-statured. Some had long arms. Some had copper-coloured faces. Some had long (dangling down) tongues and lips. Some had long eyebrows and stout noses. Some were blue-bodied with red necks and majestic eyes. They were terrific. They were excessively terrible-voiced and hideous. They went in groups. They were stout with promi-

1. Superstitions about Rākṣasas current at the time of Vā. P.

nent protruding noses. Their bodies were sturdy like rocks. They had terrible kinsmen and generally they were cruel, indulging in painful activities. They used to wear (ornaments like) earrings, bracelets and coronets. They wore crowns and turbans. They had diverse garments and ornaments. They wore garlands of variegated flowers. They applied fragrant scents and unguents. Some were flesh eaters and some ate cooked food. They are remembered as man-eaters. These attributes of Rākṣasas, common to many of them, have been enunciated by scholars. The full extent of their strength is not known because it is effected by Māyā.

64-65. The deer, all the fanged beasts of prey, Bhūtas, Piśācas, serpents, bees, elephants, monkeys, Kinnaras, Yamakiṁpuruṣas[1] (?) and all those mentioned by me as born of Krodhavaśā—all these were Pulaha's sons.

66. In that Vaivasvata Manvantara, Kratu is remembered as childless. He had neither a son nor a grandson. He remained with fully controlled splendour (semen) (i.e. He was celibate).

67. I shall now recount the lineage of Atri[2], the third Prajāpati. He had ten chaste and beautiful wives.

68-69. Bhadrāśva begot of Ghṛtācī the Apsaras, ten daughters. They were:Bhadrā, Śūdrā, Madrā, Śaladā, Maladā, Velā, Khalā, these seven and Gocapalā, Mānarasā and Ratnakūṭā.

70-71. The founder of the lineage of Atri was famous by the name of Prabhākara (the originator of lustre). He was their husband. He begot of Bhadrā, the famous son Soma (the Moon). When the Sun, struck by Rāhu, was falling down towards the earth from the sky, the whole world was enveloped in darkness and it was he (the sage Atri) who spread light everywhere whereby be got the name Prabhākara.

72. While the Sun was falling the words 'welfare unto you' were addressed to him. At these words of the Brāhmaṇa sage Atri (the Sun) did not fall on the earth from heaven.

73. Atri who was the performer of great penance founded excellent Gotras. Among Yajñas (the one called) *Atrighana* (?) is initiated by Suras.

---

1. Māyu-Kiṁpuriṣas in Bd. P.
2. The race of Atri is described in vv. 67-78.

74-76. He begot of them ten sons, all equal to him. They had no names. All the ten were purified by great penance. They were the sages famous by the name 'Svastyātreyas.' They were masters of Vedas. Among them, two were very famous, powerful and expounders of Brahman the eldest was Dattātreya and Durvāsas was his younger brother. The youngest daughter was Abalā who expounded Brahman. In this connection, the former (ancient) Paurāṇikas cite this verse.

77. Those who are conversant with Purāṇas say that Atri's son Dattātreya is embodied Viṣṇu. The noble-souled one is free from sins and tranquil in mind.

78. Four persons born in his spiritual lineage were famous on the earth. They were Śyāmas, Mudgalas, Balārakas and Gaviṣṭhiras. These are remembered as the groups of very powerful men.

79. From Kaśyapa Nārada, Parvata and Arundhatī were born. O excellent ones, (listen to and) understand (the sons)of Arundhatī.

80. Nārada gave Arundhatī (in marriage) to Vasiṣṭha.[1] Due to the curse of Dakṣa, the brilliant Nārada (was compelled to be) celibate.

81. Formerly when there was a great battle between Devas and Asuras, called Tārakāmaya, the whole world was oppressed by drought and Śakra was aggrieved along with Suras. The intelligent Vasiṣṭha sustained all the subjects by means of his penance.

82. Making use of the medicinal herbs, fruits and roots (the sage) sympathetically enlivened them.

83. (Defective Verse) O Brāhmaṇas, Vasiṣṭha begot Śakti of Arundhatī. Adṛśyantī (wife of Śakti) bore Parāśara to Śakti on the seashore (?)

84. Kālī bore Kṛṣṇadvaipāyana, the holy lord, to Parāśara. From Dvaipāyana, Śuka, endowed with good qualities, was born, at the Araṇi (the sacrificial twig with which fire is produced by attrition).

1. The lineage of Vasiṣṭha is described in vv. 80-90. A comparison of the race of sages as given in other Purāṇas e.g. *Matsya Purāṇa* shows many dissimilarities in the names of descendants though some names are common.

85-86. The following six children were born of Pīvarī to Śuka: five sons, viz. Bhūriśravas, Prabhu, Śaṁbhu, Kṛṣṇa and Gaura and a daughter Kīrtimatī by name. She was firm in her holy rites and a Yogic mother. She was the wife of Sāttvaguha and the mother of Brahmadatta.

87. There were eight groups (spiritual lineage) of Parāśaras of noble souls. They were Śvetas, Kṛṣṇas, Gauras, Śyāmas, Dhūmras, Samūlikas, Dārakas, the imbibers of hot (drinks?) (Ūṣmapas) and Nīlas.

88. Henceforth, understand the progeny of Indrapratima. Kuśīti, who was born of Kapiñjalī-Ghṛtācī to Vasiṣṭha is called Indrapratima.

89. Vasu was his son born of Pṛthu's daughter. Upamanyu was his son whose (descendants) were these Upamanyus.

90. Kuṇḍins who were famous as descendants of Mitrā-Varuṇa have one spiritual lineage. Others are well-known as Vasiṣṭhas. These are the eleven Gotras of Vasiṣṭhas.

91. Thus these eight renowned mental sons of Brahmā have been recounted. They were blessed brothers and their spiritual lineages have been established.

92. They sustain these three worlds consisting of groups of Devas and sages. Their sons and grandsons are hundreds and thousands. By them the entire Earth is pervaded as with the rays of the Sun.

CHAPTER TEN

The Procedure of Śrāddha[1]

1. After hearing this narrative of Sūta, the knower of Ātman, the Brāhmaṇas, subsequently asked him as follows :

1. *Śrāddha* is a form of ancestor worship. It is based on the belief in after-death survival of the deceased ancestors and their residence in a particular region called *Pitṛ-loka*. It is an important topic and forms an integral part of Hindu Dharmaśāstra. This belief is pre-Vedic as it dates back to the Indo-Iranian period (*vide* S.B.E. IV, p. 262). Ancestor-worship was regarded essential for the continuation of one's race and prosperity to

Śāṁśapāyana said :

2. How was Bhavānī who was formerly Satī, born for the second time ? She was Dākṣāyaṇī at first. How did she become Umā ?

3. The king of mountains begot her of Menā, the daughter of Pitṛs. Who were these Pitṛs whose mental daughter was Menā ?

4-5. (Who are the Pitṛs) whose grandson was Maināka and whose grand-daughters were Umā, Ekaparṇā, Ekapāṭalā and Gaṅgā, the most excellent one among rivers as well as the eldest of them all ? Even before this, all this has been already desired to be pointed out (by you). Please listen to all my requests.

6. Are there many Pitṛs ?[1] And then where do they stay ? Welfare unto you. I wish to hear the great procedure of Śrāddha.

7. Whose sons are they (*Pitṛs*) remembered to be ? How are they the Pitṛs ? How were the Pitṛs born and whose sons were they ? Of what nature are they ?

8. Are there other Pitṛs who are deities (i.e. worthy of worship) unto the Devas in heaven ? Thus I wish to hear the excellent creation of Pitṛs and how the Śrāddha performed by us (as per prescribed injunctions) propitiates Pitṛs.

9. What is regarded (in the Smṛtis) as the reason of their being not visible ? What types of Pitṛs stay in heaven and what types in hell ?

10-11. What Śrāddhas are to be offered (to Pitṛs) ? How do these Śrāddhas reach Pitṛs—the Śrāddhas that are offered uttering the names of father, father's father and great-grandfathter against the three rice-balls (*Piṇḍas*) ? How are they (Pitṛs), if stationed in hell, competent to grant benefits ?

12. Who are these called by the name Pitṛs ? Whom shall we worship again ? We have heard that even Devas in heaven worship Pitṛs.

---

one's family. The Gṛhya Sūtras and old Smṛtis like Manu and Yājñavalkya prescribe the procedure of Śrāddha which is generally followed in Purāṇas such as A.P. 163.2-42, G.P.I-210, K.P. II. 22.20-62, N.P. Ch. 28., Bd.P. 2.3-Chs. 9-20.

1. Verses 6-13 record all questions, doubts etc. about the performance of Śrāddha.

13. O extremely learned one, we wish to hear this in detail. It behoves you to explain the significance of this clearly.

14. On hearing the words of the sages, Sūta, the seer of reality, said in accordance with the questions and the desire in the minds of the sages.

Sūta said :

15. I shall describe to you (in detail) what I have heard (regarding Śrāddha), in accordance with my intellectual ability. In every Manvantara, Pitṛs are born as the sons of Devas.

16. In the past and the future Manvantaras, they are respectively the eldest and the youngest. I shall precisely recount the Pitṛs who have gone in the past Manvantaras along with Devas and who exist at present.

17. A *Śrāddha* of the human beings is what is offered with faith. Brahmā created Devas but they did not worship him. They forsook him and desirous of fruits for themselves created themselves* (?)

18. They were cursed by Brahmā—"O deluded ones! You will all become devoid of sense." They did not know anything. Then the whole world became deluded.

19. All of them bowed to god Brahmā and implored him. In order to bless the worlds, the lord spoke to them again.

20. "Perform expiatory rites for the transgression which has been committed. Ask your sons and therefrom you will attain knowledge."

21. Desirous of knowing (the procedure of) expiatory rites, Devas controlled themselves duly and asked their own sons mutually.

22. Those sons who were conversant with real Dharma and possessed self-control, explained to them the various modes of expiatory rites—verbal, mental and physical.

23. The heaven-dwellers who regained their senses became delighted and spoke to their sons—"You are our fathers (Pitṛs), since we are enlightened by you. What boon should be granted—virtue, knowledge or love?".

---

*Bd. P. 2.3.9.16 reads *ayajan* 'They worshipped themselves (instead of god Brahmā)'— a better reading than *asṛjan* of our text.

24. Then Brahmā spoke to them—"You are the speakers of truth. Hence what is spoken by you shall be so and not otherwise.

25. This is what is uttered by you—your own sons have been mentioned by you as your Pitṛs (fathers). They will be your Pitṛs. Let this boon be given to them."

26. On account of the words of Brahmā, Parameṣṭhin, the sons (Pitṛs) attained the status of fathers (of Devas) and Devas, the real fathers, the status of sons.

27. Hence it is declared (in Dharma-Śāstra) that the sons (of Devas) are Pitṛs and the status of Pitṛ-hood is proclaimed about them.

After declaring in this manner that the fathers are the sons and the sons as Pitṛs (fathers), god Brahmā addressed to them again for the development of their own selves.

28. "If anyone will perform any holy rite without worshipping Pitṛs in a Śrāddha, Rākṣasas and Dānavas will obtain the fruit (good results) thereof.

29. The Pitṛs propitiated and developed by means of Śrāddhas (develop) the imperishable Soma. Propitiated and developed by you all, they will always increase.

30. Soma (the Moon-god) strengthened and developed by means of Śrāddhas, will develop the people and the entire world, along with mountains and forests surrounded (=inhabited) by mobile and immobile beings.

31. Those men, who, desirous of nourishment, perform Śrāddhas are always granted development and progeny by Pitṛs.

32-33. Those (Pitṛs) to whom they (the performers of Śrāddha) offer three balls of rice (*Piṇḍas*) mentioning their names and Gotra up to great-grandfather, they (Pitṛs) who are present (everywhere), strengthen and develop their progeny by that offering of Śrāddha."

Such a behest has been declared formerly by the supreme god (*Parameṣṭhi*) Brahmā. It is by their grace that *Dāna* (charitable gift), *Adhyayana* (Vedic Study) and *Tapas* (Penance) fructify.

34. There is no doubt in this that Pitṛs grant you perfect knowledge.

In this manner Pitṛs are Devas and Devas are Pitṛs. Devas and Pitṛs are reciprocally Pitṛs.[1]

35. After hearing these words of Sūta possessing self-knowledge, the sages asked him again subsequently :

The Sages said :

36. How many are the groups of these Pitṛs ? At what time did those groups (come into existence)—Pitṛs who were the excellent ancestors of Devas and who developed and strengthened Soma?

Sūta said :

37. I shall recount to you the most excellent creation of Pitrs. This is the same question which had been formerly put to his father Bṛhaspati by Śaṁyu.

38. As Bṛhaspati, the great expert in all fields of knowledge, was seated, his son Śaṁyu endowed with humility, put this question.

39. "Who are these Pitṛs? What are their names? How were they born? How did they attain Pitṛ-hood?

40. What is the reason for which Pitṛs are worshipped at the outset in every Yajña? All the holy rites of noble souls begin with the performance of Śrāddhas.

41. To whom all these Śrāddhas are to be offered? What is the great benefit when they are offered? In which of the holy centres and sacred rivers does the Śrāddha performance yield ever-lasting benefit?

42. What are those holy centres in Which excellent Brāhmaṇas (ought to) perform Śrāddha to obtain all (desired) benefits? What is the (proper) time for Śrāddha? What is the procedure to be followed?

43. O holy sire, I wish that what has been enquired by me be explained in detail in the proper sequence."

---

1. Verses 20-34 explain the paradox why Pitṛs who were the sons of Devas became the fathers of their own fathers ? Manu III. 201, however, differs and states that Pitṛs sprang from Sages and from Pitṛs were born Devas (gods) and human beings.

44. On being asked thus clearly and specifically, the highly intelligent Bṛhaspati, the most excellent of those who understand (the implications of) questions, answered all the questions in the proper order.

Bṛhaspati said :

45. O dear one! I shall explain the solemn excellent question which you ask me with due propriety and proper humility.

46-47. At that time, there was neither the heaven nor the firmament, neither the earth nor the stars nor the quarters, neither the sun, nor the moon, nor the day, nor the night. O dear, the whole Universe was in complete darkness. Brahmā alone performed an austere penance difficult for others to perform.

48. Śaṁyu again spoke to his father who was the most excellent among the knowers of Brahman, who always performed holy ablutions in the form of rites and who was the most excellent of all knowers of perfect knowledge.

49. "What sort of a penance did Prajāpati, the lord of all living beings perform?"

Thus addressed, *Bṛhaspati* of excessive refulgence, *spoke* to him.

50. Of all types of penance, *Yukti* i.e. Yoga penance is the most excellent. Meditating on it, the lord then created all the worlds by means of that Yoga.

51. The past and future (items of) knowledge, the entire worlds and Vedas were created after practising Yoga by Brahmā, by means of his Yogic vision.

52. The worlds, the heaven are named '*Sāntānikas*' where the shining deities of the Devas well-known as 'Vairājas' stay.

53. Even at the outset then, the lord Brahmā, endowed with Yoga and penance, had created Devas after practising the eternal Yoga.

54. They are well known as *Ādidevas* (the primordial Devas). They have great splendour and energy. They are the bestowers of all desires. They are worthy of being worshipped by Devas, Dānavas and human beings.

55. There are seven groups of those Devas. They are worshipped by all the three worlds. Three of them are *Amūrtis* (devoid of forms) and four of them have splendid forms.

56. The three sets which have conceptual forms (*Bhāva mūrtis*) are stationed above. The four *Sūkṣmamūrtis* (having subtle forms) are stationed beneath them.

57. Thereafter, the (common) Devas are stationed and then the earth. This is the situation of the series of worlds. They (the groups of Devas) are stationed in this world. The clouds take their origin from them, rain-showers are due to them and, thanks to rain-showers, the worlds (and people) are created again.

58. Since they develop and strengthen the moon and the food-grains and make them flourish by means of Yogic power, they called them the Pitṛs of the world. They (Pitṛs) are the most excellent ones in the world.

59. They are as speedy as mind. *Svadhā* constitutes their diet. They have every requisite they desire. They are devoid of greed, delusion and fear. They are certainly devoid of sorrow.

60. After giving up Yoga, they have attained the worlds beautiful and pleasant to look at. They become divine, meritorious and sinless noble souls.

61. At the end of a thousand Yugas, they become expounders of Brahman. Regaining the Yogic power once again., they attain salvation in a bodiless state.

62. They forsake both the manifest and unmanifest (bodies) by means of their great Yogic power and perish (vanish) like a meteor or like the fading flash of lightning in the sky.

63. By abandoning all the bodies (and other adjuncts) by means of their great Yogic power, they attain the state of namelessness like rivers merging into the ocean.

64. Engaged everyday in holy rites and the worship of preceptors, Pitṛs develop their Yogic power and satisfyall (make them flourish).

65. Propitiated in Śrāddha, Pitṛs nourish Soma (the Moon) making use of their Yogic power whereby the three worlds sustain their lives.

66. Hence Śrāddhas must always be offered to Yogins[1] with (special efforts). Indeed, the mainstay of Pitṛs is Yoga and from (thanks to) Yoga the Moon functions.

67. One may feed thousands of Brāhmaṇas or as many as do come, but listen that one knower of Yogas, if delighted, deserves all (propitiating a Yogin is as fruitful as feeding thousands of Brāhmaṇas).

68. What is taken in by a thousand invited (ordinary Brāhmaṇas), or by a hundred *Snātakas* (Brāhmaṇas initiated into householder's life) or by one master of Yoga saves one from great fear.

69. One Yogin excels a thousand householders, a hundred *Vānaprasthas* (Forest-hermits) and a thousand *Brahmacārins* (celibate students).

70. Prajāpati has ordained : "(One may be) an atheist, an evil-doer, a person of mixed caste or a thief, (but) he cannot have redemption[2] (*Tāraṇam*) from anything else, except (by offering) a charitable gift unto those who have Yogic power.

71. His ancestors are delighted like the husbandmen by a good timely rain, even if his son or grandson feeds a (Yogic) meditator.

72. If meditating mendicants are not available, one should feed two Brahmacārins. When they too are not available, one should feed a householder not much engrossed in worldly affairs."

73. It is the injunction of Brahmā that a meditating Yogin is greater than one who (performs penance) for a hundred years standing on one leg and taking in nothing but air.

74-76. The Siddhas roam over the Earth in the guise of Brāhmaṇas. Hence one should approach the in-coming guest with palms joined in reverence. He should honour him with the vessel containing materials of worship. He shall offer him place of residence and food. The masters of Yoga assume diverse forms

---

1. Verses 66-64 emphasize the importance of feeding a Yogin at the time of Śrāddha. This is specifically re-iterated in a later chapter. It shows the deep regard for Yogins in ancient times.

Cf. VP. 15.23-24, Varāha P. 14.18-19.

2. *Kāraṇam* in the text is irrelevant and obscure. Hence *Tāraṇam*, the reading in Bd. P. ibid V. 71 is accepted.

and always roam over the ocean-girt earth. They are (no less than) Devas. They protect the people righteously. Hence every man should offer charitable gifts to a Brāhmaṇa guest. I shall recount those charitable gifts and the fruits thereof.

77-79. Housing the Yogins is far better than thousands of horse-sacrifices, hundreds of Rājasūya sacrifices and thousands of Puṇḍarīka sacrifices. The first of those seven groups of Pitṛs of unmeasured brilliance, has been recounted. This group exists always with the conception of Time[1] (?) Henceforth I shall narrate again all the groups of Pitṛs, their progeny, their situation and their *Bhāvanā* (conception) in the proper order.

CHAPTER ELEVEN[2]

The Birth of Skanda:
Rules Prescribed for Śrāddha

Sūta said:

1. In heaven, there are seven excellent groups of highly intelligent Pitṛs. Four of them have forms and three are formless (*Amūrta*).[3] Understand as I shall recount their creative activity in the world.

2-4. (I shall describe) those who are proclaimed (in Smṛtis) as their daughters and daughters' sons. There are three excellent groups of those who assume Dhārmic bodies and forms. I shall briefly recount their names and creative activity. The disembodied groups of Pitṛs, the sons of Prajāpati, abide in the shining worlds named Virajas. O Brāhmaṇas, they belong to Virajas. Hence they are famous as excellent Vairājas. I have thus mentioned the first group of Vairājas.

---

1. 'Sanctifying the worlds'—Bd. P. V. 76.
2. This chapter is textually similar to Bd. P. 9.3.10. Reference are given to verses in that chapter.
3. For similar seven divisions of Pitṛs *vide* Pd. P. V.9.2-3, Bd. P. V-1.

5. Their fair-complexioned mental daughter Menā is the wife of the great mountain Himavān. From her the son Maināka was born.

6. The mountain Maināka, the holder of all medicinal herbs, the mine of all gems, the holy leader of mountains, was born of her. Krauñca was his son.

7. The king of mountains procreated three daughters of Menā, viz. Aparṇā, Ekaparṇā and the third Ekapāṭalā.

8. Two of them had support (They had their permanent abodes). But Aparṇā performed penance without an abode. Ekaparṇā had a Nyagrodha tree as her abode and Ekapāṭalā had Pāṭala (trumpet flower) tree as her abode. For a hundred thousand years, they performed such a penance as was difficult to be performed even by Devas and Dānavas.

9. A single leaf was the diet of Ekaparṇā and a single Pāṭala flower (trumpet flower) was the diet of Ekapāṭalā.

10. Both of them took their food once, (when) a thousand years had been completed. One of the daughters (viz. Aparṇā) remained without taking food. Their mother spoke to her thus.

11-12. Out of affection, the distressed mother forbade her with the words "*U*" "*Mā*" (O daughter ! do not). Since she was addressed thus by her mother, the blessed gentle lady performing the difficult task (penance) became famous as "*Umā*". The auspicious lady got the name derived from her action.[1]

13. The world of (supported by ?) these three ladies will survive for ever. It will be proud of (*dṛptam*) their penance, while the earth lasts.

14. All the three, endowed with Yogic power, sustained their bodies by means of their penance. All those blessed gentle ladies possessed permanent youth.

15. All of them were expounders of Brahman. All of them were celibate. Umā was the greatest (eldest), the most excellent (girl) of the fairest complexion.

---

1. Kālidāsa refers to this in Kumārasaṁbhava I.26
umeti mātrā tapaso niṣiddhā /
paścād umākhyāṃ sumukhī jagāma //

16. Endowed with great Yogic power, she attained Mahādeva (as her husband). Her adopted[1] son was Uśanas, the son of Bhṛgu.

17. Ekaparṇā was the wife of Asita. She was chaste and firm in her holy vows. She was given to that intelligent master of Yoga by Himavān. She gave birth to the mental son Devala who was engrossed in meditation on Brahman.

18. Ekapāṭalā, the third of these daughters, wooed Jaigīṣavya, the son of Śataśilāka, as her husband.

19. His sons Śaṅkha and Likhita,[2] are remembered as not born of the womb. Thus (these) are the blessed and auspicious daughters of Himavān.

20. Rudrāṇī was the best among them. She excelled others by her good attributes. Between Umā and Śaṅkara the mutual love (was ideal).

21. On realising that they were in close embrace, the slayer of Vṛtra (i.e. Indra) became apprehensive. (Fire-god) was sent near them by Indra who was afraid of the birth of a child from them engaged in sexual intercourse.

22. (He said to Agni) "O Fire-god, create an impediment in their sexual intercourse. You are present everywhere. So there cannot be any blame (on you in your going there)".

23. When he was told thus, Fire-god acted accordingly. Forsaking (i.e. aside from) the body of Umā, the semen virile was discharged on the ground (by Śiva).

24. O Śāṁśapāyana, then Fire-god was cursed by the infuriated goddess. With words choked with anger, she spoke to Fire-god thus:

25. "O Fire, since you have caused an impediment in sexual intercourse even before I had been satisfied, therefore you have committed an action which you should not have committed, you evil-minded one !

26. Since the lustrous semen virile of Rudra has not been retained (in my womb), you should hold the foetus yourself by way of punishment (for this act)".

---

1. The reading *danta-kāṇvośanā* is obscure. Bd. P. 2.3.10.18 reads *dattakaścośanas* etc. is clear and is supported by Purāṇas. Hence its acceptance here.

2. Smṛti works are attributed to them, though the antiquity of those works is doubtful.

27. Fire-god, who, due to the wrathful curse of Rudrāṇī, had to carry the foetus within himself, retained it for a number of years, O Brāhmaṇas.

28. Approaching (the river) Gaṅgā, he said—"O excellent river, may this be heard. Excessive distress is caused to me by the retention of the foetus.

29. O river, for my relief and welfare, please carry this foetus. Due to my gracious favour, your trouble will be less".

30. Saying "So be it", the highly delighted great river held the foetus (although) with a mind burning (as there was burning sensation within her).

31. Distressed by the great pain though she was, she retained the foetus for a long time.

32. The foetus was dropped into an auspicious crevasse of Himavān by her. There is an auspicious forest named Śaravaṇa where diverse trees were in bloom. It was there that she deposited the foetus that was blazing like fire.

33. It was there that the son of Rudra, Agni and Gaṅgā was born. He had rosy lustre. He was valorous and brilliant like hundreds of suns.

34. When that blessed son (Kumāra) of Jāhnavī (Gaṅgā) was born, the sky was covered (crowded) with aerial cars, as if by birds.

35. Celestial drums produced sweet sound in the sky. Siddhas and Cāraṇas moving about in the sky discharged showers of flowers.

36. The chief Gandharvas, Yakṣas, Vidyādharas and all the Siddhas and Kinnaras sang (laudatory songs) everywhere.

37. Thousands of great serpents and excellent birds approached with reverence the son of Śaṅkara born through Agni. Daityas, Dānavas and Rākṣasas were struck (down) by him by means of his prowess.

38. Even at the very outset, the son of Agni was observed by the wives of the Seven Sages(excepting Arundhatī) who had come there for their ablutions.

39. The lordly son of Rudra, resembling the rising sun, was surrounded by those ladies who were very affectionate (towards him), as though they were his real mothers.

40. Desirous of seeing all those ladies simultaneously, out of affection for them, the extremely lustrous son of Jāhnavī created six faces and he was very glorious.[1]

41. He was glorious and he resembled the midday sun. He had eyes like the petals of lotus. When he was born, the lustre of all the worlds was bedimmed.

42. The groups of Dānavas who could not brook Devas, had a purge (*Skandita*) when that great (deity) was born and (hence) that valorous (deity) became known as 'Skanda.'[2]

43. Because the ancient (deity), the slayer of Asuras, had been nourished (breast-fed and) nurtured by the Kṛttikās, he became famous as Kārttikeya.

44. While that enemy of Daityas was yawning, his (weapon) Śakti (spear) called Aparājitā (unvanquished) came out of his mouth, blazing with flames of fire.

45-46. For the purpose of Skanda's play, two birds named Prabhadrakas, a peacock and a cock, were created out of Garuḍa by Viṣṇu, the powerful god. A banner was given by Vāyu (Wind-god). A great Vīṇā (lute) of loud sound was presented by Sarasvatī. A goat was given by the self-born (deity) (i.e. Brahmā) and a ram was given by Śambhu.

47-48. O Brāhmaṇas, when the (mountain) Krauñca was felled down in his sport out of Māyā (his illusive power), when the rising leader of Asuras, Tāraka was also struck down, the lordly son of Agni, the valorous enemy of Daityas was crowned as commander-in-chief (of their army) by the blessed Devas including Indra and Upendra.

49-50. The commander-in-chief of the army of Devas is also called Naranāyaka (the leader of men), the harasser of the enemies of Devas, Skanda and the lord and master of all the worlds, by Pramathas, the different kinds of Devas

---

1. Mbh. *Anuśāsana* chs. 85 & 86 give a different version of Skanda's birth and the cause of his six faces.

2. According to Mbh. *Anu* 86.14. the child came to be known as Skanda due to the casting off of the semen of Śiva by Agni and Gaṅgā (*skannatvāt skandatām prāptaḥ*)

and the groups of Bhūtas, by the various mothers and the groups of Vināyakas.

[[1]Some lines are missing from the text.]

51. (While) Slipping from heaven and falling down, she saw the aerial chariots as small as a mote and in them she saw the fallen Pitṛs.

52. They were very subtle and unforsaken[2](?) (*a-parityaktān*). They were like sparks of fire imposed on sparks of fire. Falling down topsy-turvy, she appealed to them, "Save, ye".

53. She was consoled by them—"Do not be afraid". When thus urged, she became steady. Then she propitiated those Pitṛs with pitiable words.

54. Those Pitṛs spoke to the girl who fell down from her glory due to her transgression : "O lady of sparkling smiles, you are fallen from your prosperity due to your own fault. (Hence) you fall.

55. Deities (god) attain (experience) the fruits of their actions by means of the same bodies with which they perform those actions.

56. In the case of Devas, the actions fructify immediately. In the case of human beings, they fructify after death. Hence you will attain the status of the child of Amāvasu after death and will attain the fruit".

57. On being told thus (by her Pitṛs), she again propitiated Pitṛs. After meditating (for a while), they took pity on her and became pacified and pleased.

---

1. The missing lines are traceable to Bd. P. 2.3.10. vv. 53-b to 58. They are translated here to supply the lacuna: 53b-54. "It is heard that the Pitṛs named Barhiṣads are *somapas* (imbibers of Soma). The mental daughter of the Pitṛs was the river named Acchodā.

55. Those Pitṛs had never before been seen by her. She was born as their mental daughter. Hence she did not know her Pitṛs.

56-57. Transgressing those real Pitṛs, she chose Amāvasu as her father. He was traversing the sky accompanied by the Apsaras named Adrikā. He was seated in an aerial chariot in the firmament. But due to her transgression (of her real father), she was unable to move about in the sky.

58. After seeking another father (viz. Amāvasu) she slipped from her Yogic power and fell down."

After this comes verse 51 in our text.

2. But *aparivyaktān* 'not clearly visible or manifest' is a better reading in Bd. P. V. 59, as it describes their subtlety.

58-59. On foreseeing what is surely destined to happen, Devas, the Soma-imbibing Pitṛs spoke to the girl, "You will become the daughter of the noble-souled king Amāvasu who is born on the earth as a human being and thereafter attain these worlds of your own.

60. In the twenty-eighth Dvāpara Yuga you will be born of the womb of a fish; you will be the daughter of this very same king Amāvasu and (the celestial damsel) Adrikā.

61. You will give birth to the successor of the sage Parāśara. That Brāhmaṇical sage will divide the single Veda into four parts.

62-63. You alone will give birth to two sons who will heighten the glory of Mahābhiṣa (?) Śantanu—the sons Vicitravīrya, the knower of Dharma, and Citrāṅgada, the king endowed with the attributes of brilliance and strength. After giving birth to these sons, you will regain your own worlds.

64. Due to your transgression towards the Pitṛs, you will attain that despicable birth. You will become the daughter of the very same king and Adrikā.

65. After becoming (his) daughter, you will regain these worlds."

Thus addressed, she was born as Satyavatī, the daughter of a fisherman.

66. In the confluence of Gaṅgā and Yamunā, she was born of the fish Adrikā, She was born as the daughter of Amāvasu in Adrikā the fish.[1]

67. Indeed, she was the daughter of that king (being born of) the semen virile of the king.

The worlds named "Virajas" are in the firmament. There those groups (of Pitṛs) shine.

68. There the Pitṛs are the Agniṣvāttas of shining lustre. With a desire for (attaining) excellent fruits, groups of Dānavas, Yakṣas, Rākṣasas, Gandharvas, Kinnaras, Bhūtas, serpents and Piśācas worship them.

69. Thus, these sons of Pulaha, the Prajāpati, have been recounted. These groups are said to be three. They are auspicious and assumers of Dharma-form.

1. In the missing lines in the text supplemented from Bd. P. (vv. 55-58) and vv. 51-66, the Purāṇa writers have used the curse-motif to explain the unusual matrimonial life of Satyavatī.

70. Their mental daughter is (will be) famous by the name of Pīvarī. She was (will be) reputed to be a Yoginī, a Yogic wife and a Yogic mother.

71. In the (future) twenty-eighth Dvāparayuga (a sage) of great penance named Śuka will be born in the family of Parāśara.

72. O excellent Brāhmaṇas, he will be a glorious and great Yogin. Yoga (will spread) from him. He will be born of Vyāsa, from the Araṇī (a piece of wood used for the production of fire by attrition) like the smokeless fire.

73. In the (mental) daughter of the Pitṛs, he will beget these well-known Yogic preceptors, viz. Kṛṣṇa, Gaura, Prabhu, Śaṁbhu and Bhūriśruta.

74. He will beget a daughter Kīrtimatī who will be a Yoginī and a Yogic mother. She will become the queen of Aṇuha and the mother of Brahmadatta.

75-76. After begetting these children and attaining great Yogic power, he will become a great Yogin and ascetic. He will attain that goal from which there is no return. Like the rays of the sun, he will attain the status of no rebirth. The great sage will become omnipresent and liberated.

77. These three are the disembodied Pitṛs who assume Dharmic forms. There are four others. (Listen and) understand.

78. O excellent Brāhmaṇas! The Pitṛs whom I shall describe assume forms of great lustre. They are Kāvyas*, sons of Agni, Kavi (the wise one ?) born of Svadhā.

79. These are the Pitṛs shining in the worlds of Devas with their lustre amidst the luminaries. They are richly endowed with all desirable objects and the Brāhmaṇas revere them.

80. Their mental daughter was famous in heaven by

---

*The reading in our text is

utpannās te svadhāyās tu kanyā
hyagneḥ kaveḥ sutāḥ,

Here the nom. pl. *Kvayā* (*ḥ*) cannot be construed cogently as the Pitṛs are men (masculine). Bd. P. 2·3.10.85 reads *Kāvyāḥ* 'sons of Kavi' (a wise person or Śukra?) and appears plausible.

the name of Gau. Kumāra bestowed an army on her[1]. She became the beloved queen of Śukra.

81. There were thirty-one Pitṛs who heightened the glory of Bhṛgus. Their worlds were known as *Maricigarbhas* (having rays within) which envelop the heavens.

82. Those sons of Aṅgiras, nourished along with Sādhyas, are remembered as the Pitṛs Upahūtas. They shine in heaven. Looking up to them, the Pitṛ Groups of Kṣatriyas, those who are desirous of benefits, revere them.

83. Their mental daughter is well known by the name of Yaśodā. She was the wife of Viśvamahān and the daughter-in-law of Viśvaśarmin.

84.[2] The gentle lady was the mother of the saintly king Khaṭvāṅga of noble soul, in whose Yajña Gāthā (a laudatory verse) was sung formerly by great sages.

85. After seeing the birth of fire (in the Yajña) of the noble-souled Śāṇḍilya, the deathless Devas conquering heaven with purity of mind observe the Yajamāna (under whose auspices the Yajña is performed) Dilīpa, the noble soul of truthful rites.

86. Ājyapas were the Pitṛs of Kardama, the Prajāpati, who was born of Pulaha. They were born of him again.

87. Moving about in the sky, they are stationed in these worlds that go about as they please. Groups of Vaiśyas who are desirous of benefits, revere these in Śrāddha.

88. Their mental daughter is famous by the name of Virajā. The chaste lady was the wife of Nahuṣa and the mother of Yayāti.

---

1. This is the translation of '*Dattasenā Kumāreṇa.*' The absurdity of the text is obvious. Bd. P. *ibid* V. 87 reads *Dattā Sanatkumāreṇa* 'She was given by Sanatkumara'. The reading in Bd. P. deserves adoption here as the next line reads "She became the beloved...of Śukra".

2. The combined verses can be constructed as follows:

That saintly lady was the mother of the noble-souled royal sage Khaṭvāṅga. On seeing the birth of the noble-souled Śāṇḍilya from (sacrificial) fire at his sacrifice, the great sages sang the (following) laudatory verse (*Gātha*). :

"Those immortals who see the Yajamāna (the sponsor of the sacrifice) Dilipa with full concentration (become) the conquerors of heaven—so much is noble-souled Dilipa truthful in the observance of his vows".

89. Sukālas are the Pitṛs of Vasiṣṭha, the Prajāpati. They are the sons of Hiraṇyagarbha.

90. There are the worlds named Mānasas where these are stationed. Their mental daughter is Narmadā, the most excellent of rivers.

91. Flowing in the southern region, she sanctifies living beings. She was the wife of Purukutsa and the mother of Trasadasyu.

92. Manu became the lord of Manvantara by adopting these (Pitṛs). In the beginning of Manvantara, he initiates all types of Śrāddhas.

93. O excellent Brāhmaṇas, (I have recounted) all the Pitṛs in their proper order. Hence Śrāddha is to be offered with faith in accordance with one's Dharma.

94. A Śrāddha offered in silver vessels or those of silver alloy, after proferring Svadhā, propitiates Pitṛs.

95. By the propitiation of Soma, Agni and Vaivasvata (Manu) and by the performance of *Homa* in the sacrificial fire during the northern transit (of the sun), one shall attain the fruit of an *Aśvamedha* (a Horse Sacrifice).

96. Pitṛs delight him who propitiates Pitṛs with devotion. There is no doubt in this that Pitṛs bestow nourishment or progeny.

97. The rites of pitṛs are always far superior to the rites of deities. It is ordained that the propitiation of Pitṛs must be given priority over that of deities.

98. The subtle movement (or goal) of Yoga or the satiation of Pitṛs is not visible through the physical eye. Only by achieving special Siddhi by means of penance are they to be seen.

99. Thus Pitṛs, their worlds, their daughters, their grandsons, their Yajamānas and those who revere them have been recounted.

100. (Out of the seven classes of Pitṛs) four have forms and three are formless. Devas honour them and offer Śrāddhas to them devoutly and assiduously.[1]

---

1. The discussion about the seven classes of Pitṛs, their mental daughters and other particulars may be tabulated as below :

101-104. All the Devas including Indra concentrate their minds on them. They join their palms in reverence and devotedly worship them. Viśvedevas, Sikatas, Pṛśnijas, Śṛṅgins, Kṛṣṇas, Śvetas and Ajas worship them duly. Desirous of benefits, the subjects Vātaraśanas, Divākīrtyas, Lekhas, Maruts, Brahmā and other heaven-dwellers, Atri, Bhṛgu, Aṅgiras and all other sages, Yakṣas, Nāgas, Suparṇas, Kinnaras and Rākṣasas always worshipped Pitṛs.

105. These noble-souled (Pitṛs), if duly honoured and worshipped in Śrāddha, grant all desires hundred-fold and thousand-fold.

106. These grandfathers (Pitṛs) bestow Yogic Power (and prosperity) and liberation (from Saṁsāra) after one has abandoned the three worlds of normal existence involving old age and death.

107. Pitāmahas, the deities of subtle bodies, grant the means of salvation, *Aiśvarya* (prosperity), complete detachment and infiniteness.

108. Practised Yoga is *Aiśvarya*; and *Aiśvarya* is the excellent wealth. Without Yoga and *Aiśvarya* liberation (from Saṁsāra) is impossible (to be achieved).

Class of Pitṛs	*Names of their daughters and other particulars*
1. Vairājas	Menā, wife of Himavān, mother of Umā, Śiva's consort.
2. Barhiṣads	Acchodā, adopted king Amāvasu as father; cursed by Pitṛs; became Satyavati, mother of Vyāsa and queen of Śantanu.
3. Agniśvattas	Pivarī, married to Śuka, Vyāsa's son.
4. Kāvyas (sons of Agni and Svadhā)	Yogotpatti alias Ekaśṛṅgā married Śukra.
5. Upahūtas (sons of Aṅgiras)	Yaśodā, queen mother of king Khaṭvāṅga.
6. Ājyapas (sons of Pulaha)	Virajā, married to king Nahuṣa, mother of Yajāti.
7. Sukāla (sons of Vasiṣṭha	Narmadā (the river), wife of Purukutsa and mother of Trasad-dasyu.

Out of these groups (5), (6) and (7) are specially recommended for worship to Kṣattriyas, Vaiśyas and Śūdras. Manu III. 193-198 slightly differs in the assignment of Varnas to Pitrs.

109. It (Mokṣa) is as impossible as the movement of a wingless bird in the sky. *Mokṣa*-Dharma is the greatest of all Dharmas and eternal.

110. Pitāmahas (manes) grant thousands of aerial chariots attended by groups of Apsaras-s and richly equipped with all desirable things.

111. Intellect, nourishment, power of memory, brain, kingdom and health can be attained only through the grace of the noble-souled Pitṛs.

112. Pitāmahas grant crores of gems, pearls, *lapis lazuli*, garments and thousands of horses and elephants.

113. Pitāmahas always bestow on men chariots fitted with swans and peacocks, studded with pearls and *lapis lazuli* and decorated with tinkling bells and provided with perpetual flowers and fruits.

CHAPTER TWELVE

The Procedure of Śrāddha (Continued)

Bṛhaspati said :

1. It is said (in Dharma-Śāstra) that the vessels of (meant for) Pitṛs should be made of gold, silver or copper. A silver or silver-coated vessel is said to be befitting Pitṛs.[1]

2. Showing or gifting away of silver is proclaimed to be a suitable *Dāna* for Pitṛs and it is conducive to the attainment of infinite and everlasting heaven. Good sons enable Pitṛs to cross (hell) by means of this *Dāna* (religious gift).

3. O dear one, it was in silver vessel that Svadhā was formerly milked by Pitṛs seeking to get Svadhā. O dear one, if that is gifted, it yields everlasting benefit.

1. Cf. Viṣṇu Dh.S. 79.14-15. Yājñavalkya I. 236 specially recommends silver vessels. Cf also Mt. P. 17.19-22, Bd.P. 2.3.11-1.

4. The nearby presence, sight or gifting away of the hide of a black antelope is conducive to the destruction of Rākṣasas. It increases Brāhmaṇical splendour and enables Pitṛs to cross (hell).

5. Vessels made of gold, silver or copper, gingelly seeds, *Kutapa* (i.e. the eighth muhūrta of the day) or Kuśa grass, sesamum seeds, garments and *Tridaṇḍi Yoga* (i.e. the Yoga of mind, speech and body)—all these are holy objects.

6. In the holy rite of Śrāddha, the following ritual prescribed by god Brahmā is the most excellent and eternal. It is conducive to increase in fame, longevity, progeny, intellect and lineage.

7. In the south-east direction, especially at the intermediate point (corner) between them, (should be the place—altar in Bd. P.—for Śrāddha). It should be well-situated and square shaped with sides equal to an *Aratni* (the distance between the tip of the fist and the elbow).

8. I shall mention the proper spot for the holy rites of Pitṛs in accordance with the injunctions of the scriptures. It is conducive to the attainment of wealth, health and longevity. It enhances strength and brightness of complexion.

9. At the place (intended for Śrāddha), three pits (should be dug) and three sticks of Khadira wood should be placed. They (the sticks) should be an Aratni (distance between the tip of the fist and the elbow) in length and should be embellished with silver (bands). (The pits) should be a *Vitasti* (the span or the distance between thumb and little finger when they are extended on either side) in depth* and the four sides should be four *Aṅgulas* (fingers) each.

10. The sticks should not be hollow and they must be placed on the ground with their faces pointing to the south-east. (The performer of Śrāddha) should be pure and should wash them with holy waters or water rendered holy by the use of the ring of Darbha grass (called *Pavitra*) worn by the performer of Śrāddha.

---

*Kāryā in the text but *gartāḥ* from Bd. P. 2.3.11.10 is better.

11. The purification (*Śodhana*) may be carried out with goat's milk or cow's milk and water. By means of this *Tarpaṇa* (holy water-offering) the satisfaction (of Pitṛs) will be permanent.

12. He will be prosperous here and hereafter. He will be (blessed with the fruits of) all holy rites. If a person always takes bath three times a day and worships Pitṛs with Mantras as per prescribed procedure, he gets the fruit of (performance) of a horse-sacrifice (*Aśvamedha*).

13. On the New Moon day, the Śrāddha materials should be placed in the pit in the ground four *Aṅgulas* square. These rituals are called *Triḥ-sapta-yajña* (Three-times seven Yajña). All the three worlds are sustained by them.

14. He will attain nourishment, prosperity, longevity and progeny. Various types of fortune will resort to him and he will gradually attain liberation (from Saṁsāra).

15. It removes sins. It sanctifies. It has the same fruit as a horse-sacrifice. I shall mention that *Mantra* composed by Brahmā. It is the *Amṛta* (immortal or nectarine) and it is honoured and worshipped by Brāhmaṇas and grants (the fruit of) Aśvamedha.

16. *The Mantra*: "Obeisance to all the deities, to Pitṛs, to the great Yogins, to Svadhā. Obeisance for ever to Svāhā.".[1]

17. At the beginning and the conclusion of the Śrāddha, this Mantra shall always be repeated three times. The devotee shall repeat this with purity of mind, when he offers the balls of rice also. Pitṛs arrive quickly and Rākṣasas flee.

18. Regularly repeated at the time of Śrāddha by expounders of Brahman, this Mantra enables Pitṛs to cross (hell) in the three worlds.

19. A person desirous of kingdom, should always repeat this Mantra with alertness. It increases virility, purity, wealth, sāttvic qualities, prosperity, longevity and strength.

20. I shall mention the Mantra *Saptārcis* that is auspicious and that bestows all desires. By repeating it regularly, Pitṛs are propitiated.

---

1. Hemādri regards this as Saptarcis Mantra : *vide Caturvarga Cintāmaṇi, Śrāddha* pp. 1079 and 1208. This mantra is accepted in Skanda P. VII. 1-206; 114-116., GP. (Ācāra) 218.6, A.

21. The Saptārcis[1] Mantra: "I always make obeisance to those who are engaged in meditation by means of the yogic vision, to the embodied and unembodied Pitṛs of brilliant splendour.

22. I bow to the Seven Sages and Pitṛs who fulfil all desires and who are the progenitors of Indra and other (Devas) and of Bhṛgu and Mārīca (Kaśyapa).

23-24. After bowing to all the Pitṛs who bestow welfare on Manu and other lords of Suras and on the sun and the moon, I bow down with palms joined in reverence to Pitāmahas, the progenitors of the constellations, the mobile (and the immobile beings) and of the heaven and the earth.

25. With palms joined in reverence I bow down to those who bestow fearlessness, to those who are revered by all the worlds and to the progenitors of the divine sages.

26. With palms joined in reverence, I bow down to Prajāpati, Kaśyapa, Soma, Varuṇa and to the lords of all Yoga.

27. Obeisance to the seven groups of Pitṛs in the seven worlds. Obeisance to the self-born Brahmā of Yogic vision."

28. Thus the Mantra honoured by the groups of Brahmarṣis along with the Seven Sages has been mentioned. It is highly holy and sanctified. It is conducive to prosperity and destructive of Rākṣasas.

29. The man who (performs Śrāddha) according to these injunctions attains three boons. Pitṛs grant food, longevity and childern (to the people) on the earth.

30. He who is endowed with great devotion, who has faith, who has controlled his senses and who always repeats this *Saptārcis Mantra* with purity, becomes the sole Emperor on the earth consisting of seven continents and oceans.

31. If any thing is cooked in the house, whether a dainty or ordinary eatable, it should never be eaten in that house without first offering it (to deities).

32. Henceforth, I shall describe in the proper order, the vessels intended for oblations to Pitṛs. Even as I mention listen

1. These seven verses 21-27 are called '*Saptārciṣ Mantra*'. Cf. Bd. P. 2.3.11 23-29. As against Hemādri our text calls this '*saptārcis*' Mantra.

to the respective benefits (in using oblations) in the different vessels.

CHAPTER THIRTEEN

The Procedure of Śrāddha Performance (Continued)

Bṛhaspati said :

1. It is cited (in scriptures that) a leaf of the Palāśa tree (*Butea frondosa*) is conducive to Brāhmaṇic splendour.[1] That kingdom is conceived (as the fruit, if leaves of) the Aśvattha tree (are used) : The lordship of all living beings is mentioned (in using the leaves of) Plakṣa (citron-leaved Indian fig tree) [i.e. the materials of oblations must be placed in cups made of these leaves or the wood as in the case of some of the following] .

2. Those who are desirous of prosperity, wisdom, intellect and power of memory (shall use the leaves of) the banyan tree. The vessel of the leaves of Kāśmarī (a large tree called Gambhārī also) is conducive to fame and destructive of Rākṣasas.

3. That which is offered in Madhuka (the tree *Bassia latifolia*) is considered excellent and conducive to good fortune. One who performs Śrāddha in the vessel of Phalgu (a kind of fig tree) attains all desires.

4. The performer attains supreme lustre, particularly all-round brilliance (if the sun-plant is used—Bd. P.). By using a Bilva vessel, riches, intellect and longevity are always attained.

5. If Śrāddha is performed in Bamboo vessels, Parjanya (cloud or the lord of rain) always showers in his fields, parks, lakes and all crops.

6. It is said (in *Śāstras* that) those who make Śrāddha

1. Verses 1-6 enumerate the different trees, the leaves (i.e. cups of the leaves) of which (if used for giving oblations to Pitṛs) confer different benefits. The Śrāddha Sūtra of Kātyāyana recommends the use of (cups of leaves of) sacrificial trees for *Arghya*.

offerings even for once in these excellent vessels, attain the fruit of all Yajñas.

7. He who always offers fragrant garlands to Pitṛs becomes endowed with riches and glory, and shines brilliantly like the sun.

8. He who offers incense, fragrant gum-resin and other things to Pitṛs, along with honey and ghee obtains the fruit of a horse-sacrifice.

9. One who offers shining fragrant *Dhūpa* (incense) to Pitṛs begets children of his wife (beneficial to him) here and hereafter. Hence he shall always offer it to Pitṛs.

10-11. He who always offers lamp to Pitṛs assiduously, obtains unequalled auspicious power of vision in the world. He becomes brilliant on the earth. He shines in Heaven with splendour, fame, refulgence and strength. He rejoices in the aerial chariot surrounded by Apsaras-s.

12. He should offer scents, flowers, incense and ghee. After propitiating at the outset, Pitṛs with fruits, roots and obeisance, with purity of mind and body, the devotee should later worship Brāhmaṇas with food and wealth.

13. Always at the time of Śrāddha, Pitāmahas (manes) assume aerial forms and on seeing Brāhmaṇas, they enter them. Hence I am saying this.[1]

14-15. Excellent Brāhmaṇas should be honoured with garments, foodstuffs, charitable gifts, food and beverages, (gifts of) cows, horses and villages. If Brāhmaṇas are honoured, Pitṛs become delighted. Hence, one should honour excellent Brāhmaṇas duly.

16. In the holy rite of Śrāddha, Brāhmaṇas should perform diligently the ritualistic scraping, digging and sprinkling of water (with Darbha) (*Ullekhana and Prokṣaṇa*) by means of the left and the right hands.

17. A learned man should keep ready for libation, Darbhas, balls of rice, foodstuffs, different kinds of flowers, scents, charitable gifts and ornaments.

---

1. Hence Brāhmaṇas are to be worshipped, fed and gifted at the time of Śrāddha. The belief that Pitṛs assume gaseous form and enter the bodies of the invited Brahmins is found in *Auśanasa Smṛti* V. 4-5. Cf. Manu III. 189.

18. After propitiating the persons present duly, the Brāhmaṇas shall perform the *Vaiśvadeva* rite and then perform the rites with *Abhyaṅga* (oil bath) with Darbha (leaves of the Kuśa grass) in accordance with the injunctions.

19. The excellent food-offering to Pitṛs should be made with reverse wearing of the sacred thread. After pronouncing (the names of Pitṛs) the thread must be offered to all of them in lieu of garments.

20. The rites of *Khaṇḍana*, *Poṣaṇa* and *Ullekhana* are to be performed only once in the case of Devas, and thrice in the case of Pitṛs.

21. Wearing a single *Pavitra* (a ringlike loop of Kuśa grass worn round a finger) in the hand and reciting the *Cailamantra*, the balls of rice are touched once for each of the Pitṛs. Then the benefit of showing (is attained) (?).

22. Always the balls of rice must be offered on the ground along with ghee and gingelly seeds. The devotee performing Pitṛ-Śrāddha, kneels on the ground with the left knee touching it.

23. He invokes the fathers, grandfathers and great-grandfathers and all ancestry of yore and properly sprinkles all round the balls of rice, by means of the holy water (*Pitṛtīrtha*) carefully from the right to the left (in anticlockwise manner).

24. Some men desire a separate Śrāddha for maternal grandfathers by means of food, water, flowers and foodstuffs of various kinds.

25. He should offer three *Piṇḍas* in the proper order (pressing them) with the thumb. They are conducive to the enhancement of nourishment. He should offer the Piṇḍas (by means of both hands placed) between the knees.

26. (In offering the *Piṇḍas*) the left hand should be placed over the right, repeating the Mantra[1] '*Namo vaḥ pitaraḥ śūkṣmaiḥ*[2] (?) always carefully in this manner.

---

1. The Text *dharme mantre ca paryayaḥ* is obscure and the sentence remains incomplete. Bd. P. 2.3.11.62 reads *dhārārtham mantram uccaran* 'should repeat the mantra (as follows for the sake of pouring water in the form of a thin current)'.

2. A reads *Suṣmai* and not *Sūkṣmaiḥ*.

The Mantra in A is recorded in Bloomfield's *Vedic Concordance*, p. 538 but no mantra with '*Sūkṣmaiḥ* is found. It is obviously a scribal error.

27. (Defective Verse) Carefully repeating the Mantra "*Namo vaḥ pitaraḥ saumyāḥ*" (Obeisance to ye, O gentle Pitṛs) he should offer the first Piṇḍa with both the hands and place it in the southern quarter.

28*. (Defective Verse) With both the hands, he draws the outline (?) of a mortar using the water from the water pot. He must be careful in the practice of piety.

29. He should offer a fresh thread of silk or jute or a cotton thread. Woven silk such as coloured cloth and Kauśeya should be avoided when offering thread to Pitṛs.

30. In the sacrifice, the thread taken even from a freshly woven cloth shall be avoided. These do not please Pitṛs. Those who give cannot flourish (?).

31. The collyrium obtained from the Trikūṭa mountain, they say, is always excellent. So also is the oil extracted from black gingelly seeds.

32. Sandal, Agaru (fragrant aloe wood), Tamāla, Uśira (fragrant root of the plant *Andropogon Muricatus*), lotus, fragrant incense, gum resin and (white) Turuṣka—all these are excellent articles (for use in Śrāddha).

33. White flowers are the most excellent. So also the red and blue lotuses. All other flowers can be used if they are fragrant.

34. The flowers China Rose, Bhāṇḍīra, Upakāma and Kuraṇḍaka should always be avoided in the Śrāddha rite.

35. Odourless flowers and flowers of obnoxious odour should be avoided at that time by one who seeks prosperity.

36. The Brāhmaṇas invited on that occasion should invariably face the north while sitting. The performer of the Śrāddha should duly face the south.

37. He should face them and offer the Darbhas and the

---

*Bd. P. 23.11-63-64 states that the first *Piṇḍa* is to be moved to the south with the mantra : *namo śoṣāya* and the other two *Piṇḍas* with the mantra *namo saumyāḥ*.

A comparison with the text in the Bd. P. 2.3-11.6 ff. shows that though the text in Vā. P. and Bd. P. is common, the lines are differently distributed in the verses of these texts.

Piṇḍas. He should worship his own grandfathers by means of this rite.

38-39. The following objects are said to be essential (in a Śrāddha): Green Piñjalīs (leaves of Kuśa grass) as smooth and soft as flowers, about a *Ratni* in size, softened and straightened by the holy water (Pitṛtīrtha), blue near the root and not defiled by pebbles etc. (should be used). So also Śyāmāka and Nīvāra kinds of rice.

40. This (story) has been narrated by the excellent Prajāpati.[1] His hairs fell down through the path of the sky on the earth.

41. Hence the Kāśa grasses are holy. They are always honoured in the Śrāddha rite. The *Piṇḍas* are to be offered on them by one who wishes prosperity.

42. Those who do so become free from sins and defects. Their children become nourished with splendour, fame and refulgence.

43. The devotee should sit facing the south and spread the Darbha grass once for the *Piṇḍas*. The tips of the Darbhas should be pointing to the south-east. The procedure shall be mentioned as follows :

44. A learned man should always perform Śrāddha with concentration of mind. He shall neither be dejected nor angry. His mind should not be distracted or diverted elsewhere.

45. (The following Mantra is to be repeated.) "I annihilate everything that has impurity in it. All Asuras and Dānavas have been killed by me. All Rākṣasas, Yakṣas, groups of Piśācas and all Yātudhānas (demons) have been killed by me."[2]

46. All Asuras avoid him who offers food to Pitṛs by repeating this Mantra. Rākṣasas avoid the place where this Mantra is recited.

---

1. There is some lacuna. Bd. P. 2.3.11.79-80 state that formerly Prajāpati assumed the form of a horse and his hair fell on the ground and became Kuśa grass.

2. Quoted in *Śrāddha Tattva*, p. 235. Verses of the same import and textual similarity are quoted by Aparārka but he adds the Vedic mantra *Apahatāḥ'* (Vāj. Saṁhitā II. 29) here.

47. A Brāhmaṇa should always perform Śrāddha according to this procedure. The manes (*Pitāmahas*) will grant whatever is desired in the mind (by him).

48. If Śrāddha is always performed assiduously, Pitṛs become delighted in mind and Rākṣasas become dejected.

49. Śūdras should always avoid the following in Śrāddha: *Kṣiracāśu*[1] (trees yielding white juice?), trees called Balvaja (*Eluesine Indica*, a species of coarse grass not liked by cattle) and other kinds of grasses such as Vāraṇa, Lava, Lava-varṣa.

50. They shall avoid applying collyrium, oil and unguents as well as wearing garlands. Their rites should be performed with Kāśas which grow again (when cut). All the benefits accrue (to them thereby).

51. Kāśa (grass) and the regrown Kāśa (grass) are (like) peacock's tail and its regrowth[2]. (So) Pitṛs are Devas and Devas are Pitṛs.

52-53. This is the Mantra intended for flowers, incense, scents etc. Pulling (the vessel of materials of worship) towards the south assiduously for the sake of Homa, he (performer of Śrāddha) should repeat the *mantra* "Svadhā unto Soma, the Pitṛmān (having Pitṛs). Obeisance to Aṅgiras". He should perform the Homa of non-heavenly or the worldly type for the purpose of the fructification of the holy rite.

54-55. Homa is to be performed after placing *Samit* (sacrificial twig) within. The devotee should keep the mind perfectly pure and keep the holy fire scrupulously pure, repeating the Mantra, "Svadhā unto Agni, the bearer of *Kavya*. Obeisance to Aṅgiras. Svadhā and obeisance unto Yama and Aṅgiras".

56-58. These are the Mantras in order intended for Homas. Homas shall be performed everyday from the southern direction to Agni and to Soma in the middle[3]. In between these two Homas, a Homa should be performed to Vivasvān (the Sun or his son Yama ?). *Upacāras* (ways of render-

1. *avi-kṣīram* 'milk of a variety of sheep called *Avi*' in Bd. P., *ibid* V. 87

2. *barhaṇa* 'a peacock' is rather inapplicable. Hence *barhi* (n) 'fire; kuśa grass' may be the probable reading.

3. *uttarataḥ* 'to the north' in Bd. P. *ibid* V. 95.

ing homage), repetition of Svadhā mantra, Ullekhana (ritualistic scrubbing), Homas, Japas, obeisance, particularly *Prokṣaṇa* (sprinkling), applying collyrium, oil bath and offering piṇḍas—(all these must be performed).

59. If they are performed with Mantras, they have the same benefit as a horse-sacrifice. All holy rites mentioned above shall be assiduously performed.

60. In the blazing fire plenty of ghee must be offered. Particularly Homa must be performed in a smokeless fire with curly leaping flames, for the fructification of the holy rite.

61. We have heard that if a *Yajamāna* performs Homa in a weakly burning smoking fire, he becomes blind and issueless.

62. If there is deficiency of fuel, if the flames are scattered all round and dried up or if the flames are defiled by smoke, the fire is not conducive to good results.

63. If the fire emits bad odour, if the flames are bluish or particularly black, or if the fire makes the ground crack, know that there is failure (in the holy rite).

64. The resplendent fire with a single globular flame, yellowish (golden) in colour, produced by the ghee, is conducive to the fructification of the rite. The flame shall be smooth and curling clockwise.

65. (That fire) is perpetually honoured and worshipped by both men and women. Thereby, the everlasting pitṛs become honoured and worshipped. They give everlasting benefits.

66. Mud-pots, vessels made of the leaves or wood of the Udumbara (*ficus glomerata*) tree, its fruits and *Samits*, all these are considered very holy in Śrāddha. They are very pure.

67-69. The different benefits of the various kinds of vessels that I have mentioned as regards the Śrāddha rite, O excellent Brāhmaṇas, are also true in regard to the holy rites of nativity. With regard to the *Samits* also, the same should be known. The devotee keeps the mind pure and says 'I am performing the rite in fire'. Then, after being permitted by excellent Brāhmaṇas, saying "Do", he should perform the Homa in the fire, accompanied by his wife and sons.

70. The following trees are equally sacrifice-worthy: Palāśa (Bd. P.), Plakṣa, Nyagrodha, Aśvattha, Vikaṅkata, Uduṁbara, Bilva and Candana.

71. The following trees are particularly recommended for the purpose of *Samits* (sacrificial twigs) : Sarala, Devadāru, Śāla and Khadira.

72. Rural thorny trees are also sacrifice-worthy. Some of them are honoured for the purpose of *Samits* in accordance with the words of Pitṛs.

73. Even as I recount, listen to the fruit of the holy rite to those who perform Homa with the *Samits* of the *Kalkaleya* (pomegranate) tree.

74-75. The Aloe wood is to be desired by all. It has the same benefit as that of a horse-sacrifice. The following trees should be avoided—Śleṣmātaka, Naktamāla, Kapittha, Śālmali, Nīpa, Vibhītaka and the creepers also. Similarly the trees on which birds reside must be avoided. Those trees which are considered unworthy of sacrifice should also be avoided.

76. In the course of the sacrificial rite, the word *Svadhā* is used at the end of the Mantra pertaining to Pitṛs and Svāhā is used in the case of Devas.

CHAPTER FOURTEEN

The Procedure Regarding Performance of Śrāddha: *The Five Mahāyajñas*

Sūta said :

1. Bṛhaspati declared (in reply) that as per (injunctions of) the Atharva Veda, Devas are Pitṛs but there are also other Pitṛs.

2. One should especially worship Pitṛs before Devas. (People) in the world do worship Pitṛs before Devas.

3. Dakṣa had a daughter famous in the world by the name of Viśvā. O knower of Dharma, she was given duly and righteously to Dharma. It is well-known that her sons are the noble-souled Viśvedevas.

4-5. They were very famous throughout the three worlds. They were revered by all the people in the world. On the

beautiful peak of Himavān resorted to by Devas and Gandharvas, all those noble souls performed a very severe penance, performed by all the Apsaras-s and resorted to by all the Devas and Gandharvas.

6. The delighted Pitṛs spoke to them with a pure (frank) mind—"We are delighted. Request for a boon. What desire (of yours) shall we fulfil?"

7. When this was mentioned by Pitṛs, Brahmā, the creator of the three worlds, the lord of the subjects, spoke to the Viśvas (Viśvedevas).

Brahmā said:

8. "(Even) Mahādeva of great brilliance, has been scorched by them by means of the great penance. I am well-delighted by that penance. What desire of yours shall I fulfil?"

9. Thus urged by Brahmā, the creator of the world, all of them simultaneously spoke to Brahmā, the creator of the worlds.

10. "May we have a share in Śrāddha. This is the boon desired by us". Then Brahmā spoke to them who were worshipped in the heaven.

11-13. "What you desire will take place". Pitṛs said "So be it", and continued, "There is no doubt about it. Whatever is performed here shall be for you too along with us. In the Śrāddha intended by men for us, you will get the priority in being seated. We are telling you the truth. They will worship you at the outset by means of garlands, scents and food offerings.

14. Everything will be offered to you first and then to us. Our ritualistic farewell will occur first and the Devatās (i.e. you) will be ritualistically dismissed later.

15. The protection of Śrāddha and (according) of hospitality—these are the two ceremonial acts to be performed in the rite of Śrāddha offered to Pitṛs and Devatās and Bhūtas. If it is done duly according to injunctions, everything shall be all right."

16. After granting them the boon thus, lord Brahmā, the

benefactor of all living beings, went away happily along with the groups of Pitṛs.

17. Five great Yajñas have been prescribed in the Vedas. A Man shall always perform these five Mahāyajñas.

18. (Listen to) and understand where the performers (of those five Yajñas) go and where their abode is. They attain the abode of Brahman that is fearless, devoid of egotism, free from sorrow, strainless and free from pain. It yields all desires.

19. These five Yajñas are to be performed by a Śūdra also, but without reciting the Mantras. He who eats (enjoys) otherwise (without performing them), eats debts everyday.

20. He who cooks for himself is a sinful soul and he eats debts. Hence a sensible man shall perform the five great Yajñas.

21. Some wish that *Naivedya* (food-offering) should be assiduously offered even when Pitṛs are alive. Oblation should be offered along with libation of water. The water-pot also shall be offered.

22. The oblation should be made well announced. It shall be scattered by throwing it far above. Small oblations shall at first be offered on the horns of cows (?)

23. The *Piṇḍa* cannot be offered as *Naivedya* to Pitṛs. They should be duly fed by offering palatable foods and edibles. I am emphatically mentioning this as the procedure laid down in the Vedas.

24-26. These groups of Pitṛs are noble souls and lords of Devas. Some preceptors wish that Brāhmaṇas should be worshipped first everyday, and then the *Piṇḍa* should be offered. (But) Bṛhaspati* says to those who are experts in matters of Dharma (practice of rituals), that he (the performer of Śrāddha) should offer the Piṇḍa first and then feed

---

*These verses give two different views about the precedence of Brāhmaṇas to offering of Piṇḍas.

tad hi dharmārthakuśalān ityuvāca Bṛpaspatiḥ|

should better be emended as...*dharmārthakuśalo netyuvāca*.....as in Bd. P. 2.3.12.25 and would mean : "Bṛhaspati who is an expert in affairs of Dharma (ritualistic practice) has said that it (the precedence of Brāhmaṇa-worship to offering of Piṇḍa) should not be so".

Brāhmaṇas later. (For) Pitṛs are born of Yoga (Yogic Power) and are (themselves) Yogic souls and great ones. Pitṛs strengthen and develop Soma (the Moon).

27. Hence he (the performer of Śrāddha), remaining pure and devotedly attached to Yogins, should offer the Piṇḍas to Yogins. This shall be the *Havi* offering directly to Pitṛs.

28. If a single Yogin be in the seat of priority among thousands of Brāhmaṇas, he will enable the Yajamāna and the Brāhmaṇas partaking of the food, cross (the ocean of worldly existence) like a boat in water.

29. Where the wicked are accepted and honoured and where the good are disrespected, a terrible punishment meted out by the Devas befalls them immediately.

30. If a pious (Brāhmaṇa) who has come as a guest is left out and a foolish one is fed, the householder forgoes his prior holy rites and perishes (i.e. despite his merit in a previous birth he is faced with ruin).

31. He who seeks enjoyment (of worldly pleasures) should assiduously consign the Piṇḍa to the sacred fire.[1] He who seeks progeny shall give the middle Piṇḍa to his wife but after performing all the intervening rites and *mantras*.

32. He who wishes for excellent refulgence always offers it (the Piṇḍa) to cows. So also he who wishes for intellect, honour, fame and renown, offers it always to cows.

33. He who seeks long life gives it to crows. One desirous of comeliness offers (oblations) to the fowl.

34. Thus the benefit of offering Piṇḍas has been recounted. Or the devotee shall stand facing the south and pacify the sky (scatter the oblations in the sky)[2]. The abode of Pitṛs is the sky and their quarter is the south.

35. (Defective) Further, Brāhmaṇas mention one procedure of lifting up the Piṇḍa. After being permitted by Brāhmaṇas who say "Let it be taken up dry".

---

1. Verses 31-34 prescribe the disposal of Piṇḍas and the benefits accruing from it. Cf. Mbh. *Anuśāsana* 125.38-40, BM.P. 220.150-52 for similar views.

2. 'or scatter them in the water' if '*apsu*' (in Bd. P.) for '*Sthitau*' hereof be accepted.

36. The upper layer or the tip of flowers, fruits, edibles and cooked food shall be taken up and offered as oblation in the sacred fire.

37. After consigning the edibles, cooked food, beverage and the excellent fruits to the fire, he should face the south and offer the Piṇḍas.

38. He shall propitiate (them) with oily edibles, sweet scents and juices. With concentration and purity of mind, he should serve them standing (there) with palms joined in reverence. A man devoted to them and full of faith, obtains the desires.

39. The grandfathers (manes) bestow the (following) qualities on him : the state of not being mean and low (non-pettiness), gratefulness, chivalry, hospitality and the (ability for performance of) sacrifices and religious gifts.

40. Henceforth I shall recount the Saumya* (belonging to Soma) procedure after the Brāhmaṇas have taken food, in order. Listen to it, even as I recount it.

41-42. The devotee attached to Pitṛs should sprinkle the ground and scrub it at the outset. Then he should scatter (auspicious materials) in accordance with the injunctions. He shall request the excellent Brāhmaṇas to chant the Svadhā mantra and offer them plenty of Dakṣiṇās. He shall get the permission from them (as to what should be done with) the remnants of the food. With palms joined in reverence, he shall follow them after honouring them duly. He should then bid farewell.

*As there is no 'Lunar procedure' herein, this should be taken as vocative case, '*Saumya*' 'O gentle one', instead of the accusative as in the text.

CHAPTER FIFTEEN

Sacred Places[1] *for Śrāddha*

Bṛhaspati said :

1. Pitṛs worshipped even once become delighted. They are imperishable Yogic souls. They are noble souls of great power and free from sins and evils.

2-3. O gentle ones, I shall recount the holy lakes, rivers, sacred spots, places of pilgrimage, mountains and hermitages for performing Śrāddha, at which Pitṛs bless him (the performer) with fulfilment of desire for profuse riches (in this world), attainment of heaven after death and liberation from Saṁsāra in due course.

4-5. The mountain Amarakaṇṭaka[2] is the holiest and the most excellent in the three worlds. It is a sacred mountain resorted to by Siddhas and Cāraṇas. Formerly, holy lord Aṅgiras performed very severe penance (difficult for others to do) on it, for thousands of years, say, millions and crores of years.

6. As long as the earth holds (lasts), the god of death,

---

1. Due to their association with the founders of faith or with some great persons or events certain places have been regarded holy by all peoples of the world, e.g. Mecca by Muslims, Jerusalem by Christians, Bodha Gayā by Buddhists. These holy places have a deep psychological effect on religious-minded persons. Śrāddha is to be performed in one's own house. But as K.P. II. 22.17 states, holy places are the common property of all and not of a particular person. A list of such holy places is recommended in different Purāṇas like KP. II. 20-32-36, Mt. P. Ch. 22, Bd. P. 2.3.13. There is some divergence in the lists but there is a great deal of overlapping as a number of holy places like Prayāga, Vārāṇasi, Gayā, Puṣkara are deeply respected by all Hindus.

This age-old tradition of Tīrtha-yātrā claimed the fruit of certain sacrifices. The case of ablution in a sacred pond or river and its claim of equivalence with the performance of a sacrifice adversely affected the popularity of and tendency to perform sacrifices—an onerous job.

2. A mountain in Bilaspur District of Madhya Pradeṣh. *Viṣṇu Dh.S.* 85-6 highly glorifies the performance of Śrāddha on this mountain. Our text and Bd. P. 2.3.13.4-5 give the credit of its sanctity to the penance of Aṅgiras.

Asuras and Rākṣasas have no access there, nor is there any fear or misfortune there.

7. That excellent mountain shines with brilliance and renown, just as Saṁvartaka fire (Fire at the time of the annihilation of the world) blazes on the peak of mount Mālyavān.

8-9. The Kuśa (growing there) is famous as soft, sweet-smelling, pleasing to the eyes and golden-coloured. They are well known as 'calm and quiet' Darbhas. Drinking the waters* of Narmadā to the south of it, the holy lord Aṅgiras of great brilliance formerly performed Agnihotra after spreading those excellent Kuśas round the altar and he saw the steps leading to the heaven.

10. I shall recount the benefit attained by that intelligent man who offers *Piṇḍas* even once, on the Darbhas on the mountain Amarakaṇṭaka.

11. That Śrāddha becomes everlasting, increasing the pleasure of Pitṛs. On reaching that holy centre, they vanish for ever.

12. Even today the holy "*Jvālārasa*" is seen there everywhere. The river thereof (called Viśalyā—a branch of Narmadā) makes all living beings free from darts and thorns (sins and miseries).

13-14. To the south-east of that excellent mountain, there is a tank with a whirlpool in that part contiguous to the land of Kaliṅga. O excellent sages, there is that great holy centre Siddhakṣetra which increases the delight of Pitṛs. It is the greatest on the earth, approved of by both Devas and Daityas. Uśanas has sung a verse on it.

15. "Blessed are those men in the world who being devoted to Pitṛs propitiate them in Śrāddha after reaching Amarakaṇṭaka.

16. There is no doubt in this that they will attain Siddhi with very little penance. If they are worshipped even once on Amarakaṇṭaka, Pitṛs attain Heaven".

**piban-dakṣiṇa-narmadam* but here 'drinking' is strange. Bd. P. 2.3.13.8. reads '*pari-dakṣiṇa-narmadam* 'to the south of Narmadā'.

17. On the beautiful Mahendra[1] mountain, there is a holy centre resorted to by Śakra. If one mounts it, Pitṛs are delighted. The Śrāddha (if performed) there, yields great fruit.

18. If one practises Yoga on its lower peak named Bilva (Vailāta in Bd.P.), one gets divine vision. He becomes invisible to all living beings and roams over the earth like a Deva.

19. If a man takes his holy ablution in the Saptagodāvara[2] and in the penance grove Gokarṇa[3], he attains the benefit of a horse-sacrifice.

20. A man becomes sanctified after taking his holy dip in Dhūtapāpa.[4] Rudra, Maheśvara, the lord of Devas, performed a penance there.

21. In the holy place Gokarṇa, a proof has been cited by Brāhmaṇas for (convincing?) the atheists. If a non-Brāhmaṇa recites the Gāyatrī mantra, he perishes.

22. Those who regularly ascend the peak, the abode of Devas and sages, resorted to by Siddhas and Cāraṇas, attain heaven.

23-24. Since the place is embellished with divine sandal-wood and other trees and since the water mixed with the flavour of sandal flows continuously, a river named Tāmraparṇī[5] originates from them. It slowly winds its way to the southern

---

1. Although this name is applied to the mountain range from Orissa to Madura, here it is specially applied to the range of hills separating Mahānadī from Ganjam District. It is regarded as the resort of Paraśurāma.

—De 119, HD. IV. 177

2. Sapta-Godāvara : (1) The seven "mouths" (branches) of the Godavarī falling into the sea; (2) Solañgipur, sixteen miles from Piṭhāpur in the Godavarī District.

—De. 178

3. Gokarṇa : A place sacred to Śiva on the western coast in Kumṭā Tehsil of North Kanara District.

—HD IV. 753

4. A tributary of Gaṅgā near Vārāṇasi.

5. The river rises in the Agastya-Kūṭa—mountain Malay. Flowing through the Pāndya country, it falls into the Gulf of Manar famous for pearl-fishery.

—De 203, HD. IV. 812

ocean like a young woman extremely distressed (while going to her husband's house for the first time?).

25. The waters of that river in confluence with the great ocean become conchs, pearls and pearl-like conchs.

26. People bringing its waters containing conchs and pearls, become free from mental agonies and physical ailments and go to the heavenly city of Amarāvatī.

27. According to Śruti (Veda), the charitable gift of sandal, conchs and pearls enables Pitṛs to cross (hell) even though they be perpetrators of sins.

28-29. So also is the case of Candratīrtha, (Kanyā) Kumārī, the perennial source of Kāverī, the holy centres of Śrīparvata[1], the mountain Vaikṛta, and the mountain Ośiraparvata where the trees Palāśa, Khadira, Bilva, Plakṣa, Aśvattha and Vikaṅkata are seen growing in one place. (The people taking ablutions and performing holy rites there attain heaven.)

30. O excellent Brāhmaṇas, this zone of holy centres is sacrifice-worthy and is conducive to great achievements. A person who casts his mortal coil here, quickly reaches the heavenly city of Amarāvatī.

31. Holy rites performed by oneself fructify in the subsequent birth. Rites of Pitṛs (though) performed with defects become as beneficial as duly performed rites.

32. The holy river Narmadā, the most excellent of all rivers, is the daughter of Pitṛs. Śrāddhas offered there, become everlasting (in yielding benefits).

33. In the holy forest of Māṭhara, resorted to by Siddhas and Cāraṇas, they do not vanish because they are attached to that great mountain.

34. There is a proof (test) for discrimination between the pious and the impious on the holy mountain of Vindhya. Sinners do not see the current (waterfall ?) Good men see the current.

35. The sins of some sinners are seen in its current. Us-

1. Śriśailam in Kurnool District in Andhra Pradesh. It is one of the twelve Jyotirliṅgas.

ually the current is visible in the case of those of meritorious activities.

36. In Kauśalā there is the tank of Mātaṅga named Pāpaniṣūdinī (Remover of Sins). Even stray birds, flying as they please, go to heaven after bathing (casually) in that tank.

37-39. (Ablution) in the Kumārakośala Tīrtha on the mountain Pālapañjara[1] and on the banks of Pāṇḍu near the sea, in the Paṇḍāraka forest, performance of good actions in the Abhaya Prabhava which is pure and sinless, daily visit to Śrīvṛkṣa, Gṛdhrakūṭa, and Jaṁbūmārga and in the holy centre of Asita, the intelligent preceptor of Yoga—performance of Śrāddha (at these holy places)—gives everlasting benefits.

40. Śrāddha in Puṣkara[2] is ever-lasting. Penance there yields great fruits and the same is true of the holy centre Prabhāsa[3] on the great ocean.

41. In Devikā[4], there is a well named Vṛṣa resorted to by Siddhas. Its water always gushes up on hearing the sound of cows and bulls.

42. It is always resorted to by masters of Yogas who are beyond all sorts of sins. I shall mention the benefit resulting from the performance of Śrāddha therein.

43-44. The Śrāddha (there) yields all desires and is everlasting. It delights Pitṛs. There is a rock of Agni there called Jātavedaḥśilā. He who enters the fire there rejoices in

---

1. Pālamañjara in Bd.P.—near Śūrparaka or Sopārā near Bassein in Thana district of Mahārāṣhtra.

2. A sacred lake near Ajmer, Rājasthan. It is famous for the temple of god Brahmadeva.

3. Now known as Somanātha Pattaṇa in Saurashtra. Somanātha is a famous Jyotirliṅga which was attacked by Muslim rulers from the days of Mahmud Gaznavi to Aurangzeb. A new temple was built near the original spot by Ahalyabai Holkar in A.D. 1783 and it is still recognized as original Somanātha by all, though a new temple on the original spot in its original form is reconstructed after independence of India.

4. Variously identified as a tributary of Indus, Gandak, Śarayu by different scholars. Its identification with the Deeg or Degh in the Punjab is accepted by Pargiter and Kane (HD. IV. 746; De 55).

heaven. Once the fire is tranquil, he is reborn. Anything offered there gives everlasting benefits.

45. There is no doubt in this that the sacrifices performed at the holy centres called Daśāśvamedhika and Pañcāśvamedhika yield the benefits as indicated (in their names, viz. fruits of ten horse-sacrifices and of five horse-sacrifices).

46. The holy centre named Hayaśiras is famous as granter of boon immediately. Śrāddha performed there yields everlasting benefits. The devotee rejoices in heaven.

47. Śrāddha is said to be everlasting. So also are Japas, Homas and penances.

48. One should always propitiate the Pitṛs in the auspicious holy centre of Ajatuṅga. There the shadow of the heaven-dwellers is always seen on Parvan days. Whatever is given here becomes everlasting in the world. The Pāṇḍavas became free from ailment here.

49. It is always resorted to by masters of Yogas free from all sins. I shall mention the benefit of performance of Śrāddha there.

50. Pitṛs worshipped there always become delighted. He who keeps his sense-organs under control in this world shall rejoice after death in heaven.

51. The lake named Śiva is the most excellent. Vyāsa-saras and the divine lake Brahma-saras there are also holy.

52. The mountain Ujjanta[1] of the noble soul Vasiṣṭha is also holy. Centres called Kāpota, Puṣpasāhvaya, (and those named after the Vedas) Ṛg, Yajus, Sāman and (Atharva-) Śiras have been created by god Brahmā. After the creation of these the fifth Veda, viz. Purāṇas have been narrated by him.

53. After going there a Brāhmaṇa becomes free from sin like the eternal Fire-god Agni. Śrāddha, Japas, Homas and penances are of endless benefits.

---

1. In Aparanta as per HD. IV. 815. If identified with Ujjayanta, it is Mt. Girnar—De 211; but it is not associated with Vasiṣṭha but with Datta and Neminātha. Hence identification in HD probable.

54. In the great holy centre Puṇḍarīka, one attains the benefit (as sweet and fragrant) as lotus. One gets the fruit of a horse-sacrifice in the great holy centre of Brahma Tīrtha (by performing Śrāddha there).

55. In the confluence of the Sindhu river and the ocean and in Pañcanada, the benefit is everlasting. Kīrakātmā[1] (in Bd. P. Virajā) and Maṇḍavā on the mountain are sacred spots (?)

56. Śrāddha has to be performed in the holy centre Saptahrada and particularly in Mānasa.[2] On the mountains of Mahākūṭa, Vanda and Trikakuda also (Śrāddha should be performed).

57. In Mahāvedī (Mahānadī in Bd. P.) a great miracle is seen. It does not appear to one who has no faith (but) it does appear to a person who is firm in his religious vows.

58. The eternal rock of Agni himself is there. It is called Jātavedaḥśilā. Śrāddhas and holy rites in the fire performed there, have never-ending benefits.

59. Going there everyday in the evening, one who seeks never-ending benefits should always offer Śrāddha to Pitṛs there.

60. A man of purified mind or otherwise is known in the holy centre called *Svargyamārgaprada* (that which shows the path leading to heaven). It grants boons immediately. Casting off their mutual enmity in it, the Seven Sages went to heaven.

61. Even today signs of their extinct enmity are seen. Taking bath in that excellent Tīrtha, a man attains heaven.

62. There is a famous shrine there, resorted to by Nandin and Siddhas (or a Siddha named Nandin). The image of Nandīśvara is not visible to men of evil deeds.

63. Golden *Yūpas* (sacrificial posts) are seen there at sunrise. People circumambulating them vanish and go to

---

1. *Vairāṇi*, but *cīrāṇi* 'garments' in Bd. P. V. 2.3.61 is preferable for in the next verse *vairāṇi* 'enmity' is said to be 'visible even today. Visibility of abstract things is doubtful.

2. Lake Manas-sarovar situated in Kailāsa mountain in Tibet.

heaven (or they—the golden posts—disappear and go to heaven when devotees complete their circumambulation ?).

64. The (land) all over Kurukṣetra[1] is especially an excellent holy place of Sanatkumāra, the noble-souled lord of the Yogic cult. It is glorified as yielding ever-lasting benefit if Pitṛs are offered gingelly seeds (there).

65. Śrāddha performed in the residence of Dharmarāja is conducive to brilliance and it is never-ending (in yielding benefit). Śrāddha offered on the New Moon day in accordance with injunctions and in the proper order also yields never-ending benefits.

66. Moreover, to those who are near about Kurukṣetra it is particularly efficacious. A dutiful son who worships Pitṛs there, becomes free from his indebtedness to them.

67-69. Śrāddha should be performed with the repetition of *Oṁkāra* by persons who wish for ever-lasting benefit, at the following places : Vinaśana,[2] on the Sarasvatī river, Plakṣaprasravaṇa[3], Vyāsatīrtha on the Sarasvatī and especially at Brahma Kṣetra, everywhere on the (banks of) Gaṅgā and on the excellent mountain Maināka and at the source of Yamunā. One gets absolved of sins (thereby). The proof for the same is the excessively hot and extremely cold water there.

70. (Yamunā) is Yama's sister and the daughter of Mārtaṇḍa (the Sun-god). It is holy. Śrāddha performed there is everlasting. It was so glorified by Pitṛs formerly.

71. One taking ablutions in the lake Brahmānuga becomes a Brāhmaṇa immediately. Śrāddha, Japas, Homas and penances performed there are everlasting.

72. Vasiṣṭha of great penance performed penance standing still like a stump. Even to-day trees are seen there studded with gems.

---

1. The famous sacred place in Haryana—the country round Thaneswar. Some of the holy places, e.g. Vyāsa-tīrtha or Dvaipāyana Hrada are in this area. Sarasvatī flowed through it.

2. The spot in the sandy desert in Sirhind district where Sarasvati disappears. —De 37

3. The source of the river Sarasvatī in the hills of Sirmur in the Siwalik range of the Himalayas. —De 180

73. There a weighing balance that indicates piety and impiety, is seen. People who get themselves weighed by Brāhmaṇas in it derive excellent fruits.

74-75. The daughter of Pitṛs, the great Yoginī, is famous by the name of Gandhakālī. It is she who will give birth to the great Yogin, the noble souled Vyāsa, who will divide the single Veda into four, who will be an intelligent great sage, the great scion of the family of Parāśara and who is a fourth part of Brahmā.

76. There is the lake Acchodaka[1] from which she originated as the river Acchodā. Again she (Gandhakālī) was born of the womb of a fish at the instance of Vāraṇa[2].

77. The place where she has a holy hermitage, is resorted to by meritorious persons. Śrāddha offered there once, is said to be everlasting. If Śrāddha is offered there even once, it causes the attainment of Yoga and *Samādhi* (Trance).

78. He who offers Śrāddha in Kuberatuṅga, Vyāmocca and Vyāsatīrtha is a holy Brāhmaṇa. The Śrāddha yields everlasting benefits.

79. In the north-eastern quarter there is Nandāvedī. It is resorted to by Siddhas for ever. It is not visible to non-self-possessed souls. (Those who perform Śrāddha there) do not return (i.e. they attain liberation from Saṁsāra).

80. In the holy centre Mahālaya,[3] the intelligent Mahādeva had imprinted his foot. It is a Siddhakṣetra resorted to (by Siddhas). People who go there do not return (i.e. attain Mokṣa).

81. (Partially defective) On (the peak called) Umātuṅga, in the shrine of the goddess (Umā) has performed penance standing on one foot for the period of a divine *yuga*, without taking any food[4]. And the water (also) stood (for that period?).

---

1. A lake at the foot of Mt. Candraprabha from which river Acchodā flows out. If identical with the Acchoda-sarovara in Bāṇa's *Kādambarī*, it is Acchāvat, six miles from Martaṇḍa in Kashmir.

2. For *Vāraṇena* Bd. P. *ibid* V. 78 reads *Kāraṇena* 'for some purpose' and it is a meaningful reading.

3. The same as Oṁkāranātha or Amareśvara in M.P. —De 117

4. Our text reads *nīhāra* 'snow' which is obscure. Bd. P. *ibid* reads *anāhāra* 'without taking food'. It is relevant to penance, hence accepted tentatively.

82-83. One becomes sanctified by visiting Umātuṅga, Bhṛgutuṅga, Brahmatuṅga, Mahālaya, Kādravatī, Śāṇḍilī and Vāmana's cave. Śrāddha performed there yields ever-lasting benefit. Japa, Homa and meditation—everything performed there becomes meritorious.

84. Those who observe *Brahmacarya* (celibacy), those who perform sacrifice and those who are devoted to their preceptors for a hundred years (enjoy good benefits). These and other similar benefits are attained immediately by taking a dip in those holy waters.

85. (The holy river) Kumāradhārā[1] there removes all sins (at its very sight). If one goes and settles there, one attains immediately what is attained when it is seen.

86. By regularly visiting Śailakīrtipura, one attains all cherished desires. Like Devas he remains invisible to all living beings and roams in the earth.

87. Śrāddhas should be offered everyday by one who seeks everlasting benefits at the great holy centre of Kāśyapa well known as Kālasarpi.

88. Śrāddha performed all round Śālagrāma[2] becomes ever-lasting. It is not directly visible to sinful persons.

89-90. The place is forbidden to the evil-minded and the good ones are allowed entry, since the pure divine king of serpents dwelling in the holy lake accepts the *Piṇḍa* of the good and not that of the bad. Even by the highly illuminated serpents, the food cannot be eaten (if offered by the bad).

91. In these two holy centres, Dharma is directly seen. In Devadāruvana[3] too the same proof can be seen.

92. The sins shaken off are visible to the meritorious soul. In Bhāgīrathī and Prayāga[4] (the Śrāddha performed) is said to be of ever-lasting benefit.

---

1. Near Vyāsa's seat for dhyāna and Kāntipurī or ancient Kāthmāṇḍu in Nepal. —De 89
2. A place near the source of Gandak, the place where Sage Pulaha and Bharata performed penance.
3. Its site is on Gaṅgā near Kedar in Garhwal; Badarikāśrama is situated in this 'Vana'.
4. Modern Allahabad, U.P.

93. Śrāddha should be offered with efforts at Kālañjara,[1] Daśārṇa, Naimiṣa, Kurujāṅgala and the city of Vārāṇasī.

94. In that city, Yogeśvara is present for ever. Hence what is offered there is ever-lasting. Offering Śrāddhas in these holy places, one becomes sanctified. The Śrāddha yields ever-lasting benefits.

95. Penance, Homa, meditation, nay anything performed in Lauhitya,[2] Vaitaraṇī and Svarṇavedī, becomes meritorious.

96. Only once, is (Śrāddha) seen (performed) near the sea-shore by men of meritorious actions. So also in Gayā, Dharmapṛṣṭha and in Brahmā's lake.

97-98. The Śrāddha offered in Gayā and Gṛdhrakūṭa yields great benefit. Snow falls all round it upto a distance of five Yojanas (1 Yojana = 12 Kms.). The forest surrounding the hermitage of Bharata is remembered as the most meritorious. The foot-print of Mataṅga is seen there with the physical eye.

99. This spot is glorified as (conducive to) entire righteousness. It is an example for this world. Similarly the Pañcavana is very holy. It is resorted to by men of meritorious actions. The holy centre Pāṇḍuviśālā is also a ready example.

100. (Defective) The persons who perpetrate sins come to the surface (become exposed) by means of weighing balances, by its arcs[3] and by various scriptures when they get attached (visit) to that Tīrtha (?).

101. Highly efficacious is the Śrāddha offered at the silent (deep) great lake Pāvamaṇḍala in the (river) Kauśikī in the third quarter on the third *Tithi* (day).

---

1. The places mentioned are identified as follows :
   (i) Kālañjara—Kalinjar in Badausa sub-division of Banda district, Bundelkhand (M.P.).
   (ii) Daśārṇa—Eastern N. Malwa, including Bhopal in Madhya Pradesh. Its ancient capital was Vidiśā.
   (iii) Naimiṣa—Nimsar, 45 miles NW of Lucknow, Uttar Pradesh.
   (iv) Kurujāṅgala—a forest country situated in Sirhind, NW of Hastinapur. —De 110

2. The following are identified by De thus : Lauhitya (The Brahmaputra, Assam); Vaitaraṇī (the river Baitaraṇi in Orissa); Jaipur stands on this river.

3. It appears that sinners are supposed to be weighed in the balance.

102. After performing a very severe penance for many celestial Yugas, the intelligent deity Mahādeva set foot on Muṇḍapṛṣṭha.

103. Within a very short time, a righteous man discards his sin quickly like a serpent casting off its slough.

104-105. To the north of Muṇḍapṛṣṭha, there is a holy centre famous in the three worlds by the name Kanakanandī. It is well protected by day and night by terrible serpents of huge bodies and licking with their tongues, frightful to the sinners (but) very delightful to Siddhas. (Even) birds flying as they please take bath there and go to heaven.

106. Śrāddha offered there is said to yield everlasting benefit. An excellent man becomes free from his three-fold indebtedness by taking his bath there.

107. On the banks of that lake, there is a great shrine of the lord. After mounting up to it and performing Japas, one becomes a Siddha and thereafter goes to heaven.

108. After going to the northern Mānasa,[1] one attains excellent Siddhi. On going to the excellent city[2], a very wonderful thing is seen.

109. One should perform Śrāddha there according to one's capacity and physical strength. He should attain divine pleasures and the means to liberation (from *Saṁsāra*) for ever.

110-111. In the excellent Mānasa lake, a very wonderful thing is seen. The highly blessed goddess Gaṅgā of three-fold path, slipping dawn from heaven, shines in the sky. Falling off the lunar rays on to the earth, it appears like festoons in the sky with the brightness of the sun.

112. It is diving with golden splendour. It is like the gate to heaven thrown wide open. It is from this place that it flows again towards the eastern ocean in its final stage.

113. It sanctifies all living beings and particularly those who know righteousness. Candrabhāgā (Chenab) and

---

1. Can it be the Kara Kul of northern Pamirs as suggested by M. Ali (AGP P. 71)? The so-called Uttara Mānasa at Gayā is an ordinary pond.

2. No mention of any city is here in the context. Bd. P. *ibid* V. 117 reads *Saraśreṣṭhe* 'in that excellent lake'.

Sindhu both these are like Mānasa (in sanctity). The divine Sindhu, the most excellent of rivers flows towards the western ocean.

114-115. There is the mountain named Himavān. It is embellished with various kinds of minerals. It is said that it extends to eighty thousand Yojanas. It is crowded with Siddhas and Cāraṇas. It is served and resorted to by Siddhas and Cāraṇas. There is a Puṣkariṇī (lake) on it, well known by the name Suṣumnā.

116. One who is born there lives upto ten thousand years. Śrāddha offered there yields ever-lasting benefits, and great prosperity. The performer of Śrāddhas enables ten previous generations and ten succeeding ones to cross (hell).

117. Everything belonging to Himavān is holy. The Gaṅgā is sacred everywhere (throughout). The ocean-going rivers and all the oceans all round are holy.

118. A sensible man should perform Śrāddha in all these places and at similar ones. Even by taking bath, he becomes sanctified. By offering (Śrāddha* ?) he becomes so (all the more).

119-123. Śrāddha can be performed in the following places: On the high summits and ridges of mountains, crevasses, in the solitary sides, springs and fountains, on the sandy banks of rivers, on the auspicious anniversaries of the beginning of Yugas, on great oceans, in cowpens, in the confluence of two rivers, in the forests, well-cleaned and scrubbed ground, pleasing fragrant spots, in solitary houses, on the ground polished with cow-dung, etc. One should perform Śrāddha in these places in accordance with injunctions. Those who seek fulfilment of all desires shall perform Śrāddha in these places carefully. They should perform circumambulation in all the quarters. An intelligent man performing thus, shall attain the Siddhi of *Brahmatva* (Brahmahood).

124. The worship of Pitṛs becomes fruitful if anger etc.

---

*MS. Kha. In A reads *dattva dānam* 'giving a religious gift', for *dattvā dattvā* of our text. Bd. P. *ibid* V. 127 reads *hutvā dattvā* 'by offering oblations to fire and by religious gifts'.

is eschewed, the duties of the three castes are performed and the discipline of castes and stages of life is maintained.

125. Even a person who has committed sins becomes sanctified if he boldly and faithfully makes the pilgrimage to the holy centres and courageously controls his senses. What need be said in regard to a person of meritorious deeds ?

126. He is not reborn in an animal womb. He is not born again in an impious land. A Brāhmaṇa attains heaven and attains the means to salvation (Mokṣa).

127. These five do not attain the benefit of pilgrimage : those who have no faith, sinners, atheists, permanent doubters and those who always seek a cause (for everything).

128. Great *Siddhi* is achieved in the holy centre of *Guru* (the preceptor). He is the most excellent of all sacred objects and spots. Meditation is a still greater Tīrtha. It is the eternal Brahmatīrtha.[1]

129. Meditation is greater than observance of fasts. It makes all the sense organs shun (their objects). Those who are wedded to observance of fasts are reborn again and again along with their vital breaths.

130. One shall equalise Prāṇa and Apāna. One should restrain in mind objects and the sense organs and restrain the intellect in the mind. Then every sense-organ recedes.

131. Understand that undoubtedly *Pratyāhāra* (the withdrawal of all sense organs) is the sure means to salvation. Among the sense-organs, the mind is the most terrible. It makes the intellect and other organs function.

132. (The restlessness of the mind) is subdued by not taking food. Know that fasting is a penance. By restraining the intellect and the mind, the intellect is sublimated (the intellect becomes beautiful).

133. When all the sins are mitigated, when the sense organs are weakened (subdued) the pure soul attains bliss of liberation like fire without fuel.

---

1. The influence of Yoga is so profound on the Purāṇa writer that Yogic meditation is regarded superior to Tīrthayātrā (vv. 128-131). The importance of feeding a Yogin at the time of Śrāddhas has been already extolled in previous chapters.

134. A knower of Yogas separates the individual soul from all manifest and unmanifest causes and *Guṇas* by means of his Yogic power.

135. There is no place for him to go, whether manifest or unmanifest. He is neither *Asat* (non-existent) nor *Sat-Asat*. Nothing can be said of his existence.

CHAPTER SIXTEEN

The Śrāddha Ritual : Purificatory Rites

Bṛhaspati Said:

1. Henceforth, I shall recount the various types of *Dānas* (religious gifts) and the benefits thereof. I shall also mention the pure things to be used in the Śrāddha rite and those that should be avoided.

2. It should be performed on snow-capped precipice (?) or he should also bring snow from there (?). Hence *Agnihotra* is laid down (in the scriptures) as the greatest and holiest.

3. One shall avoid Śrāddha-performance during the night. On other occasions also, since Rāhu is seen, one should quickly perform Śrāddha as soon as Rāhu is seen[1] even by spending one's entire possession.

4. He who does not perform Śrāddha at the time of eclipse becomes distressed like the cow (stuck up) in mire. He who performs it, uplifts sinners like a boat in the ocean that saves those who are drowning.

5. During the sacrifice to Viśvedevas and Saumyas, the *Havis* can contain plenty of meat. But one should avoid the horn of the rhinoceros to mitigate the malice (of Pitṛs) (?)

6-8. Formerly while Tvaṣṭṛ was being prevented by the noble-souled Lord of Devas from drinking the Soma juice meant for Indra, the consort of Śacī, it (some part or drops of Soma)

1. Cf. Bd.P. 2.3.14. 3-4, KP. II. 16.8; Brahma P. 220-51-54 Eclipses are the proper times for *Kāmya* Śrāddhas.

fell on the ground. *Syāmākas* (a variety of rice) grew up that way (from drops of Soma). They are honoured for (the propitiation of) Pitṛs. The spray (of Soma juice) sticking to (and coming out of) his nostrils fell from them (and became *ikṣu*—sugarcane). Hence sugarcanes are phlegmatic, cool, pleasing and sweet.

One should perform all the Pitṛ-rites with Śyāmāka rice and sugarcane for the fulfillment of all desires.

He who performs Āgrayaṇa i.e. the first Soma libation at the Agniṣṭoma sacrifice (or of fruits after the rainy season) (with Śyāmāka and sugarcanes) attains the fulfilment of his desires quickly.[1]

9. Syāmāka (rice), Hastināman (?), Paṭola (fruit of *Trichosanthes Diaoeca*), fruits of Bṛhatī (Brinjals) and the crest of Agastya—all are very astringent.

10-11a.[2] Such other excellent and sweet things as Nāgara (?), Dīrghamūlaka (a kind of radish) should be offered (at Śrāddha). So also tender shoots of a bamboo, *surasa, sarjaka* (juicy parts of the Sāla tree) and Bhūstṛṇa (*andropogen schoenanthus*).

11b-14. I shall now mention those things that should always be avoided in Śrāddha. Garlic, carrots, onions, globular radish and *Karambha* (groats or flour mixed with curds) and other articles devoid of smell and with no taste should be avoided in Śrāddha.[3] The reason is also mentioned (as follows):

Formerly in the fight between Devas and Asuras, Bali was defeated by Suras. From his wounds drops of blood gushed out and from them these articles grew up. Hence they are avoided in the Śrāddha rite.

15. The exudations mentioned in the Vedas, the salts found in arid lands are to be avoided in the Śrāddha rites. Women in their monthly course shall not take part in Śrāddhas.

---

1. For the lists of kinds of corns to be used for Śrāddha food vide MKP. 29-9-11 (quoted by Hemādri), VP. III. 16.5-6, Viṣṇu Dhs. 80.1.

2. A comparison of our text with Bd. P. 2.3.14 shows that some lines are missing here while others are mixed up.

3. Cf. Bd.P. 23,14.22-27; *Smṛti Candrikā*—Śrāddha, pp. 415-416.

16. Foul-smelling water, water having froth and foams, water from puddles, water where cows are disinclined to drink and the water stored in vessels the previous night shall not be used in Śrāddha[1].

17. The milk of ewes, deer, camel, single-horned animals, buffalo and the Camarī deer should be avoided by a wise man.[2]

18. Henceforth I shall mention the places that should be avoided assiduously. I shall also mention, by whom Śrāddha should not be seen. I shall also recount what is pure and impure in a Śrāddha.

19. With great faith one should perform a Śrāddha by means of fruits, roots and foodstuffs available in forests. Thereby he attains desirable country, heaven and liberation (from Saṁsāra) as well as fame.

20. Places full of noise-pollution and teeming with insects and a place with foul smell shall be avoided for the performance of Śrāddha.[3]

21. A place within a distance of twelve Yojanas from all the rivers joining the sea (i.e. so far from their confluence with the sea), a door at the south-east as well as the land of Triśaṅku, should be avoided.

22. The land to the north of Mahānadī and to the south of Kaikaṭa is the land of Triśaṅku. It is forbidden for the rite of Śrāddha.[4]

23. The lands of Kāraṅkara (Karkal in south Kanara Dist.), Kaliṅga, the land to the north of Sindhu and those lands wherein the practice of the pious rites of different stages of life and castes are not in vogue, should be avoided scrupulously.

24. The naked and similar (apostates and non-Vedic sects) people should not see the Śrāddha rite.[5] This is the rule.

---

1. Mk. P. 29.15-17
2. Cf. Brahma P. 220.169; VP. III. 16.11; MK.P. 32.17-19.
3. Cf. Mk.P. 29.19.
4. It is not clear why places like Orissa, Telangana or regions north of Indus were declared unfit for Śrāddha-performance. Were they beyond the pale of Brahmanism when this section of the text came to be written? Cf. Bd.P. 2.3.14.31-33.
5. As explained below (vv. 26ff), those who do not have the protective covering of the Vedas. The term includes not only non-Vedic sects like

Such Śrāddhas as are seen by these, do not reach Pitṛs or Pitāmahas.

Śaṁyu said :

25. O holy lord, O leader of important Brāhmaṇas, please recount in detail and precisely to me who ask about the naked and similar people.

26. Thus requested, *Bṛhaspati of great brilliance said to him* : The *Trayī* (the three Vedas) is remembered as the protective covering unto all living beings.

27. Those who discard it out of delusion are the naked, O excellent Brāhmaṇa. If a man forsakes that protection, he becomes supportless and is ruined.

28. If a man discards Dharma and seeks liberation (*Mokṣa*) elsewhere, his labour therein is in vain. For he has not the correct perspective.

29-30. Formerly, all the Brāhmaṇas, Kṣatriyas, Vaiśyas and Śūdras were made heretics and placed in a deformed state by Asuras who were defeated in the battle between Devas and Asuras. This is not the creation of the self-born god Brahmā*. Nor are these :

31. Those who do not practise piety come under the category of "the naked and similar people" (Nagnādayaḥ). A Brāhmaṇa who keeps matted hair without any specific aim, who shaves off his hair for nothing and who goes about naked purposelessly is also called so.

32. He who observes holy rites in vain, he who performs Japas in vain is also called "Naked etc." So also those who blow off their homes, the hunters and those who destroy property (are considered so).

Jains and Buddhists but includes apostate Brahmins, atheists, committer of gross sins (*mahā-pātakas*). Cf. Mbh. *Anuśāsana* 91-43-44, KP. II. 21-32, 23.4-25, Viṣṇu Dh. S. 89.3ff. The underlying idea is that the sacred food for Śrāddha would get polluted by the mere sight of these fallen people.

*The line : *Pāṣaṇḍa-vaikṛtasthāne naiṣā*
sṛṣṭiḥ svayaṁbhuvaḥ|
is obscure. Bd. P. 2.3.14.39 reads
Pāṣaṇḍā vai kṛtās tāta, teṣāṁ sṛṣṭiḥ prajāyate
(The defeated Asuras), created heretics. Their progeny are *Vṛddha-Śrāvakas* (*Dvi-Śrāddhaka* is mis-spelling), *Nirgranthas* (nude Jainas), *Śākyas* (followers of Buddha) and *Puṣṭi-kalaṁ-kaṣas* (?)

33. They are denounced as men of evil ways finding fault with every action committed. The Śrāddha performed or witnessed by these, goes to men(and not to Pitṛs).

34. The Brāhmaṇa-slayer, the ungrateful, the atheists, the defilers of the preceptor's bed, robbers and wicked men are shunned at the very sight.

35. One shall avoid all those who commit sins and particularly those who indulge in slandering Devas and the divine sages.

36-40. Whatever is witnessed by these, goes over to Asuras and Yātudhānas.

Kṛtayuga is said to be the age of Brāhmaṇas. Tretāyuga is remembered as the age of Kṣatriyas. They say that Dvāparayuga is the age of Vaiśyas and Kaliyuga is remembered as the age of Śūdras.

Pitṛs said :

The Vedas are to be worshipped in Kṛtayuga. Similarly Suras are to be worshipped in Tretāyuga. Wars are always to be worshipped in Dvāpara and the heretics in Kaliyuga.

There is no doubt in this that these spoil a Śrāddha by their mere sight : the dishonoured, the unholy, fowl, domestic pig and dog. The Śrāddha materials touched by calves and the people having pollution and chronic ailments are defiled. Cooked food should never be seen by dirty or fallen persons. If they see, it cannot be used as Havya and Kavya (offerings to gods and Pitṛs).

41. The chief materials touched by them become desecrated. Solidified ghee shall be avoided at the very outset. Sprinkling with water mixed with clay is laid down (for the consecration of materials of Śrāddha).

42. Scattering of yellow mustard and black gingelly seeds should be done. The articles should be assiduously shown to the preceptor, the sun and the fire.

43-47. The following should be avoided in Śrāddha : that which is trodden upon by people while climbing on to their seats; that which is seen by the mobile beings that are defiled; dried up and stale things; partly eaten things, defiled objects; that which is licked at the tip; that which is defiled by gravel,

pebbles and hair or worm-eaten; cooked rice and other food-stuffs in which salt has been added; gingelly seeds and barley ground and powdered like oilcake; and things shaken off from garments. There are certain people who profess to be very wise by showing their opposition to the Vedas. Theyare to be termed 'Ayajñapatis' (non-masters of sacrifice). They are as though the dusts of Śrāddha. Forbidden vegetables mixed with curds, as well as sour gruel or fomented liquids are avoided in a Śrāddha.

48. One should avoid (the egg-plant) and all distilled liquors. The salt extracted from the ocean (water) and from the (waters of the) Mānasa (lake) (is holy).

49-50. This is extremely holy. It is visible directly. It is put into the fire and then taken in the hands and carefully pressed. It is to be applied to the forehead. This is remembered as Brahmatīrtha. All the articles for Śrāddha should be sprinkled and offered in the sacrifice.[1]

51. Ariṣṭa (soap-berry), Tumula, Bilva, Iṅguda and Śvadana should be soaked in water and (water be) sprinkled (out of them).

52. All sorts of baskets (wicker-work) should be purified according to the conventional practice. Vessels made of tooth (ivory)-bone, wood and horns should be scrubbed and scraped.

53-54. All earthen pots should be burnt again (for purification). Gems, diamonds, corals, pearls and conchs are to be purified by (brushing with) the residues of powdered yellow mustard or gingelly seeds. The same can be used to purify sheep wool and all types of hair.

55. All kinds of sheep's wool can be purified with clay and water, (but) at the beginning and end of all purificatory processes washing with water is recommended.

56. Purification of cotton cloth is effected with sacred ashes. Flowers, fruits, pins and rods should be dipped in water.

57-58. Purification of the earth (ground) is by sweeping, sprinkling and smearing (with cowdung). Outside the village the ground (earth) is purified by the wind. Purification (cleansing) of bow and arrows is effected by (brushing) it with clay. Thus the excellent modes of purification have been mentioned.

1. Verses 50-58 describe the process of purifying different articles to be used in a Śrāddha.

Henceforth I shall mention further modes of purification. Listen to it even as I recount.

59. One should evacuate the bowels early in the morning at a distance of an arrow-shot from the house in the south-western direction and within the view of the house. He should cover the head (with a cloth). He shall not touch the head with the hands.[1]

60-61. (Before evacuating) the ground should be covered with dry grass, wooden sticks or leaves, bamboo chips or broken mud pots. He should take water in a pot and hold clay also in the hand in complete silence. He should sit facing the north during the day and the south during the night.

62. He should hold the water-pot with the right hand and wash the anus with the left hand applying clay three times.

63. He should scrub the left hand with clay ten times and then each of the two hands five times.

64. Washing the feet after applying clay, he should duly perform *Ācamana* (sipping of water). He should then pour water down three times with (invocation of) the sun, fire and water.

65. A sensible man should always keep a water-pot handy. Subsidiary actions and washing of the feet shall be done by means of this pot.

66. The performance of Ācamana and divine duties shall be done by means of a second (vessel). If such actions are performed with a defiled hand, one should observe fast for three nights.

67. In protracted cases of default, the rite of Kṛcchra is prescribed for expiation. After touching a dog or a Cāṇḍāla one should perform Taptakṛcchra rite.

68. If human bones are touched, fasting is the purification (for it). It is prescribed that if (the bones are) touched delibera-

---

1. After dealing with the purification of things or materials for Śrāddha, the aut hor deals with the purification of the man performing the Śrāddha in vv. 59 to the end of the Chapter. The Purāṇa-writers (in fact the whole tribe of writers on Dharma-Śāstra in the mediaeval period) appear to have been so much obsessed with 'purity-psychosis' that they lost sight of the social necessity of assimilating foreigners or backward people in Hinduism and prohibited their own followers from going beyond the contracting geographical limits of Brahmanism (vide vv. 69-71).

tely, the fast is to be observed for three nights, and for one night, if touched unintentionally.

69-71. By going to unholy places, one acquires all sorts of sins. These unholy places are—Kāraskaras, Pulindas, Āndhras, Śabaras and others, the land of Bhūtilaya (if one drinks water there), the land of Yugandhara, up to the northen borderlands of Sindhu, the land of Divyantaraśata, sinful countries occupied by sinners and lands devoid of good men such as Brāhmaṇas who have mastered the Vedas.

72-73. Clarity of mind, fire, timely whitewashing—these things indicate purity. But one is always ignorant. If one makes default in the purificatory rites—except out of ignorance, undoubtedly the benefit goes to Piśācas and Yātudhānas.

74-75. One who has no faith in purificatory rites is born among Mlecchas. Those who do not perform Yajñas and sinners are born among the lower strata of animals. A man gets released from sins through purificatory rites and attains heaven. Devas indeed desire purity. This has been declared by Devas themselves.

76. Suras always forsake the hideous and the unclean. Men of auspicious rites perform three types of purificatory rites justifiably.

77-78. *Pitṛs* delighted with them for their pure rites, increase the Yogic power and bestow all cherished things available in the three worlds, on these people, viz. a man who reveres Brāhmaṇas, one who receives guests, an intelligent man who adheres to purity, one devotedly attached to parents, one who possesses self-control and one who is sympathetic, O Brāhmaṇas.

CHAPTER SEVENTEEN

The Test for Eligibity of a Brāhmaṇa (for Śrāddha Invitation)

The Sages said :

1. O intelligent Sūta, the *Śrāddhakalpa* has been recounted by you. The *Śrāddhakalpa* glorified by sages, has been heard by us.

2. Its extensive details have been particularly narrated. O extremely intelligent one, please mention the remaining topics too, according to the opinion of that sage.

Sūta said :

3. O blessed Brāhmaṇas, I shall recount the opinion of that sage in detail, in regard to *Śrāddha*. Listen to it from me.

4. The Śrāddha rite as well as the mode of its performance have been previously mentioned by me. I shall also mention what remains in the proper order as regards the Brāhmaṇas.

5. It is not that Brāhmaṇas should always be (subjected to) tests and investigation. But in regard to rites pertaining to gods and Pitṛs (employment of) tests has been laid down in the Śruti.[1]

6. One shall scrupulously avoid that person in whom defects are seen or who is shunned by good men or who, through contacts or staying together, is known to be wicked.

7-8. A sensible man should always test a Brāhmaṇa who is not known before, at the time of Śrāddha.[2]

---

1. Since the days of Gṛhya Sūtras, there was insistence on the antecedents, learning, character of the invitees (Brāhmaṇas) for rites pertaining to Devas and Pitṛs (Āśvalāyana G.S. IV.7.2, Baudhāyana G.S. II. 8.2-3, II 10.5-6). To these Smṛtis and Purāṇas added many more, but heredity, personality, Vedic learning, character remained the main considerations in the case of such invitees (cf. Mt.P. 16.8-10, NP.I, 28.6-10, KP. II. 21 and *Smṛti Candrikā*: *Śrāddha Kāṇḍa*—pp. 389-394). Self-control was the *sine-qua-non* of an invitee. Manu (II.118) declares, 'A Brāhmaṇa who knows only the *Gāyatrī Mantra* but is self-controlled, is preferable to a Brāhmaṇa who knows the three Vedas, but lacks in self-control.

2. Cf. Viṣṇu Dh.S. 82-1-2.

Indeed Siddhas roam over this earth in the guise of Brāhmaṇas. Hence one should approach the in-coming guests with palms joined in reverence. He should worship him offering water for washing the feet, oil for massage and food for eating.

9-10. Devas and the masters of Yoga roam about the ocean-girt earth in various guises, virtuously protecting the subjects. A man should worship and offer a Brāhmaṇa guest different types of food and vegetable dishes and fruits as well.[1]

11. It is heard that one attains the fruit of Agniṣṭoma (sacrifice) by offering milk (or water) to a guest.[2] By offering ghee he attains splendid vision as well as the fruit of a yajña of sixteen-day duration. By offering honey, he attains the fruit of *Atirātra* sacrifice.

12. A devout person who feeds Brāhmaṇas faithfully, offering them all desired objects, obtains the fruit thereof. He who offers all his possessions to all guests and Brāhmaṇas enjoys for ever the fruit of *Sarvamedha* sacrifice.

13. He who slights a guest after his coming at the time of Śrāddha or in a rite for Devas, is shunned by Devas in the manner a Hotṛ disregards another man's wealth.

14. For the purpose of blessing the worlds Devas, Pitṛs and Fire-god enter those Brāhmaṇas and take food.

15. If they are not worshipped, they burn; if they are worshipped, they grant all desires. Hence one should always worship guests by offering one's entire possession.

16. A forest-dweller, a householder, a person who visits the house, children, distressed persons and an ascetic—all there are to be known as *Atithis* (guests).

17. An *Abhyāgata* is the guest who begs for something. An *Atithi* will not beg. An *Atithi* is the most excellent because he

---

1. Verses 8-10 mean that an *atithi* (an uninvited guest)—a stranger—coming for food at the time of Śraddha is exempt from the qualifications on the specious ground that the stranger might be a *siddha* or a god in disguise.

2. Such cheap promises of getting the fruits of sacrifices like Agniṣṭoma or Atirātra by offering ordinary things like milk or ghee to Brāhmaṇas have adversely affected the Vedic institution of sacrifice. For the distinction between *Atithi* and *Abhyāgata* vide vv. 16-18 below.

has no *Tithi* (fixed date). This is said to be the etymological meaning of *Atithi.*

18. A real guest is neither terrible nor of a mixed caste, neither devoid of learning nor a very learned specialist, neither has he too many children nor is he servile. He is of good conduct.

19. A person who wishes (the fruit of) the performance of a Yajña should hospitably receive and give (food etc.) to a guest who has wandered a lot, is thirsty, tired and extremely hungry.

20-22a. By climbing on to Bhṛgutuṅga, by visiting (and taking holy dip in) the holy river Sarasvatī, the holy river-goddess Gaṅgā, Mahānadī, and other rivers originating from Himavān and those worshipped by sages, as well as lakes and holy centres, one becomes free from sins and is honoured in heaven.

22b-23. It is said that there is pollution due to death for ten nights particularly for a Brāhmaṇa. It is prescribed that a Kṣatriya has twelve days' pollution. A Vaiśya has pollution for half a month and a Śūdra becomes pure after a month.[1]

24-25. A woman in menses in all the castes becomes pure in three nights. It is laid down that by touching a woman in her menses, a woman lying-in-chamber, a dog, a Cāṇḍāla, a nudist like a Digaṁbara Jaina and similar people and those who have borne a dead body, one gets polluted. He must take bath along with his clothes and smear clay twelve times on himself. Then he becomes pure.

26-27. The same purificatory rite should be followed in the case of sexual intercourse. Clay is to be applied nine times. After washing hands with clay (and water), a person shall perform the purificatory rite. After washing the hands with water and taking bath, a sensible man shall apply clay to the private parts twice.

28. This is the mode of purification to be observed by all the castes for ever. One should smear hands and feet three times and sprinkle them with water.

29. This is the purificatory rite for forest-dwellers

1. Verses 226-30 deal with personal purification

(*Vānaprasthas*). Henceforth I shall mention the procedure for village-dwellers (i.e. for householders). Clay is applied to the hands three times and three times to the feet.

30. Clay shall be applied fifteen times to the hands and other unclean parts. Clay shall be applied to the uncleaned parts and it shall be washed with water.

31. After tying a cloth round the neck or the head, if anyone walks on foot along the street, he shall wash the feet. Without washing the feet, even if he performs Ācamana, he shall be unclean.

32. After washing the feet and setting the waterpot down, he should perform Ācamana and then sprinkle it with water. The materials of Śrāddha etc. shall be sprinkled again.

33. Sprinkling is recommended on flowers etc., grass and *Havis*. Objects brought by others should be placed down and sprinkled with water.

34. In a Śrāddha and rites for Devas only, those articles that are sprinkled with water should be used. Whatever is brought to the altar should be brought at the northern end and taken away from the southern end.

35. If the procedure is altered in the rites pertaining to Devas or Pitṛs, it (the rite) becomes fruitless. With the right hand, one should touch the southern altar*.

36a It is auspicious to scatter ritualistically the offering to Devas and Pitṛs with both the hands.

36b. (*Ācamana* is the purificatory rite in the following cases:)

When one is agitated or enraged; after getting up from sleep; after urination and evacuation of bowels;

37-42. when one spits; after taking food; when feet are not washed; after conversing with a person excommunicated (by others); after working in unclean places (?); in all doubtful acts such as when the tuft of hair is untied and/or one is without the sacred thread; when the lips touch the teeth; when one

---

*The text reads: *dakṣiṇena tu hastena dakṣiṇām vedam ālikhet* out of which the last three words are confusing. Bd. P. 2.3.14.99 reads *dakṣiṇām vedim ālabhet* 'should touch the southern altar' which is more appropriate and hence accepted here.

sees Cāṇḍālas; after touching things clinging to the teeth with the tongue; snapping the fingers loudly; when seeing while bowing down etc. He who is in the midst of a sinful action, but out of delusion performs Ācamana is also unclean. He should then squat in a clean place and bow down facing the north or the east. After washing the hands and feet, he should perform Ācamana between the knees (keeping hands on laps ?). He should sip the still water thrice with concentration and purity of mind.

43. He should perform *Mārjana* (cleansing with water) twice and then *Abhyukṣaṇa* (sprinkling with water) once over the sense organs, head, hands and feet as well.

44-49. Anything not considered properly, shall be sprinkled with water. In this manner his Ācamana, Vedas (Vedic Study) Yajñas, penance, charitable gifts and vow of celibacy become fruitful. If an atheist performs holy rites without performing Ācamana out of delusion, all those rites shall undoubtedly be futile. All these following should be known pure—that which is pure in words, that which is cleaned, that which is undefiled and that which is not censured. The opposite of these is impure. A hungry Brāhmaṇa should never be told—"There is nothing". If anything is given to him after duly honouring him, it is called a sacrifice without erecting a sacrificial post. During Śrāddhas, an indigent but non-begging, solitary and shy Brāhmaṇa should always be fed with food neither over-cooked nor watery. He who offers food to the low castes only, is a wicked soul, a Brāhmaṇa-slayer.

50-51. Even if he takes a hundred births, he does not become free from that sin. A Brāhmaṇa who feeds the nobler and less dignified Brāhmaṇas in the same row, whether urged by others or not, incurs sin immediately. Even his merit resulting from digging wells and tanks becomes destroyed.

52-53. In a festival, an ascetic is the leader of all Brāhmaṇas.[1] An excellent Brāhmaṇa who reads all the Vedas with Itihāsa constituting their fifth (Veda), should be kept next

---

1. Verses 52-54 state the precedence to be given to Brāhmaṇas according to their learning, in the seating arrangement of Brāhmaṇas to be fed. It is noteworthy that a recluse or a Yogī gets the first place of honour.

to him by one who knows. A Brāhmaṇa who studies three Vedas comes next to him. One (a student) of two Vedas comes next to him.

54. Then a man of a single Veda and after him comes a person who studies the Nyāya System. For the purity of the row, I am mentioning them. Understand. I shall mention those who sanctify the row (?).

55-58. Those who are mentioned before, are mentioned in their order. The *Paṅktipāvanas*[1] (those who sanctify the row of diners) are the following:—Ṣaḍaṅgī (a person who has learnt all the six ancillary subjects of the Veda), Vinayī (the disciplined one), Yogin, *Sarvatantrasvatantra* (he who has mastered all systems of philosophy) and *Yāyāvara* (a wandering mendicant saint). All these five should be known as *Paṅktipāvanas*. He who has mastered completely one of the eighteen lores, he who fulfills his duty duly—all of them are also so. The *Triṇāciketas*[2] (a Brāhmaṇa who learns the three Vidyās of Naciketas), the *Traividya* (he who has mastered three Vidyas), the Brāhmaṇa who learns Dharmaśāstras, the Brāhmaṇa who has mastered the Bārhaspatya scripture—all these Brāhmaṇas are said to be those who sanctify the row.

59. If a Brāhmaṇa invited in a Śrāddha indulges in sexual intercourse with a woman, the Pitṛs lie down in his semen virile for the period of that month (?)

---

1. It was believed that persons of specially high character, merit, learning etc. purify excommunicated or degenerate members of the society by associating with them, by sitting in their row for dining or even by their beneficent look (v 91 below). The belief was probably current before the time of Dharma Sūtras: *vide* Āpartaṁba Dh. S.II. 7.17-22. Curiously enough, Gautama (15.28), Baudhāyana Dh.S. II. 8.2, Manu III. 185-186, Yājñavalkya Smṛti (I. 219) use the same words about these sanctifiers of diners (*Paṅktipāvanas*). We get a long list of such sanctifiers in Mbh. *Anuśāsana* 90.25-31, Mt.P. 16.7-23, KP. II.21-1-14. Bd.P. 2.3.15.28-32. Our text practically repeats the same lines.

2. *Triṇāciketa* is alternately explained as :
   (i) A person who knows the *Naciketa* fire.
   (ii) A person who has thrice kindled the *Naciketa* fire.
   (iii) One who has studied the *Anuvāka* called *Virajas* (Tait. Br. III. 11.7-8) which describes the Nācikata fire and the story of Naciketas.

60. If the performer of a Śrāddha or he who takes food in a Śrāddha, indulges in sexual intercourse, undoubtedly the Pitṛs are stationed in his semen virile that month.

61-62. Hence a *Dāna* (religious gift) is to be made to the guest and a Brahmacārin (celibate person) is to be fed. The *Dāna* is to be made to one engrossed in meditation and having sympathetic feelings. In the Śrāddha rite, a righteous ascetic or a Vālakhilya (a mendicant who does not hoard anything) should be fed. A *Vānaprastha* (forest-dweller) and an *Upakurvāṇa* (Brahmacārin who completes his studies and pays his teacher and is about to be a householder) is propitiated by mere worship.

63. If a householder is fed, Viśvedevas are worshipped. By worshipping a Vānaprastha, sages are worshipped. By worshipping Vālakhilyas, Purandara (i.e. Indra) is worshipped.

64. In worshipping ascetics, Brahmā himself is worshipped. These Āśramas are holy. There are five Anāśramas through deceitfulness (?)

65. Four Āśramas (i. e. people in the four stages of life) are to be worshipped in the rites of Devas and Pitṛs. A Śrāddha should never be offered to those who are outside the four stages of life.

66. Even if he stays hungry, let him stay so outside the four stages of life. The non-ascetic and the salvationist—both of them are the defilers of the row.[1]

---

1. Verses 66-83 give a list of persons who are defilers of the row of diners (*Paṅkti-dūṣakas*). These lines are common to Smṛtis and other Purāṇas such as Manu III. 151-166, Yājñavalkya I. 222-224, Bṛhad Yama Smṛ. III. 34-38, Mbh. *Anuśāsana* 90.6-11, Mt.P. 16.14-17, BM.P. 220.127-135, NP. I. 30-4, KP. II. 21.27-46 to mention a few. Apart from the textual similarity, the lists are interesting from a sociological point of view. They indicate what class of persons, vocations, ways of life were disrespected by the elites of those times. Sects which insist on long fasts (e.g. Jainas), Sāṅkhyas (who were originally atheists), non-Brāhmaṇical mendicants like Bauddhas, Jainas, persons not following the vocations of their castes, are regarded as unworthy of being invited to a Śrāddha or receiving religious gifts (*dāna*).

67. Those who shave off their hair in vain, those who wear matted hair, those who wear all sorts of robes, those who are devoid of mercy, those who break all codes of good conduct and those who are indiscriminate in eating—are to be avoided.

68. In the matter of *Havya* and *Kavya*, one shall avoid Kārukas (a Śaiva sect) and men of no disciplined conduct of life, men ostracised from the Vedic Society, musicians and actors (who imitate deities).

69-70. A person who has social and other contacts with these, attains black complexion (taint). He who dines with Śūdras—all these are defilers of the row (of diners).

71. Killing (of animals etc.), destruction with force, agriculture, trading activities, animal husbandry, secret service to a person other than the preceptor—these should not be followed by a Brāhmaṇa.

72. Those who are real Brāhmaṇas, pursue knowledge and meditation. Even if they are born as Brāhmaṇas, those who have false conceptions are of evil conduct.

73. The preachers of wrong/heretic doctrines should be avoided. So also the arrogant, the scandal-monger, and people defiled by minor sins and great sins should be avoided.

74-75. Those who make use of Vedas as a means of employment out of greed and delusion or for profit are the sellers of Vedas. They are to be avoided in the Śrāddha rite.

Study of Vedas is not a profession. He who makes it a profession is a sinner. The partaker is deprived of the fruit of Vedic study. The donor is deprived of the fruit of charity.

76. A person hired to teach the Vedas and one who is taught by such a person—both of them do not deserve invitation to a Śrāddha as the sellers and buyers of the Vedas.

77. Those (Brāhmaṇas) who buy and sell for the purpose of livelihood are despicable ones. This is the profession of a Vaiśya but a sin unto Brāhmaṇas.

78. They say that he who depends for his livelihood upon the Vedas and he who depends upon those who know Vedas for livelihood do not deserve invitation to a Śrāddha. The husband of one's daughter also shall not be invited.

79. He who goes unto his wife in vain (i.e. an issueless person) and he who performs Yajña in vain—both of these do not deserve an (invitation to) a Śrāddha. A Brāhmaṇa (who is) an atheist also shall not be invited.

80. He who cooks food for himself only and he who does not offer anything to Devas and guests—both of them are fallen and they are Brahmarākṣasas. They do not deserve (invitation to) a Śrāddha.

81. Those whose wives eagerly await the nights and those who run after other men's wives, as well as those who are mad after wealth and love should not be invited to a Śrāddha.

82. Those who are opposed to the discipline and the duties of the four castes and stages of life, a thief and he who indiscriminately performs Yajña for everyone—all these are defilers of the row in the rite of Śrāddha.

83. Pitṛs do not partake of their share in the Śrāddha if the invited Brāhmaṇa eats like a boar, or eats off his palm or eats with his left hand.

84. The leavings of the Śrāddha food should not be given to women or a Śūdra unless he is an attendant. If anyone gives out of passion or delusion, it never reaches Pitṛs.

85. Hence in a Śrāddha rite, the leavings of food should never be given except curds and ghee and that too to a disciple and a son; not otherwise.

86. Only that which is not left over should be given, such as food particularly. Pitṛs are propitiated with flowers, roots and fruits too as with food.

87. The foodstuffs served are sanctified as long as they are warm. Pitṛs partake of the food as long as the invited Brāhmaṇas take their food, with control over their speech.

88. Charitable gifts, acceptance of gifts, Homa, taking food and oblations must be made with the thumb (touching them) lest they should go to Asuras.

89. All these rites and particularly the rite of gifting away, are thus performed. The rite of Ācamana is performed with the hands within the knees.

90. One should avoid persons with shaven heads, matted hair, and ochre-coloured robes, at the time of Śrāddha rite.

One should assiduously offer Śrāddha to those who wear tufts and to the *Tridaṇḍin* type of ascetics.

91. Those who are steadfast in their holy rites, those who seek knowledge and are engaged in meditations and the noble-souled devotees of Devas do sanctify (others) by their mere sight.

92. The whole of the three worlds is pervaded or ever by the masters of Yoga. Hence they (can) observe whatever there is in the universe.

93-94. The noble souls keep both the manifest and the unmanifest under their control. They control even that which is greater than all. Truth and falsehood have been perceived by them. *Sat*, *Asat* have been seen by them. All knowable things, absolution etc. are seen by the noble souls. Hence one who is devoted to them attains everything auspicious.

95. He who knows the *Ṛks* knows the Vedas. He who knows the Yajur Mantras knows Yajña. He who knows Sāman Mantras knows Brahman. He who knows Mānasa (? mind) knows everything.

CHAPTER EIGHTEEN

Benefit Derived from Charitable Gifts

Bṛhaspati said:

1. Henceforth I shall recount the various types of religious gifts and the benefits thereof.[1] A religious gift enables all living beings to cross (the ocean of worldly existence). It is the pleasing pathway unto heaven.

---

1. Though ancient works on Dharma Śāstra insist upon avoidance of lavishness in *Śrāddha*, later Purāṇas encourage profuse expenditure on Śrāddha, e.g. Pd. P. *Sṛṣṭi-Khaṇḍa* 9.179-181, Varāha P. 13.50-51, VP. III. 14.22-23. *Pitṛs* are reported to have two Gāthās expressing their desire to have a descendant who would bestow on Brāhmaṇas (for the benefit of Pitṛs) jewels, clothes, land, costly vehicles. This text encourages

2. That which is the most excellent in the world, that which is conducive to the attainment of heaven, nay, everything that is pleasing to oneself, must be offered to Pitṛs by one who seeks one's own eternal salvation.

3. A person who offers cooked rice, derives the benefit of attaining a divine golden chariot dazzling like the sun and filled with divine Apsaras-s.

4. He who gifts a cloth fresh from the loom at the time of the Śrāddha rite attains longevity, ample wealth, beauty and a son.

5. The knower of Dharmas who gives a sacred thread at the time of Śrāddha and offers water to all Brāhmaṇas attains the fruit of Brahmadāna (the gift of Vedic learning).

6. If anyone offers a good waterpot at the time of Śrāddhas to the Brāhmaṇas, a cow exuding honey and milk approaches the donor.

7. He who gives a circular waterpot at the time of Śrāddha obtains a milk-yielding divine cow that can be milked for whatever he wishes.

8. If anyone gives a complete bed-equipment decorated with garlands of flowers, it becomes a palace and follows him as he goes (to heaven).

9. By giving a house full of gems, furnished with bed, seats and food, at the time of Śrāddha to ascetics, one rejoices in heaven.

10-14. He obtains pearls, *lapis lazuli*, garments, varieties of precious stones, divine vehicles, hundred thousands and trillions in number and a divine aerial chariot that dazzles like a great blazing fire, that has the lustre of the moon and the sun and that is furnished with jewels according to one's desire. The aerial chariot has the speed of the mind and can go anywhere as per his pleasure. It is surrounded by Apsaras-s. He remains at the head of the aerial chariot eulogised by eveyone all round. The Gandharva-s and Apsaras-s sprinkle him with divine scents and showers of flowers. They sing and play on the instruments.

---

lavish gifts in Śrāddha. The reward promised is happiness in heaven. There is little rational co-relation between religious gift (dāna) and the reward obtained.

Youthful and prominent maidens accompanied by groups of Apsaras-s, wake him up in sweet pleasing voices.

15. By the gifts of a thousand horses, a hundred chariots and a thousand elephants, a man lives with a Yoginī.

16. He who offers water (and) lamp to Pitṛs and Yogins, attains the fruit of the gift of thousands of gold coins.

17. No other gift is more excellent than the gift of life. Hence, by all means protection to life should be given.

18. Non-violence is holier than all the Devas. It bestows everything. Learned men say that the gift of life is the noblest unto all living beings.

19. At the time of Śrāddha, one should give golden vessels having good characteristics. Sweet (divine) juices and beverages, good foodstuffs and good fortune approach him.

20. One shall give beautiful metallic vessel while feeding in Śrāddha. He will become a recipient of the objects of cherished desires and of beauty and wealth.

21. In the Śrāddha rite, one should give a silver or gold vessel. By giving it, the donor gets ample virtue (as reward).

22. He who makes a gift of a cow that has calved but once, along with a milking pot, at the time of a Śrāddha, obtains several cows and the nourishment of the cows.

23-26a. At the time of winter, one shall offer fire and plenty of wood. He who gives fuel to Brāhmaṇas at the onset of winter, becomes always victorious in battle. He shines with glory. One should honour Brāhmaṇas and offer fragrant garlands and sweet scents as well as vessels. Great rivers flowing with fragrant scents and all sorts of happiness approach the donor. So also youthful maidens of pleasing manners (approach him).

26b. Beautiful beds and seats, grounds and vehicles (are to be given).

27-28. He who gives the above-mentioned articles at a Śrāddha, attains the benefit of a horse-sacrifice. In ordinary Śrāddhas or at the time of Darśa Śrāddha, one should give to the Brāhmaṇas of good qualities, vessels full of ghee with very great respect. He shall attain good memory and fine intellect.

29. He obtains the benefit of many cows yielding potfuls

of milk. In this world, he rejoices with chariots and good horses.

30. By giving the thing wished for, at the time of Śrāddha, one gets the benefit of the sacrifice called Puṇḍarīka. By giving a beautiful residential place, one attains the fruit of Rājasūya sacrifice.

31-33. By giving a forest full of flowers and fruits, one obtains sweet smelling substances. By giving wells, parks, tanks, fields, cowsheds and houses, one rejoices in heaven as long as the moon and the stars stay. By giving beds and bedsheets embellished with jewels, one attains endless heavenly pleasure. Pitṛs are pleased with him. He is worshipped (honoured) by kings. He flourishes with wealth and grain.

34-35. Woollen and silk garments, excellent blankets, deer-skin, gold brocade, coloured cloth and wool—these should be given to Brāhmaṇas after duly feeding them. A person who has faith then gets the benefit of a hundred Vājapeya Yajñas.[1]

36. Many beautiful women, sons, servants and attendants, nay all living beings, become submissive to him in this world. He becomes free from all ailments.

37. He who gives silk, woven silk, cotton and velvet cloth, in Śrāddhas obtains the fulfilment of all his cherished desires.

38. He dispels all inglorious things and misfortunes immediately like the darkness at the time of sunrise. He shines on an aerial chariot like the moon among stars.

39. A garment is praised by all Devas; garment belongs to all the deities. In the absence af cloth, no holy rite—neither Yajñas nor (study of) Vedas nor penances, can be performed.

40. Hence clothes should be given at the time of Śrāddha particularly. He obtains all those things—Yajñas, the Vedas and the penances.

---

1. The promise of the fruit of sacrifices (which require a lot of trouble and expenditure) for *dāna* must have resulted as a disincentive for performance of sacrifice and these Brahmanical advocates of such cheap and easy ways of gaining sacrificial merits get the dubious credit of adversely affecting the Vedic institution of Sacrifice.

41. He who always gives them during Śrāddhas with faith and purity, obtains all his desires and all realms.

42-43. He obtains the fruit of a sacrifice richly equipped with all desirable things. He who gives different kinds of edibles, grains, flour mixed with curds, flour cakes, ghee and sugar, milk, milk puddings, Kṛśaras[1] and Madhuparka and pies fried in ghee, obtains the fruit of Agniṣṭoma.

44. Pitṛs are eager for curds and other milk products and different kinds of edibles and cooked rice during the rainy season and at the time when the constellation Maghā is ascendant.

45. One shall feed Brāhmaṇas with ghee. A little of ghee must be poured on the ground. By gifting elephants in Gayā, one can be free from all worries about Śrāddha.

46. By giving cooked rice, milk pudding, ghee, honey, fruits and roots as well as different types of food, one rejoices here and after death.

47. Beaten rice mixed with sugar and milk is always of everlasting benefit. If *Masūrā dāl* and Kṛśara (rice cooked with spices and pulses) are offered, Pitṛs will be pleased for a year.

48. Fried grain-powder, fried rice, pies, cooked horse-gram dishes—all mixed with curds—He who gives all these in Śrāddha obtains the treasure of Kubera.

49. He who assiduously gives fresh vegetables in Śrāddhas after duly honouring the guests, attains all enjoyments. He is revered when he goes to heaven.

50. The man who offers the most excellent foods and edibles, beverages, lambatives and juicy things, becomes the most excellent of all.

51. The flesh of the rhinoceros is the best *Havis* in the rites for Viśvedevas and Soma. But the best horn of the rhinoceros should be avoided to mitigate the malice (of deities) ?

52. The devotee, with palms joined in reverence, should offer the best seat to the guests while feeding. He shall then attain the excellent fruit of all the rites and Yajñas.

---

1. A dish consisting of sesamum and grain (mixture of rice peas with a few spices) —MW, p. 308.

53. Well-cooked food should be served hot and quick to the hungry. It should not be over-cooked. After honouring him assiduously vegetable dishes soaked in ghee should be offered devotedly.

54. The person who offers food attains an aerial chariot resembling the mid-day sun and fitted with swans for three crores of Kalpas (crores of maidens in Bd. P.).

55. There is nothing here greater than the gift of food and they are sustained by it without any doubt.

56. There is no gift nobler than the gift of life. The set of the three worlds lives by means of food. That is the fruit of offering cooked rice.

57. All the worlds are founded (dependent) on food. It is the fruit of the gift of the worlds. Food is Prajāpati himself. All these worlds are pervaded by it. Hence a gift on par with that of food has never been before nor will there be any ever in future.

58. A man devoted to Pitṛs immediately attains all the jewels, vehicles and women on the earth.

59. One should with palms joined in reverence, always offer shelter to the guests. They are the Devas awaiting in thousands, for the divine hospitality.

60. He who makes all gifts (mentioned before) shall be the sole emperor on the earth. He shall become happy even if he makes three, two or even one of those gifts.

61. Making gifts is the greatest virtue (*Dharma*). It is honourd and revered by good men. The Lordship of the three worlds is to be attained only through *Dāna*.

62. A king regains his kingdom; a poor man gets excellent wealth; a man about to die, attains longevity. Whatever a man devoted to Pitṛs desires in his mind, will be granted by his Pitṛs.

CHAPTER NINETEEN

The Benefit of Śrāddha Performance on Various Tithis

Bṛhaspati said :

1. Henceforth I shall describe the various types of *Śrāddha*[1] such as *Ajasra* or *Nitya* (daily, regular), *Naimittika* (occasional, conditional) and *Kāmya* (performed with some desired object in view) and the mode of worship (in them).

2. There are three sets of *Aṣṭakās*[2] (the 7th, 8th and 9th days of the dark half of a month) that bring about marriage, birth of a son and acquisition of wealth. The dark half of a month is the most excellent. The first *Aṣṭakā* is called Citrī.

3-4. The second *Aṣṭakā*, shall be Prājāpatyā (with Prajāpati as its deity) and the third one (is) Vaiśvadevikī. The first *Aṣṭakā* shall always be performed with flour cakes. The second should always be performed with meat. The third *Aṣṭakā* shall be performed with greens and vegetables. This is the injunction regarding the articles (for *Śrāddha*). The *Anvaṣṭakā* (the ninth day in the dark half of Pauṣa, Māgha and Phālguna) of the *Pitṛs* is also laid down permanently.

5. If there happens to be a fourth *Aṣṭakā*, a learned person should perform a special *Śrāddha* therein, even by spending his entire possession.

---

1. The '*Ajasra*' or '*Nitya*' Śrāddha must be performed everyday, e.g. *Pitṛ-yajña* in daily *Pañcamahāyajñas*. Śrāddha to be performed on an occasion which is uncertain (e.g. the birth of a son) is *Naimittika*. Śrāddha done with a desire for a fruit or reward (e.g. progeny) is *Kāmya*.

2. The word '*Aṣṭakā*' is formed from 'aṣṭan'. But according to Vārtika 9 on Pāṇini VII. 3.45, it means 'a rite with Pitṛs as deities'. *Āśvalāyana Gr. S.* II. 4-1 informs that the 8th day in the dark halves of seasons Hemanta and Śiśira are Aṣṭakās. As a season consists of two months there are (and should be) four *Aṣṭakās*. But most other Gṛhya Sūtras differ and regard the 8th day in the dark halves of Mārgaśīrṣa, Pauṣa and Māgha as Aṣṭakā days. This Purāṇa does not follow Āśvalāyana. Though the above-mentioned Vārtika regards *Pitṛs* as the deities on these days, our Purāṇa regards the first Aṣṭakā as Citrī (Aindrī ? as in Bd.P.), the second has Prajāpati and the third has Viśvedevas as the deities and *Pitṛs* are conspicuous by their non-mention.

6. He (the performer of a *Śrāddha*) shall always be happy both here and hereafter. The worshippers shall attain progress and the non-believers, downfall.

7. Like cows approaching a water-trough, all these Pitṛs and gods approach the man (who performs a *Śrāddha*)—*Pitṛs* during the *Parvan* days and deities on different Tithis.

8. Let them not return without being worshipped during *Aṣṭakās*. The world (worldly life) will be in vain in regard to him (who does not worship). Even what is obtained by him, perishes.

9-10. Those who offer worship attain Devas. Those who do not offer are reborn as lower animals. A person who performs a *Śrāddha* on the Full Moon day obtains progeny, nourishment, memory, intellect, sons and prosperity.[1] He enjoys to the full. (The *Śrāddha* performed on) *Pratipad* (the first day of a fortnight) is conducive to the acquisition of wealth. What he has acquired does not perish.

11. He who performs a *Śrāddha* on the second day of the lunar fortnight, becomes the lord of bipeds. The third day (is to be selected for *Śrāddha*) by one who seeks excellent things, (for) *Tṛtiyā* (third day) is destructive of sins.

---

1. Verses 10-19 state the benefit accruing from performance of Śrāddha on different *Tithis* from the 1st to the 15th. *Āpastamba Dh. S.* II. 7.16-22, Mbh. *Anuśāsana* 87, Bd. P. 2.3.9-20, BM. P. 220.15-21, KP.II. 20.17.22 state the reward a man gets for performance of *Śrāddha* on these *Tithis*. But there is difference of opinion among these about the benefits. For example, see the comparative table of rewards of Śrāddha performance on various *Tithis*.

The Tithi	*Reward as per our Text*	*Reward as per K.P. II.* 20
1.	Acquisition of wealth	Auspicious sons
2.	Lordship over bipeds	Begets daughters
3.	Destroys sins	Gets animals
4.	Discovers weak points of his enemies	Gets small animals and things
5.	Attains prosperity and glory	Begets splendid sons
6.	Reverence from Brāhmaṇas	Blessed with lustre and good cultivation

The list need not be extended.

12. He who performs a *Śrāddha* on *Caturthi* (fourth day) finds the weak points of his enemies. A performer of a *Śrāddha* on the fifth day attains great prosperity and glory.

13-14. Brāhmaṇas revere him who performs a *Śrāddha* on the sixth day. The man who performs a *Śrāddha* on the seventh day regularly attains the fruit of *Mahāsatra* (great Soma sacrifice). He becomes the lord of Gaṇas (followers of Śiva). The man who performs a *Śrāddha* on the eighth day attains complete prosperity.

15. He who performs a *Śrāddha* on the ninth day, attains prosperity and a beloved wife. He who performs a *Śrāddha* on the tenth day, attains the glory of Brahman-hood.

16. He shall attain (mastery over) all the Vedas and the destruction of sins. The *Dāna* (religious gift) offered on the eleventh day yields prosperity for ever.

17. They say that he who performs a *Śrāddha* on the twelfth day acquires wealth, a kingdom and becomes victorious. He who performs a *Śrāddha* on the thirteenth day attains progeny, intellect, cattle, wisdom, freedom, excellent nourishment, long life and prosperity.

18. One shall offer a *Śrāddha* on the fourteenth day to those young men of the house who have met premature death and to those who have been killed by weapons.

19. With purity one should always offer a *Śrāddha* on the New Moon day to those children unfavourably born (e.g. a son after three daughters or a daughter after three sons) as well as to twin children.

20. One who regularly performs a *Śrāddha* attains all cherished desires and infinite heavenly pleasures. One shall always perform on the New Moon day the rituals and those great rites that involve extraction of Soma Juice (or that are conducive to the development of the Moon (?))

21. Thus developed, the Moon sustains the three worlds, being regularly eulogised by Siddhas, Cāraṇas and Gandharvas.

22. (The Moon) is eulogised by thousands of Apsaras-s dancing, singing and playing on instruments, by means of eulogies, flowers of great beauty and all the requisites for the fulfilment of desires.

23. Devas and Gandharvas and the groups of Siddhas eulogise that devotee of the *Pitṛs*, steady in his holy rites. They serve him by means of aerial chariots for sport.

24. The devotee of Pitṛs shall attain all cherished desires on the *Amāvāsyā* (New Moon) day, for *Pitṛs* are worshipped by him directly always.

25. The constellation Maghā has *Pitṛs* for its deities Hence a *Śrāddha* on that day yields everlasting benefit. The wise perform the rites for *Pitṛs* particularly on that day.

26. Hence the *Pitṛs* always desire Maghā. Those who are devoted to *Pitṛs* and deities attain the greatest goal.

CHAPTER TWENTY

Benefit of Śrāddha Performance under Different Constellations.[1]

Bṛhaspati said:

1. Listen to a detailed account of all those *Śrāddhas* which Yama mentioned to Śaśabindu. They are to be performed under different constellations severally.[2]

2. He who maintains the sacrificial fires for ever and performs a *Śrāddha* (when the Moon is) in conjuction with the Kṛttikā constellation, becomes free from worries and ailments along with his children.

3. A person desirous of children should perform a *Śrāddha* under Rohiṇī. By performing a *Śrāddha* under the Saumya (Mṛga-

1. This chapter is incorporated from Mbh. *Anuśāsana* 89.

2. Viṣṇu Dh.S. (78.8-15) mentions the rewards obtained by performing *śrāddha* under different constellations from Kṛttikā to Bharaṇī. Yājñavalkya I. 265-268, MK.P. 30.8-16, BM.P. 220.33-42, KP.II. 20.9-15, Bd.P. 2.3.18 deal with the same topic though there is some disagreement about the benefits promised.

The counting of Nakṣatras from Kṛttikā and not from Aśvinī shows that this chapter (and also the Mbh. chapter, the source of this chapter) was written some time before 500 A.D. when the Vedic counting of Nakṣatras was prevalent.

śiras) constellation one attains vigour and vitality. Generally the man of ruthless activities performs a *Śrāddha* under Ārdrā.

4-5. One performing a *Śrāddha* under the Punarvasu constellation becomes the possessor of fields and begets sons. He will be blessed with wealth and food-grains as well as sons and grandsons. A man who desires satisfaction and contentment should perform *Śrāddha* under Puṣya constellation. One shall attain heroic sons by worshipping *Pitṛs* under Āśleṣā.

6. He who performs a *Śrāddha* under Maghā becomes the most excellent among his kinsmen. A man worshipping *Pitṛs* in the (Pūrvā) Phalgunī constellation attains good fortune.

7. He who performs a *Śrāddha* under Uttaraphalgunī constellation becomes the leader (in his community) along with his children. He who performs *Tarpaṇa* to *Pitṛs* under the Hasta constellation becomes the chief of good men.

8. He who performs a *Śrāddha* in the Citrā constellation sees (has) handsome sons. He who performs a *Śrāddha* under the Svāti constellation becomes a scholar and attains profit.

9. A man wishing for sons shall perform a *Śrāddha* in the Viśākhā constellation. He who performs a *Śrāddha* in the Anurādhā constellation extends his realm.

10. He who performs a *Śrāddha* under the Jyeṣṭhā constellation attains lordship and excellence for ever. Those who desire health shall perform a *Śrāddha* under the Mūla constellation. Those who desire great fame should perform a *Śrāddha* under Pūrvāṣāḍhā.

11. A man performing a *Śrāddha* under the Uttarāṣāḍhā constellation shall be free from grief. By performing a *Śrāddha* under the Śravaṇa constellation, one shall attain the greatest goal in excellent worlds.

12. A man who performs a *Śrāddha* under the Dhaniṣṭhā constellation gains a kingdom and attains enormous wealth. By performing a *Śrāddha* under the Abhijit constellation, (he) obtains goats and sheep as fruit.

13. He who performs a *Śrāddha* in the Śatabhiṣak constellation attains success as a great physician. He who performs a *Śrāddha* in the Pūrvā-Bhādrapadā (Proṣṭhapada) constellation attains goats and sheep as the fruit.

14. He who performs a *Śrāddha* unfailingly under Uttarā Bhādrapadā shall obtain thousands of cows. He who performs a *Śrāddha* under the Revatī constellation gets much wealth. By performing a *Śrāddha* under the Aśvinī constellation one attains horses. He who performs a *Śrāddha* in the Bharaṇī constellation attains long life.

15. By performing a *Śrāddha* according to these injunctions Śaśabindu attained the entire earth. After attaining the entire earth he praised him (Yama).

CHAPTER TWENTYONE

Miscellaneous Topics : Qualifications of a Brāhmaṇa for Śrāddha-gifts : Merits of Performance of Śrāddha at Sacred Places

Śaṁyu said :

1. O foremost one among the eloquents, what is it that offered to the Pitṛs, delights them to a little extent ? What delights (them) for a long time ? What is it that is conducive to delight them infinitely ?[1]

---

1. The first topic discussed is about the vegetarian and non-vegetarian dishes liked by *Pitṛs* and therefore should be served to Brāhmaṇas while dining at a Śrāddha (vide vv. 3-9).

Āpastaṁba Dh.S. (600 B.C.) prescribes flesh-eating as obligatory at *Śrāddha* and enumerates the animals the flesh of which gratifies *Pitṛs* for a specific period e.g. the flesh of a *gavaya* (a cow-like animal) offered in *Śrāddha* gratifies the *Pitṛs* for a year (*saṁvatsaraṁ gavayena tṛptiḥ*). For other animals and the period of gratification etc., see Āpastamba Dh.S. II. 7.16-25; II.17.3. For refusal to accept non-vegetarian food at a *Śrāddha* one has to go to hell (*Viṣṇudharmottara* I. 140-49-50, also Manu V. 35; KP. II.17.40).

Manu III.267-272, Yājñavalkya I. 158-260, Mbh. *Anuśāsana* Ch. 88, Kātyāyana's *Śrāddha-Sūtra* (Kaṇḍikā 7-8), KP. II.40-42, Mt. P. 17.31-35, Bd.P. 2.3.19, VP. III.16.1-3 and such other Purāṇas specify the flesh of certain animals served at Śrāddha and the period of gratification of Pitṛs thereby. Hemādri opines that greater the period, greater is the gratification (*iha sarvatra prītyatiśayo vivakṣitaḥ*—Śrāddha p. 590).

Bṛhaspati said :

2. Listen to those sacrificial offerings which are to be made at the time of Śrāddha as the knowers of Śrāddha have understood. Listen also to the benefit of these in accordance with their strength.

3. Grandfathers are pleased for a month by a Śrāddha in which gingelly seeds, grains of rice, barley, black gram, water, fruits and roots are offered.

4. They are pleased for two months if fishes are offered; for three months if venison is offered; for four months if the meat of hare is offered; and for five months if the meat of birds is offered.

5. They are delighted for six months with the flesh of boars, for seven months with goats' flesh and for eight months with the flesh of a spotted doe.

6. The manes are delighted for nine months with the meat of the Ruru deer. They will have contentment lasting for ten months with the meat of *Gavaya* (a kind of ox).

7. They are propitiated for eleven months with the meat of a tortoise. Know that Śrāddha with (products of) cow's milk lasts for a year.

8. So also in the case of milk-pudding along with milk products, honey and ghee. The satisfaction with the meat of a *Vadhriṇasa* (a rhino-like animal ?) lasts for twelve years.

9. With the meat of *Khaḍga* (rhinoceros) during the rites of Pitṛs, the pleasure is everlasting. So also with the meat of a black goat and an alligator provides endless pleasure.

10. In this connection, those who know the ancient lores mention about the *gāthās* (traditional verses) sung by *Pitṛs*. I shall narrate them to you. Listen and understand precisely.

11-12. (*Pitṛs* sing) "Will a son be born in our own family who will give us on the *Trayodaśi* (thirteenth) day, cooked food, milk pudding, honey and ghee on the occasion of *Gajacchāyā Parvan* ?[1] Or give the same with the meat of a goat that is

---

In Southern India, though neither *Mitākṣarā* nor *Kalpataru* have prohibited flesh-diet at *Śrāddha*, strict vegetarianism is observed.

1. The conjunction that occurs when the Moon is in the Maghā constellation, the Sun is in Hasta and the *Tithi* is the 13th in the rainy season, it is called *Gajacchāyā* or *Kuñjaracchāyā*.

entirely red during the rainy season and under the constellation of Maghā ? It is better to wish for many sons. At least one of them will go to Gayā or marry a girl eight years old or discharge a blue ox[1] (free to wander)."

Śaṁyu asked :

13. O dear one, recount the benefit of the holy centres Gayā etc. to me who ask. Please mention the merit entirely that is derived by performing the rites of Pitṛs.

Bṛhaspati said :

14. O son, a Śrāddha performed in Gayā yields endless benefit. *Japas*, *Homas* and penances (performed there) are also beneficial endlessly. Hence on the anniversary day of the death of father, Śrāddha performed there is remembered as everlasting.

15. A son begot after marrying a girl of eight years sanctifies twentyone generations. Moreover, he sanctifies six generations in the family of his maternal uncle. This is remembered as the benefit (of such a marriage).

16. I shall recount the benefit derived from (discharging) a bull. Even as I recount listen and understand. The discharger of the bull sanctifies ten previous generations and ten succeeding generations.

17. At the time of letting free the bull whatever is sprinkled with water as it emerges from water on to the ground, is said to yield endless benefit.

18. There is no doubt in this that all those things touched by water tossed about by its tail etc., give endless satisfaction to Pitṛs.

---

1. This is called 'the rite of letting free a bull' (*Vṛṣotsarga-vidhi*). For the details vide *Viṣṇu Dh. S.* 86.1-20. *Viṣṇudharmottara* I.147. 1-19 repeat the same procedure. Though the words '*nīlam vṛṣam*' are translated as 'blue bull' the bull is not blue in colour. Though the adjective 'blue' (*Nīla*) is variously defined, Mt. P. 207.38 defines it as 'a bull having white legs, face & tail and the rest of the body as red' I could not trace the verse *lohito yastu varṇena* etc. in Bd. P. though Kane quotes it as ascribed to it (HD, IV p. 540, fn 1215).

For the benefit accruing from *Vṛṣotsarga* see the following vv. 16-20.

19. The ground dug up by the bull by means of its hoofs or horns, serves as canals of honey perpetually feeding Pitṛs.

20. The satisfaction derived by Pitṛs at the rite of letting free the bull is more than that when they hear that a tank, a thousand *Nalvas* square, has been dug (a *Nalva*=400 hands).

21. If anyone gives gingelly seeds mixed with honey and jaggery, it yields everlasting benefit.

Bṛhaspati said :

22. One should not test Brāhmaṇas always in order to give them anything. But testing is heard about (i.e. prescribed in śrutis) in regard to the rites of Devas (gods) and Pitṛs.[1]

23-27. One should invite these for the *Śrāddha* rite : Those who have studied all the Vedas and who have performed all rites; the Brāhmaṇas who are the sanctifiers of the row; important Brāhmaṇas who know the *Bhāṣyas* (Glosses on Aphorisms) ; those who regularly study Grammar; those who study Purāṇas and Dharmaśāstras; those who are conversant with the three-Naciketas-Vidyās; the worshippers of five fires; the *Trisuparṇas*, the knowers of the six ancillary subjects of the Vedas; a son of the Brāhma form of marriage; a master of Vedic Prosody (or chanter of the Vedas); a singer of the *Jyeṣṭha Sāman*; one who has taken baths in sacred waters (at holy places); those who have taken part in important Yajñas and taken the concluding (*Avabhṛtha*) ablutions; those who observe rites immediately; those who strictly adhere to their own duties; those who are not wrathful and those who are always calm and quiescent. And those who perpetually observe the ten meritorious deeds shall also be invited.

28. Whatever is offered to these, yields everlasting benefit. These are the sanctifiers of the row. Those Brāhmaṇas who observe Yogic rites and duties should be revered faithfully.

29. They are the foremost due to their adherence to the duties of their (specific) stages of life. In regard to the offering

1. Verses 22-31 state the qualifications of the Brahmins eligible for invitation to Śrāddha, though it has been already discussed in Ch. 17. Yogins are given the first preference as Yoga-dharma was regarded as the foremost among Dharmas.

of *Havyas* and *Kavyas*, they are the leaders. He who worships them worships the three deities Brahmā, Viṣṇu and Maheśvara.

30. One who worships these, worships all the worlds along with the Pitṛs. (*Yogadharma*) is the holiest of all holy things, the most auspicious of all auspicious things.

31. *Yogadharma* is mentioned as the first among all *Dharmas*.

I shall recount those who cannot be included in the row (i.e. cannot be invited) for a *Śrāddha*.[1] Listen and understand as I recount them :

32-36. A rogue, a drunkard, a patient of pulmonary consumption, a cattle breeder, an ugly person, a common servant of all in the village, a usurer, a professional musician, a merchant, an incendiary, an administerer of poison, a pimp, a seller of Soma juice, a person who undertakes sea voyage, one whose skin is defiled, a dealer in oil, a deceitful person, one who quarrels with his father, one who has a co-husband at home, a calumniated person, a thief, a person whose livelihood is arts and crafts, a tale-bearer, a person giving wrong information about holy days, one who is malicious to his friends, a group-beggar, an atheist, a discarder of the Vedas, a mad fellow, a eunuch, a knavish fellow, a destroyer of foetus, a defiler of the preceptor's bed, a follower of the physician's profession for livelihood, a messenger and an adulterer.

37. He who sells the Vedas, religious observances, holy rites and penances—all these are defilers of the row.

What is gifted to an atheist, ungrateful person or a censurer becomes lost.

38. What is given to a trader is not beneficial here or hereafter. The same is the case in regard to a person who misappropriates (deposits), who is knavish and who hates the Vedas.

39-42a. That which is given to a merchant or an artisan devoid of virtue becomes lost; a merchant despises (underrates)

1. Verses 31-42 give a list of persons unfit for invitation to a Śrāddha. Long lists of such unfit persons are given by Gautama Dh.S. XV. 16-19, Manu III. 150-166, Yājñavalkya I. 222-224, Mbh. *Anuśāsana* 90.6-11, Mt.P. 16.14-17, KP.II. 21.23-43.

the commodities while purchasing and praises (the same) while selling. Hence a merchant, the abode of untruth, does not deserve (invitation to) a Śrāddha. What is given to a widow's son (after remarriage) even if he be a Brāhmaṇa, is like what is oblated into ashes.

The following persons if invited to a Śrāddha destroy the merits of the donor: a one-eyed man (destroys) sixty (merits), a eumuch a hundred (merits), a sufferer from leprosy as long as he sees, a sufferer from sinful ailment a thousand (meritorious acts). A donor, by being childish, falls off from the benefit of *Dāna*.

42b-43. Brahmā has ordained that he who covers his head while taking food and one who eats food facing the south, he who takes food with shoes on and he who offers *Dāna* scornfully gives the entire share unto the leaders of Asuras.

44. Dogs and demons should not see the performance of a Śrāddha.[1] Hence it should be screened out all round, and gingelly seeds should be strewn around.

45. It is to ward off Rākṣasas that gingelly seeds are strewn and the screen is to prevent the dogs. Boars destroy the effect of a Śrāddha by having a look at it and a cock by fluttering its wings (or by the fall of its feathers within).

46. A woman in her monthly course destroys the Śrāddha by touching. If the performer of a Śrāddha becomes angry, he destroys the benefit derived. If anyone gets his friends to offer Śrāddha and Havis, they do not please Pitṛs or Devas. Nor does he attain heaven.

47. Grandfathers (manes) are delighted with what is given on the beautiful banks of the rivers and streams as well as of the lakes and in secluded places.

48. One shall not shed tears while performing a Śrāddha, nor should he take active part in irrelevant conversation. One should not munch or crunch anything while performing a Śrāddha. One should avoid mutual rivalry too.

---

1. Since the period of *Dharma Sūtras*, people believed that food for Śrāddha got polluted even by being looked by certain animals and certain categories of people. The list of such unworthies is given in vv. 44-46—an echo of Gautama Dh.S. 15.25-28, Manu III. 239-242, and Purāṇas like KP. II. 22.34-35, VP. III.16.12-14, Bd.P. 2.3.19, 43-44.

49. While performing a Śrāddha the sacred thread should be worn from right to left and the Darbhas should be held duly in the hands. One should perform a Śrāddha till one's death. Thus one delights Pitṛs.

50. At the outset, he should formally take permission of the preceptor or the invited Brāhmaṇas. He should then kindle a fire duly. The articles to be offered to Pitṛs should be placed on the ground over a winnowing basket or on a Kuśa mat.

51. During the bright half (of the month), the Śrāddha is to be performed in the forenoon by the skilful performer of a Śrāddha. During the dark half, it should be performed in the afternoon. In any case the *Rauhiṇa* period (the 4th *Muhūrta* of the day), should not be transgressed.

52. Thus the great and noble souls, the seers of time and place, the Pitṛs of great Yoga (yogic power) and great virility should be worshipped.

53. A person always devoted to Pitṛs attains the excellent Yoga. After eschewing both auspicious and inauspicious actions they attain salvation through meditation.

54. It is for the sake of (promotion of) sacrifices that after deluding the universe, it (Yoga) was eschewed and kept in the cavity (of the heart, i.e. kept secret) by the noble-souled Kaśyapa.

55. O excellent one among the knowers of Yoga, that nectarine (or immortal) Yoga, the eternal great Dharma was promulgated by Sanatkumāra.

56. It is a great esoteric secret of the Devas. It is the greatest resort of the sages. It can always (be attained) by the devotees of Pitṛs through filial devotion, piety and endeavour.

57. There is no doubt in this that one who is devoted to Pitṛs shall, with endeavour, attain everything of that Yoga in essence.

58. To whom are the Śrāddhas to be offered; which are the things that yield great benefits when given; what are the holy centres and sacred rivers wherein the Śrāddha offered bears everlasting benefits; by what means does one attain heaven—all these have been mentioned to you in brief.

Bṛhaspati said:

59. The man who after hearing this explanation of the procedure of Śrāddhas, becomes malicious, is an atheist enveloped in darkness. He will drown himself in the terrible hell.

60. He who has perfectly controlled his mind, finds all his great ailments terminated. He who is not mindful of the *Āśramas* (stages in life) stated in the Vedas attains the Kumbhīka hell. He attains the status of a thief and gets his tongue cut.

61. Those who censure Yoga become lumps of clay in the ocean[1] and decay as long as the earth exists. Hence, this is the Dharma (virtue) intended in the Śrāddha that it should be performed by a man with faith (in it).

62. Scandalisation of Yogins should be scrupulously avoided. By scandalising (them), a person becomes a worm and rolls there itself.

63. There is no doubt in this that he who censures Yoga, the cause of salvation unto those who meditate, goes to terrible hell. He who listens to it (the censure), also falls into the hell.

64. By denigrating masters of Yoga, a man certainly falls into the hell surrounded by darkness and terrible to behold.

65. There is no doubt about it that he who pays heed to the vilification of masters of Yoga of fully controlled selves, becomes submerged in the Kumbhīpāka hell for a long time.

66. One should eschew hatred for Yogins mentally, verbally and physically. He will reap the benefit of the same here itself as well as after death. There is no doubt about it.

67. A person who has mastered (all lores) does not get (realize) the Ātman. He wanders within the three worlds due to his own actions. A person who has mastered Ṛgveda, Yajurveda, Sāmaveda and all their ancillary subjects does not attain Brahman which is devoid of changes and aberrations (*avikāram*) and therefore, becomes distressed.

---

1. Verses 54-57, and vv. 61-71 show the blind faith of Purāṇic writers in Yogins. Since the times of Vasiṣṭha Dh.S. XI. 17, Yatis (recluses) and Yogins had a special place of honour among the invitees to a Śrāddha. But Purāṇa writers have prohibited denigration of Yogis even orally.

68. (Defective verse)[1] He who has crossed the bounds of effects (of *Prakṛti*) goes beyond *Prakṛti*. Mastery of the three Vedas leads to the crossing (of the limits?) of three *guṇas* The (highest) principle is beyond the twentyfour Yogas (?). He is the master of all, who has passed beyond worldly existence. (?)

69.[2] (Defective verse) By means of his Yogic power, a knower of Yogas withdraws unto himself the dissolution of the Ātman, in the same manner as the entire creation of the principles by the Ātman. He alone becomes the master of all.

70. It is the knower of Yogas who knows the Vedas and attains the knowable. They call him the knower of the Vedas, and the master of Vedas.

71. After duly knowing the knowable and what should be known (one becomes the knower of Vedas). They call him the knower of the Vedas. All others are thinkers of the Vedas.

72. A person devoted to Pitṛs attains the (fruit of) Yajñas, Vedas, all cherished desires, different kinds of knowledge, longevity, progeny and riches.

73. He who invariably reads this *Śrāddhakalpa* during Śrāddha, in the end, gets all these (benefits) and the benefits of charitable gifts at the holy centres.

74. He shall be the sanctifier of the row (of diners). He shall be given priority in being fed among the Brāhmaṇas. Or he shall (be eligible to) teach all the Brāhmaṇas and attain all cherished desires.

---

1. The text is defective and requires slight modifications as per the same verse printed in the Bd. P. 2.3.19.64 which means: "One who has mastered all created things, the products of *Prakṛti* (the nature known as *Avidyā*), one who has mastered the good features in three Vedas, one who has mastered the three *guṇas* (Sattva etc.) and one who has mastered the twentyfour principles, is the person who has crossed the Saṁsāra to the other shore and is the master of academic studies".

2. The text is defective. The corresponding verse in the Bd. P.2.3.19.65 (with slightly different reading) means: "One who is devoted to Brahman duly and wholly, attains it. Similarly he comprehends the state where everything is merged into the soul".

The second line of the verse is different. It means, "A Brāhmaṇa who does not take to the Path of Yoga, cannot become the master of everything that comes under the perview of order, by knowledge."

75. He who always listens to this after subduing anger, being without malice and becoming free from greed and delusion, attains endless heavenly pleasure.

76. He attains the entire benefit of visiting holy centres, and making charitable gifts etc. This is the most excellent means to liberation. This is the greatest means of attaining heaven. He shall have the greatest contentment in this world too. Hence he should assiduously perform this.

77. He who reads these injunctions about (performance of) Śrāddha attentively and with purity of mind, in the assembly (of the learned) during *Parvan* days, becomes endowed with children. With great brilliance, he attains the same region as that of the heaven-dwellers.

78. Obeisance to that self-born deity by whom this Kalpa has been prescribed. I always bow down to the great masters of Yoga.

79. O dear one, these Pitṛs are the deities of Devas. Pitṛs are stationed in these seven abodes for ever. They are free from pain.

80. All these noble souls are the sons of Prajāpati. The first group is that of Yogins. That is eternal and is ever conducive to the increase in the Yogic Power (of Yogins).

81. The second group is that of Devas and the third is that of their enemies. The other groups are of the members of (four) other castes (*Varṇas*). Thus all have been recounted.

82-83. All Devas worship them. They are stationed in them (Pitṛs). The four *Āśramas* too successively worship them. The four castes also worship them in accordance with the injunctions. Similarly the mixed castes and the Mlecchas (alien outcastes) also worship them.

84. Pitṛs revere him who devotedly worships Pitṛs. Pitṛs in the form of grandfather grant nourishment, progeny and heavenly pleasure to him who desires nourishment or who desires progeny.

85. To a son, the rite for Pitṛs is preferable to the rite for Devas. Pitṛs are to be propitiated even before Devas.

86. The subtle movement of the Yogic power of Pitṛs is in-

comprehensible to the physical eye which is distant (not empowered by) penance.

87. To all of them a silver vessel or one accompanied with silver is ordained. It is said to be sanctifying and excellent (for the rites) of Devas along with (those of) Pitṛs.

88-89. The three Piṇḍas which the kinsmen offer invoking the names and Gotra, which they place on the ground strewn with Kuśa grass after wearing the sacred thread from right to left, delight the respective parents who are present everywhere. What constitutes the diet of the creature (i.e. the devotee who offers) is the diet of Pitṛs as well.

90. Just as in a cowpen the calf finds out its lost mother, so also the Mantra takes those articles where the *Jantu* (the man for whom the *piṇḍa* is intended) stays.

91. The name, Gotra and Mantra take the food offered to him. Even if they had taken a hundred births, the satisfaction follows them. (They are satiated by the Śrāddha offering.)

92. Thus this convention is established by Brahmā, the supreme god. This first creation of Pitṛs is for the worlds that seek everlasting bliss.

93-95. Thus these Pitṛs are Devas and Devas are Pitṛs. O sinless ones, all these (following) have been recounted by me—*Dauhitras*, (i.e. daughter's sons), Yajamānas, worlds, daughters, grandsons, sons, charitable gifts, along with the mode of purity, holy centres, fruit thereof, everlasting nature of the benefit, (the different types of) Brāhmaṇas and the rules governing Yāyāvaras (wandering ascetics). Everything has been mentioned in the manner that Brahmā prescribed formerly.

Bṛhaspati said :

96. This, Aṅgiras explained in an assembly while the sages sat listening when he had been asked to clear the doubts regarding Pitṛs.

97. It was formerly in the course of an extensive *Satra* (sacrifice) lasting for a thousand years wherein the lord of the house was the deity, Lord Brahmā.

98. It is heard that Brahmā presided over it for hundreds

of years. The following verses were also formerly sung by the sages, the expounders of Brahman (Veda).

99. "When Brahmā, the great Ātman, presided over the *Satra*, then Pitṛs were born for the benefit of the worlds seeking everlasting bliss, through Brahmā Parameṣṭhin."

Sūta said :

100. Bṛhaspati who had been asked by his intelligent son formerly, told thus. He recounted the family of Pitṛs. What he said has been mentioned (by me). Henceforth I shall recount (the race) of Varuṇa. Understand (it).

CHAPTER TWENTYTWO

The Race of Varuṇa : Birth of Aśvin Gods[1]

1. The sages to whom this (*Śrāddha Kalpa*) was narrated became very much delighted. Extremely eager to hear further, they asked him thereafter.

The Sages said :

2. Please narrate (to us) in proper sequence the condition of the races of the kings of unmeasured spledour as well as valour. We implore you.

3-4. Thus entreated, *Sūta Lomaharṣaṇa* an expert in the narration of tales and proficient in the art of speech, (observed) the desire of the sages to hear the story and *spoke these words*:

Hear and understand as I recount in the manner the sage recounted to me.

5. Even as I recount, listen, and understand the state and position of the dynasties of the kings of unmeasured splendour, in the proper order and their prowess.

1. This chapter corresponds to Bd.P. 2.3.59; only verse numbers from that chapter are quoted in notes.

6. Varuṇa's wife was the daughter of the ocean and was called "Śunodevī". She had two sons Kali and Vaidya and a daughter Surasundarī.

7. Kali had two very powerful sons (namely): Jaya and Vijaya. Vaidya too had two sons of great strength, viz. Ghṛṇi and Muni.

8. When the subjects became desirous of eating, they ate each other. Devouring each other, they perished.

9. Kali begot of Surā (a son). That son of his is remembered as Mada. Himsā, the daughter of Tvaṣṭṛ, was the eldest wife of Kali. She was known as Nikṛti (too).

10. She bore four other man-eating sons to Kali, viz. Nāka, the famous Vighna, Sadrama and Vidhama.

11. Among them Vighna was devoid of head; Nāka had no body; Sadrama was single-handed; and Vidhama had a single foot.

12. Sadrama's wife was remembered as Pūtanā. She had Tāmasic qualities. Revatī was the wife of Vidhama. Their sons were in thousands.

13. Śakuni was the wife of Nāka and Ayomukhī was the wife of Vighna. Rākṣasas of huge heads roaming about at dawn and dusk (were born of them).

14. The sons of Revatī and Pūtanā are remembered by the name of Nairṛtas. All these Rākṣasas were evil demons known as Grahas. They particularly harassed children (by haunting them). With the permission of Brahmā, lord Skanda became their overlord.

15. Bṛhaspati's sister was a noble lady (named) Yogasiddhā. Observing celibacy and being detached, she roamed over the whole universe.

16. She became the wife of the eighth of the Vasus, viz. Prabhāsa. Viśvakarmā, the creator of arts and crafts was born as her son.

17. (He was known as) Tvaṣṭṛ. He created many forms. He was the grandson of Dharma. He was liberal-minded. He was the creator of thousands of arts and crafts. He was the Architect of Devas.

18. He made aerial chariots for all the Devas. Human beings

maintain their livelihood by following the craftsmanship of that noble soul.

19. Tvaṣṭṛ's wife was the famous daughter of Prahlāda and was the sister of Virocana and the mother of Triśiras.

20. Maya, the son of the intelligent preceptor of Devas in craftsmanship of all kinds, is remembered as Viśvakarmā also.

21. His younger sister, the daughter of Tvaṣṭṛ (originally) famous by the name of Sureṇu, became the wife of the Sun and was well known as Saṁjñā.

22. With the power of her penance, she bore the eldest son Manu to Vivasvān (the Sun-god). Then she gave birth to the twins Yama and Yamunā.

23-24. Assuming the form of a mare, the noble lady went to the land of Kurus. The blessed lady bore two sons to the Sun who had assumed the form of a horse. She gave birth to them through nostrils. They were the twin gods, the Aśvins, Nāsatya and Dasra. Both of them were the sons of Mārtaṇḍa (the Sun-god).

The Sages enquired :

25. Why is (the Sun) called Mārtaṇḍa by learned men? Why did she, in the form of a mare, give birth to them through the nostrils ? We wish to know this. Please explain this to us who ask you.

Sūta said :

26. For a long time, the egg did not break (did not get hatched). It was broken open by Tvaṣṭṛ. On seeing it, Kaśyapa became sad as he feared that the foetus was killed.

27. When the egg was broken into two parts, he looked into it and said to Tvaṣṭṛ, "This is certainly not an (ordinary) egg". (Then to the child he said) "O Sinless one, be Mārtaṇḍa".

28. The father affectionately said—"Indeed this (child) in the egg is not dead". On hearing his words, the relevancy of the name has been understood.

29. Since he was addressed by the father, "Be born of the dead (broken) egg", when the egg was broken, Vivasvān is cal-

led Mārtaṇḍa[1] by those who know the Purāṇas.

30. Henceforth I shall mention the progeny of Mārtaṇḍa Vivasvān. Formerly three children were born of his wife Saṁjñā to Savitṛ.

31. (Later) the younger Manu Sāvarṇi and Śanaiścara were born to (the shadow) Saṁjñā and the twin gods Aśvins to (the real) Saṁjñā. These seven are remembered as the children of Mārtaṇḍa.

32. Vivasvān of great fame, was born of Kaśyapa and a daughter of Dakṣa. The noble lady, the daughter of Tvaṣṭṛ became the wife of Vivasvān. Originally she was well known by the name Sureṇu and later came to be known as Saṁjñā.

33. The wife of lord Mārtaṇḍa of excessive splendour was a woman of great beauty in the prime of youth. She was dissatisfied with the dazzling form of her husband.

34. The dazzlingly brilliant person of Mārtaṇḍa, the son of Aditi, coming into contact with her body was not very pleasing to her.

35. Being unaware, Kaśyapa said out of affection, "Indeed this (child) in the egg is not dead". Hence he is called Mārtaṇḍa.

36. The brilliance of Vivasvān increased day by day whereby he, the son of Kaśyapa, scorched the three worlds.

37. Ravi (the Sun-god) begot of Saṁjñā three children, two sons of great prowess and the daughter Kālindī (Yamunā).

38. Manu was the eldest son of Vivasvān. He was a Prajāpati and known as Śrāddhadeva. Yama and Yamī were born as twins.

39. On seeing the whetted brilliance of Vivasvān and unable to endure it, Saṁjñā created her own shadow of the same complexion as hers.

40. That woman of earthly form, born of her shadow came to her humbly with palms joined in reverence and spoke to Saṁjñā:

---

1. The Vedic word is *Mārtāṇḍa* 'born of an (apparently) dead egg'. Mārtaṇḍa is a later Purāṇic form, though the derivation is the same.

41. "Tell me, what should be done by me ?" Saṁjñā spoke to her: "Welfare unto you. I will go back to my own father's house.

42. You must remain in my house without any hesitation. These two sons of mine and this daughter of splendid complexion (should be looked after).

43. This (arrangement) should not be mentioned to the lord, my husband".

Thus addressed, the earthly form of Saṁjñā spoke to Saṁjñā:

44. "O noble lady, until the hair is caught hold of, I will never speak your secret idea. O noble lady, go back to your own house".

45. After consoling Saṁjñā, she said, "So be it". She, the woman in a pitiable condition, went near Tvaṣṭṛ as though greatly ashamed.

46. On seeing her come back, the father became angry and spoke to Saṁjñā: "Go back to your husband. Do not hate Divākara (the Sun-god)."

47. Though urged thus by her father and compelled (to go) again and again, she lived in her father's house for a thousand years.

48. "Go to your husband's house". When insisted upon again and again thus,that uncensured (praise-worthy) lady concealed her real form and assumed the form of a mare. She went to the northern Kurus and began to graze grass.

49. Considering that she (the shadow of Saṁjñā) was the real Saṁjñā, the Sun begot of the shadow, the second Saṁjñā, two sons of the splendour of Āditya (the Sun).

50. The sons were Śrutaśravā, the knower of Dharma, and Śrutakarman. Both of those lordly ones were equal to Manu the eldest-born.

51. Śrutaśravas will become Sāvarṇi Manu. The planet Śanaiścara (Saturn) is to be known as Śrutakarman.

52-53. It is known that Sāvarṇi became Manu. The earthly form of Saṁjñā was affectionate only towards her (own) sons and not towards the earlier born ones. Manu bore it patiently, but Yama did not brook it.

54-55. On being insulted many times (by the step-

mother) out of spite, Yama became distressed and threatened Saṁjñā with his leg. Out of anger or childishness or the force of the inevitable destiny, that lady, having the same complexion as his mother, cursed Yama out of anger.

56. "Since you are threatening the renowned wife of your father, this leg of yours will undoubtedly fall off."

57. With his mind deeply afflicted due to that curse, Yama of virtuous soul reported everything to his father, along with Manu (i.e. accompanied by him.)

58. "I am much distressed due to the fear of the curse (taking effect). I have been defeated (?) by the (statement) words of Saṁjñā. (This mistake is) due to my childishness or delusion. Sir, please protect me.

59. O lord of the worlds, foremost one among those who blaze, I have been cursed by mother. May your grace protect us from this great danger."

60. Thus implored, lord Vivasvān spoke to Yama: "O son, undoubtedly there will be a great reason behind this (incident).

61. That was why anger took possession of you who are the knower of virtue and the speaker of the truth. The words of your mother too cannot be falsified.

62. The worms will take away your flesh and go to the earth. Then you will regain your foot. O intelligent one, you will be happy again.

63. In this way, your mother's words will be true and effective. By removal of the curse, you will also be saved."

64. Āditya then spoke to Saṁjñā, "When the sons are all equal, why is more affection shown by you towards one ?"

65. Avoiding (the necessity of disclosing the secret) she did not say anything to Vivasvān. But by means of his Yogic power and concentration, the Sun found out the truth.

66. The infuriated Sun-god was about to curse her bringing about her destruction. She then confessed factually everything to Vivasvān.

67-68. On hearing it, Vivasvān was enraged and hastened to Tvaṣṭṛ. Tvaṣṭṛ honoured with due formalities the Sun-god who wanted to burn down everything. He pacified him slowly saying : "Your present form which is excessively dazzling, is not attractive.

69. It is because she could not endure it that Saṁjñā is wandering in the forests and meadows. You will see your wife of auspicious conduct today itself.

70. O lord of rays, by using your Yogic power, you will see your praiseworty wife superbly endowed with youthful charm. Everything will be favourable if my condition is accepted.

71-74. O suppressor of enemies ! At the outset, I shall change your personal form into an excellent one". The form of Vivasvān, then, was sideways, upwards and below (i.e. the rays were diffused everywhere). Hence Divaspati (the Sun-god) was ashamed of that form. So the deity of great penance praised the wheel of Tvaṣṭṛ. Tvaṣṭṛ was then permitted to change the form. With the concurrence of the Sun-god (Mārtaṇḍa Vivasvān), Tvaṣṭṛ mounted him on the wheel and whetted his brilliance. Then the brilliance had pleasant refulgence due to reduction in dazzle.

75. The refulgence became very pleasing to behold. What was inauspicious before shone splendidly. Then (the Sun) made use of Yogic power and saw his wife in the form of a mare.

76. She had been invisible to all living beings due to her brilliance and observance of rites. In the form of a horse, Mārtaṇḍa approached her and declared his love.

77. In the physical activity of sexual intercourse, she suspected him to be someone other than her lord. She therefore discharged the semen virile of Vivasvān through her nostrils.

78. From that semen were born the twin gods Aśvins, the excellent physicians, Nāsatya and Dasra. They are remembered as Aśvins.

79. They are the sons of Mārtaṇḍa, the eighth Prajāpati. Bhāskara (the Sun-god) showed his beautiful form to her.

80. On seeing him the wife was satisfied and fascinated. Yama was much afflicted in the mind due to that curse.

81-83. He pleased (all) by means of his Dharma. Then he became known as Dharmarāja. By means of his auspicious activity, he became extremely refulgent and attained the lordship of Pitṛs and guardianship of the quarters. Sāvarṇi Manu of great fame shall become the Manu in the Sāvarṇika Manvantara. Even today the holy lord performs penance on the beautiful ridge of the Meru mountain.

84. Their brother Śanaiścara attained the status of a planet. With the (chopped off) brilliance (of the Sun) Tvaṣṭṛ made Viṣṇu's discus.[1] It was unobstructed (irresistible) in battles to check Dānavas.

85. Their younger sister Yamunā of great fame, became the excellent river Yamunā, the purifier of all the worlds.[2]

86. I shall now narrate the details of Vaivasvata Manu who was the eldest among them. He had great splendour and his creation is current (and he presides over the present Manvantara).

87. He who listens to or reads the origin of Devas, the seven powerful sons of Vivasvān, shall be released, if he attains misfortune. He shall attain great glory.

CHAPTER TWENTYTHREE

Creative Activity of Manu: The Story of Sudyumna.

Sūta said :

1. When the Cākṣuṣa Manvantara had elapsed, when the Devas (pertaining to that epoch) too had gone, the kingdom of the earth was assigned to the great Vaivasvata (Manu).[3]

---

1. The creation of Viṣṇu's discus Sudarśana from the pruned part of the Sun-god is mentioned in VP. III. 2.11.

2. This story of the Sun-god, his wife Saṁjñā and Chāyā, his children from them, pruning of the Sun-god's excessive lustre, his approach to his wife Saṁjña (who was in a mare's form) and birth of Aśvin gods—these are traditional accounts found in Mbh. *Ādi* 76, *Anuśāsana* 150, VP. III. 2 and other Purāṇas.

3. Description of dynasties of kings is an integral part of a Purāṇa of five characteristics. Vaivasvata Manu, being the progenitor of these dynasties, is described in all Purāṇas.

This chapter corresponds to Bd.P. 2.3-60, hence only verse nos. from Bd.P. are given.

2. O Brāhmaṇas, I shall recount in the proper order the race of that noble-souled current Manu, the son of Vivasvān. (Listen to) and understand what is being narrated.

3. (I shall narrate the story) now taking up the present creation of Vaivasvata Manu. The first born Manu had nine sons equal to him.

4. These nine are remembered as the sons of Manu: Ikṣvāku, Nahuṣa, Dhṛṣṭa, Śaryāti, Nariṣyanta, tha tall (*Prāṁśu*) Nābhāga, Ariṣṭa, Karūṣa and Pṛṣadhra.

5. Know that formerly Manu, on being urged by Brahmā, began to create willingly, but he was unsuccessful.

6. Then Prajāpati, desirous of sons, performed a great *Iṣṭi* (Yajña). Manu offered the oblation (*Āhuti*) in the share of Mitra and Varuṇa.

7. It is heard, that Iḍā[1] was born thereof. She wore heavenly garments and was bedecked in celestial ornaments. Her body too was divine.

8-10. It is remembered that Manu, the bearer of the staff of justice, addressed her as 'Ilā' and said, "Welfare unto you, I shall follow you". Ilā replied to the Prajāpati who was desirous of sons, in the following words sanctioned by Dharma. "O foremost of the eloquent ones, I am born in the share of Mitra and Varuṇa. I will (first) approach them. May not Dharma violated by us kill us". After speaking thus, the noble lady went near them (Mitra and Varuṇa).

11. After going near them, the beautiful lady spoke these words with palms joined in reverence: "O Devas, I am born in your share. What should I do?

12-14. I have been requested by Manu, thus, 'Follow me'". When the chaste lady Iḍā spoke thus, both of them, Mitra and Varuṇa spoke these words: "O fair-complexioned lady of beautiful hips, O knower of Dharma, we are delighted by your humility, self-control and truthfulness. O blessed lady, you will become renowned as our daughter".

---

1. In RV. it was used in the sense of 'refreshing draught' Later on it came to mean 'a cow', and 'a goddess of speech'. In Śat. Br. Iḍā is Manu's daughter. But in our text she is the daughter of ('born of the share of') Mitra and Varuṇa.

15-16. The son of Manu, the righteous-souled promoter of Manu's race is the beloved of the universe. He who is revered in thethree worlds is famous as Sudyumna. He has attained the form of a lady.[1] That noble lady returned to her father after securing the boon.

17. After getting an opportune moment, she was invited for love making (sexual intercourse) by Budha (the planet Mercury). From Budha, the son of Soma, Purūravas, the son of Ilā was born.

18. After giving birth to the son born of Budha, she became Sudyumna again. Sudyumna had three sons, all extremely virtuous.

19. They were Utkala, Gaya and Vinatāśva. The land of Utkala went over to Utkala. The western region went over to Vinatāśva. In the quarter of the Wind-god (north-west) was Gayā, the city of Gaya, the saintly king.

20. (Defective verse) When Manu was abandoned (created) the Sun (Divākara) created the subjects and divided the whole region of the earth into ten.

21. Ikṣvāku had ten other sons. In view of his being a lady (as well), Sudyumna had no share.

22-23. At the instance of Vasiṣṭha, the establishment of the noble-souled Sudyumna, the virtuous king of great lustre, was (took place) in Pratiṣṭhāna. After getting the kingdom, he, of great renown, gave it to Purūravas. The characteristics of women and men among human beings, O blessed ones, (will be duly manifest). Sudyumna, the son of Manu, attained the status of a woman again.

24. On hearing this the sages asked thereafter: "How did Sudyumna, the son of Manu, attain womanhood?"

Sūta said:

25. The beloved goddess (Umā) spoke these words to her lover (Śiva) for the sake of his love: "O Lord, the man who enters my personal hermitage will certainly become a woman. She will be auspicious and on a par with the celestial damsels."

1. This strange story of Vaivasvata Manu's bi-sexual child is found in Mbh. Ādi 75, Anuśāsana 147, Bh.P. IX. 1.

26. All the living beings there, Piśācas, and the animals became women and played with Rudra like heavenly ladies.

27-28. That king who had gone a-hunting entered Umā's forest. He attained womanhood along with the Piśācas, Bhūtas and Rudras. Hence that king attained womanhood. By the grace of Mahādeva, he shall attain the lordship of the Gaṇas.

CHAPTER TWENTYFOUR

A Dissertation on Music:
The Definition of Mūrcchanā[1]

Sūta said:

1-3. (Listen to and) understand the details of Manu's sons. Pṛṣadhra tortured the cow of his preceptor and ate it. Due to the curse of the noble-souled Cyavana, he attained the status of a Śūdra.

Karūṣa's son Kārūṣa was a Kṣatriya invincible in war. He became as valorous as the group of a thousand Kṣatriyas. Bhalandana, son of Nābhāgariṣṭa[2](?) was a scholar.

4. Bhalandana had a very powerful son named Prāṁśu. Prāṁśu had a son who became well known as Prajāni.

5. Prajāni had a valorous son named Khanitra. His son was the glorious Kṣupa of great fame.

6. Kṣupa's son was Viṁśa who had no one equal to him. Viṁśa's son was Viviṁśa, the righteous performer of religious rites.

7. Viviṁśa's son was the virtuous-souled and valorous Khaninetra. In the beginning of Tretāyuga, his son Karandhama was born.

8. Karandhama's son was the vigorous Āvikṣit. By means of his good qualities, Āvikṣit surpassed his father.

---

1. The term '*Mūrcchanā*' means the changing of key or modulation of voice (and sounds) in the Science of Music. For more explanation see Footnote No 3, p. 662.

2. A. reads: Nābhāga was the son of Ariṣṭa. Bhalandana was a scholar.

9. (His son) named Marutta was a virtuous-souled king equal to an emperor. He was taken to heaven by (sage) Saṁvarta along with his friends and kinsmen.

10. In this connection a great dispute arose between Saṁvarta and Bṛhaspati. On seeing the magnificence of the Yajña, Bṛahspati became angry with him.

11. When the Yajña was brought to a successful conclusion by Saṁvarta, he (Bṛhaspati) became more furious. He was intent on the destruction of the worlds but he was propitiated by the deities (gods).

12. Emperor Marutta obtained Nariṣyanta (as son). Nariṣyanta's successor was the king Dama, wielding the staff of justice and punishment.

13. The valorous king Rāṣṭravardhana was his son. His son was Sudhṛtin and Sudhṛtin's son was Nara.

14. Kevala was his son and Bandhumān was the son of Kevala. The virtuous-souled king Vegavān was Bandhumān's son.

15. Budha was Vegavān's son and Tṛṇabindu was the son of Budha. He became king at the beginning of the third Tretāyuga.

16. His daughter was Draviḍā (Iḍaviḍā in Bd. P.) who became the mother of Viśravas. He had a son also named Viśāla. He was an extremely virtuous king.

17. The city of Viśālā (Vaiśāli)[1] was built by king Viśāla. Viśāla's son was the king Hemacandra of great strength.

18. After Hemacandra (his son) Sucandra became very famous. Sucandra's son was the well known king Dhūmrāśva.

19. Dhūmrāśva's son Sṛñjaya became a great scholar. Sṛñjaya's son was the glorious and valorous Sahadeva.

20. Kṛśāśva was Sahadeva's son. He was extremely righteous. The valorous Somadatta of great brilliance was Kṛśāśva's son.

21. Janamejaya was the son of the saintly king Somadatta. Janamejaya's son named Pramati was very famous.

22. By the grace of Tṛṇabindu, all the kings ruling over Viśālā were long-lived, noble-souled, valorous and very righteous.

---

1. Besāḍ in the district of Muzaffarpur. The name is now officially changed as 'Vaiśāli', though local people still call it Besāḍ.

23. Śaryāti begot twins, a son and a daughter. The son became well known as Ānarta and the daughter was Sukanyā who became the wife of Cyavana.

24. Ānarta's successor was the heroic (king) named Reva. His kingdom was Ānarta[1] and the capital city was Kuśasthalī.

25. Reva's son was Raivata. He was very virtuous and was also known as Kakudin. He was the eldest of a hundred brothers. He became the king and ruled over Kuśasthalī.

26-27. He went to lord Brahmā's presence accompanied by his daughter and heard the musical performance of the lord of Devas for the duration of a Muhūrta which was equivalent to many *yugas* according to the calculation of human beings.[2] He returned to his own city in his own prime of youth, but the city had been occupied by Yādavas. It had been renamed by them as Dvārāvatī, a beautiful city with many gates.

28-30. It was then protected by Vasudeva and other leading Bhojas, Vṛṣṇis and Andhakas. On hearing the story (of the occupation of Dvārakā by Yādavas) with all the facts, Raivata, the suppressor of enemies, gave his daughter of good rites named Revatī, to Balarāma in marriage and went to a peak of mount Meru and became engrossed in penance.

Virtuous-souled Rāma (Balarāma) sported with Revatī.

On hearing the story, the sages enquired thereafter.

The Sages asked :

31. O son of Sūta, O holy lord, how is it that even after the lapse of a long period of many Yugas, Revatī did not become old ? How did her hair not turn grey ?

32. After going to the mountain Meru how did Śaryāti's son have progeny of his own ? How did they survive till now on the earth ? We wish to hear precisely.

33. How many are the groups of gods ? How are the Gandharvas ? How was that music on hearing which Raivata considered a long period as only a Muhūrta ?

---

1. Ānartta, old name of Gujarat (including Saurāshtra) and Kuśasthalī is modern Dwārkā.

2. Accidentally Einstein is anticipated by the imaginative Purāṇa-writer.

Sūta explained :

34. To a person who goes to the world of god Brahmā, there is neither hunger nor thirst. He has neither old age nor fear of death. No ailment affects him.

35. O excellent sages, as to the question put to me on *Gāndharva* (science of music), I shall explain it precisely, O good sages of holy rites.

36. The *Svara Maṇḍala*[1] (the whole group pertaining to musical notes) is comprised by seven *Svaras* (notes), three *Grāmas*[2] (basic scales), twentyone *Mūrcchanās*[3] (the modes of

---

1. It suggests the ascent and descent of seven notes, known as *Svara-saptaka.* See v. 37.

2. *Grāma* : *Grāma* means the group of seven notes. The three *Grāmas* mentioned in Purāṇas are (1) Ṣaḍja-grāma, (ii) Madhyama-grāma and (iii) Gāndhāra-grāma. These three were the basic scales—the *Sā*-scale, the *Ma*-scale and the *Ga*-scale. These had the notes *Sā, Ma* and *Ga* as the starting points. Thus the order of notes in these scales will be as follows :

(i) The *Sā*-scale : *Sā, Ri, Ga, Ma, Pa, Dha, Ni*

(ii) The *Ma*-scale : *Ma, Pa, Dha, Ni, Sā, Ri, Ga*

(iii) The *Ga*-scale : *Ga, Ma, Pa, Dha, Ni, Sā, Ri*

Out of these Ga-scale fell into disuse later. Dattila, an ancient writer on Music, states that it is not found in this world while later scholars say that it went to Heaven. They say that due to the extremely high and low notes it disappeared. But for the reasons given by later writers like Śargadeva, it seems that it was not perfect in its aspect of consonance. And consonance is vitally essential for the melodic music of India. Bharata, in his *Nāṭya-śāstra* describes the *Sa*-scale and *Ma*-scale on the basis of the fourth (*Sa-Ma Saṁvāda*) and the consonance of the fifth (*Sa-Pa Saṁvāda*). In the *Sa-scale* the consonance of the fifth was more prominent (*Sa-Pa, Ri-Dha* and *Ga-ni*) while that of the fourth in the *Ma*-scale (*Sa-Ma* and *Ri-Pa*).

The number of *Śrutis* (the microtones) in the Saptaka fixed by Bharata is 22. The *Śruti* intervals were distributed in the notes as follows :

Sa-Scale : 4*Sa*, 3*Ri*, 2*Ga*, 4*Ma*, 4*Pa*, 3*Dha*, 2*Ni*=22

Ma-Scale : 4*Ma*, 3*Pa*, 4*Dha*, 2*Nī*, 4*Sa*. 3*Ri*, 2*Ga*=22

The *Sa-Ma* consonance has the interval of 9 *Śrutis* and the *Sa-Pa* consonance that of 13 *Śrutis.*

3. *Mūrcchanā* :

Mūrcchanā was the gradual ascent and descent of the seven notes of the basic scale. The word is derived from the root √*mūrcch*—'to increase', 'to pervade'. As *Mūrcchanās* started from each note of the scale, there were seven *Mūrcchanās* of each scale. Thus the *Mūrcchanās* of three *Grāmas* numbered twentyone.

gradual ascent and descent of the seven notes of the basic scale) and fortynine *Tālas*[1] (*Tānās*).

37. The following are the names of the *svaras* : *Ṣaḍja* (*Sā*), *Ṛṣabha* (*Ri*), *Gandhāra* (*Ga*), *Madhyama* (*Ma*), *Pañcama* (*Pa*), *Dhaivata* (*Dha*), and *Niṣāda* (*Ni*). These are the seven *svaras* (notes).

(The Text dealing with Music is corrupt and obscure. An

For example, the *Sā*-scale *Mūrcchanās* would be :

(1) *Sā Ri Ga Ma Pa Dha Ni*.....

(2) *Ni Sā Ri Ga Ma Pa Dha*.....

(3) Dha Ni Sā Ri Ga Ma Pa.....etc.

The *Sāman*-scale was descending having the notes *Ma Ga Ri Sā Dha Ni Pa* as per *Nāradīya Śikṣā* (I. 5, 1 and 2). Due to the influence of the *Sāman*-scale, there was the descending order followed in the case of starting notes of the *Mūrcchanās*. *Mūrcchanās* served as the basis of different types of songs. They also brought in the notes of the low (*Mandra*), high (*Tāra*) registers (*Sthāna*). If the first *Mūrcchanā* of the *Ma*-scale is rendered taking *Ma* as the Ṣaḍja and the remaining notes accordingly, then it would be indicated as :

4*Sa*, 3*Ri*, 4*Ga*, 4*Ma*, 2*Pa*, 3*Dha*, 2*Ni*=22 *Śrutis*

This gives the Gāndhāra of 4 *Śrutis* called *Antara Ga*, Its consonant note would be *Ni* of 4 *Śrutis* called *Kākali Ni*. These two were called the *Sādhāraṇa* notes. Their use was restricted. Their employment was allowed when the songs had two *Śruti Ga* and two Śruti *Ni* notes in small measure. The *Mūrcchamās* with these two *Sādhāraṇa* notes were called *Sādhāraṇīkṛta Mūrcchanās*.

1. *Tāla* or *Tāna* :

Tāna is the *Mūrcchanā* in which one or two specific notes are dropped. When one specific *Svara* (Note) is dropped, it is called *Ṣāḍava Tāna* (a Tāna consisting of six notes) and when two specific notes are dropped, it is called *Auḍuva Tāna* (a Tāna consisting of five notes). According to Purāṇas, there are twenty *Tānas* of *Madhyama-grāma*, fourteen of *Ṣaḍja-grāma* and fifteen of *Gāndhāra-grāma*. Thus the number of *Tānas* of the three *grāmas* is given as forty-nine.

According to Bharata (*Nāṭyaśāstra*) when the single note *Sa*, *Ri*, *Pa*, or *Ni* is dropped from the *Mūrcchanās* of the *Madhyama Grāma*, twentyone *Ṣāḍava Tānas* would be effected (7 x 3=21).

By dropping *Sa Pa Ga Ni* or *Ri Dha* from the Mūrcchanās of the *Sa*-scale twenty-one *Auḍuva Tānas* would be effected (7 x 3=21). When *Ri Dha* or *Ga Ni* are dropped from the *Mūrcchanās* of the *Ma*-scale, there would take place fourteen *Auḍuva Tānas* (7 x 2= 14). Thus the total number of the *Tānaṣ* of the two *Grāmas* is eighty-four according to Bharata. These are given as *Śuddha Tānas* by later Ācāryas.

attempt is made to emend it with similar verses on Music in Bd. P. and other Purāṇas.)

38-39. The *Mūrcchanās* of the *Ma-scale* (*Madhyama-grāmikā*) are known as Saubīrī (Sauvīrā in Bd. P.) of the Madhyama-grāma, Hariṇāsyā, Kalopabalopetā (also known as Kalopanatā) the fourth Śuddha-madhyamā, Śārṅgī, Pāvanī and Dṛṣṭākā in the serial order. *Mūrcchanās* of Madhyama-grāma are explained. Now understand (the Mūrcchanās of) the *Sa-scale* (*Ṣaḍja-grāma*).

40. Uttara-mandrā, Rajanī, Uttarāyatā, Śuddha-ṣaḍjā should also be known as the seventh.[1]

41a. Know the *Mūrcchanās* of the *Ga-scale* (*Gandhāra-grāmikā*) as they are being described by me.[2]

41b-48. (The names of the *Tānas* are as follows :)

The first of the series is Āgniṣṭomika, the second is Vājapeyika; the third is called Pauṇḍraka; the fourth is Aśvamedhika; the fifth is Rājasūya; the sixth is Cakrasuvarṇaka; the seventh is Gosava by name; Mahāvṛṣṭika is the eighth; Brahmadāna is the ninth; the next is Prājāpatya; the later should be known as) Nāga-pakṣāśraya, Gotara, Hayakrānta, Mṛga-krānta; the charming Viṣṇukrānta, the most excellent Sūryakrānta, Mattakokila-Vādin, Sāvitra, Ardhaśāvitra, Sarvatobhadra, Suvarṇa, Sutandra, Viṣṇu, Vaiṣṇuvara, Sāgara, Vijaya which is charming to all beings. We know Haṁsa and Jyeṣṭha as dear to Tuṁburu (or 'Tumburupriya' be taken as a separate name), the pleasing Adhātrya.

These are followed by Gandharvas, desired by Alaṁbuṣā and dear to Nārada. It is mentioned by Bhīmasena that they are liked by citizens. (Bd. P. takes '*Nāgara-priya*' as the name of a Tāna.)

49-50a. (The Tāna) called Karopanīta—Vinatā, Śrīḥ, Bhārgava-Priya.

---

1. The text omitted the names Abhirudgatā, Matsarikṛtā and Aśvakrāntā.

2. Strangely enough neither our text nor Bd. P. gives the *Mūrcchanās* of the *Ga-scale*.

N. P. II.50.35b-36a records them as follows :

Nāḍi, Viśālā, Sumukhī, Citrā, Citravatī, Mukhā and Balā. Without any introduction the text proceeds to enumerate the *Tānas* from 41b.

The Puraṇic concept of a *Tāna* is different from that of today.

The *Ma-scale* (*Madhyama-grāma*) consists of twenty (*Tānas*) while fourteen (*Tānas*) constitute the *Sa-scale* (*Ṣaḍja-grāma*). They desire (opine) that there are fifteen (*Tānas*) belonging to the *Ga-scale* (*Gāndhāra-grāma*).

(*The deities associated with Mūrcchanās*)

50b. The *Mūrcchanā* Gāndhārī accompanied with Sauvīrā is hence sung by god Brahmā.

51. And god Brahmā is the presiding deity here of the *Uttarādi-svara*.

Hariṇāsyā is originated in the region of Hari. Mūrcchanā Hariṇāsyā has Indra as its presiding deity.

52. The *Mūrcchanā Karopanīta-vitatā* was sung by Maruts in *Svara-Maṇḍala*. That is *Kalopanītā*. Hence its presiding deity is Māruta.

53. The *Mūrcchanā Śuddha-madhyamā* originated in the Manu (ru?) deśa.

Śuddha Madhyamā is the note here and the presiding deity is Gandharva.

54. Since it moves along with the deer for the guidance of Siddhas, it is, hence, called *Mārgi*. The Lord of animals (the Lion) is its deity.

55. As the *Mūrcchanā* is associated with hermitages and also with the various (human) voices of citizens, it is called *Rajani* due to its association with *rajas* (dust/atmosphere).

56. The *Tāla* (beating time) is known as having *Ṣaḍja* as its deity. Hence *Uttara-tāla* is known first as well extended.

Hence it is Uttara-mandrā whose diety is Dhruva.

57. Since it is after Apāna (?), Uttarāyaṇa having *Dha* (Dhaivata) as the starting point, is the Mūrcchanā the deities of which are Pitṛs (manes), the deities (worshipped in) Śrāddhas.

58. The great sages worship the Fire-god with the *Śuddha-Ṣaḍja* (pure *Sa*-) note; it should be known as *Śuddha-Ṣaḍjika*.

59. It starts from the *Pañcama* note causing delight to the good people.

The Mūrcchanā belonging to Yakṣīs (female Yakṣas) is called Yākṣikā Mūrcchanā.

60. (Defective) That Mūrcchanā which serpents of poisonous eyes do not approach and the serpent-deities become as it

were drawn by Brahmā, is called the Mūrcchanā of serpents (*Ahi-mūrcchanā*) and here the deity is Varuṇa.

61. The Mūrcchanā with which Kinnaras (sing) in imitation of birds, is the excellent (*Uttamā*) *Mūrcchanā*. Its deity is the Lord of Birds (Garuḍa).

62. By the sound of Gandhāra Rāga, the earth (or cow?) is held in support. Hence it is called Viśuddha-Gāndhārī (of pure *Ga*). And Gandharva is its presiding deity.

63. The Mūrcchanā Uttara-Gāndharī is so called as it was created after Gāndhāra. Its (presiding) deities are Vasus.

64. The Ṣaḍja Mūrcchanā first approached god Brahmā (Pitāmaha). Hence its greatness. Its deity is the Fire-god.

65. The Mūrcchanā called Mandaṣaṣṭhā is divine and extensive. The names of its qualities cannot be described. Its deity is Pañcama (the note *Pa*).

66. All the seven Notes (*Svaras*) and the *Mūrcchanās* are recounted completely. *Mūrcchanās* with Sādhāraṇa Svaras[1] (e.g. Antara Gāndhāra, Kākalī Niṣāda) are many. Only six of them are known.

CHAPTER TWENTYFIVE

The Science of Music: The Embellishments

1. After knowing the views of earlier teachers, I shall explain in due order, the thirty embellishments of music. Listen to them while I am expounding.

2. The *Alaṅkāras* (embellishments of music) are to be explained along with their *Varṇas* (movements of notes such as 'steady', 'ascending' and others) as their specific basis and also along with their associated configuration (*Saṁsthāna*), always in regard to dramatic performance[2] etc.

1. The *Sādhāraṇa Svaras* are :
   (i) *Antara Gāndhāra* i.e. modern *Śuddha Gāndhāra*
   (ii) *Kākalī Niṣāda* i.e. modern *Tīvra Niṣāda*
2. *Vide* Bharata's *Nāṭyaśāstra* Volume. IV, pp. 79-92 (Baroda Edition)

3. The fulfilment of embellishment is achieved by the implications of sentences and connotations of the word-combinations.

The words of a song are said to be either preceding or following the embellishment.

4. One should understand that there are three place of utterance. They are the chest, the throat and the head. The best procedure (of production of notes) begins in these three places.

5. In the original stage (*Prakṛtau*), there are four varṇas (tone-patterns) with fourfold movement. The alternative movement is eightfold;[1] and gods know it as sixteenfold.

6. [*The designations of Varṇas*:]

The first Varṇa is *Sthāyin*; the second is *Pra-sañcārin*, the third is *Avarohaṇa* (= *Avarohin*) and the fourth Varṇa is known by the experts in the knowledge of Varṇas to be, *Ārohaṇa* (= *Ārohin*).[2]

7. There is one (Varṇa viz. *Sthāyin*) which has steady employment. *Sañcara* is a mixed movement. One should indicate the descent of Varṇas (i.e. *Svaras*) as *Avarohaṇa*.

8a. And the experts in the knowledge of Varṇas know (that Varṇa) as the *Ārohaṇa* Varṇa by the ascent of notes.

8b. Now understand the embellishments of these specific Varṇas.[3]

9. There are four embellishments, viz. *Sthāpanī*,

---

1. These are mentioned in the Purāṇas, only later writers do not refer to them.

2. The exigencies of the metre have led to the change in the order of *Varṇas*. The order should have been :

(i) *Sthāyin* (i.e. *Sā Sā Sā*)
(ii) *Ārohin* (e.g. *Sā Ri Ga* etc.)
(iii) *Avarohin* (e.g. *Ni Dha Pa* etc.)
(iv) *Sañcarin* (e.g. *Sā Ri Sā Ri Ga Ri Sā* etc.).

3. Although I have referred to the section on *Alaṅkāras* in *Saṅgīta Ratnākara* (I.VI) only a few Alaṅkāras like *Śyena* (p. 133 of S. R.) shed some light. Though S.R. is much later than Vā.P or Bd.P., I consulted it as S.R. preserved some of the Purāṇic traditions.

Kramarejina, Pramāda and *Apramāda.* I shall (henceforth) explain the characteristics of these.[1]

10. (Names of Alaṅkaras still continue as follows:) *Visvara, Aṣṭakala*[2] which has an interval of one place (from its original place?). *Āvarta* and *Kramotpatti*—these two should be effected according to their proportion.

11a. One should know the other one to be *Kumāra* and *Vistara.*[3]

11b. And this indeed is the *Apāṅga* (Alaṅkāra) and *Kutāreka* (?) possesses one more kalā (time-measure).

12. *Śyena* is originated as having one interval and situated in the midst of Mātrās of a Kalā. In it there abides the increase in the order of the note different from it (e.g. *Sā—Pa, Ri—Dha, Ga—Ni*).

13. The descent of the *Śyena Alaṅkāra* is called *Uttara.* The *Alaṅkāra* called *Bindu* is originated due to the measure of Kalās.

14a. One Kalā (measure of time) should be employed of the Varṇas. Then it would be *Sthāpita* (Sthāyin?) (established).

14b. *Durghaṭita* is that which has the note even in the reverse order.

15a. *Ekāntara* (*Ekottara-svara*) has the highest note from *Ṣaḍja.*

15b. *Ākṣepāskandana* should be effected as having high amplitude like the (harsh) crowing of the crow.

16a. The two *Santāras* belong to the *Sañcārin Varṇa* either as the cause or the effect.

16b. *Ākṣipta* belongs to the category of the descending (*Avarohin*) *Varṇa.*

17. The *Alaṅkara* called *Preṅkholita* has the twelfth place of Kalā having one interval. Thus it is endowed with *Svaras* (Notes).

18a. *Puṣkala* is said to be due to the transfer of the notes.

---

1. Some verses after this must have been lost as neither our text nor Bd.P. explains these anywhere.

2. *Uṣṭrakala* in the text being obscure, is emended as per Bd. P.

3. The text is obscure both here and in the Bd. P.

18b. *Prakṣipta* is due to Kalā——(?)

19a. It is called *Hrāsita* (*Bhāṣita* in Bd. P.) in which there is the use of two Kalās as before.

19b. *Visvarārūḍhā* (*Visarārūḍhā*) has got eight notes in ascendance.

20a. That[1] which is a descent from high or low register.

20b. These are placed verily with one interval and have the same note at the end.

21ab. The *Alaṅkāra* called *Makṣipracchedana* is declared to have a group of four Kalās. Thus, these are the thirty *Alaṅkāras* explained.

21c-22. Due to the employment of *Varṇa* and *Sthāna* having the measures of Kāla and Mātrā are the configuration, proportion, modification and characteristics. This should be known as the purpose of embellishments (of music)[2].

23. Just as in the case of beautification (of one's person) it is extremely censured if it is used at the wrong place, similarly unfavourable (discordant) embellishment of the *Varṇas* also (is censurable) as it is produced by oneself.

24. Just as with the use of various ornaments, a woman gets herself beautified, so are the (musical) embellishments to a Varṇa, (but) if discordantly used, it is bitterly denounced.

25. The ear-ring is not seen (worn) on the feet; nor a girdle round the neck. So also the embellishment (in music) if used in the wrong place, is reproached.

26. When the embellishment is effected, it should indicate the Rāga (melody); just as the path intended to be undertaken is characterised.

27a. The characteristics, its opposites are indicated (with business ?) by scribes (*Varṇika*?)

27b. I shall describe realistically (as it is)————? (Obscure).

28a. (Obscure) Twenty-three and eighty is the inversion (of their order ?)

---

1. If the reading from Bd.P. is referred to the name of this Alaṅkāra is *Vāpa*. But I am not sure of the correctness of the reading in the Bd.P.
2. *Vide Saṅgīta-ratnākara* I. 6.64 which enumerates *Rakṭilābha* etc.

28b. (Obscure) Even the *Ṣaḍja* becomes a deficient note (in the middle?)

29a. Similarly these result in the confusion between the Grāmas of *Ṣaḍja* and *Madhyama.*

29b. Obscure.

30. Obscure*.

31a. (Obscure) A part of the note *Ma-Madhyama*—is the deviation before Ṛṣabha?

31b. (Obscure) Their division is a guide (*mārgasaṃsthita*) to songs ?

32a. (Obscure) [*Svasāra* and *Svarāntara* have been indicated by me.]

32b. The reverse would take place in the case of the order of seven notes.

33a. The four *Mandraka gītas* (songs) are sung with Gāndhāra as the key note.

33bc. In *Mandraka* gītas, we know the notes *Pañcama* (*Pa*), *Madhyama* (*Ma*), *Dhaivata* (*Dha*), *Niṣāda* (Ni), *Ṣaḍja* (*Sā*), *Ṛṣabha* (*Ri*) as the remaining notes.

34a. One should know two Aparāntika songs.—(The rest is obscure).

34b. (Obscure but with Bd.P. text) In the Aparāntika songs, *Gāndhāra* (*Ga*) is employed in the original and modified form by flute players (*Vaiṇava*). [Bd.P : *Gāndhāra* is employed in the original and modified forms.]

35a. The *Pada* has got three forms (?). The *Kaiśika* [*Ki*] song has seven forms.

35b. The key-note procedure is declared with the entire use of *Gāndhāra.*

35c. This is also the order intended for its *Madhyama* as the key note.

36. The songs which have been mentioned with particular emphasis on the form should be effected with seven notes and the *Kaiśiki* [*-ka*] of the sevenfold form.

---

*(A tentative translation:) The embellishment of Svaras is remembered as the experience (?) of all following. The external music(?) is known to have five deities.

37a. This is called the indication of the component parts (of songs?)

(*The Topic of Tāla*)

There are two even measures.

37b. (Obscure)———the *mātrā* is not advanced (*abhipratiṣṭhitā*)?

38. In Uttara songs in the original form, the *Mātrā* is thus deleted (the rest of the verse obscure).

39. With one foot (*Pada*) in the Mātrā and with one foot deficient———————— when there is the *Upahanana* (deficiency, error?) of numbers in it, it is called *Ɣāna*.

40. The second break in the foot is well established with *Graha* (the starting point of the song) and in the Aparāntika (songs). The first, the eighth, the third and second are established with *Graha*(?)

41. (Obscure) With half of the equivalent of a Pāda and in the one-fifth portion of the Pāda, the *Pāda-bhāga* (one fourth of the Pāda) also along with the one and a quarter (of a pāda) (?) is established in the original form)

42. In the *Uttara* and *Mandraka* songs in their original form, the Kalā exists as explained of the Dakṣiṇa Mārga (way of the Tāla—procedure).[1]

43[2]. Obscure (both here and in Bd.P.)

44. When there is the use of one and the use of two, O best of Brāhmaṇas, and when there is the combination of many *Patākā*[3] etc. are declared.

45a. There are three *Vṛttis*[4]—*Citrā*, *Vṛtti* and *Dakṣiṇā* (the text is obscure and hence emended).

1. Some lines are perhaps missing (*vide* Bd.P. 2.3-62.40-41).

There were three *Mārgas* (ways of the Tāla-procedure) viz. *Citrā*, *Vārtikā* and *Dakṣinā* having the Kalā of two *mātrās*, four *mātrās* and eight *mātrās* respectively. The forms *Ekakala*, *Dvikala* and *Catuṣkala* were associated with Mārgas.

2. (Tentative translation): The two feet and their *Āharaṇa*(?) beyond this are not laid down.

3. *Patākā* was one of eight *mātrās*, which was indicated by moving the hand upwards. These *mātrās* were to be employed in the *mārgas* as specifically directed.

4. The *Vṛttis* are the styles of rendering songs. They were three in number viz. *Citrā*, *Vṛtti* and *Dakṣiṇā*. They were associated with the three

45b The *Samavāyas* (combinations of?) are eight; similarly the Mūrcchanā is Sauvīrā.

45c. Obscure.

(Last foot of 45c.) Thus the *Svara-maṇḍala* of seven *Svaras* (notes) (is explained).

CHAPTER TWENTYSIX[1]

The Ikṣvāku Dynasty

Sūta said :

1. When Raivata, otherwise known as Kakudmin, went to that world (of Brahmā) the entire Kuśasthalī was over-run and destroyed by Puṇyajanas and Rākṣasas.

2. The hundred brothers of that noble-souled virtuous king, on being harassed by the Rākṣasas, fled away in great terror.

3. Fleeing in terror, those Kṣatriyas established their families in different places.[2] O excellent Brāhmaṇas, these families were very great.

4-5. As they were virtuous, they were famous in all the quarters as "*Prayatas*"[3] (the pure ones). The family of Dhṛṣṭa, the Kṣatriyas named Dhārṣṭakas, became quite invincible in war. Thus there were three thousand groups of noble-

---

Mārgas : *Citra, Vārtika* and *Dakṣiṇa*, the three *Layas* (Tempi) and *Grahas* etc.

In *Citra* the music of stringed instrument was prominent and song (vocal) subservient. In *Dakṣiṇa*, the song was prominent and instrumental music subservient and in *Vṛtti* both were employed with equal prominence.

1. This chapter corresponds to Bd. P. 2-3-63. The references are to the verses in this chapter.

2. Though the chapter is mainly concerned with the Ikṣvāku dynasty, vv. 3-7 mention a dynasty of the pre-Yayāti period, before *circa* 3000 B.C. (*The Vedic Age*, p. 276, BVB's *The History and Culture of the Indian People* Vol. 1.)

3. Śāryāta in Bd. P. *ibid* v. 5

souled Kṣatriyas. Nabhaga's successor Nābhāga was very powerful.

6. Aṁbarīṣa was the son of Nābhāga. His son was Virūpa. Virūpa's son was Pṛṣadaśva and his son was Rathītara.

7. These (Rathītaras), though born as Kṣatriyas, were known as Aṅgiras-s. The prominent members (descendants) of Rathītara were Brāhmaṇas with Kṣatriya-like (heroic) prowess.[1]

8. Formerly when Manu sneezed, Ikṣāvaku was born.[2] Ikṣvāku had hundred sons. All of them were liberal-minded (distributing enormous wealth as Dakṣiṇā).

9. The eldest son was Vikukṣi. His younger brothers, Nemi and Daṇḍa (two were famous). He had five hundred sons, the chief of them being Śakuni.

10. They were the kings and protectors of the land of Uttarāpatha (northern region). Forty-eight of them ruled in the southern region.

11. Twenty of them were very important. They protected the whole of the southern region.

Ikṣvāku ordered Vikukṣi on the occasion of Aṣṭakā.[3]

12. The king said : O powerful one, kill deer and bring the meat worthy of the Śrāddha. Undoubtedly the *Aṣṭakā Śrāddha* has to be performed today.

13. Vikukṣi who went a-hunting at the instance of the intelligent (king) killed thousands of deer. Though very powerful, he became very tired. He then (killed and) ate a hare.

14. When Vikukṣi returned with the meat along with the army, the king urged Vasiṣṭha, "May the meat be sprinkled with the holy water".

---

1. This indicates the fluidity of the caste-system in ancient India.

2. From v. 8, the Purāṇa describes the Ikṣvāku dynasty. His three sons—Vikukṣi, Nemi and Daṇḍa—founded separate dynasties at Ayodhyā (U.P.), Videha (Bihar) and Daṇḍaka (North Deccan) respectively. Nemi is mentioned as 'Nimi' in Buddhist Jātakas.

3. The Śrāddha performed on the 7th, 8th and 9th days after the Full Moon in the three months of Pauṣa, Māgha and Phālguna.

15. Thus urged by the king, Vasiṣṭha said "So be it" and came there for the due performance (of the *Śrāddha*). On seeing the meat desecrated, he became angry and spoke to the King:

16. "O king of great lustre, the meat has been desecrated by your son (behaving like a) Śūdra. The meat offered by you cannot be eaten, as he had eaten a hare.

17. O excellent king, O sinless one, a hare has been eaten by the wicked one before (the *Śrāddha*) at the forest. Hence this meat has been defiled and made unworthy of the Pitṛs."

18-19. The infuriated Ikṣvāku then spoke thus to Vikukṣi: "Commanded by me for the purpose of the rites of Pitṛs, you went for hunting the deer. In the forest you mercilessly ate the flesh of a hare before the Śrāddha. Hence I banish you. Go away along with your fate (as a result of your own action)." Thus at the instance of Vasiṣṭha the son was abandoned by Ikṣvāku.

20-23. When Ikṣvāku passed away, the hare-eater attained this earth. He was a very virtuous-souled king of Ayodhyā. Urged and guided by Vasiṣṭha, he ruled over the kingdom. Thereafter, being full of that sin, the king, ruling over the kingdom declined in power as time elapsed.[1] After understanding (the import of) this story, no one shall eat (meat) outside the injunction. Learned men explain the etymology of *Māṁsa* (Meat) thus—'In the other world that will eat me, *Māṁ Sa* (*Bhakṣayitā*) the flesh of which I eat here now'.[2]

24-25. Śaśāda's successor was Kakutstha, the powerful. Formerly he had sat on the hump of Indra who had assumed the form of a bull, in the course of the war named Āḍībaka.[3]

Hence he is remembered as Kakutstha[4] (The occupier of the hump).

Anenas was the son of Kakutstha. Pṛthu was the son of Anenas.

---

1. or went to an inferior world (hell) after death.

2. Quoted from Manu V. 55.

3. *Āḍī-baka*—The deadly combat fought by Vasiṣṭha and Viśvāmitra after assuming the forms of *Āḍi* and *Baka* (two acquatic birds). Devas and Asuras fought with each other forming an alliance with Vasiṣṭha and Viśvāmitra.

4. Kālidāsa, however, explains the epithet *Kakutstha* as 'one who

26. Vṛṣadaśva was Pṛthu's son. From him was born the powerful Andhra. Yavanāśva was Andhra's son. Śrāvasta was his son.

27. Śrāvasta was the king by whom Śrāvastī[1] was built. Śrāvasta's successor was Bṛhadaśva of great fame.

28. It is heard that Kuvalāśva was the son of Bṛhadaśva. By killing Dhundhu that king became known as Dhuṇdhumāra.

The Sages said :

29. O highly intelligent one, we wish to hear how Dhundhu was slain, whereby Kuvalāśva attained the title of Dhundhumāra.

Sūta said :

30-32. Bṛhadaśva had twentyone thousand sons. All of them were experts in Vidyās. They were powerful and invincible. All of them were righteous. All of them were performers of Yajñas with profuse Dakṣiṇā. Bṛhadaśva, the king, crowned Kuvalāśva who was very powerful, heroic, excellent and virtuous, in that kingdom. After transferring the royal position and glory to his son, the king went to the forest.

33. Uttaṅka, the Brāhmaṇa sage, prevented the great heroic king Bṛhadaśva who was excellent and virtuous and who was proceeding to the forest (for penance).

Uttaṅka said :

34. "O King, protection must be offered by you. It behoves you to do it. I am unable to perform penance undisturbed.

---

occupies a prominent place among kings' in *Raghuvaṁśa* VI. 71 as follows:

Ikṣvāku-vaṁśyaḥ kakudam nṛpāṇām
Kakutstha ityāhita-lakṣaṇo'bhūt /

Mallinātha, the commentator, correctly mentions the Purāṇic episode (*vide* his comm. on *ibid.*).

1. Modern Sahet-Mahet on the Rāpti (ancient Airāvatī or Acirāvatī) in the Gonda District in U.P.

35. In the wild desert region near my hermitage, there is a vast sea full of sand, O king.[1]

36. There is a huge-bodied, extremely powerful being lying beneath the ground covered with sand. He cannot be killed even by Devas.

37. He is the son of Manu. His name is Dhundhu. He is cruel and terrible. He is performing a severe penance for the last hundred years for the destruction of the worlds.

38. He breathes out (once) at the end of a year. But when he exhales the whole earth along with forests quakes and shakes.

39. A great column of dust is raised by the air exhaled by him. It covers up the path of the sun and the earth—quake continues for a week.

40. It is accompanied by very terrible flames of fire, sparks and smoke. O King, I am not therefore able to stay in my own hermitage.

41. O brawny-armed king, restrain him with a desire for the welfare of the worlds. The great deity Viṣṇu will further develop your prowess by means of his own splendour.

42. The worlds will be happy and relieved today when the Asura is killed. O King, you are hence competent to kill him.

43-44. O Sinless one, a boon has been granted to me (that you would help me by killing him) formerly by Viṣṇu. Hence Dhundhu of great virility cannot be slain by anyone of less splendour even in hundreds of years. His virility is so great that it cannot be brooked even by the Devas."

45. Thus requested by the noble-souled Uttaṅka, that saintly king entrusted his son Kuvalāśva with the job of restraining Dhundhu.

---

1. Verses 35-40 describe a sandy region with occasional earthquakes and something like volcanic eruptions. Scholars differ about its identification. B.C. Law conjectures that this volcanic pit near the western sea was submerged with sea-water and the volcanic action ceased by the efforts of Kuvalāśva (*Tribes in Ancient India*, p. 126). Pargiter regards this as a shallow sand-filled sea in Rajasthan which prevented Aryan expansion (*AIHT* pp. 260-61).

46. The King said, "I have already laid aside my weapons. Here is my son. O Excellent Brāhmaṇa, he will undoubtedly become the slayer of Dhundhu."

47. After ordering his son who was ready to slay Dhundhu, the king of praise-worthy holy observances retired to the mountains for performing penance.

48. The righteous-souled king Kuvalāśva, obeying the behest of his father, went ahead to Dhundhu's haunt, accompanied by his twentyone thousand sons and Uttaṅka, in order to restrain Dhundhu.

49. Due to the imploring entreaty of Uttaṅka, and with a desire for the welfare of the worlds, lord Viṣṇu entered him with his own brilliance.

50. When that invincible (king) started, a loud voice arose in heaven—"This king shall be the slayer of Dhundhu (Dhundhumāra) with effect from today."

51-52. The Devas honoured him with divine flowers. It was a wonderful thing. That tiger-like man (the king) of great prowess went to that vast sea of sand accompanied by his sons and dug it up without any waste (of time). That saintly king had already been developed (empowered) extra-ordinarily by the splendour of Nārāyaṇa.

53-54. He became still more powerful by staying under the control of Uttaṅka. Dhundhu was found out by his sons who were digging. He had been lying hidden beneath the sand on the western side. He seemed to be furiously covering the worlds by means of the fire coming out of his mouth.

55. O excellent one among the imbibers of Soma, by means of his Yogic power, he exuded water like the great ocean at the time of Moon-rise. It was a vast sheet of water with currents and waves.

56. His sons excepting three were burnt by the Rākṣasa. Then the king of great strength destroyed all the attendants and kinsmen of Dhundhu.

57. The king who was a Yogin, drank up his behemence in the form of water-flood (let loose by him) by means of his Yogic power and extinguished the fire by means of water.

58. Then he overpowered the huge-bodied aquatic

demon by means of his strength. The king, having successfully accomplished his task, showed him to Uttaṅka.

59-60. To the noble-souled king, Uttaṅka granted the boons of everlasting wealth, invincibility (in battles) by his enemies, perpetual interest in Dharma and everlasting residence in heaven. To the sons who were killed by the demon, he granted everlasting worlds in heaven.

61. Dṛḍhāśva was the eldest of his three sons who survived. Bhadrāśva and Kapilāśva were the younger ones.

62. Dṛḍhāśva was known as Dhaundhumāri (son of Dhundhumāra). Haryaśva was his son. His son was Nikuṁbha who was always engaged in Kṣātra Dharma (military Profession).

63. Saṁhatāśva was the son of Nikuṁbha. He is reputed as an expert in warfare. Kṛśāśva and Akṣayāśva were the sons of Saṁhatāśva.

64. His wife was Haimavatī who was like the river Dṛśadvatī to the minds of the good. She was famous in the three worlds. Her son was Prasenajit.

65. Yuvanāśva was his son. He was very brilliant and famous in the three worlds as highly virtuous. The chaste lady Gaurī was his wife.

66. She was cursed by her husband and turned into the river Bāhudā.[1] Her son Gaurika became an emperor.

67. Māndhātā, the son of Yuvanāśva, became a king conquering the three worlds. In this connection, Brāhmaṇas well versed in Purāṇas, cite these two verses.

68. "The entire region from the place where the Sun rises up to (the place) where he sets, the whole of it, is called the territory of Māndhātā, son of Yuvanāśva".

69. People who know the (details of) different races also quote this verse. "Those who know Purāṇas call the son of Yuvanāśva, noble-souled, a performer of sacrifices and (a king) of unmeasured splendour. Māndhātā is the embodied form of Viṣṇu."

1. Modern Dhumela or Burha-Rapti, a feeder of the Rapti in Oudh (U.P.). Sage Likhita had his amputated arm rejoined by a bath in this river. Hence she is *Bāhu-dā* 'Granter of arms'—De 16

70. His wife Caitrarathī was Śaśabindu's daughter. She was known by the name of Bindumatī also. She was a chaste lady and had no equal in beauty all over the earth.

71. She was the eldest sister of ten thousand brothers. She was devotedly attached to her husband. Māndhātā begot three sons of her.

72. They were Purukutsa, Aṁbarīṣa and Mucukunda. Ambarīṣa's successor was another Yuvanāśva.

73. Harita was Yuvanāśva's son. Descendants of Harita are remembered by the name Śūris. They were the (adopted) sons of Aṅgiras (spiritual lineage). They were Brāhmaṇas endowed with martial qualities.

74. Purukutsa's successor was Trasaddasyu of great fame. He was born of Narmadā. His son was Saṁbhūta.

75. Saṁbhūta's son was the valorous Anaraṇya. He was killed by Rāvaṇa formerly while he was conquering the three worlds.

76. Trasadaśva was the son of Anaraṇya. His son was Haryaśva. From Haryaśva Dṛṣadvatī gave birth to king Vasumata.

77. His son was the virtuous king Tridhanvā by name. The scholarly king Trayyāruṇa was the son of Tridhanvan.

78-79. He had a powerful son named Satyavrata. Vidarbha's wife was abducted by him after killing (i.e. defeating) the heaven-dwellers, when all the sacred mantras of marriage ceremony had been chanted and the ceremonies concluded. Viṣṇuvṛddha was his son whence his descendants are remembered as Viṣṇuvṛddhas. They were also the (adopted) sons of Aṅgiras endowed with martial qualities.

80. That (sin) was committed by him out of lust, or (pride) due to his strength, or to the powerful force exerted by the inevitable destiny, though he was intelligent.

81. His father Trayyāruṇa banished him as he was sinful. Being infuriated with him, he repeated many times, "Be degraded (and gone)".

82. He spoke to his father again and again, "I am alone. Where shall I go?" The father ordered him : "Live among the Cāṇḍālas.

83. O defiler of the family, I don't seek to be a father with such a son as you." On being repulsed thus by the words of the king, he went out of the city.

84. Vasiṣṭha, the holy lord and sage, did not give him asylum. The bold and intelligent Satyavrata, discarded by his father, lived near the hutments of Cāṇḍālas. The father too went to the forest.

85. On account of that unrighteous deed, Indra did not bring showers to that land for full twelve years.

86. Viśvāmitra of great penance left his wife in that land and performed a severe penance in the marshy land near the sea.

87. His wife tied her own bosom-born middle son (with a rope) round his neck and offered him for sale in exchange for a hundred cows for maintaining (the remaining ones).

88-89. On seeing the son of the sage tied round the neck, the excellent man of good rites, the virtuous-souled Satyavrata of great intellect, got him released by being sold. He nurtured him in order to propitiate Viśvāmitra and gain his sympathy.

90. The boy came to be known as Gālava because he had been tied round the neck (*Gala*). That descendant of Kuśika, a great sage of severe penance had been redeemed by that powerful (King).

91. On account of his (?) sacred vow, devotion, mercy and solemn declaration, the king who adhered to the rules of discipline, sustained Viśvāmitra's wife also.

92. After killing deer, boars, buffaloes and other forest animals, he cooked that flesh near the hermitage of Viśvāmitra.

93-94. At the behest of the father, he adopted a secret vow (*Upāṁśu Vrata*) and for that purpose took initiation extending to twelve years. As the king (Satyavrata's father) had gone to the forest, the sage Vasiṣṭha, in the capacity of the king's priest, protected Ayodhyā, the kingdom and the harem.

95. Out of childishness, or due to the force of the inevitable destiny, Satyavrata nursed a great grudge against Vasiṣṭha.

96. While he was crying on being exiled by his father and banished from the kingdom, the sage Vasiṣṭha had not restrain-

97. The Mantras chanted during the celebration of a marriage are concluded at the seventh step (of the *Saptapadī* rite) but Satyavrata abducted her (the bride of Vidarbha) at the seventh step.

98. 'Vasiṣṭha the knower of Dharmas does not wish to repeat the Mantras.' So Vasiṣṭha was inwardly angry with Satyavrata*(?)

99. It was because of being fully mindful of his position as preceptor that Vasiṣṭha did so then. Nor did Satyavrata understand the secret vow of (the sage).

100-102. (Defective verses) When the father of lofty mind passed away, Indra did not shower for twelve years. Thereby all the people on the earth became weak. All these years the son was having *Dīkṣā* (i.e. performing holy rites in accordance with his fathers' injunction). Vasiṣṭha thought that the people would be saved if he was crowned again. So he restrained Satyavrata from keeping out of the kingdom further.

103-106. The powerful (younger king) performed the holy rites for twelve years. When there was no meat available, the son of the king saw the cow of the noble-souled Vasiṣṭha, Kāmadughā (i.e. the yielder of desired objects). Out of spite, due to delusion and exhaustion and because he was hungry, the foremost among powerful persons who had adopted the practice of Dasyus (robbers and Cāṇḍālas), killed the cow. He himself ate the meat and fed the sons of Viśvāmitra also. On hearing it Vasiṣṭha abandoned him then. The holy lord Vasiṣṭha spoke also thus to the son of the king (i.e. Satyavrata):

107. "O base one among men, had it not been for the fact that you have already three Śaṅkus (sins), O cruel one, I would have let this iron Śaṅku (rod) fall on you.

108. Your transgression (commission of sins) is of three forms: One because of the dissatisfaction of your father, the other due to the slaughter of the preceptor's cow and (finally) due to the partaking of unsanctified (flesh)."

---

*The line needs emendation as in Bd. P. v. 97:
iti satyavrato roṣaṁ vasiṣṭhe manasā 'karot |
'So Satyavrata entertained anger about Vasiṣṭha in his mind'.

109. Thus (observing out) the three sins, the sage of great penance called him, "Triśaṅku" by which name he is remembered.

110. After returning (from his penance), Viśvāmitra was delighted (on hearing that Satyavrata) had looked after his wife (in his absence). He granted boons to Triśaṅku.

111-112. When he was asked to choose a boon as he pleased, the son of the king (Satyavrata) requested him to be his preceptor. When the danger of the drought lasting for twelve years was averted, the sage (Viśvāmitra) crowned him in the hereditary kingdom and presided over his sacrifice. Even as Devas and Vasiṣṭha were watching, the holy lord Kauśika (Viśvāmitra) made him ascend to heaven along with his physical body.

113. To Vasiṣṭha who was watching, it was very surprising. In this connection, people well-versed in the Purāṇas cite these two verses:

114-115. By the favour of Viśvāmitra, Triśaṅku shines in heaven with great brilliance in the company of Devas. It is the result of the blessing of that intelligent one. A beautiful woman bedecked by the moon in the season Hemanta proceeds slowly. She is embellished by the three Bhāvas and adorned by the heavenly body—a planet (called) Triśaṅku.

116. Satyaratā hailing from the Kekaya family was his wife. She gave birth to a son, Hariścandra, the sinless.

117. That king Hariścrndra was well known as Traiśaṅkava (son of Triśaṅku). He was renowned as an emperor and a performer of Rājasūya sacrifice.

118. Hariścandra's son was Rohita, the powerful. Harita was Rohita's son. Cañcu is called Hārīta (son of Harita).

119. Vijaya and Sudeva were the sons of Cañcu. Since he was the conqueror of all Kṣatriyas, he is remembered as Vijaya.

120. Ruruka was his son. He was a king, a great expert in matters pertaining to religion and wealth. Hṛtaka (or Dhṛtaka) was the son of Ruruka and Bāhu was born of him.

121. The king (viz. Bāhu) who was addicted to vice was

defeated by Haihayas, Tālajaṅghas, Śakas, Yavanas, Kāṁbojas, Pāradas and Pahlavas.

122. Even in that righteous Satyayuga that king was not very virtuous. Sagara was born as the son of Bāhu. He was born with a body containing poison in the hermitage of Bhṛgu. He was saved by Turva (Aurva).

123. After obtaining the missile pertaining to Fire-god from Bhārgava, the king Sagara went over the whole of the earth and killed Tālajaṅghas along with Haihayas.

124. The unerring king repudiated the Dharma (code of conduct, rites etc.) of Śakas and Pahlavas. He who was conversant with Dharma cast out the Dharma of (his opponents) Kṣatriyas and Pāradas (i.e. excommunicated them).

The Sages enquired :

125-126. How was the king Sagara (*Sa-gara*) born with poison (inside)? Why did the infuriated unerring king repudiate the traditional holy rites of those powerful Kṣatriyas such as the Śakas and others?

Sūta said :

It is reported that the kingdom of the vicious king Bāhu was taken over by Haihayas and Tālajaṅghas who came along with Śakas ?

127. These five clans, viz. Yavanas, Pāradas, Kāṁbojas, Pahlavas, (and Śakas) attacked him.

128. His kingdom was plundered and taken by these powerful leading Kṣatriyas. King Bāhu whose realm was seized, renounced the world. Accompanied by his wife the righteous-souled king entered the forest and performed penance.

129. After some time the king once went to fetch water. Due to advancing years and weakness he died midway.

130. His wife Yādavī who was pregnant then, followed him. Poison had been administered to her by her co-wife with a desire to kill the foetus.

131. She prepared the funeral pyre of her husband, got him placed and lit it and was (about) to enter into the fire, when Aurva, descendant of Bhṛgu made her desist from it out of sympathy.

132. In his (Aurva's) hermitage, she delivered the foetus (child) along with the (administered) poison. Thus she gave birth to her son, the mighty-armed virtuous Sagara.

133. Aurva performed the post-natal holy rites for that noble soul. After teaching him Vedas and Śāstras he instructed him in the use of miraculous weapons and missiles.

134. Then he learnt the use of the miraculous missile of Fire-god from the son of Jamadagni (in fact Aurva)—a missile which could not be endured even by Asuras. Naturally strong and with the added strength of those missiles the infuriated king killed Haihayas like Rudra destroying *Paśus* (Individuals).

135. Then the king attempted to exterminate completely Śakas, Yavanas, Kāmbojas, Pāradas and Pahlavas.

136. Being harassed and victimised by the heroic and noble-souled Sagara, all of them desirous of protection sought shelter and protection from Vasiṣṭha.

137. Having stipulated some conditions, Vasiṣṭha agreed. Promising them protection from fear (of extermination by Sagara), the great sage restrained Sagara.

138. Remembering his own vow and on hearing the words of his preceptor, Sagara put an end to their traditional rites of worship and made them change their dress and apparel.[1]

139. He got half of the heads of Śakas shaved and released them. He got the heads of Yavanas and Kāmbojas completely shaven.

140. Pāradas were compelled to keep their hair dishevelled and Pahlavas were made to grow their beards. They were debarred from Vedic study and the use of *Vaṣaṭkāra* by that noble-souled king.

141-142. Śakas, Yavanas, Kāṁbojas, Pahlavas, Pāradas, Kelisparśas, Māhiṣikas, Dārvas, Colas and Khasas—all these were clans of Kṣatriyas. Their traditional religious rites were prohibited by the noble-souled Sagara at the instance of Vasiṣṭha.

1. Verses 139-140 describe the ways of hair-dressing etc. of these tribes and attribute to Sagara the credit of imposing these non-kṣatriya ways on them.

143. Conducting his conquests righteously, the king conquered the earth and took initiation for the performance of a horse-sacrifice. He let loose the horse.

144. As it was being taken round, it was stolen near the shore of the south-eastern sea and made to enter beneath the earth.

145-146. The king made all his sons to dig the whole area. Then ultimately, in the great ocean, they met with the primordial Being, Lord Viṣṇu, Lord Hari, Kṛṣṇa, the Lord of subjects, Lord Haṁsa, Lord Nārāyaṇa, in the form of Kapila.

147. They came within the range of the vision of that brilliant being. Then all those sons (of Sagara) were burnt and four of them survived.

148. They were Barhiketu, Suketu, Dharmarata and the heroic Pañcavana. All these continued the lineage of the lord (Sagara).

149. Lord Hari, Nārāyaṇa granted him boons such as the everlasting nature of his race, the benefit of a hundred horse-sacrifices, the all-pervading *Samudra* (ocean) as the son and perpetual residence in heaven.

150. Taking the horse with him, the ocean, the lord of rivers, came there and bowed to him. On account of that action he earned the title of "Sāgara" (born of Sagara).

151. After regaining the horse from the ocean the king performed horse-sacrifices again and again making up the total of one hundred.

152. We have heard (it reported) that there were sixty thousand sons. Those sixty thousand sons were burnt. Those noble-souled sixty thousand sons entered (merged in) the divine brilliance of Nārāyaṇa.

The Sages enquired :

153. By what means did the sixty thousand sons of Sagara become powerful and valorous? Please narrate.

Sūta *replied* :

154. Sagara had two wives. By means of penance they had burnt all their sins. The elder of them named Keśinī was the daughter of Vidarbha.

155. The younger wife was very virtuous. She was the daughter of Ariṣṭanemi. In beauty she was unrivalled on the earth.

156. Propitiated by means of penance, the holy lord Aurva granted them these boons—"One of them will give birth to a son who will establish the lineage and who will be coveted. The other will give birth to sixty thousand sons."

157. On hearing the words of the sage in the king's assembly, Keśinī, the elder one, chose the boon of a single son who will be the cause of the perpetuation of the race.

158. Sumati, the sister of Suparṇa, accepted the boon of sixty thousand sons from the noble-souled sage, in accordance with her wish.

159. After some time the elder wife gave birth to the eldest son (subsequently) famous as Asamañja (Asamañjasa), the son of Sagara, the scion of the family of Kakutstha.

160. Sumati, the famous lady, gave birth to a gourd-like foetus. From the gourd-like foetus all the sixty thousand sons came out.

161. The king caused (pieces of) the foetus to be deposited in (sixty thousand) jars of ghee and engaged as many nurses to look after them individually.

162. Then, ln the course of nine months, they grew well and came out of them (jars) hale and hearty; those blessed sons heightened the pleasure of Sagara.

163-164. After a long time those sixty thousand sons (of Sagara) attained youth. Of those who (later) (closely) followed the horse (of Aśvamedha) the eldest son of Sagara was a tiger among men. The powerful one was famous as Asamañja, otherwise known as Barhiketu.

165. Since he was engaged in activities against the interest of the citizens, he was banished by his father at the very outset. The son of Asamañja was the powerful Aṁśumān.

166. His son was a virtuous soul. He was well-known by the name of Dilīpa. From Dilīpa was born Bhagīratha, a hero of great splendour.

167. Gaṅgā, the most excellent of rivers, rendered beautiful with aerial chariots, was (brought here in this world) by him. She was given the status of a daughter by the (king), the

performer of the sacrifice (*ījānena*), from the sea[1] (?) In this connection, people well-versed in Purāṇas cite this verse.

168. "Bhagīratha brought down Gaṅgā by means of his active endeavour. Hence Gaṅgā is called Bhāgīrathī by those who are the foremost ones among those conversant with genealogies (of kings)."

169. Bhagīratha's son was Śruta by name. His successor was Nābhāga. He was always engaged in religious activities.

170. Aṁbarīṣa was his son. Sindhudvīpa succeeded him. It is well-known that the knowers of the Purāṇa of genealogies sing thus :

171. "Protected by the arms of Aṁbarīṣa, son of Nābhāga, the earth became completely free from three types of *Tāpa* (distress)".

172. Ayutāyu, the powerful, was the son of Sindhudvīpa. Ṛtuparṇa of great fame was the successor of Ayutāyu.

173. He was the knower of the divine *Akṣahṛdaya Mantra* (the Mantra with which people become sure winners at the game of dice). He was a powerful king and a friend to Nala.

There are two Nalas of stead ast holy rites, very famous in the Purāṇas.

174. One of them was the son of Vīrasena and the other a leading member of the Ikṣvāku race. Ṛtu parṇa's son was Sarvakāma who was lord of the people.

175. King Sudāsa was his son. He was *Haṁsamukha* (one with the face of a swan)[2]. Sudāsa's son was the king Saudāsa.

176. He was well-known by the names of Kalmāṣapāda and Mitrasaha. Vasiṣṭha, of great brilliance, begot of Kalmāṣapāda's wife the son Aśmaka, for the purpose of making the line of Ikṣvāku flourish (and perpetuate).

177. Urakāma was the son of Aśmaka and his son was Mūlaka. As regards King Mūlaka, they cite the following (verse).

---

1. The text: *ījānena samudrādvai* is obscure and gives an awkward meaning, especially of *samudrāt*. Bd. P. v.167: *ihānītā sureśād vai* etc. 'was brought here (in this world) and was assigned the daughterly status from the lord of Suras.'

2. *Indra-sakho* 'a friend of Indra' in Bd. P. v. 175 is better.

178. "That lordly king, frightened of Rāma (i.e. Paraśurāma) always stayed surrounded by women. Seeking protection, he abandoned his (manly) apparel and had the coat of mail (in the form) of women."

179. The righteous king Śataratha is remembered as the son of Mūlaka. From Śataratha was born the powerful king Aiḍiviḍa.

180. The son of Aiḍiviḍa was the glorious and valorous Kṛtaśarmā. He had a daughter also and his son was Viśvamahat (Viśvasaha in Bd.P.)

181. Dilīpa was his son. He became well known as Khaṭvāṅga. Having attained a span of life extending to a Muhūrta, he returned to this world from *svarga* (celestial world). By means of his intelligence and truthfulness the three worlds were mastered by him.

182. Dīrghabāhu was his son and Raghu was born of him. Aja was the son of Raghu. From him (Aja) was born that powerful king Daśaratha, the cause of delight for the race of Ikṣvāku.

183. The heroic Rāma, the knower of Dharmas, well-known in the worlds, Bharata, Lakṣmaṇa and Śatrughna of great strength were the sons of Daśaratha.

184. After killing Lavaṇa, the son of Madhu, Śatrughna entered his Madhuvana and founded the city of Mathurā there.

185. Subāhu and Śūrasena, his sons, born of the princess of Videha, protected the city of Mathurā, accompanied by (their father) Śatrughna.

186. Aṅgada and Candraketu were the sons of Lakṣmaṇa. Their territories at the border of mountain Himālaya were very prosperous and flourishing.

187. Aṅgadīyā, the capital city of Aṅgada, was in the land Kārapatha.[1] Candravaktrā, the city of the mighty Candraketu, was very auspicious.

188. Takṣa and Puṣkara were the heroic sons of Bharata.

---

1. Modern Kārābāgh or Bāghān on the west bank of the Indus, at the foot of salt range called Niti hill in the Bannu district (cf. *Raghuvaṁśa.* XV-90).

The cities of those two noble-souled ones were in the Siddha land of Gāndhāra.

189. The beautiful city of Takṣa, viz. Takṣaśilā[1] is renowned in all the quarters. Puṣkarāvatī,[2] the city of the heroic Puṣkara, is also well-known.

190. The people who know the Purāṇas sing this Gāthā (laudatory verse): "All the principles are fettered to (concentrated in) intelligent Rāma due to his greatness."

191. Rāma was a dark-complexioned, youthful, red-eyed, bright-faced hero with arms extending upto the knees. With a smiling face and leonine shoulders, that mighty-armed (one) uttered only measured words.

192-193. Rāma reigned for ten thousand years. The sound of the chanting of Ṛk, Sāman and Yajur Mantras and the twanging of his bow string were always heard.

"May it be given. May it be enjoyed". These utterances were continuously heard in the realm. While staying in Janasthāna[3] he carried out the work of Devas.

194. Proceeding in search of Sītā, that renowned leader of men killed the (demon) of the family of Pulastya, who had committed sins before.

195. Rāma, son of Daśaratha, was brilliant with his own splendour. He possessed Sāttvic qualities. He was richly endowed with good attributes. He surpassed even the Sun and the blazing fire in brilliance.

196. Thus the mighty-armed scion of the family of Ikṣvāku killed Rāvaṇa along with all of his followers and then went back to Heaven.

197. Śrīrāma's son was called Kuśa, He had another son Lava of great prowess. Understand (the names of) their realms.

---

1 Taxila, in the district of Rawalpindi in W. Panjab, (now) Pakistan.

2. According to VR. VII. 101.10-15 it was founded by Bharata. Probably the same as 'Poukelaotes' mentioned by Greeks as being sacked by Alexander the great. De (p. 163) identifies it with Charsaddah, eighteen miles north of Peshawar, on the Landi near its junction with the Kabul river.

3. Modern Nasik or Pañcavaṭi in Mahārāshtra.

198. The realm of Kuśa was Kośalā. The capital city was Kuśasthalī.[1] This beautiful city was founded by him on the ridges of the Vindhya mountains.

199. Uttara-Kośala was the kingdom of the noble-souled Lava. (His capital) Śrāvastī was renowned in the worlds. Understand the descendants of Kuśa.

200. Kuśa's son was the pious-souled Atithi who loved to receive guests hospitably. Atithi's son who was more well-known than his father was a king named Niṣadha.

201. Nala was the son of Niṣadha and Nabha was Nala's son. Puṇḍarīka was born of Nabha and Kṣemadhanvan was his son.

202. The valorous king Devānīka was Kṣemadhanvā's son. Devānīka's son was lord Ahīnagu by name.

203. Ahīnagu's successor was Pāriyātra of great fame. His son was Dala and from him was born the king Bala.

204. Bala's son was a pious-souled (king) Auṅka[2] by name. His son was Vajranābha whose son was Śaṅkhaṇa.

205. Śaṅkhaṇa's son Dhyuṣitāśva was a renowned scholar. King Viśvasaha was the son of Dhyuṣitāśva.

206. Hiraṇyanābha belonged to Kośala. His son was Vasiṣṭha. He was remembered as the disciple of the grandson of Jaimini in all auspicious rites.

207. He had studied five hundred Vedic Saṁhitās.[3] The Yoga philosophy was learned from him by the intelligent Yājñavalkya.

208. Puṣya, his son, was a great scholar. His son was Dhruvasandhi. Sudarśana was his son and Agnivarṇa was born of Sudarśana.

209. Agnivarṇa's son was Śīghra and Manu (Maru in Bd. P.) is remembered as the son of Śīghraka. Manu adopted

1. De (p. 111) identifies it with Ujjain but our text locates it on the ridges of the Vindhya mountain.

2. 'Ulūka' as per Bd. P.v. 205. Pargiter, in the list of kings of Ayodhya, calls him 'Uktha' (*AIHT*, p. 149).

3. Bd.P. v. 207 states that Pauṣyañji was his teacher in Sāma Veda. Pauṣyañji, a disciple of Sukarman, taught 500 branches of the Sāma Veda.

Yogic practice and stayed in the village Kalāpagrāma.[1] In the nineteenth Yuga, he would be the lord who originated and made the Kṣatriya race flourish.

210. Manu's son was Prasuśruta. His son was Susandhi. Susandhi's son was Amarṣa, otherwise known by the name Sahasvān.

211. Sahasvān's son was the king known by the name Viśrutavān. Viśrutavān's son was the king Bṛhadbala.

212. These are the mostly remembered kings, the successors of Ikṣvāku. The most important members of the race have been enumerated here.

213-214. One who reads well this creation of Vivasvān, the son of Aditi, becomes endowed with progeny. He attains identity with Vaivasvata Manu, lord Śrāddha-Deva who bestows prosperity on the subjects. He becomes free from sins and Rājasic qualities. He becomes long-lived and does not swerve from the righteous path.

CHAPTER TWENTYSEVEN

The Nimi Dynasty[2]

Sūta said:

1-3. Now (listen to and) understand the race of Nimi[3], the younger brother of Vikukṣi. It was he who founded a city well known as Jayanta near the hermitage of Gautama. It (the city) was comparable to the city of Devas. In his race a very intelligent son named Nemi was born to Ikṣvāku of great

1. Probably a fictitious place. It is regarded to have been situated somewhere near Badrinath in the Himalayas. It was a pleasure haunt of Urvaśi and Purūravas according to our text. Maru (Manu) and Devāpi, the last kings of the Solar and Lunar races are practising Yoga, waiting to re-establish their kingdoms at Ayodhya and Hastinapur after the incarnation of Kalki.

2. This chapter corresponds to Bd. P. 2.3.64., so from Bd. P. only verse numbers are mentioned.

3. Nimi is a respectable king in Brahmanical, Bauddha and Jaina traditions. As a popular etymology, 'Videha' (mod. Tirhut) is traced to his being bodiless due to Vasiṣṭha's curse (see v. 4-5 below).

brilliance. He was extremely pious-souled and revered by all living beings. He was born in the course of a Yajña, the procreator (*Janaka*) being an excellent sage.

4-5. By the curse of Vasiṣṭha, he became *Videha* (devoid of body). His son named Mithi was procreated in the course of three Parvans. This king of great fame was born of *Araṇi* (a piece of wood from which fire is kindled for sacrificial purpose) while it was being churned. He was well known by the name of Mithi. Since his birth was of this type, he became (known as) Janaka.

6. Mithi was a king of great prowess whereby the capital city became (known as) Mithilā[1] and the king was Janaka. Janaka's son was Udāvasu.

7. From Udāvasu was born the extremely pious-souled Nandivardhana. From Nandivardhana was born the heroic and pious Suketu.

8. From Suketu was born the pious-souled Devarāta of great strength. It is heard that the pious-souled Bṛhaduccha was Devarāta's son.

9. Bṛhaduccha's son was the valorous Mahāvīrya. Dhṛtimān was the son of Mahāvīrya and his son was Sudhṛti.

10. The pious-souled Dhṛṣṭaketu, the oppressor of enemies, was the son of Sudhṛti. Dhṛṣṭaketu's son was well known by the name of Haryaśva.

11. Maru was Haryaśva's son. Pratitvaka[2] was Maru's son. The pious-souled king Kīrtiratha was the son of Pratitvaka.

12. The son of Kīrtiratha was well known as Devamīḍha. and Vibudha was the son of Devamīḍha and Vibudha's son was Dhṛti.

13. Mahādhṛti's son was Kīrtirāja, a king of great valour. Kīrtirāja's son was a scholar well known as Mahāromā.

---

1. Also called Janakapur, capital of Videha in the district of Darbhanga (Bihar). It was famous for its Brahmanical University (upto 14th cent. A.D.). Now a new Sanskrit University has been founded there some years back.

2. Pratimbaka in Bd.P. v. 11. Pargiter records 'Pratindhaka' as his name (*AIHT*, p. 147).

14. From Mahāromā was born the famous Svarṇaromā. Svarṇaromā's son was the king Hrasvaromā.

15. It is heard that the son of Hrasvaromā was the scholar Sīradhvaja. While this king was ploughing, Sītā, of great fame, was born. She became the chaste queen of Rāma. She was devoted to her husband and a virtuous wife.

Śāṁśapāyana enquired:

16. How was Sītā of great fame born while (the field) was being ploughed. Why did the king plough the field wherein she was born ?

Sūta replied :

17. While the Agnikṣetra (the field where sacrifice was to be performed) was being ploughed in accordance with the injunction in the course of the horse-sacrifice of the noble soul she was born out of it.

18. From Sīradhvaja was born the Maithila (king of Mithilā) named Bhānumān. His brother was Kuśadhvaja, the lord and king of Kāśī.

19. Bhānumān's son was the valorous Pradyumna. His son was Muni and from him Ūrjavaha is remembered (as born).

20. From Ūrjavaha was born Sutadvāja. Śakuni was his son. Śakuni's son was Svāgata.[1] Suvarcas is remembered as his son.

21. Śruta was his successor. Suśruta was his son. Jaya was Suśruta's son. Vijaya was the son of Jaya.

22. Vijaya's son was Ṛta and Sunaya was the son of Ṛta. From Sunaya was born Vītahavya, and Vītahavya's son was Dhṛti.

23. Dhṛti's son was Bahulāśva and Bahulāśva's son was Kṛti.[2] It is with him that the race of Janaka is terminated. Thus the Maithilas (kings of Mithilā) are enumerated. Understand the race of Soma also.

---

1. The list in *AIHT*, p. 144 shows that our text and Bd.P. jumped twelve generations downwards and declared Svāgata as the son of Śakuni.

2. Kṛtakṣaṇa in *AIHT*, p. 149.

CHAPTER TWENTYEIGHT

The Nativity of Soma and Saumya (Budha)

Sūta said:

1. O Brāhamaṇas, the progenitor of the Moon-god was Atri, the holy sage. He surpassed all the worlds by means of his brilliance. He was a holy lord.

2-3. He always performed only holy rites physically, mentally and verbally. We have heard that formerly, for a period of three thousand years, he performed a penance that was indeed very difficult to be performed in the worlds, wherein with his arms upraised he stood firm (unmoved) like (a piece of) wood, a wall or a piece of rock.

4. The highly intelligent Brāhmaṇa had sublimated his sexual urge. He stood without even winking his eyes. His body attained the status of Soma.

5. The sage of sanctified soul in the state of Soma rose up (to the sky). The Soma juice exuded from his eyes illuminating all the quarters.

6. On being ordered by Vidhi (Brahmā), the ten Devīs (i.e. the quarters) gathered together there and received it in their womb collectively, but could not do so (for long).

7-8. When those goddesses (ladies) were unable to hold the foetus in their wombs, the foetus endowed with lustre, illuminated the worlds like the Moon (now) blessing everyone; it emerged from the quarters (womb of the ladies) and fell on the ground (assuming the form of) the Moon along with them (the goddesses).

9. On seeing Soma falling, Brahmā, the grandfather of the worlds, placed him in a chariot, with a desire for the welfare of the worlds.

10. O Brāhmaṇas, indeed he (the Moon) was a Deva (god) himself, a seeker of righteousness and truthful to the promise. We have heard that (the chariot) was (fitted with) yoked to a thousand white horses.

11. When that great soul, the son of Atri, had fallen, Devas and the seven famous mental sons of Brahmā eulogised (him).

12. There itself, the sons of Aṅgiras and Bhṛgu eulogised by means of Ṛks, Yajur mantras and many Atharva Āṅgirasa mantras.

13. The brilliance of the shining Moon who was being eulogised, developed further and it purified all the three worlds.

14. In that prominent chariot, he circumambulated the earth extending upto the ocean twenty-one times.

15. His splendour that reached the earth became medicinal herbs. They sparkle by means of his brilliance.

16. O excellent Brāhamaṇs ! He sustains subjects of four types and the universe with them (herbs). Lord Soma is indeed the nourisher of the universe.

17. Having acquired splendour through the penance (of Atri), the eulogy (of Devas and sages) and his own religious activities, the blessed one (Soma) performed penance for ten times ten *Padma* years. (one *Padma*= a thousand billion).

18. Soma who is famous by his own Karmans will be the pervader of those (ten) gold-complexioned goddesses (viz. quarters) who sustain the whole world.

19. Thereafter, Brahmā the foremost among the knowers of Brahman, entrusted him with the kingdom of seeds, herbs, Brāhmaṇas and waters.

20. Being naturally the foremost among those who shine brilliantly and, thereafter, being crowned over a big kingdom, (Soma) of great splendour became the king of kings and purified the worlds and developed them.

21. Dakṣa, the son of Pracetas, gave twenty-seven Dākṣāyaṇīs (daughters of Dakṣa) of great holy rites to Indu (the Moon). They (people) know them as Nakṣatras (constellations).

22. Having attained that great kingdom, Soma the lord of possessors of Soma (i.e. Brāhmaṇas) performed the Rājasūya sacrifice, wherein the Dakṣiṇā amounted to hundred thousands.

23-24. In that sacrifice, Hiraṇyagarbha was the Udgātṛ (the presiding priest who recites mantras); Brahmā occupied the seat of Brahmā and lord Nārāyaṇa Hari was the Sadasya (member of the witnessing assembly). He was surrounded by Sanatkumāra and other leading original Brahmarṣis. O Brāhmaṇas, we have heard that Soma gave the three worlds as

Dakṣiṇā (sacrificial fee) to those important Brāhmaṇa sages who were the members of the Assembly.

25. Nine Devīs, viz. Sinī, Kuhū[1], Vapus, Puṣṭi, Prabhā, Vasu, Kīrti, Dhṛti and Lakṣmī served him.

26. After finishing his concluding ablutions (of the sacrifice), he became free from worries. He had been revered by all Devas and sages. That supreme emperor of emperors shone over the ten quarters.

27. After having attained such a rare glory praised even by the sages, O Brāhmaṇas, his mind became confounded. His humility was suppressed by his immodesty and impertinence.

28. Slighting all the sons of Aṅgiras, all of a sudden, he abducted Tārā of great fame, the wife of Bṛhaspati.

29. Though implored by Devas and celestial sages, he did not give up Tārā to Aṅgiras (Bṛhaspati).

30. O Brāhmaṇas, Uśanas, one of the Aṅgiras (?) took his side. Indeed, he had been the highly brilliant disciple of Bṛhaspati's father.

31. Thanks to that affection, lord Rudra took up his bow Ajagava and sided Bṛhaspati.

32. The great miraculous weapon was discharged by that noble soul aiming at the chief Brāhmaṇa sage and Devas whereby their fame was destroyed.

33. There ensued a great battle directly (between Devas and Asuras). It was called Tārakāmaya[2] (concerning Tārā ?). It caused great destruction of Devas, Dānavas and all the worlds.

34. Only three Devas survived. They are remembered by the name Tuṣitas. They sought shelter in Brahmā, the primordial lord, the grandfather of the worlds.

35. Then Pitāmaha (Brahmā) himself prevented Uśanas and Rudra, the eldest (deity) Śaṅkara, (from fighting) and handed over Tārā to Aṅgiras (Bṛhaspati).

---

1. Sinī and Kuhū are deities presiding over (i) the day preceding the new moon day on which the moon rises with scarcely visible crescent and (ii) the new moon day when the moon is invisible, respectively.

2. Out of the twelve wars between Devas and Asuras this was the fifth one.

36. On seeing that Tārā, the lady with a moon-like face, was pregnant, the Brāhmaṇa Bṛhaspati said: "Don't you cast off the foetus ?

37. In (your) body belonging to me another foetus shall by no means be held in the womb." Still she did not cast off the child '*Dasyu-hantama*' (the slayer of robbers).

38. Like the fire that blazes after catching the Iṣikā grass, the son surpassed the beautiful bodies of Devas at the very instant he was born.

39. Their suspicion having been aroused, Suras spoke to Tārā : "Tell us the truth, whose son is he, Soma's or Bṛhaspati's ?"

40. When she, out of bashfulness, did not tell Devas, 'yes' or 'no', the boy Dasyuhantama was about to curse her.

41. Preventing him, Brahmā said to Tārā, "(We have) suspicion that it is Candra's (Moon's), O Tārā; therefore, speak the truth. Whose son is this ?"

42. With palms joined in reverence, she said this to lord Brahmā, the granter of boons, that the noble-souled boy Dasyuhantama was Soma's.

43. Thereafter, sniffing at the head of his son, Lord Soma, the Prajāpati, named his intelligent son as Budha.

44. (Defective verse) While rising up to go towards the east*, Budha begot a son of the princess (Ilā).

45. Purūravas, his son of great brilliance, was born of Ilā. In Urvaśī, six sons of great prowess were born (to Purūravas).

46. Then, being violently attacked by pulmonary consumption Soma became exhausted and helpless. Overwhelmed by consumption, the Moon's disc became pale and weak. He, therefore, sought refuge in his own father Atri.

47. Atri, of great fame, quelled his sin (disease). He was cured of the pulmonary consumption and so he shone with brilliance all round.

48. O excellent Brāhmaṇas, thus the origin of Soma has been recounted by me. Listen to and understand his race that is being recounted to you, O excellent Brāhmaṇas.

---

*The reading Bd. P. v. 2.3.66-44: *Pratighasram...budhaḥ*, 'Buddha rises in the east everyday.'

49. It is conducive to wealth, health and longevity. It is holy and destructive of sins. Only by listening to the origin of Soma, one is relieved of all sins.

CHAPTER TWENTYNINE

The Lunar Race[1] : *The Amāvasu Dynasty*

Sūta said :

1. Buddha was Soma's son and his son was Purūravas. He was very brilliant and munificent in charitable gifts. He performed *Yajñas* with vast amounts distributed as *Dakṣiṇā*.

2. He was an expounder of Brahman (Vedas), destroyer of foes and invincible in battle. He regularly performed Agnihotra and granted gifts of lands to sacrificial priests.

3. He was truthful in speech and intelligently engaged in holy rites. Handsome in features, he indulged in sexual intercourse in great privacy. He was an extraordinarily dutiful son, and in beauty of form was unequalled in all the worlds.

4. Eschewing her pride in personal prestige, the renowned Urvaśī wedded that righteous, truthful (king), conversant with Dharmas and expounder of Brahman (Veda)

5-8. The vigorous king stayed with her (in all for sixty-four years) spending ten, eight, seven, six, seven, eight, ten and eight years in the beautiful Caitraratha park, on the banks of Gaṅgā, in the excellent forest Nandana, in the extensive Alakā, at the foot of the Gandhamādana mountain, on the peak of the excellent mountain Meru, in the northern Kurus, and in the village Kalāpagrāma respectively. With great

1. The present chapter which corresponds to Bd.P. 2.3.66, opens with the episode of Purūravas, the founder of the Lunar race and Urvaśi, the celestial nymph. This episode gives the background of the famous "Dialogue" sūkta in the RV. This romantic story inspired Kālidāsa to write his immortal play *Vikramorvaśīya*.

joy, the king accompanied by Urvaśī sported about in their main forests and parks (usually) frequented by Suras (gods).

The Sages asked :

9. Urvaśī was a Gandharva lady. Forsaking Devas, how did she attain the king, a mere human being ? O (sage) of extensive learning, please explain it to us.

Sūta replied :

10. She was overwhelmed by the curse of Brahmā and therefore had to approach a human being. The beautiful lady (became the wife of) Aila Purūravas under certain stipulated conditions.

11. In order to redeem herself from the evil effects of the curse, she stipulated that she should not see him naked except at the time of sexual intercourse or when swayed with passionate love.

12. (She said further) "O King, two rams will always be kept near our bed.[1] My sole diet will be ghee which I shall take only once a day.

13. If these conditions are fulfilled, O king, as long as you strictly adhere to these stipulations, I shall stay with you. This is our mutual agreement".

14. The king scrupulously adhered to her conditions. Thus that beautiful lady stayed with Purūravas.

15. Deluded by her curse, Urvaśī became a human lady and stayed with him devotedly for sixty-four years. The Gandharvas became worried due to this.

---

1. Urvaśi, as her name indicates, seems to have hailed from the ancient central Asian town Ur. It appears that fashionable ladies from Ur had a fascination for rams in the fourth millennium B.C. In his excavation at Ur, Sir Leonard Wooley discovered in a queen's tomb of 3300 B.C. a pair of rams, "beautifully and intricately made. Their bodies were covered with fleece of shell.... their heads and legs were of gold" (quoted on p. 8 in A. J. Karandikar's introduction to his Marathi book *Background of the Mahābhārata —Mahābhāratācī Pārśvabhūmi*, Poona, 1980. This fascination for rams may be the cause of the inclusion and importance attached to this term in the marriage-contract between Purūravas and Urvaśi.

Gandharvas said :

16. O blessed ones, ponder over the means whereby that excellent lady, the ornament of heaven, Urvaśī, may again come back to Devas.

17-19. Then the foremost of the eloquent ones (Gandharvas), named *Viśvāvasu spoke thus*:

"O sinless ones, I consider that some conditions must have been stipulated by her there. I shall tell you the means whereby she will forsake the king due to the breach of agreement. I shall immediately engage myself to achieve your task". After saying thus, that (Viśvāvasu) of great fame went to the city of Pratiṣṭhāna.

20. He came there at night and took away one of the two rams. The lady of sweet smiles had been no less than a mother unto the two rams.

21. On realising that the Gandharva had come, the renowned lady (Urvaśī) lying on the bed told the king, "My son is being taken away".

22. Thus requested, the king thought, "The queen will see me naked and there will be a breach of the agreement."

23. Then the Gandharvas took away the second ram as well. When the second ram was taken away, the queen spoke to Aila:

24. "O Lord, O king, my sons are taken away as though they are the sons of a helpless woman". Thus taunted the king got up and rushed out (though he was) naked.

25-26. The king rushed out seeking the sheep taken away by the Gandharvas, whereupon a great Māyā (illusion) was produced by them. The great palace became illuminated suddenly and she saw the naked king. On seeing the king naked, the Apsarā lady (Urvaśī) who could assume any form she wished, vanished (from there).

27. On realising that she had vanished, the Gandharvas abandoned the rams there and disappeared themselves.

28. On seeing the abandoned rams, the king, the lord, took them with him and returned. Unable to see her there, the king became extremely dejected and lamented.

29-30. Seeking her here and there, the king roamed over

the earth. The powerful king saw her at Kurukṣetra. She was taking her bath in the deep waters of Puṣkariṇī (lotus pond) in the holy centre of Plakṣatīrtha. She appeared very splendid, sporting there in the company of five Apsarās.

31-32. The lady of splendid evebrows saw the king not very far. Urvaśī then spoke to her friends: "Here is that excellent man with whom I lived." She pointed out the king to them. Then those ladies, the Apsarās (with five braids of hair) appeared in front (of him).

33. On seeing her (Urvaśī) the king was delighted. He began to lament in diverse ways. "O cruel lady, come (unto me). Stay willingly, stand by your words."

34-35. These and similar subtle words they exchanged. Urvaśī then spoke to Aila: "O lord, I have been rendered pregnant by you. Undoubtedly your son will be born within a year." The king stayed for a night with her.

36. The king went back to his city with great delight. When a year elapsed, the king of great fame came to Urvaśī again.

37. After staying with her for a night, the lofty-minded king became overwhelmed by passionate love. In a pitiable tone he spoke: "Be mine for ever".

38. Urvaśī then said to Aila: "The Gandharvas will grant you (that) boon. O great king, choose that boon and tell them this yourself:

39. 'I choose the boon of *Sālokya* (having the same world) with the noble-souled Gandharvas'". The king accepted the suggestion saying "So be it", and requested the Gandharvas for the boon. The Gandharvas replied, "So be it".

40. After filling the *Sthālī* (mud-pot) with fire, the Gandharvas spoke to him: "O king, performing the sacrifice with this, you will attain that world."[1]

41. He took the fire and went back to his city along with the prince. He placed the fire in the *Araṇi* and went to his abode along with his son.

1. As vv. 40-45 show, this Purāṇa attributes to Purūravas, the institution (or encouragement) of the performance of Yajña out of the fire created from *Araṇi* (of Aśvattha wood) by attrition. Bd.P. 2.3.66.19 gives the credit of introducing three fires (Dakṣiṇāgni etc.) to Purūravas.

42. He returned and saw the fire. He found an Aśvattha (holy fig tree) there. On seeing the Aśvattha near it, he was surprised.

43. In order to inform the Gandharvas about it, he went to heaven with the fire. On hearing everything they asked him to make use of *Araṇi*.

44. They said: "Make an *Araṇi* out of the Aśvattha, churn it and kindle the fire, in accordance with the injunctions. O king, performing the sacrifice with it, you will attain the same region as ours. The king churned and prepared three fires and performed the sacrifice.

45. After performing different kinds of *Yajñas*, he attained *Sālokya* with the Gandharvas. It was in the Tretā Yuga that this great (hero) lived. Originally there was only a single fire. Aila made (introduced) three fires.

46-47. O excellent Brāhmaṇas, the king Aila had such a prowess. He ruled over his kingdom in Prayāga, the holiest of lands embellished by the great sages, on the northern banks of Yamunā, in the city of Pratiṣṭhāna.

48-49. (He had) six sons having the brilliance comparable to that of Indra and well-known in the regions of Gandharvas. They were Āyu, Dhīmān, Amāvasu,[1] Viśvāyu, Śatāyu and Gatāyu—all born of Urvaśī. Amāvasu's son was king Bhīma, the conqueror of the whole universe.

50. Śrīmān, the successor of Bhīma, was a king with golden lustre (otherwise known as Kāñcanaprabha). The scholarly and powerful Suhotra was the son of Kāñcana (i.e. Kāñcanaprabha).

51-55. Jahnu was the son of Suhotra, born of Keśikā's womb.

While his elaborate sacrificial rite was going on, Gaṅgā turned her course and flooded that territory on account of the vision of the inevitable future (events). Seeing the sacrificial enclosure flooded all round by Gaṅgā, the son of Suhotra, the granter of boons, became infuriated. Flashing red eyes he spoke to Gaṅgā: "O Gaṅgā, have the recompense of this outrage

1. Amāvasu was the founder of Kānyakubja kingdom—Pargiter, *AITH*, p. 144.

immediately. I shall make all your efforts in vain. I shall drink up your waters." On seeing the waters of Gaṅgā drunk up the saintly king, Suras and sages brought out the blessed river as his daughter (and known as Jāhnavī). Jahnu married Kāverī, the grand-daughter of Yauvanāśva.

56-57. It was a result of the curse of Yuvanāśva that Gaṅgā was produced by him. Kāverī, the most excellent of all rivers, became the praise-worthy wife of Jahnu. Jahnu begot a beloved righteous son named Suhotra, of Kāverī. Suhotra's son was Ajaka.

58. Ajaka's successor was Balākāśva of great fame. Gaya, Śīla and Kuśa are remembered as sons born to him.

59. Kuśa had four sons brilliant due to their Vedic knowledge. They were Kuśāśva, Kuśanābha, Amūrtārayaśas and Vasu.

60. The excellent king Kuśastamba desirous of a son, performed a penance. When a thousand years were completed he saw Śatakratu (Indra).

61-62. On seeing him who performed severe penance, the thousand-eyed Purandara decided to become his son, as he was competent to do so. The enemy of Pāka (i.e. Indra) became his son and took the name Gādhi. He was called Kauśika also, being a member of the family of Kuśa.

63. Kuśastaṁba's wife was Paurukutsā and Gādhi was born of her. Lord Gādhi gave his eldest daughter, the splendid and blessed Satyavatī, to Ṛcīka who was a descendant of Bhṛgu (Kāvya?).

64-67. Her husband, himself a descendant of Bhṛgu and the delighter of the Bhṛgu family, prepared *Caru* (consecrated cooked rice) for the sake (of the birth) of a son to himself as well as to Gādhi. The courageous sage Ṛcīka, the descendant of Bhṛgu, called (his wife Satyavatī and said): "O splendid lady, this *Caru* should be taken by you and this by your mother. A brilliant leader of Kṣatriyas will be born to her. He cannot be conquered by Kṣatriyas in battle. He will be the destroyer of prominent Kṣatriyas. This *Caru* will give you, O splendid lady, an excellent Brāhmaṇa as a son. He will be courageous and quiescent, possessing penance as his wealth (i.e. he will become a great sage)."

68. After saying this to his wife, Ṛcīka, the scion of the family of Bhṛgu, ever engaged in penance, entered the forest.

69. In the course of his pilgrimage, king Gādhi came to Ṛcīka's hermitage in order to see his daughter. He was accompanied by his wife also.

70. Satyavatī brought the two types of *Carus* given by the sage to her mother. Delightedly but without excitement, she told her what her husband had mentioned to her (about them).

71. As fate would have it, the mother gave the *Caru* intended for her to her daughter. Out of ignorance, she took in the *Caru* intended for her daughter.[1]

72. Then Satyavatī conceived in her womb a foetus that was splendid but competent to destroy Kṣatriyas. With her illuminated body, she became terrible to view.

73. On seeing it and pondering over it by means of Yogic power, Ṛcīka, the excellent Brāhmaṇa, spoke to his fair-complexioned wife:

74. "O gentle lady, due to the interchange of the *Carus*, an extremely terrible son of cruel deeds will be born as your son and your mother will be successful (in getting a good son).

75. Your mother will give birth to such a saintly son. The entire Brahman (Vedic knowledge) has been instilled into it by me.

76. Thus warned by her husband, the blessed lady Satyavatī propitiated her husband: "May my son never be like this. Let another be a base Brāhmaṇa". Thus requested, the sage said :

77. "O gentle lady, this has never been thought of nor desired by me or by you. The son may be one of terrible activities due to the fault of his father or mother".

78. Thus addressed, Satyavatī spoke again these words: "O sage, if you wish, you can create many worlds. What then a mere son?

---

1. This explains why Paraśurāma, though a Brāhmaṇa, was of a militant nature and Viśvāmitra, though Kṣatriya by birth, attained Brāhmaṇa-hood.

79. O holy lord, O master, it behoves you to grant me a son who will be quiescent and straightforward. O Lord, say 'Let such a son be born'.

80. O excellent Brāhmaṇa, nothing other than this can be done to me". Thereafter, by means of the power of his penance, he made her delighted.

81. "O fair-complexioned lady, it makes no difference as far as I am concerned whether it is the son or the grandson. O gentle lady, everything shall be in accordance with the words spoken by you."

82. Therefore Satyavatī gave birth to a son, the scion of the family of Bhṛgu. He was Jamadagni, the quiescent and self-controlled. He was interested in penance.

83. Formerly when there was an interchange of Raudra and Vaiṣṇava *Carus* in the Yajña of Bhṛgu, he ate (*Jamanāt*) the Vaiṣṇava fire and so he came to be known as '*Jamadagni*'.

84. Having obtained Viśvāmitra as his successor, Gādhi the delighter of Kuśikas (members of the family of Kuśika) attained the status equal to that of Brāhmaṇa sages. He was selected to be such by Brahmā.

85-86a. The meritorious Satyavatī, engaged in truthful rites, became the great river well known as Kauśikī. Kauśikī the most excellent and distinguished river began to flow thus.

86b-88. There was a king in the race of Ikṣvāku. His name was Suveṇu. His daughter was a blessed lady named Reṇukā otherwise known as Kāmalī. Ṛcīka's son, Jamadagni, endowed with the power of penance and fortitude begot of Kāmalī alias Reṇukā, the terrible son Rāma who was the most excellent of those who had mastered all lores and the science of archery as well. He became the destroyer of Kṣatriyas and shone like the blazing fire.

89. In this manner, the lofty-minded Jamadagni, the foremost among those who know Brahman, was born of Satyavatī, thanks to the semen virile of Aurva Ṛcīka. The middle son was Śunaḥśepha and the youngest was Śunaḥpuccha.

90. The pious-souled Viśvāmitra is remembered by the name Viśvaratha also. By the favour of Bhṛgu, he was born of Kauśika, as the perpetuator of the race of Kauśika.

91-93. Śunaḥśepha is remembered as the eldest of all the sons of Viśvāmitra.[1] He became a sage. In the Yajña of Hariścandra, he was intended (appointed) as the sacrificial animal. He was given over (to Viśvāmitra) by Devas. Hence he became Devarāta. Śunaḥśepha is remembered as the eldest son of Viśvāmitra. Madhucchanda, Naya, Kṛta, Deva, Dhruva, Aṣṭaka, Kacchapa and Pūraṇa were the other sons of Viśvāmitra. The Gotras (spiritual lines) of those noble-souled Kauśikas are innumerable.[2]

94-97. These following are remembered as Kauśikas: Pārthivas, Devarātas, Yājñavalkyas, Samarṣaṇas, Udumbaras, Udumlānas, Tārakas, Yamamuñcatas, Lohiṇyas, Reṇavas, Kārīṣus, Babhrus, Pāṇins, Dhyāna-Japyas, Śālāvatyas, Hiraṇyākṣas, Syankṛtas, Gālavas, Devalas, Yāmadūtas, Śālaṅkāyanas, Bāṣkalas, and many other descendants of the intelligent Viśvāmitra. They entered into matrimonial alliance with the families of other sages.

98. Some other families of the Brahmarṣi Kauśika, the holy descendant of Purūravas are: Sośrumas and Saindhavāyanas.

99. Aṣṭaka, born of Drṣadvatī, was also Viśvāmitra's son. Aṣṭaka's sons (and descendants) constituting the Jahnu family have already been recounted by me.

The Sages enquired:

100. What are the characteristics of Dharma, penance and learning whereby Brāhmaṇa-hood was attained by Viśvāmitra and other kings?

101. What are the various names under which the Kṣatriyas who had attained Brāhmaṇa-hood (are known?). We wish to know the special features of the penance and charitable gifts (whereby they had attained the same).

---

1. This confirms the story in the *Aitareya Brāhmaṇa*, though Śunaḥśepa's release from bonds by his prayer of Varuṇa is not mentioned here. Viśvāmitra adopted him as a son.

2. The list of Gotras of Kauśika clan given in vv. 91-97 is incomplete (*vide Mt. P. A Study*, pp. 406-409).

102. Thus requested, *he* (*Sūta*) *spoke these meaningful words*:

Even if a man is desirous of acquiring Dharma and his mind is engaged in Yajña, he does not attain the fruit of holy rites if he gathers the requisites thereof by means of illegally acquired wealth.

103-106. A sinful soul, a base man, may give charitable gifts to Brāhmaṇas after proclaiming his intention to perform righteous deeds to the people out of hypocrisy. An uncontrolled man overwhelmed by passion and delusion may perform severe Japas and in the end may give charitable gifts for the purpose of sanctifying himslf. But these charitable gifts offered by him do not yield fruits. The charitable gifts of a wicked-souled man indulging in violence, do not stay (i.e. do not yield fruits) even if he engaged himself in holy rites. Similarly the *Dānas* offered by one who has amassed wealth by painful violent deeds also do not fructify.

107-108. Riches acquired by just (proper) means must be gifted to pious, deserving persons. If one performs *Yajñas* and makes charitable gifts without harbouring any specific desire in his mind, he attains the fruits of that *Dāna*. His *Dāna* results in happiness. One attains enjoyment through *Dāna* and goes to heaven through truthfulness.

109. By means of well-performed penance one pervades the worlds and stays. After fixing himself firm in the worlds that brilliant person enjoys everlasting (bliss).

110. *Yajña* is more beneficial than *Dāna* Penance is more beneficial than *Yajña*. Renunciation is more beneficial than penance, and *Jñāna* (perfect wisdom) is remembered as better than that.

111-114. It is reported that the twice-born castes who were born as Kṣatriyas attained Brāhmaṇa-hood by penance,[1] e.g. Viśvāmitra, King Māndhātā, Sankṛti, Kapi, Kapi's son Purukutsa, Satya, Anṛhavān, Pṛthu, Ārṣṭiṣeṇa, Ajamīḍha, Bhāgānya(?)[2], Anya, Kakṣīva, Śijaya, and many other heroic ones, Rathītara, Runda, Viṣṇuvṛddha and other kings. These are remembered as sages with Kṣātra qualities who attained

1. This is an evidence of social mobility in ancient India.
2. *Bhargavyoma* in Bd. P.

sagehood due to penance. All these saintly kings attained great Siddhis.

Henceforth I shall recount the race of Āyu, the noble soul.

CHAPTER THIRTY[1]

The Origin of Dhanvantari[2]; *Vārāṇasi Cursed*; *Raji's Exploits*

Sūta said :

1-2. O Brāhmaṇas, five noble-souled sons of great strength were born of Prabhā as the sons of Svarbhānu. Nahuṣa was the first among them. The next one is remembered as Putradharmā[3]. Dharmavṛddha's (Kṣatravṛddha's?) son was Sutahotra (Sunahotra?) of great fame.

3. Sutahotra's successors were three extremely righteous ones, viz. Kāśa, Śala and lord Gṛtsamada.

4-5. Śunaka was the son of Gṛtsamada and his son was Śaunaka. In his race Brāhmaṇas, Vaiśyas and Śūdras were born as a result of their diverse Karmans. O Brāhmaṇa, Śala's son was Ārṣṭiṣeṇa and Caranta was his son.

6. The Śaunakas and the Ārṣṭiṣeṇas were Brāhmaṇas endowed with qualities characteristic of Kṣatriyas. Kāśa's sons were Kāśaya, Rāṣṭa and Dīrghatapas.

7. Dharma was the son of Dīrghatapas. The scholarly Dhanvantari was his son. He was of great brilliance due to his

---

1. This Chapter corresponds to Ch. 2.3.67 in Bd. P. The references are to verses of the chapter in Bd. P.

2. As stated at the end of the last chapter, this chapter describes the race of Āyu who ruled at Kāśi. Dhanvantari, the famous physician-king, the founder of the systematic science of Āyurveda was born in Āyu's lineage. Hence the title specifically refers to him in preference to his forebears.

3. Kṣatravṛddha in Bd. P. A line is missing here. Bd. P. supplies the names of the remaining three sons, viz. Rambha, Raji and Anenas (Bd.P. *Op. Cit.* v. 2).

penance. He was born to that intelligent king, when he had become old.

Then the sages asked Sūta in the following words.

The Sages asked:

8. How was Dhanvantari, a god, born among human beings?

We wish to know this. Please explain this matter which is pleasing to us.

Sūta said :

9. O Brāhmaṇas, may the origin of Dhanvantari be heard. He was born formerly when the ocean was being churned for the sake of nectar.

10. He was born prior to everyone.[1] He was enveloped in a halo of glory all round. On seeing him with perfectly shaped limbs, (gods) stood surprised and said, "You are Aja (the unborn)". Hence he is remembered as Aja.

11. Aja spoke to Viṣṇu: "O lord, most excellent of gods, I am your son. Please assign me my share (in *Yajña*)."

12-14. Thus addressed, the lord looked at him and said: "The share in *Yajña* has already been allotted by Suras who are worthy of Yajñas. The *Homa* in accordance with the Vedic mantras has already been laid down by the great sages. It is never possible to arrange for another Homa similar to it. O god, you are a later born son (of mine). O lord, your name alone is a mantra[2] You will become famous in your next birth.

15. Even while in the womb, you will have the Siddhi (spiritual powers) of *Aṇimā* (minuteness) etc. O lord, with that very physical body, you will attain Deva-hood. Brāhmaṇas will perform *Yajñas* for you by means of *Caru*s, *mantras*, ghee and scents as offerings.

---

1. *kalaśāt pūrvam* 'before the emergence of the pot of nectar' a better reading in Bd.P. v. 11.

2. *tava mantro na vai prabho* 'no mantra is assignable to you' (Bd.P. v. 15).

16. You will propound the Āyurveda system of medicine. This is bound to happen surely. It has been already ordained by the lotus-born deity (Brahmā).

17. In the second Dvāpara Yuga, you will undoubtedly be born." Then after granting him the boon, Viṣṇu vanished from there.

18. At the advent of the second Dvāpara Yuga, the king of Kāśī Dīrghatapas belonging to the family of Sunahotra, performed a penance with desire for a son.

19. The king propitiated Deva Aja (i.e. Dhanvantari) for the sake of a son. The delighted Dhanvantari offered the king the choice of a boon. The King requested:

20. "O lord, if you are satisfied, be pleased to be born as my righteous son." After agreeing to it saying "So be it", he vanished there itself.

21. God Dhanvantari was born in his house. The great king, king of Kāśī became the destroyer of all ailments.

22. Sage Bharadvāja created the science of Āyurveda along with its therapeutics.[1] The king divided it into eight parts and taught them to his disciples.

23. Dhanvantari's son was famous by the name Ketumān. Ketumān's son was the powerful king Bhīmaratha. He was famous by the name Divodāsa[2] and he was the king of Vārāṇasī.

24. In the meanwhile, the city of Vārāṇasī had become desolate and a Rākṣasa named Kṣemaka occupied it.

---

1. Though our text does not mention it, Bd.P. 2.3.67. 23-24 informs us that Dhanvantari learnt *Āyurveda* (the science of medicine) along with its therapeutics from Bharadvāja. Dhanvantari divided it into eight sections and taught them to different disciples.

2. He is regarded as the contemporary of Daśaratha of the Ikṣvāku dynasty of Ayodhyā. It was during his reign that god Śiva occupied it by first making it desolate through crafty machination of one of his chief Gaṇas (aptly called demon) Kṣemaka. To get a flourishing capital city vacated for one's honey-moon in the manner described later (vv. 36-53) is not creditable to a great god ie. Śiva.

25. Formerly that city had been cursed by the noble-souled Nikuṁbha, 'The city (of Vārāṇasī) will be desolate for a thousand years'. He had repeated the curse many times.

26. As soon as the city was cursed, Divodāsa the king, founded a beautiful city on the banks of Gomatī, near the extremities of his realm.

The Sages said :

27. Why did Nikuṁbha curse Vārāṇasī in the days of yore ? Nikuṁbha was a righteous soul. Why did he curse the holy centre of Siddhas ?

Sūta said :

28. After gaining the city, King Divodāsa, the saintly king of great splendour lived in that flourishing city.

29. In the meantime, Maheśvara who had married (Umā) stayed near the Devas* and desired to do what was pleasing to the goddess.

30. His attendants and the saints assuming various forms continued to delight the great godddess by means of their diverse forms mentioned before.

31. Mahādeva used to be delighted with them, but Menā was not at all pleased. Everyday she began to abhor the lord and goddess.

32. (She said to Umā) "Your husband Maheśvara is carrying on ill-mannered activities in (my) presence. O sinless girl, he is by all means very indigent. Without wearying himself out, he sports and dallies".

33. On being thus taunted by her mother, she did not brook it as was but natural to women. After smiling (at the words of her mother) the goddess, the granter of boons, went near Hara (Śiva).

34. With a dejected face the goddess spoke to Mahādeva: "O my lord, I will not stay here. Take me to your abode".

35. Thus requested, the great god, Maheśvara of great splendour, surveyed all the worlds. O excellent Brāhmaṇas, he

*A. reads *Śvaśurāntike* 'near (at the residence of) his father-in-law'.

liked Vārāṇasī, the holy centre of the Siddhas on the earth, as his residence.

36. On knowing that that city was occupied by Divodāsa, he called Kṣemaka, the chief of Gaṇas who was by his side and spoke to him :

37. "O lord of the Gaṇas, Go to Vārāṇasī and make it desolate. You must employ soft and subtle means. That king is extremely valorous".

38-39. Nikuṁbha then went to the city of Vārāṇasī and revealed himself to a barber named Maṅkaṇa in his dream and said, "O sinless one, I shall bring welfare unto you. Assign a place for me. Make an image of my form and place it at the outskirt of the city."

40. O Brāhmaṇas, the barber did everything in accordance with what he was told in dream. After getting the permission of the king, he did everything duly at the gate of the city.

41-42. Everyday splendid worship was offered with scents, incense, garlands etc. Food was offered. The whole thing was wonderful. Thus the lord of Gaṇas was worshipped there everyday.

43. He used to grant thousands of boons to the people of the city, such as sons, gold, longevity and similar desires.

44. The senior queen-consort of the king was well-known by the name Suyaśā. That chaste lady was urged by the king and she came (to that deity) with a desire to have a son.

45. She performed (his) worship on a grand scale and requested him for sons. She frequented (the shrine) again and again for (the boon of getting) a son.

46. There was a reason behind Nikuṁbha's not granting sons. If the king were to be infuriated something could be done.

47-50. After the lapse of a long period, the king became furious. (He thought) 'This spirit at the main gate delightedly bestows hundreds of boons on the town-people but does not do anything (for me). In my city he is worshipped by my people. He has been worshipped by my queen there for that specific reason. Though he eats much, he does not grant me a son. He is ungrateful. Hence he does not deserve further

worship at all by me. So, I shall destroy the abode of the chief of Gaṇas. He was evil-minded (indeed).'

51. Having determined thus that wicked, sinful and evil-minded king destroyed that sacred place of the chief of Gaṇas.

52-53. On seeing the shrine shattered, the lord (of Gaṇas) approached the king (and said), "O king, since, without any offence on my part, my shrine has been destroyed by you, the city will be void and desolate all of a sudden". Then, due to that curse Vārāṇasī became desolate.

54. Nikuṁbha brought Mahādeva to that desolate cursed city. Mahādeva rebuilt that desolate city by means of (the powers of) his great soul.

55. The city was befitting the *Vibhūti* (prosperity and glory) of the goddess and the lord. The goddess sported there, even as lord Maheśvara too sported there.

56. But the goddess did not derive (permanent) pleasure due to her surprise at the (peculiar) house. For the sake of playing with the goddess, lord Īśāna spoke these words.

57-58. "I shall not abandon my abode. My abode is *Avimukta*[1] (unabandoned)". He laughed and spoke again to her: "My abode is *Avimvkta*. O Goddess, I shall not go away (from here). You may go. I shall sport here". Hence indeed it is *Avimukta* since it was said so by the lord himself.

59. This is the story of how the city of Vārāṇasī was cursed and then glorified as '*Avimukta*'. In it lives the lord revered by all Devas in the three Yugas. The pious-souled Maheśvara is accompained by the goddess also.

60. He vanished during the Kali age. That city of the great soul is reoccupied by the people when the lord vanishes.

61-63. Thus Vārāṇasī was cursed and was re-inhabited. King Divodāsa killed king Bhadraśreṇya's one hundred sons who were noted for their mastery in archery and occupied (his capital). The kingdom of Bhadraśreṇya was usurped by that powerful king. But the son of Bhadraśreṇya named Durdama was let off by Divodāsa, out of mercy, thinking that he was only a boy.

64-65. Heroic Pratardana was born of Divodāsa and Dṛṣa-

1. This explains why Vārāṇasi is called 'Avimukta'.

dvatī. The son (of Bhadraśreṇya) desirous of wreaking revenge recaptured it (kingdom). Pratardana had two sons, Vatsa and Garga, who became well-known.

66. Vatsa's son was Alarka and his son was Sannati. These two old verses are sung about the saintly king Alarka.

67-69. "Alarka ruled as excellent king of Kāśī for sixtysix thousand years. He was endowed with handsome features and he maintained his youth (all along). He attained his great longevity by the grace of Lopāmudrā." At the end of the period of curse, he killed the Rākṣasa Kṣemaka and rebuilt the beautiful city of Vārāṇasī.

70. Sannati's successor was the righteous king named Sunītha. Sunītha's successor was the pious Suketu.

71. It is heard that Suketu's son was Dharmaketu. Heroic Satyaketu was the successor of Dharmaketu.

72. Satyaketu's son was the king named Vibhu. Suvibhu was the son of Vibhu and Sukumāra was his son.

73. Sukumāra's son was Dhṛṣṭaketu. He was very virtuous. Dhṛṣṭaketu's successor was the king Veṇuhotra.

74. Veṇuhotra's son was Gārgya. He was very famous. Vātsya was the son of the intelligent Vatsa.

75. The sons of these two were very virtuous Brāhmaṇas and Kṣatriyas. They were strong, valorous and famous for their leonine exploits.

76. Thus these kings of Kāśī have been enumerated. Now listen and understand the (descendants) of Raji. Raji had a hundred sons. Two of them were very powerful and well-known on the earth as the group of kings "Rājeya". Those Kṣatriyas caused terror to Indra too.

77. When a terrible war broke out between Devas and Asuras[1], both of them spoke to Pitāmaha (god Brahmā).

78. "O lord of all the worlds, O great lord, who will be victorious in the battle between us. Please tell us. We all wish to hear."

Brahmā said :

79. There is no doubt in this that they on whose behalf

1. This is the twelfth (and the last) war between Devas and Asuras as far as Purāṇic records are concerned.

lord Raji takes up arms in the battle and fights, will conquer the three worlds.

80. Where there is Raji, there will be Lakṣmī (fortune, wealth). Where there is Lakṣmī, there is fortitude. *Dharma* abides where there is fortitude and where there is *Dharma*, there is victory."

81. On hearing about the victorious (-ness of) Raji, Devas and Dānavas approached the excellent king. They eulogised him as they wished for success.

82. With a delighted heart, all Devas and Dānavas requested the king: "Please take up your excellent bow for enabling us to be victorious."

Raji replied :

83. I will defeat you all in the battle, as well as Devas led by Śakra. I shall become the righteous-souled Indra and then shall I fight in the battle.

Dānavas said :

84. Our Indra is Prahlāda. We shall be victorious on his behalf. O king, please stand by this agreement urged by our Lord.

85. Even as he was about to say, "So be it" he was urged by Devas also. He was invited by Devas saying, "After conquering you will become Indra."

86-88. He killed all the Dānavas in front of Indra (who was armed with thunderbolt). He was endowed with self-control and the greatest prosperity. Lord Raji killed all Dānavas and redeemed the lost glory of Devas. Accompanied by Devas, Śatakratu (Indra) spoke to Raji, "I am Raji's son", and continued as follows, "O king, there is no doubt in this that you are Indra of all Devas. O destroyer of enemies, O, Indra, I shall become renowned as your son".

89. On hearing the words of Śakra, he was deceived by him by means of his Māyā. The delighted king said, "So be it".

90. When that king who was on par with Devas attained heaven, Raji's sons took away all the legacies from Indra.

91. Those hundred sons forcibly occupied most of the region of *Svarga* (heaven), the abode of the consort of Śacī.

92. When a long period elapsed, the powerful Indra whose kingdom was seized and whose share in sacrifices was confiscated spoke to Bṛhaspati:

93. "O Brāhmaṇa sage, please allot Puroḍāśa (sacrificial oblation) unto me at least of the size of the fruit of Badarī (the jujube tree) whereby I can sustain myself with my splendour developed further.

94. O Brāhmaṇa, be pleased with me. My kingdom has been seized by the sons of Raji. My food has been taken away. I have been rendered devoid of prowess, emaciated, confounded by the sons of Raji."

Bṛhaspati said:

95. O Śakra, if only I had been urged by you earlier in this matter, this would not have happened. O sinless one, there is nothing that should not be done for the sake of pleasing you.

96. O Devendra, O highly splendoured one, I shall endeavour for your welfare so that you will regain your share in the Yajña as well as your kingdom ere long.

97. O Śakra, I shall go (now). Let not your mind be dejected.

Thereafter, he performed such great rites as increased Indra's splendour.

98. The highly intelligent (Bṛhaspati) created delusion in the intellects of those (sons of Raji). They became devoid of Dharma and mad with passion.

99. They became haters of Brāhmaṇas. Hence they became deprived of their virility and exploit. So (Indra) regained the glory of Suras and his former excellent position (of Indra-hood).

100. He killed all the sons of Raji who were overwhelmed with lust and anger. He who listens to this story of Raji or the holy rehabilitation of Śatakratu will never meet with evil.

CHAPTER THIRTYONE[1]

The Story of Yayāti[2]

The Sages said :

1. How was his daughter given to the king by Maruta,[3] the great soul ? Of what prowess were the daughters of Maruta born with great souls[4] (?)

Sūta said :

2. Endowed with great splendour yet desirous of food, the king performed the sacrifice *Marut-Soma* to Prajeśvara every month, for sixty years.

3. Thereby the Marut-gods were pleased by the Marut-Soma sacrifice of that king, and granted him never-ending food with requisites for the fulfilment of all desires.

4. His food, cooked once, never got exhausted during that day and night even though given to crores (of people) right from sunrise.

5. Mitrajyoti was born of the daughter of the intelligent Maruta. From him were born (sons) of great strength, knowers of Dharma and seers of salvation.

---

1. This chapter corresponds to Bd.P. 2.3.68. For comparison or reference only the verse number is quoted.

2. This immortal story with a profound moral is repeated in many Purāṇas. The story is originally given in details in *Mbh Ādi.* Chs. 84 and 85. The immortal verse uttered by Yayāti :

na jātu kāmaḥ kāmānām upabhogena śāmyati |
haviṣā kṛṣṇa-vartmeva bhūya evā'bhivardhate ||

has been quoted in Purāṇas. It has been the main theme of an epoch-making Marathi novel *Yayāti* by V.S. Khandekar, which secured the much coveted Bhāratiya Jñānapīṭha Prize.

3. Verses 1-11 speak of Maruta and Mitrajyoti and his descendants. But they are unrelated to the main story of this chapter.

4. The reading *jātā marutakanyakāḥ* in the text translated above is contradictory and obscure. If emended : *jātā maruta-kanyayā* (as in Bd. P. 2.3.68.1) meaning '(of what heroic ability were the noble-souled persons) *born of the daughter of Maruta*', it gives cogentness. The references to the Bd.P. are to the above-mentioned chapter. Only verse number is quoted in these notes.

6. After renouncing domestic rites (the duties of householders), they resorted to detachment. Maintaining the duties of recluses (*sannyāsins*), they attained absorption in Brahman.

7. Anapāya was born of him. His son was Dharmapradattavān. Thereafter was born Kṣatradharma and from him Pratipakṣa (Pretīpaka in Bd. P.) of great penance.

8. Pratipakṣa's son named Sañjaya was well-known. Jaya was the son of Sañjaya and Vijaya was born of him.

9. Vijaya's son was Jaya (the second) and his son is remembered as Haryandvata and Haryandvata's son was the valorous king Sahadeva.

10. Sahadeva's son was virtuous-souled. He was well-known as Adīna. Adīna's son was Jayatsena and his son was Saṅkṛti.

11. Saṅkṛti's son was the pious-souled Kṛtadharmā of great fame. These were fully endowed with Kṣātra qualities*. Now understand (the descendants) of Nahuṣa.

12. Nahuṣa's successors were six. They had the brilliance comparable to that of Indra. These sons of great prowess were born of Virajā, the daughter of the Pitṛs.

13. They were Yati, Yayāti, Saṁyāti, Āyāti and the twins Viyati, Kṛti, (Bd. P.) who were the fifth-born (?) Yati was the eldest of them and Yayāti was the younger brother.

14. Yati attained Gā (Gau), the daughter of Kakutstha as wife. Saṁyāti became a sage. Attaining absolution, he became one with Brahman.

15. Among the (other) five, Yayāti became a king. He attained Devayānī, the daughter of Uśanas, as his wife.

16. He married the Asura lady Śarmiṣṭhā, the daughter of Vṛṣaparvan. Devayānī gave birth to Yadu and Turvasu.

17. Śarmiṣṭhā, the daughter of Vṛṣaparvan, gave birth to very powerful sons comparable to divine sons, viz. Druhyu, Anu and Pūru.

18. The delighted Rudra gave him a divine golden chariot that shone brilliantly and that could never get stuck up (impeded). He gave him two great inexhaustible quivers also.

---

*were the descendants of Kṣatradharma ?'

19. That chariot was fitted with horses as fast as the mind. It was in this chariot that he drove at the time of his marriage. With the same important chariot he conquered the earth.

20. Yayāti was invincible in battle to Devas, Dānavas and human beings. That chariot belonged to all the Paurava kings.

21. It remained with them upto the time of Kaurava Janamejaya born of a good land(?) The chariot got lost through the curse of the son of Garga, the intelligent sage, when Parīkṣit's son became a king.

22. The unwise king Janamejaya (the first) who was evil-minded and was known as *Loha-gandhin*[1] (having the odour of iron) killed the (young) son of Gārgya.

23. The saintly king with iron odour began to run here and there. He was abandoned by the citizens and the people of the land. Nowhere did he derive happiness.

24. He was extremely miserable. He did not get peace anywhere. Excessively dejected, he sought refuge in the sage who was the cause of his curse.[2]

25. The sage of liberal mind was famous by the name Indrota. This Indrota, the excellent Brāhmaṇa, a descendant of Śunaka, made the king perform an Aśvamedha for the sake of purification.

26. After reaching his abode, the iron-ore odour was quelled.[3] That divine chariot left him and reached Vasu, the king of Cedi.

---

1. Emend as in Bd.P. v. 22, as syntactically the text here is obscure. Thetext : *Lohagandham narādhipam* is emended as *Lohagandhī narādhipaḥ*, as in Bd.P.

2. The text is confusing. The king did not take resort to Gārgya who cursed him (see v. 22 above) but Indrota Śaunaka (see the next verse). The reading in Bd. P. 68.24: *sa prāyācchaunakam ṛṣim*—'he resorted to the sage Śaunaka' is relevant and deserves adoption.

3. Bd. P. v. 26 reads *avabhṛtha* for *avasatha* hereof and means, 'The king died when he reached the Avabhṛtha stage of the sacrifice'. The Bd. P. reading is preferable for if the curse of iron odour was removed and the king was rehabilitated, the divine chariot should have continued with him.

27. Then it was obtained by Śakra who was delighted. From him, Bṛhadratha got it. Killing Jarāsandha afterwards, Bhīma, the scion of Kaurava family, gave that excellent chariot to Vāsudeva with pleasure.

28. Attaining old age, the saintly king Yayāti, the son of Nahuṣa, spoke these words to his eldest and most excellent son Yadu:

29. "O dear one, old age, wrinkles and greying hairs have come over (surrounded) me due to the curse of Uśanas, Kāvya (i.e. Śukra). Nor am I fully satiated with youthful age.

30. O Yadu, accept all my sins along with my old age. Take my old age". Yadu replied to him:

31. "I have promised to give alms to Brāhmaṇas but have not given. That can be achieved only by exertion. (So) I will not take up your old age.

32. There are many defects and ailments in old age affecting (the abilility to) drink and eat. Hence, O king, I am not enthusiastic enough to accept your old age.

33-34. In the prime of youth, I do not wish to become a pitiable figure with white moustache and beard, shattered (in every limb) by old age, (skin) with many a wrinkle, with the body bent down, faced with a miserable state, the very form indicating weakness, and incompetent to perform any action. I would be overwhelmed (attacked) by great frightful effects. I do not desire that old age.

35. O King, O knower of virtues, you do have many sons even more beloved than I am. May they take it up. Please request some other son".

36. On getting this rebuff from Yadu, (Yayāti) the foremost among the most eloquent ones, became infuriated. Censuring his eldest son, he said thus:

37-39. "What other Āśrama do you have? What other holy rite do you have for which you disregard me and say thus? O evil-minded one, O new instructor!" After saying this the angry king cursed Yadu: "Since you, though born of my bosom, do not pass on your (youthful) age unto me, O fool, your progeny shall not get the kingdom." (Then he said to Turvasu) "O Turvasu, accept my sin along with my old age".

Turvasu said :

40. O father, I do not like old age that destroys the (worldly) pleasures of love. There are many defects in old age affecting (the ability to) drink and eat. Hence, O king, I am not enthusiatic enough to accept your old age.

Yayāti said :

41. You, though born of my bosom, do not exchange your (youthful) age with me; O Turvasu, your progeny will meet with utter ruin.

42-43. O deluded one, you will be a king among people of mixed religious rites and practices*, born of anti-caste marriages and other mixed castes, who are meat-eaters and others. There is no doubt that you will be a ruler of the brutish Mlecchas, barbarians and outcastes who are after outraging the modesty of their preceptors' wives and who (are destined to be) born as lower animals.

Sūta said :

44. After cursing his own son Turvasu thus, Yayāti spoke these words to his son Druhyu born of Śarmiṣṭhā:

45. "O Druhyu, you accept my old age that destroys your complexion and beauty. Give unto me in exchange your youth for a period of one thousand years.

46. When the thousand years are completed, I shall return your youth and take back again my sin along with the old age."

Druhyu said :

47. An old man does not enjoy (a ride on) elephants, chariots and horses, nor can he enjoy a woman. He has no one to be in contact. Hence I do not like the old age.

Yayāti said :

48. Since you, though born out of my own bosom, do not

**asaṁkīrṇā ca dharmeṇa* is obscure as '*asaṁkīrṇa*' is a compliment and not a part of a curse. Bd. P.v. 43 reads : '*saṁkīrṇeṣu ca dharmeṇa*'. 'of mixed or impure religious practices' is better. Hence accepted here.

give unto me your (youthful) age, O Druhya, the pleasures that you love and seek will not be realised by you anywhere.

49. You will be perpetually staying in a place where people move about in canoes and rafts. You will always be there as a non-king though born of a royal family.[1]

50. (He said to Anu) O Anu, you accept my sin along with my old age. Thus I can move about for a thousand years with your youth.

Anu said :

51. (Defective verse)[2] An old man gives (the gift of age) to a child. (If I give up my youth) I shall become impure with your old age. An old man does not perform Homas at the proper time. I do not like that (type of) old age.

Yayāti said :

52-53. Since you, though born out of my own bosom do not give unto me your (youthful) age, all those defects of old age mentioned by you will visit (afflict) you. Your children will die on attaining youthful age. You will have to devote to the scattering of fire like this (after cremating your children).

54-56. (He then spoke to Pūru) O Pūru, you accept my sin along with the old age. O dear one, old age, wrinkles and greyish hairs have overwhelmed me as a result of the curse of Kāvya Uśanas (Śukra). I am not satiated with the pleasures of youth. I shall enjoy the worldly pleasures with your youth. When a period of thousand years is completed I shall return you your youthful age. I shall also take back my own sin along with the old age.

Sūta said :

57. Thus requested, the son immediately replied to his father, "O father, I shall do as you wish.

---

1. *arājabhrājavaṁśas tvam* in the text is obscure. Bd.P. v. 51 reads : *arājā rājavaṁśas tvam* which is better and is accepted here.

2. *jīrṇaḥ śiśuvaram datte* is obscure though translated above. For this Bd. P. 52 read s:

jīrṇaḥ śisur ivāśaktaḥ—'An old man is weak like a child'.

58. O king, I shall accept your sin along with your old age. Take from me my youthful age. Enjoy the pleasures as you wish.

59. I shall become disguised by your old age, assuming your form and age. Giving up my youthful age, I shall carry out what would be suitable (to the age assumed)".

Yayāti said:

60. O Pūru, I am pleased with you. Welfare unto you. Delightedly I grant this unto you. All the subjects in your kingdom shall flourish and enjoy all pleasures (or your progeny will realise their desires, be affluent and rule over a kingdom).

Sūta said:

61. Permitted by Pūru and by the grace of Bhārgava, king Yayāti transferred his old age to Pūru.

62. By means of the youthful age, Yayāti, the son of Nahuṣa, became highly delighted and enjoyed all worldly pleasures.

63. In accordance with his desire and enthusiasm, in a way conducive to happiness and at the proper time, the leading king enjoyed the pleasures without prejudice to virtuousness (Dharma) and it was what he alone deserved.

64. He propitiated Devas by means of *Yajñas*; *Pitṛs* by means of *Śrāddhas*; the poor people by favourable presents; and the excellent Brāhmaṇas by whatever they desired.

65. He delighted guests with foods and drinks; Vaiśyas by affording due protection; and Śūdras by (prevention of their harassment) showing kindness. He checked robbers by restraining and killing them.

66. Duly delighting the subjects by means of virtuous actions, Yayāti ruled the realm like another Indra.

67. The king of leonine exploits and youthful age indulged in worldly pleasures. Without prejudice to Dharma, he enjoyed excellent pleasures.

68-69. In the parks of Vaibhrāja and Nandana, he sported with (the celestial damsel) Viśvācī. He scrutinised all sexual

pleasures to find out the hidden defect[1]. When the king saw that the desire to enjoy was increasing the more he enjoyed it, he approached Pūru and took back his own old age.

70. After enjoying the pleasures and desires, the king was both contented and dejected. The king then remembered the stipulated time-limit of one thousand years.

71. Counting (even the small units of time such as) *Kalās* and *Kāṣṭhās*, he considered that the time limit was complete and so he spoke to his son Pūru:

72. "O son, O suppressor of enemies, with your youthful age, all worldly pleasures have been enjoyed by me in accordance with my zeal befitting the time and in a way conducive to happiness.

73. O Pūru, I am delighted. Welfare upto you, you take back your own youthful age. Accept the realm too. You alone have been my beloved son who carried out what is pleasing to me".

74. King Yayāti, the son of Nahuṣa, took back his old age and Pūru regained his own youthful age.

75. When the king evinced his desire to crown his youngest son Pūru, people of all castes with Brāhmaṇas as the chief of them, spoke these words.[2]

76. "O lord, why do you set aside (the claim of) your eldest son, the excellent Yadu, the grandson of Śukra, the son of Devayānī, and bestow the kingdom on Pūru?

77. Yadu is your eldest son. Turvasu was born next to him. Śarmiṣṭhā's eldest son is Druhyu, then comes Anu and then only Pūru.

78. How can the younger son deserve the kingdom superseding (the claims of) the elder ones? Hence we urge you to abide by the (traditional) Dharma."

---

1. Bd. P.v. 69 reads : *atad-doṣa-nidarśanāt* 'because he failed to notice the defects (of passionate indulgence)'. This is a better reading as it states why he went with Viśvāci.

2. Verses 75-86 show that subjects did not allow injustice even if committed by the king. Some sort of public sanction seems to be necessary for appointing a new king.

Yayāti said:

79. O people of all castes with Brāhmaṇas as leaders! Let all of you listen to my speech why I do not intend to give the kingdom to the elder ones.

80. Only that son who carries out the words (orders) of his father and mother is considered praiseworthy. My behest was not obeyed by the eldest son Yadu.

81. That son who is antagonistic to his father is not honoured or approved by good men. He is the real son who does his duties to his parents.

82. I have been slighted by Yadu and also by Turvasu. Much discourtesy was shown by Druhyu and Anu too.

83. I have been specially honoured by Pūru who had carried out my behest. Though he is the youngest, he shall be my successor. It was he who accepted my old age. It was he who fulfilled all my desires. Everything has been done by Pūru who carried out his duties as a son.

84. This boon has been granted by Śukra, Kāvya, Uśanas, himself—'O highly intelligent one, that son who is favourable to you shall be the king to succeed you.'

85. Permitted by you all, may Pūru be crowned as the ruler of the kingdom. The son who is endowed with all qualities and who is always loyal to his parents deserves all welfare. He is to be the lord (the king), though he may be the youngest.

86. "Pūru who is your favourite son and who has done what is pleasing to you, deserves this kingdom. Due to the boon granted by Śukra, nothing more can be said (against this decision)."

87-89. Thus addressed by the delighted citizens and the people of the realm, the son of Nahuṣa crowned his own son Pūru in his own realm. He established Turvasu in the south-eastern territories. The king established the eldest excellent Yadu in the south-western territories. Druhyu and Anu were established in the west and the north. After conquering the earth consisting of the seven continents and the oceans, the son of Nahuṣa, king Yayāti, divided it into five regions and gave them to his five sons.

90. The whole of this earth consisting of the seven conti-

nents and (many) towns is being ruled over by them, the knowers of Dharma, righteously and in close adherence to their own respective lands.

91. Thus handing over the earth to his sons and transferring his royal glory to them, king Yayāti, the son of Nahuṣa, became delighted.

92. Leaving aside his bow and arrows, entrusting his kinsmen with all duties and responsibilities and his sons with the kingdom, the king became glad.

93. In this connection the following *Gāthās* (verses)[1] have been sung by the great king Yayāti, who after desiring pleasures, withdrew from them all like a tortoise that withdraws all its limbs (within itself).

94. "Never can lust subside by enjoyment of pleasures. Just as the fire gets ablaze all the more by ghee-oblations, so also desires get increased by indulgence.

95. All the grains and barley seeds, all the gold, all the cattle and all the women in the world are not sufficient for even one (person). He who realises this, does not become deluded.

96. When one maintains the purifying (auspicious) attitude to all living beings in thought, speech and action, one attains (realizes) Brahman.

97. When one is not afraid of others, when others are not afraid of him, when one neither desires nor hates (anything), one attains Brahman.

98. Happiness comes to one who eschews *Tṛṣṇā* (covetousness), which cannot be got rid of by evil-minded ones, which does not subside even when one grows old and which is a foul disease full of fatal faults.

99. When one grows old, the hairs grow old; the teeth decay along with old age; but the hope for longevity and acquisition of wealth never grow old.

100. The happiness arising from enjoyment of lust or by attaining the great pleasure in heaven does not deserve even a sixteenth part of the happiness resulting from the destruction of covetousness".

---

1. Verses 94-100 are the immortal verses quoted in various works and they constitute the moral of this episode.

101. After saying this, the saintly king went to the forest along with his wife. He performed a great penance on Bhṛgu-tuṅga[1] and performed hundreds of holy rites. Earning great fame, he attained Svarga.

102. His races are five thus. They are holy and revered by Devas and sages. The whole earth is pervaded by them as if with the rays of the sun.

103. An excellent Brāhmaṇa who reads this entire narrative of Yayāti or listens to it, shall become wealthy, long-lived and renowned. He will be blessed with children.

CHAPTER THIRTYTWO

The Birth of Kārtavīrya[2]

Sūta said :

1. I shall recount the race of the eldest (son of Yayāti) Yadu, of excellent splendour. Listen and understand, even as I recount it in detail and in the proper order.

2. Yadu had five sons, all comparable to the sons of Devas. Sahasrajit was the eldest. (The others were) Kroṣṭu, Nīla, Jita and Laghu.

3. Sahasrajit's son was the glorious king named Śatajit. Śatajit had three sons who were well known as very virtuous.

4. They were Haihaya, Haya and the king Veṇuhaya. It is heard that Haihaya's successor was Dharmatattva.

5. Dharmatattva's son was Kīrti and his son was Saṁjñeya. Saṁjñeya's successor was the king named Mahiṣmān.

6. Mahiṣmān's son was the valorous Bhadraśreṇya who was the king of Vārāṇasī and has already been mentioned.

---

1. A mountain in Nepal on the eastern bank of Gandak. Here was the hermitage of Bhṛgu. (De 34).

2. This chapter describes the Haihaya line of Yadu in which the greatest ruler of the Narmadā valley, Kārtavirya Arjuna, was born. This chapter is captioned after that illustrious king. This chapter corresponds to Bd. P. 2.3.69 & verse-numbers in the notes refer to that chapter.

7. Bhadraśreṇya's successor was the king named Durmada and Durmada's successor was an intelligent (king) well known by the name Kanaka.

8-9. Kanaka's successor (sons) were four and they were famous in the worlds—Kṛtavīrya, Kārtavīrya, Kṛtavarmā and Kṛta the fourth. Kṛtavīrya's son was Arjuna. Born with a thousand arms, he was a king who ruled over the seven continents.

10. He performed a very severe penance for ten thousand years. Kārtvīrya thus propitiated Datta, born of Atri.

11-13. Datta granted him four excellently glorious boons. At the outset, (Arjuna) chose the boon of (being endowed with) a thousand arms. The second was (the ability of) the prevention (of the world) given up in evil by good people.[1] (The third was the competence) to protect the earth righteously after conquering it in the same (righteous) way.

The fourth was victory in numerous battles after killing thousands of enemies but meeting death in a battle (fighting) with a superior warrior.

14. The entire earth consisting of seven continents and many towns and surrounded by seven oceans, was conquered by him in a manner befitting a Kṣatriya.[2]

15. When he started fighting in a battle, banners and chariots befitting it and a thousand arms used to appear by means of the Māyā of that intelligent one.

16. It is heard that without any difficulties ten thousand Yajñas had been performed by that intelligent king in all the seven continents.

17-18. All the Yajñas performed by that mighty-armed king were profoundly splendid. All of them were provided with golden altars with golden sacrificial posts. All of them were graced by the presence of blessed Devas seated in aerial

---

1. Bd. P. 2.3.69. reads : ability to prevent one from evil the moment he plans it.

2. Verses 14-37 describe the exploits, munificence, righteousness and glory of Kārtavīrya. The *Gāthās* sung by Nārada about him (vv. 20-22) record in a nutshell Arjuna's achievements. Generally these Gāthās are quotations from ancient traditional verses.

chariots; all of them were always rendered splendid and attractive by Gandharvas and Apsaras-s (celestial damsels).

19. After observing the conduct and the grandeur of that saintly king, Nārada and Gandharvas sang the following verse(s) of glory of that king.

20. "Certainly no man can emulate (none can attain) the goal or status of Kārtavīrya by means of Yajñas, Dānas, penances, exploits and learning.

21. In all the seven continents he is seen moving about with his sword drawn and the excellent bows and arrows kept ready as well as seated in his chariot. Though he is the king, he behaves as though he is the follower.*

22. While he was protecting the subjects righteously, none of his subjects lost his wealth, no one was grief-stricken and no one had any confusion, thanks to the prowess of that great king".

23. That king became the sole monarch and emperor of the seven continents for eightyfive thousand years.

24. (In his realm) he himself was the protector of cattle and the fields. As a Yogin, Arjuna became *Parjanya* (Lord of clouds and rains) and showered in plenty.

25. With his thousand arms rendered tough by frequent contact with the bowstring, he shone like the Sun with his thousands of autumnal rays.

26. Having conquered the royal assembly of (the serpent king) Karkoṭaka in Māhiṣmatī with a thousand elephants, he established his capital there.

27. (Defective) The lotus-eyed king used to check the forceful (speedy) waves of the sea during the rainy season (when the sea is stormy). In a happy mood, he sportingly spewed out water and made an (artificial) rainy season.

28. Shaken and tossed about by him during his (water-sports), Narmadā, wearing garlands with golden fillets approached the king in an apprehensive mannar, with eyebrows like waves producing the gentle (murmuring) sound.

---

*Bd.P. *ibid* v 21 reads *yogāt* (by means of his Yogic Power) for *'nyo'gāt* in our Text.

29. Formerly, following its (Narmadā's) course, that (king) had plunged into the great ocean and flooded the forest near the shore creating artificial rainy season.

30. When the great ocean was agitated by his thousand arms, the great Asuras in the nether-worlds used to become stunned and motionless.

31. Giant fishes and great serpents concealed under great billows were crushed and scattered in the flood of foam, the eddies and whirlpools which were unbearably furious.

32. Agitating it by means of his thousand arms, the king made the ocean resemble the milky sea churned by Devas and Asuras.

33. (Defective verse) On seeing the terrible, prominent king, the (aquatic beings) were afraid that the ocean was once again being churned by the Mandara mountain for the sake of *Amṛta* (nectar) and at once felt uprooted (*utpāṭita* in *A*).

34. Great serpents bent down their heads and stood motionless like the stumps of the plantain trees standing still in the evening hours, when the wind does not blow.

35. (Defective verse) Proudly he went to Laṅkā. With his bow and five hundred arrows he overpowered Rāvaṇa along with his army. He defeated and brought him to Māhiṣmatī and imprisoned him there.

36. (Sage) Pulastya himself went to Arjuna and propitiated him. The king released Paulastya (Rāvaṇa) at the request of Pulastya.

37. The sound produced by the twang of the bowstrings by his thousand arms was like the thunder at the time of the close of the Yugas, when the trees* of the clouds of dissolution seem to burst.

38. Sad indeed that his thousand powerful arms were cut off by Bhārgava (Paraśurāma) in battle, as though they were golden palm trees.

39. Once upon a time, the thirsty Sun-god begged alms of him. The Lord of the people bestowed on the Sun-god the seven continents as alms.

**Vṛkṣa* in the text needs emendation as *Vṛnda* as in Bd. P.v. 38. It means 'a collection, a mass' (of clouds).

40. With a desire to consume (everything), the Sun-god blazed at the tips of his arrows and burnt cities, cowherd colonies, villages and all the towns.

41. Thanks to the prowess of that chief of men (Arjuna), the (Sun-god) of great fame burnt the mountains and forests of Kārtavīrya.

42. The Sun-god in the company of Haihaya (Kārtavīrya) burnt everything including continents along with forests. He burnt the empty hermitage of Varuṇa's son completely.

43. Varuṇa had obtained this glorious and excellent son formerly. He was famous by the name of sage Vasiṣṭha otherwise known as Āpava.

44-45. Out of anger the powerful Āpava cursed Arjuna then,[1] "O Haihaya, since you have not spared this forest of mine another man will set aside even this difficult task achieved by you. He will be Kuntī's son named Arjuna.[2] He will not be a king.

46-47. O Arjuna, the extremely powerful Rāma, the foremost among those who strike with weapons, will cut off and shatter your thousand arms. The powerful Brāhmaṇa and Sage of great strength will kill you." Then, as a result of the curse of that intelligent (sage), Rāma became the cause of his death.

48. Such a boon had been chosen by the king himself formerly (from Datta). He had a hundred sons, five of whom were great warriors.

49-50. They were Śūrasena, Vṛṣṭyādya, Vṛṣa and Jayadhvaja. All of them were well-trained in the use of miraculous weapons. They were heroic, strong, pious-souled and re-

---

1. The curse motif and that of boon were very popular with Purāṇa-writers to explain an unlikely or miraculous event. Here both are used to explain Kārtavīrya's death at the hands of Paraśurāma. Kārtavīrya is stated to have sought such a boon from Datta (*supra* v. 13) and received a curse from Āpava Vasiṣṭha (vv. 46-47) for destroying (i.e. helping the Sun-god to destroy) his hermitage.

2. Āpava's curse was of a twofold nature. Kārtavīrya Arjuna will meet physical death at the hands of Paraśurāma and he will be superseded in reputation by another Arjuna (Kuntī's son) for a similar act (viz. burning of Khāṇḍava forest).

nowned. They ruled over Avantī. King Jayadhvaja's son was the valorous Tālajaṅgha.

51-52. He had a hundred sons who constituted the clan of Tālajaṅghas. Five families among those noble-souled Haihayas are very famous, viz. the numerous Vīrahotras (Vītihotra in Bd.P.), Bhojas and Āvartis, Tuṇḍikeras and the valorous Tālajaṅghas.

53. Vīrahotra's son was king Ananta. Durjaya was his son. His son was Amitradarśana.

54. That king had the boon of never losing his wealth. The great king protected the subjects by means of his prowess.

55-56. An intelligent person who recounts the story of the birth of Kārtavīrya, shall regain lost wealth. He will not lose wealth (further). He will be rich. His Dharma will flourish and he will be honoured in heaven like Tvaṣṭṛ or like a man of charitable inclination.

CHAPTER THIRTYTHREE

The Dynasty of Jyāmagha and Vṛṣṇi

The Sages said :

1. Why was the world (hermitage) of the noble-souled Āpava burnt by Kārtavīrya forcibly?[1] Please explain it to us who ask.

2. We have heard that the saintly king was a protector of his subjects. Being a guardian, therefore, why did he destroy that hermitage?

Sūta said :

3. Āditya (the Sun-god) desirous of satisfaction (of hunger) approached Kārtavīrya in the guise of a Brāhmaṇa (and said), "Please give me food. Undoubtedly I am Āditya."

---

1. Verses 1-13 explain in details again why the hermitage of Āpava Vasiṣṭha was burnt by Kārtavīrya. As these verses deal with the curse of Āpava, they should have formed a part of the last chapter after v. 39. Vv. 1-13 hereof are unrelated to the present chapter (Race of Kroṣṭu).

The King said :

4. O Lord Sun, please tell me with what you will be satisfied. What type of food I should give to you; I shall serve it.

The Sun said :

5. O most excellent one among donors, give unto me all the immobile beings as my food. I shall be satisfied only thereby O king, and not by anything else.

The King said :

6. O the most excellent one among those who blaze, no fiery splendour of human beings can burn down all immobile beings. I bow unto you.

Āditya replied :

7. I am delighted. I shall give you an inexhaustible quiver of arrows that are conducive to all happiness* and that never fail. When discharged they will burn because they are charged with my brilliance.

8. When it is commanded, it will dry up the clouds and the oceans. When it is dry, I will reduce it to ashes and shall be delighted thereby, O king !

9-11. Then Āditya gave Arjuna those arrows. Securing them, (Arjuna) burnt all the great immobile beings, hermitages, villages, cowherd colonies, cities, penance groves, beautiful forests and parks etc. and then circumambulated the Sun-god. The earth burnt down by the splendour of the Sun, became tree-less and grass-less.

12-13. In the meantime the great sage (Āpava) who had been residing under water for ten thousand years, completed his holy observance. Then the ascetic of great splendour emerged out (from water). The great sage then saw his hermitage burnt down by Arjuna. Out of anger he cursed the saintly king as already recounted by me to you.

Sūta said :

14. Listen to the race of the saintly king Kroṣṭu consi-

**sarvato-mukhān* 'capable of facing i.e. going in all direction' in Bd.P. 2.3.70.7 is a better reading than *sarvatosukhān* hereof.

sting of excellent men. In his family was born Vṛṣṇi, the founder of the dynasty of Vṛṣṇis.

15. Kroṣṭu had only one son Vṛjinīvān of great fame. (The people) liked the son of Vṛjinīvān, Svāhi, the foremost among those possessing Svāhā (i.e. performers of Yajñas wherein 'Svāhā' is repeated).

16. King Raśādu, the foremost among donors was the son of Svāhi. (The people) liked Ghṛtamprasūta, the eldest and the best son of Raśādu.

17. He performed many types of great Yajñas with adequate Dakṣiṇās. His son Citraratha was also endowed with (the inclination) to perform diverse holy rites.

18. Thus the heroic Citraratha performed many Yajñas giving vast wealth as Dakṣiṇā. His successor was Śaśabindu, who followed (the footsteps) of saintly kings.

19. He was an emperor of great prowess. He was very powerful and he had many children. In this connection, this genealogical verse has been cited by those who know ancient traditions.

20. "Śaśabindu had ten thousand sons. They were all very intelligent. They possessed vast wealth and great splendour. They were worthy (of their father).

21-22. Six of them were very important; they were known as '*Pṛthuṣaṭkas*' (six men who had the word *Pṛthu* i.e. great added on to their name). They were—Pṛthuśravas, Pṛthuyaśas, Pṛthuñjaya, Pṛthukīrti and Pṛthundātā. All the sons of Śaśabindu were kings. All the Purāṇas praise Antara who was the son of Pṛthuśravas. He was the same Antara as was the son of Yajña formerly."

23. After getting the earth (i.e. having become king) the same pious-souled excellent, righteous (king) performed a hundred horse-sacrifices.

24. His son was Marutta[1] who followed (the footsteps of) saintly kings. Heroic Kambalabarhis is remembered as Marutta's son.

---

1. Our text has dropped two generations between Antara (Akṣara in Bd.P.) and Marutta—*vide* Bd.P. 2.3.70.23-25.

25-26. Scholarly Rukmakavaca was the son of Kaṁbalabarhis. This Rukmakavaca had formerly attained excellent glory by killing (many) warriors wearing coats of mail and armed with bows, with his sharp arrows. He attained great fame as a performer of horse-sacrifices and gave profuse wealth (as Dakṣiṇā) to Brāhmaṇas.

27. From king Rukmakavaca were born five very strong sons of great prowess who killed heroic enemies without turning away (from the battlefield).

28. They were Rukmeṣu, Pṛthurukma, Jyāmagha, Parigha and Hari. The father established Hari and Parigha in (the land called) Videha.

29. Brahmeṣu[1] (? Rukmeṣu) became king and Pṛthurukma became his dependent. Banished from the kingdom by them, Jyāmagha[2] lived in a hermitage.

30. He was quiescent (by temperament). He lived in the terrible forest but he was actuated by a Brāhmaṇa. Taking up his bow he went to the middle of the land, seated in his chariot and waving his flag.

31. He (wandered) along in the marshy place on the banks of Narmadā. After passing through Mekala mountains and the mountain Ṛkṣavān, he entered Śuktimanyā (?)

32. Jyāmagha's wife was Śaibyā who was very strong. Though the king had no son, he did not take a second wife.

33. He became victorious in a battle and won a girl therein. The king then came to his wife and said, "Here is your daughter-in-law".

34. On being addressed thus she said, "This daughter-in law of yours is loveable. She will be the wife of your son who will be born (who is yet to be born)."

35. By performing a severe penance, the beautiful chaste lady Śaibyā gave birth to his son Vidarbha in her old age.

36. Vidarbha begot of that daughter-in-law two scholarly

---

1. *Brahmeṣu* is a mistake for *Rukmeṣu*. In *AIHT* p. 146 Parāvṛt is named as the successor of Rukmakavaca.

2. Jyāmagha's dynasty was famous but he is personally noted as a henpecked husband in Purāṇas, *vide* vv. 32-34, also Bd.P. 2.3.70. 33-36.

princes, Krathu and Kauśika who were heroic and experts in battles.

37. The very virtuous (king Vidarbha) later begot a third son Lomapāda. Vastu was the son of Lomapāda and his son was Āhṛti.

38. Cidi was the son of Kauśika. The Caidya kings are remembered as his descendents. Kunti was the son of Krathu who was Vidarbha's son.

39. Dhṛṣṭa was born as the son of Kunti. He was very proud and valorous. Dhṛṣṭa's son was the pious-souled Nirvṛti, the slayer of brave enemies.

40. His son was Daśārha who was very strong and valiant. Daśārha's son was Vyoman and his son is called Jīmūta.

41. Jīmūta's son was Vikṛti and his son was Bhīmaratha. Bhīmaratha's son was Rathavara.

42. He was a donor interested in Dharma (holy rite) perpetually. He was well-behaved and invariably truthful. His son was Navaratha. Daśaratha came after him.

43. His son was Ekādaśaratha. Śakuni was his son. From him was born the archer Karambhaka. Devarāta came thereafter.

44. King Devakṣatra of great fame was the son of Devarāta. Devana, the delighter of Kṣatriyas, was born as the son of Devakṣatra.

45-46. Madhu was born of Devana. His son was Medhārtha-saṁbhava. Madhu had other sons as well, viz. Manu of great brilliance, Manuvaśa, Nandana of great splendour and Mahāpuruvaśa. Purudvān, the most excellent man, was the son of Puruvaśa.

47. Purūdvaha was born of Bhadravatī as the son of Purūdvān. Aikṣākī was the wife (of Purudvān). Sattva was born of her. From Sattva was born Sāttvata who was endowed with Sattvaguṇa. He increased the fame (of the race).

48. After perfectly understanding this creation (race) of the noble-souled Jyāmagha, one obtains childern and attains *Sāyujya* (identity) with the intelligent king Soma.

CHAPTER THIRTYFOUR

The Race of Vṛṣṇi[1]

Sūta said :

1-2. Sāttvata's wife Kauśalyā gave birth to handsome sons, viz. Bhajin, Bhajamāna, Divya, Devāvṛdha the king, Andhaka, Mahābhoja, Vṛṣṇi and Yadunandana. They established four races. Listen to them in detail.

3. Bhajamāna begot of Śṛñjayī two sons, Bāhya and (the next) Bāhyaka. Bāhyaka married Śṛñjaya's two daughters

4. His wives, the two sisters, gave birth to many sons[2], viz. Nimi,, Paṇava, Vṛṣṇi and Parapurañjaya.

5-6. (Defective verse) Bhajamāna begot of Śṛñjayī other sons also, viz. Ayutāyutajit, Sāhasrajit, Śatajit and Vāmaka. Out of those who were born of Bhajamāna, king Devāvṛdha performed a severe penance.

7. He had this thought in his mind, 'May a son endowed with all good qualities be born to me'. After concentrating on this in Yoga, he touched the waters of the river Parṇāśā.[3]

8. On being touched by him, the river, the most excellent of all rivers, desired for the welfare of the king.

9-10. Anxiously engrossed in thought, the river decided thus : "I do not find any woman in whom a son like this, endowed with all good qualities, will be born to the king Devāvṛdha. Hence I shall myself become his wife (*Sahavratā*—a woman who performs holy rites in one's company)." She assumed hands[4] (i.e human form) in accordance with her intention.

11. Taking the form of a girl, Sāvitrī (the river)repeated the

---

1. This chapter corresponds to Bd.P. 2.3.71. Hence only verse-numbers of this chapter are mentioned for comparison.

2. The list of sons in Bd.P. (vv. 3-6) differs. It gives the names of the sons as follows : Nimloci, Kiṃkaṇa, Dhṛṣṭi, Parapurañjaya.

3. The river Banas in Rajasthan—a tributary to Chambal. De 146.

The Purāṇa writers had a romantic concept of showing rivers falling in love with Kings and Sages and sometimes marrying them in human form such as Gāṅgā with Śantanu, Narmadā with Kārtavirya Arjuna. Kosi, Bahudā and other rivers had similar affairs.

4. *Hasta* translated here is obscure. Bd. P. 2.3.71.11 reads *hṛtstha* for *hasta* hereof. It means (in Bd. P.) II '(her emotional attachment) welled up in her heart'.

great words (?) She thought of the king. The king desired her (as his wife).

12-13. The liberal-minded (king) rendered her pregnant. She conceived a brilliant (son). In the ninth month, the most excellent of rivers gave birth to a son endowed with all good qualities as desired by Devāvṛdha. About this race, the Brāhmaṇas who know the Purāṇas, sing this Gāthā (glorificatory verse).

14-15. People of noble souls glorifying the good qualities of Devāvṛdha say—"He is seen at close quarters exactly as he is heard from a distance. Babhru is the most excellent among men. Devāvṛdha was equal to Devas. Seventy thousand and sixtyfive men of the line of Babhru and Devāvṛdha attained immortality (liberation from *Saṁsāra*).

16. That highly fortunate, most valiant hero among Sāttvatas, was a performer of sacrifices, the chief of the most prominent ones among the donors of liberal gifts, a brave warrior, a patron of Brāhmaṇas, truthful in speech, scholarly and (most) famous (in the world)."

17. (Defective verse) Sumahābhojayas and Imārtikābalas were born in his race[1] (?) Gāndhārī and Mādrī were the two wives of Vṛṣṇi.

18-19. Gāndhārī gave birth to Sumitra and Mitranandana. Mādrī gave birth to the sons Yudhājit, Devamīḍhusa and Anamitra. The two (last mentioned) were excellent men. Nighna was Anamitra's son. Nighna had two sons.

20. They were the blessed Prasena and Śakrajit. Sūrya[2] (the Sun-god) was an intimate bosom friend of Śakrajit.[3]

---

1. *tasyānvaye sumahābhojayemārtikābalāḥ* in the text is obscure. Bd. P. 2.3.71.18 reads :

tasyānvayaḥ sumahān bhojā ye bhuvi viśrutāḥ //

'His race is very great. The kings of his line are well known on the earth as Bhojas'.

2. *Pūrva* in the text is wrong. *Sūrya* (as in A and Bd. P.) is accepted here as the following verses also confirm it.

3. Compare the Story of the Syamantaka gem in Bh.P. X. Chs. 56 and 57; Bd. P. 2.3.71.22-99.

21. Once, at the close of a night, the king who was driving in his chariot, got down near the bank (of a river) in order to perform the worship of the Sun with water libation.

22. While he was worshipping, Vivasvān, the Sun-god, the lord with his brilliant halo, stood before him but his form was not clearly visible.

23-24. Then the king addressed the Sun-god who was standing in front of him: "O lord of the luminaries, I see you in front of me also in the same form with brilliant halo as I see you in the sky. What special significance is there in your coming to me as a friend?"

25. On hearing this, the lord took off the excellent jewel Syamantaka from his neck and tied it round the king's neck.

26. The king then saw the Sun-god in his actual (physical) form. He gazed at the form for the duration of a Muhūrta.

27. When the Sun-god was about to start (on his journey) again, king Śakrajit requested him, "It behoves you to present me this excellent jewel of fiery splendour wherewith you traverse the worlds".

28. The Sun-god thereupon gave him the Syamantaka jewel. Wearing it the king re-entered the city.

29. The people flocked round him, saying, "Oh! here comes the Sun-god". The people in the king's assembly, the city and the harem all were surprised.

30. Out of affection, the king Śakrajit handed over the excellent divine jewel Syamantaka to his brother Prasenajit.

31. The clouds shower at the proper season in the land where the jewel Syamantaka is present. There is no fear of any epidemic or sickness.

32. Govinda (Kṛṣṇa) desired to have the jewel Syamantaka from Prasena. But he did not get it. Though he was powerful, he did not take it by force.

33. Once, bedecked with that jewel Prasena went a-hunting. For the sake of Syamantaka he met a terrible death from a lion.

34. Jāmbavān, the king of bears, killed that lion. Taking that jewel with him he entered his den.

35. The elders of Vṛṣṇis and Andhakas thought it to be the

work of Kṛṣṇa. Considering him covetous of the jewel, they all suspected him alone (as the perpetrator of the crime).

36. Unable to endure the false accusation, the lord, the powerful slayer of foes, roamed about in the forest (to trace Prasena).

37-40. He went over all the places where Prasena was hunting. With the help of trustworthy men, he followed the footsteps of Prasena and searched the great mountain Ṛkṣavān and the excellent mountain Vindhya. He became completely exhausted due to the search. The noble-minded (lord) then saw Prasena (lying) killed along with his horse. He did not get the jewel there. The lion was seen lying dead not far from the dead body of Prasena. Apparently the lion had been killed by a bear as indicated by the footprints. The scion of the family of Yadu (i.e. Kṛṣṇa) traced by means of footprints of the bear and found out the cave of the bear.

41. He heard the voice of a young woman deep inside the great cave. O Brāhmaṇas, the nurse had been playing with the infant son of Jāmbavān along with the jewel. The words "*Mā rodiḥ*" (Do not cry) were uttered by her.

The Nurse said:

42. The lion killed Prasena. The lion was killed by Jāṁbavān. O tender child, do not cry. This Syamantaka is for you.

43. (The words were clearly audible.) As soon as everything was made clear by those words, he entered the cave. He had already seen Prasena (lying dead) torn to pieces very near that cave.

44. Quickly entering the cave of the bear, the liberal-minded lord saw Jāṁbavān, the king of bears.

45. Vāsudeva fought with Jāṁbavān in his cave. For twentyone days Govinda had a hand to hand fight (with him).

46. When Kṛṣṇa entered the cave, the attendants of Vāsudeva returned to Dvārāvatī and reported (to others) that Kṛṣṇa (also) was killed.

47. After defeating the powerful Jāmbavān, Vāsudeva won the hand of his daughter Jāṁbavatī with the permission of the king of bears.

48. Overwhelmed by the splendour of the lord, Jāṁbavān gave the jewel as well as his daughter Jāṁbavatī to Viṣvaksena (Kṛṣṇa).

49. It was to clear himself that the lord took the Syamantaka jewel. Consoling the king of bears, he came out of the cave.

50. After redeeming the jewel thus and clearing himself of the scandal by his own efforts, the lord handed over the jewel to Satrājit in the presence of the Sāttvatas.

51. Madhusūdana (Kṛṣṇa) thereafter duly married the girl Jāṁbavatī. Janārdana got himself acquitted of the false accusation.

52. He who knows this story of the false accusation of Kṛṣṇa and the subsequent acquittal will never be accused fraudulently.

53. A hundred sons were born to Śatrajit from his ten wives who were sisters. Among them three were famous. Bhaṅgakāra was the eldest. The others were the heroic Vratapati, and Apasvānta the beloved (Supriya).

54. Bhaṅgakāra's wife named Dvārāvatī had good children. She gave birth to three daughters endowed with beauty and good qualities.

55. Satyabhāmā was the most excellent of all ladies. She was steadfast in performing holy rites and severe penances. The father gave her to Kṛṣṇa.

56-57. The jewel that Kṛṣṇa (redeemed and) gave to Satrājit was worn by Babhru (?) Akrūra who was desirous of wealth, coveted the jewel Syamantaka, requested for Satyabhāmā of excellent (unblamed) beauty through Śatadhanvā of the Bhoja family.

58. Therefore the mighty Śatadhanvā killed Bhadrakāra (? Bhaṅgakāra) at night. He stole the jewel and handed it over to Akrūra.

59. Akrūra, a prominent person, took that gem and entered into an agreement (with Śatadhanvā). "This should not be made known to anyone else by you.

60. Should you be attacked by Kṛṣṇa, we shall help you. Undoubtedly the whole of Dvārakā will be under my control."

61. When her father was killed, the grief-stricken Satyabhāmā of great fame got into a chariot and went to Varaṇāvata.

62. Telling her husband about the (criminal) act of Śatadhanvan of Bhoja family, the distressed (lady) Satyabhāmā stood near him and shed tears.

63. After offering (obsequies such as) the water libations to the Pāṇḍavas who were (supposed to have been) burnt (in Varaṇāvata), Hari (Kṛṣṇa) employed Sātyaki to be on a par with his brothers (in performance of remaining rites).

64. Hastening back to Dvārakā, the glorious slayer of Madhu spoke these words to his elder brother Balarāma (*Halin*—one armed with ploughshare).

65. "Prasena was killed by the lion, Satrājit was killed by Śatadhanvan (all for the sake of the jewel, Syamantaka). I seek that Syamantaka (as the legal owner). O Lord, strike him.

66. Hence get into the chariot quickly. After killing the mighty Bhoja, O mighty-armed one, the Syamantaka will be ours."

67. Then a tumultuous fight ensued between Bhoja and Kṛṣṇa. Śatadhanvā (i.e. Bhoja) could not see Akrūra anywhere round.

68. Both Bhoja and Janārdana were on horseback (while fighting). Akrūra did not wholeheartedly help him although he was competent and he could have done so.*

69-72. Hence (Bhoja) became frightened and thought of running away. Bhoja's mare was a divine one named Vijñātahṛdayā (that which understood the heart or mental feeling of the rider). She had a speed of a hundred Yojanas. It was seated on this mare that he fought with Kṛṣṇa. On his speedy mare Bhoja went a hundred Yojanas away. On seeing the quick motion of the chariot, Kṛṣṇa harassed Śatadhanvan. Then the mare became extremely exhausted. O Brāhmaṇas, the vital airs

*The line : *śakto'pi sādhyād vārdhakyān nākrūro' bhyupapadyata* is obscure. Bd. P.V. 70 reads :

śakto'pi śāṭhyād hārdikyo nā'krūro'bhyupapadyata |

'Though he was competent to do so, Akrūra, the Hārdikya, did not do so through perfidy'.

of the mare rose up into the sky (i.e. it died). Then Kṛṣṇa spoke to Rāma.

73. "O mighty-armed one, stay here. The defects of the horses (mares) have been observed by me. I shall go on foot and bring away the excellent jewel Syamantaka".

74. Going on foot alone, Acyuta, the knower of great miraculous weapons, killed Śatadhanvan, the king of Mithilā.

75. He could not see the Syamantaka (on his person) even after killing the mighty Bhoja. When Kṛṣṇa returned, the bearer of ploughshare (i.e. Rāma) asked him, "Give me the jewel".

76. "I don't have it", said Kṛṣṇa. Then the infuriated Rāma repeatedly cried "Fie upon you", and spoke to Janārdana.

77. "I tolerate it (and excuse you) as you are my brother. Welfare unto you. I am going. I have nothing to do with Dvārakā nor with you nor with the Vṛṣṇis."

78. Then Rāma, the suppressor of enemies, entered Mithilā. With all desirable presents, the king of Mithilā himself welcomed and honored him.

79. In the meantime Babhru (Akrūra), the foremost among the intelligent ones, performed unimpededly different kinds of Yajñas.

80. The son of Gādhi, the king of great fame, adopted a coat of mail in the form of *Dīkṣā* (initiation for sacrifices) for self-protection, in order to preserve the Syamantaka jewel.

81. In the performance of these Yajñas (which continued) for a period of sixty years, he utilised (donated) vast wealth, excellent jewels and different kinds of materials.

82. These Yajñas of that noble-souled (King) became famous by the name "Akrūra Yajña". Much food and wealth was given as Dakṣiṇā. All of them fulfilled the cherished desires of all.

83. Thereafter lordly king Duryodhana went to Mithilā and underwent divine training in mace fighting under Balabhadra.

84. O Brāhmaṇas, after a great deal of persuasion and pleading (Balabhadra) was brought back to Dvārakā by the leading persons among Vṛṣṇis and Andhakas along with the noble-souled Kṛṣṇa.

85. After killing Śatrughna along with Bandhumān in battle Akrūra, the powerful leader of men, went away along with Andhakas.

86-87. These two excellent men, Śatrughna and Bandhumān, were the sons of Bhaṅgakāra, the leader of Andhakas. They were born of Narā, the daughter of Śvaphalka. They were very mighty and famous. Kṛṣṇa was not pleased at the killing of Bhaṅgakāra.

88. As he was apprehensive of a split amongst his kinsmen, he (Kṛṣṇa) ignored him (Akrūra). After the departure of Akrūra, Indra did not shower rain there.

89. The whole land was oppressed by drought and was about to perish. Then Kukuras and Andhakas pacified and consoled Akrūra.

90. When (Akrūra), the lord (the most prominent) of charitably disposed persons, returned to Dvārāvatī, Indra showered everywhere, even within the ocean.

91. In order to please Vāsudeva Akrūra, the glorious leader of Yadus, gave him his virgin sister of approved good conduct.

92. After knowing by means of his Yogic power that the Syamantaka jewel was with Babhru, Kṛṣṇa Janārdana said to Akrūra in the open assembly.

93. "O honourable Lord, please hand over to me the jewel which has come into your possession. Please do nothing ignoble unto me.

94. The anger raging in my heart for the last sixty years has become great and deep-rooted. A long time has elapsed by now."

95. Then at the instance of Kṛṣṇa, Babhru, the highly intelligent one, handed over the jewel without any demur in the assembly of all the Sāttvatas.

96. The suppressor of enemies (Kṛṣṇa) obtained the jewel from Babhru in a straightforward manner. With a delighted mind, he gave it back to Babhru again.

97. The son of Gāndinī (i.e. Akrūra) obtained Syamantaka, the excellent jewel handed over by Kṛṣṇa. Wearing it (round his neck) he shone like the Sun.

98. He who knows this story of the false accusation and the subsequent excellent clearance of the Lord will by no means become a victim of false accusation.

99-100. From the youngest son Animitra (? Anamitra) of Vṛṣṇi Śini was born. His son was Satyaka who was truthful in speech and endowed with truthful temperament. The son of Satyaka (Sātyaki) was Yuyudhāna and his son was Bhūti.

101. Yugandhara was Bhūti's son. Thus the descendants of Bhūti, the Bhautyas have been recounted. Pṛśni had two sons, Śvaphalka and Citraka.

102. Wherever the pious-souled great king Śvaphalka stayed, no sickness or fear of drought oppressed the people.

103. O excellent Brāhmaṇas, once Indra did not shower rain in the realm of the lord, king of Kāśī, for three years.

104. He made the highly honoured Śvaphalka stay there. Due to the presence of Śvaphalka, Indra showered rain there.

105. Śvaphalka married the daughter of the king of Kāśī. She was a praise-worthy (uncensured) lady named Gāndinī. Everyday she gifted a cow to a Brāhmaṇa.[1]

106-108. It is said that she remained in the womb of her mother for many hundreds of years. She did not come out. The father said to her even as she was in the womb, "Be born quickly. Welfare unto you. Wherefore do you stay there?" Remaining in the womb itself the girl said, "I shall be born if a cow is given everyday. O Father, do you desire it?" The father said, "So be it" and fulfilled her desire.

109. Akrūra is remembered as her son. He was munificent, a performer of Yajñas, learned, heroic and fond of guests. Śvaphalka himself was very liberal in giving Dakṣiṇā.

110-111. Śvaphalka had other sons also—Upamaṅgu, Maṅgu, Mṛdura, Arimejaya, Girirakṣa, Yakṣa, Śatrughna, Arimardana, Dharmabhṛt, Śṛṣṭacaya, Vargamoca, Āvāha and Prativāha. He had a beautiful daughter Vasudevā also.

112. Akrūra begot of Ugrasenī two sons who delighted the family. They were Deva and Anupadeva. They were equal to Devas.

---

1. A popular etymology of the name 'Gāndinī'.

113-114. Citraka's sons were : Pṛthu, Vipṛthu, Aśvagrīva, Aśvabāhu, Supārśvaka, Gaveṣaṇa, Ariṣṭanemi, Aśva, Suvarmā, Varmabhṛt, Carmabhṛt, Abhūmi and Bahubhūmi. Śraviṣṭhā and Śravaṇā were the two (daughters).

115. The daughter of (the king of) Kāśī bore four sons to Satyaka, viz. Kakuda, Bhajamāna, Śamīka and Balabharhis.

116. Vṛṣṭi was Kakuda's son. Vṛṣṭi's son was Kapotaromā and his son was Revata.

117. His son was a scholar and a friend of Tumburu. He is famous by the name Candanodakadundubhi.[1]

118-119. His son was Abhijit and his son was Punarvasu. The excellent man (King) had performed a horse-sacrifice for the sake of a son. In the course of that sacrifice, while the rites of Atirātra were being performed, he was born in the middle of the assembly. Therefore Punarvasu became a scholar, donor and righteous performer of Yajñas.

120. He had twin children—Āhuka[2] and Āhukī both of whom were foremost among intelligent ones. They say that Āhuka was invincible, thanks to his (mighty) arms and arrows.

121-123. About Āhuka the following verses are cited : "He had ten thousand war-chariots fully equipped with quivers, martial requisites, banners and flagstaffs, rumbling like clouds. No one (in his family) was a speaker of untruth, non-performer of Yajñas or non-giver of thousands (as Dakṣiṇā). No one was unclean or unrighteous. No one was unlearned or emaciate." We have heard that Dhṛti was the son of Āhuka.

124-126. (Partially defective) With his white-liveried retinue, the king who was like Āhuka, marched towards the eastern direction displaying (accompanied by) one million and eighty youthful horses (cavalry). He surpassed Bhoja's twenty-one thousand elephants the ropes of which (elephants) were made of gold and silver (wires?). An equal number of thousands (of elephants) of Bhoja (were posted) in the north. (The bells of these elephants) made a tinkling sound.

---

1. *AIHT*, p. 150 records 'Nandanodaka-dundubhi' as his name. His other name 'Andhaka' is not recorded there.

2. According to the genealogy on p. 105 of *AIHT*, Āhuka is the son of Punarvasu.

127. Āhuka gave his sister Āhukī to Āhukāndha. A daughter and two sons were born to Ahukāndha*.

128. The sons were Devaka and Ugrasena. Both of them were brilliant as if born of divine womb. Heroic sons comparable to Devas were born to Devaka.

129. They were Devānāṁdeva, Sudeva and Devarañjita. Their sisters were seven whom he gave to Vasudeva.

130-131. They (the sisters) were Vṛkadevā, Upadevā, Devarakṣitā, Śrīdevā, Śāntidevā, Mahādevā and Devakī who was the seventh. She was very beautiful to look at. Ugrasena had nine sons, the eldest of whom was Kaṁsa.

132. The others were Nyagrodha, Sunāma, Kadvaśaṅku, Bhūmaya, Sutanu, Rāṣṭrapāla, Yuddhatuṣṭa and Supuṣṭimān.

133. Their sisters were five: Karmavatī, Dharmavatī, Śatāṅku, Rāṣṭrapālā and the comely lady Kahvā.

134. Ugrasena, who was born of Kukura family and had a large number of children, was famous.

A man remembering this race of Kukuras of unmeasured splendour shall make his own race vast and be endowed with children.

135. Bhajamāna's sons were Rathimukhya, Vidūratha Rājyādhideva, Śūra and Vidura.

136-138. The sons of Śūra were more powerful. They were Vāta, Nivāta, Śoṇita, Śvetavāhana, Śamī, Gadavarmā, Nidāta, Śakra and Śakrajit. Śamī's son was Pratikṣipta and his son was Svayaṁbhoja. Hṛdika was born of Svayaṁbhoja. Hṛdika's ten sons were all of terrible exploits.

139-140. Kṛtavarmā was the eldest and Śatadhanvā was the middle one. The other sons were Devārha (Devabāhu in Bd. P.), Vanārha, Bhiṣak, Dvaitaratha, Sudānta, Dhiyānta, Nakavān and Kanakodbhava. A scholarly son Kamalabarhiṣa was born to Devārha.

---

*This seems to be a wrong statement. Āhuka gave his sister (to the prince of Avanti). Āhuka married princess of Kāśi. From her he had two sons Devaka and Ugrasena. Bd. P. 2.3.71.128 clearly states :

āhukāt kāśya-duhitur dvau putrau sambabhūvatuḥ.

Vide *AIHT*, p. 105.

141. His sons were Asamaujas and the famous Susamaujas. Kṛṣṇa gave Sudaṁṣṭra and Surūpa[1] (as sons in adoption) to Asamaujas to whom no son was born (*ajātaputrāya*). Thus Andhakas have been recounted.

142. There is no doubt in this that he who daily glorifies this race of Andhakas, gains an extensive race for himself.

143. Śūra begot Devamānuṣi of Asmakī. Śūra begot of Māṣī (Māriṣī in Bd. P.) (the son) Devamīḍhuṣa.

144. Ten men (i.e. sons) were born of Bhāṣī (Māriṣī in Bd. P.), the daughter of Bhoja, and Śūra. The mighty-armed Vasudeva was the eldest. He was originally known as Ānakadundubhi.

145-146. As soon as he was born, *Dundubhi* (divine drum) sounded in heaven. A loud sound of ānakas (military drums) rose up in heaven. A heavy shower of flowers fell in the house of Śūra. In the entire human world there was no one equal to him in handsome features.[2]

147-149. The fame of Vasudeva who was foremost of men, was as brilliant as that of the moon. The other sons were Devabhāga, Devaśravas, Anādṛṣṭi, Kaḍa, Nandana, Bhṛñjina, Śyāma, Śamīka, and Gaṇḍūṣa. Four daughters, all excellent ladies, were also born, viz. Pṛthā, Śrutavedā, Śrutakīrti and Śrutaśravā. There was another (daughter) Rājādhidevī. All these five became mothers of heroic sons.

150-151. Kunti of Bhoja family adopted Pṛthā as his daughter. Pāṇḍu married her. Śūra had given her in adoption to the aged Kuntibhoja as he had no child. Hence Pṛthā became known as Kuntī and daughter of Kuntibhoja. Pāṇḍu the chief of Kurus, a great hero, took her as wife from him.

152. Pṛthā gave birth to three sons who were brilliant like fire. They were heroes with none to match them in the whole world. They were equal to Indra in exploit.

---

1. Sucandra and Vasurūpa according to Bd.P. v. 143.

2. Vasudeva's unparalleled handsomeness is recorded in Jaina works also. According to Jaina records Vasudeva was banished by his father, as complaints were lodged to him by citizens of Mathura about the seductive effect of his beauty on their women. A Prakrit work called *Vasudeva-Hiṇḍi* (*circa* A.D. 600) makes Vasudeva a hero whose wanderings were a marriage campaign. The work, however, is a Prakrit version of Guṇāḍhya's Paiśāci *Bṛhat-Kathā*, though here the hero is Vasudeva instead of Naravāhanadatta.

153. Pṛthā gave birth to Yudhiṣṭhira from Dharma, to Bhīma (Vṛkodara) from Māruta and to Arjuna (Dhanañjaya) from Indra.

154. It is well-known that Nakula and Sahadeva were born of Mādravatī. Both of them were endowed with handsome features and inherent strength and good qualities.

155. The powerful and heroic lord of Karūṣa named Dantavaktra was born of Śrutadevā as the son of Vṛddhaśarman.

156-158. Santardana was born of Śrutakīrti, the wife of the prince of Kekaya. Cekitāna and Bṛhatkṣatra were the other two mighty (sons). Brothers Vinda and Anuvinda who were very powerful, were born of the king of Avanti (?) as sons of Rājādhidevī.

The king of Cedi[1], Śiśupāla, was born of Śrutaravā as the son of the saintly king Damaghoṣa. His manliness is well known. He was formerly the ten-necked (Rāvaṇa), the slayer of enemies.

159-161. Yaduśravā and Rujakanya were his younger brothers. Vasudeva had thirteen excellent ladies as wives. Of them Pauravī, Rohiṇī, Madirā, Aparā, Bhadrā, Vaiśākhī and Devakī the seventh (were the chief queens). Two lady attendants Sugandhi and Vanarāji and two others (also were married to him). Rohiṇī and Pauravī were the daughters of Vālmīka.[2]

162-163. The blessed lady, the eldest wife of Ānakadundubhi, Rohiṇī gave birth to eight children. The eldest son was Rāma. The others were Sāraṇa, Niśava, Durdama, Damana, Śubhra, Piṇḍāraka and Kuśītaka. She had a daughter named Citrā.

164-165. His grandsons born to Rāma were famous as Niśīta and Utsuka. Rāma had other sons as well: Pārśvī, Pārśvanandī, Śiśu, Satyadhṛti, Mandabāhya, Rāmāṇa, Girika, Gira, Śuklagulma, Gulma and Daridrāntaka.

166-171. Sāraṇa had five daughters who were born prior to these. They were Arciṣmatī, Sunandā, Surasā, Suvacā and Śatabalā. The following are remembered as the sons and grandsons of Rohiṇī : Bhadrāśva, Bhadragupti, Bhadra-

1. Bundelkhaṇḍa and the adjacent territory from former Central Provinces (now the whole of Cedi is included in new Madhya Pradesh).

2. 'Younger sisters of Bāhlīka' as per Bd. P.V.163.

vighna, Bhadrabāhu, Bhadraratha, Bhadrakalpa, Supārśvaka, Kīrtimān, Rohitāśva, Bhadraja, Durmada and Abhibhūta.

The sons and daughters of Madirā were : Nanda, Upananda, Mitra, Kukṣimitra, Acala, Sthita (?), Puṣṭi and Sudeva (sons) and Citrā and Upacitrā (daughters).

Upabiṁba, Biṁba, Sattvadanta and Mahaujas, these four were the powerful and famous sons of Bhadrā.

172-173. Śauri (i.e. Vasudeva) begot the excellent son Kauśika of Vaiśākhī. He begot six sons of Devakī. They were: Suṣeṇa, Kīrtimān, Tadaya (Udarṣī in Bd. P.), Bhadrasena, Yajudāya the fifth, and Bhadravit the sixth. Kaṁsa killed all of them.

174. Under these circumstances Viṣṇu, the lord of the worlds, lord of the subjects, was born as the long-lived Kṛṣṇa.

175. After him was born Subhadrā who used to speak pleasantly. She was otherwise known as Kṛṣṇā. This girl of the family of Vṛṣṇis named Subhadrā became famous as Kṛṣṇā.

176. The heroic Abhimanyu was born of Subhadrā and Pārtha (Arjuna). Listen and understand the names of the other heroic sons born of Vasudeva and his seven highly fortunate wives.

177-178. The heroic son Bhayāsakha was born of Sahadevā. Śārṅgadevā gave birth to Tambu. Śauri (thus) begot a son who made the family flourish. Four more sons of his, viz. Upasaṅga, Vasu, Deva and Rakṣita were killed by Kaṃsa. Thus he had ten sons. Kaṁsa killed all of them.

179. Upadevā gave birth to all these blessed sons : Vijaya, Rocana and Vardhamāna. (Bd. P adds : Devala.)

180. Vṛkadevī gave birth to noble-souled Svagāhava. (This lady was known by these names as well) Āgāhī, Svasā, Śiśirāyiṇī and Surūpā.

181. Devakī of beautiful nose gave birth to Bhū (Śrī-kṛṣṇa ?) as her seventh son. (Afterwards) she gave birth to the blessed Gaveṣaṇa, who could fight in battle in wonderfully diverse ways.

182. Śauri (Vasudeva) begot of Śaibyā the immutable (economical ?) son (Kauśika alias Śrāddhadeva) who formerly

implanted a forest[1], O Brāhmaṇas.

183. Sugandhi and Vanarājī (the servant-maids mentioned before) were also the wives of Śauri. Puṇḍra and Kapila were Vasudeva's sons born of Sugandhi (Bd.P.v.186). Of them Puṇḍra became a king and Kapila went to the forest.

184. Of the other lady (Vanarājī) Vasudeva had another powerful son who was a foremost wielder of bow. He was a king called Niṣāda.

185. Mahābhāga was the famous son of Devarāta. They call the son born of Devaśravas as one honoured by scholars.

186. Nivarta begot of Aśmakī the sons Anādṛṣṭi of great fame, Śrāddhadeva of great strength and Śakraśatrughna.

187. (Defective verse)[2] Śrādhadeva was well known as the founder of Niṣadha (Niṣāda) (?) kingdom. Ekalavya of great prowess was nurtured and brought up by Niṣādas (hunting tribes).

188. With pleasure Kṛṣṇa gave his sons Cārudeṣṇa and Sāmba who had all praiseworthy characteristics and who had learned the use of miraculous weapons, to Gaṇḍūṣa who was childless.

189. Tantija and Tantimāla were Kanaka's own sons. Vasudeva of great exploit gave them to Vastāvani who had no child. Sauti gave his heroic sons Śauri and Kauśika to him.

190. (Other members of this family were) Tapas, Krodhanu, Virajas, Śyāma and Sṛñjima. Śyāma was childless and he went to the forest. He contemptuously treated his status as a member of the Bhoja clan. He secured the status of a Rājarṣi (a royal sage).

191. He who reads this story of Kṛṣṇa's birth after regularly observing rites, and also narrates it to Brāhmaṇas shall attain great happiness.

192. Lord Nārāyaṇa of great splendour, lord of Devas, the lord of subjects (Prajāpati) was formerly born among men out of sportfulness.

---

1. Reading in A adopted.

2. Bd. P.v. 190 gives a better reading and means: 'Ekalavya, the highly lucky son was born to Śrāddhadeva. He was brought up by Niṣādas (a forest tribe) and so he was well known as Naiṣādi.'

193. The lotus-eyed lord was born of Devakī and Vasudeva, thanks to their penance. It should be known that he had divine form with four arms. He was endowed with glory.

194. Even after becoming the son of Aditi (Devakī), the delighter (or scion) of the Yādava clan (Kṛṣṇa) is well-known as god Viṣṇu, the younger brother of Indra.

195. Though Nārāyaṇa took birth, he is still *Avyaya* (the unchanging). The Lord Nārāyaṇa is still eternal even after becoming Hari.

196. It was he who created the primordial being Prajāpati formerly. Even after becoming the son of Aditi (Devakī) the delighter (or scion) of the Yādava clan (Kṛṣṇa) is well known as god Viṣṇu, the younger brother of Indra.

197. It was he who blessed Aditi with his grace and was born as her son for the purpose of slaying Daityas, Dānavas and Rākṣasas, the enemies of Suras.

198. The family of the intelligent Vasudeva, born of the race of Yayāti, became certainly meritorious and holy because Lord Nārāyaṇa resorted to it.

199. While Janārdana was being born, the oceans trembled, the mountains shook and the sacrificial fires blazed.

200. While Janārdana was born, the winds blew auspiciously. All dust subsided. All the luminaries shone more brilliantly.

201. The asterism on the day when Janārdana was born was Abhijit by name. The night was called Jayantī (the 8th of the dark half of Śrāvaṇa with the constellation Rohiṇī rising at midnight). And the Muhūrta (the specific period at the time of his birth) was Vijaya by name.

202. The unmanifest, eternal Lord Hari, Nārāyaṇa, Kṛṣṇa fascinated the people with his eyes as he was born.

203. The lord of Devas (Indra) showered flowers from the firmament. Eulogising Madhusūdana (Kṛṣṇa) with auspicious words thousands of great sages and Gandharvas offered prayer unto him.

204. Vasudeva saw lord Adhokṣaja (whose form is beyond the ken of the physical sense-organs) born at night as his son endowed with the characteristic curl of hair called *Śrivatsa* and accompanied by various divine signs in heaven.

Vasudeva thereafter requested: "O lord, withdraw your form.

205. I say this, O dear one, as I am very much afraid of Kaṁsa. My sons, your elder brothers, were very wonderful in appearance but were killed by him".

206. On hearing the words of Vasudeva, the lord withdrew his form. Permitted by him (the lord), the father took him to the abode of Nandagopa. Abiding by the suggestion of Ugrasena,[1] he gave (the child) to Yaśodā then.

207. Yaśodā and Devakī had been pregnant simultaneously. Yaśodā was the wife of Nandagopa, the Lord of (herd of) cows.

208. Yaśodā had given birth to a daughter in the same night as Kṛṣṇa was born as the lord of the race of Vṛṣṇi.

209. Protecting the son born to him, Vasudeva of great fame, handed him over to Yaśodā and took the daughter with him.

210. Handing him over to Nandagopa, (Vasudeva) spoke, "Save me. This (adopted) son of your shall be the bestower of all happiness to Yādavas. This is that (long expected) child of Devakī. He shall put an end to all our pain and misery."

211. Ānakadundubhi took that girl to the son of Ugrasena (i.e. Kaṁsa) and informed him: "This is the girl of auspicious characteristics".

212. Kaṁsa had not known (till then) that a child had been born to his sister. The wicked-minded one became delighted and spared that girl.

213. The foolish one muttered within himself: "If it is a girl she is already slain !" That daughter grew up well respected in the abode of Vṛṣṇis.

214-215: (Defective) Just as gods bring up gods[2], they protected her like a son. They said that a daughter had been

---

1. '*ugrasena-mate*' in the text is confusing. Bd. P.v. 212 reads "gopa (who was staying) in the house of Ugrasena".

2. The text '*Putravat paripālyanto devā devān yathā* /' translated above is irrelevant to the context. It gives cogent sense if emended as in Bd. P. 2.3-72, 220, as follows :

putravat pālayāmāse devī devīṁ mudā tadā

'Then the goddess (Devakī) gladly brought up the goddess (Ekādaśā) like (her own) son.'

duly born: "(Goddess) Ekādaśā is born for the protection of Keśava. With delighted minds all the Yādavas will worship her. Kṛṣṇa, the lord of Devas, of divine physical form is well protected by her."

The Sages said:

216. Why did Kaṁsa, the king of the Bhoja family, kill the sons of Vasudeva even when they were (mere) infants? It behoves you to explain this to us.

Sūta said:

217-218. Listen why the foolish Kaṁsa killed the infant sons of Ānakadundubhi (Vasudeva) immediately after their birth. (I shall explain) how, out of fear, the mighty-armed Kṛṣṇa was taken elsewhere immediately after birth and how Govinda, (though) the supreme person was brought up among the cows.

219. It is reported that Kaṁsa, then the crown prince, acted as a charioteer of the self-possessed Vasudeva along with Devakī (in their marriage).

220. Then there arose in the sky a divine voice of some incomprehensible person. It was distinctly loud and clear and was witnessed by all people. Thereby Kaṁsa remained panicky perpetually (throughout his life).

221. "O Kaṁsa, the seventh (?) child of this lady whom you drive in your chariot out of affection, will be the cause of your death."

222. On hearing that (aerial) voice, the foolish Kaṁsa became distressed. Unsheathing his sword, he evinced his desire to kill her.

223. The mighty-armed and valorous Vasudeva spoke to Kaṁsa, the son of Ugrasena, out of friendliness and affection.

224-228, "It does not behove any Kṣatriya to kill a woman at any time. O scion of the family of Yadus, I have seen a way out in this matter. O King, I shall hand over to you the seventh child that will be born of her. You may do whatever you deem fit then. Even now, O liberal one in giving Dakṣiṇā,

you can do as you wish[1]. I shall (even) promise that I will give you all her childern. O excellent man, this promise will never be falsified". Thus implored and propitiated Kaṁsa (agreed to the proposal of) seizing all the children. Vasudeva rejoiced in having got back his wife (alive). So Kaṁsa, the foolish man of sinful deeds, went on killing the sons (one after the other).

The Sages said:

229. Who is this Vasudeva who begot Viṣṇu ? Who is this Devakī, the lady of fame, who gave birth to Viṣṇu? Who is this Nandagopa and who is this famous lady Yaśodā who brought him up?

Sūta said :

230. All the men (of the Yadu race) were the incarnations of Kaśyapa and all the women of Aditi[2]. The mighty-armed lord (thus) fulfilled the desires of Devakī.

231. The lord entered a human body and moved about on the earth. By means of his Yogic Māyā the Yogic-souled lord infatuated all living beings.

232. When Dharma declined, Viṣṇu himself incarnated in the race of Vṛṣṇis in order to reestablish Dharma and to annihilate Asuras.

233-234. He married the girl Rukmiṇī, Satyā the daughter of Nagnajit, Satyabhāmā the daughter of Satrājit, Jāmbavatī, Rohiṇī, Śaibyā, Sudevī, Mādrī, Suśīlā, Kālindī, Mitravindā, Lakṣmaṇā, Jālavāsinī and others.

235. Thus he had sixteen thousand wives. After consulting Devas, Śakra had sent down to the earth the most

---

1. The words *tvam tvidānīm* in the text are absurd as they would mean free permission to Kaṁsa to kill Devakī. They need emendation as *natvidānīm*, as in Bd.P. ibid v. 233. It means "Do not behave now in the way you wish". Vasudeva wanted to save Devakī's life and hence requested Kaṁsa not to kill her.

2. This is a strange statement. Bd. P. v. 238 states that Vasudeva and Devakī were Kaśyapa and Aditi in their former life. Our text does not answer who was Nandagopa and Yaśodā but Bd.P.v. 239 informs that Nanda was a Vasu called Droṇa and Yaśodā, his wife Dharā. Bh. P. X.8.48.51 confirm it.

excellent ones among the celestial damsels of whom it is said there are fourteen groups.

236. In order to become the wives of Vāsudeva, they, were born in royal palaces. These were the blessed ladies famous as Viṣvaksena's wives.

237-240. Pradyumna, Cārudeṣṇa, Sudeṣṇa, Śarabha, Cāru, Cārubhadra, Bhadracāru, and Cāruvindhya were the sons of Rukmiṇī. She had a daughter Cārumatī.

Sānu, Bhānu, Akṣa, Rohita, Mantraya, Jarāndhaka, Tāmravakṣas, Bhaumari and Jarandhama were the sons of the Garuḍa-bannered lord (Kṛṣṇa) and Satyabhāmā. They had four sisters, viz. Bhānu, Bhaumarikā, Tāmraparṇī and Jarandhamā.

Now listen to the children of Jāṁbavatī.

241. Bhadra, Bhadragupta, Bhadravindra and the famous Saptabāhu were the sons; Bhadrāvatī and the famous Sambodhanī were the daughters. These should be known as Jāmbavatī's children.

242. Saṅgrāmajit, Śatajit, and Sahasrajit are glorified as the sons of Sudevī and Viṣvaksena (i.e. Kṛṣṇa).

243. Vṛka, Vṛkāśva, Vṛkajit, Mitrabāhu and Sunītha were the sons. Vṛjinī and Suraṅganā[1] were the daughters. These are the children of the daughter of Nagnajit (i.e. Satyā).

244. Thus know that he had thousands of sons. (Some say) that Vāsudeva had hundred thousands of sons.

245. Ten thousand and eight of them (or eighty thousand of them) were heroic and experts in battle. The family of Janārdana has been recounted to you factually.

246. Bṛhatī (known also as) Nartakonneyī was united (in wedlock) with Sunaya. She was the daughter of Bṛhaduktha the noble-souled scion of the family of Śuni (Śauneya).

247. Her sons were three in number. They were well known as shining splendidly in war, viz. Aṅgada, Kumuda and Śveta. She had a daughter too named Śvetā.

248. Avagāha[2], Citra and the heroic Citravara (were

1. The reading *varāṅganā* in Bd.P. v. 252 implies that excellently beautiful Vṛjinī was the only daughter of Satyā.

2. Bd. P.v. 257 reads *Avagāhasya* and implies Citra, Śura and Citravara as his sons.

famous members of the Vṛṣṇi race). Citravaras son was Citrasena and his daughter was Citravatī.

249. Tumba and Tumbabāṇa were the two sons of Janastamba. Vajrāra and Kṣipra are remembered to be the sons of Upāṅga.

250. Bhūrīndrasena and Bhūri were the two sons of Gaveṣa. Yudhiṣṭhira's daughter Sutanu was well-known.

251. The famous son of Aśva named Vajra was born of her. Vajra's son was Pratibāhu and Sucāru was his son.

252. Kāśmā (Princess of Kāśī—Bd.P.) gave birth to the son Supārśva and Sāmbā to Tarasvin. The sons of the noble-souled Yādavas were three crores.

253. Six million of them were extremely valorous and very strong. All these men of great prowess were born of the parts of Devas.

254. They were born in the family of Yādavas in order to exterminate the Asuras of great penance who had been born among human beings in this world and were harassing them. These Asuras had been killed in the battles between Devas and Asuras.

255. There were eleven distinct families of the noble-souled Yādavas. But in the family of Viṣṇu (i.e. Kṛṣṇa) all of them merged as though into one family.

256. Viṣṇu was their authority and the leader for them. All of them, all human beings*, obeyed his behests and abided by his directions.

257. Thus the progeny of Vṛṣṇis has been glorified succinctly and in details. The glorification of these bestows fame and fulfilment of cherished desires.

---

*The text is a bit obscure. If '*sarva-mānuṣāḥ*' in the 2nd line is emended as '*sura-mānuṣāḥ*' (as in Bd. P.v. 262) it means 'suras and human beings are bound by those who abide by his (Kṛṣṇa's) behests'.

CHAPTER THIRTYFIVE[1]

Wars between Suras and Asuras: Bhṛgu curses Viṣṇu: The Eulogy of Śaṁbhu by Śukra

1-3. Understand the Devas who had assumed human nature and born as they are being glorified.

Saṁkarṣaṇa, Vāsudeva, Pradyumna, Sāmba and Aniruddha—these five are glorified as the race[2] (of Vṛṣṇis).

The Seven Sages, Kubera, the Yakṣa Maṇivara, Śalaki, Badara, the scholarly Dhanvantari, Nandin Mahādeva (?), Śālaṅkāyana, Jiṣṇu (Viṣṇu in Bd. P.), the primordial god along with these divine beings (are being narrated).

The Sages said :

4. Why did Viṣṇu incarnate? How many incarnations are remembred? How many are the future manifestations of the great soul?

5. Why is he born in Brāhmaṇa and Kṣatriya families at the closing periods of the Yugas? Why does he incarnate again and again among human beings? Please explain it to us who (being curious to know) enquire of you.

6. We wish to hear completely and in detail all the activities of the intelligent Kṛṣṇa, the slayer of enemies in different bodies (incarnations).

7. O Sūta, O holy lord, it behoves you to narrate in the proper order his various activities, the different manifestations as well as his nature to us.

8. How did that lord Viṣṇu (well-renowned) among Suras as the slayer of their enemies, adopt the state of being the son of Vasudeva, in his family?

9. O Sūta, what (special) meritorious act was performed by the deathless Devas who invariably perform meritorious deeds, as a result of which (the lord) left the region of Devas and came over to the world of mortals?

---

1. This chapter corresponds to Bd. P. 2.3.72; the references are to the verse numbers of that chapter.

2. The list shows the influence of Pañcarātra school in that period.

10. Why did the leader of Devas and human beings, Hari, the source of origin of the worlds Bhūḥ and Bhuvaḥ, install his divine soul in a human womb?

11. It is he who makes the mental cycles of human beings revolve and function. He is the foremost among the wielders of discus. Why did he decide to be born among human beings?

12. It is he who affords protection to all the worlds and the whole universe. Why did that lord Viṣṇu descend to the earth and emulate (an ordinary) cowherd?

13. He is the Ātman of all living beings. He has created and sustained all the great Bhūtas (elements). He is the *Śrīgarbha* (having glory and splendour, Śrī, within him). How was he retained in the womb by a woman of the earth?

14. It was he who measured the three worlds in three paces at the request of Devas. It was by him that the three paths of the worlds consisting of the three *Vargas* (i.e. Dharma, Kāma and Artha?) were laid down.

15. At the time of dissolution of the universe he assumed the form consisting of waters and drank up the whole universe. He made the whole world a vast sheet of water through the visible and invisible paths.

16. In the Purāṇas he is (eulogised as) *Purāṇātmā* (the ancient soul). He assumed the physical form of a Boar. He is the most excellent of Suras who redeemed the earth and gave it over to Suras.

17. Hiraṇyakaśipu, a demon of yore, who possessed great prowess, had been killed by him assuming a leonine body divided into two (as half man, half lion).

18. Formerly, the omnipresent lord became the Aurva fire (also called) the Saṁvartaka fire (fire of dissolution), and stationed himself in the nether worlds within the ocean. He drank *Havis* (sacrificial offerings) in the form of water.

19. It is he whom they (the sages) call in every Yuga as the lord with a thousand feet, thousand rays, the lord having thousands (of forms), and thousand heads.

20. When the whole world was a vast sheet of water, the abode of god Brahmā (Pitāmaha) came out of his navel even as fire comes out of Araṇi. It (the abode) was a Paṅkaja (a lotus,

but literally 'one born of mud') but it was not born of any *Paṅka* (mud).

21. It was by him that Daityas were killed in the Tārakāmaya battle[1] after adopting a body consisting of all (the spirits of) Devas and holding all weapons.

22. The haughty Kālanemi was defeated and struck down by him (the lord) seated on the back of Garuḍa.

Resorting to his eternal Yogic power and enveloping (everything) in dense darkness, he reclines (on his serpent couch) on the northern part of the ocean of milk, the ocean that yielded nectar. He (wards off) the great darkness (of ignorance).

23. (Defective verse) Thanks to the intensity of her penance, formerly Aditi ratained him in her womb like Araṇi (holding fire within it). When Indra was surrounded by the hosts of Daityas, it was he who saved him by contemptuously warding them off from the womb?

24. When the Wind-god[2] (?) deprived (Daityas) of their hold (from all positions) in the world and made Daityas remain sub-merged in waters, the primordial Lord made Devas the resident of heaven and made Indra (Puruhūta) the Lord of Devas.

25-26. It was the same Ādideva[3] who laid down the process of preparing the Āhavanīya fire by means of Gārhapatya and Anvāhārya rites. He created the altar, the Kuśa grass, the *prokṣaṇiya śruvā* (the sacrificial ladle with which the offering is taken or holy water sprinkled) and the materials for *Avabhṛtha* (the final ablution). He laid down the rules of selecting the three persons[4] (?) entitled to offer Havya in a sacrifice.

27. He made Suras the partakers of Havyas and Pitṛs the partakers of Kavyas. In order to enjoy (him-

1. The battle that ensued after the abduction of Tārā by Soma.

2. Purāṇas do not attribute this feat to the Wind-god. Bd. P. 2-3.72.23 reads *padāni yo* for *yadā'nilo* hereof. Bd. P. reading means 'He made the regions of world as the abodes of the people'.

3. Verses 25-29 give to Viṣṇu the credit of founding the institution of sacrifice.

4. The reading *'atha trīn iha yaścakre* (translated here as 'selecting three persons') is wrong. Bd. P. 2.3.72.26 reads *atharṣīn ścaiva yaścakre* 'then he created sages' (for participation in sacrifices).

self) by the sacrificial procedure, he himself became Yajña, in the sacrificial rite.

28-29. By dint of his supreme power, he created and made resplendent the requisite material for sacrifices such as *Yūpas* (sacrificial posts), *Samits* (holy twigs), *Sruvā* (sacred ladles), Soma (the creeper or its juice called soma), *Pavitra* (the special holy ring of Kuśa grass), *Paridhi* (the holy twigs of Palāśa etc. laid round the sacrificial fire), the sacrificial fires, *sadasyas* (members of the sacrificial assembly), *Yajamāna* (the performers of sacrifices) and excellent sacrifices like horse sacrifice and others.

30-31. After creating the three worlds in order in accordance with the Yugas, he made all the following things: (Measures of Time such as) *Kṣaṇas* (moments), *Nimeṣas*, *Kāṣṭhās*, *Kalās*, and all the three periods of time (past, present, and future), periods of time such as *Muhūrtas* (periods of 48 minutes each), *Tithis* (days of the lunar fortnight), months, days, years, seasons, various specific *yogas* of time, the three kinds of *Pramāṇas* (means of valid knowledge) etc.

32-34. He created the span of life, *Kṣetras* (?fields), increase, characteristics, beauty of form, intellect, wealth, heroism, the ability to comprehend the sacred lore, the three castes, the three *Vidyās* (Lores), the three fires, the three periods of time, the three rites, the three Māyās* and the three Guṇas (Sattva, Rajas and Tamas). It was by his infinite power (of creation) that he created the worlds, gods. All the Bhūtas and Gaṇas were created by him who is the *Ātman* (soul) of them all (living beings and Bhūta Gaṇas).

35. He sports in the sense-organs of men by means of his Yogic power. He is the lord of diverse things. He is present everywhere. He is the leader of arrivals and departures (*Gata* and *Āgata*) i.e. all sorts of movements.

36. He is the goal unto those endowed with piety and virtue and is inaccessible to those of sinful deeds. He is the source of origin of the system of four castes and protector of the same.

---

*Probably *Mātrās* 'units of time' as in Bd. P. 2.3.72.32.

37-38. He is the knower of the four Vidyās, viz. *Ānvīkṣikī*, *Trayī*, *Vārtā* and *Daṇḍanīti*, and the supporter of the four *Āśramas* (stages of life). He is the space between quarters, the sky, the earth, the waters, the fire, the wind, the quarters, the two luminaries, the sun and the moon. He is the lord of the Yugas and the night wanderers (Rākṣasa?). In the Vedas he is spoken of as the great lord and as the great penance.

39. It is he who is greater than penance; they call him the supreme one, the possessor of the great soul. He is the lord, first among the Ādityas (sons of Aditi). He is the lord, the destroyer of the Daityas.

40. At the close of the Yugas, he is the annihilator. He is the slayer of the destroyers of the worlds. He is the bridge (or the boundary) of all the boundaries of the worlds. He is the purest among all those of pure rites.

41. He is the *Vedya* (one who should be known) for the Vedic scholars; he is the lord of all powerful persons. He is the Soma to all living beings; he is the Agni (Fire-god) for those of fiery splendour.

42. He is the mind of men; he is the penance of the ascetics; he is the modesty of those satisfied with good policy and he is the splendour of the refulgent.

43-44. He is the *Vigraha* (body) of all embodied beings. He is the goal of those who achieve their goal[1].

Vāyu is born of Ākaśa (Ether). Hutāśana (Fire) has Vāyu as its vital essence. Devas have their vital essence in fire and Madhusūdana (Kṛṣṇa) is the vital essence of Agni.

Rasa (the lymphatic juice) becomes blood; flesh is developed out of blood.[2]

45-47. From flesh fat is produced and bone is developed from fat. Pith and marrow are developed from bone and semen virile is generated from marrow; foetus is developed from semen through the assimilative activity of *Rasa*—bodily fluid (or through the activity rooted in sexual pleasure). At

1. Or : He is the velocity of those which are in motion.

2. Verses 44b-57 deal with embryology with special emphasis on Viṣṇu's power.

first it is in fluid state. This is called the *Saumya Rāśi*. It is called the second Rāśi when it is heated by the warmth (temperature) in the womb. Semen should be known as of the nature of Soma (Moon) and menstrual blood as of the nature of fire.

48. These two secretions (evolutes) follow *Rasa* (lymphatic juice). In semen (the mixture of semen and menstrual blood) there are Soma (Moon) and fire. Semen comes under the category of *Kapha* (phlegmatic humour) and menstrual blood comes under the category of *Pitta* (bilious humour).

49. The receptacle of *Kapha* is heart. *Pitta* is held in navel. Heart in the centre of body is the place of mind.

50. Lord Hutāśana (Fire) is stationed in the umbilical cavity. Mind should be known as Prajāpati (Brahmā) and *Kapha* is considered as Soma (Moon).

51. *Pitta* is considered as fire. Hence the universe consists of Agni and Soma. The foetus thus originating stays there like a patch of cloud.

52. Vāyu enters and becomes united with the great soul. It is divided into five within the body and develops (the foetus).

53. The five divisions are *Prāṇa*, *Apāna*, *Samāna*, *Udāna* and *Vyāna*. Among them *Prāṇa* moves round and develops the great soul.

54. *Apāna* is situated in the lower half of the body. *Udāna* circulates in the upper half of the body. *Vyāna* is called so because it pervades the whole body. *Samāna* is present in all the joints.

55. Thereafter, the five elements, viz. Earth, Wind, Ether, Water and Fire the fifth one, are attained by the foetus. Then it becomes perceivable by the sense-organs.

56. All the sense-organs enter into that (foetus) and perform their respective functions. They call it then the earthly (physical) body and the wind is called *Prāṇātman* (having the characteristic form of Prāṇa, the vital air).

57. The pores of the body have Ether as the source of their origin. It is from the element water that the liquid form-

ation (and exudation) in the body take place. The fiery element enters the eyes in the form of moonlight (?) The groups of objects function due to his prowess.

The Sages enquired:

58. How did Viṣṇu, the Puruṣa who creates all these and all the worlds, attain human state in the mortal world?

59. O intelligent one, this is our doubt. Our wonder is excessive. He is the ultimate goal of those who attain their goal (*Mokṣa*). How did he come to assume the human body?

60. We wish to hear about the very wonderful exploits of Viṣṇu in the proper order. Viṣṇu is described to be so by the Vedas and Devas.

61. O highly intelligent one, please tell us the story of the wonderful nativity of Viṣṇu. May the wonderful and pleasing narrative be recounted.

62. The manifestations of the noble soul of reputed strength and prowess are wonderful. The inherent power of Viṣṇu who has become miraculous on account of his wonderful deeds be please narrated.

Sūta said :

63. I shall glorify the manifestation of the noble soul, how that lord of great penance was born among human beings.

64. His incarnations in the human world as a result of Bhṛgu's curse were seventyseven in number*. He incarnates at the closing periods of the Yugas for realising the purpose of Devas.

65-66. Listen and understand (the details of) the divine personality of Viṣṇu, as I recount it. When the *Yuga-Dharma* (practice of *Dharma*—virtue—peculiar to a Yuga) gets reversed and declined and the time becomes slack and inactive, the Lord incarnates in order to stabilise righteousness (Dharma) in human beings. (These incarnations are) due to the curse of

*The text *sapta-sapta-tapaḥ proktā* is not supported in the subsequent narrative. Bd. P. 2.3.72.63 reads *bhṛgu-strī-vadha-doṣeṇa* 'due to his (Viṣṇu's) fault of killing (sage) Bhṛgu's wife'. As the episode is given in the following verse the reading deserves adoption.

Bhṛgu brought about by (the mutual struggle between) Devas and Asuras.

The Sages enquired:

67. How can he incarnate as a result of the mutual struggle between Devas and Asuras? We wish to know this, How did the mutual clash between Devas and Asuras take place?

Sūta replied:

68. Listen and understand even as I narrate it, the clash between Devas and Asuras in the manner it has taken place.

Formerly, Hiraṇyakaśipu, a Daitya, ruled over the three worlds.[1]

69. Thereafter the suzerainty over the three worlds was hereditarily established by Bali. There was great friendship between Devas and Asuras.

70. For ten Yugas all the inhabitants of the universe mixed together without any interruption. Both Devas and Asuras abided by the directions of those two (Daityas).

71. (Later on) a terrible, violent dispute arose between Devas and Asuras. It caused horrible devastation to both of them.

72. Many battles were fought between them for their respective share in the patrimony.[2] It is remembered that in this Varāha Kalpa twelve battles ending with the participation of Ṣaṇḍāmārka (took place).

73. Listen to them even as I am recounting them succinctly by their names. The first war is called Nārasiṁha (that caused by the Man-Lion). The second was Vāmana the act of the Dwarf (incarnation of Viṣṇu.)

74. The third war is Vārāha (that of the Boar incarnation); the fourth was at the time of the churning of the ocean for nectar. The fifth was the terrible war of Tārakāmaya (on the abduction of Tātā by Candra).

1. Verses 68-70 show that Asuras and Suras were cousin-clans who lived amicably under Asura Kings also. See vv. 88-92.

2. Verses 72-87 describe the twelve wars between Devas and Asuras, which made Viṣṇu to incarnate to help Devas. The list of Viṣṇu's incarnations is different (*vide Introduction*—Vaiṣṇavism).

75. The sixth war was Āḍibaka and the seventh war was remembered as Traipura (that of the burning of the three cities). The eighth war was Andhakāra and the ninth one was Dhvaja (Flag).

76. The tenth war should be known as Vārta (Vārtra ?) (pertaining to Vṛtra); the next one is Halāhala. The twelfth war among them is remembered as the terrible Kolāhala.

77. Hiraṇyakaśipu, a Daitya, was killed by Narasiṁha. Bali was bound by Vāmana when the three worlds were overtaken (were measured by Vāmana's steps).

78. Hiraṇyākṣa who was of very great strength and prowess and who had never been defeated in wars, was killed in a duel (by Viṣṇu in his incarnation as the Boar), when the clash with Devas ensued.

79. It was then that the Earth was lifted up on his curved fang by the (divine) Boar.

At the time of the churning of the ocean for nectar Prahlāda was defeated in battle by Indra.

80. Virocana, the son of Prahlāda, always attempted to kill Indra. In the Tārakāmaya war he was killed by Indra by means of his exploits.

81. Jaṁbha who had acquired the boon of *avadhyatā* (the state of not being killed or immunity from death) along with special miraculous weapons was killed in the sixth war by Viṣṇu who entered the body of Śakra.

82. When Devas were unable to protect the city of three gods* (?) all Dānavas along with (the demon) Tripura were killed by the three-eyed god Śiva.

83-84. In the eighth war, Asuras, Rākṣasas who were Andhakārakas (causing blindness, invisible ?) were defeated

---

**Tri-daivatam* is obscure as the city called Tripura belonged to Asuras. Bd.P. 2.3.72.81 b reads

aśaknuvatsu deveṣu paraṁ soḍhuṁ adaivatam |

'When Devas became unable to endure (the greatness of) Asuras. If '*para*' in this line be emended as '*puraṁ*', *adaivatam puram* would means 'the city of demons' and that would suit the context better. Scribes many times forget to indicate the signs of the vowels *-i-*, *-u-*, *-e-*.

by Devas and human beings in alliance with the Pitṛs. All these well protected Dānavas were wholly exterminated by Mahendra helped by Viṣṇu.

85-86. The mighty-armed Vipracitti began to fight with Mahendra hiding himself by means of his Māyā. Indra aimed at his banner and cut him down.

In the war called Kolāhala, Raji was surrounded by all Devas. He killed all Daityas and Dānavas who formed an alliance: By means of the nectar (generated) from Yajña[1] Ṣaṇḍa and Amārka were defeated by Devas.

87. These twelve battles took place between Devas and Asuras resulting in exhausting both Devas and Asuras. They brought about misfortune to the people also.

88. Hiraṇyakaśipu shone as the ruler and king of the three worlds for one hundred and seven million two hundred and eighty thousand years.

89. By succession Bali became the king and he ruled for one hundred and three million and sixty thousand years.

90.[2] Prahlāda ruled in the company of Asuras for as many years as the period of Bali's administration.

91. These three were very famous as the Indras of Asuras. They were very mighty. All these worlds were under Daityas for a period of ten Yugas.

92. Then the entire kingdom was free from enemies for a period of ten Yugas. Then the three worlds began to be protected by Mahendra without any change.

93-94. When the kingdom of the three worlds (inherited) by Prahlāda was taken away by the lapse of time, when the kingdom of the three worlds came to Indra (the chastiser of Pāka) by rotation, Yājña forsook Asuras and went over to Devas.

When Yajña went over to Devas, those Asuras spoke to Kāvya (Śukra), their preceptor:

95. "Even as we are looking on, Yajña went over to

---

1. Production of nectar from Yajña is not known. Bd. P. 2.3.72.87 reads *yajñasyā'vabhṛthe* 'at the time of the valedictory—*avabhṛtha*—bath'.

2. This verse should have been 89 as Prahlāda succeeded his father Hiraṇyakaśipu.

Devas, forsaking our kingdom. We cannot stay here. We shall, therefore, enter Rasātala (nether worlds) today."

96. Thus addressed, he became depressed. In consoling words, he spoke to them: "O Asuras, do not be afraid. I shall sustain you by means of my spiritual brilliance.

97. Rainfall, medicinal herbs and the two things, the Earth and Wealth—all these are retained by me. Only a fourth of it is with Suras. I shall hand over to you everything that I hold".

98-99. On seeing Asuras sustained by the intelligent Kāvya, Devas consulted among themselves. They were dispirited and desired to be victorious then. They said: "This Kāvya, spoils everything we do, by his strength. Well, we shall go there quickly lest he should strengthen them further. Killing them forcibly, we shall compel those who are left off to flee to Pātāla."

100. With great fury Devas rushed at Dānavas and killed them. Being harassed by them, Dānavas hastened to Kāvya (for protection).

101. Kāvya saw that the sons of Diti were attacked by Devas and that they were in great distress because they were wounded in battle by various weapons[1].

102. On seeing Devas also standing there he reflected over the fate.[2] Remembering the previous incidents, he spoke to them (Asuras):

103. "All the three worlds were conquered by Vāmana by means of three paces. Bali was bound. Jaṁbha was killed. Virocana was slain.

104. In twelve great and terrible battles they were killed by Suras. By various means most of the important persons have been killed.

105. Only a few of you have been spared in these latest battles. I shall now employ a great strategy. Please wait for a short while.

---

1. Bd. P. v. 103 reads : *samarakṣata saṁstrastān* 'protected the frightened (sons of Diti)'

2. *Daivam* in Bd. P.

106. I shall go to Mahādeva for acquiring Mantras for the sake of your victory. Bṛhaspati is performing Homa and worshipping Agni by means of Mantras.

107. Hence I shall go unto the lord Nīlalohita (Śiva) for the sake of Mantras. I shall bless you all after my return.

108. All of you perform penance in the forest clad in bark garments. Devas will not kill you until I return.

109. After obtaining the Mantras that will never go against us, from Lord Maheśvara, we shall fight Devas again. You will surely gain victory."

110-112. After deliberating thus Asuras spoke to Devas :

"We have set aside our dispute with you. All of you can occupy the worlds. We shall be clad in bark garments and we shall perform penance in the forest". On hearing these words of Prahlāda, Suras believed that he was speaking the truth. Then Devas returned without fighting. They rejoiced. When Daityas laid aside their weapons, Devas went back to their respective places from where they had come.

113. Then Kāvya said to them: "Wait for some time performing penance without enthusiasm, waiting for an opportunity to achieve the object in view. All Devas including Vāsava are in my father's hermitage."*

114. After instructing Asuras thus, Kāvya approached Mahādeva. After bowing to the lord, the cause of origin of the universe, he said:

115. "O lord, I wish to secure such Mantras as are not in the possession of Bṛhaspati. I want them to be the bestowers of fearlessness on Asuras. I wish to defeat Devas".

116. Thus requested, the lord said : "O Brāhmaṇa ! do you wish for the Mantras ? Perform then the holy rites indicated by me, with purity of mind and observing celibacy.

117. For full thousand years you must stay in a topsy turvy position inhaling the smoke from the holy sacrificial fire-pit. Welfare unto you. If you perform (a sacred rite) like this, you will obtain the Mantra from me."

---

*This is a strange statement. Bd. P. reads relevantly : *saṃpratīkṣata dānavāḥ* : "O Dānavas, stay waiting (in my father's hermitage)."

118-119. Thus advised by the lord of Devas, Śukra of great penance, touched the feet of the lord and said: "Yes, my lord, I shall perform the holy rites and observe all the other things as instructed." Then he was engaged by the lord inhaling the smoke from the holy fire-pit.

120-121. When Śukra had gone to Maheśvara and was staying there observing celibacy for the acquisition of the Mantras with the welfare of Asuras in view, Devas understood that the kingdom was set aside by Asuras as a measure of strategy. Finding that loophole, the infuriated Devas attacked them. They had sharp weapons in their hands and Bṛhaspati led them all.

122. On seeing Devas armed with weapons again Asuras became frightened and fled suddenly.

123-125. "We have laid down our weapons and conceded victory unto them. Our preceptor is observing holy rites. Devas have abrogated the terms of agreement. They are desirous of slaying us, (their) enemies. Welfare unto you all, we are now without a preceptor (to guide us). We had been credulous. We remained quiet performing penances. We are clad in bark and coarse garments. We have no holy rite. We have nothing to grasp and hold on to. By no means are we able to conquer Devas in war. In this nasty situation* it is better that we seek refuge in the mother of Kāvya.

126. We shall wait here till the return of the preceptor. We shall tell him everything. When Kāvya returns we shall fight with Suras."

127-131. Saying this to one another, they sought shelter with the mother of Kāvya. They had been frightened but the boon of fearlessness was offered unto them as they sought shelter. (The mother of Kāvya said :) "O Dānavas, do not be afraid, do not be afraid. Cast off all fear. You need not be afraid as long as you are with me." On seeing Asuras frightened, Devas pursued them earnestly without caring for strength or weakness. On seeing the frightened Asuras being harassed by Devas, the gentle lady (the mother of Kāvya) became infuriated and said to them : "I shall cause *Anindratva* (the state of

*Bd. P. : *ayuddhena* 'without being involved in fighting.'

Indralessness i.e. destruction of Indra)". She made Indra immediately benumbed and stunned and she went on with her other activities.

132. On seeing Indra in that helpless condition after being rendered motionless like the sacrificial post, Devas became afraid and fled from there.

133. When the groups of Suras had gone, Viṣṇu said to Indra: "O lord of Suras, welfare unto you. Enter me. I shall take you away."

134. Thus advised Purandara (Indra) entered Viṣṇu. On seeing him saved by Viṣṇu, the infuriated lady spoke these words:

135. "O Maghavan, here itself I will burn you down along with Viṣṇu even as all the living beings observe. May the power of my penance be witnessed."

136. The lords Indra and Viṣṇu, on being oppressed by her, conversed (under their breath). Viṣṇu asked Indra—"How can both of us get free jointly ?".

137. Indra replied : "O lord, kill her before she burns us both. Especially I have been attacked. Hence, kill her. Do not delay."

138. Then on seeing her (thus intending to kill them) Viṣṇu got ready (even) to kill that woman. Caught in adverse circumstances, the lord hurriedly remembered his discus.

139. While she was hastening to kill them, the discus (Sudarśana), the destroyer of the enemies of Suras, hastened still more. On realising the ruthless attempt of the woman (the mother of Kāvya) Viṣṇu became furious. Taking up that weapon the husband of Mā (i.e. Lakṣmī) cut off her head.

140. On seeing that terrible slaughter of a woman (his wife) the holy lord Bhṛgu became furious. Then Viṣṇu was censured and cursed by Bhṛgu for the murder of his wife.

141. "Since (according to Dharma) a woman should not be killed and that you have killed one even though you are conversant with what is Dharma, you will have to take birth among human beings seven times".

142. Thereafter, as a result of that curse he incarnates again and again in the world (of mortals) for the welfare of all, whenever virtue (Dharma) declines.

143. After speaking those words of curse to Viṣṇu, he (i.e. Bhṛgu) took up the head (of the lady) himself and joined it to her body. Taking up water he said:

144. "O truthful lady, I am hereby resuscitating you who had been killed by Viṣṇu. If all virtues and holy rites have been understood and practised by me, come to life. If I speak the truth, come to life, thanks to that truth".

145. Thus addressed with the emphasis on truth, the gentle lady regained her life. Then he sprinkled her with cool water and uttered, "Get up".

146. On seeing her getting up as if from sleep, all living beings loudly applauded "Well done ! Well done !" Such an applause of invisible (incorporeal) voices arose from all the quarters.

147. Even as all living beings were observing, the lady was resuscitated to life by Bhṛgu. That was really miraculous.

148. On seeing his wife resuscitated to life by Bhṛgu without the least agitation Śakra was not at all happy, because he was afraid of Kāvya (all the more).

149. Indra had no sleep at all (after the incident). The intelligent chastiser of Pāka (i.e. Indra) called his daughter Jayantī and spoke to her.

150. "O daughter, this Kāvya is performing a terrible penance for the sake of my destruction (lit. Indra-less-ness). I have been rendered much dispirited by that (Brāhmaṇa) of great fortitude.

151. Go and honour him with auspicious (services) removing his fatigue and by rendering alertly and deligently service pleasing to his mind".

152-154. The gentle lady Jayantī, the daughter of Indra, of auspicious conduct, saw Kāvya engaged in meditation. Although he was weak, he was quiet and self-possessed, endowed with fortitude, as her father had already mentioned to her. She rendered every service to Kāvya in accordance with the behest of her father. In sweet and pleasing words she eulogised him. Frequently she massaged his body and served him in various other pleasant ways. Thus she stayed there for many years.

155. When the terrible rite of inhaling the smoke lasting

for a thousand years was completed, the delighted Bhava asked him to choose a boon freely.

156-160. He said thus : "O Brāhmaṇa, such an observance (of a vow) as this has been performed by you alone and not by anyone (so far). Hence you will excel all Devas in penance, intellect, learning, strength and brilliance. O son of Bhṛgu, whatever I possess by way of the esoteric secret of Yajñas, Upaniṣads etc. along with their ancillaries and esoteric secrets (*Rahasya*) will be known to you alone, from the beginning to the end and not to anyone else. Thereby you will become an excellent Brāhmaṇa surpassing all". Thus granting the boons one after the other, to the son of Bhṛgu, he granted him invincibility, lordship of wealth and immunity from death. On attaining these boons, Kāvya became exhilarated. Hairs on his body stood on their end due to excessive pleasure.

161. Due to his excessive joy, the following hymn to the lord Maheśvara manifested itself. Prostrating (before the Lord), he eulogised Nīlalohita (Lord Śiva):

The Hymn to Śambhu[1] (Lord Śiva)

162. "Obeisance to *Śitikaṇṭha* (Blue-throated god) to *Surūpa* (of good form), to *Suwarcas* (of good brilliance), to *Ririhāṇa* (one who exhibits the mystic *mudrā* of frequently licking with the tongue), to *Lopa* (the destroyer), to *Vatsara* (the presiding deity of the year), to the *Jagatpati* (the lord of the universe).

163. To *Kapardin* (having matted hair), to *Ūrdhwaroman* (having hair standing up erect), to *Haya* (the horse), to *Karaṇa* (the instrument), to *Saṁskṛta* (the consecrated), to *Sutīrtha* (the holy centre), to *Deva-deva* (Lord of Devas), to *Raṁhas* (velocity personified).

164. To *Uṣṇiṣin* (one with a turban or turban-wearer), to *Suvaktra* (one with a charming face), to *Sahasrākṣa* (god with a thousand eyes), to *Miḍhvan* (bountiful), to *Vasureta* (distributer

1. Praising deity by giving him/her various attributes is found common in the Mbh. and Purāṇas. This hymn of Śiva is strongly influenced by Rudrādhyāya from *Tait. Saṁhitā IV.* 5 as most of the epithets of Rudra mentioned therein are incorporated here.

(?) of wealth), to *Rudra* (terrific roarer), to the performer of penance, to *Cīravāsas* (wearer of bark garments).

165-166. To *Hrasva* (the short), to *Muktakeśa* (one with untied tresses of hair), to *Senānī* (the commander-in-chief of the army of gods), to *Kavi* (the poet), to *Rājavṛddha* (the old ruler), to *Takṣakakrīḍana* (one who plays with Takṣaka), to *Giriśa* (Lord of mountains), to *Arkanetra* (god with the sun as the eye), to the ascetic, to *Jāmbava**, to *Suvṛtta* (one of good antecedents), to *Suhasta* (one with good hands), to *Dhanvin* (one wielding a bow), to *Bhārgava* (a good archer).

167. To *Sahasrabāhu* (one with a thousand i.e. infinite arms), to *Sahasrāmalacakṣus* (one with a thousand clean eyes), to *Sahasrakukṣi* (one with a thousand bellies), to *Sahasracaraṇa* (one with a thousand feet).

168. To *Sahasraśiras* (one with a thousand heads), to *Bahurūpa* (multi-formed), to *Viśvarūpa* (immanent in the universe), to *Śveta* (the white one), to *Puruṣa* (primordial man).

169. To *Niṣaṅgin* (one with a quiver), to *Kavacin* (one wearing a coat of mail), to *Sūkṣma* (the subtle one), to *Kṣapaṇa* (the destroyer), to *Tāmra* (the copper-coloured), to *Śiva* (the benevolent one).

170. To *Babhru* (the tawny-coloured), to *Piśaṅga* (reddish brown), to *Piṅgala* (yellowsih brown), to *Aruṇa* (the pink coloured), to *Mahādeva* (the great god), to *Śarva* (the destroyer), to *Viśvarūpaśiva** (the auspicious omnipresent god).

171. To *Hiraṇya* (the golden one), to *Śiṣṭa* (the self-controlled one), to *Śreṣṭha* (the excellent one), to *Madhyama* (the middling), to *Pinākin* (wielding the bow Pināka), to *Iṣumān* (possessing arrows), to *Citra* (the miraculous one or one of variegated colours), to *Rohita* (reddish-tinged).

172. To *Dundubhya* (worthy of being honoured with the sound of war-drums), to *Ekapāda* (single-footed), to *Arha* (the deserving), to *Buddhi* (the intellect), to *Mṛgavyādha* (one who has assumed the form of a hunter of deer in Dakṣa's sacrifice), to *Sarpa* (the serpent), to *Sthāṇu* (motionless like a tree-trunk in meditation), to *Bhīṣaṇa* (the terrible).

---

*Bd. P. reads : Ājyapā (imbiber of ghee-offering).

173. To *Bahurūpa* (the multiformed), to *Ugra* (the fierce), to *Trinetra* (the three-eyed), to *Īśvara* (the supreme ruler), to *Kapila* (tawny-coloured or identical with Kapila), to *Ekavīra* (the single hero), to *Mṛtyu* (the death), to *Tryaṁbaka* (the three-eyed).

174. To *Vāstoṣpati* (the protective deity presiding over the foundation of a house), to *Vināka* (one beyond heaven), to *Śaṅkara* (the benefactor), to *Śiva* (the auspicious one), to *Āraṇya* (the forest-dweller), to *Gṛhastha* (the householder), to the *Brahmacārin* (the religious student observing celibacy).

175. To the *Sāṅkhya* (one accessible through the *Sāṅkhya* system of philosophy), to *Yoga* (one realizable through the Yoga system), to *Dhyānin* (the meditating one), to *Dikṣita* (the initiated), to *Antarhita* (unmanifest, hidden), to *Śarva* (destroyer of the world), to *Mānya* (the honourable), to *Mālin* (one wearing garland).

176. To *Buddha* (the enlightened one), to *Śuddha* (the pure), to *Mukta* (the liberated one), to *Kevala* (the sole one without a second), to *Rodhas* (staying on the mountain slope), to *Cekitāna* (the sentient), to *Brahmiṣṭha* (merged in Brahman), to *Maharṣi* (the great sage).

177. To *Catuṣpāda* (one having four feet), to *Medhya* (one worthy of sacrifice), to *Dharmin* (the virtuous), to wearer of an armour (*Varmin* as in Bd.P. v. 178), to *Śighraga* (one going fast), to Śikhaṇḍin (one with tuft of hair), to *Kapāla* (one holding the human skull), to *Daṁṣṭrin* (one with curved fangs), to *Viśvamedhas* (of universal intellect).

178. To *Apratighāta* (the unimpeded), to *Dīpta* (the illuminated), to *Bhāskara* (the creator of lustre), to *Sumedhas* (of excellent intellect), to *Krūra* (the cruel one), to *Vikṛta* (the deformed), to *Bibhatsa* (the hideous), to *Śiva* (auspicious).

179. To *Saumya* (the gentle one), to *Puṇya* (the meritorious) to *Dhārmika* (the righteous), to *Śubha* (the auspicious), to *Avadhya* (one who cannot be killed), to *Mṛtāṅga* (one whose body is dead?), to *Nitya* (the eternal one), to *Śāśvata* (the perpetual one).

180. To *Sādya* (one with a beginning), to *Śarabha* (the eight-footed fabulous animal), to *Śūlin* (the trident-bearing god), to *Tricakṣus* (the three-eyed god), to *Somapa* (the imbiber of Soma

juice), to *Ājyapa* (the imbiber of ghee), to *Dhūmapa* (the inhaler of smoke), to *Ūṣmapa* (drinker of hot stuff).

181. To *Śuci* (the pure and clean), to *Rerihāṇa* (one repeatedly licking), to *Sadyojāta* (born in a trice), to *Mṛtyu* (death), to *Piśitāśa* (the meat-eater), to *Kharva* (the dwarfish), to *Megha* (the cloud), to *Vaidyuta* (the lightning).

182. To *Vyāśrita* (having no dependent), to *Śraviṣṭha* (the most famous), to *Bhārata* (one engaged in brilliant light), to *Antarikṣa* (the firmament), to *Kṣama* (the competent), to *Sahamāna* (the enduring), to *Satya* (the truthful), to *Tapana* (the blazing one).

183. To *Tripuraghna* (the destroyer of the three cities), to *Dipta* (the illuminated), to the *Cakra* (the discus), to *Romaśa* (the hairy one), to *Tigmāyudha* (having sharp weapons), to *Medhya* (the cleanest), to Siddha, to Pulasti.

184. To *Rocamāna* (one who is appealing), to *Khaṇḍa*, to *Sphita* (the flourishing), to *Ṛṣabha* (the bull, the chief one), to *Bhogin* (the enjoyer), to *Yuñjamāna* (the united one), to *Śānta* (the quiescent one), to *Ūrdhvaretas* (of sublimated sexuality).

185. To *Aghaghna* (the destroyer of sins), to *Makhaghna* (destroyer of Dakṣa's sacrifice), to *Mṛtyu* (god of death), to *Yajñiya* (one belonging to sacrifice), to *Kṛśānu* (fire), to *Pracetā*, to *Vahni* (the fire, bearer of offerings), to *Kiśala* (?)

186. To *Sikatya* (belonging to sand?), to *Prasanna* (the delighted), to *Vareṇya* (the most excellent), to *Cakṣus* (the eye), to *Kṣipragu* (having a fast bull), to *Pramedhya* (the excessively pure), to *Piva* (the corpulent one?)

187. To *Rakṣoghna* (the destroyer of Rākṣasas), to *Paśughna* (destroyer of animals), to *Vighna* (the obstacle), to *Śayana* (the lying one), to *Vibhrānta* (the revolving one), to *Mahānta* (having great end), to *Anti* (the nearest one), to *Durgama* (difficult to attain).

188. To *Dakṣa* (the dexterous), to *jaghanya* (the last one), to the lord of the worlds, to *Anāmaya* (the non-ailing), to *Ūrdhva* (the topmost one), to *Saṁhatya Adhiṣṭhita* (to one estabilished in masses).

189. To *Hiraṇyabāhu* (of golden arms), to *Satya* (the truthful), to *Śamana* (the tranquiliser), to *Asikalpa* (one like a

sword), to *Māgha* (the month Māgha), to *Ririṇya* (?), to *Ekacakṣus* (the one-eyed).

190. To *Śreṣṭha* (the excellent one), to *Vāmadeva*, to *Īśāna* (supreme ruler), to *Dhimān* (the intelligent one), to *Mahākalpa*, to *Dipta* (the illuminated), to *Rodana* (the crying), to *Hāsa* (the laughing).

191. To *Vṛtadhanvan* (*Dṛḍhadhanvan*—having firm bow), to *Kavacin* (one wearing a coat of mail), to *Rathin* (having a chariot), to *Varūthin* (having a host of army), to *Bhṛgunātha* (the lord of Bhṛgu), to Śukra, to *Vahniriṣṭa* (?), to *Dhīmān* (the intelligent).

192. To *Agha* (the sin), to *Aghaśaṁsa* (the despiser of sin), to *Vipriya* (having no beloved), to *Priya* (the beloved). O *Digvāsas* (having the quarters as garments), obeisance be to you, the wearer of elephant hide and destroyer of Bhaga.

193. Obeisance to the lord of *Paśus* (individual souls), to the lord of living beings. Obeisance to *Praṇava*, the Ṛk, the Yajus and the Sāman, to *Svadhā* and *Sudhā* (nectar).

194. Obeisance to you of the form of *Vaṣaṭkāra*. Obeisance to you, O *Antātman* (soul of all ends). Obeisance to you, the creator, the sustainer, and the annihilator, to the *Hotṛ* and the destroyer.

195. Obeisance to you, of the form of Kāla, past, present and future. Obeisance to Vasu, Sādhya, Rudra, Āditya and Aśvin.

196. Obeisance to you, the Viśva (Viśvedevas), to Maruts, the Ātman of Devas. You are Agni, Soma, Ṛtvik, *Ijyā* (sacrifice), the sacrificial animal, the Mantra and the medicine.

197. You are *Dakṣiṇā*, *Avabhṛtha* (sacred ablution of concluding rites), and the *Yajña* itself. You are *Tapas* (penance), *Satya* (truth), *Tyāga* (renunciation) and *Śama* (self-control).

198. Obeisance to you, the embodiment of nonviolence and non-covetousness. You are of good demeanour, the surpassing one. Obeisance to you, the *Yogātman* (of Yogic Soul), the soul of all living beings.

199. Obeisance to you, of the form of all worlds, the earth, the firmament, the heaven, Mahar, Jana, Tapas and Satya (Lokas).

200. Obeisance to you, the unmanifest, the great, the element, the sense organs, the Tanmātras, the end of the *Mahat*. Obeisance to you, of the form of the Reality.

201. Obeisance to you, the eternal one, the Arthaliṅga (of meaningful index?), the subtle one, the sentient, the pure, the omnipresent, the permanent soul.

202. Obeisance to you in the three worlds beginning with Bhūḥ and ending with Svaḥ (i.e. Bhūḥ, Bhuvaḥ and Svaḥ) and in the four worlds beginning with Satya and ending with Mahaḥ (i.e. Satya, Tapas, Jana and Mahaḥ).

203. O lord, you are friend and sympathiser of Brāhmaṇas. In this prayer of obeisance both correct and incorrect things[1] have been uttered by me. It behoves you to forgive everything thinking like "He is my devotee".

CHAPTER THIRTYSIX

Glorification of Viṣṇu's Greatness

Sūta said :

1-2. After propitiating Īśāna, Nīlalohita, the lord of Devas, Śukra spoke words of prayer bowing to him with palms joined in reverence uttering *Brahman* (Vedic Mantras). Śiva who was delighted, touched the body of Kāvya with his hand, accorded him a full vision of His own form and vanished there itself.

3. When the lord of the Devas[2] had vanished, he spoke the following words to Jayantī who was standing near him, with palms joined in reverence.

1. The reading '*sadasat*' needs emendation as '*yadasat*' as in Bd.P. 2.3.72, 195 as there is no point in begging pardon for saying correct things.

2. The obscure reading *deveśānucare* is probably a scribal error and should be emended as *deve sānucare* 'God (Śiva) along with his retinue'. Bd. P. 2.3.73.3 supports the emendation suggested.

4. "O beautiful lady, whose (daughter) are you? When I was distressed, you too were distressed. Who are you? What for did you take care of me when I was performing the great penance ?

5. O lady of beautiful hips, O fair-complexioned one, I am delighted with your steady devotion, humility, self-control and affection.

6. O beautiful damsel, what do you wish? What is your cherished desire which should be fully gratified? Even if it be very difficult to be fulfilled, I shall get it realised (for you)".

7. On being asked thus, Jayantī said : "O sage merged in Brahman, it behoves you to know it by means of the power of your penance. In fact, you already know precisely what I have desired to achieve".

8. On being told thus, the sage saw everything by means of his divine vision and said: "O beautiful maiden, you are the daughter of Mahendra. You have come here to render service to me.

9. O woman of beautiful lips, O lustrous woman, you desire to live in contact with me for ten years without being seen by any other living being.

10. O beautiful lady with (brilliant) complexion of the Lord of Devas and of fire* ! O lady of beautiful eyes, you choose (the fulfilment of your) desire from me, O lady of sweet voice.

11. Let it be, O fascinating woman, we shall go home". Thereafter the holy lord returned to his abode, accompanied by Jayantī.

12. He stayed along with her for ten years. Being enveloped with Māyā (illusive power), he was invisible to all living beings.

13. On seeing (learning) that Kāvya had returned after realising his desires, all Daityas delightedly came to his house desirous of seeing him.

---

*For '*devendrānalavarṇābhe*' hereof, Bd. P. v. 10 reads '*devīndranīlavarṇābhe*' 'O goddess with the shining lustre of blue sapphires' which is worth consideration.

14. Having gone there, they could not see their preceptor who was concealed by Jayantī. Thinking that it was part of his clever strategy*, they returned to their respective homes.

15-16. On knowing that Kāvya was held in restraint by Jayantī for ten years in her desire to do what was beneficial to her father, Bṛhaspati knew that to be an opportunity offered by Daityas. He assumed the form of Kāvya, the preceptor of Daityas, and spoke to Asuras.

17. Looking at the Asuras who had assembled, Bṛhaspati said : "Welcome to my disciples for whom I perform sacrifices. For your welfare, I have come back to this place.

18. I shall teach you all. That (great) Vidyā has been acquired by me". With a delighted mind, then they approached him for the sake of attaining the Vidyā.

19-20. After the period of ten years was over, Śukra's ambition was completely realised. (His delusion vanished) and his intellect was awakened at the same time. At the end of the period of agreement, Devayānī, his daughter was born (of Jayantī). Then Śukra decided to look after his disciples.

21. Śukra said: "O gentle lady, let us go to see your disciples, O lady of sweet smiles and of tremulous eyes, O chaste lady, O lady of large eyes of three colours".

22. The lady replied : "O sage of great holy rites, please resort to your disciples. It is the sacred Dharma, O Brāhmaṇa. I shall not make you swerve from it."

Sūta said :

23. Then he went to Asuras and saw that they had been deceived by the intelligent preceptor of Devas by assuming the form of Kāvya. He spoke to Asuras :

24. "O dear ones, know me to be the (real) Kāvya. This is the son of Aṅgiras. O Dānavas, in spite of my power, you have been deceived".

**dākṣiṇya.* But *lakṣaṇam* (the sign of his non-return), in Bd. P. ibid. v. 14.

25. On hearing him speak thus, Daityas were confused. They looked at both of them smiling pleasantly.*

26. They stood there utterly confused. They were unable to understand anything. When they were (seen) confused like this, Kāvya spoke to them again :

27. "I am your preceptor Kāvya. This is the praceptor of Devas, the son of Aṅgiras. All of you follow me. Leave off this Bṛhaspati".

28. On being addressed thus, all the Asuras stood gazing at them. They could not see any difference between them.

29-30. Unperturbed by anything, Bṛhaspati told them: "O Daityas, this is Aṅgiras. I am Kāvya, your preceptor. This is Bṛhaspati in my guise. O Asuras, he deludes you all by assuming my form". On hearing his words, they consulted one another and spoke these words:

31. "This holy lord and sage has been imparting instructions to us continuously for the last ten years. This Brāhmaṇa is desirous of coming in between".

32. Then all those Dānavas bowed to and paid respects to him (Bṛhaspati in the guise of Kāvya). Deluded by a long practice they accepted only his words.

33. All the infuriated Asuras spoke to him (the real Kāvya) (staring at him) with reddened eyes: "This is our preceptor and benefactor. You may go. You are not our preceptor.

34. Whether he is Bhārgava (son of Bhṛgu) or Āṅgirasa (son of Aṅgiras) let him be our preceptor. We shall abide by his guidance. Do not tarry (here any longer). That will be in your interest."

35-37. After saying this, all the Asuras resorted to Bṛhaspati (as their teacher). When the Asuras did not accept his suggestion for their great benefit, Bhārgava became angry at their arrogance. He told them again : "O Dānavas, although I had apprised (and instructed) you, you are not resorting to me. Hence, you will become deficient in sense and will attain defeat after defeat". After saying this to them, Kāvya went away the way he had come.

*The word *sitāsita* is obscure. Bd. P. v. 25 read *sthirāsīnau* which means 'sitting firmly'.

38. On realising that the Asuras had been cursed by Kāvya. Bṛhaspati got his object fulfilled. With great delight, he re-assumed his own real form. To his great contentment, he realised that the Asuras had fallen and doomed and he vanished from the scene.

39. When he had disappeared, the dismayed Dānavas spoke to one another: "Oh fie upon us! In this matter we have been deceived.

40. We have erred in our duties. So the fate is against and we have been struck by it. We have been used (by him i.e. Bṛhaspati) in his own interest and burnt by means of his Māyā".

41-42. Then the Asuras became extremely frightened of the Devas and fled from that place. Keeping Prahlāda at the head, they approached Kāvya again. On approaching him, they stood there with heads bent down. On seeing his disciples (lit. ones for whose benefit he performed Yajñas) Kāvya said to them:

43. "In spite of being cautioned by me at the proper time, you did not honour and respect me. So, on account of that arrogance, you met with a defeat".

44. Then Prahlāda entreated him: "O Bhārgava, (please) give up (forget) your wounded sense of honour. O Bhārgava, do not forsake us, your own disciples, particularly attached to you with devotion and prayerfulness.

45-46. When asked by you, we had been deluded by the preceptor of Devas. Knowing this by means of your long-ranged vision, it behoves you to save us. O son of Bhṛgu, if you are not going to favour us, we are (no better than) cursed by you. So we shall enter *Rasātala* (the nether worlds) to-day."

Sūta said :

47. On being thus implored, eulogised and informed Kāvya realised the truth. Out of mercy and sympathy, he controlled his anger.

48. He spoke these words : "Do not be afraid. Do not go to Rasātala. Even though I was alert this incident befell you because it was inevitable.

49. Destiny which is very powerfu. cannot be altered. The sense that you have lost, you will regain now.

50. Brahmā too had mentioned that the period adverse to you had arrived. It was due to my favour that you had enjoyed the great pleasures of the three worlds (so long).

51. For full ten Yugas you have reigned over Devas. Brahmā has ordained your rulership only for that length of period.

52. In the Sāvarṇika Manvantara you will again have suzerainty. Your grandson Bali will become the lord of all the worlds.

53. It has been mentioned by Brahmā himself to me that when later on the worlds will be seized from him, his power of penance will not be of any avail.

54. Since his activities will be devoid of undue attachment, Brahmā will be pleased with him and (the kingdom) will be bestowed on him in the Sāvarṇika Manvantara.

55. The lord has told me, 'The kingdom of Devas will come to Bali'. Hence he bides his time remaining invisible to all living beings.

56. You have been granted immortality by the delighted self-born deity. Hence, without exhibiting undue curiosity and agitation you have to bear with the change.

57. Before the (proper) time, it is not possible for me to save you. O lord, I have been forbidden by Brahmā who knows the future.

58. These two are my disciples. They are equal to me.* and Bṛhaspati. They will sustain you all when attacked by Devas."

59. When the Daityas, the chief of whom was Prahlāda, were given this advice by Kāvya of indefatigable energy and activity, they went away along with those two (disciples i.e. Ṣaṇḍa and Amārka).

60. On hearing about the inevitability of future events

*Probably Ṣaṇḍa and Amārka are mentioned here as will be clear by later verses 63 etc.

from Śukra, Dānavas took the words of Kāvya to mean victory for them (at least) for once.

61-62. They equipped themselves with various weapons and the coats of mail and challenged Devas for fighting. On seeing Asuras advanced for battle, Devas got ready with all equipments and fought them in return. The battle between Devas and Asuras continued for a hundred years. Asuras defeated Devas. The beaten and distressed Devas spoke thus among themselves.

63-65. Devas said : "We do not know the (extent of the) power of Ṣaṇḍa and Amārka on Asuras. Hence, what is conducive to our welfare must be done by preparing for a Yajña. After knowing about and capturing those two, we will defeat Asuras".

Devas then invited both Ṣaṇḍa and Amārka and said, "We shall invite you for the Yajña. O Brāhmaṇas, forsake Asuras. After defeating them we will make you receive a share".

66. In this manner, Ṣaṇḍa and Amārka thereafter forsook Asuras. Devas were victorious and Dānavas suffered disastrous defeat.

67-69. After defeating Asuras, Devas approached Ṣaṇḍa and Amārka. Asuras who had already been overwhelmed by the curse of Kāvya had no support now. Harassed by Devas, they entered Rasātala. Thus Dānavas were crippled and rendered inactive by Śakra.

Thereafter, whenever the cult of Yajñas and other holy rites was slack, Lord Viṣṇu incarnated again and again as a result of Bhṛgu's curse*, in order to stabilise Dharma and destroy Adharma.

70. Lord Brahmā pronounced that all those Asuras who did not follow the directions of Prahlāda would be killed by human beings.

71. Hence Nārāyaṇa was born of Dharma in the Cākṣuṣa

*Viṣṇu's incarnations were due to Bhṛgu's curse. Verses 71ff. give the list of those incarnations but they are different from our usual list (*vide* Intro., Vaiṣṇavism).

Manvantara. In the Vaivasvata Manvantara, he popularised Yajña in Caitya[1] (sacrificial shed).

72-73. At the time of the manifestation of the other (i.e. Pṛthu) Brahmā himself was the priest. In the fourth Yuga, when Asuras[2] were in distress, he was born within the ocean for the purpose of killing Hiraṇyakaśipu[3].

The second (incarnation was that of the terrible Narasiṁha, keeping Suras at the head.

74. The third incarnation, that of Vāmana, took place in the seventh Tretāyuga when all the three worlds had been overrun by Daityas and were ruled over by Bali.

75-76. Withdrawing all the limbs within himself (Assuming the form of a Dwarf) the son of Aditi approached the son of Virocana, Bali, the king of Daityas, who was performing a Yajña. Bṛhaspati too accompanied him. Assuming the form of a Brāhmaṇa on an auspicious occasion, he requested Bali: "O king, you are the lord of the three worlds. Everything is in you. It behoves you to grant me (the space covered by) three paces".

77. "I will give", promised the king Bali, the son of Virocana. On knowing that he was a Vāmana (dwarf), he was delighted much.

78. But, O excellent Brāhmaṇas, that lord Vāmana measured the entire Universe, the Earth, the Heaven and the Sky by means of three paces.

79. That Bhūtātman (the immanent soul of all living beings) of great fame excelled even the sun by means of his brilliance. He illuminated all the quarters and the intermediate directions with his refulgence.

80. The mighty-armed Janārdana brightened up all the worlds and shone. Seizing the royal glory of Asuras from all the three worlds, he forced them to retreat to the bottom of the nether-world along with their sons and grandsons.

---

1. 'Vainya' i.e. King Pṛthu in Bd. P. v. 72. It is a better reading as this and other sources give the credit of Yajña to Pṛthu in this Manvantara.

2. *Suras* (in Bd. P. v. 74) is the correct reading.

3. It implies Varāha incarnation, but Varāha killed Hiraṇyākṣa and Nṛsiṁha incarnation was for killing Hiraṇyakaśipu.

81. Namuci, Śaṁbara and Prahlāda (were among them). The cruel Dānavas were killed. Those who were rudely shaken were forced to flee in various directions.

82. Mādhava, the immanent soul of all living beings showed, the Brāhmaṇas there a great miracle, viz. all the great elements with their special features and the entire Time.

83. They saw the entire Universe and themselves in his cosmic body. There was nothing in the worlds which was not pervaded by the noble-souled lord.

84. Seeing that form of Upendra (i.e. Vāmana) Devas, Dānavas and human beings were fascinated. All of them were enchanted by Viṣṇu's refulgence.

85. Bali was bound with great nooses along with his kinsmen, friends and followers. The entire race of Virocana was consigned to Pātāla.

86. After handing back the entire riches and glory of Devas to the noble-souled Indra, the mighty-armed Janārdana manifested himself before the human world.

87. These three incarnations of the lord were divine and auspicious. Listen and understand the seven incarnations as human beings as a result of the curse.

88. In the tenth Tretāyuga when Dharma had been ruined he had his fourth incarnation as Dattātreya with Mārkaṇḍeya as his preceptor.

89. His fifth incarnation was in the fifteenth Tretāyuga as Māndhātṛ, the Emperor. Tathya (Utathya?) was his preceptor.

90. The sixth incarnation was that as the son of Jamadagni in the nineteenth Tretāyuga. He annihilated all the Kṣatriyas. He had Viśvāmitra as his preceptor (Purohita).

91. In the twentyfourth Tretāyuga, he took his seventh incarnation as Rāma, the son of Daśaratha. In his sacrifice Vasiṣṭha was his priest. It was for the purpose of killing Rāvaṇa.

92. In the twentyeighth Dvāpara Yuga, Viṣṇu took his eighth incarnation as Vedavyāsa born of Parāśara. He had Jātukarṇa as the preceptor.

93. Viṣṇu who had been born earlier as the son of Aditi and Kaśyapa took his ninth incarnation as the son of Devakī and Vasudeva with the Brāhmaṇa Gārgya as his preceptor.

94-95. The lord is *Aprameya* (one who cannot be measured). He is *Niyojya** (freely ordered about and employed by devotees). He moves about as he pleases. He has full self-control. He sports about in the world like a boy playing with toys. This mighty-armed Madhusūdana cannot be measured. There is nothing greater than the cosmic form of the Lord.

96-97. In the twentyeighth Dvāpara Yuga, when a slight portion of the end of Dvāpara remained and when Dharma had been destroyed, Lord Viṣṇu was born in the family of Vṛṣṇis in order to establish Dharma and destroy Asuras. By means of his Yogic Māyā, the Yogic soul fascinated all living beings.

98. Entering human womb, he moved about on the Earth fully concealed (from the view of ordinary mortals) for the sake of the sport among the human beings. He was accompanied by Sāndīpani as his preceptor.

99-100. In that incarnation, the powerful lord slew the following Daityas who had taken human bodies : Kaṁsa, Śālva, Dvivida the great Asura, Ariṣṭa, Vṛṣabha, Keśin the horse, Kuvalayāpīḍa the elephant, the chief of wrestlers, the officer in-charge of the abode (of Kaṁsa) (Cāṇūra) and the demoness Pūtanā.

101. The thousand arms of Bāṇa of wonderful exploits were cut off by him. The Asura Naraka and the powerful (Kāla-) Yavana were killed by him in battle.

102. All the precious gems and jewels of kings were confiscated by him through his splendid refulgence. All the kings of evil conduct in Rasātala were killed by him.

103-104. These incarnations of the noble-souled lord were for the sake of the benefit of the worlds.

In this Kaliyuga, towards its close, when the period of junction will begin, the powerful Kalki will be born under the name Viṣṇuyaśas, as the son of Parāśara. He will be accompanied by Yājñavalkya as his preceptor. This is his tenth and future incarnation.

---

*Better *a-niyojya* 'uncontrollable; one who cannot be ordered' as in Bd.P. It fits here with an *Avagraha* (S)— *aprameyo' niyojyaśca.*

105-109. He will be leading all the armies consisting of elephants, horses and chariots. He will be surrounded by hundreds and thousands of Brāhmaṇas armed with weapons. He will be killing those who are not very religious and those who hate religion, viz. the northerners, those of the middle lands, those who live to the west of the Vindhya mountain, the southerners (such as) Draviḍas along with Siṁhalese, Gāndhāras, Pāradas, Pahlavas, Yavanas, Śakas, Tuṣāras, Barbaras, Pulindas, Daradas,Khaśas, Laṁpākas, Andhakas, Rudras and Kiratas. The powerful lord will destroy Mlecchas making his discus whirl. He will be invisible to all living beings and move about on the Earth.

110. Viṣṇu will be born as a human being with a part of the intelligent god. In the previous birth he would have been born as the powerful Pramiti.

111. In bodily splendour he was (will be) like the moon and will be born when the Kaliyuga is complete. Thus the ten incarnations of the lord have been recounted.

112. The lord takes incarnations in the different periods with a part of his powerful splendour in the three worlds for different purposes and ends in view. He is born in different wombs in accordance with the function he has to perform.

113. When the twentyfifth Kalpa has started and twenty-five years have elapsed, he will be killing all living being and men.

114. By means of his ruthless activities he will make the Earth left with only the seeds. He would have (then) massacred all Vṛṣalas and almost all impious persons.

115-120. Then Kalki will have achieved his object along with his army. The subjects then would be destroyed by their own actions. But they will become Siddhas again by themselves.

Urged by the inevitable destiny, they will become unreasonable, infuriated and deluded, causing mutual destruction. Along with his followers, he will undertake eternal rest in the middle of Gaṅgā and Yamunā. When Kalki passes away the kings will die along with their ordinary soldiers. People will

be without anyone to restrain them.[1] When the arrangement for security ceases to be, they will kill one another in battle. The will lose confidence in one another. They will be fretting and fuming and will be extremely distressed. Having no belonging left, they will leave off their cities and villages together. All the Vedic Dharmas will be defunct. All the rites of castes and stages of life will be extinct. People will be short in stature and short-lived. They will be residing in forests.

121-125. They will be resorting to rivers and mountains. Leaves, roots and fruits will constitute their diet. They will be wearing leaves and barks of trees or hides. There will be a highly indiscriminate fusion of castes. In the last junction of the Kali age they will be short-lived and highly distressed. Their means of sustenance will be destroyed. They will be overwhelmed with many adversities. They will undergo sufferings. The people will be completely extinct along with the Kali age. When the Kali age lapses and the Kṛta Yuga starts again, all objects will regain their original forms naturally and not otherwise. Thus I have recounted the activities of Devas and Asuras. In the context of the narration of Yadu race the great fame of Viṣṇu has been recounted. I shall now recount the race of Turvasu, Pūru and Druhyu.

CHAPTER THIRTYSEVEN[2]

Royal Dynasties
(Conclusion of the Anuṣaṅga Section)

Sūta said :

1. Vahni was the son of Turvasu. Gobhānu was the son of Vahni[3]. The unconquered heroic Trisānu was Gobhānu's son.

---

1. These verses (to the end of the chapter) describe a gloomy picture of the society at the end of Kali Yuga. All Purāṇas are unanimous in depicting the terrible state of the public as Kali advances.
2. This chapter correspond to Bd.P. 2.3.74. Reference are to verse numbers.
3. Genealogy of Turvasu as recorded in *AITH,* p. 149 shows Garbha as the predecessor of Gobhānu.

2. Karandhama was the son of Trisānu and his son was Marutta. Another Marutta mentioned before was the son of Avikṣit. He was also a king.

3. Marutta was childless. I have heard that he too was a king. All the (people) made Duṣkṛta[1] a descendant of Pūru, his son.

4. Thus, due to the curse of Yayāti in connection with the transference of his old age the line of Turvasu merged with that of Pūru.

5. The successor of Duṣkṛta was the king named Śarūtha. After Śarūtha came Janāpīḍa and he had four sons.

6. They were Pāṇḍya, Kerala, Cola and Kulya with their kingdoms named after them, viz. Pāṇḍya, Kerala, Cola and Kulya.

7. Druhyu had two heroic sons well known as Babhru and Setu. Aruddha was the son of Setu and Ripu was the son of Babhru.

8. This strong (king) Ripu was killed in war with very great difficulty by Yauvanāśva. Their great war lasted continuously for fourteen months.

9. Aruddha's successor was the king named Gāndhāra after whom the great lan d of Gāndhāra took its name.[2]

10. The horses bred in Gāndhāra land are the most excellent horses. Gāndhāra's son was Dharma and Ghṛta (Dhṛta) was his son.

11. Durdama was born to Ghṛta (Dhṛta) and his son was Pracetas. A hundred sons were born to Pracetas. All of them were kings.

12. All of them were the rulers of the Mleccha territory in the northern direction (region). Anu had three noble-souled sons. All of them were highly righteous.

13. They were Sabhānara, Pakṣa and Parapakṣa. The son of Sabhānara was the scholarly king Kālānala.

14. Kālānala's son was the pious-souled Sṛñjaya who was righteous. The heroic king Purañjaya was the son of Sṛñjaya.

---

1. Duṣyanta in Bd. P.v. 3.

2. This shows that Druhyu's descendants ruled over a part of Afghanistan.

15. Janamejaya of great strength and vitality was the son of the saintly king Purañjaya.

16. This king was equal to Indra. His fame was established (even) in heaven. Mahāmanas was the son of Mahāśāla. He was very pious.

17. He was the lord of the seven continents. He was an emperor of great fame. Mahāmanas procreated two famous sons.

18. They were Uśīnara the knower of Dharma and Titikṣu the righteous. Uśīnara had five wives. They were born of the races of saintly kings.

19. They were Mṛgā (Nṛgā in Bd. P.), Kṛmī, Navā, Darvā and Dṛṣadvatī the fifth. Uśīnara had five sons from them. They made his race flourish. They were virtuous and grew old with the performance of great penance.

20. Mṛga (Nṛga in Bd. P.) was the son of Mṛgā (Nṛgā), Nava was the son of Navā. Kṛmi was the son of Kṛmī and Suvrata, the virtuous, was the son of Darvā.

21-22. O Brāhmaṇas, the son of Dṛṣadvatī was (popularly called) Auśīnara Śivi. The city of Śivi was famous as Śivapura[1] and that of Mṛga was the Yaudheya city. Navarāṣṭram belonged to Nava and the city Kṛmilā to Kṛmi. That of Suvrata was Vṛṣṭā (Ambaṣṭha). Now listen and understand Śivi's sons.

23. The four sons of Śivi called Śivis were very popular among the people. They were Vṛṣadarbha, Suvīra, Kekaya and Madraka.

24. Their territories were very flourishing. They were Vṛṣadarbhas, Sūcīdarbhas, Kekayas and Madrakas. Now listen to the progeny of Titikṣu.

---

1. These places are located as follows :
   (I) Śivapura—The country of Siaposh. It includes Kafiristan (DE. 211).
   (II) Yaudheya—The country between the Hydaspes and the Indus (DE 215)
   (III) Navarāṣṭra—Nausari in Baroach Dist. of Gujarat (DE 139).
   (IV) Kṛmilā—untraced.

25. The mighty-armed son of Titikṣu named Uśadratha was the well-known king in the eastern quarter. His son was Hema.

26-32. Sutapā was born to Hema and Bali was the son of Sutapas* (Bd. P.). The noble-minded Bali who was a great Yogin was bound (by Vāmana). He took birth in the human womb, being desirous of children, as the family was nearing extinction due to absence of issues. He begot sons who established the disciplines of four castes on this earth. He procreated the sons Aṅga, Vaṅga, Sulha, Puṇḍra and Kaliṅga. These are called Bāleya Kṣatras (the Kṣatriyas born of Bali). That lord had Brāhmaṇa sons also called Bāleya Brāhmaṇas. They established the line (of Bali). Many boons were granted to the intelligent Bali by the delighted Brahmā. The boons granted were *Mahāyogitva* (the state of being a great Yogin), longevity of life lasting for a Kalpa, invincibility in war, great inclination towards righteousness and piety, the vision of the three worlds, importance among his descendants, unrivalled state in strength as the ability to see the true principles of Dharma. "You will establish the (discipline of) four castes"—on being thus told by the lord, king Bali attained great peace (of mind).

33-34. After a long period the scholarly Bali went back to his own abode. The territories of the sons were Aṅgas, Vaṅgas, Sulhakas (Suhma), Puṇḍras and Kaliṅgas. They were very flourishing territories.

Listen to and understand their race. These sons were his Kṣetrajas (born of his wife) through the contact of a sage. They were born of (sage) Dīrghatamas of great virility in Sudeṣṇā (the wife of Bali).

The Sages said :

35. O holy lord, how were these five Kṣetraja sons of Bali procreated by the sage Dīrghatamas ? Please narrate this to us who ask.

**Sutayaśā* in the text is obscure. Hence the form *Sutapas* is accepted.

Sūta said :

36. Formerly there was an intelligent and renowned sage named Aśija. The wife of this noble-souled sage was named Mamatā.

37. Bṛhaspati who was the younger brother of Aśija, whose splendour was great and who was the preceptor of the heaven-dwellers (gods) coveted Mamatā.

38-40. Not desirous of having sexual intercourse with him, Mamatā spoke thus to Bṛhaspati : "I am pregnant due to my contact with your elder brother. This is the eighth (month). O Bṛhaspati, this great child in the womb cries much. The son of Aśija that he is, he has learned the Vedas with their six ancillaries and he repeats the Vedic Mantras.

Your semen virile too is never-failing. It does not behove you to have sexual intercourse with me. O holy lord, when the period (of gestation) lapses (you may do) as you deem fit".

41. Though emphatically told thus by her, the noble-souled Bṛhaspati of excessive refulgence did not restrain himself, as he was overwhelmed by passion.

42. The virtuous-souled Bṛhaspati did have his sexual intercourse with her. Even as he was discharging the semen virile, the child in the womb spoke thus :

43. "No *Snātaka* (a Brāhmaṇa who just had his sacred ablution after completing his Vedic study) shall deposit his (semen virile) here. There is no space here for two. You too are one with never-failing semen virile. I have come here first."

44. Bṛhaspati, the sage of divine attributes, became infuriated on being told thus. He cursed the son of Aśija, his brother, who was yet in the womb:

45. "You have spoken thus to me on an occasion coveted by all living beings. Since you have spoken thus out of delusion, you will enter a long period of darkness".

46-47. Due to that curse, the sage thereafter came to be called Dīrghatamas.

Āśija (son of Aśija—Dīrghatamas) too was highly renowned by virtue of his power (of penance) like Bṛhaspati. He too

stayed in the hermitage of his brother observing celibacy. He heard of *Godharma* (the law of cattle—behaving like a bull or cow) from the bull, the son of Surabhi (Kāmadhenu).

48. Aśija's brother, his uncle, had built a house for him. While he was staying there, a bull came there casually.

49. Surrounded by cows he grazed the Darbha grass that had been brought for the *Darśa*[1] rituals. Dīrghatamas caught hold of the quivering bull by its horns.

50. Caught by him, the bull could not move even a step. Then the bull spoke to him : "O foremost one among the strong persons, leave me off.

51. O dear one, a strong one like you has not been met with by me anywhere, even though I had been bearing the three-eyed lord (everywhere), as a result of which I have come down to the earth.

52. O most excellent one among strong persons, leave me off. I am pleased with you. Choose a boon". On being told thus, the sage told the bull: "Where will you go alive, away from me ?

53. Hence I will not release you, the quadruped that eats others' wealth". Then that bull replied to Dīrghatamas:

54. "O dear one, to us nothing is sinful. There is no theft. We do not distinguish between what should be eaten or what should not be eaten or what should be drunk or should not be drunk.

55. We do not know what should be done or what should not be done, what should be approached or what should not be approached. O Brāhmaṇa, we are not sinners. This is remembered as the Dharma of cows and bulls".[2]

56. On hearing the name of cows mentioned, he became confused and released him. Thanks to his devotion to the cows as ordained by the Vedas, he propitiated the bull.

---

1. The sacrificial rite to be performed on the New Moon Day.

2. This practice of open and unconcealed sexual intercourse is mentioned in the M.Bh. (MW 365A) and seems to have been followed by Dirghatamas. The Buddha mentions this Dharma in derision.

57. When the bull went away, fully propitiated, he began to deliberate on the Dharma of cows devoutly. He was fully engrossed in it and devoted to it pondering mentally over it again and again.

58. As ill luck would have it, he became foolish and silly-minded and molested the wife of his younger brother Autathya, even though she struggled and wept.

59. Considering it to be his arrogance, Śaradvān did not brook it. Using force and following Godharma (the practice of cattle), he had approached his daughter-in-law (the wife of younger brother).

60. On seeing this trespass, Śaradvān reflected. The noble-souled (Śaradvān) knew what was destined to happen. So he did not confer death on him (Dīrghatamas).

61. With eyes turned red due to anger, he shouted to Dīrghatamas: "You do not distinguish between whom to approach and whom not to. Following *Godharma* you have solicited your daughter-in-law.

62. You are a man of despicable conduct. I am casting you off. Go away along with your evil action. In spite of being blind, old and dependent on others for maintenance you have committed a deplorable, sinful action. Therefore, you are forsaken. I am convinced that you are a person of evil conduct".

Sūta said:

63. Thereafter he thought of a ruthless action. After rebuking Dīrghatamas many times, he caught hold of him by his arms, put him in a sealed casket and hurled it into the waters of Gaṅgā.

64. For seven days the sealed casket was wafted by the current. King Bali, the knower of the principles of Dharma, who was in the company of his wife, saw the sinking casket borne towards him by the current.

65. Bali, the righteous-souled son of Virocana, saved him and took him to his harem where he propitiated him with different kinds of food and drinks, and looked after him.

66. The delighted sage asked Bali to choose a boon according to his desire. The leading Dānava chose the boon for (blessing him with) a son.

67. Bali said: "O blessed one, O bestower of honour, it behoves you to procreate in my wife sons endowed with virtue and wealth, so that my line will be perpetuated".[1]

68. On being requested thus by him, the sage said to the king, "So be it". The king thereupon sent his wife named Sudeṣṇā unto him (the sage).

69. On seeing him blind and old, the queen did not go unto the sage. She bedecked her servant-maid in ornaments and left her with him.

70-73. The righteous-souled sage of good self-control begot of that Śūdra woman two sons of great prowess, Kakṣīva and Cakṣus. They studied the Vedas duly and became masters and expounders of Vedas, great enlightened Siddhas and excellent ones with direct vision of Dharma. On seeing them, Kakṣīva and Cakṣus, the king, Bali, the son of Virocana, asked the sage, "Are these my sons?" The sage said, "O excellent Asura, no, that is not the case. They are mine. Due to your deception, these god-like children are born of Śūdra womb.

74. Considering me blind and old, Sudeṣṇā, your queen, sent the Śūdra servant-maid unto me and disrespected me".

75. Bali, thereupon propitiated the excellent sage again. The lord rebuked his wife Sudeṣṇā.

76-78. He bedecked her in ornaments and gave her unto the sage. The sage Dīrghatamas spoke thus to the queen : "O splendid lady, if, without showing aversion, you lick from head to foot my naked body smeared well with curds mixed with salt, you will obtain those sons mentally desired by you". The queen, thereupon, carried out all his instructions.

79. When she reached the anus, her aversion was so great that she avoided it. Thereupon that sage said to her : "O auspicous lady, since you avoided the anus, the eldest son you will give birth to will be without anus".

---

1. This Purāṇa has mixed up two different Balis—Bali or Mahābali, the rival of Indra, who donated three feet of land to Vāmana, was not childless. Bāṇa, Uṣā's father, was his son. This Bali is another East Indian King who being childless requested thus to Dīrghatamas.

80. Then the queen replied to the sage Dīrghatamas, "O blessed one, it does not behove you to give me a son like that".

81-82. The sage said: "O gentle lady, this is your own fault. It will not be otherwise. O queen of good rites, I shall bestow a son unto you. Even without anus, he will perform all bodily functions". Touching her belly, the sage Dīrghatamas continued—

83-84. "O lady of sweet smiles, since you have licked up the curds from my body, your womb is filled like the ocean on the Full Moon Day. Five splendid sons comparable to the sons of Devas will be born to you. They will be refulgent, valiant and righteous and performer of sacrifices."

85. Then Aṅga, the eldest son of Sudeṣṇā, was born. The other sons born to her thereafter were Vaṅga, Kaliṅga, Puṇḍra and Brahma (Suhma in Bd. P. v. 87).

86. These five were the sons born of Bali's wife. They perpetuated his line. Thus, they were given as sons to Bali formerly by Dīrghatamas.

87-88. For certain reasons, his (Bali's) progeny had been prevented by Brahmā, saying, "Let there not be any offspring of this noble-souled (king) by his own wives"* That was why he begot children of human wombs. Then the delighted bull, the son of Kāmadhenu, spoke these words to Dīrghatamas:

89. "Since you have done this after pondering over *Godharma*, I am pleased with you. I shall release you (from the curse).

90. Hence, look, I shall remove your long period of darkness and gloom, as well as the curse of Bṛhaspati along with the other sins that may be lingering, sticking to your body.

91. After sniffing at you, I shall remove your fear of death and old age." As soon as he was sniffed at, the darkness was destroyed and he began to see.

92. He regained his eye-sight. He became a young man

**apatyāmātyadāreṣu* is a misprint for *apatyāmātmadāreṣu*

Cf. Bd. P. v. 89 : *apatyamasya dāreṣu sveṣu mā' bhūt mahātmanaḥ!*

blessed with long life. Thus that Dīrghatamas was transformed by the bull and he became Gautama.

93. Thereafter Kakṣīvān went to Giripraja (Girivraja—Bd. P.) along with his father. He performed extensive penance for the sake of his father as conceived (originally).

94. After a long period, he became purified through his penance. After shaking off his defects, the lord (sage) attained Brāhmaṇahood along with his younger brother.

95. Then spoke his father: "O Lord, now I am (really) one blessed with a son. By having a famous and good son (like you), I have achieved my objective (and am happy and contented) in life."

96. With his soul united in Yogic practice, he attained Brahman-hood and extinction of (worldly bondage). After obtaining Brāhmaṇa-hood Kakṣīvān procreated a thousand sons.

97-99. Those dark-skinned Gautamas (descendants of Gautama) are remembered as the sons of Kakṣīvān. Thus the association of Dīrghatamas and Bali, the son of Virocana, has been narrated. So also the progeny of both. After the coronation of his five sinless sons, the contented Bali resorted to Yogic practice. The lord of Yogic soul bides his time roaming (on the earth) while remaining invisible to all living beings.

100. Dadhivāhana, the son of the saintly king Aṅga, became king. Due to the blunder of Sudeṣṇā, this king was Anapāna (devoid of anus).

101. King Diviratha is remembered as the son of Anapāna. The scholarly son of Diviratha was king Dharmaratha.

102. It was this selfsame glorious Dharmaratha by whom Soma (Soma juice) was drunk in the course of a Yajña along with the noble-souled Śakra on the mountain Viṣṇupada.

103. Listen, (the son) of Dharmaratha was king Citraratha. From Citraratha was born king Daśaratha. He was famous as Lomapāda and his daughter was Śāntā.[1]

---

1. Some words missing here in the text are supplied here.

The missing lines after v. 103 are given in A (p. 374). They are translated as follows:—

104. The elephant of Śakra was born as his elephant Caṇḍika. By means of Mantras (?) he brought the excellent vehicle to the earth.

105. Haryaṅga's successor was the king Bhadraratha. Bhadraratha's son was Bṛhatkarmā, the lord of subjects.

106. Bṛhadratha was his son and Bṛhanmanā was born of him. Bṛhanmanā procreated the son Rājendra.

107. He was otherwise known as Jayadratha and from him was born king Dṛdharatha. The son of Dṛdharatha was Janamejaya, the conqueror of the universe.

108. His successor, the king of Aṅgas, was Karṇa. Karṇa's son was Śūrasena and Dvija is remembered as his son.

The Sages said :

109. How was Karṇa known as the son of a charioteer and how did he become a member of the family of kings of Aṅgas? This we wish to hear. Indeed you are very efficient (in narration).

Sūta replied :

110. King Bṛhanmanā was born as the son of Bṛhadbhānu (earlier he was mentioned as Bṛhadratha). He had two wives. Both of them were the daughters of Caidya.

111. They were Yaśodevī and Satyā. The race is bifurcated on account of these two wives. Jayadratha otherwise known as Rājendra was born of Yaśodevī.

---

104. That noble-minded heroic son of Daśaratha, Caturaṅga, the promotor of his family, was born through the grace of Ṛṣyaśṛṅga.

105. It is reported that Pṛthulāśva was Caturaṅga's son. The son of Pṛthulāśva was (?) of Campā. The (capital) city of Campā was beautiful. It became the beautiful Mālinī (real name of Campā).

106-107. The city of Campāvatī (alias) Campā was inhabited by people of four Varṇas (castes). They lived in Campāvatī for sixty thousand years. By Brāhmaṇas, Kṣattriyas, Vaiśyas, by all, their own duty (Dharma) was followed. All were devoted to Viṣṇu by performing penance and following the duties of their (respective) caste.

Haryaṅga became his son by the grace of Pūrṇabhadra.

—Vā.P. (Anandashram, Pune, p. 374)

112. (Defective verse) Satyā gave birth to the famous Vijaya who was of mixed Brāhmaṇa-Kṣatriya caste(?) Vijaya's son was Dhṛti and his son was Dhṛtavrata.

113. Dhṛtavrata's son was Satyakarmā of great fame. Satyakarmā's son was Adhiratha, the charioteer.

114. He adopted and looked after Karṇa. Hence Karṇa was known as the son of a charioteer. Thus everything that had been asked about Karṇa has been mentioned to you.

115. Thus all the kings in the family of Aṅga have been recounted by me. Now listen to the progeny of Pūru in detail and in the proper order.

Sūta said :

116. The mighty-armed son of Pūru, Janamejaya became a king. His son was Aviddha who conquered the eastern region.

117. From Aviddha was born as son the great hero Manasyu. King Jayada was the son of Manasyu.

118. His successor was the king named Dhundhu. Bahugavī was the son of Dhundhu. Sañjāti was his son.

119. Sañjāti's son was Raudrāśva. Understand his sons. Raudrāśva begot ten sons of the celestial damsel Ghṛtācī.

120-123. They were Rajeyu, Kṛteyu, Vakṣeyu, Sthaṇḍileyu, Ghṛteyu, Jaleyu, Sthaleyu the seventh, Dharmeyu, Sannateyu and the tenth son Vaneyu. He had ten daughters also, viz. Rudrā, Śūdrā, Madrā, Śubhā, Jāmalajā, Talā, Khalā (these seven and then), the daughter who is remembered as Gopajalā, then, Tāmrarasā and Ratnakūṭī. The husband of all of them was Prabhākara by name. He belonged to the Ātreya line (Gotra).

Anādṛṣṭa was a saintly king. Riveyu was his son.

124. Riveyu's wife named Jvalanā was the daughter of Takṣaka. That saintly king begot of that gentle lady a son named Ranti.

125-126. Ranti, the king, begot splendid sons of his wife Sarasvatī. They were Trasu, Pratiratha and Dhruva, who was exceedingly righteous. His daughter Gaurī is famous as the splendid mother of Māndhātā. Dhurya was Pratiratha's son and his son was Kaṇṭha.

127. (Defective verse) His son was Medhātithi from whom the Brāhmaṇas Kāṇṭhāyanas originated. Itinā (?) was the daughter of Anuyama (?). She gave birth to sons.

128-129. Trasu obtained his favourite son Malina who was an expounder of Brahman. Thereafter he obtained Upadātā and the (following) four sons of Itinā (?) : Suṣmanta, Duṣyanta, Pravīra and Anagha. The son born to Duṣyanta was an excellent king and he became an emperor.

130. That son Bharata was born of Śakuntalā. It is from him that (the land) took its name Bhārata. A disembodied (celestial) voice spoke to king Duṣyanta.

131-132. "O Duṣyanta, the mother is but a leathern pouch (or bellows). The son belongs to the father. He is identical with him by whom he is begotten. Śakuntalā tells the truth. Maintain your son. O lord of men, he who discharges the semen virile redeems the son from the abode of Yama. You are the progenitor of this child in the womb. Do not dishonour Śakuntalā".

133. Bharata begot of his three wives nine sons. "These are not befitting me". Saying this, the king did not approve of them. (He disowned them).

134. Then those infuriated mothers slew their sons. Thus the births of those sons to the king were futile.

135. Then the powerful son Bharadvāja, the son of Bṛhaspati, was brought over there by the Maruts in the course of the sacrifices and handed over to him.

136. In this connection, they cite this story of the intelligent Bharadvāja, his birth and the transfer unto Bharata by the Maruts.

137. When his wife was in the advanced state of pregnancy, it is said that Aśija died. Looking at his brother's wife, Bṛhaspati said : "O auspicious lady, embellish your body with ornaments and give me (the pleasure of) sexual intercourse with you."

138. On being told thus, she said to him, "O holy lord, I am pregnant now. The foetus has reached the advanced state of maturity. The child repeats the Vedic Mantras.

139. You too are one whose semen virile never goes in

vain. This activity (of sexual intercourse with you) is despicable". On being told thus, Bṛhaspati said smilingly :

140. "You need not at all instruct me in good behaviour". With great delight, he forcibly indulged in sexual intercourse with her.

141. "O father (uncle) Bṛhaspati", said the foetus to Bṛhaspati who was in a state of exhilaration, "I am already embedded here, having come here before.

142. You are one whose semen virile never goes in vain. There is no space here for two (children)." On being told thus by the child in the womb, the infuriated Bṛhaspati said again:

143. "Since you prevent me at such a time as this, desired by all living beings, you will enter a long period of darkness".

144. The (vaginal) passage of his mother was covered with his feet by the child. The semen virile of Bṛhaspati, being obstructed in between them became an infant.

145. On seeing the son instantaneously born Mamatā said, "O Bṛhaspati, I am going to my house. Bhara (Nurture), Dvāja (that which is born of two)."

146. When she went away after saying this, he (too) forsook the son instantaneously." "*Bharasva* (Nurture). *Bāḍham* (very well)". Since this was said, he came to be known as 'Bharadvāja'.

147. On seeing the infant abandoned by both the mother and the father, the Maruts took away the child Bharadvāja out of mercy.

148-149. At that time Bharata had performed various Yajñas and other *Kāmya* and *Naimittika* (sacrifices) with the desire for obtaining a son. In spite of those Yajñas, the lord did not obtain any son. Thereafter he performed the *Marut-Soma* Yajña for the sake of a son.

150. Being propitiated by that Marut-Soma sacrifice, the Maruts (gave) him Bharadvāja, the intelligent son of Bṛhaspati.

151. On obtaining that son Bharadvāja, Bharata said : "O lord, with you as my son, I am satisfied, since all my previous children had been killed".

152. The births of his (i.e. Bharata's) previous sons had

been in vain (*vitatha*). So Bharadvāja was known by the name Vitatha.

153. Hence the Divine child Bharadvāja turned into a Kṣatriya from Brāhmaṇa-hood. He is remembered by the names *Dvimukhyāyana* (having two important abodes) and *Dvipitṛka* (having two fathers).

154. After the birth (succession) of Vitatha, Bharata went to heaven (passed away). Vitatha's successor was Bhuvamanyu.

155. Four sons comparable to the Mahābhūtas (great elements) were born to Bhuvamanyu. They were Bṛhatkṣatra, Mahāvīrya, Nara and the powerful Gāgra.

156. The son of Nara was Saṁkṛti. His sons were very powerful. Guruvīrya and Trideva are remembered as the sons of Saṁkṛti. There were none greater than they.

157. The successors of Gāgra were born of Śinibaddha. Therefore the Gāgryas (descendants of Gāgra) are remembered as Brāhmaṇas with the traits of Kṣatriyas.

158. Bhīma was the son of Mahāvīrya. From him was born Ubhakṣaya. His wife Viśālā gave birth to three sons.

159. She gave birth to Trayyāruṇi, Puṣkarin and the third son Kapi. Kapi's descendants were excellent Kṣatriyas and those of the other two are said to be great sages.

160. The descendants of Gāgra, Saṁkṛti and Mahāvīrya were Brāhmaṇas endowed with Kṣatriya traits too. They merged with the line of Aṅgiras. Now the line of Bṛhatkṣatra will be recounted.

161. Bṛhatkṣatra's successor was a pious one named Suhotra. Suhotra's successor was one named Hastin. Formerly this city named Hastināpura was built by him.

162. Hastin's successor were three, viz. Ajamīḍha, Dvimīḍha and Purumīḍha. They were all extremely devout and pious.[1]

163-164. Ajamīḍha's sons were splendid. They perpetuated the auspicious line. They were very pious. They were

1. The following additional verse numbered 167 in A, is translated as follows :

"The queens of Ajamīḍha were auspicious and perpetuators of the Kuru race. They were (by name) Nilinī, Keśinī and the beautiful Dhūminī'.

born to the great king in his old age after a great penance, thanks to the grace of Bharadvāja. Listen to their extension. Kaṇṭha was born to Ajamīḍha and Keśinī.

165. Medhātithi was his son and from him were born the Brāhmaṇas called Kaṇṭhāyanas. King Bṛhadvasu was born to Ajamīḍha and (his second wife) Dhūminī.

166. Bṛhadvasu's son was Bṛhadviṣṇu who was very strong. His son was Bṛhatkarmā whose son was Bṛhadratha.

167. His son was Viśvajit, whose son was Senajit. The four sons of Senajit were well known in the world.

168. They were Rucirāśva, Kāvya, Rāma of steady bow and Vatsa, the king of Avantī from whom the *Parivatsara* (era started).

169. Rucirāśva's successor was Pṛthuṣeṇa of great fame. Pāra was the son of Pṛthuṣeṇa and Nīpa was born of Pāra.

170. We have heard that a hundred sons were born to Nīpa. They are called 'Nīpas'. All of them were kings.

171. The most glorious king among them who raised the fame of the race and stabilised the race was Samara with his capital in Kāmpilya. He was fond of war.

172. Samara had three sons endowed with all good qualities. They were Para, Pāra and Sattvadaśva. Pāra's son Vṛṣu shone well.

173. A son named Sukṛti endowed with all good qualities was born to Vṛṣu, thanks to his meritorious activities. Vibhrāja was his son.

174. Vibhrāja's successor was the king named Aṇuha who was very famous. He was the husband of Ṛcī and so the son-in-law of Śuka.

175. Aṇuha's successor was Brahmadatta of great penance. Yogasūnu was his son and his son Viṣvaksena became a king.

176. Vibhrāja's sons became kings, thanks to their meritorious activities. Viṣvaksena's son was Udaksena.

177. His successor was Bhallāṭa by whom the king was killed formerly. Bhallāṭa's successor was king Janamejaya. On his behalf, all the Nīpas were destroyed by Ugrāyudha.

The Sages asked :

178. Whose son was Ugrāyudha ? In which family was he born and glorified ? What for were all the Nīpas destroyed by him ?

Sūta said :

179-180. The scholarly Yavīnara was the son and successor of Dvimīḍha. Dhṛtimān was his son. His son was Satyadhṛti. Satyadhṛti's son was the valorous Dṛḍhanemi. The king named Suvarmā was Dṛḍhanemi's son.

181. The valorous Sārvabhauma (lord of the entire earth) was Suvarmā's son. He shone as the sole lord of the earth and he became famous as Sārvabhauma.

182. In his great family was born (a king named) Mahatpauravanandana. King Rukmaratha is remembered as the son of Mahatpaurava.

183. Rukmaratha's son was the king named Supārśva. Supārśva's son named Sumati was very virtuous.

184. The son of Sumati was lord Sannatimān, the righteous-souled king. His son was named Sanati and Kṛta was his son.

185. He was a disciple of the noble-souled Hiraṇyanābhi of the Kauthuma branch (of Sāmavedic study). Twentyfour Sāman-Saṁhitās were expounded by him.

186. The sons of Kṛta, the singers of Sāman hymns, are remembered by the name 'Prācyas' (Easterners). The heroic Ugrāyudha was one of the sons of Kṛta. He was the scion of the family of Pūru.

187. The mighty-armed lord of Pañcālas named Nīla, who was the grandfather of Pṛṣata, was killed by him (Ugrāyudha) (and thereby) he exhibited his valour.

188. Ugrāyudha's son (successor) was a very famous king named Kṣema. Suvīra was born of Kṣema. Suvīra's son was Nṛpañjaya. Vīraratha was born of Nṛpañjaya. Thus these are remembered as Pauravas (descendants of Pūru).

189. King Nīla was born of Nīlinī (the third wife) of Ajamīḍha. Suśānti was born of Nīla, thanks to his severe penance.

190. Purujānu was the son of Suśānti. Rikṣa was born of Purujānu. The following were the sons and successors of Rikṣa.

191. They were : Mudgala, Sṛñjaya, the king Bṛhadiṣu, Vikrānta who was younger to him and Kaṁpilya, the fifth.

192-193. For the sustenance and the upkeep of all the five, the father spoke to them thus : "Know that there are five flourishing territories for all the five of you." Since the five were sufficient, all the territories were together well known as Pañcālas.* Maudgalyas, the descendants of Mudgala, were Brāhmaṇas endowed with Kṣatriya traits.

194. These were known as Kaṇṭhamudgalas and they merged into the Āṅgirasa Gotra. Mudgala's eldest son was very famous. He was engrossed in the meditation of Brahman.

195. From him Indrasenā conceived Badhyaśva. We have heard that Menakā bore to Badhyaśva twins.

196-197. They were Divodāsa the saintly king and Ahalyā of great fame. Ahalyā bore Śatānanda the excellent sage to Śāradvata. His son was Satyadhṛti of great fame. He was a master of the science of archery.

198. On seeing an Apsaras (celestial damsel) in front, the semen virile of Satyadhṛti was emitted in the bush of Śara-grass and twins were born.

199-200. Śantanu who had come that way ahunting took them out of mercy (Kṛpā). The boy is remembered as Kṛpa and the girl Kṛpī. She was also known as Gautamī. Thus the race of Gautama, known as Śāradvatas and Ṛtathyas, has been recounted.

Henceforth I shall recount the progeny of Divodāsa.

201. Divodāsa's successor was king Mitrayu who was engrossed in meditation on Brahman. Maitreya was born of him. It is rememberd that these too got merged (in other families).

202. These too got merged into the family (of Bhṛgu). They were (Brāhmaṇas) endowed with Kṣatriya traits. They were known as Bhārgavas. King Cyavana was born (in that family). The scholarly Pratiratha was born of him.

**Pañca* (five) + *alam* (sufficient)

203. The intelligent Sudāsa was born of Cyavana. Sahadeva was born as the son of Sudāsa. Somaka was his son.

204-205. When the race was about to be extinct, Ajamīḍha was born again. That was Somaka. Somaka's son was Jantu. When he was killed, hundred other sons were born to the noble-souled lord Ajamīḍha in his birth as Somaka. The youngest of them, Pṛṣata was Drupada's father.

206-209. His son was Dhṛṣṭadyumna and Dhṛṣṭaketu was his son. Dhūminī, the queen of Ajamīḍha, was desirous of a son. In her rebirth she performed a very difficult penance for a hundred years. She performed Homas in the fire. She kept awake. She ate but little and that too only the holy food. She performed great holy rites. Day and night she stayed on the Kuśa mattress alone. By these rigorous activities, she became smoke-coloured. The powerful Ajamīḍha begot of her Ṛkṣa, a smoke-coloured son, who was elder brother of Sita (one of white colour). Saṁvaraṇa was born of Ṛkṣa. Kuru was born of Saṁvaraṇa.

210. After treading on (conquering) Prayāga, he built Kurukṣetra. The excessive-splendoured king ploughed it for many years.

211. While it was being ploughed, Śakra shone there and granted this boon : Your (Kurukṣetra) shall be beautiful, holy and resorted to by meritorious persons.

212-213. Persons born in his family were excellent kings famous as Kurus. Kuru's beloved sons were Sudhanvan, Jahnu, Parīkṣita the great king, Putraka and Arimardana. It is remembered that the intelligent Suhotra was the successor of Sudhanvan.

214-215. Cyavana was his son. The king was an expert in religious affairs. Kṛta was the son of Cyavana. He performed great penance and many Yajñas. The king procreated his famous son Vidyoparicara who claimed friendship of Indra. He was a great hero who could traverse the sky and was known as Vasu too.

216-217. Girikā bore seven sons to Vidyoparicara—Bṛhadratha, a great warrior, who became famous as the king of Magadha, Pratyagṛha, Kuśa, one whom they call Maṇivāhana Māthailya, Lalittha and Matsyakāla the seventh.

218. Bṛhadratha's successor was famous by the name of Kuśāgra. Kuśāgra's son was a powerful king named Ṛṣabha.

219. Ṛṣabha's successor was a virtuous king named Puṣpavān. King Satyahita is remembered as his valorous successor.

220-221. His son was Sudhanvan. From him the valorous Ūrja was born. Ūrja's son was Nabhasa and from him was born that powerful king Jarāsandha. He was born in two pieces and he was joined by Jarā. Jarāsandha was mighty-armed because he was joined by Jarā.

222. This Jarāsandha of great strength was the conqueror of all Kṣatriya kings. Jarāsandha's son was the valorous Sahadeva.

223. Sahadeva's son was the glorious Somādhi of very great penance. Śrutaśruva was the son of Somādhi and is glorified as Māgadha.

Sūta said :

224. Janamejaya was the successor of Parīkṣita. Śrutasena's successor was named Bhīmasena. (lines missing).

225. Jahnu begot a son named Suratha who became a king. Suratha's successor was the heroic king Vidūratha.

226. It is well known that Vidūratha's son too was Sārvabhauma. Jayatsena was born of Sārvabhauma and Ārādhi was his son.

227. Mahāsattva was born of Ārādhi and Ayutāyu came thereafter. Akrodhana was the son of Ayutāyu. It is remembered that Devātithi was born of him.

228. It was Ṛkṣa who became the successor of Devātithi. Bhīmasena was born of Ṛkṣa and Dilīpa was his son.

229. Pratīpa was the son of Dilīpa. It is remembered that three sons were born to him. Those three were Devāpi, Śantanu and Bāhlīka.

230. King Saptabāhlīśvara should be known as (the son) of Bāhlīka. Somadatta too, of great fame, was the son of Bāhlīka.

231. Bhūri, Bhūriśravas and Śala were born of Somadatta. With a desire to accumulate virtue Devāpi (renounced everything and) went to the forest.

232. Sage Devāpi became the preceptor of Devas. To this noble-souled sage, two sons Cyavana and Iṣṭaka were born.

233. Śantanu became king. He was a scholar and a great physician (*Mahābhiṣa*). About this Mahābhiṣa they cite this verse.

234. "Whomsoever does the king touch, be he very old due to the efflux of time, becomes a youth again. Therefore they know him as *Śaṁtanu* (*Śam*—happiness, *Tanu*—body)."

235. Therefore the quality of his being *Śaṁtanu* was well known among the subjects. That righteous king Śaṁtanu married Jāhnavī (Gaṅgā).

236. The lord begot a son of her, named Devavrata (who later became) Bhīṣma. That Bhīṣma became famous as the grandfather of the Pāṇḍavas.

237-238. After some time Śaṁtanu begot his most favourite son Vicitravīrya who as king did much for the welfare of the subjects. Kṛṣṇadvaipāyana begot of Vicitravīrya's wife (*kṣetra*), Dhṛtarāṣṭra, Pāṇḍu and Vidura. Gāndhārī bore to Dhṛtarāṣṭra a hundred sons.

239. Duryodhana was the eldest among them. He became the lord of all Kṣatriyas. Mādrī and the queen Pṛthā became the wives of Pāṇḍu.

240-241. Sons bestowed by gods were born of them on behalf of Pāṇḍu. Yudhiṣṭhira was born, thanks to the grace of Dharma; Vṛkodara was born of Vāyu; Dhanañjaya whose valour was equal to that of Śakra was born of Indra. Sahadeva and Nakula were born to Mādrī, thanks to the grace of Aśvins.

242. Five sons were born to Draupadī from the (five) Pāṇḍavas. Draupadī bore Śrutividdha, the eldest of them, to Yudhiṣṭhira.

243. Hiḍaṁbā bore her son Ghaṭotkaca to Bhīmasena. Kāśyā too bore her son Sarvavṛka to Bhīmasena.

244. Vijayā, the princess of Madra land, bore Suhotra to Sahadeva. Niramitra was born to Karematī of Vaidya (?) as the son of Nakula.

245. The heroic Abhimanyu was born of Subhadrā as the son of Pārtha. Parīkṣit was born of Uttarā, the princess of Virāṭa, as the son of Abhimanyu.

246. King Janamejaya was the successor of Parīkṣit. He established Vājasaneyika Brāhmaṇas.

247-248. The infuriated Vaiśaṁpāyana (said to him), "O evil-minded one, your directions (rule) will not remain long here in this world without an enemy (without being protested against). As long as I am alive in this world, this (act of yours) cannot be praised." Thereupon, Janamejaya was faced with difficulties all round.

249. He worshipped lord Prajāpati by offering *Havis* in the Paurṇamāsa Yajña. He saw that the different materials were offered in the sacrifice of the lord. Still he was in difficulties?

250. Janamejaya, the son of Parīkṣit, the descendant of Pūru, then performed Aśvamedha twice. Thereafter, he made those Vājasaneyaka Brāhmaṇas function. Janamejaya was crippled (defeated) three times.

251. Crippled at the hands of Aśvakomukhyas, crippled at the hands of the residents of Aṅgas, and crippled at the hands of the people of Madhyadeśa (Middle Lands), Janamejaya became *Trikharvi* (crippled three times). He was distressed. Being cursed along with those Brāhmaṇas, he suffered ruin.

252. Śatānīka of truthful exploit and strength was his son. After him (Janamejaya), the Brāhmaṇas crowned his son Śatānīka.

253-255. The powerful Aśvamedhadatta was the son of Śatānīka. Adhisāmakṛṣna was born as the son of Aśvamedhadatta. He conquered the cities of his enemies. He is the present ruler, of righteous soul and great fame. It is under his rule that you have been able to perform this *Dīrghasatra* (sacrifice of long duration) for three years. It is very difficult to be performed. O excellent Brāhmaṇas, (besides) there is another Satra lasting for two years, which is being performed in Kurukṣetra on the banks of the river Dṛṣadvatī.

The Sages said :

256. O highly intelligent Sūta, we wish to hear the future events of the subjects along with the kings. The past kings have been already mentioned by you.

257-259. We wish to hear all these—the activities that will be undertaken by them, and their names, the kings who will be born, their time calculated in years, the extent of the Yugas, their good points and their defects, their happiness and misery and those of the subjects, their religious activities and their passionate pursuits as well as their monetary dealings. Enumerate all these to us who ask you.

On being requested thus, Sūta the most excellent among the intelligent ones, mentioned everything in the manner it would occur and as he had seen and heard.

Sūta said :

260-261. Even as I recount listen and understand the future events,[1] the Kaliyuga and the Manvantaras in the manner they had been described to me by Vyāsa of wonderful activities. Henceforth, I shall mention the kings who will be born in future.

262-265. I shall mention the descendants of Aila, Ikṣvāku, Sudyumna and other kings in whom this splendid territory of the Ikṣvākus will be vested. I shall mention all other kings also besides these who will be born in future, viz. Kṣatriyas, Paraśavas, Śūdras and Brāhmaṇas, Andhas (Āndhras), Śakas, Pulindas, Tūlikas, Yavanas, Kaivartas, Ābhiras, Śabaras, and all other Mleccha (outcaste) tribes.

I shall mention those kings by names and the duration in years of their rule.

266. This present king Adhisāmakṛṣṇa is a king belonging to the Pūru dynasty. I shall mention all the future kings in his family.

267. Nirvaktra will be the son of Adhisāmakṛṣṇa. When his city Hastināpura is swept away by Gaṅgā he will abandon it and live happily at Kausāmbī.

---

1. Verses 260-310 describe the 'future' dynasties of kings. The dynasties mentioned here are (1) Bṛhadratha, (2) Pradyota, (3) Śiśunāka (Śiśunāga), (4) Nanda, (5) Maurya, (6) Kāṇva and (7) Āndhra. Guptas (if the reading be correct) are merely mentioned and Mleccha and other rulers are also referred to.

268. His son will be Uṣṇa. Citraratha will be born of Uṣṇa. Śucidratha will be born of Citraratha, and Vṛtimān will be born of Śucidratha.

269. Suṣeṇa of great fame and prowess will be born thereafter. To Suṣeṇa will be born the king named Sutīrtha.

270. Ruca will be born of Sutīrtha. Then Tricakṣa will be born. Tricakṣa's successor will be Sukhībala.

271. Sukhībala's son will be the king Paripluta. King Sunaya will be born as the son of Paripluta.

272. King Medhāvī will be the son of Sunaya and Medhāvin's son will be Daṇḍapāṇi.

273. Daṇḍapāṇi's son will be Niramitra and Kṣemaka will be the son of Niramitra. These twentyfive kings (?) will be born in the race of Pūru.

274-275. In this connection the following verse describing the subsequent race has been cited by Brāhmaṇas who know ancient lore. "This race which has produced Brāhmaṇas and Kṣatriyas, and which is honoured by Devas and sages, will be extinct in the Kali age after coming to Kṣemaka". Thus the race of Pūru has been enumerated precisely.

276. (The race) of the intelligent son of Pāṇḍu, the noble-souled Arjuna (has been narrated).

Henceforth I shall mention the race of the Ikṣvākus of great souls.

277-278. Bṛhadratha's successor was the heroic king Bṛhatkṣaya. His son was Kṣaya. Vatsavyūha was the son of Kṣaya. After Vatsavyūha, Prativyūha became king. His son is Divākara and this king is ruling over the city of Ayodhyā now.

279. Divākara's son will be the renowned Sahadeva. Bṛhadaśva will become the successor of Sahadeva.

280. Bhānuratha will be his son. His son will be Pratītāśva. Supratīta will become the son of Pratītāśva.

281-282. Sahadeva will be his son and his son will be Sunakṣatra. Kinnara, the oppressor of his enemies, will become the son of Sunakṣatra. Antarikṣa, the son of Kinnara, will be a great (king).

283-284. Suparṇa will be born of Antarīkṣa and Amitrajit

will be born of Suparṇa. His son will be Bharadvāja. Dharmin will be his son. A son named Kṛtañjaya will be born to Dharmin. Vrata will be the son of Kṛtañjaya and his son will be Raṇañjaya. To Raṇañjaya will be born the heroic king Sañjaya. Śākya will be born as the son of Sañjaya. From Śākya will be born Śuddhodana.

285. In the family of Śākya, Rāhula will be born to Śuddhodana (?) Then Prasenajit will be born. Kṣudraka will be born then.

286. Kṣulika will be the son of Kṣudraka. From Kṣulika will be born Suratha. Sumitra, the son of Suratha, will be the last king.

287. All these mentioned are the future Ikṣvāku kings in the Kali age. They will be born in the race of Bṛhadbala in the Kali age. All of them will be heroic, learned and truthful. They will be the conquerors of the sense-organs.

288. In this connection the following verse describing the subsequent race is cited by those who know the future. "This race of the Ikṣvākus will end with Sumitra. After coming to the king Sumitra, it will become extinct in the Kali age." Thus the Kṣetra (domain ?) originating from Manu and descending from Aila has been described.

289. Henceforth I shall mention the kings of Magadha, the descendants of Bṛhadratha, i.e. the kings of the race of Jarāsandha and the family of Sahadeva.

290. I shall mention the past, present and future kings in accordance with their importance. Even as I recount, listen and understand.

291. In the Mahābhārata war Sahadeva fell. His son Somādhi, the saintly king, ruled over Girivraja.

292. He ruled over the kingdom for fiftyeight years. His son Śrutaśravas ruled for sixtyfour years. Ayutāyu ruled for twentysix years. Niramitra enjoyed the earth for a hundred years and passed over to heaven.

293. Sukṛtta ruled over the earth for fiftysix years. Bṛhatkarman ruled the kingdom for twentythree years.

294. Senajit enjoys the kingdom (now). (His son) Śrutañjaya will be king for forty years.

295. Mahābala, the mighty-armed and endowed with great intellect and exploit, will become king and rule over the earth for thirtyfive years.

296. Śuci will remain in the kingdom for fifıyeight years. Kṣema will be the king for full twentyeight years.

297. Bhuvata the powerful will maintain the kingdom for sixtyfour years. Then Dharmanetra will be the king for full five years.

298. Nṛpati (?) will then enjoy the kingdom for fifty-eight years. Suvrata's rule will be for thirtyeight years.

299. Dṛḍhasena will be the king for forty, ten and eight (i.e. fiftyeight) years. Then Sumati will be in possession of the kingdom for thirtythree years.

300. Sucala will enjoy the kingdom for twentytwo years. Thereafter, Sunetra will enjoy the kingdom for forty years.

301. Satyajit will enjoy the earth for eightythree years. After attaining the kingdom Vīrajit will enjoy it for thirtyfive years.

302. Ariñjaya will be in possesssion of the earth for fifty years. These thirtytwo kings will be the future rulers in the line of Bṛhadratha.

303-304. Altogether they will rule for full thousand years. When the descendants of Bṛhadratha cease to rule and when the Vītahotras occupy the throne, even as all the Kṣatriyas stand gazing Pradyota* Munika will kill his master and crown his own son as the king.

305. That king of the future will be devoid of statesmanship or just policies. All the vassals will bow down before him. That excellent man will be king for twentythree years.

306. Thereafter the king named Pālaka will rule for twentyfour years. Then king Viśākhayūpa will rule for fifty years.

307. The rule of Ajaka will be for thirtyone years. His son Vartivardhana will rule for twenty years.

308. Thus the five future sons (and successors) of Pradyota will rule for one hundred and thirtyeight years.

*As per Bd. P. v. 123, Pradyota is the prince enthroned and Munika was his father.

Destroying their fame entirely, Śiśunāka (Śiśunāga) will become king (at Vārāṇasī).*

309-310. His son will attain Girivraja in Vārāṇasī. The suzerainty of Śiśunāka (Śiśunāga) will be for forty years. His son Śakavarṇa will rule for thirtysix years. Then for twenty years Kṣemavarmā will be the king.

311. Ajātaśatru will be the king for twentyfive years. Thereafter Kṣatraujas will rule the kingdom for forty years.

312. King Bimbisāra will rule for twentyeight years. King Darśaka will rule for twentyfive years.

313. The next king will be Udāyī who will rule for thirty-three years. In the fourth year of his rule, he will build his capital city named Kusumapura (Mod. Patnā) on the southern bank of Gaṅgā.

314 The king Nandivardhana will live for fortytwo years. The king Mahānandin will be the king for fortythree years.

315. Thus the kings of the Śiśunāka (Śiśunāga) dynasty will be ten in number. They altogether will rule for three hundred andsixtytwo years.

316. All the members of the Śaiśunāka (Śaiśunāga) family will be the contemporaries of the following kings who will be kinsmen to Kṣatriyas.

317-319. Those are twentyfour Ikṣvāku kings, twentyfive Pāñcālas, twentyfour Kālakas, twentyfour Haihayas, thirtytwo Kaliṅgas, twentyfive Śakas, twentysix Kurus, twentyeight Maithilas, twentythree Śūrasenas and twenty Vītihotras. All these kings will rule simultaneously.

320. Mahāpadma will be born of a Śūdra wife of Mahānandin. He will be a king over all Kṣatriyas.

321. Thereafter all the future kings will be born of Śūdra wombs. Mahāpadma will be the sole ruler with a single royal umbrella.

322. He will rule over the earth for twentyeight years.

**Vārāṇasyām* the 1st word from the next verse (no. 309) be better connected with Śiśunāga's becoming a king at Vārāṇasī to avoid confusion in v. 309.

Due to the power of the inevitable future, he will uproot all the Kṣatriyas.

323. His sons will be thousands. For eight years twelve of them will rule as kings. In succession to Mahāpadma they will become kings in order.

324. Kauṭilya will exterminate all of them by means of the twice eight of them (sixteen). After enjoying the kingdom of the earth[1] for a hundred years, the moon in the form of Nanda will set and fall down.

325. Kauṭilya will instal Candragupta as king. King Candragupta will be ruling for twentyfour years.

326. Bhadrasāra (?), the next king, will be king for twentyfive years. King Aśoka will rule over the men for twenty-six years.

327. His son Kunāla will rule for eight years. Kunāla's son Bandhupālita will enjoy the kingdom for eight years.

328. Bandhupālita's successor Indrapālita will rule for ten years (?) King Devavarmā will be king for seven years.

329. King Śatadhara, his son, will rule for eight years. King Bṛhadaśva will be the ruler for seven years.

330. These are the nine kings who will enjoy the earth. The earth will be in their possession for full one hundred and thirty seven years.[2]

331. The general Puṣpamitra will drive out Bṛhadratha and will rule over the kingdom continuously for sixty years.

332. The sons of Puṣpamitra will be kings for eight years. The eldest of all of them will be the king for seven years.

333. Thereafter Vasumitra, his son, will be king for ten years. Then Dhruka (?), his son, will rule for two years.

---

1. Instead of *bhuktvā mahīṁ* hereof, Pargiter's suggestion (*Dynasties of the Kali Age*, p. 26) '*bhuktā mahī*' 'the earth that was enjoyed (for 100 years)' is a better reading.

2. Reading *tebhyaḥ śuṅgān gamiṣyati* 'from them the earth will go to Śuṅgas.'

334. After him the Pulindakas will rule for three years. King Ghoṣasuta too will rule for three years.

335. Thereafter* Vikramamitra will be king for many years. King Bhāgavata will rule for thirtytwo years.

336. His son Kṣemabhūmi will rule for ten years. Ten Tuṅga (? Śuṅga) kings will enjoy the earth.

337. (Defective verse) They will enjoy the earth for full hundred and twelve years and it perhaps will go to Sudeva who will not be a (born) king but an indulgent fellow ever since his childhood. He will then become a king.

338. There will be another king Devabhūmi among the Śṛṅgas (? Śuṅgas). He will be a Kāṇṭhāyana (Kāṇvāyana—'Belonging to Kaṇva gotra') and will rule for nine years.

339. Bhūtimitra, his son, will be king for twentyfour years. After him king Nārāyaṇa will rule for twelve years.

340. His son Suśarmā will rule for ten years. These four kings of lofty activities will be Kāṇṭhāyana (Kāṇvāyana) Brāhmaṇas.

341. They will make the vassals bow down to them. They will rule for fortyfive years. After the change of their rule, Andhras will come in.

342. Driving out Kāṇṭhāyanas (Kāṇvāyanas), overpowering Suśarman and making the remaining forces of the Śṛṅgas (? Śuṅgas) dwindle down, Sindhuka of the Andhra race will gain possession of the earth.

343. King Sindhuka will rule for twentythree years. After him Bhāta (Kṛṣṇa) will rule for ten and eight years (?)

344. His son, Śrīsātakarṇi will be very great. Sātakarṇi will rule for fifty and six years.

345. Āpādabaddha, his son, will rule (first) for ten years, (then) for twentyfour years and (then) for six years.

346. Nemikṛṣṇa will rule for twentyfive years. Then for full one year Hāla will be the king.

---

*Bd. P. v. 154 reads *sapta* for *tato* hereof. But Bd. P. reading fixed the period of the king's reign.

347. Five (or) seven kings (of this race) will be very powerful. Putrikaṣeṇa will rule for twentyfive years.

348. Sātakarṇi will be king for one year. Śivasvāmī will rule for twentyeight years.

349. King Gautamīputra will rule for twentyone years among men. Thereafter Yajñaśrī of the Sātakarṇi family will be the king for nineteen years.

350. After him, king Vijaya will rule for only six years. Daṇḍaśrī Sātakarṇi, his son, will for three years.

351. Pulovā (Pulumāyi) will rule for seven years. There will be other kings as well. Altogether there will be thirty Āndhra kings who will enjoy the earth.

352. The rule of the Āndhras will cover a period of four hundred, five and six (four hundred and eleven) years. There will be five families of the Āndhras and all of them will be (are) equal (in power).

353-355. There will be ten and seven Ābhīra kings, seven Gardabhins (Gardabhillas), ten Śakas, eight Yavanas, fourteen Maunas, as kings. Āndhras will enjoy the earth for two hundred and one hundred years. Śakas will enjoy the earth for three hundred and eighty years.

356. Yavanas will enjoy the earth for eighty years. It is remembered (prophesied) that Tuṣāras will be in possession of the earth for five hundred years.

357. Thirteen Maruṇḍa families will rule for four hundred and fifty years along with (other) Śūdras. There will be other Mlecca tribes as well.

358. Eleven of those Mlecchas will enjoy (the earth) for three hundred years. Then the Śūdra tribes (Kilakila) Kolikilas (?) will rule for an equal period (?)

359. Vindhyaśakti will take over the administration from Kolikilas. Having supervised over the administration for ninetysix years, he will pass away.

360. Listen to and understand the future Śūdra clans called Diśakas (?) Svarapurañjaya will be the son of Śeṣa, the king of serpents (Vaidiśaka—residents of Vidiśā?).

361-362. That king, born of the race of serpents, will be a king who will enjoy. The following kings: Sadācandra who will be a part of the moon, Nakhavān the second, Dhana-

dharma the next one, Viṁśaja the fourth and Bhūtinanda thereafter, will be kings in the foreign land (or at Vidiśā?)

363. At the close of the rule of Nandana of the Aṅgas, Madhunandi will become the king. His younger brother will be Nandiyaśas by name.

364-365. There will be three kings in his family: Dohitra, Śiśuka and Pravīra. Śiśuka will rule over Purikā. The powerful Pravīra will be the son of Vindhyaśakti, He will rule over the city Kāñcanaka (along with the others) for sixty years.

366. They will perform Vājapeya Yajñas with the offerings of excellent Dakṣiṇās. His four sons will become great rulers of men.

367. When the family of Vindhyakas becomes extinct, three kings of Bāhlīkas will enjoy the kingdom for thirty years. Supratīka and Nabhīra (will be the prominent kings).

368. The king named Śakyamā will be the ruler of Māhiṣīs. Puṣpamitras and Paṭṭamitras will rule for thirteen years.

369. Seven excellent kings will rule over Mekalā (Amarkaṇṭaka). The kings in Komalā (Comilla, Bengal) will be very strong and powerful.

370. Nine kings of great intellect and well known as Meghas will become the kings of the Niṣadha (Marwar, De 140) land. They will rule till the end of the Manvantara.

371. Those strong and powerful kings will be born in the race of Nala. Viśvasphāni, the powerful, will become the ruler of Magadhas.

372. After exterminating all the other kings he will make Kaivartas, Pañcakas, Pulindas and Brāhmaṇas as well as the other castes (rule over the kingdom).

373. He will establish kings in different lands, thanks to his excessive splendour. Viśvasphāni will be very powerful and strong in war like Viṣṇu.

374. It is said that in external appearance, Viśvasphāni will be like a eunuch. He will destroy the existing Kṣatriyas and make other Kṣatriya clans.

375. After propitiating Devas, Pitṛs and Brāhmaṇas many times that strong king will reach the banks of Jāhnavī (Gaṅgā) and cast off his body.

376. After forsaking his body, he will go to Śakra's region. Thereafter, the nine Nāka (Nāga) kings will enjoy the city of Campāvatī.

377. The seven Nāgas will enjoy the beautiful city of Mathurā.

Kings born of the family of Guptas[1] will enjoy all the territories near Gaṅgā such as Prayāga, Sāketa and Magadha.

378. The descendants of Maṇidhānya will enjoy the territories of Niṣadha, Yaduka, Śaiśīta and Kālatopaka.

379. Devarakṣitas (?) will enjoy the territories of Kośalas, Āndhras, Pauṇḍras and Tāmraliptas along with the oceans as well as the beautiful city of Campā.

380. Guha will protect Kaliṅgas, Mahiṣas, Mahendranilaya and other territories.

381. (The king) named Kanaka will enjoy Strīrāṣṭra (the women's territory, Kāmarūpa) and Bhakṣyakas. All these kings will be contemporaries.

382. Thereafter,[2] the untruthful and unrighteous Yavanas of great fury and of little grace will rule here spreading their religion, spending vast riches and giving vent to their lust.

383. Those kings will not be duly crowned. They will have all the defects of the (Kali) Age. They will commit evil actions.

384. During the remaining period of the Kali Age, the kings will enjoy the Earth, not even hesitating to kill women and children and to destroy one another.

385. The races of those kings will gain continuous ascendancy (at some time or in some places) or flourish and perish in succession in due course.

386. They will be devoid of piety, true love and real wealth. All the common people coming into close contact with them, too will follow the customs and habits of Mleccha (aliens and outcastes).

387. They will be acting contrary to accepted traditions.

---

1. Bd. P. v. 195 reads *Sapta* for *Gupta* hereof.

2. Verses 382-405 depict a gruesome picture of the advanced Kali Yuga. The description (including identical verses) are found in other Purāṇas as well. R.C. Hazra in *PRHRC* states that such was the actual condition of the people from 200 B.C. to 200 A.D.—the period in which these Purāṇas came to be composed.

They will destroy their subjects. The kings will be greedy and devoted to mendacious behaviour.

388-389. When their turn is over, women will outnumber men in that Age. People will become more and more deficient in learning and strength. Their span of life will grow less and less. When their decline reaches the limit the ruling kings overwhelmed by Kāla will be ruined.

390. Struck down by Kalki, all the Mlecchas will be destroyed. All the heretics and the unrighteous will be doomed.

391-393. The very name king will disappear when the Kali Age comes to the period of junction. Only very few people will survive and they will be helpless and destitute without any belonging, as Dharma would have been destroyed by that time. There will be none to console them. They will have no wherewithals. They will be afflicted by diseases and sorrows. They will be overwhelmed and ruined by drought and mutual slaughter. They will have none to support them. Being distressed (and due to fear) they will forsake their avocations and professions. Deserting their own villages and towns they will resort to forest.

394-395. When the kings are destroyed, the subjects will leave off their homesteads. All the feelings of friendliness and affection will be lost. In acute distress, even the closest of friends will become bereft of affection. The discipline of castes and stages of life will become distrubed. Terrible mixture and mingling of the castes will result. People will take shelter on mountains and riverbanks.

396-397. They will resort to rivers, marshy foreshores of the seas and mountains. They will gather together in the territories of Aṅgas, Vaṅgas, Kaliṅgas, Kāśmīras, Kāśī, Kośalas, the mountain ravines of Ṛṣika and other places. Men will seek shelter on the ridges of Himavān and the coasts of the briny sea.

398. The Āryas will flock to the forests with the Mleccha tribes. Men will sustain themselves with the meat of deer, fishes, birds and beasts of prey as well as with sugar-cane plants, honey, greens, fruit and roots.

399. Like the sages (of yore) they will wear different kinds

of leaves and barks of trees as well as hides of deer which they themselves will make.

400. Desirous of growing foodstuffs (grains) through seeds, they will dig the earth deep with wooden pikes. They will strenuously rear goats and sheep, donkeys and camels.

401. The men then will resort to the banks of rivers for the sake of water. By means of their activities they will harass one another as well as the rulers of the land.

402. They will consider it honourable to be issueless. They will not observe rules of cleanliness and good behaviour. Then the men will be engrossed in evil actions and behave in this manner.

403. The subjects will follow the worst of religious observances. No one will live beyond their twentythird year.

404-405. They will be weak. They will be debilitated and fatigued due to sensuality. They will be overcome by (premature) old age. Their diet will consist of leaves, roots and fruits. Bark garments and deer skins will constitute their clothings. In search of livelihood they will be roaming over the earth. Towards the end of Kaliyuga, the people will come to such a plight.

406. When the Kali Age, the duration of which is a thousand divine years, comes to a close, the subjects will be annihilated along with the Kaliyuga. When it expires along with the period of junction, the Kṛta Age will come in.

407. When the moon, the sun, Tiṣya and Jupiter come together in a single sign of zodiac, the Kṛta Age will set in.

408. Thus the past, present and the future races have been enumerated in due order.

409-412. From the time of the coronation of Mahādeva* (Mahāpadma?) to the birth of Parīkṣit the duration was a thousand and fifty years. The period between Mahāpadma and the future kings ending with Āndhras whom I have narrated, has been calculated as eight hundred and thirtysix years by the learned sages, the knowers of Purāṇas.

**Mahānanda* in Bd. P. v. 227.

(Defective verse) The Seven Sages then said that a hundred years elapsed when Pratīpa was king (?) You should calculate twentyseven hundreds again (?)

413. The stellar mansions are altogether twentyseven. The Seven Sages stay in each of these, for hundred years in succession. This is remembered as the Yuga of the Seven Sages. The yeaṛs are calculated according to those of the Devas.

414. (Defective verse) The hundred years of the Seven Sages are equal to sixty divine years and seven (divine) days.

415. (?) The Seven Sages are seen in the east at first and then in the north of the zone of the constellations. Thereafter they are seen parallel to those constellations seen in the middle of the firmament.

416. It should be known that the Seven Sages are united with it (the zone of the constellations) in the sky for a hundred years. This is the evidence of the union of the Sages and the constellations.

417. In my opinion the Seven Sages were stationed in the Maghā (tenth) constellation at the time of Parīkṣit. At the time of Andhras they will be in the twentyfourth constellation (i.e. Śatabhiṣak).*

418. At that time the subjects will be afflicted very much. They will be doomed through their mendacious nature in the affairs of virtue, wealth and love.

419. When the Vedic and Smārta (pertaining to the Smṛtis) rituals (Dharma) become lax and the rigorous discipline of the castes and the stages of life becomes very loose, the deluded subjects will be weak in their soul-power and undergo a mixing and mingling of the castes.

---

*The corresponding Bd. P. v. 230a reads :

saptarṣayas tadā prāptāḥ pitrye pārīkṣite śatam |

If the reading is accepted, the verse means : During the period of Paṛikṣit the Saptarṣis were in the Pitrya (Maghā) constellation for a hundred years. Hence the period of the dynasty of Āndhras will be two thousand and seven hundred years ? The words in our text need correction.

420. Śūdras will become merged with the twice-born castes. Brāhmaṇas will begin to officiate as priests in the Yajñas of the Śūdras. Śūdras will begin to compose Mantras.

421-423. Desirous of securing means of livelihood, Brāhmaṇas will approach them reverentially. Declining gradually and bit by bit, all the subjects will be destroyed and when the Yuga expires, they will be completely destroyed.

Kali Yuga had started on the very day when Kṛṣṇa passed away. Understand the duration of Kali Age. Kaliyuga is said to be of the three hundred and sixty thousand years according to human calculation.

424. According to divine calculation it is one thousand years. The Sandhyāṁśa (the period of junction) is also mentioned. (That period is extra.) When it has expired completely Kṛta Age comes in.

425. The races of Aila and Ikṣvāku are said to become extinct with Sumitra.

426-427. Those who know about the Lunar race know that the Kṣatriya race of Aila will become extinct with Kṣemaka. The sons and descendants of the Sun of the past, present and future have been glorified. They were and will be the heighteners of their fame. In that race there were Brāhmaṇas, Kṣatriyas, Vaiśyas and Śūdras.

428-429. Many noble-souled kings are born and have passed away in every Yuga. Their names are legion. When the members of every family are calculated, many names are repeated. Hence they have not been mentioned by me. The race of Nimi comes to an end in the Vaivasvata Manvantara itself.

430. I will recount how the Kṣatriya race originates in this Yuga. Even as I recount listen and understand.

431-432. Devāpi will be born in the Kalāpa village. He will be a king of Pūru's family and considered (greater) than Ikṣvāku. He will be endowed with great Yogic power.*

*The corresponding verse of Bd. P. (v. 250) states : Devāpi belonging to the family of Pūru and Maru who belongs to Ikṣvāku family—these two are endowed with great Yogic Power. They stayed in the village called Kalāpa."

Suvarcas, the son of Soma, will be born in the family of Ikṣvāku. In the twentyfourth cycle of four Yugas, they will be the founders of the Kṣatriya race and traditions.

433. In the twentieth Yuga (? cycle of four Yugas ?) there will not be any founder of the Lunar race. Devāpi being unrivalled, will be the first king in the family of Aila.

434. In the four Yugas these two will be the founders of Kṣatriya race. Everywhere this should be known as the characteristic feature, for the sake of progeny (the perpetuation of the line).

435-436. When Kali Yuga declines and Kṛta Yuga sets in and again in the first Tretāyuga they will be the activisors of the Kṣatriya lines along with the Seven Sages. In the Dvāpara period, Kṣatriyas do not stay along with the sages.

437-438. When Kṛtayuga and Tretāyuga decline, the Seven Sages and the kings will take birth for the sake of seed of the Brāhmaṇa and Kṣatriya races. For the sake of progeny, they (the Seven Sages) abide by the kings in all the Manvantaras in every Yuga.

439. The annihilation of Kṣatriyas leads to their contact with Brāhmaṇas again (?) In all the seven Manvantaras all the progeny have been heard of (?)

440-442. In view of their long life the Seven Sages know the series of Yugas, the origin, activities and the decline of those active persons belonging to Brāhmaṇa and Kṣatriya races. The birth of the Brāhmaṇas in the families of Aila and Ikṣvāku is in this manner (?) Born in the Tretā Age and extinct in the Kali Age, they will follow the Age till the end of the Manvantara.

443. When all the Kṣatriyas were eliminated by Rāma, the son of Jamadagni, the Kṣatriyas of the two families were born again. I shall recount them. Listen and understand.

444. The families of Aila and Ikṣvāku spread once again. A series of other kings of the Kṣatriya race became rulers.

445. A hundred families undergoing coronation became famous among each of the races of Aila and Ikṣvāku.

446. The extent of Bhojas is up to twice of that (i.e. two hundred). Thus there were three hundred Kṣatriya

families. They were divided into four according to the four quarters.

447-449. Listen and understand even as I recount the past and the present kings among them. Prativindhyas were a hundred; Nāgas were a hundred; Hayas were a hundred; Dhṛtarāṣṭras were a hundred and one; Janamejayas were eighty; Brahmadattas were a hundred; Śirins and Vīrins were a hundred (each); then Pulomans were a hundred; Śvetas, Kāśas, Kuśas etc. were a hundred; the other Śaśabindus who passed away were a thousand.

450. All of them performed horse-sacrifices with lakhs and lakhs in Dakṣiṇā. Thus hundreds and thousands of saintly kings have passed away.

451-452. Know that the descendants in this world of the present Vaivasvata Manu cannot be mentioned in detail and in full even in hundreds of years.

453. In the Vaivasvata Manvantara already twentyeight cycles of four Yugas have passed along with their saintly kings. Listen and understand those who yet remain.

454-458. Forty excellent kings will be born in the future. Then the Vaivasvata Manvantara will come to a close. Incidentally I have mentioned everything in detail and in brief. Many are repeated. As they are too many they could not be mentioned in full. The twentyfive families of Yayāti's sons were highly beneficent to the people. They have been glorified. They even now sustain the worlds.

He who listens to and remembers these attains rare things of the world. They attain longevity, fame, wealth, sons, heaven and infiniteness. O Brāhmaṇas, thus the third section has been recounted by me. What more shall I say?

CHAPTER THIRTYEIGHT

The Manvantaras & Dissolution of the Universe

1. After hearing the third section completed (narrated in full) by the intelligent Sūta, the excellent sages asked him about the fourth Section.

The Sages said :

2. The third section called *Anuṣaṅga Pāda* has been completely narrated out of affection by you. Now narrate to us in details the fourth *Pāda* called *Saṁhāra* (annihilation or conclusion).

3-4. Please recount all the Manvantaras, the ones that had elapsed along with the others (the future ones), the Seven Sages who exist now in the current Manvantara and the details of the creation and expansion of the noble-souled Manu. Narrate everything in detail and in the proper order.

Sūta said :

5. O excellent sages, I shall narrate everything to you precisely; the fourth and the concluding section, along with the (description of) annihilation.

6. O Brāhmaṇas, listen to the creative activity of the current noble-souled Vaivasvata Manu in detail as well as in proper order.

7. Even as I recount, listen and understand the gist of the (past) Manvantaras along with the seven future ones as well as the dissolution of the worlds.

8. All these (past) seven Manvantaras have already been recounted by me. Now listen to the brief description of the future Manvantaras from me.

9. I shall speak about the current Vaivasvata Manu and the future Sāvarṇa Manu briefly. Listen and understand.

10-12. The future Seven Great Sages are remembered as follows : Kuśika's descendant Gālava, Jamadagni's son Bhārgava (Paraśurāma), Dvaipāyana of Vasiṣṭha lineage, Kṛpa the descendant of Śaradvān, Dīptimān of Atri's lineage, Ṛṣyaśṛṅga of Kaśyapa's lineage, Droṇa's son Aśvatthāmā of great fame and belonging to Bhāradvāja Gotra—these noble-souled ones are the future Seven Great Sages.

13. There will be three groups of Devas, viz. Sútapas, Amitābhas and Sukhas (? Mukhyas). Each of these groups consists of twenty Devas.

14-15. I shall enumerate them. Listen and understand attentively. Rita, Tapas, Śukra, Dyuti, Jyotis, Prabhākara, Prabhāsa, Bhāsakṛt, Dharma, Tejas, Raśmi, Ṛtu, Virāṭ, Arciṣmān, Dyotana, Bhānu, Yaśas, Kīrti, Budha and Dhṛti—these twenty Devas constituting the group Sutapas, are glorified by their names.

16-17. Prabhu, Vibhu, Vibhāsa, Jetā, Hantā, Arihā, Ritu, Sumati, Pramati, Dīpti, Samākhyāta, Mahas, Mahān, Deha, Muni, Naya, Jyeṣṭha, Sama, Satya and Viśruta—these are the twenty Devas mentioned as Amitābhas.

18-19. Dama, Dātā, Vida, Soma, Vitta, Vaidya, Yama, Nidhi, Homa, Havya, Huta, Dāna, Deya, Dātā, Tapas, Sāma, Dhruva, Sthāna, Vidhāna and Niyama—these twenty are mentioned as constituting the Mukhya (Sukha) group of Devas in the first Sāvarṇa Manvantara.

20. All these are the sons of the noble-souled Kaśyapa, the son of Marīci who exists now. They will be born in the Sāvarṇa Manvantara.

21-22. He who was formerly Bali, the son of Virocana, will become their Indra. Nine sons will be born to Sāvarṇa Manu, viz. Vīravān, Avarīyān, Nirmoha, Satyavāk, Kṛti, Cariṣṇurājya, Viṣṇu, Vāca and Sumati.

23-24. I shall mention nine more in the other Sāvarṇa Manvantaras. Other Sāvarṇa Manus will be born as Brahmā's (future) sons. They are seen as Merusāvarṇis by those endowed with divine vision. They are the grandsons of Dakṣa, the sons of his beloved daughter.

25. They are endowed with great penance and great splendour. They live on the ridges of Meru. They are procreated by Brahmā and other (Devas) as well as by the intelligent Dakṣa.

26. They were born in the previous Cākṣuṣa Manvantara. These noble persons had been in the Maharloka. After returning from there they will resort to Meru.

The Sages said :

27. How were the sons procreated by Dakṣa in his own daughter? How were they created by Bhava, Dharma and Brahmā the noble souls?

Sūta said :

28. After bowing to Pracetas, henceforth, I shall mention the future Manus who are the Sāvarṇa Manus, their origin as well as their prowess.

29. When a short period of Cākṣuṣa Manvantara remained and the Vaivasvata Manvantara had begun, those who will be the Manus in the future Manvantara were born.

30. Of those Manus who are the daughter's sons of Prācetasa Dakṣa, the five named Sāvarṇas and four are born from great sages.

31. One Sāvarṇa is the son of Saṁjñā born of Vivasvān (the Sun-god). The eldest son of Saṁjñā is Lord Manu, son of the Sun-god (Vivasvān)

32. Their auspicious manifestation was (took place) at the advent of the Vaivasvata Manvantara. The fourteen Manus are glorified as the enhancer of fame.

33. These Manus are described in the Vedas, Śrutis* and Purāṇas as very powerful Prajāpatis. All of them were the lords of all living beings.

34. The entire Earth consisting of the seven continents and mountains is to be protected by these kings for a full thousand Yugas.

35. Their details will be mentioned along with their progeny

*Smṛtis in Bd. P. v. 30.

and penance. These creations of Svāyaṁbhuva and others should be known as fourteen.

36. They hold office as the presiding Authorities in the Manvantaras only once each. After the tenure of their office they resort to Maharloka.

37. (Defective verse) Among them eight have already ceased to operate; (excepting) six more Manus are the others who will come in the future. At present it is Lord Vaivasvata Manu who rules.

38. I shall mention those who remain, those who are the future Brāhmaṇas (Manus), along with Devas, Dānavas and sages as well as their (other) creation of the subjects.

39. The details of the creation of these Manus are to be known through the creative activity of Vaivasvata Manu, since they are neither inferior nor superior to those of Vaivasvata Manu.

40. I am not recounting their details for fear of repetition and due to their multiplicity in both the past and the future Manvantaras.

41. I shall mention them, the creative activities in the different families only partially. The remaining things should be known through their details and in order.

42. Dakṣa had a pious daughter who was well known as Suvratā. Although she was the youngest of the daughters, she was the most excellent and the most pious. Once the father took her with him and approached Brahmā.

43. He was in the Vairāja region seated along with Dharma and Bhava. Brahmā spoke to Dakṣa in the presence of Dharma and Bhava.

44. "O Dakṣa, this, your daughter Suvratā will give birth to four sons who will become the auspicious Manus and stabilise the discipline of four castes."

45. On hearing the words of Brahmā, the three—Dakṣa, Dharma and Bhava approached that girl mentally along with Brahmā.

46. The girl immediately gave birth to four sons who were similar to and befitting those four divine personages as they were of truthful meditation.

47. Those sons were born fully endowed with physical bodies, born in a trice but capable of all enjoyment, and competent to perform all activities. They were endowed with glory.

48. On seeing them, those deities who had realised Brahman began to claim "This is my son, This is my son". They began to tug at them furiously.

49. Since they mentally created sons through meditation, they said to one another : "Let us select that boy as our respective son who is similar to us physically.

50. If a boy is similar to one in features, prowess and name as well as complexion, one shall take him as one's gentle son.

51. A son emulates the features of his father invariably. Hence the son is born taking after the father and the mother."

52-53. After coming to terms like this, they took those boys who were similar in complexion (*Savarṇa*) to them. Since the boys were similar in complexion to god Brahmā and others, they are called Sāvarṇa. Since they were meditated upon and were accepted respectfully, they are remembered as Manus.

54. When the Cākṣuṣa Manvantara expired and the Vaivasvata Manvantara set in, a son named Raucya was born to Ruci, the Prajāpati.

55. He who was born of Bhūti became known by the name Bhautya. In the Vaivasvata Manvantara two sons were born to Vivasvān.

56. One is well known as Vaivasvata Manu and the other as Sāvarṇa. The learned Lord Vaivasvata Manu was the eldest son of Saṁjñā.

57-58. The other Vaivasvata Manu was the son of Sāvarṇa (i.e. Chāyā, the shadow of Saṁjñā). The four Sāvarṇa Manus born of the great sages will be equipping themselves with (the power of) penance. They will achieve all their tasks in their respective future Manvantaras.

59. (Defective verse) The sons of the first Merusāvarṇi Manu who was the son of Dakṣa were the three groups, Marīcigarbhas, Suśarmans and Pāras. All these noble-souled ones were born in the Vaivasvata Manvantara.

60. They are the sons of Rohita, the Prajāpati, the son of Dakṣa. In future each of these groups will consist of twelve Devas.

61. (Defective) Aiśvarya-Saṅgrāha, Rāha, Bāhuvaśa (and the remaining) should be known as twelve Pāra gods. Understand the later ones.

62-63. Vājiya, Vājijit, Prabhūti, Kakudī (?), Dadhikrāva, Ayapakva, Praṇīta, Vijaya, Madhu, Tejasmān and two Nathavas—these twelve constitute the Marīcis. I shall recount the Suśarmans mentioning the names. Listen to (them) and understand.

64-65. Varṇa, Aṅga, Viśva, Muraṇya, Vrajana, Amita, Dravaketu, Jambhostha, Ajasra, Śakraka, Sunemi and Dyutapas—these twelve constitute Suśarmans. Their future Indra will be known by the name Adbhuta.

66-69. The seven sages in the Rohita Manvantara were—Skanda of fiery nature and resembling Soma and otherwise known as Kārtikeya, Medhātithi of Pulastya lineage, Vasu of Kaśyapa Gotra, Jyotiṣmān of Bhṛgu family, Dyutimān of Aṅgiras lineage, Vasita of Vasiṣṭha Gotra, Havyavāhana of Atri's Gotra and Sutapas of Paulava family.

The following nine are glorified as the sons of the first Sāvarṇi—Dhṛtiketu, Dīptiketu, Śāpa, Hasta, Niramaya, Pṛthuśravas, Anīka, Bhūridyumna, and Bṛhadratha.

70-71. In the tenth revolution (i.e. cycle of four Yugas?) the second Sāvarṇi, the son of Dharma, will be the Manu. In his Manvantara, there will be two groups of Devas, viz. Sukhāmanas and Viruddhas. All of them will be Tviṣivants ('highly effulgent') a hundred in number and mutually equal(?)—alike.

72. They are said to be controlling the breath in (other ?) persons by the sages. They will be the Devas at the time of the Manu, son of Dharma.

73-74. Their Indra will be the great scholar Śānti. The Seven Great Sages will be the glorious Haviṣmān of the Pulaha family, Sukīrti of Bhṛgu race, Āpomūrti of Atri lineage, Āpava (?) of Vasiṣṭha family, Pratipa of Pulastya family, Nābhāga of Kaśyapa family and Abhimanyu of Aṅgiras family.

75-77. The ten sons of Manu will be—Sukṣetra, Uttamaujas, Bhūriṣeṇa, Vīryavān, Śatānīka, Nirāmitra, Vṛṣasena, Jayadratha, Bhūridyumna and Suvarcas. In the eleventh revolution (cycle of four Yugas) when the third Sāvarṇi will be the Manu, the following three groups of noble-souled Devas will be famous : Nirmāṇaratis, Kāmajas (Kāmagas in Bd.P.) and Manojavas.

78-80. Each of these groups consists of thirty units. The thirty days in a month mentioned by the poets constitute the Devas Nirmāṇaratis. The nights (known as ?) Vihaṅgamas (constitute the Kāmaja Devas). The Muhūrtas constitute the Devas Manojavas. These are the three groups of Devas mentioned. These future Manus are remembered as the sons of Brahmā.

81. Their Indra, the king of Suras, will be called Vṛṣa. Listen and understand their Seven Sages who are being glorified.

82-86. They are—Haviṣmān of Kaśyapa family, Vapuṣmān of Bhṛgu's race, Vāruṇi of Atri lineage, Bhaga of Vasiṣṭha's family, Puṣṭi who should be known as hailing from Aṅgiras family, Niścara of Pulastya race and Agnitejas of Pulaha family. They are also the Devas in the eleventh Manvantara. The following are the sons of Prājāpatya (son of Prajāpati) Sāvarṇa Manu—Sarvavega, Sudharmā, Devānīka, Purovaha, Kṣemadharmā, Gṛheṣu, Ādarśa and Pauṇḍraka.

In the twelfth revolution (Manvantara) Ṛtusāvarṇi, the son of Rudra, will be the Manu. He will be the fourth Sāvarṇi. Listen to the Devas in that Manvantara. The future Devas are said to consist of five groups.

87. The Devas will be—Haritas, Rohitas, Sumanas, Sukarmans and Supāras. These are remembered as the five groups of Devas.

88-89. They are the mental sons of Brahmā. Each of these groups consists of ten Devas. The following ten constitute the Harita group of Devas : Aruntija, Hari (? Havi), Vidvān (whose followers are) in thousands, Parvatānucara, Āpas, Aṁśu (prob. Apāṁśu as in Bd.P.), Manojava, Urja, Svāhā, Svadhā and Tārā.

90-91. The following ten constitute the Rohita group:

Tapas, Jāni, Bhṛti, Vācā, Bandhu, Rajas, Rāja, Svarṇapāda, Vyuṣṭi and Vidhi. Know these to be the Sumanas: the thirty-three Devas who have been glorified (before), viz. Uṣita and others.

92-93. Understand the Sukarmans. They are—Suparvā, Vṛṣabha, Pṛṣṭa, Kṛpi, Dyumna, Vipaścita, Vikrama, Karma, Nibhṛta and Kānta. These Devas are Sukarmans. Now understand their sons (i.e. Supāras ?)

94-95. They are : Varyodita, Jiṣṭa, Varcasvī, Dyutimān, Havi, Śubha, Havikṛta, Prāpti, Vyāpṛtha and Daśama (?) These are the mentally created ones the Supāras, the Devas mentioned (before). Ṛtadhāmā of great fame should be known as their Indra.

96-99. The Seven Sages are—Kṛti the son of Vasiṣṭha, Sutapas of Atri's family, Tapomūrti of the Aṅgiras race, Tapasvin of Kaśyapa Gotra, Taposyāna of Pulastya family, Taporati of Pulaha Gotra and the seventh of them should be known as Tapomati of Bhṛgu family. These are the Siddhas, the Seven Sages in the Sāvarṇika Manvantara. The following are the sons of the twelfth (?) Manu : Devavān, Upadeva, Devaśreṣṭha, Vidūratha, Mitravān, Mitrabindu, Mitrasena, Amitrahā, Mitrabāhu, and Suvargas.

100. In the thirteenth revolution (Manvantara), the Raucya Manvantara, three groups of Devas are mentioned by the self-born deity (Brahmā).

101. All those noble souls are Brahmā's mental sons. They are Sutrāmans, Sudharmans and Sukarmans.

102-103. They are said to be the future Somapāyins (Imbibers of Soma juice), the groups of Devas. Along with the performers of Yajñas, the deities are thirtythree in number. They include the Ājya, Pṛṣadājya and Grahajyeṣṭha groups of Devas. Listen to and understand that the thirtythree Devas are separate ones.

104-105. The Sutrāmans are the present Prayājyas and Ājyapas. The Anuyājyas and those who partake Pṛṣadājya are Sukarmans. The Upayājyas are Sudharmans. Thus the Devas have been recounted. Divaspati of great prowess will be their Indra.

106-109. The sons of Ruci should be known as the grandsons of Pulaha. The Seven Sages in the thirteenth Manvantara will be—Dhṛtimān of Aṅgiras family, Pathyavān of Pulastya race, Tattvadarśin of Pulaha family, Nirutsaka of Bhṛgu Gotra, Niṣprakaṁpa of Atri's family, Nirmoha of Kaśyapa Gotra and Svarūpa of Vasiṣṭha lineage. The following are the sons of Raucya Manu in the thirteenth Manvantara : Citrasena, Vicitra, Tapas, Dharmadhṛta, Bhava, Anekabaddha, Kṣatrabaddha, Surasa, Nirbhaya and Pṛtha.

110. In the fourteenth Bhautya Manvantara, the future groups of Devas are five.

111. The five groups of Devas are—Cākṣuṣas, Kaniṣṭhas, Pavitras, Bhājaras and Vācāvṛddhas.

112-113. Know that the seven different parts are those named Cākṣuṣas. They understand Bṛhada and other Sāmans as the Kaniṣṭhas. The seven worlds are Paritras (Pavitras ?) The Bhājiras (Bhājaras) are the seven Sindhus (oceans, rivers). Know the sages to be Vācāvṛddhas belonging to Svāyaṁbhuva Manu (?) All the Indras of the Manvantaras should be known as having equal characteristics (and powers).

114. Those Indras excel all the mobile and the immobile living beings in the three worlds by means of their splendour, penance, intellect, strength, learning and exploits.

115. The Indras (or Devas) are Bhūtāpavādins, Hṛṣṭas, Medhyasthas, Bhūtavādins, Bhūtānuvādins. The three Vedas are competent in respect to *Pravādins* (arguers ?)

116. Agnidhra, Kāśyapa, Paulastya, Māgadha, Bhārgava, Agnibāhu, Śuci, Āṅgirasa, Ojasvin, and Subala are the sons of Bhautya Manu.

117. All these four Sāvarṇa Manus are the sons of Brahmā. One Sāvarṇa Manu is called the son of Vivasvān.

118. Raucya and Bhautya, these two Manus belong to Pulaha and Bhṛgu families. While Bhautya rules over, the Kalpa becomes complete.

Sūta said :

119. When all things are dissolved completely, when all the Manvantaras come to a close and many Yugas pass on, it is called *Saṁhāra* (Annihilation).

120-122. Then, at the end of the Manvantara, the seven Devas of the Bhṛgu family, the powerful sovereign rulers, who had enjoyed the three worlds for seventyone cycles of four Yugas by remaining within them, and who used to perform Yajñas along with the Pitṛs, Manus and the Seven Sages will then abandon the three worlds and go to Maharloka along with their devotees and those who perform Yajñas. When they proceed upwards, and when the Manvantara expires, all the three worlds will be rendered without any support.

123. O Brāhmaṇas ! Thereafter, the abodes presided over by deities become vacant and fall down along with constellations, stars and planets getting hurled and destroyed.

124-125. Thereafter, when the lords of the three worlds including the eight Indras pass away, the fourteen groups of Devas beginning with (A)jita and others and ending with Cākṣuṣas—the Devas who were very mighty and full of splendour in all the Manvantaras—will go to Maharloka where they will become identical with those Devas who stay there till the end of the Kalpa.

126-127. It is reported that when the time of *Saṁhāra* (lit. heaping and collision—*Saṅkalana*) comes those fourteen groups of Devas will forsake Maharloka and go to Janaloka with (i.e. preserving) their physical bodies and accompanied by their followers.

128-129. Thus when the Devas have gone from Maharloka to Janaloka, when *Bhūtādi* (Cosmic Ego—*Ahaṁkāra*) and other (prime causes of the universe) remain and (even) immobiles have come to an end, when the abodes of the worlds beginning with Bhūḥ and ending with Mahaḥ have become void, when the Devas have gone upward and become united with the Kalpavāsins (those who stay till the end of the Kalpa),

130. after withdrawing (annihilating) those Devas, Sages, Pitṛs and Dānavas, god Brahmā with his powerful vision sees that it is the end of the Yuga and puts an end to his creation.

131. The knowers of day and night of god Brahmā understand that the day of Brahmā consists of a thousand cycles of four Yugas and similarly the night too consists of a thousand cycles of four Yugas.

132. This *Pratisañcara* (Dissolution & Reabsorption) of all

living beings is of three types, viz. *Naimittika* (periodical), *Prākṛtika* (pertaining to Prakṛti) and *Ātyantika* (the ultimate one).

133. The *Naimittika* dissolution is the burning (of the Universe) at the end of the Kalpa and complete withdrawal (of all beings) by god Brahmā. The destruction of Karaṇas (instruments or means and causes) of living beings during *Pratisarga* (absorption) into Prakṛti is called Prākṛta type of dissolution.

134. The dissolution due to dawning of spiritual knowledge is said to be the ultimate one (*Ātyantika*) as it renders the seeds (causes) of Saṁsāra, impossible.

135. After dissolving all the Devas residing in the three worlds at the end of his day and when he feels the urge to sleep (?), Lord Brahmā destroys all the subjects and dissolves all the creation.

136. Then at the end of a thousand cycles of *Caturyugas*, when the period of annihilation of Yuga arrives, Prajāpati (Lord of subjects, viz. Brahmā) begins to make the subjects abide in him (i.e. absorb in himself).

137-138. Then a drought sets in lasting for a hundred years. Those living beings on the surface of the Earth, (still left) being deficient in strength become dissolved and are merged into the Earth. The Sun then rises up with seven rays constituting his chariot.

139. Lord Sun of unbearable rays begins to suck up water through his rays. Those seven rays will be green in colour and of dazzling lustre.

140. Spreading over the forest ('the sky'—Bd.P.) gradually they get transformed again. The wood over the earth, wealth and refulgence begin to blaze with water (?)

141. Hence it is water that is said to be the cause of the blazing of the Sun. With drought the Sun does not blaze. With drought the Sun has no halo (?)

142. With drought the rays of the Sun do not pick up things (from the ground). The Sun blazes with water. Hence, sucking up water, the Sun blazes in the sky.

143. His seven rays suck up water from the great ocean. With that as his diet, the single Sun proliferates into seven Suns.

144. Then those seven rays assuming the forms of seven Suns, burn the four quarters and the four worlds like fires.

145. The fiery rays reach the top and bottom (of the worlds). Seven Suns and the blazing fires of dissolution shine fiercely.

146. Ignited and illuminated by means of the water, thousands of rays envelop the sky and scorch the Earth.

147. Being burnt by their blazing heat, the Earth inclusive of the oceans and the mountains becomes bereft of moisture and viscidity.

148. The nether regions, the upper regions and the sides are restrained by the illuminated rays of the Sun of various colours and spreading everywhere.

149. The scorching rays of the Sun and the leaping flames of the fires mingling with one another appear to be a single unit with a single flame.

150. That fire becomes a mass of fiery zone creating the destruction of all the worlds. With its brilliance it scorches all the four worlds.

151. All the mobile and the immobile beings get dissolved. The Earth, devoid of trees and even grass, appears like the back of a tortoise shell.

152. The entire universe destroyed and affected by misfortune appears like a frying pan. The whole of the sky, filled with the burning rays, blazes fiercely.

153. All the living beings in the nether worlds and in the great ocean become dissolved and one with the Earth.

154. The continents, mountains, sub-continents, the great oceans—all these will be reduced to ashes by that cosmic fire, the soul of everything.

155. The excessively kindled fire sucks up water from everywhere, the oceans, the rivers and the nether worlds. Spreading over the Earth it blazes up.

156. Then the big Saṁvartaka fire (the fire of dissolution) transcends the mountains and destroys all the worlds. It becomes a terribly kindled fire.

157. It then pierces through the Earth and dries up Rasātala. After burning up Pātālas it burns down the world of serpents.

158. After burning the Earth from below, it burns the firmament above spreading through thousands, lakhs and trillions of Yojanas.

159. Many flames leap out from that Saṁvartaka fire. Glowing fiercely the Saṁvartaka fire consumes Gandharvas, Piśācas, the great serpents and Rākṣasas. Everything is reduced to a huge globular mass (of ashes).

160. The deadly fire thus burns all the four worlds, viz. Bhūrloka, Bhuvarloka, Svarloka and Maharloka in a terrible manner.

161. When all the worlds are enveloped with fire on all sides and above, the entire universe is slowly permeated with brilliance and shines like a (red hot) ball of iron.

162. Thereafter the terrible Saṁvartaka clouds begin to rise in the sky. They assume the shapes of the herds of huge elephants and are embellished with lightning streaks.

163. Some are dark-coloured like the blue lotus. Some are like the white lilies, some resemble *lapis lazuli* and others are like emerald and sapphire.

164. Others are (white) like the conch shell and the *kunda* flowers. Some are (black) like the natural collyrium. Some clouds are smoke-coloured and some clouds are yellow.

165. Some clouds have the (grey) colour of a donkey, some resemble the red lac, others have the lustre of the red arsenic and there are dove-coloured clouds.

166. Some glow-worm-coloured clouds rise up in the sky; some are as vast as the expansive cities and the Earth and some are as huge as herds of elephants.

167. Some clouds are like mountains and some are like rocky regions. Some resemble large basins and some huge shoals of fish.

168. Terrific in appearance and multi-formed, all those clouds thundering terribly, fill the entire firmament at that time (of dissolution).

169. Then the terrific fresh clouds identifying themselves with the Suns, organise themselves in seven groups and extinguish the fire.

170. The clouds then shower energetically and quell the entire inauspicous and terrible fire.

171. The universe is filled with waters of the heavy downpour. The brilliance of the burning fire is overcome by the waters and the fire enters (i.e. merges) into water.

172. When in the course of a hundred years the whole fire is quelled, the clouds that arise from the fire inundate the entire universe with huge quantities of showers.

173. Urged by the self-born deity (Brahmā), they fill the universe with their showers. Others assail the sea-shore with large quantities of water. The entire Earth with its continents and mountains is covered with water.

174. O Brāhmaṇas, the entire quantity of water showered by the clouds enters the ocean. There it is sucked up by the rays of the Sun.

175. The water sucked up by the rays of the Sun clings to the clouds. It falls again on to the Earth whereby the oceans are filled up.

176. Then the oceans overflow their shores all round. Mountains crumble down and the Earth sinks into the water.

177. Whirling up suddenly, a violent wind of terrible nature envelops all those clouds in the sky.

178. In that *Ekārṇava* (a single vast sheet of water) all the mobile and the immobile beings get dissolved. When a thousand cycles of four Yugas pass away, it is called a complete Kalpa.

179. Learned men call this vast sheet of water whereby the entire world is enveloped, *Ekārṇava*. All separate entities are lost sight of. Neither the surface of the Earth, nor the atmosphere, neither the wind nor the firmament is visible distinctly.

180. Objects of *Pārthiva* (Earthly) nature, waters of the ocean and all *Haima* (i.e. of the elements of fire, Gold standing for Tejas) objects form one unit termed *Salila* (water).

181. When only water is seen flowing hither and thither it is called *Salila*. When it stands covering the whole Earth, that (mass of) water is called *Arṇava* (an ocean).

182-183. The word *Bhā* indicates *Vyāpti* (pervasion) and *Dipti* (splendour). Since water shines and pervades all the ashes (of the universe) it is called *Ambaḥ*. The root √*Ar* means multiplicity and quickness. In that *Ekārṇava* waters are not quick. Hence they are called "Narās".

184. At the end of that period of a thousand sets of four Yugas, one day of Brahmā passes off. During the whole of that period the entire universe becomes sub-merged in the *Ekārṇava*. All the activities of Prajāpati (Brahmā) cease (to exist).

185-186. When in that *Ekārṇava* the mobile and the immobile beings become annihilated, Brahmā assumes this form—with thousand eyes, thousand feet, thousand heads, beautiful mind, thousand legs, thousand eyes and faces, thousand speeches (tongues), thousand arms and the lustre of the Sun. He is called the first Prajāpati and the Puruṣa in the path of Trayī (three Vedas).

187. He has brilliant complexion like the Sun. He is the protector of the worlds. He is single and the first *Turāṣāṭ* (forestaller of the enemies). He becomes Hiraṇyagarbha, the great Puruṣa. He goes beyond the darkness (of ignorance).

188. At the end of the period of a thousand cycles of four Yugas when everything around is flooded with water, the lord becomes desirous of sleep and creates a dark night without light.

189. When Brahmā lies down with the four types of creation withdrawn in the *Aṇḍa* (Cosmic Egg), the Seven Great Sages see that noble-souled Kāla (god of Time or Death).

190. At that time they move about in Janaloka. By means of penance they have gained (divine) vision. They are the noble souls—Bhṛgu and others. Their characteristics have already been recounted by me.

191. With their divine vision only they see the seven worlds—Satya and others. They visualize Brahmā during the great nights of Brahmā.

192. The Seven Sages see him at the time of his sleep. He is cited to be the first Parameṣṭhin, because he stays beyond all Kalpas.

193. In the beginning of every Kalpa, he becomes the creator of all living beings again and again. After withdrawing all creations within himself Prajāpati (creates them again).

194. The excessively brilliant one, the creator of everything takes (withdraws) everything into himself and thereafter stays within the single vast sheet of water for the whole of that night.

195. Then, when the night passes off, Prajāpati wakes up. He is induced (in his mind) with the desire for creation once again.

196-198. At the time of the *Naimittika* (periodic) dissolution (by Brahmā), when Prajāpati grows calm, in the course of withdrawal effected all the living beings get separated from their bodies. All the Bhūtas become burnt by the rays of the Sun; even gods, sages and the excellent Manus (are affected by it in that water of flood.). In that collision all the living beings beginning with Gandharvas and ending with Piśācas who have not been scorched in the beginning of the Kalpa resort to Janaloka.

199. The living beings of the lower strata of animals and those that have fallen into hell—all those become burnt up and get absolved from sins. As long as the universe is submerged in water, they abide in Janaloka.

200. When the night of Brahmā whose source of origin is the Unmanifest, dawns again all those living beings are born again.

201. The sages, Manus, Devas and all the four kinds of living beings (are alike in this respect). Those Siddhas too die and are born.

202. Just as the Sun is rising and setting in this world (it happens regularly), so also the living beings are seen to have birth and destruction.

203-205. The rebirth after the dissolution of all living beings is called Saṁsāra (worldly existence). Just as all living beings (e.g. trees) germinate after the rains fall, so also the subjects and the immobile and other beings are born in every Kalpa. Just as in successive seasons the different forms of the characteristics of the seasons appear in the same succession as before, so also at the time of (every) creation the mobile and the immobile beings (appear in the same manner as they were) before Brahmā's nights and the dissolutions.

206. All the living beings come out and re-enter the creator of subjects, Brahmā, the great lord, Prajāpati of great Yogic power.

207. The great Deva who is both manifest and unmanifest

becomes the creator of all living heings again and again in the beginnings of the Kalpas. The entire universe is his.

208. It is he by whom the waters are created at first, the waters that reach the surface of the earth along the path taken before.

209. Just as mortal beings revolve through those (*Yonis* or births) due to their auspicious and inauspicious activities, so they move upwards and downwards due to the (pull of) the Sun, as transfer from one body to another is inevitable.

210. [1]So also Devas, Manus, Prajeśas and other Siddhas who have attained heaven naturally assume the forms of righteous living beings on being subjected to the inevitable future.

211. Henceforth, I shall recount the period of dissolution of all living beings (*Ābhūtasaṁplava*). O Brāhamaṇas, the Manvantaras have already been explained by me along with Prajñānisarga[2] (creation through intellect.) and the fourteen Manus.

212. All the Manvantaras consist of a thousand cycles of four Yugas. When two thousand cycles of four Yugas are completed it is said that a Kalpa is finished entirely.

213. This should be known as one day of Brahmā. Understand its calculation. The time taken to utter a short syllable or to wink once is called Nimeṣa. It is equal to a Mātrā.

214. Fifteen such Nimeṣas of human beings constitute one Kāṣṭhā. One Lava is equal to five Kṣaṇas and twenty Kāṣṭhās constitute three Lavas

215. According to another calculation seven and a half measures (*Prasthas*) of water constitute a Lava.[3] Thirty Lavas should be known as a Kalā and thirty Kalās, one Muhūrta.

216. Thirty such Muhūrtas make one day and one night or nine hundred Kalās make one day and one night.[4]

---

1. Obscure. So is the corresponding text in Bd. P.3.41.207.
2. *Prajānisarga* 'creation of subjects' in Bd.P.v.209.
3. Perhaps it indicates that the time taken by so much of water to drip through the hole in the mechanical device used to calculate time, is one *Lava.*
4. The reading here of *vyadhikāni śatāni ṣaṭ* should be emended as *tryadhikāni* etc. meaning 'six (hundred) increased by three hundred'.

217. The movement of the Moon and the Sun should be known by counting these: Fifteen Nimeṣas make one Kāṣṭhā. Thirty Kāṣṭhās make one Kalā.

218. Thirty Kalās make one Muhūrta. Some say that Kalā is a tenth part of a Muhūrta. Forty Kalās are termed (by others) one Muhūrta.

219-220. Muhūrtas and Lavas are determined (thus) by those who know the measure. (Instead of the above) through water also time is measured. Thirteen Palas of water make a Prastha according to the calculation current in Magadha. Four Prasthas of water make one Nālika Ghaṭa (a jar with a tube fitted in).

221. The bottom plate of the device is four Aṅgulas square. There are four holes in it, each of the size of a golden *māṣa* (the pulse, black gram). Two Nālika Ghaṭas of water flow through those holes in the period of a Muhūrta. It is the same both in the day and in the night.

222-223. Thanks to the special movement of the Sun, the maximum number of Kalās is six hundred and five in all the Ṛtus always. This is to be known as one human day. The Stellar day contains ten more. A human year is calculated through Sāvana months.

224. It is decided in the scripture that a human year is one day and one night for the Devas. Through this day, the months, Ayanas and years should be calculated.

225. Knowledge of this is arrived at by this method. The terms given are only indicative. Since Kalā constitutes the basic unit time is mentioned as Kāla.

226. One day of Brahmā is constituted by ten million two hundred and ninety thousand divine years.

227. On hearing this, the sages were very much surprised. They asked Sūta thereafter to make their knowledge clearer numerically.

The Sages said:

228. We wish to hear the magnitude of the period of dissolution on the basis of human calculation, briefly, consisting of small words and syllables.

229. On hearing their words, lord Vāyu endowed with divine attributes, and celestial vision and engaged in the welfare of the worlds spoke in brief.

230. "The day and the night of Brahmā have already been mentioned. I shall now mention their duration based on worldly calculation.

231-233a. According to human calculation, four hundred and thirtytwo crores eight millions nine hundred and eighty thousand (4328980000) human years constitute the period of dissolution.

233b-236. Then seven Suns rise up. All the four types of creations become merged in the great elements of the worlds. The universe is flooded with water. All the mobile and the immobile beings are destroyed. After completing the annihilation Prajāpati becomes quiescent. When everything is burnt, light vanishes and everything is surrounded by nocturnal darkness. The entire vast sheet of water is then presided over by Īśvara. The duration of the period of *Ekārṇava* is the same as that of the day of the lord. The period of night is as long as everything is submerged in water. When that recedes, it is remembered as day.

237. The night and day of Brahmā succeed each other. This successive period of night and day of the lord is what is called *Ābhūtasaṁplava*.

238. It is called *Ābhūtasaṁplava* because whatever living beings there be whether mobile or immobile in the entire range of three worlds upto the elements (*bhūtas*) become merged.

239. (Another explanation) Prajāpati is called *Bhūta* because he exists at the very outset before all the subjects and creations. Everything floats and merges in *Bhūta*. Therefore the the final dissolution is called *Ābhūtasaṁplava*.

240. The word *Ābhūtasaṁplava* is also used in the sense of permanency and deathlessness (?) The past, present and future subjects are calculated up to *Aparārdha** (infinite number) by means of divine number.

241. The maximum longevity (of Brahmā) is mentioned as twice Parārdha. This much is the period of stay of Aja (the

*Probably the reading is 'ā-parārdha' upto Parārdha—vide v. 241.

unborn) Prajāpati. At the end of the stay of Brahmā, Parameṣṭhin, there is the *Pratisarga* (secondary creation).

242. Just as the flame of a lamp is blown out by the gust of wind, so also Brahmā becomes quiescent as a result of the Pratisarga.

243. (Defective) The principles beginning with *Mahat* become withdrawn in the great Īśvara; Mahat merges into the Unmanifest and all the three Guṇas attain equilibrium.

244-245. Thus *Ābhūtasaṁplava* has been recounted by me briefly. This withdrawal by complete merging in water is a periodic (*Naimittika*) reabsorption in relation to Brahmā. What more shall I tell you?

He who always retains this in memory, he who listens to this frequently, shall attain great Siddhi as a result of glorification and listening attentively."

CHAPTER THIRTYNINE

Worlds from Maharloka to Śiva's City[1]

Vāyu said :

1-6. Those Brāhmaṇas of acute discernment, who are of extra-ordinary good behaviour, who subsist on the residue of what is consigned to sacred fire in *Homa*, and who maintain special piety, become the residents of *Maharloka* along with Devas.

The fourteen Manus, the increasers of fame who had been glorified before, and who belong to the past, present and the future, are born here again and again along with sages, Devas, Gandharvas and Rākṣasas and take up their duties in the Manvantaras.

---

1. This chapter corresponds to Bd. P. 3.4.2. Only verse numbers from it are mentioned for reference. The chapter is an epitome of *Bhuvana Kośa.*

Devas, Seven Sages, Manus and Pitṛs pass away gradually and resort to Maharloka along with the righteous Brāhmaṇas, Kṣatriyas and Vaiśyas. They are accompanied by those who perform truthful actions, who are faithful and devoid of arrogance and who regularly maintain Vedic and Smārta rites and who maintain the rigorous discipline of Varṇas and Āśramas. Afterwards when the period of a Manvantara expires, they cease to operate in their offices (and go to Maharloka).

The Sages said :

7-8. O Powerful Mātariśvan (Wind-god), of what nature is that world which has been called Maharloka by you? In every world many (meritorious souls) will be presiding. Hence, O Lord, recount to us with pleasure, how many are those worlds and how they are burnt (if at all). You alone know this precisely.

9. On being requested thus by those disciplined-souled sages, Vāyu, the knower of reality, spoke these sweet and truthful words.

Vāyu said:

10. There are only fourteen abodes called *Lokas*[1] (worlds) described by great sages and (meritorious men) stay therein.

11-12. They call seven of them *Kṛtas* and the other seven *Akṛtas*. The seven worlds, enumerated as Bhūḥ etc. are the *Kṛtas*. The seven *Akṛtas* are the Prākṛta ones (created by

---

1. Verses 10-48 describe the seven *Lokas* (worlds), viz. (1) Bhūr, (2) Bhuvar, (3) Svar, (4) Mahar, (5) Jana, (6) Tapas and (7) Satya. The location of 1-4 is (1) the Earth, (2) the space between the Earth and the Sun, (3) the space between the Sun and Dhruva (the Polar Star), (4) the space between Dhruva and Jana-Loka.

Verses 24-27 explain the significance of Lokas [5-7]

(5) Jana—Birth-place of subjects of Svāyaṁbhuva Manu and such other people. (6) Tapas—Region of the performers of penance like Ṛbhu, Sanatkumāra. (7) Satya is *Sattā-mātra* (pure existence), the region of god Brahmā.

God Brahmā created these worlds by uttering seven *Vyāhṛtis*, viz. Bhūr, Bhuvaḥ, Svaḥ etc.

Prakṛti). The Kṛtas are the abodes created along with their *Sthānins* (persons identifying themselves with them).

13. The Earth, the firmament, the heaven and what is remembered as *Mahaḥ*—these four abodes are remembered as *Ārṇavakas*.

14. These abodes are having decline and increase. Those not endowed so will be mentioned (later). Those that are *Naimittikas* (periodical ones) last till the final dissolution.

15. *Jana*, *Tapa* and *Satya*—these three abodes are exclusive ones. They last till the (final) *Prasaṁyama* (dissolution).

16. I shall mention the *Vyakta* (manifest) ones. They are the seven abodes. *Bhūrloka* is the first among them. The second one is remembered as *Bhuvaḥ*.

17. The third one should be known as *Svaḥ*; the fourth is remembeted as *Mahaḥ*. *Jana* is the fifth world and *Tapaḥ* is considered as the sixth.

18. *Satya* is the seventh world. Beyond that there is darkness. When (Brahmā) said "*Bhūḥ*" *Bhūrloka* originated.

19. Second time when he said "*Bhuvaḥ*", firmament originated. For the third time when he said "*Svaḥ*", heaven appeared.

20-21. By means of these three *Vyāhāras* (utterances) Brahmā created the worlds. Hence *Bhūḥ* is remembered as *Pārthiva Loka* (Earth) and firmament is remembered as *Bhuvaḥ*. *Svarloka* is heaven. This is the conclusion in the Purāṇas. Agni (Fire-god) is the lord of *Bhūtas*. Hence he is remembered as *Bhūtapati*.

22. Vāyu is the lord of *Bhuvaḥ*. Hence he is *Bhuvaspati*. The Sun is the lord of *Bhavya* i.e. *Svaḥ*, hence is *Divaspati*.

23. When he uttered "*Mahaḥ*", *Maharloka* originated. The residence of the Devas who retire from their offices is there.

24. *Jana* is the fifth Loka. Janas (people) are born there. It is called Janaloka because the subjects of Svāyaṁbhuva Manu and others were born there.

25. Those subjects of Svāyaṁbhuva Manu and others, who have already been glorified, set out for *Tapoloka* when all the worlds are consumed by the fire at the end of the Kalpa.

26. That world is called *Tapoloka* because Ṛbhu, Sanatkumāra and other holy personages of souls purified by *Tapas* (penance) and of sublimated sexuality stay in that world.

27. The word *Satya* refers to Brahmā. It refers to pure existence as well. Hence Brahmā's world is Satya. It is the shining seventh world.

28. All the Devas are the residents of *Svarloka* along with Gandharvas, Apsaras-s, Yakṣas, Guhyakas and Rākṣasas. All Bhūtas, Piśācas and Nāgas are residents of the Earth along with men.

29-30. Although Maruts, Mātariśvans (Wind-gods), Rudras, (some) Devas and the Aśvins have no fixed abode and they roam about in the atmosphere, they have their main residence in *Bhuvarloka*. The heaven-dwelling Ādityas, Ṛbhus, Viśvedevas, Sādhyas, Pitṛs, and the sages of Aṅgiras Gotra resort to *Bhuvarloka* also.

31. All these Devas move about in aerial chariots and reside in the constellations and planets also. Thus all the (worlds) born of the utterances (*Bhūḥ, Bhuvaḥ, Svaḥ*) of Brahmā have been recounted in order.

32. *Bhūrloka* is the first of these worlds and the last one is *Maharloka*. They are created by the Tanmātras. They are mutually pure i.e. they are separated from one another.

33. Those who have gone away after resorting to the Earth, viz. Śukra and others ending with Cākṣusa (Manu?) reside in Maharloka till the end of the Kalpa.

34-37. The seven Suns burn with their rays those worlds beginning with *Bhūrloka* and ending with *Maharloka*. All the following : Marīci, Kaśyapa, Dakṣa, Svāyaṁbhuva, Aṅgiras, Bhṛgu, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu and others, are the Prajāpatis and they live there with them. They are devoid of possessions and free from the feelings of my-ness. They are of sublimated sexuality. Ṛbhu, Sanatkumāra and others are ascetics of great detachment. These worlds are the causes of the rebirth of all the fourteen Manvantaras including those of the Sāvarṇas.

38. Practising Yoga, penance and truthfulness and meditating on the soul, they return to the sixth Loka (i.e. *Tapoloka*) then at the end of the day (of Brahmā i.e. during dissolution).

39. *Satya* is the seventh Loka. It is the region from which there is no return. It is unobstructed (i.e. eternal). It is god Brahmā's Loka.

40. In (velocity?) of rotation and in magnitude *Bhūrloka* is the meeting place (i.e. in the middle?). The firmament, the space between the Earth and the Sun is remembered as *Bhuvaḥ* (-Loka).

41. This space between the Sun and Dhruva (the Pole Star) is *Svarloka* (Heaven). It is called *Diva* also. The space between Dhruva and Janaloka is called *Maharloka*.

42. The seven worlds have been recounted well. Now I shall recount the Siddhis of those worlds. All the living beings in *Bhūrloka* are the imbibers of juice and eaters of cooked food-grains.

43-44. All the residents of *Bhuwarloka* and Svarga are the imbibers of Soma and *Ājya* (ghee-oblations). Those who stay in the fourth Loka, *Maharloka*, should be known to possess the mental Siddhis of five characteristics. Everything that they desire mentally is immediately realised.

45. These Devas are of the past, present and future. They mutually worship by means of Yajñas.

46. The middle ones worship the earlier ones (by sacrifice) and the present ones worship the middle ones. When the groups of Devas pass off, the contact and relations cease (to exist).

47. It should be known that they still retain their series of mental Siddhis even though they cease to hold positions of authority. Their series of Siddhis is pure and should be known as mental.

48. O Brāhmaṇas, the four worlds situated lower than *Janaloka* have been briefly recounted by me to you. I shall recount them again.

Vāyu said:

49-50. Marīci, Kaśyapa, Dakṣa, Vasiṣṭha, Aṅgiras, Bhṛgu, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu and others are born at the outset as the

mental sons of Brahmā. After establishing their subjects, they resort to *Janaloka*.[1]

51-52. When the worlds beginning with *Bhūḥ* and ending with *Mahar* are pervaded by the flames of Saṁvartaka fire at the end of the Kalpa, when the black fires blaze and burn, Yāma and other groups of Devas residing in *Maharloka* resort to *Janaloka*. All those stationed there are of very subtle bodies.

53-54. The (newcomers) assume the same features and excellence as they (the residents of *Janaloka*) and move about in *Janaloka* as long as the universe is submerged in water.

55. When the night of Brahmā whose source of origin is the Unmanifest, dawns into day, they are reborn in the same order as before.

56. On the death of their predecessors all those aspirants beginning with Svāyaṁbhuva (Manu) and ending with Marīci are reborn.

57-58. Thereafter the Yāma groups of Devas are reborn in the (chronological) order, the eldest first and the younger afterwards. In the family of Devas are remembered seven *Saṁbhūtis* (Manifestations). These *Saṁbhūtis* are born with the Kalpa —*Kalpajāḥ*. Four of these manifestations have passed away, while the three others (still) survive.

59-61. Undergoing transmigration again and again upto ten times in order those Devas observe the evanescence of all created beings. Thanks to the force of the inevitable future and as a result of that power of their own meritorious deeds, they attain mental equilibrium. They desist from all activities and leave off *Janaloka* with a calm mind. They then attain the *Vairāja Loka*.

62-63. Practising Yoga perpetually, performing penance and preaching dharma for a long time, they are born in the families of meritorious persons. Whether they attain Devahood, sage-hood or human form, they do fulfil the duties of those respective positions.

---

1. In vv. 49-69, we are told that at the end of the world, when Maharloka suffers from the Saṁvartaka fire, gods etc. resort to Janaloka. Time being endless, the process of the same gods, sages etc. taking re-incarnations in the same state, continues *ad infinitum* (except for the Jīvas who attain Mokṣa).

64. Thus these groups of Devas resort to the *Vairāja Loka* after ten repetitions of births. There they stay for ten Kalpas.

65-66. As each of the Kalpas is completed in the *Vairājaka* (Kalpa) (Loka?), they move on to Brahmaloka in their due order of priority. In the world of Brahmā, when a Kalpa of *Vairājaka* (pertaining to Brahmā) passes away, they again get assigned a position lasting for a Kalpa in *Vairāja* (loka).

67. Thus in the order mentioned before they frequently go to Vairāja as a result of their penance up to ten times and return to Brahmaloka.

68. Thus thousands of Devayugas have passed. They attained death along with the sages in Brahmaloka.

Sūta said:

69. It is impossible to recount them in detail and in the proper sequence because time is beginningless and it is impossible to count everything completely. Still you need not have any doubt. Everything has been mentioned by me precisely.

70. On hearing that statement the sages were over-whelmed with doubts. They then spoke to Sūta who was conversant with the Purāṇas, whose intellect was great and who was Vyāsa's disciple.

The Sages said:

71. Please mention precisely what constitutes the diet of these people in *Vairāja Loka*, what the extent of their exploit is, what their support is and how long they stay there.

72. On hearing the statement uttered by the Sages, Sūta who was well-versed in the Purāṇas and who knew the reality of the world, spoke thus with humility.

Sūta said:

73. Those people who become the purest of the pure (by means of meritorious actions) attain that world (*Vairāja*) and stay there for ten *Ābhutasaṁplavas* (periods of final dissolution).

74. All of them have only subtle bodies. They are learned. Their forms and features are like those of clouds. Since they abide in a permanent world there is no Bhūta (the elements) in them.

75-77. When a change is imminent (i.e. when they are about to leave), Sanatkumāra and other Siddhas of Yogic rites and practice mention (reveal) their time of (periodic) change. The inclination to abandon the abode occurs simultaneously. Then all of them, of pure intellect, say to the Vairājas and to one another: "O blessed ones, now we shall enter into Praṇava and stay in Brahmaloka. It is conducive to our welfare to proceed to Brahmaloka".

78-79. After saying thus, all of them striving to attain Brahman practise Yogic rites and stay there uniting the *Ātman* with *Paramātman*. Like the flames of a lamp that has ceased to burn (for want of oil), they become extinct and become merged in Brahman wherefrom a return is rarely achieved. (There is no return.)

80. After attaining that world full of meditation, they attain the bliss of Brahman and the state of immortality.

81. Brahmaloka is mentioned to be six times higher up beyond the Vairāja worlds. And god Brahmā is the *Purohita* (one who has been put in charge beforehand).

82. All of them are *Praṇava*-souled (i.e. have concentrated their souls in the mystic syllable *Om*). They are endowed with enlightenment, purity and penance. After deriving the bliss of Brahman, they enjoy the state of deathless-ness.

83. They are not affected by mutually clashing opposites (like happiness and sorrow etc.). They are devoid of the three *Bhāvas* (states of existence, i.e. birth, growth and decay). They possess majestic lustre. They are in every respect equal to Brahmā except in the matter of over-lordship.[1]

84. They are endowed with majestic lustre, victory, *Aiśvarya* (divine faculties of omnipotence etc.), *Sthiti* (continuous existence), *Vairāgya* (non-attachment), *Darśana* (vision) on par with Brahmā.

85. Those learned men of holy rites and activities and in an enlightened state at the end of penance, attain the goal that transmutes them. When the *Pratisañcara* (re-absorption) in

---

1. Cf. *Brahma Sūtra* IV.4.17-21 which state that the Liberated Soul has all the powers of Brahmā except that of creation of the world.

Prakṛti is imminent they see it in a moment and get dissolved in the Unmanifest along with Brahmā and Devas.

86. Thus Devas and Sages partake of, i.e. worship the *Sattra* (the sacrificial session in the form of) Brahman. The *Sattra* (i.e. Brahman) is eternal (*sanātana*), immortal, resplendent, ever-existent, imperishable and immutable.

87. They are of sublimated sexuality. They traverse a path of no return. The purity they have attained by means of the practice of holy rites is supplemented by the knowledge of Vedāntas.

88. There they engage themselves in the practice of Yogic union (with the Supreme Brahman). They worship the highest goal. They abandon their physical body which is the cause of all sins and proceed ahead to (the state of) immortality.

89-90. They are devoid of passion. They have conquered anger. They are rid of delusion. They speak the truth invariably. They are quiescent. They are of dedicated souls endowed with mercy and sympathy. They have conquered the sense organs. They are devoid of attachment. They are pure. They are remembered as ones who have attained *Sāyujya* (identity) with Brahman. They are the heroic souls who have burnt all their sins by means of acts of penance uncontaminated by desires. Theirs are those worlds from which there is no falling off. It is remembered that the pleasure therein is immeasurable.

91. This is the immortal region of Brahman. It is superbly resplendent in the most exalted firmament. After attaining it along with Brahmā, Devas cease to be worried and sorrowful (i.e. attain Liberation—Mokṣa).

The Sages said :

92. O excellent one, whence is this Parārdha (Infinite, Infinity) ? What is this called *Para* (the greatest) ? We wish to know this. Please speak.

Sūta said :

93-95. Listen from me the definition of *Parārdha*[1] and

1. Verses 93-104 give the technical terms for numbers and the digits up to *Parārdha*.

Para. One, ten, hundred and thousand are the (main) numbers known (well) to you. Ten times thousand make *Ayuta*. One hundred thousand is called *Niyuta* by learned men. Similarly *Arbuda* and *Koṭi* can be calculated. Hundred *Niyutas* make a *Koṭi* (crore). Thonsand *Niyutas* make one *Arbuda* (one hundred million). *Arbuda* is ten *Koṭis*. They consider hundred *Koṭis* as *Abja*.

96. Learned men call a thousand crores a *Kharva* and ten times a *Kharva* make a *Nikharva*.

97-98. A huudred thousand *Koṭis* make (what is called) *Śaṅku*. People who know numbers (and calculation) say that a thousand times thousand *Koṭis* multiplied by ten make a *Samudra* (i.e. *Jaladhi*). Ten thousand times a thousand *Koṭis* is called *Madhya*. A hundred thousand times a thousand *Koṭis* is termed *Anta* (*Antya*).

99. A thousand crores multiplied by a crore is called *Parārdha*. Learned men call twice a *Parārdha*, a *Para* (great).

100-102. The number hundred they say is *Paridṛḍha* (*Pariv*ṛ*dha* in Bd.P.). A thousand is *Paripadmaka*. Thereafter the other numbers (each number is multiplied by ten to get the next number) are *Ayuta*, *Niyuta*, *Prayuta*, *Arbuda*, *Nirbuda*, *Kharbuda*, *Kharva*, *Nikharva*, *Śaṅku*, *Padma*, *Samudra*, (*Antya*), *Madhyama*, *Parārdha* and *Para*. In calculation these are the eighteen digits.

103-104. These are the terms given by sages. A *Parārdha* (? years) from the beginning of creation constitutes a Kalpa (?) of Brahmā (only a day). A period extending as much also remains, at the end of which there is *Pratisarga*. Thus *Para* and *Parārdha* have been (calculated) explained by me.

105-107. As Brahmā's prowess is the greatest, his longevity the highest, (his power of) penance, strength, piety (or Dharma), learning, fortitude, knowledge, realization of Brahman and faculties such as omnipotence (*aiśvarya*) etc. are of the highest magnitude, there is no living being who is greater than Brahmā. He is established in the highest position, so he is the greatest of all objects.

The greatest Brahmā has been reckoned (calculated and explained) by me (as *Para*). Half of *Para* is *Parārdha*.

108. The countable yet ever uncountable is the trinity·

The countable is observed through numbers. All numbers up to Parārdha can be expressed.

109. When the mass is seen there is no specific number. It is the characteristic of countlessness. If we say as many as sand particles it means infinite. These are the five characteristics (?).

110. That can be calculated by Īśvaras of divine vision because of their purity. Since he is established in perfect knowledge, Brahmā sees everything.

111. On hearing this, all the sages residing in Naimiṣa forest had their eyes bedimmed with tears (of joy). Their (voice) was choked up due to delight.

112-113. Those expounders of Brahman asked Mātariśvan (the Wind-god) : "O holy lord, we wish to hear precisely how far is Brahmaloka in so many Yojanas. What is the magnitude of Yojana and Krośa?"

114. On hearing their words, Mātariśvan (Vāyu) of humble speech spoke as follows in sweet words, in the proper order and in the same manner as was seen (by him).

Vāyu said:

115. I shall recount this to you. Listen to what I intend to say. The *Vyakta Bhāga* (that which is manifest) is grosser than *Avyakta*.

116. There are ten parts of *Mahat*. The gross part is called *Bhūtādi* (*Ahaṁkāra* or the Cosmic Ego). The magnitude of *Paramāṇu* (an atom) is little more than the tenth part of *Bhūtādi* (?)

117. A *Paramāṇu* is very subtle. It cannot he seen by the (naked) eye. It can be imagined; what cannot be (ultimately) split in the world should be known as *Paramāṇu*.

118. When the Sun's rays enter through the window, the subtlest dust particle that is seen is called *Paramāṇu* It is the first among the units of magnitude. It is called *Paramāṇu*.

119. When there is an aggregate of eight *Paramāṇus* it is called *Trasareṇu* or *Padmarajas* (pollen-dust of a lotus).

120. When eight *Trasareṇus* join together that is remembered as one *Rathareṇu* (chariot dust). When eight *Rathareṇus* are combined they form what is remembered by learned men as one *Bālāgra* (tip of the hair).

121. Eight *Bālāgras* form a *Likṣā* (the egg of a louse). Eight *Likṣās* form *Yūkā* (a louse). Eight *Yūkās* form what is called *Yava* (a grain of barley) and eight *Yavas* form one *Aṅgula* (the distance between the joints in a finger).

122. Twelve *Aṅgula*-joints make a *Vitasti* and twentyone *Aṅgula*-joints make a *Ratni* (a cubit—the distance between the elbow and the closed fist).

123. Twentyfour *Aṅgulas* form one *Hasta* (the distance between the elbow and the tip of the middle finger). Two *Ratnis* or fortytwo *Aṅgulas* should be known as a *Kiṣku*.

124. Learned men say that ninetysix *Aṅgulas* form one *Dhanus* (a bow). This *Dhanus* is a unit used in measuring *Gavyūti* (Explanation in verse 126).

125. *Dhanus*, *Daṇḍa*, *Yuga* and *Nāli*—all these contain equal number of Aṅgulas. Persons who know calculation say that three hundred Dhanus units make a *Nalva*.

126. It is taught that two thousand *Dhanus* units make one *Gavyūti*. Eight thousand *Dhanus* units make one *Yojana*.

127. The measurement of the distance of a *Yojana* is based on this unit of *Dhanus*. It should be known that a thousand of these *Dhanus* make the distance of a *Śakra-Kroṣa* (or a *Krośa*).

128. Calculation in *Yojanas* is made by those who are experts in the knowledge of numbers. Listen to the distance of Brahmaloka, in so many *Yojanas*.[1]

129. Divākara (Sun) is a hundred thousand Yojanas above the surface of the Earth. *Niśākara* (Moon) is a thousand Yojanas above the disc of the Sun.

130. The entire stellar zone shines a full hundred thousand Yojanas above the Moon.

---

1. Verses 128ff. give the distances from the earth to other planets and their locations. Though other Purāṇas endorse this information, it is imaginary. It shows the limits of the knowledge of Astronomy in those times.

The same remark applies to the distances to Mahar Loka and other mythical worlds.

131. The Meru mountain is a hundred thousand Yojanas high. The distance between planets above the stellar zone is twice this (height) and they are one above the other.

132. *Budha* (Mercury) moves about beneath all stars and planets. *Śukra* (Venus) moves about above it. Above it is the planet *Lohita* (Mars).

133-135. Above it is *Bṛhaspati* (Jupiter) and above that is *Śanaiścara* (Saturn). A hundred thousand Yojanas above Saturn shines the entire zone of the Seven Sages (Great Bear). A hundred thousand Yojanas above the Seven Sages shines Dhruva (Pole star), son of Uttānapāda. He is the main pivot of all stars in the heaven. He has the compact divine stellar aerial chariot.

136-137. The height of the three worlds has been recounted by me in Yojanas. In the course of the Manvantaras, worldly Yajñas are performed for Devas by the people of different castes and stages of life. These Yajñas alone are conducive to the sustenance and stability of Devas.

138. The set of the three worlds has been explained. Understand what is beyond this. Above *Dhruvaloka* is *Maharloka* wherein those people staying till the end of the Kalpa reside. It is ten million Yojanas from *Dhruva*—that is the conclusion (of wise men).

139. *Janaloka* is twenty million Yojanas from *Maharloka*. In it stay those *Sādhakas* (aspirants)—Dakṣa and others, the sons of Brahmā. They live till the end of the Kalpa.

140. It is remembered that *Tapoloka* is forty million Yojanas above *Janaloka*. It is here that the Vairāja groups of Devas stay. They are exempt from the effects of burning of all living beings in the destruction of the universe.

141. Sixty million Yojanas from *Tapoloka* is *Satyaloka*. It is called *Brahmaloka* of those who are devoid of death and desire and so who never return to the *Saṁsāra* therefrom.

142. It is remembered (proclaimed) that the space above *Brahmaloka* upto the (upper crust of the) Cosmic Egg is a crore and fifty *niyuta* (a fifteen million) Yojanas.

143-144. The lower part extends to fortysix million five hundred thousand Yojanas. This lower half consists of movement (of stars, planets, etc.). In the upper half the movement

ceases. Dhruvaloka and its top has been explained as has been heard by me mentioning the distance in Yojanas.

145. Now I shall mention the allotment of abodes to those living beings who deserve falling into hells due to their cruel actions.

146-149. The following are the hells[1] : *Raurava, Rodha, Sūkara, Tāla, Taptakuṁbha, Mahājvāla, Śabala, Vimocana, Kṛmi, Kṛmibhakṣa, Lālābhakṣa, Viśaṁsana, Adhaḥśiras, Pūyavaha, Rudhirāndha, Vaitaraṇa, Kṛṣṇa, Asipatravana, Agnijvāla, Mahāghora, Saṁdaṁśa, Śvabhojana, Tamas, Kṛṣṇasūtra, Loha, Asija, Apratiṣṭha, Vicyaśva* and others.

150. All these dark and gloomy hells are under the jurisdiction of Yama. Men of evil deeds fall into these severally.

151. All these hells *Raurava* etc. are reported to be beneath the Earth. A perjuror, a person taking up a side by making false statements and untruths falls into the hell *Raurava* of ruthless grasp.

152. A slayer of a cow, a destroyer of a foetus and one who commits arson in the city fall into the hell *Rodha*. A slayer of a Brāhmaṇa, a drink-addict and a stealer of gold fall into the hell *Sūkara*.

153. A slayer of a Kṣatriya, of a Vaiśya in miserable circumstances or of a Brāhmaṇa as well as a defiler of the preceptor's bed falls into the hell *Tāla*.

154. He who indulges in sexual intercourse with his sister and the soldier of a king (i.e. murderer of a king) fall into the hell *Taptakumbha*. A trader in (stolen) horses and protector of one who is kept in legal bondage fall into the hell *Taptaloha*.

155. He who sells his chaste wife, he who forsakes a devotee and he who indulges in sexual intercourse with his daughter or daughter-in-law falls into the hell *Mahājvāla*.

156-157. He who sells the Vedas, he who blasphemes the Vedas, those who abuse or disrespect elders or hit them with wounding words and one who carnally approaches forbidden

1. Veases 146-184 deal with the hells, the tortures therein and the sins that lead to these hells. The total number of hells is twentyeight.

women—all these fall into the hell named *Śabala*. A thief or a trespasser falls into the hell *Vimoha*.

158. He who dismantles or spoils public roads falls into the hell *Kiṭaloha*. Those who hate Devas and Brāhmaṇas, those who do not worship preceptors and those who contaminate precious gems fall into the hell *Kṛmibhakṣya*.

159. He who eats food keeping his wife, friends and daughter (starving) falls into the foul-smelling hell *Lālābhakṣa*.

160. A manufacturer of arrows, a potter, a person who takes away gold coins, a professional physician, one who sets fire to a garden—all these fall in (the hell called) *Viśaṁsana*.

161. He who accepts monetary gifts from evil men, he who officiates as a priest in the Yajña on behalf of an ineligible man and the man who maintains himself by stellar calculation fall into the hell *Adhomukha*.

162. He who sells milk, wine, flesh, lac, scents, juices, gingelly seeds and similar things falls into the terrible hell *Pūyavaha*.

163. He who captures, fetters or ensnares fowls, cats, boars, birds, deer, rams and sheep will also fall into the same hell.

164-166. Learned men say that these (following) sinners fall into the hell *Rudhirāndha*: a Brāhmaṇa who rears goats, sheep and buffaloes, handles wheels and banners or makes a livelihood with the sale of dyes and colours (or by staging plays etc.); a dealer in birds; he who performs Yajñas on behalf of all and sundry in the village; he who burns other men's houses; he who poisons others; he who makes a living by pimping and pandering; he who sells Soma juice; a drunkard; a flesh-eater; wilful slayer of animals; a slayer of buffaloes and deer; he who creates (imaginary) festivals; a tailor by profession; and one who is treacherous to one's friends.

167. There is no doubt in this that those who feed the people sitting in the same row with different sorts of food-stuffs (and thus are partial), fall into the terrible hell *Viḍbhuja*.

168. He who invariably utters falsehood, he who is voluble in scolding others, he who is inauspicious—these sinners fall into the terrible hell named *Mūtrākīrṇa*.

169-170. Men who kill those who offer libations of honey, fall into *Vaitaraṇi*. Insane persons, persons of dejected mind, those who are devoid of purity of conduct, persons of furious temperament, persons who make others miserable, persons given to deceitful ways, fall into the hell *Asipatravana*. Persons killing *Urabhras* (rams) or hunting deer, are cut, mutilated, dragged and pulled in a terrible manner in that hell.

171. Those who eat and drink (forbidden stuffs) in a hermitage fall into the hell *Agnijvāla*. They are eaten by steel-beaked crows of dark and diverse colours.

172. Persons with the vow of holy rites and celibacy, breaking those vows by discharging semen even in dreams, fall into the hell *Sandaṁśa*.

173. Those who are taught or ordered about by their sons invariably fall into the hell *Śvabhojana*.

174. Those who perform actions contrary to the rules of castes and stages of life on being urged by anger or elation, go to hell (*Niraya*).

175. The hot-centred great hell *Raurava* is white (?) from outside and terrible. The extremely terrible *Tapaḥ* is beneath it. It is cool-centred.

176. Listen and understand these being described in serial order. Beneath the Earth only seven hells are mentioned.

177. They are the outcome of *Adharma* (sin). They are *Andhatāmisraka* and others. *Raurava* is the first among them. Then there is *Mahāraurava*.

178. Beneath this is the other hell which is both cold and scorching. This third hell is *Kālasūtra* which is remembered as *Mahāhavividhi** also.

179. The fourth hell is *Apratiṣṭha*, and *Avici* is remembered as the fifth. The next one is *Lohapṛṣṭha* and *Avidheya* is the seventh.

180. The first hell is called *Raurava* because it is very terrible. Although it contains water, it is remembered as one that scorches. Beneath it is the hell *Tapaḥ* that is terrible, cold and very low.

**mahāhir-vividhaḥ* (Bd. P.v. 181) having great serpents of various kinds.

181. Biting serpents are said to be in the terrible *Kālasūtra*. Nothing can stay in the hell *Apratiṣṭha*. There is a terrible whirling in it.

182. *Avīci* is said to be very terrible because the sinners are crushed by means of mechanical contrivances. The hell *Loha* (*Pṛṣṭha*) is still more terrible, because all Karmans are exhausted in it (by experiencing the fruit thereof).

183. (Defective verse) Though the beings in the hell are without bodies, the harassment, afflictions and sufferings that they undergo in the *Avidheya* hell are irremediable.

184. All these hells are as terrible as mountains and devoid of light above. In all these the misery due to sin is very intense.

185-186. These two worlds on the top are devoid of any light whatsoever. Although they are like the other worlds, the sufferings in these two worlds by means of fiery piles (?) are the worst. They take up bodies capable of experiencing these sufferings as a result of their previous actions. Intensity of suffering is common to all these worlds.

187-188. The sufferings of the beings doomed to hell are innumerable. They undergo misery. When the sins have been exhausted, they are born again in the womb of lower animals or as Devas. Devas are stationed above and Nārakas (beings doomed to hell) are stationed below.

189. Caused by *Dharmas* or *Adharmas* they develop befitting bodies for the purpose of experiencing the fruits thereof.

190. Devas see the hellish beings standing topsy turvy below them. The hellish beings too see all the Devas standing topsy turvy.

191. There is no distinction in Lokāloka as to the top or bottom because these worlds have no tip or root. They are held in position naturally.

192. This situation, this *Saṁjñā* (? name) is natural to Lokāloka (?).

The Brāhmaṇas who were performing the Satra then spoke to Vāyu.

The Sages said :

193-194. Mention completely the number of living beings

residing in Lokāloka and moving about in the world of existence.

On hearing the words of the sages, Māruta spoke these words.

Vāyu said :

195-196. O excellent ones among men, all the creatures can by no means be entirely enumerated.[1] They are beginningless and endless. They are jumbled and mixed with one another. Only a general inference can be made to fix their number. The number cannot be positively asserted. They are mentioned to be numerous. Even with a divine vision they cannot be known. How can I with limited knowledge and ordinary vision fix their limit ?

197. Actually no question is asked on what cannot be conceived or known. Understand what has been named and numbered by Brahmā.

198. The earthly worms born of *Saṁseka* (sprinkling or watering) etc. form about a thousandth part of the number of immobile beings.

199. This has been decisively arrived at that all the aquatic creatures together come to about a thousandth part of the creatures born of *Saṁseka.*

200. All the worldly birds should be known as forming a thousandth part of the number of aquatic living beings.

201. All the animals, the quadrupeds, should be known as constituting a thousandth part of the number of birds.

202. The bipeds (men) in this world should be known as constituting a thousandth part of all the quadrupeds.

203. Righteous men should be known to constitute a thousandth part of the entire number of bipeds.

204. Of the righteous men only a thousandth part goes to heaven. Of those righteous men who go to heaven only a thousandth part qualify themselves for absolution (*Mokṣa*).

205. Persons staying in the abodes of torture are equal to those who go to heaven. Those wicked souls who fall into the dark *Raurava* after death are harassed by both chill and heat.

1. Verses 195-208 give the Purāṇic notions about the number of Jīvas in each species.

206. They suffer bitter pain. The bodies of those who reach the abodes of torture become benumbed. *Raurava* should be known as hot. Blazing splendour and hot liquids flow there.

207. The *Tapa* hell is in solid form and always chill. Good and righteous people going to heaven are very rare.

208. This fixation of number is made by the self-born lord Īśvara himself. Human calculation recedes. Only the calculation of Brahmā decides (properly).

The Sages said :

209-210. Mahaḥ, Jana, Tapaḥ, Satya, Bhūta, Bhavya and Bhava—all these worlds have been recounted by you. Please mention precisely what their difference is and what the distance between them is.

On hearing these words of the sages of sublimated sexuality, Vāyu, who has seen the real truth mentioned these facts to them.

Vāyu said:

211. Learned men see that manifest through inference; the Yogins see it directly by means of Yogic power and those who habitually perform holy rites observe it through *Pratyāhāra* (withdrawal of physical senses), meditation and penance.

212-214. The enlightened Ṛbhu, Sanatkumāra and others who possess pure intellect, the Virajas (those who are free from Rajoguṇa) free from sorrow, those excellent saintly men like Brahmā himself who are never fading (always) full of delight, Yogins adhering to Brahman, and the sages Vālakhilya and others—all these have observed the residence of the eternal lord from close quarters. That residence cannot be conceived or argued about. It makes good men contented. I too have observed it by remaining close at hand.

215-216. Since Īśvara is so subtle as the atom, he can only be conceived by learned men. The following ten everlasting attributes are always present in Śaṅkara—*Jñāna* (perfect knowledge), *Vairāgya* (detachment), *Aiśvarya* (overlordship or possession of mystic powers), *Tapas* (penance), *Satyam* (truthfulness), *Kṣamā* (forgiveness), *Dhṛti* (fortitude), *Draṣṭṛtva*

(supervision), *Ātmasaṁbandha* (contact with the soul) and *Adhiṣṭhānatva* (the state of being the support of all).

217. He is *Vibhu* (all-powerful and omnipresent). The fire of Yogic power of the Yogins is kindled by his blessings. Assuming physical bodies, he helps the world of human beings.

218. The abode of that eternal lord is imperishable, fixed and untarnished by worldly chaos. It is the eighth (one beyond the seven Lokas). It is conceived by Māyā and the greatest of all.

219. The eightfold Prakṛti and its creations are created by him through Māyā. Lord Maheśvara is *Māyin* (Master or possessor of Māyā). The withdrawal (annihilation) of Devas is done there (in his abode).

220. Listen to and understand even as I recount in detail and in the proper order. The distance between Bhūrloka and Brahmaloka is one hundred and thirtyone million five hundred thousand Yojanas.

221. The space of Brahmāṇḍa above Brahmaloka is fifteen million Yojanas.

222-223. This is the highest point that can be reached. Beyond that no one can go. The eternal, uncountable, subtle Prakṛtis supported by mutual Guṇas exist there. Their attribute is to create the *Kṣetrajña* termed Brahmā who makes them function and is present there.

224-226. It is in them that all these exist: the possessor of Prakṛti, the subtle, supporting, the eternal one, the unproduced, great abode, the great atom, the great one lying down, the undying, the unimaginable, unembodied, the mental form, the manifestation, the disappearance, the maintenance and the blessing. Vidhi (Brahmā) cannot be compared to anyone else. The great Īśvara is like Paramāṇu. With his brilliance he makes this illuminated. He is beyond the darkness.

227. The golden egg that was evolved at the outset as *Aupasargika* (a relevant adjunct) was very huge and wholly circular. It was evolved out of Īśvara.

228. The germination of seed is from Īśvara. Kṣetrajña (individual soul) is considered as the seed. They speak of Prakṛti as the *Yoni* (the source of the origin) and that is of the nature of Nārāyaṇa.

229. The creator of all the worlds, the noble-souled omnipresent lord in contact with Prakṛti creates Brahmaloka and Brahmāṇḍa through his body, for the purpose of the creation and maintenance of the worlds.

230. Beyond Brahmaloka and beneath the upper crust of the Cosmic Egg—in between these two is the *Pura* (city), his divine abode *Manomaya* (consisting of the mind).[1]

231. That is the abode of the embodied Īśvara of unmeasured splendour. The city named Śiva is there and it is the refuge of those who are afraid of rebirth.

232. O excellent Brāhmaṇas, it is full one hundred thousand Yojanas in extent. Within, it is as extensive as the sphere of the Earth.

233-34. It is surrounded by a massive gold rampart of solar splendour. It has brilliance of the mid-day Sun outshining the lustre of all others. It has four golden portals embellished with strings of pearls. The enclosures are well-constructed with bright golden adjuncts.

235. That divine city (shines well) with the sounds of bells reverberating in the sky. Neither the fear of death, nor distress nor the exhaustion of old age finds a place there.

236. No other city deserves to be compared to this city. It extends to a hundred thousand Yojanas to the ten quarters.

237. That city is pervaded by the brilliance of the bull-bannered lord and so it stands (firm). The creation of that golden city is by means of mental conception.

238-240. The city shines much with scattered diamond dust. In the gardens and parks therein, there are divine lotuses which have the lustre of the autumnal Moon, which resemble the rising Sun, which are half white and half red and which are made of gold. With their stalks having the lustre of Marakata (emerald) gem they are of the size of the wheels of chariots. In fragrance, beauty and tenderness they are unequalled.

241-242. Some lotuses resemble the wings of a bee; some are golden. Some are half black and half red. Their inner

1. Verses 230-300 give a poetic description of the city of Śiva and the description of the residents therein.

surfaces are very tender. The lotuses covering up the whole place seem to be so many umbrellas.

There are seven great rivers there. Understand their names.

243. The following are the beautiful rivers in that excellent city : Varā, Vareṇyā, Varadā, Varārhā, Varavarṇinī, Varamā and Varabhadrā.

244. The excellent rivers contain water shining like split jewels. It is mixed with the petals of red and blue lotuses. Foams and whirlpools add to their beauty.

245. Neither Brahmarṣis nor Devas, nor Asuras nor Pitṛs nor others knew that city of the inconceivable lord.

246. Only those noble-souled ones who perform meditation without agitation and who have conquered their sense-organs by means of good yogic power, see that city of the bull-bannered one.

247-248. There is a splendid golden palace in the middle of that excellent city of unequalled splendour. It is divine and it resembles the great Meru mountain. It is enveloped in gracious glory. It has a thousand 'feet' (columns). It is embellished all round with incomparable gems and jewels.

249-254. Its splendour all round is increased by means of invaluable and incomparable gems. It is embellished in some sections with crystals, in some sections with lunar stones, in other sections with lapis lazuli, in some sections with shining gems resembling the Moon, in some with brilliant gems as beautiful as the rising Sun, in others with golden jewels refulgent like fire, in some sections with jewels shining with silver lustre, in other sections with blue sapphire gems and in some sections with firmly fixed diamonds. It was heightened in splendour by means of brilliant windows and ventilators of various sizes. It is decorated with festoons and flags shining like the rays of the Moon. Sounds of golden bells reverberate in it. Joy and revelry are ever present there. Its refulgence is heightened by the residences of Kinnaras, which have the shape and lustre of the evening clouds. Just as the mountain-lord Meru shines with its golden peaks, so also the palace shines with shining water currents all round abounding in golden flowers.

The whole city shines with golden flags and banners. Similarly the lordly palace shines with its terraces and landing spots.

255-257. In this abode of the three-eyed lord there is a statue of Vasanta (Spring). The goddesses Lakṣmī, Śrī, Kīrti, Śobhā and Sarasvatī are present there in physical bodies (created through Māyā). These eternal goddesses endowed with beauty and fragrance are innumerable and of mutually dependent (complementary) qualities. They are the ornaments of all precious stones and source of the origin of loveliness and dalliance. The highly blessed goddesses divided themselves into a hundred crores and diligently wait upon the Lord with Umā.

258. They have thousands of other maid-servants behind them, beautiful and endowed with splendour and glory. They all have eyes like the petals of lotuses.

259. They rejoice along with the Gaṇas as huge as mountains and as brilliant as fire; they exhibit their extremely attractive amorous gestures and sportive activities.

260-264. Some are hunch-backed; some are dwarfish; some have beautiful bodies; some are horse-faced; a few are slender like the red variety of sugarcane; some are hideous and terrible with flat faces; some have loosely hanging bellies; a few have short arms. Some have no eyes, some are small-footed; a few have the faces of the lord of beasts; others have faces and bellies like those of elephants; others are elephant-faced; a few are lion-faced and tiger-faced; some have red eyes; some beauties have huge breasts and charming eyes; there are beautiful ladies with curly locks of hair and comely eyes; others can assume any form they wish. There are women with different dresses and features. They are worthy of the abode of the lord; they move about everywhere within the palace. Lord Maheśvara of ten arms sports therein.

265-266. He lives with Nandin and the noble-souled Gaṇas of universal forms as well as Rudra-gaṇas of equal exploits and liberal-mindedness. They resemble sons of fire. They have hideous faces with curved fangs as huge as the sacrificial posts. He is being respected and diligently worshipped by those people moving about in aerial chariots.

267-268. He wears the garland of flowers of every season on his chest and inhales their fragrance. He is of a dark complexion

like the blue lotus. His eyes are large, wide and copper-coloured. His hanging lips are a bit hideous. His sharp curved fangs appear to add to his beauty. His eyes are turned upwards. It is impossible to see him straight in the face. He is beautifully clad in bark garments.

269-270. He stands with his right arm (hand) clasping the left arm (hand) and keeping both of them clinging to his side—the hand that has destroyed the enemies of Devas and has never exhausted by fatigue in battles. In his left hand shines the weapon Paṭṭiśa (a spear with a sharp edge). There also shines much his wonderful bow of ten colours, the twanging sound of which is very terrible. There is no other bow to equal its strength.

271. Again there is his Trident which has the refulgence of lightening. It never fails in destroying enemies. It has the most excessive splendour and it blazes brilliantly.

272. The sword of the noble-souled lord of Devas is the most excellent of all shining objects. Similarly does the cool-rayed Moon shine with its brilliant splendour and gorgeous body like the flame of fire in the sacrificial altar.

273. In front of the lord is the great golden Kamaṇḍalu (water pot). It is full of water and it shines splendidly.

274-275. The first (or the head) female doorkeeper (portress) of the goddess, named Vijayā stands there shining splendidly after making obeisance to the lord. She is a blessed lady with four arms. She is very popular. She wears whitish garments. A sword hangs from her (waist). There is a great pearl necklace covering her chest. She shines like another goddess Śrī. She is unequalled and great.

276. There are other ladies behind her. They are accompanied by groups of celestial ladies. With their newly wed and beloved husbands they worship Śaṅkara.

277. Groups of Gandharvas endowed with all characteristic features and accompanied by all musical instruments, sing songs of prayer before the lord of Devas.

278. The Lord of bulls, of broad chest and great height, shines there. He has the lustre of the autumnal cloud. He rejoices much in his (lord's) house.

279. Then there is Skanda, his son, of unmeasured prowess.

He wears red garments. He is glorious and his eyes resemble the petals of an excellent lotus. He stays there with his followers.

280-281. He has four followers (attendants), viz. Śākha, Viśākha, Naigameya and Aṣṭavān (?) They are devoid of vicious indulgence. They are not cruel. They are engaged in protecting the subjects. The deity having peacock for his vehicle (i.e. Skanda) shines in their company. He has great prowess. There, the lord having faces all round (i.e. six-faced) sports with big serpents as his toys.

282-283. Those kings who make gifts of gold to leading scholars, those householder Brāhmaṇas who live at home expounding Brahman, those who perform their Vedic study and penance in secret and those who maintain themselves by gleaning (grains)—all these become the honoured councillors of the lord of Devas.

284. Many Manvantaras expire and new Manvantaras come (yet the assembly of the lord stays as it was before). May the excellent and wonderful feats of Bhava, the lord of Devas, be heard.

285. Tigers are his followers. They have great speed and the lustre of gold. They are created by the lord himself and they move about as they please.

286. They are like Death unto god of Death. They subdue the arrogance of Yama. Who will (adequately) mention the innumerable superhuman faculties and excellences (of the Lord)?

287. Henceforth, I shall recount again the excellent and wonderful activities of Bhava, pursued sympathetically for the sake of blessing the living beings. Listen and understand.

288-292. (Defective verse) There are a thousand living (beings) created through Māyā and fettered to eight pillars in that abode of the three-eyed lord. They have the excellent features of the lords of the quarters by having these attributes:

1. They are as huge as the Mandara mountain and shine like it.
2. In strength and prowess they are unequalled.
3. They have the colour of pearl necklace, Kunda flower and the Moon.

4. They roar like the rumbling cloud (illuminated by) lightning.
5. They wear crystalline jewels on their heads.
6. They have cloud-like dark garments (covering their bodies).
7. They are marked with Śrīvatsa mark in Vajra (adamant).
8. Their fingers (toes) with their claws resemble the Trident and hence they are termed Śūlapāṇin (armed with trident).

To the excellent shining columns of that important palace they are severally tied by means of fiery fetters. Thus they live there very happily.

Appreciating these words of Vāyu, the surprised sages, the saints residing in the Naimiṣa forest said:

293. "O omnipresent lord, O holy lord, the vital air of all living beings, who are those great beings in the forms of lions? Where are they born? Of what forms are they?

294. What is their guilt for which those lions have been severally bound by means of Vaiśvānara (fiery) fetters by the lord of all living beings?"

295. On hearing their words Vāyu spoke thus: "Those thousand lions are the embodied forms of the Furies of the lord and created by the noble-souled Īśvara after removing them from his own body. They are given the physical forms of lions.

296-297. After granting the boon of freedom from fear to all living beings, they had been fettered formerly by means of the fiery bonds. When (dispute arose with Dakṣa) regarding his share in the Yajña, that Yajña of Dakṣa was completely destroyed sportfully by a single lion that had been released from bondage at the behest of Īśvara after knowing that the wrath of the goddess has been incurred (by him).

298. At that time the great goddess Mahākālī came out of Mahādevī (goddess Umā), the eternal witness of all rites, along with the Bhūtas (goblins) as her followers.

299. That fury is the holy lord Vīrabhadra who permanently resides in Rudra's abode. He is of incomprehensible form. He is the wiper (remover) of the anger of the goddess.

300. Thus the palace, the incomparable residence of the

lord of Suras, the highest secret of all, has been recounted by me to you.

301-303. Henceforth I shall describe the other residents and objects of that city which is the most excellent of all beautiful cities. It is situated in the atmospheric regions. There are many other palaces decorated wonderfully with various kinds of gems. There are many flags there heightening their beauty. The palaces are richly endowed with things fulfilling all desires. They are beautified splendidly by parks and gardens. Some are made of silver and some of gold. Some are like the evening clouds (red) and some resemble the Kailāsa mountain (white). All are lofty.

304. In those excellent palaces, the followers of Bhava who perform good rites, rejoice enjoying various means of pleasures liked by them such as sweet melody etc.

305. Different kinds of auspicious mythological stories are recounted along with the chanting sounds of Vedas. The sounds of songs and musical instruments are heard all round; chantings of prayers (echo everywhere).

306. These sounds are incomparable. All of them mingled together (are very pleasing). These and similar things occur on the tops of those palaces.

307. The palaces are auspicious and built of gold. Each of them has a thousand columns. It is embellished all round with excellent and incomparable gems and jewels.

308. They are beautified with crystals like the Moon, with brilliant lapis lazuli stones and pieces of gold resembling the rising Sun and having the lustre of fire."

309. On hearing this, the ascetics residing in the Naimiṣa forest expressed loudly (their wonder). Their doubts being aroused, they spoke these words to the Wind-god.

The Sages said :

310. Who are those noble-souled followers of Bhava there ? Indeed they are the most worthy of being blessed. Well do they rejoice in that excellent city.

Having heard the words of the sages, *Vāyu spoke* :

311-314. O sages ! May this be heard.[1] Only the following have attained *Sālokya* (residence in the same region—that of Śiva) with Rudra, the eternal and never changing region. They alone attain identity of forms and excellent features with Bhava. They are the people who are devoted to the lord of Devas. They are of bashful temperament (ashamed to do sinful things). They are powerful but not covetous. They are vigorous but have perfect self-control. They observe the middle course in taking food and other activities. They have conquered their sense organs and they revel in their own souls (meditating on souls). They are far above the influence of *Dvandvas* (mutually opposed pairs like pleasure-pain). They are gentle and extremely enthusiastic. They are devoid of jealousy and enmity. They love all living beings. They are quiescent, unagitated and they do not exert themselves (in worldly pursuits.) Their conscience is pure. They are pure in mind, speech and activity. With single-minded attention they seek refuge in Maheśvara.

315-318. Those who live in Śiva's palace are all universal-formed with fire-like faces. They have *kaparda* (matted hair). Their throats are blue in colour, the neck white and the fangs very sharp. They are three-eyed with the crescent Moon forming their coronet. Matted hair is worn by them. All of them are heroic. They have ten arms and have the fragrance of lotus. All of them resemble the midday Sun in brilliance and wear yellow garments; all of them are armed with Pināka bows. They ride white bulls. They are endowed with glory; they wear ear-rings; they are embellished with pearl necklaces; in brilliance they are superior to Devas; they are omniscient and observers of everything.

319. They divide themselves into various forms and enjoy various sports and pleasures, rare for others. They are devoid of death and old age.

320. They can go anywhere they please. They are great Siddhas themselves and they are further enlightened by other Siddhas. Thus the attendants of the eleven Rudras of great souls are crores and crores.

1. A Purāṇic way of describing the *Salokatā*, *Samīpatā* and *Sarūpatā* types of liberation.

321. With them, Maheśvara, the noble-souled lord of Devas, the beloved lover of Pārvatī, rejoices there fully sympathetic with his devotees.

322. I do not find any difference between those Rudras and the noble-souled Bhava. I am speaking the truth unto you.

323-324. The lordly Mātariśvā (Wind-god) thus concluded the holy story. All the sages resplendent like the Sun, considered that they attained great blessing on hearing the extremely meritorious story of the three-eyed Lord. They were delighted much. Honouring him suitably they spoke thus to Vāyu of great strength.

The Sages said :

325-326. O highly exalted and fortunate Wind-God ! The excellent holy *Aupasargika* eighth abode of Īśvara and its magnitude has been recounted precisely to us by you. It is redolent with the excellent fragrance of the great Ātman.

327. The grandeur of Mahādeva is difficult to be understood even by Suras. Due to the greatness belonging to himself, the lord of unmeasured splendour has thousand Gaṇas.

328-329. Non-delusion is effected by him in his devotees in order to bless them. In the abode of the lord of Devas, the *Vibhūti* (excellence, grandeur) that assumes a cosmic form shines very well. It is unequalled and is served (attended) by Brahmalakṣmī (the glory of Brahma or Brahman) itself. It appears like the Moon that pervades the sky with the moonlight.

330. You have also mentioned everything regarding the noble-souled Rudras who are equal to Mahādeva. All these stories came out of your mouth like nectar.

331. Without drinking it devoutly, of what use are our excellent holy rites ? There is nothing (?) which is not known by us. O Prāṇa (life-breath), O excellent one among Devas, it behoves you to answer our question precisely.

Sūta said :

332. That lord (Wind-god) spoke: What else shall I explain again ? O sages of excellent rites, what should be recounted by me ? I shall tell it.

The Sages said :

333-335. Please precisely recount to us what, at the time of *Ābhūtasaṁplava*, will be the state of the Ādityas who stand by as attendants (near the lord), the lions who had been the outcome of the lord's furious outburst, the Vaiśvānara groups of Bhūtas (goblins), the tigers and other followers about whom you have mentioned along with the groups of lions and tigers. What will be their state as well as the state of those who have attained Siddhi at the time of the terrible dissolution, when all living beings are destroyed?

(On hearing it) *Mātariśvā (the Wind-god) said* :

336-338. This is the greatest and (secret) reality.[1] I shall recount it. Please listen. Those who have gone there before, the sons of Brahmā, viz. Sanaka, Sananda and Sanātana, Voḍhu, Kapila, Āsuri of great fame, Sage Pañcaśikha and others have known the existence of Īśvara, the unmanifest source of origin (and attained salvation).

339-341. Thereafter, when much time elapses, at the close of the Kalpas, when even the great *Bhūtas* (Elements) are destroyed and utter annihilation takes place, many crores of Rudragaṇas delightedly (meditate on) Maheśvara, closely adhere to eight types of truth (?), desist from enjoying melody and other objects of pleasure, enter all the living beings through their brilliance accompanied by perfect knowledge and attain the unagitated *Vaihāyasapada* (the abode of firmament) in order to bless the living beings sympathetically.

342. The noble-souled ones attain to Maheśvara of the subtle nature of Paramāṇu (Atom) there. They cross the river of births and deaths of great eddies and whirlpools of terrific nature.

343. Then they see Śarva and the great Brahman. They are accompanied by those seven goddesses who have been glorified (before).

1. Here is a description of what happens to the residents of Śiva's city after *Ābhutasaṁplava*. They enter Lord Śiva who is a subtle *Paramāṇu*. The concept of Śiva as an atom shows Vaiśeṣika influence. Historical Sāṅkhya teachers like Kapila, Āsuri, Pañcaśikha are elevated to the exalted position of sages like Sanatkumāra, Sanaka.

344-345. Lord Śaṅkara draws within him the thousand lions, the Ādityas, the Vaiśvānara groups of *Bhūtas*, the tigers and his own followers (the *Rudragaṇas*). Thereafter he draws these seven Lokas that rush (towards him) and the five Mahābhūtas (the great elements).

346-347. Accompanied by Viṣṇu, he makes (the worlds) united (sustained) and annihilates. He is Rudra who is of the nature of Sāman and Yajur (Vedas). He is warped and woofed both within and without, decisively. O Brāhmaṇas, he is the only lord and leader. He is beginningless. He is the annihilator.

348-349. Then all those sages (of Naimiṣa forest) refulgent like the Sun consecrated the sacred fire in their own hermitage. They thereafter devoted themselves to the worship of Maheśvara by means of the purity of their inner soul mentally, verbally and physically.

350. They were merciful towards all living beings and engaged themselves in observing fasts and holy rites. All their doubts were cleared and the unequalled divine Yoga was attained by them.

351. After attaining these by means of the mind endowed with perfect knowledge and their greatest devotion, the *Sālokya* form of salvation was attained by them. It is the eternal and unchanging region.

352-355. He who regularly reads this hymn of prayer narrated by Vāyu, whether a Brāhmaṇa, a Kṣatriya or a Vaiśya but observing his duties, attains *Sālokya* with Rudra. He will be endowed with devotion and be free from ailments. A Śūdra who is not addicted to wine, who is a devotee of Bhava and who has conquered his sense organs, remains till the time of dissolution without obstacles and attains the leadership of Gaṇas or the abode coveted by all. If he is a wine addict, he rejoices with those groups of Bhūtas who are drunkards. Being worshipped on the earth he will be the granter of boons to men. Thus the Wind-god the excellent lord spoke these words.

CHAPTER FORTY[1]

Dissolution of the Universe

Sūta said:

1. I shall now recount the process of dissolution (*Pratyāhāra*) at the end of *Para* (one full day and night) of the self-born god Brahmā, when the period of existence of the Lord comes to a close.

2. During the process of *Pratyāhāra*, Īśvara swallows the unmanifest ones[2] entirely and clearly (*vyaktam*) in exactly the same manner as he does the subtle ones.

3-4. [3]This activity of re-absorption of creations begins even as the Kalpas have not fully expired. This terribly critical period sets in at the closing period of the tenure of the office of the Manu named Druma (?) towards the end of Kaliyuga then. The entire creation merges in the *apratyakṣa* (the invisible i.e. the unmanifest). It is called annihilation.

5-7. When that period of 'great washing off' begins to function,[4] when the withdrawal of the creation is imminent, elements gross and subtle (*Bhūtas* and *Tanmātras*) are destroyed. All evolutes beginning with *Mahat* and ending with *Viśeṣa* be-

---

1. This chapter corresponds to Bd.P.III.4.3 Only verse numbers are referred.

2. The word *avyaktān* in the line: *avyaktān grasate vyaktam* creates confusion. If emended as '*avyaktam*' as in Bd.P.v.2 the verse means 'during the process of *Pratyāhāra*, the *Avyakta* (the Unmanifest one) swallows the *Vyakta* (the Manifest one, the whole universe) entirely in the same way as Īśvara created the manifest universe which is very subtle.'

3. For *Paraṁ tad anukalpānām apūrṇe* Bd.P.3 reads *Parānta-dvyaṇukādyānāṁ sampūrṇe*: It means '(when the extremely dreadful destruction) of everything beginning with molecules of two atoms and ending with *para* (greatest thing) is imminent it is called *Saṁhāra*.

4. Verses 5-33 state the process of involution of *Tattvas*. Thus at the end of a Kalpa, the element *Pṛthvī* is swallowed by water; *Prithvī* loses its special quality, viz. smell and merges in water. The process of 'Swallowing' a lower element by the higher element may be summarised as follows:

The element Pṛthvī merges in——→Water——→Fire——→Wind——→ Ether——————→Bhūtādi(Buddhi)——————→Mahat——————→Guṇa-Sāmya (equilibrium of Guṇas—Sattva, Rajas and Tamas) or Prakṛti.

come annihilated. All this happens naturally. At the outset the vast sheet of waters absorbs the quality of smell of the (element) earth. The earth devoid of smell becomes dissolved. When thus the quality of smell of the earth is dissolved, the earth assumes the form of water.

8-9. The waters of great velocity and loud report spread throughout the entire universe and stay by awaiting destruction (?). The special attribute of the waters (*Rasa*—taste) becomes merged in *Jyotis* (fiery element). At the destruction of the subtle element *Rasa*, the waters too get dissolved.

10. When *Rasa* is absorbed by *Tejas* (fiery element), the waters become merged in it. When the waters are thus absorbed, only *Tejas* is seen all round.

11. The fire element, pervading everywhere, absorbs the waters. The entire universe is gradually filled up with flames of fire.

12. When this (entire universe) is filled with flames, the flames spread on all sides, above and below. Vāyu (the wind element) swallows up *Rūpa* (colour or form), the luminous quality of *Jyotis* (the fire element). The entire fire element merges in the cosmic air, like the flame of lamp in the great wind.

13. When the Rūpa *Tanmātra* (the essential quality) is dissolved, *Vibhāvasu* (the element of Fire) becomes bereft of *Rūpa* (colour). *Tejas* then subsides. The great *Tejas* is then blown off by Vāyu.

14. When the entire universe thus becomes bereft of light, the element of *Tejas* having merged in Vāyu, the element of Vāyu resorts to the source of its origin.

15. It shakes everything above, below and the sides in all the ten quarters. Then *Ākāśa* (Ether) absorbs the quality of Vāyu, viz. *Sparśa* (Touch).

16. The element of Vāyu subsides and the open firmament alone remains, *sans* colour, *sans* taste, *sans* touch and *sans* smell. It has no physical body as well.

17. The great circular hole, the Ākāśa, characterised by its quality of sound, shines filling everything with its sounds.

18. The *Śabda*-characterised Ākāśa envelops everything and

remains (steady). Then *Bhūtādi* (the Cosmic Ego) absorbs the the quality of sound belonging to it.

19. Then the Bhūtas and the sense-organs get merged simultaneously in *Bhūtadi*. *Bhūtādi* is of the form of Cosmic Ego. It is said to be of the quality of Tamas.

20. The principle *Mahat* characterised by *Buddhi* (the cosmic intellect) absorbs *Bhūtadi*. The *Mahat* principle is to be known to be of the form of *Saṁkalpa* (conception) and *Adhyavasāya* (determination, will).

21. Philosophers who ponder over reality call it by the synonyms *Buddhi* (Intellect), *Manas* (Mind), *Liṅga* (the Symbol), *Mahat* (Great) and *Akṣara* (the Imperishable).

22. When all the Bhūtas become dissolved, the Guṇas remain in equilibrium, the entire universe becomes dark and gloomy; the groups of causes of the worlds remain merged in Ātman.

23-24. The creation becomes re-absorbed in Prakṛti; neither the beginning nor the end of anything is perceived; nothing is seen; no name or form remains; even those endowed with perfect knowledge do not become aware of anything; no going in or coming out is observed.

25-27. Such a situation is inferred and conceived mentally and the following account is given. All objects become established in that existent-cum-non-existent (*sad-asad-ātmika*) eternal great cause. This automotive activity cannot be pointed out through any specific cause. The dissolution of the Seven Prakṛtis occurs in this manner. At the time of the reabsorption of creation, they enter into one another. That by which the globular Egg is enveloped becomes dissolved.

28. The seven continents, the seven oceans, the seven worlds and the seven mountains are enveloped by the covering of water. This *Udakāvaraṇa* (water-covering) becomes merged in *Jyotis* (Fire).

29. (Defective verse) The *Taijasa* (fiery) *Āvaraṇa* (covering) is absorbed by the Wind element. The cover of the wind element is absorbed by the element Ether.

30. *Bhūtādi* (the Cosmic Ego) absorbs the Ethereal *Āvaraṇa*. *Mahat* characterised by cosmic intelligence (*Buddhi*) absorbs *Bhūtādi*.

31. The Unmanifest absorbs the principle of *Mahat.* Thereafter the Guṇas attain equilibrium. This annihilation and extension of creation is pursued through the unmanifest Prakṛti stationed in Brahman.

32. It creates and absorbs the *Vikāras* (created objects) for the sake of creation and annihilation. The Siddhas who are endowed with perfect knowledge have all instruments in the activity of annihilation (?)

33. Attaining a quick motion in these abodes due to their self-control, these *Kṣetrajñas* become bereft of *Karaṇas* (sense organs and organs of activity).

34. They call the *Avyakta* (the Unmanifest) by the term *kṣetra* and Brahmā (or Brahman) is called *Kṣetrajña.* Their union is beginningless but is caused by *Sādharmya* (similarity of characteristics) and *Vaidharmya* (dissimilarity of characteristics).

35. O Brāhmaṇas, it is thus that one should know with regard to all *Sargas* (creations) and *Kṣetrajñas.* By the knowledge of the *Kṣetras* separately and severally, a *Brahmavid* (man with the knowledge of Brahman) should be known.

36. The state of being the object of knowledge (*Viṣayatva*) and of not being so (*Aviṣayatva*) are proclaimed (as the characteristics) of *Kṣetra* and *Kṣetrajña.* Brahmā should be known as *Aviṣaya* (not object of knowledge, the knower) and *Kṣetra* is called *Viṣaya* (object of knowledge)*.

37. *Kṣetra* is presided over by *Kṣetrajña* and so is said to be for his sake. Since the bodies are many, the *Śarīrin* (the embodied soul) is remembered as many.

38. These souls are stationed without any arrangement (*avyūhāt*) and are unmixed (*a-saṅkarāt*) like luminaries. Since there is the perception of happiness and sorrow severally in the

---

*The text in Vā.P. condradicts the 1st line of the verse. It runs thus : *Brahmā tu viṣayo jñeyo'viṣayaḥ kṣetram ucyate* 'Brahma should be known as Viṣaya (object of knowledge) and Kṣetra is called Aviṣaya (non-object, knower).

Bd. P. v. 302 gives correct reading : *Brahmā tvaviṣayo jñeyo viṣayaḥ kṣetram ucyate.* If *tu viṣaya* be emended as *tv-aviṣaya* (*tvaviṣaya*) and the avagraha after *viṣayo* is dropped, the Vā.P. text will not be a contradiction.

different bodies, the multiplicity of Puruṣas should be known by one who is wise.

39. When the withdrawal of those different beings sets in, that is brought about naturally after the lapse of a great deal of period.

40. At that time the passion for sustenance of the worlds of the self-born god Brahmā recedes, along with all the residents of Brahmā's heaven.

41. Then the attachment for the sustenance of those residing (in meditation) in Ātman recedes and they begin to see defects therein of their contemporaries.

42-43. Then their (sense of) detachment is aroused and it dispels their *Ātma-vāda* (egotism). *Bhojya* (object of enjoyment) and *Bhoktṛtva* (the state of being the enjoyer)—through this they comprehend Saṁsāra. They have been *Kṣetrajñas* due to their vision of their separateness. Then the residents of Brahmaloka (see the multiplicity of individuals but) they are beyond the cause of Prakṛti.

44. Now they dwell in the Ātman alone. They are quiescent and endowed with (true) vision. All of them are pure, free from blemish and in conscious or unconscious stage.

45. It is proclaimed that they attain complete absolution there itself and they do not return to Saṁsāra since they are devoid of Guṇas (state of *nirguṇatva*) and the sense of identity with the body (*nirātmatva*).

46-47. Thus the process of dissolution by the Self-born Brahmā through Prakṛti has been recounted. In this *Prasaṁyama* (final curbing and restraint) the *Karaṇas* (organs of activity) of all living beings differ. Thus is the curbing of the *Tattvas* (Principles) along with that of the *Karaṇas*. This *Tattvaprasaṁyama* is remembered as capable of repetition.

Sūta said :

48-50. Dharma and Adharma, penance, perfect knowledge, the auspicious, the inauspicious, truth, falsehood, superiority, inferiority, happiness, sorrow, likes, dislikes—all these are mere attributes of one who has gone* (i.e. who has attained salvation).

**Prapañcastham* in Bd. P. v. 26 'current in the worldly existence' is logically a better reading.

Whatever is meritorious and sinful, auspicious and inauspicious is regarded as the nature of Guṇas of the (spiritually) wise who are devoid of (attachment to) sense organs—all merits and demerits are stabilised in Prakṛti. It is the Prakṛti which is the source of origin. (Merit and demerit) are deposited in the nature of embodied beings.

51. The merits and demerits of living beings that have been stabilised in Prakṛti, are declared to lie unmanifested. The same merits and demerits (in different situations) join this body or the next.

52. Dharma and Adharma (virtue and sin) are merely two qualities of creatures. They flourish in the form of the body along with the organs of sense (*Karaṇa*) of creatures.

53. The sentient Guṇas (i.e. Sattva etc.) presided over by Kṣetrajña get dissolved during the primary creation and secondary creation in the world. The creatures come into contact or get separated from their *Karaṇas* (organs of activity) and they move about (i.e. undergo worldly existence and suffering).

54. The *Vṛttis* (proclivities, causes of activities) are threefold according as they are of the nature of Sattva, Rajas or Tamas. They function on being presided over (and activised) by Puruṣa.

55. The (attribute) Sattva of the divine nature is conducive to attain the upper part (heaven) and Tamas is of the nature of (falling off) to the lower part (hell). The activiser of the two, in the middle is Rajas which moves about repeatedly in this world.

56-57. In all the worlds, within all the living beings these three types of emotional activities are the original causes of the nature of Guṇas. One who knows need not entertain much doubt about this. Urged by (?) Avidyā,[1] activities are pursued by men and they derive meritorious, sinful or non-committal goals through these three.

1. Verses 56-72 discuss the nature of Avidyā, three bondages created by it, the defects such as *Rāga* (Attachment), *Dveṣa* (Hatred) resulting from it and leading to hell (67-69) and birth in lower species (70-72).

58. All living creatures do not understand the reality due to their being overwhelmed by Tamas. But not realising the Tattva (Reality), they are fettered in three ways.

59. He is bound by three types of bondages:

(i) *Prākṛta Bandha* (bondage of Prakṛti)

(ii) *Vaikārika Bandha* (bondage of its evolutes)

(iii) Bondage called *Dakṣiṇa* (a technical term in the Sāṇkhya System for the third bondage).

And being bound thus; the creature turns round and round here (in Saṁsārā).

60-61. These are the three types of bondage due to ignorance. The following are the usual defects (due to them)—Seeing permanence in what is transcient; perception of happiness in what actually is the cause of misery; feeling of possessiveness in what does not belong to one; and decisive knowledge of purity in what is impure. Those who have these mental defects have the defects of knowledge through misapprehension.

62. The cessation of attachment (*Rāga*) and hatred (*Dveṣa*) is called knowledge. Ignorance is the root-cause of Tamas. Rajas has two-fold Karman (the auspicious and inauspicious) as its result. The resumption of the physical body once again is the result of Karmas. Thus great misery begins to function.

63. The various sins committed by ears, eyes, skin, tongue and nose are the causes of the rebirth and misery.

64. A man with a craving is said to be a *Bāla* (an immature or ignorant person). As a result of actions committed by himself, the individual soul goes round and round there only (in the Saṁsāra) like the bull yoked to the oil-pressing machine.

65. Hence it is taught that gross ignorance is the cause of all miseries. Realising that it is the sole enemy one shall endeavour to acquire knowledge.

66. One renounces (*tyajate**) everything by perfect knowledge. As a result of renunciation the intellect becomes detached; one becomes pure as a result of detachment; the pure one becomes liberated by means of Sattva Guṇa.

67. Henceforth I shall explain *Rāga* (passion and attachment) that overwhelms living beings. Due to this attachment,

*Reading in A. '*vijayati*' in our text is rather confusing.

all living beings become indulgent in worldly pleasures in spite of themselves.

68. Attachment is undesirable and calamitous inasmuch as it yields pleasure, sufferings and dejection. Suffering is due to the misery that befalls (when the desired object is not acquired) and the recollection of (previously experienced) happiness.

69. It is the attachment to worldly pleasures that is declared as the cause of births. In all the physical worlds beginning with Brahmā and ending with the immobile beings, this attachment alone is the cause of birth and that is the result of ignorance. Hence one shall avoid ignorance.

70-71. If one does not accept the words of sages as authority nor has regard for good manners as practised by virtuous and respectable men; if one is opposed to the discipline of (four) castes and stages in life; and if a man is antagonistic to wise men and scriptural injunctions—that is the cause of rebirth in lower species.

72. There are various kinds of tortures in remaining (or taking birth) among the six kinds of lower animals. There is complete obstruction in the matter of cause and object of knowledge (?).

73. The entire non-attainment of *Aiśvarya* (glory and prosperity) is in the nature of *Pratighāta* (obstacle) (to the desires). Thus the four types of Tāmasa proclivities of the living beings etc. have been recounted.

74-75. The mind can be considered mainly Sāttvic if the Sāttvic traits are evinced. *Tattvas* can be comprehended only after viewing them in accordance with reality. And the knowledge of the multiplicity (? difference) of Sattva Guṇa and Kṣetrajñas is the perfect knowledge. It is said that Yoga originates from perfect knowledge.

76. Bondage is for one who is fettered to it (the worldy existence) and liberation is for one who is released therefrom. When the worldly existence recedes, the liberated soul is released even from the Liṅga Śarīra (the subtle frame or body consisting of Prāṇas, subtle sense organs etc.).

77. Devoid of any *Saṁbandha* (contact) and in a state of being unconscious (of the external world), he abides in his own

self. Even while remaining within his own self, he is touched (contaminated) by diversity and multiplicity.

78. Thus the characteristic features of perfect knowledge and liberation have been succinctly explained. That liberation is declared by those who see truth.

79-80. The first one is the separation from worldly impressions, thanks to perfect knowledge. The second one is due to destruction of passion (passionate attachment) whereby the liberated soul attains *Kaivalya*, because even the *Liṅga Śarira* (the subtle inner body) is absent. Through *Kaivalya* he becomes *Nirañjana* (unsullied). By not being sullied, he becomes *Śuddha* (pure). In this state of liberation there is no guide or leader. The third type of cause of liberation is by the destruction of *Tṛṣṇā* (thirst) (for enjoyment).

81-82. The liberated souls do not experience misery caused by the obstacle to the worldly objects of desired melody etc. These eight things caused by Prakṛti adhere to the *Kṣetrajñas*. They are called *Guṇas* and *Mātras* (the three *Guṇas* and the five *Tanmātras*).

Henceforth I shall explain detachment, arising from the sight of faults.

83. One should practice non-hatred and absence of attachment to the five *Viṣayas* (objects of sensual enjoyment) of both divine and human nature, after seeing the defects therein.

84. One should avoid heart-burn, pleasure and dejectedness. By having recourse to non-attachment the embodied soul becomes free from *Mamatva* (the feeling of my-ness i.e. possessiveness).

85. He should decide in his mind (intellect) that (the worldly existence) is non-eternal, inauspicious and conducive to misery. Then with Sāttvic traits he should perform pure activities.

86-87. When the attachment to worldly objects of pleasure becomes firm, he becomes able to see defects and blemishes entirely.

At the time of the journey[1] (i.e. at the time of death) the heat in the body becomes virulent due to conditioning causes

1. Verses 87-92 describe the process of death.

e.g. *Doṣas* (disorderly state of the humours in the body produced by causes dependent on particular circumstances).

88. Due to the chilliness, the virulently excited Vāyu (life breath) pierces the centres of Prāṇas (vital airs), cuts off vulnerable parts of the body and rises up.

89. It is the breath stationed in the abodes of vital airs of all living beings. By contraction, Jñāna (consciousness and knowledge) becomes covered up and the activities are enshrouded.

90. The Jīva (the individual soul) being bereaved of the supporting body, is induced by its own actions committed before. It then dislodges the Prāṇas from the eight limbs.

91. (In the end) abandoning the body, it ceases to have breathing activity. Being abandoned by the vital airs thus, the person is called "Dead".

92. This is something like this. When someone holds the glow-worm in his hand and goes about here and there he too is visible in its light. He who kills it, though a carrier (of the glow-worm) ceases to be a carrier (leader).

93-94. The third, viz. the elimination of thirst or covetousness is spoken as the characteristic of liberation. It is the (result of) observation of defects in five objects of sensual pleasure such as sound and others. Absence of hatred, absence of intense attachment, avoidance of pleasure and agony (about objects of pleasure)—these are the dissolutions of the eight Prakṛtis (primary essences which evolved the whole Universe).

95. All the eight Prakṛtis mentioned before should be known in order, beginning with *Avyakta* (the Unmanifest) and ending with *Bhūtas* (Elements). These are called the dissolution of the Prakṛtis.

96. Those who follow the rigorous discipline of the four castes and stages of life and those who do not go contrary to the injunctions of the scriptures are called *Śiṣṭas* (the eminent and the distinguished). The practice and adherence of the discipline of Varṇas and Āśramas is conducive to the attainment of the abodes of the Devas (i.e. Heaven).

97. The eight groups of Devas (and their abodes) are those

beginning with Brahmā and ending with Piśācas. The Siddhis conducive to *Aiśvarya* (supernatural powers), *Aṇimā* (minuteness) etc. are the causes eight in number.

98-102. Those who stay in those abodes do not experience the misery due to the obstacle to the achievement of such desired objects as sweet melody etc. These are the eight Prākṛta forms in order. They come into contact with the *Kṣetrajñas*. They are of the nature of the three Guṇas and five *Tanmātras*. People do not see with their eyes the clouds distinct from the water therein in the course of the rainy season. (Similarly ordinary people do not see the individual soul. They can only infer.)

The Siddhas, however see it like this by means of their divine vision. The soul takes all kinds of bodies such as those of Brāhmaṇas and those of Cāṇḍālas*.

Thus he moves about in a certain order up and down as well as in the sides (as a result of his own Karmans). He is called by these various names, all synonymic, viz. *Jiva* (individual soul), *Prāṇa* (vital air), *Liṅga* (the symbol), *Kāraṇa* (cause). In both manifest and unmanifest (worlds) he is an authority.

103. After realising categories ending with *Avyakta* (the Unmanifest) and what is presided over by the *Kṣetrajña*, he becomes pure and becomes liberated through knowledge.

104-106. When the truth is realized, the principle that was obscure comes out. But in different bodies that have completely ceased to exist, the *Kāraṇa* (the individual soul) differs from the *Avyakta* and the *Jñānin*. One who is completely liberated from the body in the form of Guṇas as well as Prāṇa etc. does not take up another body, just as sprout never comes out when seed is burnt.

107. Due to knowledge he becomes enlightened and pure of the four *Daśās* (conditions). He follows the Prakṛti. They say that Prakṛti is the reality, while *Vikāras* (its evolutes) are unreal.

---

*The reading *śvāviti śvānapānaśca* is obscure. Bd. P. v. 78 reads *khādataś cānnapānāni* 'Siddhas see...even as they take food, drinks, enter different yonis.'

108. Its *Sad-bhāva* (apparent? existence) should be known as *Anṛta* (unreal). *Sadbhāva* (State of being existent) is called *Satya* (Reality). *Satya* (Brahman) is without name and form.[1] They called *Kṣetrajña*[2] as possessing name and form.

109. Because he knows (thoroughly) the *Kṣetra* (the field i.e. the body) he is called *Kṣetrajña*. *Kṣetrajña* is auspicious because of the perception of *Kṣetra*.

110. *Kṣetrajña* is remembered. Hence it is mentioned as *Kṣetra* by those who know it. *Kṣetra* is seen to be without intelligence but *Kṣetrajña* is always endowed with intelligence.

111. Those who know *Kṣetra* call it so because of its *Kṣayaṇa* (destruction), *Karaṇa* (being created), *Kṣatatrāṇa* (protection from wound), *Bhojyatva* (state of being what is eaten or enjoyed) and *Viṣayatva* (state of being the object).

112. All categories beginning with *Mahat*, ending with *Viśeṣa* possess variety of forms and they are characterised as *Vikāra* (an evolute, change). Hence they are peculiar (*Vilakṣaṇa*). Hence verily *Akṣara* (imperishable) approaches the *Kṣara* (perishable)[3].

113. That evolute (*Vikāra*) is called *Kṣara* as it wastes away and perishes.[4]

114. Happiness, misery, delusion are called *Bhojya* (that which is to be experienced). It is *Viṣaya* (object of enjoyment) as it is insentient. That which has the opposite quality[5] is remembered as *Vibhu*.

115. It is called *Akṣara* (imperishable) for the following reasons : It does not waste away (*na kṣiyate*). It does not perish (*na kṣarati*). Evolutes spread from it. It is not diminished.

---

1. The compound: *anāmarūpa-kṣetrajña-nāmarūpa* is split in Bd. P. as *anāmarūpam* and *Kṣetrajña*.

2. Verses 108-130. A desultory discussion of *Kṣetrajña*. It incidentally explains the terms *sadbhāva, kṣetra, karaṇa, akṣara, urpuṣa* and others.

3. *Sākṣarakṣaram eva ca* in the text is obscure. Hence the reading in Bd P. v.90, *so'kṣaraḥ kṣaram eti ca/* is accepted.

4. A adds as v. 114 (ch.102 in A, p.417) here. It is untraced in our Text. 'That which protects man from Saṁsāra and hells and also from misery is called Kṣetra.'

5. *tad hi dharmavibhuḥ smṛtaḥ* in the text is obscure. Hence *tad vidharmā vibhuḥ smṛtaḥ* in corresponding Bd. P. v.93 is accepted.

116. Since it lies in *Pur* (*puri anuśete*) it is called Puruṣa. The term Puruṣa is derived also as follows: Since it is *Purapratyayika*—that is the *Pratyayi* (the knower) of the *Pura* (Body), it is called so.

117-118. He is other than what can be called existent, non-existent, bound, liberated, mobile, stable. As he is devoid of any cause, he cannot be specified (by any of these terms).[1]

119. Since he is very pure, he cannot be indicated specifically. Since he is full of bliss, it is of equal vision. Since he is the cause (*Kārin*) of *Ātmapratyaya* (the knowledge of Ātman), no causal expression applies to it[2](?) It can be imagined or inferred. Those who perceive thus are not deluded.

120. When he sees the knower who is quiescent in regard to all objects, who is of the nature of Vision, and who is the only one to be pointed out among the visible and invisible objects, his emancipation (uplift) takes place.

121-122. After having realised this great Being, the perfect knower attains quiescence (calmness). He, the perfect knower, does not see the separateness in the effect, cause, the physical objects of intellect etc., that is in contact or severed, and him who is dead or alive.[3]

123. The causal Ātman controls that Ātman (the individual soul) by means of his own self. He abides in the Prakṛti, in its cause and in his own Ātman.

124-125. He exists. He does not exist. He is he or he is another. He is here or he is hereafter. He has oneness or separateness. He is Kṣetrajña or Puruṣa. He possesses Ātman or he is devoid of Ātman. He is sentient or non-sentient. He is a doer or non-doer. He is the enjoyer or he is only the enjoyed.

126. On realizing the unsullied Kṣetrajña, there is no further return to Saṁsāra. It is called *Avācya* (inexpressibe) because it cannot be described by means of logic or by arguments it cannot be grasped.

127. It is (called) *Apratarkya* (that which cannot be argued about) because it cannot be conceived. After attaining that

1. Bd.P. v. 96 reads: *jñātājñanavivarjitaḥ* 'He is a knower, devoid of ignorance'. A better reading.
2. Bd. P. v. 98 reads *anyūnaṁ vāpyahetukam* 'not deficient and not caused—spontaneous'.
3. Some lines in the text mixed up.

principle along with the mind, he (the soul) does not become attached (to other objects).

128-130. When the Kṣetrajña is free from Guṇas, when it is pure, quiescent, unsullied, exhausted, devoid of both happiness and misery, when it is checked and attains calmness and when it becomes *Nirātmaka* (devoid of ego?), there is neither *Vācyatva* (state of being expressed) nor *Avācyatva* (the state of not being expressed) (?) These two, annihilation and creation are manifest and unmanifest. Puruṣa creates and swallows (the entire world). Everything functions again with the *Kṣetrajña* presiding over.

131. At its end, it consciously resorts to the *Adhiṣṭhāna* (substratum). Their mutual contact is known as being brought about by *Sādharmya* and *Vaidharmya* (similarity and dissimilarity). The *Saṁyoga* (contact) of the great Puruṣa is beginningless.*

132. As long as creation and subsidiary creation last Prakṛti keeps Puruṣa restrained and stays: At the outset it functions unintelligently but in favour of it. Its function is for the sake of Puruṣa.

133. This creation and dissolution are effected by Pradhāna as well as by Īśvara. But it is beginningless and endless. Prakṛti approaches the Universe even while terrifying it with the feeling of identification.

134. Thus the third creation of Prakṛti characterised by *Hetu* (cause) has been recounted. One who strictly adheres to it becomes liberated as mentioned by poets (seers).

135. Thus three types of dissolution have been recounted to you in detail as well as in proper order. What shall I explain further?

*After slightly correcting obvious mistakes, with the help of Bd. P. 109.

CHAPTER FORTYONE*

Recreation of the Cosmic Egg

The Sages said :

1-4. O Sūta, a great narrative has been recounted by Your Holiness.[1] You have narrated the wonderful deeds of all subjects along with Manus, of Devas along with sages, of Pitṛs, Gandharvas, Bhūtas (goblins), Piśācas (ghosts), serpents, Rākṣasas, Daityas, Dānavas, Yakṣas and birds. Their *Vidhi*-supported decision of their Dharmas and their excellent and fine births have been narrated in wonderful stories. Being narrated to us in your sweet voice (or in charmingly polished words), O son of Sūta, it rendered pleasure to our ears and minds for ever till the end of the creation of living beings.

5. After having thus propitiated and honoured Sūta, all the great sages, the performers of the *Satra* (sacrifice) asked him about the process of creative function.[2]

6-7. "O highly intelligent Sūta, how does creation re-appear? To us who ask you, please narrate how the creation begins again, when the bonds have dissolved, when all the Guṇas have attained the state of equilibrium, when everything is enveloped in darkness, when the groups of *Vikāras* (created beings) have become inactive and stationed in the unmanifest Ātman and when all the Kṣetrajñas have attained *Sāyujya* (identity) with Brahman."

8. On being thus requested, Sūta Lomaharṣaṇa again began to narrate the process of creation.

---

*This chapter corresponds to Bd.P. 3.4.4. References are to verse nunbers therein.

1. The speech of sages shows that this must be the last chapter. They have duly honoured Sūta. They performed *Avabhṛtha* bath and went to heaven (42). The review of the contents, *Phalaśruti* and the genealogy of teachers who handed down the text of this Purāṇa—all these confirm the above conclusion.

2. Dissolution of the Universe and its recreation form an important characteristic (*Lakṣaṇa*) of a Purāṇa. As the topic of recreation of the Brahmāṇḍa was not properly dealt in previous chapters, it is taken here to fulfil the *Pañcalakṣaṇa* criterion.

9. "I shall recount to you how the creation functions (again). The order of the creation should be known (to occur) as (it took place) before.

10. I shall mention what is seen and what can be inferred. I shall mention cogent arguments. From it (the principle of creative function), all words recede without reaching it along with the mind (i.e. the mind cannot conceive it, the words cannot express it).

11. Just as the unmanifest is invisible and incomprehensible, (the objects of creation too) are invisible and incomprehensible. When the *Vikāras* (evolutes) become dissolved they are seen nowhere. The Guṇas attain equilibrium and the created things recede.

12. Pradhāna stands on a similar footing with Puruṣas. The Dharmas and the Adharmas of living beings too merge in *Avyakta* (the Unmanifest).

13. Their Dharma of the nature of Sattva gets settled in the Guṇa of Sattva, while Adharma of the nature of Tamas (darkness) abides in the Guṇa Tamas.

14. These two Guṇas are devoid of distinction when the Guṇas are in the state of equilibrium. In all the functions of Pradhāna the activities will be backed by the intellect.

15. The Kṣetrajña will preside over those Guṇas without the (intermediary) intellect. Thus the *Pura* (physical body) will be attained through *Abhimāna* (the act of identification).

16. When it becomes necessary to function both[1] the Kṣetra and Kṣetrajña begin to interact mutually; they become united together in the relationship of *Bhojya* (that which has to be enjoyed) and *Bhoktṛ* (the enjoyer).

17. The only refuge for them is the Avyakta. Stabilised in the state of equilibrium, the group of Guṇas become presided over by the Kṣetrajña (at the time of the beginning of creation) and then their equilibrium is upset.

18. Then both Kṣetra and Kṣetrajña reach the state of

---

1. After describing the state of *Guṇa-Sāmya* (Equilibrium of all Guṇas), vv. 16ff. describe how that state gets disturbed and how the evolution (creation) of the Universe takes place. The influence of Sāṅkhyas is obvious in the description of evolution and involution of the Universe.

Vyakta (manifestation). Sattva (Guṇa) presided over by Ksetrajña will produce *Vikāra* (evolutes).

19. The twentyfour principles of the nature of Guṇas beginning with *Mahat* and ending with *Viśeṣa* (which are called Vikāras) attain the Kṣetrajña, Pradhāna and Puruṣa.

20. Then in the Brahmāṇḍa (the Cosmic Egg) Īśvara will be born (manifest) first. He will be the lord of all living beings, of the entire knowable universe. He is Śiva.

21. He is the overlord of all liberated souls. He is the great Brahmā of the nature of Brahman. He is the primordial lord and it is said that his manifestation is for the sake of blessing Pradhāna.

22. Kṣetra and Kṣetrajña are self-born and beginningless. They are remembered as subtle. Their union is beginningless. They are aware of all Kṣetras.

23. They are joined together without the intermediation of intellect (*Abuddhipūrvakam*) like *Maśaka* (mosquito) and *Udumbara* tree. They are stationed beginninglessly and inconceivably like water and fish.

24. The creation functions again as it had functioned before. The *Ajña* (non-knowing) Prakṛti transforms itself into the universe functioning through its Guṇas, viz. Rajas, Sattva and Tamas.

25. At the time of the functioning (of Prakṛti) the Kṣetrajña human beings are overwhelmed by Rajas Guṇa and attain the (benefit of) the principles of Mahat, Ahaṁkāra etc. ending with Viśeṣa and the sense organs. Then the Guṇas reach their end (?)

26. God Brahmā is of truthful conception. While he was meditating on the *Sat*, the Guṇas Rajas, Sattva and Tamas though mutually dissimilar became manifest as caused by the *Sat* (the existent).

27. Kṣetrajñas (knowers of the Kṣetra or body) are ever produced both at the beginning and at the end. *Abhimānins* (*Ātmans* who identify themselves) become born with instruments of actions readily achieved.

28. All beings are produced from the *Avyakta* (Unmanifest) at the outset itself, who had been Sādhakas (spiritual aspirants) or non-Sādhakas (?)

29. All of them undergoing the process of worldly existence along with their *Sthānas* (abodes) and *Prakaraṇas* (contexts?), attain their effects and are born again and again.

30. Dharma and Adharma are solely of the nature of quality. They begin (give rise to) each other through boons and blessings.

31. All are equal for the purpose of creation. It is at the beginning of creation that they undergo transformation. The Guṇas rush to him and hence it is liked by him.

32-33. The Kṣetrajñas attain again and again only those qualities which they had in the previous creation. Being created again and again they attain only them. Qualities of violent or non-violent temperament, softness or cruelty, virtuousness or sinful nature, truthfulness or falsehood—had already been conceived by them (in the former creation); they attain them again and hence they appeal to them.

34. It is through Guṇas that the multiplicity and diversity in the great Bhūtas (elements), in the sense-objects and in physical forms as well as the separation of living beings take place.

35. Thus I have recounted briefly to you the subsequent creation. Now I shall briefly recount the birth (manifestation) of Brahmā.[1]

36. From that *Avyakta* (unmanifest) cause which is eternal one and of the nature of *Sat* and *Asat* (existence and non-existence) Maheśvara (the great Lord) is born through Pradhāna and Puruṣa.

37. With the appellation 'Brahmā', he becomes the evolver. He creates the worlds once again of the nature of (i.e. characterised by) *Abhimāna* (referring all objects to the self) and Guṇas (Sattva etc.).

38. Ahaṁkāra (Cosmic Ego) is born of Mahat (the cosmic intellect) and Bhūtas are born of it (Ahaṁkāra).

---

1. Sūta narrates the recreation of the Universe by bringing in Purāṇic deities like Maheśvara and Brahmā and synthesizing the Sāṅkhya and Purāṇic accounts.

Bhūtas and *Indriyas* (sense organs) are born simultaneously from the Ātman. The different living beings are born from Bhūtas (elements).

It is thus that the creation begins to function.

39. The ramifications of these are extensive. I have recounted to you in accordance with my intellect and in the manner I have heard it formerly. Know them in the same manner."

40. The sages living in the Naimiṣa forest heard the story of the origin, maintenance and destruction of the worlds and then finished the holy ablution of *Avabhṛtha* in the *Satra*. They became pure and attained the meritorious world.[1]

41. In the same manner, you worship duly Devatās (deities) etc., take the valedictory bath (*Avabhṛtha*) after the sacrifice and become pure. At the end of life be contented (that you have done your duty), abandon bodies, attain the meritorious world and proceed (to enjoy) as you please.

42. All the residents of the Naimiṣa forest, the performers of the *Satra* went to heaven after taking the ablution, *Avabhṛtha* on the conclusion of the sacrifice.

43. O excellent Brāhmaṇa, in the same manner you will also go to heaven at the end of your life after performing the various kinds of sacrifices and taking the *Avabhṛtha* bath in the end.

44-45. The Wind-god himself who is engaged in the welfare of the worlds, has narrated this popular *Purāṇa* consisting of the four Pādas[2] (sections), viz. *Prakriyā* is the first section, where the story is taken up (the other sections are) *Anuṣaṅga, Upodghāta* and *Upasaṁhāra*.

46-47. He narrated it to the sages after going to their *Satra* in the Naimiṣa forest. It is due to his favour, O excellent sages, that the story of the origin and dissolution of the living

1. Conclusion of the *Satra* (sacrificial session) and the completion of the narration of the Purāṇa synchronised. The author exhorts the later audience of the Purāṇa to perform sacrifices and go to heaven just as the sages in Naimiṣāraṇya did formerly.

2. A brief review of the main *Pādas* (Sections) of the Purāṇa.

beings has been learnt without any doubt. After clearly understanding this creation of the Pradhāna effected by Īśvara, an intelligent man will not be deluded.

48-49. The scholarly Brāhmaṇa who listens to or narrates or teaches this ancient *Itihāsa* rejoices in the worlds of Mahendra for eternal years.[1] After attaining *Sāyujya* with Brahman along with Brahmā he becomes liberated.

50. Eulogising those Prajāpatis, the famous noble-souled lords of earth,[2] he attains the status of Brahman.[3]

---

1. Verses 48-57 contain the *Phala-Śruti* of listening to or narrating this Purāṇa.

2. MS. Kha used by A. (Anandaśrama edition) contains the following additional verses:

(1) The learned scholar who narrates (makes other hear) this (Purāṇa) attains the high goal. He is endowed with wealth, food-grains, happiness and prosperity. There is no doubt about this.

(2) A Brāhmaṇa will attain knowledge (or learning) and union with Brahman. A Kṣatriya attains victory (in battles) and excellent position in the region of gods.

(3) A Vaiśya will get (ample) riches, food-grains and money. A Śūdra being blessed with progeny (sons and grandsons) gets happiness.

(4) He who learns or hears a verse, or a part of a verse of this Purāṇa goes to Viṣṇu's city (Vaikuṇṭha) after death and never experiences grief—*A. edition* p. 421.

3. A. records the following additional verses from the same (Kha) MS. after the words *Brahmabhūyāya gacchati*: They are translated from p 421 of A edition as follows:

(1) He by whom the sacred Bhārata (Purāṇa) as narrated by Vāyu is heard (once or) frequently, attains heaven by the grace (of the Wind-god).

(2) He who devoutly reads this Vāyu Purāṇa will be blest with a long life. The goddess of wealth will be stable (stay permanently) in his house.

(3) After writing down the Purāṇa or getting it written and after worshipping it (the MS of the Vāyu Purāṇa) duly, there is no fear of fire, thieves or fear from the (unfavourable) planets, diseases etc.

(4) All those (evil influences, fear and such other) troubles get destroyed till the moon and stars exist (to the end of the world). Being absolved of all sins, he will go to Viṣṇu's city (Vaikuṇṭha).

(5-6) There is not the least danger from cholera. He will get happinesss everywhere. He will be blest with longevity, health, prosperity, wealth, sons and grandsons for ever. No question (doubt) need be raised about this.

51. This Purāṇa narrated by Kṛṣṇa Dvaipāyana, the expounder of Brahman (Vedas), is conducive to wealth, fame, longevity and great merit. It is on a par with the Vedas.

52. He who extols the fame of the lords of Manvantaras, of the Devas and sages endowed with enormous wealth and splendour, is released from all sins. He shall attain great merit.

53. A scholar who always narrates this on every festive occasions, shakes off his sins, conquers heaven and becomes capable of being merged in Brahman.

54. If one at the time of Śrāddha recites a section of this (Purāṇa) to Brāhmaṇas, it ultimately passes on to Pitṛs bestowing everything desired and everlasting benefit.

55. The word Purāṇa is derived thus: *purā ananti iti purāṇam*, i.e. that which has been established in ancient times. He who knows this derivation becomes liberated from all sins.

56-57. Those men of the three higher castes who listen to this Purāṇa and turn their attention to virtuous activities, rejoice in heaven for as many crores of years as there are hair-pores in the skin. After attaining *Sāyujya* (absorption) with Brahman they rejoice along with Devas.

58. Brahmā handed over to Mātariśvan[1] (Wind-god) this sacred text of the ancient Purāṇa which dispels all sins, which is holy and meritorious and which is conducive to fame.

59. From him it was acquired by Uśanas, and Bṛhaspati secured it from him. Thereafter, Bṛhaspati narrated it to Savitṛ.

60. Savitṛ recounted it to Mṛtyu and Mṛtyu handed it over to Indra. Indra narrated it to Vasiṣṭha and he taught it to Sārasvata.

A Kṣatriya who studies this has inexhaustible fruit (benefits).

(7) In this world, he get excellent reputation. He becomes victorious (in battles). He gets the happiness of begetting sons and having grandsons. After death, he will dwell in *Svarga* (Heaven).

(8) If a non-Śūdra (Śūdra, if the *Avagraha* [S] in *adhīyate'śūdraḥ* be a misprint) teaches it or narrates it repeatedly, the goddess of Wealth stays permanently in his house. This is true (definitely), true and not otherwise.

1. Verses 58-66 give the genealogy of teachers who handed down the Purāṇa up to Sūta, the present narrator.

61. Sārasvata handed it over to Tridhāman; Tridhāman gave it to Śaradvān. Śaradvān taught Triviṣṭa and he gave it to Antarikṣa.

62. Antarikṣa gave it to Varṣin and he gave it to Trayyāruṇa. Trayyāruṇa taught it to Dhanañjaya and he gave it to Kṛtañjaya.

63. Tṛṇañjaya got it from Kṛtañjaya and he gave it to Bharadvāja. Bharadvāja gave it to Gautama and he handed it over to Niryantara.

64. Niryantara narrated it to Vājaśravas. He handed it over to Somaśuṣma, who gave it to Tṛṇabindu.

65. Tṛṇabindu narrated it to Dakṣa and Dakṣa taught Śakti. Even as he was in the womb, Parāśara heard this from Śakti.

66. O excellent Brāhmaṇas, Jātukarṇa learnt this from Parāśara. From him holy lord Dvaipāyana got it. From Dvaipāyana this was secured by me.

Śāṁśapāyana said:

67. Thus the words uttered by Brahmā, the first preceptor, were mentioned by me to my son Amitabuddhi (of unmeasured intellect); it is narrated orally by (a line of preceptors) of whom Brahmā was the first.

68-70. Preceptors should be earnestly bowed down to by learned men. This story is conducive to wealth, fame and longevity. It is meritorious and achieves all objects (of desire). It destroys sins. This must always be regularly listened to by Brāhmaṇas. This sacred story should not be mentioned to an impure person, a sinner, nor to a disciple who has not put in at least a year's disciplined student life. Nor should it be mentioned to one who never pays heed, nor to one who is not a scholar, nor to one who has no son, nor to one who is inimical.

71-73. With great mental purity, I bow down to Brahmā,[1] the first Maheśvara whose source of origin, they say, is *Avyakta*

1. This salutation to Mahādeva who is identified with the Primordial Puruṣa shows that it is a Śaiva Purāṇa. The *Maṅgalācaraṇa* of this Purāṇa pays obeisance to Lord Śiva.

(the Unmanifest), whose body is the Manifest Kāla that has gone in, whose mouth is Vahni (fire), whose eyes are the Sun and the Moon, whose ears are the quarters, whose nose, they say, is Vāyu, whose words are Vedas, whose body is the firmament, whose feet are the earth, whose hair pores are the stars, whose limbs are similarly constituted, all the Vidyās are the tail, who is the lord of Devas, who creates people, who is firmly stationed in all the worlds, who is the foremost of all and who is Maheśvara, the granter of boons.

CHAPTER FORTYTWO

Dissipation of Vyāsa's Doubts[1]

The Sages Śaunaka and others said:

1-2. O Sūta, O blessed one, eighteen Purāṇas have been entirely narrated along with the connected anecdotes in the manner of *Upakrama* (beginning) and *Upasaṁhāra* (conclusion), by you, the holy one, who have understood all the sacred texts by the favour of Vyāsa.

3-11. You have clearly narrated *Matsya Purāṇa*[2] containing fourteen thousand verses; the *Bhaviṣya Purāṇa* containing an equal number of verses with five hundred more; the beautiful

---

1. This chapter is a later addition as it is found only in one MS(Ka) used by A. The very fact that it comes after *Phalaśruti* and formal completion of the Purāṇa shows its supplementary nature.

2. Verses 3-11 give a list of 18 Mahāpurāṇas along with the total number of verses in each. Here only the *Vāyu Purāṇa* is narrated. But the credit of narrating eighteen Purāṇas is given to Sūta. This being a mere Appendix, various topics are included herein. These verses give the traditional number of verses in each Purāṇa without verifying them, unless we presume that that much number of verses was found at the time of this Purāṇa writer. Thus *Kūrma Purāṇa* is credited with 17000 verses but actually we find therein only 6000 verses; the *Bhāgavata Purāṇa* is credited to have 18000 verses but actually it has less than 15000 verses.

Mārkaṇḍeya containing nine thousand verses; the *Brahmavaivarta* containing eighteen thousand verses; the *Brahmāṇḍa* containing twelve thousand and one hundred verses; the divine *Bhāgavata* containing eighteen thousand verses; the *Brahma Purāṇa* (the Purāṇa called Brahma of ten thousand verses); the Purāṇa named *Vāmana* containing ten thousand verses; the *Ādipurāṇa* containing ten thousand and six hundred verses; the *Anila* (*Vāyu*) *Purāṇa* containing twentythree thousand verses (?); the *Nāradiya* containing twentythree thousand verses; the *Vainateya* (*Garuḍa*) containing nineteen thousand verses; the extensive *Padmapurāṇa* containing fiftyfive thousand verses; the beautiful *Kūrma* containing seventeen thousand verses; the wonderful *Śaukara* (*Varāha*) *Purāṇa* containing twentyfour thousand verses and the extensive *Skanda Purāṇa* containing eightyone thousand verses. Thus eighteen big Purāṇas have been narrated. In these Purāṇas many holy rites (Dharmas) have been explained by you.

12-15. The holy rites and duties (Dharma) of those with and without attachment, those of ascetics, the religious students, householders, forest-hermits, women and Śūdras have been particularly explained by you. Similarly the rites and duties of Brāhmaṇas, Kṣatriyas, Vaiśyas and the mixed castes have been recounted. You have described the big rivers Gaṅgā and others. Many kinds of Yajñas, holy rites and penances have been explained in those Purāṇas. Many kinds of religious gifts, all kinds of *Yamas* (restraints and holy observances), the duties of Yoga, Sāṁkhya and Bhāgavata (pertaining to the holy devotee of the lord) have been explained in them. The paths of devotion, knowledge, and detachment have been explained. The procedures for the *Upāsanā* (special forms of worship) with water and wind (i.e. such as Prāṇāyāma where the breath is controlled) by those whose minds have been purified by holy rites, have been mentioned.

Though our text reiterates 18 as the number of Mahā Purāṇas actually a list of 16 Purāṇas is given. The *Ādipurāṇa* hereof is either Viṣṇu or Agni or Liṅga but that number of verses approximates to those of Liṅga Purāṇa. The number of verses attributed per Purāṇa differs in different Purāṇas. But that is a minor point as these Purāṇa writers had no opportunity or inclination to verify the actual number of verses in each Purāṇa.

16. The systems (of philosophy and devotion), the Brāhma (pertaining to Brahma), Śaiva (that of Śiva), Vaiṣṇava (that of Viṣṇu), Saura (that of the Sun), Śākta (that of Śakti, the goddess), Ārhata[1] (that of Arhat, Jina), the six systems of philosophy and the materialistic philosophy—all these and many other things have been explained in the Purāṇas.

17. It is not known whether there is or not anything beyond this that is excellent and worth knowing.

18. Could it be that Vyāsa or you, holy sir, are hiding anything? Please clear our doubts in this respect, since you are a complete Paurāṇika (knower of Purāṇas).

Sūta said:

19. O Śaunaka, listen. I shall explain this intricate problem. This is a great secret of divine nature. It should not be mentioned (to anyone and everyone), so say (the sages).

20. After writing the story of the Purāṇas wherein all the meanings of the Vedic passages have been included, Vyāsa, son of Parāśara, thought thus in his mind.[2]

21. "The duties of the different castes and stages of life have been clearly explained by me. Different paths leading to salvation without infringing the Vedic injunctions have been mentioned by me.

22. In my decisions (incorporated) in the (*Brahma sūtra*), the (alleged) distinction between Jīva (individual soul), Īśvara and Brahman has been completely refuted. Brahman the supreme soul has been explained on the basis of Vedic passages, cogent arguments and deliberations.

---

1. Mention of Jainism and non-mention of Buddhism shows that Buddhism had either disappeared from India at that time or the inclusion of the Buddha as an incarnation of Viṣṇu was probably regarded a sufficient ground not to mention it as a separate system of philosophy. I believe in the first alternative (disappearance of Buddhism on a large scale).

2. Cf. Bh. P. I.4.26-31 and the subsequent two chapters 5 & 6. That episode in the Bh. P. is the basis of this episode of Vyāsa's dejection. The mention of *Brahma Sūtras* shows that at the time of this Purāṇa the authors of the Mahābhārata, the Purāṇas and the *Brahma sūtra* were believed to be one single individual called Kṛṣṇa Dvaipāyana Vyāsa.

23. The supreme Brahman is imperishable. It is the supreme soul, and the greatest region. It is for its realization that the religious students, forest-hermits and ascetics perform holy rites.

24-25. Highly intelligent persons perform *Dhāraṇā* (concentration) of different types. Leading sages perform the *Aṣṭāṅga* (eight-limbed) observance for the sake of Brahman. They are—*Āsana* (posture), *Prāṇarodha* (restraint of breath), *Pratyāhāra* (withdrawal of the senses), *Dhāraṇā* (concentration), *Dhyāna* (meditation), *Samādhi* (trance, ecstasy), *Yama* (restraint) and *Niyama* (observance).

26. Those who strictly adhere to the injunctions of the Vedas, perform holy rites only for the sake of Brahman. They are free from desires and sins. They perform the holy rites dedicating the fruit thereof to the greatest soul.

27. Those of pure rites and observances resort to the holy centres of Gaṅgā etc. in order to wipe off their sinful actions and to know the supreme soul.

28-29. That Brahman is the greatest. It is pure. It has neither beginning nor end. It is free from ailments. It is eternal and omnipresent. It is steady like the summit of a mountain. It is devoid of deception. It pervades all sense organs but is imperceivable. It is devoid of sense-organs that are the creations of Prakṛti. It is undeflected by *Dik* (Space) and *Kāla* (Time) etc. It is eternal. It is pure consciousness. It is unchanging.

30-31. The whole universe is super-imposed on it like the serpent on a piece of cord[1] and hence appears so. Brahman is devoid of aberrations. If pondered well, foam, bubble and wave will be found not different at all from water; similarly considered the universe too is not at all different from Brahman.

32. The Nigamas (Vedas) declare, 'Everything is Brahman There is no multiplicity'. It is from Brahman that the crores of Brahmāṇḍas (Cosmic Eggs) are created and dissolved.

---

1. This *Adhyāsavāda* shows that this chapter was written in the post-Śaṅkara period. See v. 39 below.

33. The dissolution and creation of all the worlds depend upon the *Unmeṣa* (opening) and *Nimeṣa* (closing) of Brahman.[1] The great Śakti (the divine goddess of power) is stationed with the support of Brahman.

34. The universe is in it. It originates from Brahman. It is Brahman itself. It is due to the ignorance of Brahman that the universe appears. When Brahman is realised there is no universe.

35. The universe is explained as *Asatya* (unreal), *Jaḍa* (insentient), *Duḥkha* (cause of misery) and *Avastu* (unreal, unsubstantial). The opposite of it is *Saccidānandamūrti*—the embodiment of existence, knowledge and bliss.

36. It is called *Viśva* when the individual soul is in the wakeful state. It is remembered as *Taijasa* when the individual is in a state of dream. It is called *Prājña* when the individual soul is in the state of dreamless slumber.[2] It persists in all the states.

37. It is the eye of eyes. It is the ear of ears. It is the *Tvac* (skin, i.e. organ of touch) of all *Tvacs*. It is the tongue of tongues. They consider it the Prāṇa (vital breath) of Prāṇas.

38. Human beings are incapable of knowing precisely and attaining it by means of intellect, worldly knowledge, vital breath or physical activity for ever.

39. Just as snake (is misconceived as such) in the rope, mirage as water in the desert, and blueness in the sky is superimposed due to ignorance, so also the non-existing universe is superimposed on Brahman and hence it simply appears to exist.

40. The vast sky appears to be different inasmuch as it is restricted by jars etc. Similarly the Jīva is the restricted form of the all-pervading soul, restricted through the *kārya* (product e.g. the physical body).

---

1. A partial quotation from Vasugupta's *Spanda-Kārikā* 1, but attributes this creation and destruction of the Universe to Śiva's Parā Śakti—an attempt to adapt a *Trika Śaiva* concept and adopt it in *Kevalādvaita*.

2. The terms Taijasa, Prājña etc. used here are of Upaniṣadic antiquity (*vide* Māṇḍūkya Up. 9, 10 and 11).

41. The whole Cosmic Egg is an incomparably superb painting drawn on Brahman as if on a wall by the Māyā (Illusion) of wonderful activities possessing diverse Guṇas.

42. That imperishable Brahman is conclusively arrived at by the Vedic and Upaniṣadic passages and principles. Brahman is beyond those who rush after it. It is beyond the words of those who try to explain it.

43. There is nothing greater than the *Akṣara* (indestructible Brahman). That is the Acme. That is the great goal. So it is explained in the Vedas, when (they are) closely pondered over.

44-52. I have heard this from the Vedas with whose help he became cognisable. Also that Lord Kṛṣṇa is that supreme man (Puruṣa).[1] He is abiding in the form of Ātman in that *Akṣara Ātman* (imperishable soul). He is of the form of the mass of Bliss, the embodiment of *Ānanda* (bliss and felicity). He takes interest in divine sports in the midst of the cowherdesses. He is embellished with a crown decorated with peacock plumes and studded with shining gems. He shines with the two earrings having the brilliance of lightning. His eyes beautiful like the Khañjarīṭa (birds) move up to (are longish up to) the ears. He indulges in dalliance with the beloved cowherdesses in every flower-grove. He wears a divine yellow garment. He has smeared himself with sandal paste. He fascinates the cowherdesses with the notes of his flute sprinkled with the nectar oozing out of his lips. He is the *Cidānanda* (the bliss of knowledge). He suppresses the arrogance of Anaṅga (Cupid) (by means of his beauty). He is a past-master in the arts of love of crores of Kāmas. He is as pure as the rays of crores of Moons. Bees and deer surround him. Round his neck with three lines a diamond necklace shines with beads interspersed. To control cows from straying away, he runs about here and there on the high banks of Yamunā in the jungle of Tamāla trees and trees of Kadamba, Campaka, Aśoka and Pārijāta that appear very beautiful. It (the forest) is full of the chirping sounds of cuckoos, parrots, doves and peacocks. He is particularly fond of sporting with Rādhā.

---

1. Verses 44-55 show the influence of the Rādhā-Kṛṣṇa cult or Bhāgavatism.

53. He sports in the world called Goloka which is Brahman itself, the *Cit* alone, free from difference and Guṇas. I have heard it so.

54. There is nothing greater than He as mentioned in Nigamas and Āgamas. Still the Vedas say that he is beyond and greater than *Akṣara*.

55. The lord who is the resident of Goloka is called greater than *Akṣara*. Who is this always spoken by the Vedas as beyond even that ?

56. How is the special meaning, that which is indicated by the words of the Vedas to be known? Is the text of the Veda to be interpreted otherwise as it implies more than recorded in words (?)

57. Vyāsa, the son of Satyavatī, became doubtful as to the meaning of the Śruti. He pondered over it for a long time. He could not understand it precisely.

Sūta said:

58. Even after deliberating (long) the sage did not arrive at the decisive meaning of the Vedic passage. The Veda is Nārāyaṇa himself, where even great sages (poets) become confounded.

59. Still he underwent great distress of the heart. Then he thought: 'Whom shall I approach ? What shall I do ?

60-62. I do not see anyone in this world who is omniscient and who sees everything.' After not knowing anyone in the world who could clear his doubts he went to a cave in Meru and performed a great penance. There was a beautiful forest there. Although there was blinding darkness within, the rocks shed a golden brilliance everywhere.

63-66. The forest was resonant with the chirping sounds of the birds among the groves of the different trees and creepers. It was devoid of the sufferings due to hunger, thirst, fear, anger, distress and dejection. Ponds and tanks beautified with lotuses abounded there. Their banks were set with golden slabs on which the birds moved about. It was served by the winds wafting the fragrance from the lotuses. It was devoid of beasts of prey. It was frequented by animals having auspicious nature. The place was devoid of crowds of people. It was embellished

with pleasing groves of divine creepers. The chirping sounds of parrots, doves and intoxicated cuckoos were very pleasing.

67. The pollen dust particles rose up and rendered all the quarters fragrant. The divine golden cave of very great splendour was there (in such a forest).

68. The sage entered that cave. After attaining full control over his mind, posture and urge for food, he meditated on the four Vedas with great concentration.

69-73. Even as he was meditating, three hundred years passed and then the four Vedas of beautiful appearance[1] stood in front of him. Their eyes were resplendent like the petals of the lotus. Their heads were embellished with matted hair like coronets. Sacred Kuśa grass was held in the fists of their lotus-like hands. Their shoulders were adorned with deer skin. The splendour of their mouths was heightened by means of the sixteen *Svara* (vowel) sounds intersprsed with *Praṇava* (Om). Their hands with five fingers to each were constituted by the letters of the guttural and the palatal classes of consonants. Their right legs were constituted by the labial class consonants and the left legs consisted of the letters of the dental. The sides of their belly were constituted of intermediate and last consonants (of each group). The letter *Ña* constituted their navels. Their backs were refulgent (The letters ending with *Ka* constituted their backs). The letter *Ma* was their stomach. The letters *Ya*, *Ra*, *La* and *Va* were their tied up hair (tresses). *Agnibīja* (the seed-like Mantra of Agni) shone in their right shoulders. The *Dharā* (*Bīja*) (the seed-like Mantra of the earth) was their neck and the Bhṛta (? Mantra) shone on their (left) shoulders.

74. Their joints consisted of the *Antaḥstha* (semi-vowel) letters. They were throbbing with *Vaikharī* speech. He saw (the city of) Mathurā marked in their lotus-like hearts.

75. Indeed that is the holy centre of the manifestation of Lord Hari himself. He saw (the holy place) Kāśī in the middle

1. A beautiful yet significant description of the personality of the Vedas. The vision of seven holy cities, important or major sacrifices, four sacred fires on their person is interesting as it shows the attritude of the author to synthesize Purāṇic and Vedic traditions.

of their eyebrows. He saw the city of Māyā (Haridvāra) stationed in a mystical plexus at the posterior part of the body.

76. He saw the city of Kāñcī in the region of their penis; the city of Avantī in the navel region; the city of Dvārakā in the region of the neck and the city of Prayāga in the region of Prāṇa (vital air).

77. To their left and right flowed the rivers Gaṅgā and Yamunā. In the middle flowed the river Sarasvatī itself. The holy centre of Gayā was in the facial region.

78. The excellent holy centre of Prabhāsa was in the middle of the neck and the chin. He saw the hermitage of Badaryāśrama in their Brahmarandhra (cerebral aperture).

79. The holy seats of Paundravardhana (Pandua) (Malda District) and Nepāla were seen in the two eyes. The seat named Pūrṇagiri was seen on the forehead.

80. The holy seat (Pīṭha) of Mathurā was seen in the neck. The seat of Kāñcī was stationed in the hips. The Pīṭha of Jālandhara was seen in the region of the breasts.

81. The Pīṭha called Bhṛgu was in the region of the ears; the city of Ayodhyā was in the cup of the nose. The holy centre Brāhmya was stationed in the cerebral aperture; the holy centre Śaiva was in the partition on the crown of the head.

82. The holy centre Śākta was situated on the tip of the tongue. The holy Vaiṣṇava centre was in the lotus of the heart; the holy centre of the Sun was situated in the region of the eyes and all Bauddha (Buddhistic) holy centres were stationed in the shadows.

83. He saw the Sautrāmaṇi Yajña in the region of the neck; the Paśubandha in the chest. He saw the Vājapeya sacrifice in the region of the buttocks and the Agnihotra in the mouth (? face).

84. He saw Aśvamedha in the region of the buttocks and Naramedha (human sacrifice) in the belly. He saw Rājasūya in the region of the head and Āvasathya in the lower lip.

85-86. He saw Dakṣiṇāgni on the upper lip and the Gārhapatya (fire) in the mouth. The *Havya* was in the ears. He saw the different Mantras stationed in the bodily hair. He saw the Vedas severally revered and honoured by the Purāṇas, Nyāyas,

Saṁhitās and Tantra texts like a great king served by his attendants. He saw the Vedas who blessed the people through holy rites, perfect knowledge and Upāsanās (modes of worship).

87. They had the divine brilliance of Brahman; they were blazing like the descending (rays of) the Sun and the shooting flames of fire. They had the appearance of crores of Moons (put together). On seeing them, the sage Kṛṣṇa (Dvaipāyana) became greatly struck with wonder.

88. He got up suddenly and prostrated himself (before them), while saying repeatedly: "I am contented. I have achieved my object (in life).

89. Since, O holy Sires, you have been visible to me, my birth is fruitful today. My mind is satisfied. My life (longevity) has become fruitful today.

90. Whatever there is whether worldly or divine, whatever is worth knowing whether past, present or future is not unknown to you.

91. You all are not the mere instructors of the path of action. Even if you show the path of action, it is only to restrict the haphazard actions of those who are passionate.

92. Your words of injunction and prohibition regarding the status of Brahman and the unreality of the universe are not based on attachment which is unreal. They are binding as the injunctions and prohibitions (?)

93. Hence the objects such as heaven etc. mentioned by yourselves have been censured by you, saying that they are of a perishable nature, while the truth is being explained by you, the benefactors of the worlds.

94. By teaching the path of action and the path of knowledge to different individuals according to their capacity and eligibility, the world has certainly been saved by you whose person is constituted of the revealed word of the supreme Brahman.

95. Hence I would like to ask you, should you be kind and merciful (towards me). With regard to those whose minds are filled with desires only, the fruit ordained for their rites is Svarga (heaven).

96. To those men who have dedicated their minds and souls to Īśa (the Lord), the fruit of the action performed is the

purification of the mind. Thereafter they attain perfect knowledge and subsequently salvation.

97. Salvation is the identity with Brahman which is Existence, Knowledge and Bliss. When it is realized whatever is done or left undone, everything comes to an end.

98. It is unattached. It is the firmament of knowledge of the nature of wisdom unobscured by Māyā. It is free from desire. It is steady (immovable), pure and devoid of Guṇas. It is proclaimed to be all-pervading.

99. When products (the created beings, the world) are being destroyed, Brahman (the unchangeable) does not perish, just as the Sun retains its splendour while the whole world becomes plunged in blinding darkness.

100. It is with the brilliance of the *Sattā* (the existent Brahman) that the universe is illuminated, in the same way as a piece of iron is ignited by the solar crystal or Araṇi produces fire.

101. It manifests in the form of *Jiva* (the individual soul), Īśvara (godhead) etc. and lo ! in the form of the universe too ! When everything is dissolved the firm, motionless Brahman alone remains.

102. This has been decided by you and undoubtedly it must be so. Still I have a desire to know something and have a doubt in my mind.

103. Is there anything greater than this or not ? O blessed ones, please tell it, as you have the vision of reality.

104. The listening to that alone shall be conducive to the success and fruitfulness of my life."

When Vyāsa, the sinless son of Satyavatī, said thus the Nigama (Vedas) exclaimed 'very good, quite right', and replied to him:

Vedas said:

105. Very well, O highly intelligent one. You are Viṣṇu, the Ātman of all embodied ones. Though unborn, you take up birth and desire to bless the worlds.

106. Otherwise why should you be fettered by the worldly Karmans? It does not affect you. You are untouched for ever by the divine Māyā that hides perfect knowledge.

107-108. You take up forms according to your own will and you withdraw the same at your own will. Only matters accepted by us have been revealed by you in the Purāṇas, Itihāsa (Mahābhārata) and the (Brahma) Sūtras in various ways. The imperishable Brahman is supreme, the cause (source) of all causes.

109-110. Like the fragrance of a flower or its taste (juice) it is the Ātman of the Ātman. Know that it is the ultimate form. This has been experienced by us when the dissolution pertaining to Prakṛti took place. It is that which is beyond the *Akṣara* (the indestructible). It is the supreme *Rasa* alone. It is beyond all words of expression. We are of the forms of words and hence incompetent to express it specifically.

CHAPTER FORTYTHREE

The Greatness of Gayā[1]

Vāyu said:

1. Henceforth I shall explain the excellent greatness of Gayā[2] on hearing which one is absolved of all sins. There is no doubt in this.

---

1. This is a *Sthala-Purāṇa* glorifying the sacredness of Gayā. It has a tenuous relation with the Vā. as it comes after the *Phala Śruti* etc. showing the completion of the Vā. P. Gayā, as a sacred place, was famous in pre-Buddhist times as Aurṇavābha's mention of Samārohaṇa, Viṣṇupada and Gayāśiras (all sacred spots at Gayā) as the three steps of Trivikrama, in RV. I. 22.17, is recorded by Yāska (*Nirukta* 12.19). We have *Gayā Māhātmya* in Mbh. Vana. Chs. 84-95, Garuḍa Chs. 82-86, AP Chs. 114-116, KP II.35, NP Uttarabhāga 44-47. A number of verses are common in the works. It shows that probably there must have been an ancient independent *Sthala-Purāṇa* called *Gayā Māhātmya* which was the source of the different Gayā Māhātmyas in these works.

2. The name indicates that it must have been the site of the hermitage or capital of King Gaya. A pious king Gaya, the son of king Samudravijaya of Rājagṛha, the eleventh Cakravartin as mentioned in *Uttarādhyayana Sūtra* a work of Śvetāmbara Jaina Āgama. Buddha's visits to Gayāsīsa (Gayāśīrṣa) and hermitage of Kāśyapa at Gayā are recorded in the Pāli canon (*Mahā-*

Sūta said :

2. Once upon a time, the celestial sage Nārada was accompanied by Sanaka and other blessed sages. Bowing duly to Sanatkumāra, he enquired thus:

Nārada enquired:

3. O Sanatkumāra, please recount to me that holy place which is the most excellent of all excellent sacred places and which saves all living beings who read about it or listen to it.

Sanatkumāra replied:

4. I shall recount the holy and excellent sacred centre which saves all by means of (performance of) *Śrāddha* and other holy rites. Listen to the description of the holy place Gayā which is superior to all other holy centres in the whole of the country.

5. Gaya, the Asura, performed penance. He was requested (to offer his body) for the performance of a sacrifice by god Brahmā. Dharma placed a slab of stone on his (Gaya's) head, when he offered (his body).

6. There Brahmā performed a sacrifice. In order to keep the demon Gaya steady and immovable day and night (for ever), Gadādhara (the mace-wielder Viṣṇu) too stayed there assuming the form of the (river) Phalgu and other sacred places, along with prominent Brāhmaṇas, god Brahmā and other Devas.

7. After concluding his sacrifice, Brahmā granted houses etc. to the Brāhmaṇas. He had performed the sacrifice at Gayā in the beginning of the Śveta Vārāhakalpa.

8. The holy centre became famous by the name Gayā after (the demon) Gaya. This holy centre is liked by god

---

vagga I.21.1 (also Aśvaghoṣa's *Buddhacarita* XII. 87-88, XVII.8). This king Gaya is not the same Gaya, the Vedic Seer of RV. X. 63 and 64 as his father's name was Plati.

Gaya belonged to the ancient Asura clan. We need not associate evil with the Asura clan, as we have very pious yet powerful Asura kings Prahlāda, Bali, Bāṇa. Even Lord Kṛṣṇa was an Asura by his mother's side (S.K. Chatterji—*Selected Writings*).

Brahmā. All manes (*Pitṛs*) afraid of falling into hell, desire for sons.

9. 'The son who goes to Gayā will be our saviour'. On seeing their sons reaching Gayā, the Pitṛs become overjoyed. (They say) 'Even by touching its waters with his feet, what is it that he cannot give us?'

10. If the son goes to Gayā and offers balls of rice (to the Pitṛs) they will realise the benefit of (their) having such a son. If the son remains there for three fortnights, he sanctifies his family till the seventh generation. If that is not possible, let him stay there for fifteen days, or seven nights or (at least) three nights.

11. Sins accumulated during the long period of a Mahā Kalpa perish on reaching Gayā. One should offer balls of rice to the Pitṛs and others. He can even offer the Piṇḍas to himself, but without including gingelly seeds in that case.

12. By performing the Śrāddha at Gayā, all the sins such as those resulting from Brāhmaṇa-slaughter, addiction to wine, stealing (gold), intercourse with the wife of the preceptor and those due to the association with those sinners, perish completely.

13. Whether it is by one's own son or another's son, if the Piṇḍa is offered in one's name anywhere on the ground at Gayā at any time, one is transported to the eternal Brahman.

14. There are four modes of attaining liberation, viz. (1) through the knowledge of Brahman, (2) through performance of Śrāddha at Gayā, (3) (by) death in a cowshed, and (4) through residence at Kurukṣetra.[1]

15. If the son goes to Gayā, of what avail is the knowledge of Brahman; what is the necessity of dying in a cowshed; and what is the need for a residence at Kurukṣetra?

16-17. The real devotee may offer Piṇḍas at Gayā at any time. It should not be discarded during the intercalary month, or on one's birthday or when Jupiter and Venus are set, or when Jupiter is in the Zodiac of Siṁha (Leo). If by ill-luck or inadvertence or when one is struck or wounded (one is un-

1. Cf. NP. II (Uttara) 44.30; AP, 115.5-6.

able to perform the Śrāddha at the proper time), one is eligible to perform afterwards the Śrāddha and other rites. He thereby attains Brahmaloka.

18. Even the opportunity to go to Gayā once or to offer Piṇḍa even once is very rare to achieve. What then, if one is able to stay in it for ever?

19. If accidentally one dies in this holy centre which confers salvation even upon Brahmā and others, one attains salvation in the same manner as through the realisation of Brahman. There is no doubt about tthis.

20. In order to redeem the Pitṛs who might have died due to wormbites etc., one should be wise enough to make all efforts to perform Śrāddha at Gayā.

21. One should honour and propitiate with *Havyas* and *Kavyas* (offerings) the Brāhmaṇas who had been assigned the right of receiving those things by Brahmā himself. If they are pleased, all the Pitṛs and Devas will be pleased.

22. Except in the case of the holy centres of Kurukṣetra, Viśālā, Virajā and Gayā in all the holy centres, it has been ordained that the devotees should shave off their head and observe fast.

23. A Bhikṣu (a recluse) need not offer balls of rice after going to Gayā. It is enough if he shows his staff. After placing his staff at the feet (the footprint) of Viṣṇu he becomes liberated along with all his forefathers.[1]

24. Really the staff-bearing ascetic (Sannyāsin) does not incur sins or acquire merits. Hence he renounces all activities and meditates on Viṣṇu with noble thoughts.

25. One may renounce all Karmans but should not forswear the Vedas. He should shave his head outside the limits of the holy centre to the east, west, south or north.

26. The area of the sacred place of Gayā, as declared by Brahmā, is two and a half krośas (1 krośa = 5 km.), that of the holy centre Gayā is five krośas and that of Gayāśiras (Headland of Gayā) is one krośa.[2]

1. Cf. NP. II. 45.31.
2. Cf. NP. II.44.16; AP. 115.42

27. Whatever holy places there are in the three worlds are present within[1] (the area of Gayāśiras). A person who performs Śrāddha to the Pitṛs in the holy centre of Gayā becomes free from indebtedness to them.

28. He who performs Śrāddha at Gayāśiras uplifts a hundred generations in his family. The moment one starts on his pilgrimage to Gayā, every step that he takes (on his journey of Gayā) constitutes a flight of steps leading to Svarga to his Pitṛs (ancestors).

29. At every step taken (by the son) in his journey towards Gayā, the fruit of Aśvamedha is certainly acquired by him. There is no doubt in this.

30-32. Piṇḍas in Gayā are offered by means of milk pudding, *Carus* (cooked rice soaked in ghee), *Saktu* (flour of fried grains), *Piṣṭaka*, rice grains, roots etc. Powdered gingelly seeds, lumps of jaggery with ghee or mere curds, any foodstuff mixed with honey, oilcake with jaggery, raw sugar and ghee, if offered to the Pitṛs yield everlasting benefits. Or worship is performed and any seasonal fruit is offered as food or Haviṣya food is also offered as mentioned by the sages.

33. On one side are all the articles of offering such as clothes and things sweetened with tasty honey. On the other side is the sacred water from the Phalgutīrtha brought after meditating on the lotus-like feet of Gadādhara (i.e. Both these are at par with each other).

34. The procedure of the Śrāddhas in the holy centres is this: Seat is offered to Piṇḍas; Piṇḍas are offered, then *Avanejana* rite is performed (water is ritualistically sprinkled on the Darbha grass); Dakṣiṇā is then offered and then the *Annasaṁkalpa* (ritualistic verbal utterance of one's intention of offering food).

35. In the Śrāddhas performed in the holy centres, there is no ritualistic invocation to Pitṛs. As there is no defilement through seeing (i.e. on being seen by others) there is no screening of the sides. Intelligent persons should perform Śrāddha with due sympathy.

36. In other places, the Pitṛs if and when invoked at the

1, This is the claim of all *Sthalas* even of lesser importance such as those of Karavira, Pandharpur.

proper time, go there. But they always stay in the holy centre. Hence there is no (need of any) invocation.

37. By a person desirous of fruits and performing *Śrāddhas* in the holy centres all the rites must always be performed after eschewing lust, anger and covetousness.

38. One who observes celibacy, sleeps on the bare ground, takes food only once a day, speaks only the truth, remains always pure and is always engaged in the welfare of all living beings, attains the fruits of visiting the holy centres.

39. A self-possessed man visiting holy centres must at the outset eschew heresy. A person who does everything urged by lust, should be known as a heretic.

40. Just as the knowers of Brahman engaged in the meditation of Brahman with single-minded attention attain the knowable object, so also the self-possessed persons performing the holy rites in the holy centres enter Brahman named Pareśa (the supreme lord).

41. The river Vaitaraṇī which is famous in all the three worlds, has descended into the holy centre of Gayā for saving Pitṛs. One who takes the sacred bath in the Vaitaraṇī and gifts away cows uplifts three times seven (i.e. twentyone) generations.

42. The devotee should go to the Akṣayavaṭa (the eternal holy fig tree) and propitiate the Brāhmaṇas there. One who propitiates the Brāhmaṇas who had been granted the right of staying there by god Brahmā (shall attain the fruit thereof). If they (those Brāhmaṇas) are pleased all the Devas and the Pitṛs will be pleased.

43. There is no spot anywhere in Gayā where there is no holy centre.[1] It has the *Sānnidhya* (presence) of all holy centres. Hence the sacred place of Gayā is the most excellent holy centre.

44. It is a rare achievement that cannot be had anywhere else in the three worlds if one could offer balls of rice at Gayā when the Sun is in the Zodiacs of *Mīna*, *Meṣa*, *Kanyā*, *Dhanus* and *Kumbha*.

---

1. Cf. AP. 116.28.

45. Similarly rare is the opportunity, very rare indeed in the three worlds, to perform Śrāddha at Gayā when the Sun is in the Zodiac *Makara* and also at the times of the eclipses of the Sun and the Moon.

46. The fruit that one achieves by offering balls of rice at Gayā, cannot be described by me even in hundreds of crores of Kalpas.

CHAPTER FORTYFOUR

*The Glory of Gayā : The Story of Gayāsura**

Nārada enquired:

1. How was Gayāsura (Demon Gaya) born? What was his power? What was his nature? How did he perform the penance? How did he acquire purity of the body?

Sanatkumāra replied:

2. Brahmā, the grandfather of the worlds, was born of the umbilical lotus of Viṣṇu. Formerly, at the instance of lord Viṣṇu, he created the subjects.

3. Formerly he created the Asuras (Demons) through a demoniac inclination. Through a benevolent disposition of mind he created the Devas of gentle minds.

4. Demon Gaya possessed the greatest strength and exploit among Asuras. His height is remembered to be one hundred and twentyfive Yojanas.

---

*According to Rajendralal Mitra, the story of Gayāsura is an allegory of the vanquishing of Buddhism by Brahmanism (*Bodha-Gaya* pp. 14-18). O. Malley thought it to be an amalgamation of Brahmanism and popular demonolatry which preceded Brahmanism (JASB LXXII. iii. 7, 1904). B.M. Barua regards, this as an invention to impress the sanctity of the Gayā range of hills (*Gayā and Buddha Gayā*, 1934). I agree with B. M. Barua as, while editing the *Karavīra Māhātmya*, a Sthalapurāṇa of Kolhapur, I found similar creation of stories to justify and glorify some rites etc. of Mahālakṣmi (*vide* Intro. to *Karavīra-Māhātmya*, pp. 19-29, Pub. Shivaji University, Kolhapur, 1980). I find the same claim in the *Sthala Purāṇas* of Pandharpur, Tirupathi.

5. His girth was sixty Yojanas. He is remembered as the most excellent of all the devotees of Viṣṇu. He performed a very terrible penance on the excellent mountain Kolāhala (Brahmayoni hill including Muṇḍapṛṣṭha at Gayā).

6. He remained steady for many thousand years without breathing. Scorched by his fiery penance, Devas were greatly agitated.

7. Devas went to Brahmaloka and spoke to Pitāmaha (god Brahmā), "O Lord, save us from demon Gaya". Then Brahmā spoke to the Devas:

8. "O Devas, we shall go to god Śaṅkara." Brahmā and others went to Śiva. At Kailāsa, they bowed to him and said, "O Lord, save us from the great demon".

9. Śaṁbhu spoke to Brahmā and others: "We shall seek refuge in Hari, in the ocean of milk. He is the lord of all Devas. He will do something conducive to our welfare". Brahmā, Śiva and the Devas bowed to Viṣṇu and eulogised him.

The Devas said:

10. Om! Obeisance to Viṣṇu, the lord of all, the all-powerful, the radiant, the victorious and the devourer (destroyer) of Rākṣasas and others.

11. Hail to the sustainer of all these (worlds). Bow to him who leads the Yogins beyond (the ocean of worldly existence). Obeisance to the ever-increasing, the Infinite. Hail to the resplendent one.

Sanatkumāra said:

12. On being eulogised thus, Vāsudeva granted vision unto the Suras (i.e. manifested himself in front of them). "O Devas, wherefore have you all come?" On being asked thus by Viṣṇu the Devas said to him:

13. "O Lord, save us from the danger of demon Gaya". Hari said, "May Brahmā and others go near that Daitya. I shall also come there".

14. Seated on Garuḍa, Keśava started in order to grant a boon to Gayāsura. All the Devas seated themselves on their respective excellent vehicles and proceeded.

15. Vāsudeva and others spoke to him: "O demon Gaya, what for is this penance being performed by you? We have all arrived here fully satisfied (with your penance). Mention the boon (you wish to have)."

Gayāsura said:

16-18. O Devas, Brahmā, Viṣṇu and Maheśvara, if you are pleased, may I be ever holier than these: than all the Devas, and Brāhmaṇas, than all the Yajñas, holy rivers and mountains; than all the Devas; than all the sages; than even the unchanging Śiva; than all the Mantras; than all the lords of Devas; than all the Yogins; than all the renouncers; than all the *Karmins* (the performers of holy rites); than all the *Dharmins* (pious ones); than all the holy *Jñānins* (wise ones and knowers).

19. "May you be pure and holy". After saying this to the Daitya, the Devas went to heaven. After seeing and touching the Daitya, all people went to Hari's city (i.e. Vaikuṇṭha).

20. All the three worlds became vacant. The whole of the city of Yama became void. Thereafter, Yama went to Brahmaloka along with Indra and others.

21. All the Devas displaced by Gayāsura spoke to Brahmā: "O Pitāmaha, please take back the authority which has been given by you (to us)."

22-23. Then Brahmā spoke to the Devas: "We shall go to the immutable Viṣṇu". Brahmā and others said to Viṣṇu: "Since the Asura has been granted the boon by you, all the people have been going to heaven by merely looking at him. All the three worlds have become void." On being informed thus by the Devas, Vāsudeva spoke thus to god Brahmā:

24. "Go and request the demon thus, 'Give your body for the purpose of Yajña'." Urged by Viṣṇu, Brahmā went there accompanied by the Suras and saw the great Asura.

25. On seeing Brahmā along with the Devas, the demon Gaya stood up and duly and devoutly worshipped them.

Gayāsura said:

26. My birth has become fruitful today. My penance has

become fruitful today, since Brahmā has come as my guest. Everything is obtained by me today.

27. O Yogin, O knower of all the ancillaries of Yoga, O master of all the worlds, O father, O preceptor, O Brahmā, I shall carry out the work for which you have come.

Brahmā said :

28. All the holy centres of the earth seen by me while wandering over it, are not as pure as your body, for the purpose of Yajña.

29. Holiness of the body has been attained by you, thanks to the grace of Viṣṇu. Hence, O Asura, give unto me your pure body for the purpose of Yajña.

Gayāsura said :

30. O lord of Devas, I am blessed since my body is being asked for by you. If you perform Yāga (sacrifice) over my body the Pitṛs in my family shall be contented.

31. It was by you alone that this body was created. It was by you that it was rendered holy and pure. The Yāga should necessarily take place for the benefit of everyone.

32. After saying thus, during the Śveta Kalpa, the demon Gaya fell on the ground in a south-western direction on the mountain Kolāhala.[1]

33. Keeping his head in the north and the feet in the south, the Daitya (lay there). After collecting together all the requisites, Brahmā mentally created the Ṛtviks.

34-39. They were : Agniśarman, Amṛta, Śaunaka, Yāñjali, Mṛdu, Kumuthi, Vedakauṇḍilya, Hārīta, Kāśyapa, Kṛpa, Garga, Kauśika, Vasiṣṭha, the unchanging sage Bhārgava, Vṛddha Parāśara, Kaṇva, Māṇḍavya, Śrutikevala, Śveta, Sutāla, Damana, Suhotra, Kaṅka, Laukākṣi of huge mighty arms, Jaigīṣavya, the Brāhmaṇa Dadhipañcamukha, Ṛṣabha, Karka, Kātyāyana, Gobhila the sage of great fierce rites, Supālaka, Gautama, Vedaśirovrata, Jaṭāmālin, Avyagra, Cāṭuhāsa the terrible, Ātreya,

1. The Brahmayoni hill in Gayā, including the hill called Muṇḍapṛṣṭha which contains the impressions of Gadādhara's feet—De 201.

Aṅgiras, Aupamanyu of great holy rites, Gokarṇa, Guhāvāsa, Śikhaṇḍin and Umāvrata.

40. After creating these and other leading Brāhmaṇas, god Brahmā, the grandfather of the worlds, performed the Yāga on the body of Gayāsura.

41-42. Agniśarmā, without wasting his penance, created these five fires from his mouth : Dakṣiṇāgni, Gārhapatya, Āhavanīya, Satya and Āvasathya. O celestial sage, the Yajñas are founded on these. To stabilise the Yajña, he gave Dakṣiṇā to the Brāhmaṇas.

43. After performing the Pūrṇāhuti and taking the ablution of Avabhṛtha, Brahmā caused the sacrificial post to be brought along with the Suras and fixed it.

44. The auspicious post was fixed in the Brahmasaras which is the most excellent of all lakes. Shaken and surprised, Brahmā spoke to Dharmarāja:

45. "There is a slab of stone in your house. Without hesitation bring it here at my behest and fix it on the head of the Daitya."

46. On hearing it, Yama placed the slab on the head of the demon to keep him steady. Even when the slab was placed, the demon shook along with the slab.

47. He spoke to Rudra and other Devas, "O Devas, you all stand steady on the slab". They said "Yes" and stood there (on it).

48. The Devas pressed the slab with their feet (?) and noted that still the demon quaked. Then the distressed Brahmā went to Viṣṇu who was lying down in the ocean of milk. Bowing down and honouring the lord, he eulogised him.

Brahmā said :

49. O Lord, O sovereign of the cosmic egg, I bow down to the lord of the worlds, the goal of persons possessing glory, the granter of worldly pleasures and salvation.

50. Viṣvaksena spoke to Viṣṇu,"O Lord, the lotus-born deity eulogises you". Hari said, "You bring him". Urged by Viṣṇu, he brought him. Hari spoke to Aja (Brahmā), "Tell me why you have come?"

Brahmā said :

51-52. O Lord of Devas, when the Yāga was performed the demon Gaya moved even when the slab of stone of the form of the Devas was placed on his head. Even when Rudra and other Devas were stationed (over it) there, the demon quaked, O Mādhava, be pleased to make it steady now.

53. On hearing the words of Brahmā, lord Hari pulled out a *Mūrti* (physical body/idol) from his person and gave it to Brahmā to stop the restless quaking (of the demon).

54. Bringing the idol with him, Brahmā placed it on the slab of stone. Still the demon quaked, on seeing which, he (Brahmā) invoked the lord again.

55. Viṣṇu came from the ocean of milk and stationed himself on the slab, with the name of Janārdana and Puṇḍarīka. The primordial Gadādhara (wielder of mace) himself stood there to steady the slab, for stabilising (Gaya or his body).

56-57. For stabilising (Gaya or his body), Brahmā divided himself into five, viz. *Prapitāmaha* (Great-grandfather), *Pitāmaha* (Grandfather), the master of Phalgu, Kedāra and Kanakeśvara. Brahmā as Vināyaka stood there in the form of an elephant. The Sun divided himself into three: Gayāditya, Uttarārka and Dakṣiṇārka.

58. Lakṣmī stood there in the name of Sītā, Gaurī in the name of Maṅgalā and Sarasvatī stationed herself in the forms of the three, viz. Gāyatrī, Sāvitrī, and Trisandhyā.

59. Indra, Bṛhaspati, Pūṣan, the eight Vasus of great strength, Viśvedevas, the two Aśvinī Devas, Maruts, the leader of the universe and Devas along with the Yakṣas, serpents, and Gandharvas remained there accompanied by their respective *Śaktis* (powers).

60. Since the Daitya was made steady by the primordial club and Hari stood there, he is famous as Ādi-Gadādhara.[1]

61. Gayāsura spoke to the Devas, "Why have I been deceived ? The pure body was given unto Brahmā by me for the purpose of Yajña. Would not have I been steady at the sheer instance of Viṣṇu ?

1. Etymology quoted in *TSS* (*Tristhalīsetu*), p. 338.

62. Why have I been harassed by Suras and Hari by means of the club ? May Devas be delighted for ever now that I have been tortured."

63. Gadādhara and others were pleased. They all simultaneously spoke to Gayāsura, "Speak out (choose) a boon. We are all very delighted". Gayāsura then spoke to Devas:

64. "As long as the earth lasts, as long as the mountains, the Moon, the Sun and the stars remain, may Viṣṇu, Brahmā and Maheśvara stand on the slab along with all other Devas. Let the holy centre be named after me.

65. The holy centre of Gayā shall extend to five krośas and Gayaśiras to one krośa. Amidst them may all the holy centres grant welfare unto all men.

66. By taking ablution etc. and performing Tarpaṇa one should offer balls of rice. Then it is more fruitful. That man becomes a great soul and uplifts a thousand members of his family.

67. All of you, stay (here) for ever in manifest and unmanifest forms. May Gadādhara himself be the destroyer of all sins.

68. May those on whose behalf the Śrāddha has been performed and Piṇḍas offered, go to Brahmaloka. May the sins due to Brāhmaṇa slaughter etc. of those who report to this holy centre perish.

69. May all the holy centres in heaven, firmament and the earth such as Naimiṣa, Puṣkara, Gaṅgā, Prayāga, Avimuktaka and others come here regularly, O Suras, and yield welfare unto all men.

70. O hosts of Devas, of what avail is much talk. Unless one of you Devas stand (on this slab), I too will not be steady. This is the condition. Let it be strictly observed."

71. On hearing the words of Gayāsura, Viṣṇu and other Suras spoke, "All that you have requested for shall undoubtedly be granted.

72. After worshipping our feet (all the devotees) will attain the great goal." When the boons were granted to him by Devas, the Daitya became delighted and remained steady.

73-76. When Devas stood steady, the urborn deity (Brahmā) gave unto Brāhmaṇas fifty-five villages and the

holy centre of Gayā extending to five krośas. He built divine houses endowed with all necessities of life and gave *Kāmadhenu* (wish-yielding divine cow), *Kalpavṛkṣa* (Kalpa-tree) and Pārijāta and other trees also were given. A great river of milk, many streams of ghee, exudations of honey, streams of honey, lakes rich in curds etc., a lake of gold, many mountains of cooked food etc. were given. Brahmā created different items of food and fruits and gave them all to the Brāhmaṇas. While giving these things, Aja said, "O leading Brāhmaṇas, do not beg of others".

77-78. After giving away all these things and bowing to Ādigadādhara Brahmā went to Brahmaloka. The Brāhmaṇas of Gayā officiated as priests of Dharma in his sacrifice at Dharmāraṇya and later begged him (for Dakṣiṇā). Out of covetousness they took monetary and other gifts at the sacrifice of Dharma. Brahmā came there and cursed the Brāhmaṇas.[1]

79-81. "O Brāhmaṇas even when everything had been given by me, you coveted for more. Hence you will always be burdened with debts. The river shall flow with water only (and not milk). The mountains of foodstuffs will turn into those of rocks. All the rivers shall flow with water and your houses will be of mud. Kāmadhenu and the Kalpa-tree will come back to my own region." Cursed thus by Brahmā all those Brāhmaṇas imploringly said to the Unborn deity:

82. "O lord, everything that had been given by you has gone off due to your curse. May you be kind enough to assign something for our livelihood".

83. On hearing those words, the sympathetic Brahmā spoke thus to the Brāhmaṇas: "As long as the Moon and the Sun shine, you will be maintaining your livelihood by means of (the earning at the) holy centres.

84. Those meritorious persons who perform Śrāddhas in Gayā will attain Brahmaloka. I will also always be considered worshipped by those who worship you."

85-86. The stomach of the Daitya is overlapped by the mountain Viraja, the righteous. Near the well that forms its

1. The story is repeated in NP. II.44.16-18, AP. I14.36-38.

umbilical cavity, goddess Virajā is stationed. One who offers Piṇḍa etc. shall uplift twenty-one generations. His (the demon's) feet had been made steady by the mountain Mahendra. A man who offers balls of rice there uplifts seven generations.

CHAPTER FORTYFIVE

Gayāmāhātmya (Contd.): The Story of the Śilā

Nārada said:

1. What is the origin of that slab whereby Gayāsura was kept steady and submissive? What is its form? What is its greatness? Please mention its name.

Sanatkumāra said:

2. There was once a highly refulgent person named Dharma. He had mastered all sacred lore. His wife Viśvarūpā was devoted to the service of her husband.

3. A daughter of great qualities and endowed with all the auspicious characteristics like Lakṣmī was born of her to Dharma. She was the chaste girl named Dharmavratā.

4-5. Whatever good qualities there are in the three worlds, were present in her. Dharma searched for a befitting bridegroom to Dharmavratā in all the three worlds, but in vain. Then he told her, "Perform a penance for the sake of attaining a bridegroom". She said, "So be it", and went to the forest.

6. That girl performed a very severe penance which could not be performed by anyone. She subsisted only on the air and spent ten thousand Yugas in that Śveta Kalpa.

7. During the course of his wandering over the earth, the mental son of Brahmā, well known by the name of Marīci, saw that jewel of a girl.

8. To that girl who was endowed with beauty and youth and who was engaged in the greatest penance, Marīci asked, "Tell me who you are and to whom you belong.

9. O timid lady, of excellent vows, you are a fascinating one by this beauty of yours. I am the son of Brahmā, well-known as Marīci. I have mastered the Vedas."

10. On hearing the words of Marīci, the girl replied to the sage, "I am the daughter of Dharma. My name is Dharmavratā. I am endowed with penance.

11. O leading Brāhmaṇa, I am performing this great penance for the wooing of a good husband". Marīci thereupon spoke to Dharmavratā lovingly:

12. "O woman of auspicious rites, by merely looking at me, you will become a great chaste lady. I am roaming day and night on the earth, only with a desire to meet with a chaste lady.

13. If you have become a Pativratā, I shall resort to you Come unto me as your bridegroom. There is no other girl in the world like you, and you will never have another bridegroom equal to me.

14. Hence O Dharmavratā, be my lawfully wedded wife now". Dharmavratā thereupon told the sage, "O sage of good rites, request Dharma (for my hand)."

15. On hearing those words, he went to Dharma. Dharma saw the (prospective) bridegroom like a mass of refulgence. He bowed to him and honoured him with the offer of seat and materials of worship.

16. On being asked "Why have you come ?" Marīci replied to Dharma, "While roaming over the whole earth for the sake of a (marriageable) girl, your excellent daughter has been seen by me. Give that daughter unto me. You will have welfare resulting therefrom."

17. After honouring him with Arghya etc., Dharma said to him, "So be it". He brought Dharmavratā there and gave her to Marīci.

18. He granted him boons as well. He fulfilled the promise made. The Brāhmaṇa (Marīci) took her to his hermitage along with Agnihotra (sacred fire).

19. The sage sported in her company like Viṣṇu with Śrī or Śaṁbhu with Pārvatī or Brahmā with Sarasvatī.

20. Marīci begot of her a hundred sons comparable even

with Viṣṇu. Once Marīci went to the forest for the sake of flowers and fruits and returned (very tired).

21. As he was tired, he told thus to his chaste wife, "After taking food massage my feet, even as I lie down on the couch".

22. Dharmavratā said, "So be it". As the sage lay down on his bed, she rubbed his feet with ghee and began to massage them with eagerness.

23-24. Even as the sage was becoming sleepy Brahmā came to that place. She was placed in a dilemma, "Shall I continue to massage the feet or honour the Jagadguru (the preceptor of the world)." Then deciding to honour him, as he was Guru of Gurus, she stood up.

25. She offered *Arghya*, *Pādya* etc. and worshipped Brahmā. Brahmā took rest on a couch after due worship.

26. In the meantime, the husband got up from his bed. Unable to see Dharmavratā, the Brāhmaṇa became infuriated and cursed her.

27. "Abandoning the massage of my feet and thereby disobeying my behest, you have gone elsewhere. Hence you will be consumed by this fire of curse. Be a slab of stone."

28. On being cursed by her husband, she spoke to Marīci in a great fury, "While you were sleeping, Brahmā, your father and preceptor, arrived here.

29-30. It was your duty to have got up and worshipped your father. O sage, strictly adhering to pious activities (as a wife), I carried out your duty. Hence I am guiltless. Still I have been cursed by you. So I too curse you. O husband, you will have that curse undoubtedly from Mahādeva."

31-32. On seeing her husband agitated, she too became distressed. She went to Prajāpati and bowed to him, as he was lying down. She kindled the fire *Gārhapatya* with fuel and stood in its middle. There she performed a very terrible penance. Similarly Marīci who too had been cursed, performed a terrible penance.

33. Indra and others who were distressed due to the penance of Marīci sought refuge in Hari.

34. They spoke to Hari who was sleeping in the ocean of milk: "O Hari, we are extremely distressed due to the penance

of the chaste lady and the sage. O Keśava, save the three worlds."

35. On hearing the words of Indra and others, Viṣṇu went up to Dharmavratā. In the meantime, Aja (Brahmā) woke up. The Devas including Keśava, spoke to Dharmavratā who was in the middle of the fire:

36. "O chaste lady, who has the capacity to perform penance in the middle of the fire? But that has been achieved by you. It is really a thing that terrifies all worlds.

37. O knower of Dharmas, choose any boon that you desire from us". On hearing the words of Viṣṇu and others, Dharmavratā spoke to the Devas:

38. "I am unable to turn back the curse of my husband even with all my power. Let that curse given by Marīci to me recede."

39-41. On hearing the words of Dharmavratā, the Devas spoke to her again, "O daughter of Dharma, of pious rites, this curse has been given to you by a great sage. It cannot be nullified by Devas and Brāhmaṇas. Hence choose any other boon, so that the Dharma proclaimed by the Vedas will be established in the three worlds, O lady of auspicious vows". On hearing the words of Devas, Dhamavratā spoke to the Devas:

42. "O immortal gods, if you are not able to redeem me from the curse of my husband, please grant me an excellent boon like this.

43. I shall then become a slab of stone which will be the most auspicious and the holiest in the whole of the Cosmic Egg. I shall be more sanctifying than rivers, lakes, Devas etc.

44. I shall be holier than the sages, ascetics, the chief of Devas and others. Let all those Liṅgas in the three worlds, whether manifest or unmanifest, abide for ever on my body in the form of a holy place.

45. Let all the holy centres, the chiefs of the constellations, all the Devas and the Devīs (goddesses) and the sages stand by (on me).

46-47. Brahmā, Viṣṇu and Rudra shall mark their footprints on me. The five fires and Kumāra and others be stationed in their multiforms. The Devas are stationed in their embodied and

unembodied forms as well as through their foot-prints. They are stationed on the earth over the slab in the form of idols, within the dimension of a krośa.

48. All the people will become purified on seeing that slab which is the destroyer of all great sins. The performer of Śraddhas becoming pure, will be authorised in the holy rites and will attain Brahmaloka.

49. Let all those who after taking their baths in all the sacred waters stationed on the rocky slab, perform Tarpaṇa and then the Śrāddha along with the offerings of Piṇḍa attain Brahmaloka.

50-51. Let the visible holy centre of Gadādhara be the most excellent of all excellent holy centres. May those who stay there or die there go to the region of Brahmā. Let the holy centres of Vārāṇasī and Prayāga stay there with the name of Puruṣottama. Let the holy centres named Gaṅgāsāgara stay in the holy spot of Phalgu. The holiest of spots is presided over by Gadādhara. By performing Śrāddha of dead persons, Pitṛs will attain salvation.

52. May *Jarāyujas* (viviparous beings), *Aṇḍajas* (oviparous), *Svedajas* (sweat-born beings) or *Udbhids* (vegetable kingdom) attain the form of Viṣṇu after abandoning their bodies on the slab.

53. Just as all Yajñas become completely accomplished when Hari is worshipped, so also let the Śrāddha, Tarpaṇa and ablution be everlasting here.

54. Let those who perform the Japas of the mantras of the leading Suras on my body become Siddhas and the masters of Siddhis ere long.

55. It is certain that a man who performs Śrāddha etc. uplifts thousand Pitṛs of his family including himself and leads them to Viṣṇuloka, the region of Viṣṇu.

56. O leading Suras, whatever excellent (sacred) rivers there are such as Gaṅgā etc., whatever auspicious eddies there are whether oceans, or important lakes such as Mānasa etc., let them be conducive to salvation of the persons who perform Śrāddhas.

57-60. Let the Devatās go in their embodied forms in some places and in other places let them not go; Viṣṇu is one and

single; but he is glorified by learned men as having three *Mūrtis* (physical forms). Let the sages and all the groups of Gandharvas stand on the slab of stone along with the Devas and all the holy centres. The Śilā (slab of stone) shall be called *Sarvadeva-svarūpa* (having the form of all the Devas). Let it (the (slab of stone) stay as long as the Cosmic Egg lasts. Those who perform Japa and penance on my physical body in the form of Rocky Slab, shall also be permitted to perform Homa in the fire. May it be eternal. Let the Śrāddha be eternal, so also be the Japas, Homas and the penances. Let them stay on me in the form of huge mountain".

61-62. On hearing the words of the chaste lady, the Devas spoke to her, "Undoubtedly whatever has been requested by you shall take place. When you remain steady on the head of Gayāsura we shall stay there in the form of footprints and remain there steadily." After giving the evidence, of having granted the boon, the Devas vanished there itself.

CHAPTER FORTYSIX

Gayāmāhātmya (Contd.) : Śilā-tirtha and Other Sacred Spots

Sanatkumāra said :

1. O Nārada, listen. I shall recount the greatness of the slab of rock, that confers salvation. Devas and the prominent sages sing of the greatness of the slab.

2. That rocky slab situated on the earth, has the forms of Devas. It is highly sanctifying. The wonderful Śilātīrtha[1] is well known in the three worlds.

---

1. Śilā Tīrtha, the same as Muṇḍapṛṣṭha, as the Śilā was placed on the back of the (shaven) head of Gaya (v.12 below, also TSS, p. 337). It has the combined sanctity of itself and that of the sacred head of Gaya (v.8 below). The area of Śilā or the head of Gayāsura is 3 Sq. Kms.

3. On touching it, all the people in the worlds went to Hari's city (Vaikuṇṭha). When the three worlds became void, Yama's city became empty thereby.

4. Accompanied by Indra and others Yama went to Brahmā and reported (to him) the wonderful event, "O Pitāmaha, take back this staff of office as well as the assignment offered to me as Yama (the controller of the world)."

5. Brahmā then said to Yama, "Keep it in your house". Advised by Brahmā, Dharmarāja retained the slab in his house.

6. Yama continued to carry out his duty, viz. the chastisement etc. of the sinners. Thus the weighty slab became well known in the universe.

7. The slab having the forms and features of Devas is on a par with Brahmā, Viṣṇu, lord Maheśvara and Meru, in the whole of the Cosmic Egg.

8. Since it was held (laid) on the head of Gayāsura due to its heaviness, the happy combination of two holy things is the bestower of salvation on Pitṛs.

Sacred Places Connected with Śilā

Part of the Śilā	*Covered by* (Verse Nos.)	*Other details*
Middle (Belly)	Mt.Ādipāla (68)	
Middle Region	Mt. Nāga (26)	
Foot	Mt. Prabhāsa (13)	Its contact with the Phalgu Rāma tīrtha (17).
Protruding	(1) Preta-Śilā (15)	
Toe	(2) Prabhāseśa (14)	
Left Leg	Preta-Parvata (70)	
Left foot	Mt. Abhyudyantaka (42)	
Right-hand side	Mt. Kunda (35-36)	
	Mt. Bhasma Kūṭa (56)	
	Mt. Udyantaka (46)	
Left hand	Mt. Vāditraka (44)	
	Mt. Gṛdhrakūṭa	
Muṇḍapṛṣṭha	The main base of the slab	

Vidyārthi (p.6) in the tabular statement of locational and functional elaboration of the sacred centre at Gayā includes temples of Rāma and Śiva, Yama's sacred centre and the famous tree (of spirits) under Rāma-Śilā (hill-top cluster), and Śiva, Gaṇeśa, Brahma Kuṇḍa and Phalgu under Rāmaśilā (foot-hill cluster) while Pretaśilā, Pretabhavāni, Viṣṇu, Rāma-kuṇḍa, Kāka-bali under Preta Śilā cluster.

9. The unborn deity (Brahmā) performed *Hayamedha* (horse sacrifice) on the combination of the two holy things. On seeing Viṣṇu etc. who came to receive their due shares (in the sacrifice), the slab requested :

10. "All of you take the vow of standing on the slab (for ever) to enable Pitṛs to attain liberation". Saying "So be it" Viṣṇu and other Devas stood on the *Śilā* (the slab of rock).

11. In accordance with their previous promise, Devas stayed on the Śilā in embodied and unembodied forms either through their idols of stone or footprints.

12. Since the *Śilā* was stationed on the top of the tonsured head of the Daitya, it was called Muṇḍapṛṣṭhādri. It is the bestower of Brahmaloka upon Pitṛs.

13. The foot of the *Śilā* is concealed by the mountain Prabhāsa. It is called Prabhāsa because it is illuminated by Bhāskara (the Sun-god).

14. *Śilāṅguṣṭha* (the thumb of the *Śilā*) has come out of Prabhāsa by piercing through it. The lord presiding over *Aṅguṣṭha* section is glorified as Prabhāseśa.

15. A portion of the *Śilāṅguṣṭha* is remembered as *Pretaśilā* (the Rock of the Dead). If Piṇḍas are offered to the dead on this rock, the dead man becomes free from the state of a goblin.

16. A devotee should perform his ablution at the place where the Prabhāsa mountain meets the great river. Rāma had his bath here in the company of the gentle lady (i.e. Sītā). Hence this is remembered as 'Rāmatīrtha'.

17. Here Rāma was requested by the great river, "O Rāma, take your bath (in my waters)." Since then it became well known in the three worlds as 'Rāmatīrtha'.

18. Mantra—"Let all those evil sins committed by me in my hundred and odd former births, become destroyed due to my ablution in Rāmatīrtha."

19. A man who takes his bath repeating this Mantra and performs Śrāddha and offers Piṇḍas in Rāmatīrtha, goes to Viṣṇuloka. (When the great river requested him), Rāma, the elder brother of Bharata, said, "So be it" and stayed here accompanied by Sītā.

20. If a devotee repeats this Mantra—"O Rāma, O

Rāma of mighty long arms, O the bestower of fearlessness on Devas, I bow unto you, the lord Devas. Let my sin become destroyed":

21. If the devotee takes his bath repeating this Mantra and performs the *Śrāddha* along with the offering of *Piṇḍas*, his Pitṛs become released from the state of a ghost and attain *Pitṛtva* (the state of Pitṛhood).

22. Mantra— "O lord of Devas, you are the waters. You are the lord of the luminaries. O lord, destroy my sins committed mentally, verbally and physically".

23. After bowing to the lord of Prabhāsa, one should go unto the refulgent Śiva. After making obeisance to Śaṁbhu, one should perform the oblation to Yama.

24-25. When Rāma had gone to the forest, Bharata came to this mountain and performed the offerings of Piṇḍa etc. to the Pitṛs. The lord (Bharata) installed the idols of Rāma, Sītā, Lakṣmaṇa and the sages. In the holy hermitage of Bharata, the foot-print of Mataṅga is seen by all men. It is always surrounded by highly meritorious men.

26. It is established as a model for people. It contains the essentials of piety. One who performs *Śrāddha* in *Mataṅga-pāda* enables all the Pitṛs to cross the ocean of existence (*saṁsāra*).

27. A man who takes bath in Rāmatīrtha and worships Sītā and bows down to Rāmeśvara is not reborn as an embodied being.

28. The middle region of the *Śilā* is again covered by a mountain. It was urged by Dharmarāja by saying "*Na Gaccha*— Do not go". Hence it is called *Naga* (mountain).

29. "Yamarāja and Dharmarāja attempted to make (Gayāsura) steady. I give *Bali* (oblation) unto them for the sake of liberation of (my) ancestors.

30. There are two dogs of dark and variegated colour. They are born of the family of Vaivasvata (i.e. of Yama). I am giving *Bali* unto them. May they refrain from violence.

31. May the crows stationed in east, west, north-west-south and south-west accept the balls of rice offered by me (on the ground).

32. O strong one, you are Yama; you are Yama's messenger. You are a crow. Eating the oblations, destroy the sins committed during the seven births."

33. When Rāma went to the forest, Bharata came to this mountain. After offering the Piṇḍas etc. to the Pitṛs, Rāmeśa was installed by him here.

34. After the bath and the worship of Rāmeśa accompanied by Rāma and Sītā, one should perform *Śrāddha* with the offerings of *Piṇḍas*. Such a pious soul shall go to Viṣṇu's abode along with the Pitṛs and hundreds of the members of his family.

35-36. On the right-hand side of the *Śilā*, the Kuṇḍaparvata (mountain) is established. Various deities are installed there. Timirāditya, Īśāna, Bharga—these are the forms of Maheśvara. The Vahni, two Varuṇas and the four Rudras yield liberation unto the Pitṛs. After going to the hermitage of Bharata, the devotee should bow to them and worship them.

37. He is liberated from all major sins as well as minor ones along with his Pitṛs. O celestial sage, a man can take bath anywhere in the hermitage of Bharata. If he performs a *Śrāddha* etc. the fruit thereof is not lost even after a Kalpa.

38. Really the *Śrāddha* performed anywhere in Gayā is never perishing. Still they say that the Japas, Homas and penances and anything offered (as religious gift) at Bharata's hermitage are of infinite nature.

39. There are four idols of Ravi (the Sun-god) in the forms of the four Yugas. On being seen, touched and worshipped, they bestow salvation on the Pitṛs.

40. There are two deities, viz. Muktivāmana and Tāraka Brahman. These deities are the boats for those who are overwhelmed by the ocean of worldly existence. Brahman is *Tāraka* (that which enables one to cross the ocean of Saṁsāra) of all people dead and alive.

41. He who sees Trivikrama, Puruṣottama and Brahmā becomes a pious soul and attains the greatest goal along with the Pitṛs.

42. At the left foot of the *Śilā* there is the mountain Abhyudyantaka established. A devotee who offers Piṇḍas there, leads his Pitṛs to Brahmapura.

43. Brahmā performed his sacrifice along with Suras near the Naimiṣa forest. That Tīrtha is called *Mukhyatirtha* (the chief of holy waters). Devas are stationed at its feet.

44. O Nārada, the excellent among the sages, whatever inauspicious deeds there may be, perish in the three *Padas* (spots) in those holy centres.

45. The Naimiṣa forest is holy and resorted to by meritorious persons such as Vyāsa, Śuka, Paila, Kaṇva, Vedhas, Śiva, Hari.

46. By their mere sight, a man is liberated from all sins. On the right-hand side of the *Śilā*, there is the Udyantaka mountain.

Some variants (*Pāṭhāntara Verses*)—*additional verses after verse* 46.

1-2. This mountain is established. One who offers Piṇḍas there leads Pitṛs to the city of god Brahmā. Kuṇḍa and Udyantaka were created by him by means of his penance. Brahmā stayed there along with Sāvitrī and Kumāra (i.e. Sanatkumāra).

3. Hāhā and Hūhū and the others made the sound of music. The mountains Kuṇḍa and Udyantaka were full of songs and the sound of musical instruments.

4. It is here that the holy sage Agastya performed an austere penance. From Brahmā, he received the boon of greatness rarely achieved on the earth. He secured Lopāmudrā as his wife and the great goal (Mokṣa) to his Pitṛs.

5. At midday the devotees should take their bath and worship Sāvitrī. The Brāhmaṇa will become a master of the Vedas and very rich for a crore of births (?)

6. By taking ablution in the Agastya Pada and by offering Piṇḍas there, one becomes a pious soul and attains Brahmaloka along with the Pitṛs. He is worshipped even by the heaven-dwellers.

7. A man who enters Brahmayoni and comes out attains the greatest Brahman. He is liberated from the miseries of wombs (i.e. rebirth).

8. A man who bows to Gayākumāra attains Brāhmaṇa-hood. One who performs ablution in Somakuṇḍa leads the Pitṛs to Somaloka (Lunar world).

9. The oblation to the crows at the *Kākaśilā* (the slab of crows) is conducive to freedom from indebtedness. After bowing to Svargadvāreśvara, one attains Brahmapura through heaven.

10. One who offers Piṇḍas at Vyomagaṅgā becomes free from impurities and leads the Pitṛs to heaven. There is a heap of *Bhasma* at the right-hand side of the *Śilā*. O Nārada, the devotee should take bath with this *Bhasma* from the mountain called *Bhasmakūṭādri*.

11. Prapitāmaha (Brahmā) is stationed on the *Vaṭa* as Vaṭeśvara (Lord of the holy banyan tree). One who offers Piṇḍas at the holy Mataṅgapada leads the Pitṛs to heaven.

12-13. Ahead of it is Rukmiṇī Kuṇḍa and to the west is the river Kapilā. Kapileśa is on the banks of the river. On the new moon day, one should take bath in Kapilā and worship Kapileśa. If he performs *Śrāddha* in Māheśīkuṇḍa, he shall attain heaven.

14-15. Gaurī, under the name of Maṅgalā there, grants all types of prosperity and glory. Janārdana is near the *Bhasmakūṭa*. One who offers Piṇḍas in his hand, with mantras, if for oneself and without gingelly seeds, in the left hand, if for others and mixed with curds for those who are alive—all these attain Viṣṇu-loka.

16. Mantra—"O Janārdana, this Piṇḍa is offered by me in your hand; give it unto him who dies in Gayāśīrṣa".

17. Mantra—"This Piṇḍa has been given, O Janārdana, in your hand. At Gayāśīrṣa this must be given to me when I am dead".

18-19. O Janārdana, obeisance unto you. Hail to you of the form of the Pitṛs. O Lord of Pitṛs, obeisance to you. Bow to you, O cause of salvation, O Janārdana, O lord of Lakṣmī, you assume the form of the Pitṛs at Gayā yourself. Obeisance be to you, O bestower of salvation on the Pitṛs.

20. After meditating on Puṇḍarīkākṣa (Viṣṇu) one becomes released from the three forms of indebtedness. Certainly people attain heaven after worshipping Puṇḍarīkākṣa.

21. Bhīma knelt on his left knee and bowed to Janārdana. After performing *Śrāddha* along with the offerings of Piṇḍa, he attained Viṣṇuloka along with his brothers.

22-24. On the right foot of the *Śilā*, the mountain Pretakūṭa[1] is held by Dharmarāja with both of his feet. He kicked it off with his feet on account of the weight of sins. In the forest of *Kara-grahaṇa*, many have stayed behind (unliberated) in the form of departed souls (ghosts). They are the cause of obstacles. The Tīrtha confers salvation on the Pitṛs through the performance of Śrāddha etc.

25. *Pretakūṭa* attained sacredness due to the contact of the *Śilā*. Devas are stationed in the form of footprints on *Pretakūṭa*. After performing Śrāddha etc. there, one should get the Pitṛs released from ghost-hood.

26. O Brāhmaṇa, those who have the terrible forms of a ghost near the Śilā wander over the earth and in Yama's world.

27. On the holy head of Gayāsura which is devoid of ghosts etc., Brahmā and other Devas are stationed and he attains sacredness.

28. Among Kīkaṭas (southern Magadha) Gayā is the holiest. Rājavana and Rājagṛha are holy. The hermitage of Cyavana is holy. The river is many times holy (than the rest).

29. Hemadaṇḍa and the mountain Hemakūṭa are in Vaikuṇṭha. One who performs Śrāddha and offers Piṇḍas etc. there leads the Pitṛs to Brahmapura.

30. On the right foot of the Śilā, the mountain *Gṛdhrakūṭa* is held by Dharmarāja in order to stabilise (Gaya). It is very holy.

31-32. Sages performed their penance there in the form of Gṛdhras (vultures) and attained liberation. Hence this is called Gṛdhrakūṭa. Gṛdhreśvara is stationed there. A man who sees Gṛdhreśvara attains Śambhu's region. After bowing down to Gṛdhravaṭa one shall achieve one's desire and attain heaven.

---

1. Pretakūṭa, Gṛdhrakūṭa, Bhasmakūṭa etc. are the tops of hillocks near Gayā.

33. He who offers Piṇḍas in the Gṛdhraguhā (vulture-cave) attains Śivaloka. There is the Māheśvarī Dhārā (the current of Maheśvara). He who offers Piṇḍas there, leads the Pitṛs to heaven.

34. There is a lake called Mūlakṣetra. He who offers Piṇḍas there, attains Brahmaloka. After visiting Śiva he attains freedom from indebtedness and salvation from sins. He attains Śiva himself after visualizing Śiva.

35. The middle of the *Śilā* (the belly portion) is overlapped (covered) by the mountain Ādipāla. It is here that Vighneśa, the destroyer of obstacles, stands in the form of an elephant. He who offers Piṇḍas at the umbilical region (of the god) leads his Pitṛs to Brahmapura.

36. On the hips (i.e. ridges) of the mountain Muṇḍapṛṣṭha, there was a big forest of Devadāru trees. One shall destroy one's sins by seeing the mountain Aravinda on Muṇḍapṛṣṭha.

37. A certain sage performed penance here in the form of a *Krauñca* (heron). The mountain was marked by his feet. Hence it is called *Krauñcapāda*.

38. One who takes bath there in the water reservoir, leads three generations to heaven. Lakṣmīśa (Viṣṇu) is stationed on the Śilā in the manifest and unmanifest forms along with Devas. Hence the *Śilā* is full of Devas.

[End of Addl. Verses]

47. That mountain was brought by the noble-souled Agastya. Brahmā and Hara performed a fierce penance there.

48. There is the excellent Kuṇḍa (Pool) of Agastya which is of a very rare excellence in the three worlds. It was here that the eight sages achieved *Siddhi* after performing penance. They attained final beatitude. After bowing to the eight sages in the Kuṇḍa, the pilgrim will be able to lead the Pitṛs to Brahmā's city.

49. O celestial sage, an auspicious prominent mountain was established on the left hand of the *Śilā*. It is always resounding with the sounds of musical instruments and divine symphony. It is called mountain *Vāditraka*.

50. Even today Vidyādharas, accompanied by hosts of Gandharvas and Apsaras-s sing divine songs in chorus.

51. Mohana, Sunītha, Śailūja, Mohanottama, Parvata,

Nārada, Dhyānī, Saṅgītī, Puṣpadantaka, Hāhā, Hūhū and others perform musical concert.

52. Similarly the Gandharva named Citraratha surrounded by all the Gandharvas, sings sweet songs of great festivities on the mountain.

53. Hence that mountain is resorted to by Devas for ever even today. Hara, the lord of Devas, is desirous of applying *Bhasma* all over the body like an unguent.

54. Rudra accompanied by Pārvatī rejoices on that mountain resonant with music. He is worshipped as he is the greatest goal of the Pitṛs. He should be meditated upon.

55. The greatest Ātman (Deity) in Gayā is either the lord of the cows or Gadādhara (the wielder of the mace). O sage, thanks to the worship of Rudra, the Māyā pertaining to Viṣṇu becomes quelled.

56. On the right-hand side of the *Śilā*, the mountain Bhasmakūṭa is held by Dharmarāja. Agastya stays there with his wife.

57-58. One who takes bath at the spot of Agastya and offers Piṇḍas, goes to Brahmaloka. It was from Brahmā that he secured the excellent boon of greatness in the world, Lopāmudrā as wife and the highest goal (liberation) to his forefathers. There, on seeing Agastyeśvara, one is absolved of the sin of Brāhmaṇa-slaughter.

59. On seeing Agastya along with his wife, one leads the Pitṛs to Brahmapura. Daṇḍin performed a penance on the mountain south of Sītādri.

60-61. There is a *Vaṭa* (banyan tree) called Vaṭeśvara. Prapitāmaha (god Brahmā) is stationed there. Beyond that is Rukmiṇīkuṇḍa. To the west of it is the river Kapilā. Kapileśa is on the banks of the river. When the New Moon and Monday coincide with each other, a devout man must take bath in Kapilā and worship the lord of Kapilā. If after that, Śrāddha is performed and Piṇḍas are offered the Pitṛs shall attain salvation.

62. There is a current of fire coming from the excellent mountain. There is the pool called Sārasvata Kuṇḍa. It has been created by Sarasvatī.

63. Lord Śukra stayed there with his sons Śaṇḍa, Amarka and others. O excellent sage, a man who performs Śrāddha and offers Piṇḍa etc. in the various spots at the feet of the eminent sages, enables the Pitṛs to cross (the ocean of worldly existence).

64. On the left-hand side of the *Śilā* there stands the mountain Gṛdhrakūṭa. The great sages assuming the form of cranes performed penance there and became Siddhas.

65. Hence the mountain is called Gṛdhrakūṭa. The deity Gṛdhreśvara is stationed there. A man who visits and bows to Gṛdhreśvara shall achieve the region of Śaṁbhu.

66. He who offers Piṇḍas on Gṛdhrakūṭa and in the cave, attains Śivaloka. One who bows to the *Vaṭa* (the banyan tree) on Gṛdhrakūṭa attains all his desires and goes to heaven.

67. On seeing Śiva, one attains freedom from indebtedness, release from sins, and goes unto Śiva. There is a Śūlakṣetra (shrine of the trident) there. One who offers Piṇḍas there, leads the Pitṛs to heaven.

68. The centre of the Śilā is overlapped by the mountain Ādipāla. Vighneśa, the destroyer of obstacles, stays there is the form of an elephant. On visiting him a devotee is freed from obstacles. He leads the Pitṛs to Brahmapura.

69. There was a forest of Devadāru trees on the ridge of the mountain Muṇḍaprṣṭha. After visiting the mountains Muṇḍaprṣṭha and Aravindādri, one quells all sins. He who offers Piṇḍas in the umbilical region of Gayā called Suṣumnā (like the nerve Suṣumnā in human body) leads his Pitṛs to heaven.

70. On the left leg of the *Śilā*, the mountain Pretaparvata was established by Dharmarāja. The mountain is called Pretaśilā because of its impurity due to sins.

71. The mountain was kicked off to a great distance. Pretakūṭa was freed from sins and attained sanctity due to the contact with the Śilā.

72. There is a pool called Pretakuṇḍa there. Devas are stationed at its foot. Performing Śrāddha etc. in the Kuṇḍa, one shall relieve the Pitṛs of goblinhood.

73. There are many of the ghosts staying separately and causing obstacles to those men who perform Śrāddha etc. for the sake of the liberation of Pitṛs. The ghosts assume the form of archers and catch hold of the hands (of the pilgrims).

74. There is a rock on Muṇḍapṛṣṭha where Mahādeva stays. On seeing it all people become relieved of heinous and lesser sins.

75. Gayāśiras is holy and devoid of all sins. It is devoid of ghosts etc. Hence it is highly sanctifying and excellent.

76. In the Kīkaṭa land (i. e. the territories comprising southern Bihar) Gayā is the holiest centre. The Rājagṛha forest is also holy. The hermitage of Cyavana is another holy spot. The river Punaḥpunā (?) is also holy.

77. There are other holy spots, viz. Vaikuṇṭha, Lohadaṇḍa, Gṛdhrakūṭa and Sonaka. By performing *Śrāddha* etc. here, a pilgrim leads all the Pitṛs to Brahmapura.

78. Assuming the form of a heron, a sage performed penance on the ridge of Muṇḍapṛṣṭha. Since the mountain is marked by the foot-prints of the heron, it is remembered as Krauñcapāda.

79. One who takes bath in the water reservoir there, shall lead the entire family to heaven. An oblation offered to crows on the rock Kākaśilā, is conducive to relief from indebtedness.

80. The two sages Lomaśa and Lomaharṣaṇa performed a great penance on the ridge of Muṇḍapṛṣṭha. Both of them attained Siddhi of the highest magnitude.

81-85. Many excellent rivers had been invoked by Lomaśa[1], viz. Mahānadī, Śarāvatī, Vetravatī, Candrabhāgā, Sarasvatī, Kāverī, Sindhuvīrā, the excellent river Candana, Vāsiṣṭhī, Sarayū, Gaṅgā, Yamunā, Gaṇḍakī, Indirā, Mahāvaitaraṇī, Nikṣarā that originates from heaven, Alakanandā, the northern river called Kanakā, Kauśikī, Brahmadā, all these are the absolvers of everyone's sin. The two rivers Kṛṣṇavalvā and Carmavatī are the bestowers of salvation. They were called the most excellent of all rivers by Lomaharṣa daringly. O excellent sage, by means of the power of his penance, Narmadā also was invoked by him. He who takes bath in any of these rivers and offers Piṇḍas leads his Pitṛs to heaven.

1. Like other Sthala-purāṇas, this text claims all important rivers in India to be present at Gayā. Small streams and streamlets are supposed to represent big rivers like Gaṅgā, Yamunā, Kāveri etc.

86. A man who enters the holy spot Brahmayoni and comes out of it, attains the greatest Brahman freed from the distress of wombs (i.e. re-birth).

87. A man who bathes in the Puṣkariṇī (holy pond) Nikṣarā and performs Śrāddha etc. on the divine Krauñcapada regularly for three days, leads his Pitṛs even if they were Pañcapāpins (those guilty of the five heinous sins) to heaven.

88. Janārdana stays in *Bhasmakūṭa*. He who offers Piṇḍas in his hands whether for himself or for others—if it is for one's own self it must be without gingelly seeds (and be offered) with the sacred thread in the *Savya* (hanging from the left shoulder) position; and if for those who are alive, it must be mixed with curds—all these go to Viṣṇuloka (Vaikuṇṭha).

89. Mantra: "O Janārdana, the Piṇḍa that I offer in your hand, may please be given by you to that person for whom I have given it to thee now. It be given to him after he is dead, O lord."

90. Mantra: "O Janārdana, this Piṇḍa is given into your hand by me. When I reach the end of my time (when I am dead) this must be given to me at Gayāśiras.[1]

91. O Janārdana, obeisance to you. Bow to you, granter of liberation to the Pitṛs. O lord of Pitṛs, obeisance to you. Hail to you in the form of Pitṛs."

92. In Gayā, Janārdana assumed the form of Pitṛs himself. On visiting that Puṇḍarīkākṣa (lotus-eyed god Viṣṇu) one is released from three-fold indebtedness.

93. "O Puṇḍarīkākṣa, obeisance to you, O releaser from the three-fold indebtedness. O Lakṣmīkānta (Lord of Lakṣmī), obeisance to you, be the granter of liberation to the Pitṛs."

94. Kneeling on his left knee, Bhīma bowed to Janārdana. After performing the *Śrāddha* along with the offerings of *Piṇḍas*, he attained Brahmaloka in the company of his brothers. He became a pious soul and uplifted a hundred forefathers in his family.

---

1. Cf. NP. II.47.63b-65.

95. On the *Śilā*, the lord of Lakṣmī stays both in the manifest form as well as in the unmanifest form, along with Devas. Hence the *Śilā* is *Devamayī* (full of Devas).

CHAPTER FORTYSEVEN

Gayāmāhātmya (Contd.) : The Glory of Ādigadādhara

Nārada enquired:

1. How did the primordial Gadādhara (wielder of the mace) stay in the manifest form ? How did he stay both as manifest and unmanifest ?

2. How did the mace (Gadā) originate and how did he come to be known as Ādigadādhara ? How did the Gadālola spot become so (sanctifying) as to wipe off all sins.

Sanatkumāra replied:

3. There was an Asura named Gada whose body was very hard and adamantine. By performing a very terrible penance he secured boons from Brahmā. When he was requested, he gave up to Brahmā the bones of his body which is very difficult to part with.

4. Urged by Brahmā, Viśvakarmā made the wonderful club (out of it). He turned the bone of the demon in the lathe that could crush even *Vajra* (thunderbolt) and kept it in the heaven itself.

5. After a great deal of time, in the Svāyaṁbhuva Manvantara, the demon Heti, the son of Brahmā, performed a very terrible penance.*

6-7. For a hundred thousand divine years he subsisted only on the air. Then looking up, he stood on his toes with hands raised up. Then he stood on a single foot for a long time taking in only air or dry leaves. Brahmā and others were pleased by

*. For the Story of Heti cf AP. 114.26-27 and NP. II (i.e. uttara) 47.9-16.

his penance. He chose the boons from them, the bestowers of the boons.

8. "I should become very mighty. I cannot be killed by Devas, Daityas, or human beings with any kind of *Śastra* or *Astra* (ordinary weapons and miraculous missiles). I should not be killed by the discus and other weapons of Kṛṣṇa (Viṣṇu), Īśāna and others".

9. Saying "So be it", they vanished. Heti conquered Devas and began to rule as Indra. Brahmā, Hara and others became afraid (of him).

10. They sought refuge in Hari. They told him, "Kill Heti". Hari said to them, "O Suras, this Heti cannot be killed by Devas or Asuras.

11. Give a great weapon unto me whereby I can kill that Heti". When told thus, Devas gave the (bone) club to Hari.

12. At the outset he held that (bone) club, so he was called, "Gadādhara" by Devas. After striking Heti with his (bone) club, he went to heaven along with Devas.

13. In order to steady the rocky slab of Gayāsuraśiras, he went there armed with this Gadā to stabilise the Śilā. Hence he is called Ādigadādhara.[1]

14-17. Ādigadādhara is manifest in the form of *Śilās*[2] (rocky slabs and mountains). Through Muṇḍapṛṣṭha mountain, Prabhāsa mountain, the mountains Udyanta, Gītanāda, Bhasmakūṭa, Gṛdhrakūṭa, Pretakūṭa, Ādipāla and Aravindaka, Pañcaloka, Saptaloka, Vaikuṇṭha, Lohadaṇḍaka, Krauñcapāda, Akṣayavaṭa, Phalgutīrtha, Madhuśravā, Dadhikulyā, Madhukulyā, the great river Devikā and Vaitaraṇī etc. Ādigadādhara becomes manifest.

---

1. This etymology does not explain the term '*Ādi*' in Ādigadādhara.

2. Near Gayā there is a chain of sacred but rocky hillocks and their tops are called Bhasmakūṭa, Gṛdhrakūṭa etc. Gayāśiras consists of this chain of hillocks extending to about two miles.

This spot was well-known before the Buddha, as we find the record of the Buddha's visit to Gayāsisa (Pali for Gayāsīrṣa) in the *Aṅguttara Nikāya* Vol. IV, p. 302.

18-20. The following are manifest-cum-unmanifest[1]: Viṣṇu's Pada (footprint), Rudrapada, the excellent Pada of Brahman, Kāśyapa's Pada, which is divine as well as wherein two hands have come out, the *Padas* of the five fires, the prominent *Padas* of Indra and Agastya and the *Padas* of Ravi, Kārtikeya, Krauñca and Mataṅga. In all the Liṅgas the primordial Gadādhara, the glorious and manifest Gadādhara, abides in manifest-cum-unmanifest form.

21-25. The primordial Gadādhara is stationed[2] as Gāyatrī, Sāvitrī, Sandhyā, Sarasvatī, Gayāditya, Uttarārka, Dakṣiṇārka, Naimiṣa, Śvetārka, Gaṇanātha, the eight Vasus, the leading sages, the eleven Rudras, the Seven Sages, Somanātha, Siddheśa, Kapardīśa, Vināyaka, Nārāyaṇa, Mahālakṣmī, Brahmā, Śrīpuruṣottama, Mārkaṇḍeyeśa, Kautīśa, Aṅgireśa, Pitāmaha, Janārdana, Maṅgalā, the excellent Puṇḍarīkākṣa etc. (these are the various shrines and deities in Gayā). When the Rākṣasa Heti was killed Viṣṇu went back to his city.

26. When the Asura was rendered motionless by Brahmā in the company of Rudra and others, Vedhas (god Brahmā) who was overjoyed eulogised Ādyagadāpāṇi (the primordial wielder of the club) (as follows):

Brahmā said:

27. I bow unto Gadādhara who is the bestower of boons, from whom Times (Death's) blemishes have receded, who is stationed in Gayā, whose attributes are well known, who possesses many attributes, who is present in the cavity (of the heart), who is in the white-coloured house of the excellent mountain and who is worshipped by all the Gaṇas (groups).

28. I bow unto Gadādhara, who bestows prosperity on the day, who grants prosperity on the hosts of Devas, who grants royal glory even to Bhava (Śiva), whose glory tears down Daityas, who bestows glory in the Kali age and whose glory

---

1. The various *Padas* (footprints) of gods and sages at which Piṇḍas are to be offered are the manifest-cum-unmanifest forms of Ādigadādhara. The idols are the manifest forms, unmanifest in Phalgu (TSS 365).

2. These are various deities and shrines at Gayā. The presence of Gadādhara is thus claimed everywhere in Gayā.

suppresses the impurities of the Kali age. He bestows affluence on those who seek refuge.

29. I bow unto him who is both steady and unsteady, who is eulogised regularly by masterly persons, who possesses wonderfully desirable features, who is very firm, who is both present and not present in the traditions, who presides over flourishing persons, who cannot be approached by those who commit sins, who has his own abode and whose spiritual lineage and eulogy is great.

30. I perpetually bow to the supreme eternal Lord Hari, who is incorporeal, who has no sense organs, who has no birth, who is decorated on *Sūryavedi*[1] (altar of the Sun), to Gadādhara who is devoid of sound and face.

31. I bow unto Gadādhara who is present in the heart, who is faster than the mind, who is beyond the reach of the mind, who is always without a second, who is eulogised by learned men in the Vedāntas, who is *Cidātmaka* (pure consciousness) and who is beyond the causes present in Kali.

Sanatkumāra said:

32. The primordial wielder of the club, on being eulogised thus by Brahmā along with Devas said, "You choose the boon" and Brahmā spoke to him :

33. "We will not stay on the rock of divine nature and features without you. We will stay here for ever along with you who have the manifest form."

34. "So be it", said Gadādhara and stayed there along with Śrī for the protection of the worlds and for the salvation of the people. The manifest form Puṇḍarīkākṣa (Viṣṇu) is well known as Janārdana.

35. The primordial and eternal form that is incomprehensible even to the Vedas, is very clear and manifest in the Śvetakalpa, will become unmanifest in the Vārāhakalpa although it had become manifest before.

36. There is no doubt in this that he will be clearly manifest in Gayāśiras for the emancipation of the worlds and the protection of the Devas.

1. Refers to the sacred cluster of the Sūrya temple—Vidyarthi p. 6.

37. Those who visit lord Ādigadādhara and pray to him devoutly, will become free from the ailments of leprosy etc. and will attain Hari's abode.

38. Those who regularly and devoutly visit lord Ādigadādhara will attain wealth, foodgrain, longevity and good health.

39. Men who bow unto Ādigadādhara with great devotion and faith achieve good qualities, fame and happiness, wives, sons and grandsons. They attain Brahmapura. They will enjoy the fruits of a heap of meritorious action.

40. By offering scents, one will be rich in fragrance; by offering flowers, he attains good fortune; by offering sweet incense, he attains a kingdom and illumination through lamps.

41. By gifting flags, he becomes free from sins; by undertaking pilgrimage, he attains Brahmaloka. He who performs a Śrāddha and offers Piṇḍas, leads his Pitṛs to Viṣṇu.

42. Those who bow to Ādigadādhara with great faith and eulogise him and worship him, lead their Pitṛs to Mādhava, Even Śiva eulogised Ādigadādhara with great pleasure.

Śiva said :

43. I bow to Ādigadādhara who though unmanifest, becomes manifest in the form of Muṇḍapṛṣṭha etc. and the holy centre Phalgutīrtha etc.

44. I bow down to Ādigadādhara who is both manifest and unmanifest in the forms of Padas and Mukhaliṅgas etc.

45. I bow down to Ādigadādhara who is born naturally on Muṇḍapṛṣṭha and who is of unmanifest nature in the form of Janārdana.

46. I bow down to Gadādhara who is stationed in the Śilā of divine features, who is worshipped by Brahmā and other Suras and who is honoured by Devas.

47. I bow down to Ādigadādhara on seeing, touching, worshipping and bowing down to whom people attain Brahmaloka.

48. I bow down to Ādigadādhara who is the sole cause of *Mahat* etc. that is manifest and who is of the unmanifest form.

49. I bow down to Ādigadādhara who is devoid of physical body, sense organs, mind, intellect, vital airs and ego and who is free from wakeful and dreaming states.

50. I bow down to Ādigadādhara who is free from the eternal and the non-eternal (state), who is truth, bliss and the unchanging state, the fourth one, the luminous Ātman.

Sanatkumāra said :

51. Eulogised thus by Maheśa, Ādigadādhara became delighted. That lord stationed himself on the slab along with Brahmā and other Devas.

52. Those who eulogise and worship Lord Ādigadādhara who is stationed on the mountain Muṇḍapṛṣṭha shall attain Brahmaloka.

53. He who seeks piety shall attain piety; he who seeks love shall secure love and he who seeks salvation shall get salvation.

54. Even a barren lady gets a son who will be a master of Vedas and their Aṅgas (ancillaries). A king attains victory; a Śūdra too shall attain happiness.

55. By worshipping Ādigadādhara, a person who seeks sons gets sons. Everything that is desired by the mind is obtained through worship etc. of Hari.

CHAPTER FORTYEIGHT

Procedure of the Pilgrimage to Gayā

Sanatkumāra said :

1. O Nārada, listen. I shall recount the (procedure of) pilgrimage to Gayā which yields salvation. Redemption for those who perform Śrāddha has been sung by Brahmā earlier.

2-4. If one makes preparations for going to Gayā,[1] one should duly perform Śrāddha and circumambulate the village, dressed only in loin cloth like a pilgrim. He should then go to the next village and partake of the remainder of the Śrād-

1. Verses 2-5 deal with preliminaries before starting on pilgrimage to Gayā.

dha. Thereafter, he should go on foot everyday. He must avoid taking monetary gifts. He who abstains from taking monetary gifts, who is contented, who is invariably pure and who is devoid of arrogance enjoys the fruit of the pilgrimage to the holy centres.

5. He whose hands and feet are controlled, the mind is restrained and who possesses learning, penance and fame, attains the fruit of the pilgrimage to the holy centre.

6. At the entrance to Gayā to the east is the great river Phalgu. After digging upwater (in the river bed), he should take his bath in the pure water.[1]

7. After performing the Tarpaṇa of Devas and others and after performing the Śrāddha in accordance with the injunctions, one should recite the Vedic passage belonging to one's own branch but need not perform *Arghyapradāna* (offering of *Arghya*) and Āvāhana (invocation).

8. On the next day he should with all (bodily and mental) purity go to Pretaparvata.[2] The intelligent pilgrim should thereafter take bath in Brahmakuṇḍa and perform Tarpaṇa of Devas and others.

9. With all purity, he should perform the Śrāddha for those who are Sapiṇḍas (having the similar Piṇḍas i.e. near kinsmen) on the Pretaparvata. The intelligent pilgrim should face the southern direction and wear the sacred thread as *Prācīnāvīti* (from the right shoulder across the chest and passed under the left arm.)

10-12. "The fire with Kavyabāla (?), Soma, Yama, Aryamā, the Pitṛ-god, like Agniṣvāttas, the Barhiṣads and the Somapās may (please) come; you are the deities of the Pitṛs. O blessed deities, my Pitṛs are protected by you. Those kindred relations born in the family are to be offered the ball of rice. I

---

1. Verses 6-7 deal with the 1st day of the Yātrā. Vā.P. prescribes only bath in Phalgu, Śrāddha and recitation of one's Veda. TSS. (p.352) prescribes visit to Pretaśilā and Śrāddha on that very day after Śrāddha at Phalgu.

2. The rites on the 2nd day: Visit to Pretaparvata, bath in Brahmakuṇḍa, Śrāddha, offering of Piṇḍas first to one's paternal anscetors (vv. 23-25) and to other relatives—a long list of which is given in vv.33-55. The list shows the breadth of outlook of the ancients.

have come to Gayā for that purpose. Let them all attain perpetual contentment by means of this Śrāddha."

13-14. After saying this and performing Ācamana, the pilgrim should perform Prāṇāyāma with effort, in order to obtain Brahmaloka which is devoid of *Punarāvṛtti* (a return to Saṁsāra again). After performing the Śrāddha duly in this manner, he, should invoke the Pitṛs and worship them with the mantras. Then he should offer the balls of rice.

15-16. In the holy centre, on the Pretaśilā etc. the place must first be washed with *Pañcagavya* separately while their *mantras* are being recited. Then the deities must be worshipped with offerings of *Caru* soaked in ghee. So long as the gingelly seeds are taken by the pilgrim in the holy rites of the Pitṛs, Asuras run off from the place of holy rites like deer afraid of lion.

17. The Śrāddha of the mother[1] should be performed separately during the Aṣṭakas (i.e. the 8th day of the three months on which the Pitṛs are to be propitiated), during the Vṛddhi (increase) days and on the day of the death at Gayā. On other occasions the Śrāddha should be performed along with that of her husband (i.e. one's father).

18. During Vṛddhi Śrāddha, that of the mother should be performed first. But at Gayā that of the father should be performed first. The Śrāddha is begun with the offerings of *Pādya* at the outset and the proper laying of the Kuśa grass with the tips pointing to the south to the father etc. The remaining part of the Śrāddha is to be performed as mentioned in the respective *Gṛhya Sūtras*.

19. In the case of Sapiṇḍas, the Darbha grass is duly spread and the water with gingelly seeds is offered once and the Śrāddha is performed on their southern side.

20. The water libation is offered with the sacred water of the Pitṛs holding it in the hollow of one's palms. He should then offer the *Akṣayya* (inexhaustible) Piṇḍa with a fistful of powdered fried grain. The other kinsmen are then to be invoked in the Kuśa grass by means of the waters with gingelly seeds.

1. The special Śrāddha for one's mother is prescribed during the Aṣṭakas and in Vṛddhi Śrāddha.

21. May all those Devas, sages, Pitṛs and human beings, mothers and maternal grandfathers and others beginning with Brahmā and ending with a blade of grass, be propitiated by this water libation.

22. May this be the water libation along with gingelly seeds to all those crores of past (members of) families, residing in the seven continents beginning with Brahmā and ending with the earth.

23-24. A ball of rice has been offered by me to all these: father, grandfather, great-grandfather, mother, grandmother, great-grandmother, maternal grandfather, his father and his grandfather. May that Piṇḍa be of everlasting benefit.

25-27. At Gayāśiras the Piṇḍa offered is of the size of a first or that of the green emblic myrobalan fruit or that of the leaf of the Śamī tree. The devotee shall uplift seven Gotras and a hundred families. The Gotras—seven in number—are those of the father, mother, one's wife (before marriage), one's sister (after marriage), one's daughter (after marriage), and those of the father's sisters and mother's sisters. The hundred and one families are as follows: father and his twentyfour ancestors, mother and her twenty ancestors, wife and her sixteen ancestors, twelve ancestors of the sister's husband, eleven ancestors of the son-in-law, seven ancestors of the husband of the sister of one's father and eight ancestors of the husband of mother's sister.

28. There is no invocation in a *Tīrthaśrāddha* nor is screen erected shutting off the quarters. There is no defect due to the viewing of others. Clever people should not perform the *Tīrtha-śrāddha* out of pity.

29. This following is the procedure in the *Tīrtha Śrāddhas*: providing seat of the Piṇḍas, offering of the Piṇḍas, *Avanejana* (ritualistic sprinkling with the Darbha grass), monetary gifts and the *Annasaṁkalpa* (ritualistic expression of one's intention in preparing food).

30. Mantra: "I invoke all those members of our family who are dead and who have no other way of salvation. I shall

invoke them on the Darbha grass, with water libations along with gingelly seeds.

31. I invoke all those persons in the family of our kinsmen who are dead and who have no other way of salvation. I shall invoke them on the Darbha grass with water libations along with gingelly seeds".

32. Thus the pilgrim should meditate on the Darbhas, repeat these mantras with the offering of water libations along with gingelly seeds, invoke and worship the Pitṛs and offer the Piṇḍas in due order.

33. "I am offering this Piṇḍa in order to uplift those persons of our family who are dead and who have no other means of salvation.

34. I am offering this Piṇḍa in order to emancipate those persons of our maternal grandfather's family who are dead and who have no other means of salvation.

35. I am offering this Piṇḍa for the uplift of those persons belonging to the family of our kinsmen who are dead and who have no other means of salvation.

36. I am offering this Piṇḍa for the uplift of those persons who (died) before cutting teeth and those who were afflicted even while in the womb.

37. I am offering this Piṇḍa to those persons who were duly cremated and who were not those who were struck dead by lightning or by robbers.

38. I am offering this Piṇḍa to those who died in the forest fire, to those who were killed by lions and tigers and those who were slain by horned and fanged (beasts of prey).

39. I am offering to those who died by getting hanged, who were killed by poison or by weapons and those who have committed suicide.

4 I am offering this Piṇḍa to those who died of hunger, thirst in the forest path, and to those who were killed by goblins, ghosts and other evil spirits.

41. I am offering this Piṇḍa for the upliftment of those persons who have fallen into the hells called Raurava, Andhatāmisra and Kālasūtra.

42. I am offering this Piṇḍa for the emancipation of those

persons who have fallen into the terrible hells of Asipatravana or Kumbhīpāka.

43. I am offering this Piṇḍa for the uplift of those persons who are stationed in the various abodes of torture and those who have gone to the world of ghosts.

44. I am offering this Piṇḍa for the uplift of those persons who are stationed in the various abodes of torture and those who have been taken away by Yama's attendants.

45. I am offering this Piṇḍa for the uplift of all those persons who are stationed in any of the hells or abodes of torture.

46. I am offering this Piṇḍa to those who are born in the animal wombs or as birds, worms, insects or reptiles or even as trees.

47. I am offering this Piṇḍa to those persons who are transmigrating into the thousands of other lives as a result of their own actions and to whom the human birth has become a rarity.

48. I am offering the Piṇḍa to those Pitṛs who are stationed in heaven, firmament or on the earth and to those kinsmen etc. who have not been cremated duly after death.

49. May all those Pitṛs of mine be propitiated through this Piṇḍa for ever, those Pitṛs who exist in the form of ghosts.

50. This Piṇḍa has been offered by me to those who may or may not have been my kinsmen in this birth but who were my kinsmen in the other births. May it be of everlasting benefit reaching unto them.

51-53. This Piṇḍa has been offered by me to all those who are dead in my father's family, to those who are dead in my mother's family, to those kinsmen, elders, fathers-in-law or other relatives who are dead, to such of those in my family as had neither sons nor wives and hence had been deprived of Piṇḍa offerings, to those who had been defaulters in the holy rites, to those who were born blind, to those who had been lame, to those who had hideous forms, to those who had been prematurely born, to all persons of my family known and unknown. To all those the Piṇḍa has been offered by me. May it be of everlasting benefit in reaching unto them.

54-55. I am offering this Piṇḍa with *Svadhā* to all these: Those who are born in my father's family ever since the days of god Brahmā; those who are born in my mother's family; those who had been my servants in both these families; to those attendants and dependents, to the friends, disciples, animals, trees, birds seen or not seen, those who had rendered help unto me; those who had been in contact with me in my previous births".

56. With these Mantras the pilgrim should offer the Piṇḍas to the women too, beginning with mother. In that case he should make necessary changes in the substantives and adjectives making them conform to the feminine gender.

57. Whether in one's own Gotra or in the other man's Gotra, the offering of the Piṇḍas, the performance of Śrāddhas and the water libation is futile if done separately.

58. He should put the gingelly seeds in the vessel of Piṇḍas and fill it with holy water. He should perform the *Parisecana* rite thrice for all the Piṇḍas and conclude the rite by prostrating himself (before them).

59. After ritualistically dismissing the Pitṛs, he should perform *Ācamana* and express these words to Suras as witnesses. "May these Devas, Brahmā, Īśāna and others be my witnesses. After coming to Gayā the redemption of my Pitṛs has been effected by me.

60. O Lord Gadādhara, I have come to Gayā for the performance of the rites of the Pitṛs.[1] O Lord, you alone are the witness thereof. I have become free from the threefold indebtedness".

61. O Nārada, the offering of Piṇḍas in all the places should be like this alone. Beginning with the Preta mountain, he should do it in all the holy spots in due order.

62. Thereafter, O celestial sage, he should throw powdered fried grains mixed with gingelly seeds on the Pretaparvata, anticlockwise and facing the south.

---

1. To request the supreme deity of Gayā to stand witness to one's visit may appear funny to some, but that denotes the living faith of the pilgrim in Gadādhara.

63. Mantra: "May all those Pitṛs of mine be propitiated by means of these powdered fried grains mixed with gingelly seeds, those Pitṛs who exist in the form of ghosts.

64-65. May all the mobile and immobile beings beginning with Brahmā and ending with a blade of grass be propitiated by means of the libation offered by me." O Nārada, his Pitṛs shall be released from ghosthood. Thanks to his greatness, this ghosthood will never recur in his family.

66. In Gāyaśiras the rocky slab Pretaśilā is well known for its efficacy in bringing salvation. Ādigadādhara is stationed in the form of the holy centre, Mantra etc.

CHAPTER FORTYNINE

The Procedure of Pilgrimage at Gayā (Continued)

Sanatkumāra said:

1-3. At the outset, I shall mention the procedure for holy rites in the five holy centres[1] in the Uttara (Northern) Mānasa.[2] The pilgrim should perform Ācamana and sprinkle water over his head. Then he should go to the Uttaramānasa and perform

1. On the third day *Pañcatīrthī* rites are to be observed. The five Tīrthas are Uttaramānasa, Udicitīrtha, Kanakhala, Dakṣiṇamānasa and Phalgu. TSS (p. 360) clarifies that five baths in a day or bath in each of them is not necessary. Phalgutīrth is Gayāśiras. The real Kanakhala is near Hardwar. Here the tank is supposed to represent that Himalayan Tīrtha.

2. As I stated elsewhere, these *Sthala Purāṇas* claim all the sacred spots in the three worlds as being present in their locality. The real Uttara Mānasa is a twin-la of Payoda and Puṇḍarika. It modern Karakul in northern Pamirs (AGP.70), while Southern Mānasa is the twin take Mānasa-sarovara and Rākṣasa Tāla of the Kailāsa range. But this Purāṇa claims two ponds at Gayā as representing those two magnificent

The Uttara-mānasa tank is now a neglected 'filthy and weedy tank' (Vidyarthi 21). Even Dakṣiṇa Mānasa, Kanakhala and Udici Tirtha are partially neglected (Vidyarthi, p. 19, Table 3).

the holy ablution repeating the following Mantra: "I am taking the holy bath in Uttaramānasa for the purity of the soul and for the achievement of Sūryaloka (the region of the Sun-god) etc. and for the salvation of the Pitṛs". After propitiating Devas and others he should perform Śrāddha along with the offer of Piṇḍas.

4. Indeed the lake Mānasa is here. Hence it is called Uttaramānasa. The devotee shall bow to the Sun and worship him. He will lead the Pitṛs to the solar sphere.

5. "Obeisance to the lord and sustainer (Sun) who assumes the forms of the Moon, Mars, Mercury, Jupiter, Venus, Saturn, Rāhu and Ketu."

6. From Uttaramānasa, the pilgrim should go to the Southern Mānasa,[1] duly observing the rite of silence. This is called Udīcītīrtha (the Northern Holy Centre). An Audīcya (Northern) holy centre is conducive to salvation. A man who takes the holy bath here goes to heaven along with his physical body.

7. The holy centre Kanakhala which is well known in the three worlds is there. One taking bath there, shines like gold. The man attains sanctity.

8. The holy centre of Dakṣiṇamānasa is on the south of it. Hence Kanakhala is well known as an excellent holy centre.

9. These are three holy spots in the Southern Mānasa. The devotee should take his bath therein duly and perform the Śrāddhas severally.

10. "I am performing my holy ablution in the Dakṣiṇa Mānasa for the purification of the Ātman, for the achievement of the solar world etc. and for the salvation of the Pitṛs.

11. O Divākara (Sun), I am taking my holy bath here in Dakṣiṇamānasa for the sake of freedom from the torture of the sins of Brāhmaṇa-slaughter etc.

12. I bow down to the Sun-god for the propitiation and redemption of the Pitṛs and for the increase of sons, grandsons, wealth, prosperity, longevity and health".

---

1. Dakṣiṇa Mānasa is divided into three separate Tirthas : the northern part is the Udīcī Tīrtha, the middle is Kanakhala and the southern part is Southern Mānasa—TSS 359.

13. With this Mantra the pilgrim should perform the holy ablution, worship and Śrāddha with the offering of Piṇḍas. After bowing silently to the Sun, he shall repeat this Mantra.

14. Thereafter the pilgrim should go to the holy centre Phalgutīrtha[1] which is the most excellent of all the Tīrthas. It yields salvation perpetually to those who perform Śrāddha of Pitṛs there.

15. Viṣṇu on being requested by Brahmā formerly, became Phalguka (the river Phalgu?). When its dust particles were consecrated in the Dakṣiṇāgni, it came to be known as Phalgutīrthaka.

16. There the wish-yielding cow, viz. the earth bears fruits in the form of water through Phalgu. It is within (underground hence unseen).

17. All the holy centres in all the three worlds come over to Phalgutīrtha to take their bath along with Suras.

18. Gaṅgā is the water oozing out from the foot of Viṣṇu. But Phalgu is the primordial Gadādhara himself. He assumes the liquid form himself. Hence they call it more sacred than Gaṅgā.

19. Even he who performs a thousand times thousand horse sacrifices does not attain that fruit which one attains in Phalgutīrtha.

20. "I perform the ablution in the waters of Viṣṇu, in Phalgutīrtha with due respect, in order to secure Viṣṇuloka for the Pitṛs and for the realisation of worldly pleasures and salvation".

21. The man (the pilgrim) should take bath and perform Tarpaṇa and Śrāddha in Phalgutīrtha in the manner it has been mentioned in his own Sūtra (i.e. Gṛhyasūtra he follows) with due offerings of Piṇḍas. He shall then bow down to Pitāmaha.

22. "Obeisance to lord Śiva, Īśa, the (great) Puruṣa, to Aghoravāmadeva, Sadyojāta and Śaṁbhu".

---

1. Phalgutīrtha is Gayāśiras and its boundaries as given in vv. 28-29, from Nāgakūṭa to Gṛdhrakūṭa, from there to Yūpa and upto Uttara-mānasa. It is beneath the mountain Muṇḍapṛṣṭha-AP. 115-25-26 and G.P.I.83. 4 differ.

23. After taking bath in Phalgutīrtha and visiting lord Gadādhara, the man (the pilgrim) shall redeem his own soul, ten generations of the past and ten generations of the future.

24-25. After bowing to Lord Gadādhara, one should worship by means of this Mantra: "Om, obeisance to Vāsudeva. Obeisance to Saṅkarṣaṇa, to Pradyumna, to Aniruddha, to Śrīdhara, to Viṣṇu". After performing the ablution in the "five holy centres", the pilgrim shall lead the Pitṛs to Brahmaloka.

26. Futile indeed is the *Śrāddha* of that person who does not bathe the mace-bearing deity by means of *Pañcāmṛta* nor embellishes it with flowers, garments etc.

27. From the Nāgakūṭa mountain to Gṛdhrakūṭa, from there to *Yūpa* and from there upto Uttaramānasa—This is mentioned as Gayāśiras. It is otherwise called Phalgutīrtha.

28. The excellent Phalgutīrtha is beneath the mountain Muṇḍapṛṣṭha. All the Pitṛs shall attain salvation by means of the performance of Śrāddha etc.

29. Thus the procedure of the first day has been explained.

The Second Day:

On the second day[1] the pilgrim should go to the Dharmāraṇya since it was here that Dharma performed the *Yajña*.

30. O Nārada, he who performs ablutions, *Tarpaṇa* and *Śrāddha* in the Mataṅgavāpī (the tank of Mataṅga) obtains Brahmaloka by going to Dharmāraṇya.

31-32. After going to Mataṅgavāpī the pilgrim should bow down to Mataṅgeśa and repeat this Mantras: "May the deities be the authority and may the guardians of the quarters be the witnesses (to the fact that) I had come to this Mataṅgavāpī and the redemption of the Pitṛs has been effected by me".

At the outset he should perform the Śrāddha etc. at the well (called) Brahmatīrtha.

33. (He who performs the Śrāddha etc.) in between that well and the sacrificial post, enables all the Pitṛs to cross the (ocean of existence). After bowing down to Dharma and Dharmeśvara, he should bow down to the tree of Mahābodhi (the great enlightenment).

1. The second day of Pañca Tirthi Yātrā is the 4th day from entrance at Gayā. NP.II.45.103-104, AP. 115.34-37 mention these very Tīrthas on the 'second day'.

34. "Obeisance to you the king of Aśvatthas (holy fig trees), of the form of Brahmā, Viṣṇu and Śiva, the tree of enlightenment (*Bodhidruma*)[1] for the performers (of Śrāddha etc.) and the redeemer of the Pitṛs.

Additional Verses

1. Repeated obeisance to the Aśvattha (the holy fig tree), the tree with tremulous leaves, the cause of permanent stabilisation. Obeisance to Yajña, the Bodhisattva.

2. O Pippala, you are the eleventh among Rudras. You are the fire among Vasus; you are Nārāyaṇa among Devas. You are the king of trees.

3. O Aśvattha, king of trees since Nārāyaṇa stays in you perpetually, you are the most auspicious of all trees; you are blessed for ever; you are the destroyer of evil dreams.

4. I bow down to Hari who has assumed the form of a tree, who is in the form of the Aśvattha tree, who is the lord Puṇḍarīkākṣa (Viṣṇu) wielding Śaṅkha, Cakra and Gadā.

[End of Addl. Verses]

35. As a result of seeing and touching you, may our kinsmen, of our family or our mother's family who have been in distress, attain perpetual stay in heaven.

36. O king of trees! After coming to Gayā, the three debts have been repaid by me. Thanks to your grace, I have been relieved from the great sin. I have been released from the ocean of worldly existence."

The Third Day:

37. On the third day[2] the pilgrim—the son—should duly take bath in Brahmasaras and perform Śrāddha with the offering of Piṇḍas repeating the Mantra thereof.

---

1. The Bodhidruma where the Buddha evolved *Pratītyasamutpāda*, became a place of Śrāddha! It, however, shows that the Buddha was completely Brahmanised by the time of this Purāṇa.

2. The 3rd day of Pañcatirthi is the 5th day from entering Gayā. Some of the rites mentioned here are found in *AP.* 115. 35-40 and *NP.* II. 46.

38. "I am performing the ablution in this holy Tīrtha for the relief from the three debts". (Śrāddha performed) in the middle of *Kūpa* (well) and *Yūpa* (the sacrificial post) shall lead the Pitṛs to Brahmaloka".

39. This Yūpa (sacrificial post) was raised by Brahmā after performing the sacrifice. After performing this Śrāddha in Brahmasaras, he redeems all the Pitṛs.

40. After circumambulating the Yūpa, one attains the fruit of Vājapeya sacrifice. After bowing down to Brahmā, he will lead the Pitṛs to Brahmaloka.

41. "Obeisance be to Brahmā, the unborn, the causal form of the birth etc. of this universe. Repeated bows to the redeemer of the devotees and the Pitṛs."

42. The Mango trees growing near the place called *Gopracara* were planted by Brahmā. Merely by watering them, one shall enable the Pitṛs to attain salvation.

43. Mantra: "For the cause of the salvation of the Pitṛs, I am watering the mango tree that has come up from the Brahmasaras and which is of the forms of Brahmā and Viṣṇu".

44. "(Like a Sage) I with the tips of my hands am touching the water pot and the Kuśa grass. I am offering water at the root of the Mango tree. The Mango tree is watered and the Pitṛs are propitiated. One action alone has become famous as serving two purposes."

45-46. Then, with a controlled mind, the pilgrim should offer the oblation[1] to Yama with the Mantra: "Yamarāja and Dharmarāja have been engaged in the work of stabilising (demon Gaya). I am offering oblation to both of them for the cause of the liberation of the Pitṛs".

O Nārada, thereafter the pilgrim should offer oblations to the dogs, repeating the following Mantra:

47. "There are two dogs born of the family of Vaivasvata (Yama). They are dark and variegated in colour. I am offering oblation to them. May they protect me for ever, on the path".

---

1. V. 45 is the Mantra for Yamabali, v. 46 for *Śva-bali* (Bali to Dogs) and v. 47 is for *Kākabali* (Bali to Crows). The pilgrim is to take a bath (in Brahmasaras thereof)— TSS 362-363.

48-49. O Nārada, thereafter the pilgrim should offer oblation to the crows repeating the following Mantra : "May the crows from the quarters of Indra (i.e. East), Varuṇa (West), Vāyu (North-west), Yama (South) and Nirṛti (South-west) accept the Piṇḍa placed on the ground."

The Fourth Day:

On the Fourth Day,[1] the pilgrim should perform the rites of ablution etc. in Phalgutīrtha.

50. Then the pilgrim should perform Śrāddha at the foot (of Viṣṇu) in Gayāśiras along with the offering of Piṇḍas. The real Gayāśiras is within the limit of Phalgutīrtha.

51. Nāga, Janārdana, Brahmayūpa and Uttaramānasa—these delimit the holy spot called Gayāśiras. It is also called Phalgutīrtha.

52. That area of Phalgutīrtha extending from the seat of Pitāmaha upto Uttaramānasa should be known as difficult of access, rare even to Devas.

53. The real Gayāśiras extends from Krauñcapāda up to Phalgutīrtha. Since this is the face of Gayāsura, the Śrāddha performed here is of everlasting benefit.

54. The region below the mountain Muṇḍapṛṣṭha too constitutes Phalgutīrtha. It is here that the primordial Gadādhara is stationed in both manifest and unmanifest forms.

55. The foot-prints of Viṣṇu and others are there conducive to the liberation of the Pitṛs. This Viṣṇupada (the foot-print of Viṣṇu) is divine and destructive of sins at its very sight.

56-58. By touching and worshipping it sins are dispelled. Whatever is given unto the Pitṛs becomes *Akṣaya* (of inexhaustible benefit). By performing the *Śrāddha* along with the *Piṇḍa* offerings one leads a thousand members of one's family to the divine foot of Viṣṇu which is auspicious and infinite. By performing *Śrāddha* at the foot of Rudra, a man takes a hundred

1. The 4th day of Pañcatīrthī is the 6th day from entry into Gayā. TSS. 366 tells us that there is no separate Śrāddha on Gayāśiras apart from the Śrāddhas at Viṣṇupada and other *Padas*. Gayāśiras is the holiestspot at Gayā. It extends from Krauñcapada to Phalgu Tīrtha (v. 53).

members of his family including himself to Śiva's city. Similarly a pilgrim performing the *Śrāddha* etc. at the foot of Brahmapada leads hundred members of his family to Brahmaloka.

59. A person performing *Śrāddha* at the footprints of Kāśyapa leads his Pitṛs to Brahmaloka. A person performing Śrāddha at the footprint of Dakṣiṇāgni leads Pitṛs to Brahmapura.

60. One who performs Śrāddha at the foot (print) of Gārhapatya attains the fruit of Vājapeya. After performing Śrāddha at Āhavanīya, one attains the benefit of a horse-sacrifice.

61. By performing Śrāddha at the foot of (fire called) Sabhya one attains the benefit of Jyotiṣṭoma. He who performs Śrāddha at the foot of Avasathya leads Pitṛs to Brahmapura.

62. Performing Śrāddha at Śakra's foot leads Pitṛs to Indraloka. One who performs Śrāddha at Agastya's foot leads Pitṛs to Brahmapura.

63. He who performs Śrāddha at Krauñcapāda and Mātaṅgapāda leads Pitṛs to Brahmaloka. He who performs Śrāddha at the foot of the Sun-god leads even the perpetrators of five great sins to the city of Arka.

64. He who performs Śrāddha at the foot of Kārtikeya leads the Pitṛs to Śivaloka. He who performs Śrāddha at the foot of Gaṇeśa leads the Pitṛs to Rudraloka.

65. One who performs Tarpaṇa rites in the holy spot Gajakarṇa leads his Pitṛs to the resplendent heaven. One who performs Śrāddha at the feet of other deities leads the Pitṛs to Brahmapura.

66. Among all the footprints, those of Kāśyapa, Viṣṇu, Rudra and Brahmā are glorified as the most excellent of all.

67. At the beginning and at the conclusion one of them is remembered. O Nārada, it is conducive to the welfare of the performer of the Śrāddha.

68. Formerly sage Bhāradvāja performed Śrāddha at the divine feet of Kāśyapa and began to offer Piṇḍas to the Pitṛs and others.[1]

1. In order to emphasize that Piṇḍas are to be offered at the footprints and not in the hands of the dead ancestor even if he come in person,

69. Two hands, one white and the other black, came out jutting out of the foot (of Kāśyapa). On seeing the two (projected) hands, the sage was overwhelmed with doubts.

70-71. Then the great sage asked his mother Śāntā: "O mother, is the Piṇḍa to be offered to the white hand or to the black hand, at the divine foot-print of Kāśyapa? you know father (hence) say."

Śāntā said:

"O Bhāradvāja of great intellect, give the Piṇḍa unto the black one."

72. Then Bhāradvāja attempted to give the Piṇḍa to the black one. Then the white one, remaining invisible said, "You are my legitimate bosom son."

73. The black one said, "The field is mine (i.e. the wife). Hence give the Piṇḍa to me." Then the *Svairiṇi* (wanton woman) said that the Piṇḍas are to be given both to *Kṣetrin* (the husband) and the *Bījin* (the procreator).

74. Bhāradvāja thereupon placed the Piṇḍa at the foot of Kāśyapa. Both of them went to Brahmaloka by means of an aerial chariot to which a swan was yoked.

75. Rāma attempted to offer the Piṇḍas at the sacrifice at the foot of Rudra. His father Daśaratha came there from heaven stretching his hand.

76. Rāma did not offer the Piṇḍa unto the hand. Then he placed the Piṇḍa at the foot of Rudra. Daśaratha spoke to Rāma who was afraid of transgressing the injunctions of the sacred texts:

77. "O Son, I have been redeemed by you. I shall attain Rudraloka. If the Piṇḍa had been given (deposited) unto the hand, I would not have attained heaven.

78-79. You will rule over the kingdom for a long time and protect Brāhmaṇas and other subjects. After performing Yajñas with due Dakṣiṇā, you will go to Viṣṇuloka along with all the citizens of Ayodhyā and (including) even germs and insects."

---

the stories of Bhāradvāja, Rāma, Bhiṣma are given in vv. 68-82. These stories are given in NP.II.46.29-45.

After saying this Daśaratha went to Rudraloka.

80-81. Bhīṣma invoked his Pitṛ (father) at the excellent Viṣṇupada and performed the Śrāddha. When he attempted to offer the Piṇḍas to the Pitṛs, both the hands of his father Śantanu came out of Gayāśiras. Bhīṣma did not offer the Piṇḍas into the hands. He placed them at the foot-print of Viṣṇu.

82. The delighted Śantanu said: "You are definite about the meaning of the sacred text. May you have the vision extending to the three times (past, present and future). In the end, may Viṣṇu be your goal.

83-88a. You will have death at your will". After saying this he attained salvation.

By worshipping Kanakeśa, Kedāra, Narasiṁha, and Vāmana in the northern path, one shall redeem all the Pitṛs.

If Piṇḍas are offered at Gayāśiras invoking their name, persons (who are thus invoked if) they are in the hell, will go to heaven and those that are (already) in heaven, attain liberation (from Saṁsāra).

If anyone were to offer Piṇḍas of the size of Śamī leaf at Gayāśiras or were he to offer fruits, roots etc. he shall lead the Pitṛs to heaven.

By performing Śrāddha along with the Piṇḍa, he will lead his Pitṛs to the worlds of those deities, Viṣṇu etc. at whose feet he performs the Śrāddhas. Everywhere the mountain Muṇḍaprṣṭha has been clearly marked by these footprints.

88b-89. All the Pitṛs will attain Brahmaloka, free from ailments. The head of the Asura Heti was split into two. Then the Gadā was washed in this Tīrtha. Hence it is conducive to liberation. It is called *Gadālola*.[1] It is the most excellent of all excellent Tīrthas.

90. Since the Gadā of Hari was washed in that great Tīrtha, it was called Gadālola. "I am taking my bath for the realisation of Siddhis. I shall attain the imperishable *Pada* (station)."

The Fifth Day:

91. On the fifth day[2] the pilgrim shall take his bath in the

1. TSS. 366 tell us that Gadālola is in the stream Phalgu.

2. The 5th day of Pañcatirthi is the 7th day from entering Gayā. On this day one should perform Bath and Śrāddha at Akṣayavaṭa, honour

holy Tīrtha Gadālola and perform the Śrāddha along with the offerings of Piṇḍas. He will (thereby) lead the Pitṛs, and himself to Brahmaloka.

92. The devotee shall propitiate the Brāhmaṇas who had been originally assigned the duties at Gayā by god Brahmā. He should propitiate them by means of Havyas, Kavyas etc. If they are satisfied, all the deities along with the Pitṛs are propitiated

93. If the Śrāddha at Akṣayavaṭa is performed with great care and effort, with cooked rice alone, the pilgrim will lead the Pitṛs to the indestructible and eternal Brahmaloka.

94. If a single Brāhmaṇa is fed near that Vaṭavṛkṣa (banyan tree) with vegetables or even with water, it is as fruitful as feeding a crore (of Brāhmaṇas).

95. Sixteen types of gifts should be made to the priest at Gayātīrtha after honouring him and offering him clothes, scents etc. in the company of one's sons.

96-99. Whatever is given at the Vaṭa tree at Gayātīrtha to the Pitṛs will be Akṣaya (indestructible). By seeing, bowing to and worshipping Vaṭeśa with calm and composed mind, the pilgrim will lead his Pitṛs to the indestructible and eternal Brahmaloka.

Whatever is offered to the Pitṛs at Gayā, Dharmapṛṣṭha and Brahmasaras and at the Vaṭa at Gayāśīrṣa is Akṣaya (inexhaustible). Obeisance unto that *Yogaśāyin* (one slumbering in Yoga sleep) who has assumed the form of an infant boy and who sleeps on the top of the Vaṭa tree in that vast sheet of cosmic waters.

100. Obeisance to the Akṣayavaṭa which is a weapon severing the tree of worldly existence, which removes all the sins and which gives the imperishable Brahman.

---

the Gayāwal Brāhmaṇas with offerings and food and get their blessing and worship Prapitāmaha. Cf. AP. 115. 71-73.

Thus the Gayā Yātrā is completed within seven days. Śrāddha at Preta Śilā is the 1st rite and that at Akṣayavaṭa is the last rite culminating in the blessing of the Gayāwal—the Brāhmaṇa privileged by god Brahmā in this matter.

There are slight differences in the order of Tīrthas to be visited in AP and NP but TSS follows our Text (Vā.P.).

In the Kali age, people are the followers of Maheśvara. Hence Gadādhara has assumed the form of a Liṅga.

I bow down to that Prapitāmaha.

CHAPTER FIFTY

The Glory of Gayā

Sanatkumāra said:

1. The king Gaya, performed a Yajña[1] wherein Dakṣiṇā was offered and much food was cooked. It is impossible to calculate the number of articles made use of in it.

2-4. At Gayā there were twentyfive mountains of cooked food and other articles. The Brāhmaṇas who were well-honoured in the different lands, praise it like this: "No one did like this before. No one will (can) do like this in future. The monetary gifts (in gold) coins offered were innumerable like the sand particles in the world and the stars in the sky. Formerly no one has done like this. No one will be doing like this in future."

5. The Brāhmaṇas who were well propitiated and honoured well in the different lands, praised it. Viṣṇu and others (gods) who were pleased spoke to Gaya, "Mention the boon you wish to choose."

6. Gaya requested them, "May those Brāhmaṇas who were formerly cursed by Brahmā, become sanctified. Let them be honoured in the sacrifices."

7-9. For the performance of Gayāśrāddha there were Brāhmaṇas of fourteen Gotras. Even Brahmā himself has to carry

---

1. Verses 1-11a give the story of King Gaya's munificent sacrifice. The object of the story is to inform that Brāhmaṇas who were cursed by Brahmā for their greed were absolved of that curse. Verses 7-9 state the names of the 14 Brāhmaṇas—which are the Gotras of present-day Gayāwals. Out of these 11 are Mādhyandins, 2 Sāmavedins and only one Ṛgvedin (follower of Āśvalāyana Sūtra). (Vidyarthi, Appendix IV, p. 145)

out their behests. They were : Gautama, Kāśyapa, Kautsa, Kauśika, Kaṇva, Bhāradvāja, Uśanas, Vātsya, Parāśara, Haritkumāra, Māṇḍavya, Lokākṣi the greatest in the world, Vasiṣṭha and Ātreya. These were the names of the Gotras.

10. May this city be known as Gayā after my name. Let it be as renowned as the city of god Brahmā." The Suras said, "May this be so". After granting the boon they vanished.

11. After enjoying various pleasures Gaya attained the great Viṣṇuloka.

There was a king named Viśāla,[1] in the city called Viśālā. He had no sons. He spoke to the Brāhmaṇas thus:

12. "How can I beget sons etc.?" The Brāhmaṇas said to Viśāla, "You will have everything by offering Piṇḍas at Gayā."

13-14. Viśāla offered Piṇḍas at Gayāśīrṣa and begot sons. He saw in the sky three persons white, red and black in colour. He then asked, "Who are you?" One of them, the white one, said to Viśāla, "I, the white-one, am your father. I have come here from Indra's world.

15. O Son, my father is this red one. He had slain a Brāhmaṇa. He was a sinner. This black one is your grandfather by whom many sages had been killed.

16-17. They had fallen into the hell called Āvīci. They have been liberated by your offer of Piṇḍas. O destroyer of enemies, you offered the water libation saying, "I shall propitiate my Pitṛs, Pitāmahas and Prapitāmahas". O excellent one, as a result thereof and in view of your above statement, we have come here simultaneously.

Pāṭhāntara (*Additional verses*)

1. All of us have been liberated by you. We shall go to the imperishable heavenly abode. Accompanied by you, the good son, all of us shall go to Brahmaloka.

---

1. Verses 11b-20a give the story of the childless King Viśāla, how by performing Śrāddha and Piṇḍadāna at Gayā he got a son and promoted his father, grandfather and great-grandfather (though sinners) to Brahmaloka. Story repeated in AP. 115.54-59 and NP.II-44.26-42; GP.I.84-34-39.

2. You shall be endowed with sons and grandsons. You will rule over the kingdom and then go to heaven. Becoming satiated with the pleasures thereof, you shall attain salvation.

[End of addl. verses]

18. O son, liberation has been effected by you. We shall go to the excellent heaven. In this manner the excellent liberation of the Pitṛs must be effected by all sons.

19. You will rule over the kingdom for a long time. You will enjoy the rarest of pleasures. You will perform Yajñas with suitable Dakṣiṇās and go to Viṣṇu's city (Vaikuṇṭha) thereafter."

20. The king who secured the boon thus ruled over the kingdom and went to heaven. The king of ghosts[1] attained heaven along with the other ghosts, thanks to Gayāśrāddha.

21-23. In order to secure his liberation, a certain ghost spoke thus to a certain merchant: "Please offer Piṇḍa in my name at Gayāśiras in order to secure for me release from my ghosthood. Take (all) my wealth. Taking all the wealth to meet theexpenses connected with the Gayāśrāddha. I have given you five-sixteenth part of my wealth (as your remuneration). I have mentioned my name (etc.) in the proper manner."

24. The man went to Gayā along with his kinsmen and offered Piṇḍas to the king of ghosts at Gayāśīrṣa. It was only after that, that he offered the Piṇḍas to his own Pitṛs.

25. The ghost was liberated from ghosthood. The merchant came back to his house. Thus is the holy centre of Gaya, of Śaṁbhu, Viṣṇu and Ravi.

26. The pilgrim should observe fast in the holy centre of Gāyatrī, on the banks of the great river Phalgu (Mahānadī). After taking bath, in front of Gāyatrī, one should perform *Prātaḥ-Sandhyā* (Sandhyā prayer to be perfromed at dawn).

27-28. By performing the Śrāddha along with the offering of the Piṇḍas, the pilgrim shall lead his family to the state of being favourabler to the Brāhmaṇas. After taking the holy dip

1. Verses 20b-25 tell how a ghost attained heaven when at his request (and for consideration of some property) an unrelated merchant offered piṇḍas at Gayā.

This story is also found in NP.II.44.44-50 and in AP. 115.60-63, GP I.84 32-33.

in the Samuditatīrtha (in the holy centre mentioned) in front of Sāvitrī and performing *Sandhyā* at the midday junction, the pilgrim leads hundred members of his family to heaven. Then with a desire for the liberation of the Pitṛs, he should offer the Piṇḍas unto them.

29. After taking bath duly in the holy water called Prācī-sarasvatī and performing the Sandhyā-prayer in the evening the pilgrim shall lead the Pitṛs to Viṣṇuloka.

30-32. A person who has incurred sin due to negligence of performing Sandhyā (prayer to be performed during the twilight period e.g. dawn and dusk) in many births becomes liberated by performing Sandhyā on three occasions in the holy centre Lelihāna, in Viśālā as well as in the hermitage of Bharata.

A person who takes holy ablution and offers Piṇḍas on the ridge of the mountain Muṇḍa (Pṛṣṭha) marked by footprints and near Gadādhara, in the holy centre Ākāśagaṅgā and in those called Girikarṇamukhas, leads hundred members of his family to Brahmaloka. He who takes bath in the celestial river Vaitaraṇī leads his Pitṛs to heaven.

33-37. A person who takes bath and makes gifts of cows in Vaitaraṇī, uplifts twentyone generations. O Nārada (I repeat it three times to emphasize that it is true) it is true that he who takes bath in Vaitaraṇī redeems twentyone generations; they say so; there is no doubt in this. The river Vaitaraṇī which is well known in the three worlds has descended down into Gayākṣetra for the redemption of Pitṛs. A person who performs Śrāddha in (on the bank of) the Godāvarī, Vaitaraṇī, Yamunā and in the celestial river (i.e. Gaṅgā) in the holy centre *Gopracāra*, leads his Pitṛs to heaven. A person who offers Piṇḍas in Puṣkariṇī, in Ghṛtakulyā and Madhukulyā, in the Koṭitīrtha pertaining to Rukmiṇī leads his Pitṛs to heaven by observing fast for three nights and visiting the sacred waters.

38-39. By not giving gold or kine, a man becomes indigent. A man who takes ablutions in Ghṛtakulyā, Madhukulyā, Devikā, Mahānadī (Phalgu) and in the celebrated place of

meeting of Śilā (called) Madhusravā,[1] attains the benefit of ten thousand Aśvamedhas.

40. After performing the Śrāddha along with the offering of Piṇḍas, the man uplifts a hundred generations in his family and leads them to Viṣṇuloka.

41. One who offers Piṇḍas in Daśāśvamedha, Haṁsatīrtha, Amarakaṇṭaka, Koṭitīrtha and Rukmakuṇḍa leads his Pitṛs to heaven.

42-43. By taking bath in Vaitaraṇī, Ghṛtakulyā, Madhukulyā and Koṭitīrtha and visiting Koṭīśvara, the pilgrim becomes a rich Brāhmaṇa and a master of all the Vedas for a crore of births. Bowing to Mārkaṇḍeyeśa and Koṭīśa he shall be the redeemer of his Pitṛs.

44. Formerly Śaṅkara sported secretly with Pārvatī[2] in the forest called Rukmapārijātavana for ten thousand Yugas.

45. Marīci went to this Pārijātavana for gathering fruits and flowers. He was seen by Maheśa. Since he had become the cause of the obstruction of his (Śiva's) pleasure he was cursed by Maheśa.

46. "You shall become miserable." This was the curse. Afraid of him, Marīci eulogised Śiva. The delighted Śambhu spoke to him, "Choose an excellent boon".

47. Marīci spoke to Śaṅkara, "May I have the absolution from the curse". "At Gayā you will have the liberation", spoken thus by Śiva, he went to Gayā.

48. Marīci who had been cursed by Īśvara formerly attained *Kṛṣṇatva* (blackness of complexion). Seated on a rock, he performed a penance very difficult for anyone else to perform.

49. By means of a terrible penance, that Brāhmaṇa attained *Śuklatā* (whiteness of complexion). Hari spoke to Marīci, "O son, choose a boon".

50. Marīci said to Mādhava, "When you are satisfied, what is inaccessible? I have been relieved from the curse of Hara. May this rock be sacred.

---

1. Verses 26-43 describe other sacred spots at Gayā such as Gāyatrītīrtha, Prāci-Sarasvati Tīrth, Viśālā, Lelihāna and Bharata's hermitage (30-32), Muṇḍapṛṣṭha, Ākāśagaṅgā (26-32), Vaitaraṇi (33-37)and others.

2. Verses 44-51 tell how Marici was absolved of the curse of Śiva by performing penance at Gayā.

51. May it be conducive to the salvation of the Pitṛs". Saying "So be it" he (Hari) went to heaven. A man approaching Puṣkariṇī of the heaven-dwellers becomes pure.

52. Whatever is offered to the Pitṛs here becomes inexhaustible. He who takes bath there, goes to heaven with his own physical body.

53. He shakes off his sin like a serpent casting off its slough. That forest of clusters of lotuses is holy and is resorted to by meritorious persons.

54. The slab of Pāṇḍu (Pāṇḍuśilā) is there.[1] If Śrāddha is performed (at Pāṇḍuśilā), it becomes inexhaustible. O sage, once Yudhiṣṭhira went there to perform Śrāddha.

55. At that time he was requested by Pāṇḍu, "Give the Piṇḍa into my hand." Avoiding the hand, he placed the Piṇḍa on the rock.

56-58. By the offer of the Piṇḍa on the rock, Vyāsa's son (i.e. Pāṇḍu) was delighted. He granted this boon to his son: "Rule over the kingdom on the surface of the earth. May the kingdom flourish perfectly and devoid of thorns (trouble-makers). O son, you are my saviour. Go unto heaven surrounded by your brothers and along with your physical boby. Lead those in the hell to heaven after purifying them by means of your vision alone". Saying this, Pāṇḍu attained the eternal immutable region.

59. All the four types of living beings, viz. *Udbhijjas* (plants), *Svedajas* (sweat-born germs), *Aṇḍajas* (egg-born birds) and *Jarāyujas* (womb-born animals) who approach Madhusravā shall go to the city of heaven after death.

60. By performing Śrāddha in Daśāśvamedhika and Haṁsatīrtha one goes to heaven. By bowing to Daśāśvamedha and Haṁsa, one goes to Śivapura.

61. By performing Śrāddha in the hermitage of Bharata one leads the Pitṛs to the abode of Brahmā. One who performs Śrāddha at the footprint of Mataṅga leads the Pitṛs to Brahmaloka.

---

1. Verses 54-58 state how Yudhiṣṭhira deposited the Piṇḍa at the Śilā, not in the hand of Pāṇḍu though he appeared personally.

62-63. After churning the fire within the Śamī tree in the company of Viṣṇu and others, Vidhi (Brahmā) secured the Tīrtha for the purpose of Yajña. It is well known in the three worlds. That Tīrtha named Makha (sacrifice) yields salvation unto the Pitṛs. One who takes bath, performs the Tarpaṇa rites and offers Piṇḍas shall attain salvation.

64. After bowing to Aṅgāraka (Mars) and Īśvara (Śiva) at the *Saṅgama* (confluence), the pilgrim leads the Pitṛs to heaven. By offering Piṇḍas at Gayakūṭa one derives the benefit of Aśvamedha.

65. After bowing to Bhasmanātha at Bhasmakūṭa, one shall redeem and uplift the Pitṛs. One who performs ablutions at Saṅgama, shall be relieved of sins and he becomes liberated.

66-67. The excellent sage Vasiṣṭha performed the sacrifice called Aśvamedha. Śaṁbhu who came out of the *Iṣṭi* (sacrifice) said to Vasiṣṭha, "Choose a boon". Vasiṣṭha too then replied, "O Śiva, if you are pleased with me, O lord of Devas, you stay here (alone)." Saying "So be it", Śiva stayed there.

68. One who offers Piṇḍas at the footprints of Kāmadhenu in Dhenukāraṇya after bathing, bowing down and worshipping them, leads the Pitṛs to Brahmaloka.

69. By taking bath and performing Śrāddha etc. at Kardamāla, holy centre in Gayānābhi, near the ridge of the mountain Muṇḍapṛṣṭha, one is absolved of debts to his Pitṛs.

70. One shall worship (the deities) Phalgu, Caṇḍī, Śmaśānākṣī, Maṅgalā and others. By means of *Vṛṣotsarga* (letting loose a bull calf) one shall uplift twentyone generations of his family.

71-74. The deities and the sages who have conquered their sense organs are stationed here and there (in Gayā). Meditating on the primordial Gadādhara and offering Piṇḍas etc., one uplifts a hundred generations in his family and leads the Pitṛs to Brahmaloka. The six Gayās,[1] viz. Gayā-gaya (Gayāgaja), Gayā-

1. This enumerates the Six Gayās where worship and Piṇḍa-dāna lead to *mukti*. Gayāgaya may be Gayāgaja. If so, Kāṇe thinks it may a reference to the pillar with a figure of an elephant near Gadādhara temple—HD IV, Foot Note 150a. This verse is found in NP. II. 47. 39-40.

ditya, Gāyatrī, Gadādhara, Gayā and the demon Gaya—are the bestowers of salvation.

A man who reads this holy narrative of Gayā continuously and listens to it with faith attains the greatest goal. A man who teaches the anecdote of Gayā to the Brāhmaṇas (or who causes Brāhmaṇas to read it) is meritorious.

75-79. Gayāśrāddha is performed by him. Certainly it is done. He who studies the glory of Gayā with purity of mind has actually performed Rājasūya and Aśvamedha. O Nārada, Goddess of fortune, Lakṣmī, will stay delightedly in the house of the person who writes this book or worships it or causes others to write it.

If this book containing this holy anecdote remains in the house, there is no fear due to serpents, fires or robbers there.

If anyone reads this glory of Gayā at the time of *Śrāddha*, it will be considered by Pitṛs on a par with Gayāśrāddha even if it is against strict injunctions in the Śāstras.

O Sage, if anyone knows, hears or reads the anecdote of Gayā, all the Tīrthas of the three worlds are visited by him.

Sūta said:

80. Sanatkumāra thus narrated the holy story with devotion to the leading sage. He then bade farewell to the preceptor in music (i.e. to Nārada) and went to his own hermitage surrounded by holy forests.

INDEX

Abbreviations

c — capital
h — husband
k — king
l — lake
mt — mountain
n — name
p — page, pp. — pages
r — river
s — son
v — verse, vv. — verses
w — wife

Explanation:
Abhra—I (Part I). 51 (Chapter 51). 27 (verse no. 27)

Abhra, A cloud. Derivation I. 51.27
Ābhūta-Saṁplava, Annihilation of all living beings II. 38. 237-240
Abodes of gods, I. 39
Abuddhi-pūrvaka, Unpremeditated (Creation) I. 4. 68-78 Introd. XXIV
Acchodā, a river (r) I.47.6
Acchodaka, a lake I.47.5
Adhisīma (Asīma)- Kṛṣṇa, (K.) Vā. P. narrated in his reign I.1.10-12; II.37.253-255
Āḍibaka, Sixth battle between Devas and Asuras II.35.75
Ādi-gadādhara, The chief deity at Gayā, The story of, II.47
Aditi, Mother of gods, II. 5.57-59
Āditya, The Sun-god, S. of Kaśyapa and Aditi II.22.34; Names of Ādityas II.5. 66-67
— Born of Kaśyapa & Aditi II.5.57-60
Advaita, Śaṅkarācārya's philosophy II.42.28-39
Agastya (the star Canopus) I.50, 155-156
Agni, The Fire-god, Three types: Divine, earthly and watery I.53.5 ff.
— The race of I.29; fortynine religious functions of, p. 185 Ftn. 1,2
— Agnis, mutual relations I.29. Ftn. 2
— Dhiṣṇyā fires, Division into Viharaṇiya & Upastheya I.29.19 ff
Agnīdhra, (K) The first K.of Jaṁbūdvīpa I.33.11,37
— Divides J. dvīpa into nine parts and distributes them to his sons I.33.38-45
— Retires for penance I.33.46
Airāvata, Divine elephant II.8.203-205, 207
Ajatuṅga, A holy centre of Śrāddha II.15.48
Akrūra, Son of Gāṁdinī II.34.106-109
— His conspiracy for Syamantaka, II.34.56-60
— His generosity, II.34.79-82, 109
Alakā, Capital (c) of Kubera
Alakanandā, (r) I.42.25-40
Amarakaṇṭaka, A mountain (m) sacred for Śrāddha II.15.4-16
Āmāvasu, (K) Father of Satyavatī, Vyāsa's mother II.11.60.67
Aṁśumān, Grandson of Sagara, son of Asamañjasa II.26.165
Ānakadundubhi, (Vasudeva) II.34. 145-146, 159-161; 172-175.
Ancient Lores, Intro. XLVII-XLVIII
Āndhra, N. of a dynasty II.37.341B-325
— N. of a people I.45.124-131
Aṅgiras, One of the Seven Sages I.31. 16-18; A Vyāsa I.23.118
Animal-Sacrifice, Brahmanical protest, King Vasu's assent & consequent fall I.57.92-111
Annihilation, The extent of the period I.8.1
Āpava, A sage, Curses Sahasrārjuna II.32.43-47, II.33.12-13
Aruṇa, Son of Vinatā, Sūrya's charioteer II.8.63
Arundhatī, W of Vasiṣṭha II.9.80
— W of Dharma II.6.2-3
Arvāksrotas, Creation of Mankind: 4th type of creation I.6.49
Asamañjasa, Son of Sagara and Keśinī II.26.154; Banished from the kingdom II.26.163-165
Asipatravana, N of a hell II.39.146-149
Aṣṭaka, A Śrāddha II.19.2; p. 633, Ft. n. 2
Āsuri, An ancient Sāṅkhya teacher,

Śiva's disciple I.23.132-133
Āśrama, Stages in life, classification and duties of I.8.154-181
Astronomy, Arrangement of luminaries I.53
Aśvins, Twin-gods, Birth story of II.22.23-24, 32-79
Aśvini, N. of a constellation II.5.46-48
Atharva Veda, No. of Mantras I.61.69 Alternative Saṁhitās of, I.61.54-55 Genealogy of Teachers I.61.49-54
Avabhṛtha, Valedictory Bath after conclusion of a sacrifice II.41.40-43.
Avidyā, Cosmic aspect (see Creation, also the second stage of meditated creation.)
— Tiryaksrotas I.6.39-43
— The third stage, Ūrdhvasrotas (Deva-sarga, creation of Devas) I.6.45-48
— The fourth creation (Arvāksrotas, creation of mankind) I.6.49-52
— the fifth creation, Anugraha Sarga I.6.53
— The sixth creation, Bhūtādi I.6.54
— Five joints of (viz.) Tamas, Moha, Mahāmoha, Tāmisra, Andha-Tāmisra I.6.35
Āyu, Son of Purūravas & Urvaśī II. 29.48-49; the line of II.31. 12 ff

Bali (K), Bali promises land to Vāmana II.36.75-77
— bound by Vāmana II.36.85
— A king of east India. Kingdoms Aṅga, Vaṅga in east India named after his sons II.37.26-34
Bāṇa, S. of Bali
—arms cut off by Kṛṣṇa II.36.101
Battles, Twelve between Suras and Asuras II.35.72-87
Bhadrākara, A country west of U. Kurus I.45.41-66
Bhadrāśva, A Varṣa east of Meru (Mod. China) I.43.5-38
Bhagīratha, (K) S. of Dilipa, Grandson of Aṁśumān; brought Gaṅgā to the earth II.26.167-168
Bharaṇi (Yāmyā), N. of a constellation II.5.46-48
Bharata, (K) Ṛṣabha's son I.33.51; India named as Bhārata I.33.52, P. 234 Ftn. 2
Bhārata Varṣa, India, I.48.73-137
— Etymology and importance I.45. 76-77
— Mountain Systems in I.45.88-93
— River systems in I.45.94-111
— People in I.45.115-134
Bhautya, See Manvantara
Bhavānī, See Satī (Umā)
Bhīmasena, A writer on Music. See Intro. p.L
Bhīmarathī or Bhīmā, A sacred river, a tributary of the Kṛṣṇā I.45.104
Bhṛgu, A mental son of god Brahmā I.59.88
— Curses Viṣṇu for killing his wife I.1.137; II.35.140-141
— Restores his wife to life II.35.143-147
— Bhṛgu's daughter Śrī (Lakṣmi) marries Nārāyaṇa I.28.2
— Bhṛgu's Progeny I.28.1 ff
Bhṛgutuṅga, A peak of mt. Himavat I.23.136-137. A Tīrtha specially meritorious for Śrāddha II.15.82
Bhuvana-Kośa, II.39.10-48
Bindusaras, A laka at the foot of Kailāsa I.47.24
Boar, Divine (See Varāha, Brahmā)
Brahmā, god, the creator of the Universe (Sometimes identified with Rudra and Nārāyaṇa)
Synthesis of Brahmā, Viṣṇu and Śiva II.5.86.121
Brahmā-Nārāyaṇa sleeps on the Cosmic waters I.6.1-3
— Uplifts the earth as a divine Boar I.6.11-27
— Born from the lotus in Viṣṇu's navel I.24.14
— Controvesy with Viṣṇu on personal superiority I.24.15-34
— Nine creations I.6.32-64
— Creates nine Prajāpatis for World creation I.9.61-63
— Creates Devas from his body I.9.2-22
— Creates other creatures from himself I.9.23-51
—Creates Rudra and Śakti I.9.64-78
— (and Viṣṇu) eulogize Śiva I.24.90-164
— Prescribes duties for different Āśramas (stages of life) I.8.173-181
— Classes of society, parts of Brahmā's body I.6.71
Brahmacārin, Duties of I.8.174 ff
Brahmaloka, II.39.80-81
Brahman, The concept of II.42.28-43
Brahma-Sāvarṇi, See Manvantara

Brahma-Tīrtha, A holy place for Śrāddha II.15.51
Brahma-Tuṅga, A holy place for Śrāddha II.15.82-83
Bṛhaspati, The preceptor of Devas
— rapes his brother's wife Mamatā II.37.37-42
— His wife abducted by Soma II.28.28 ff
— deceives Asuras by impersonating as Śukra II.36.17-38
— Planet Jupiter, The chariot of I.52.77-78
Budha, his birth-story II.28.27-43
— his son Purūravas from Ilā II.23.17
— Planet Mercury, his chariot described I.52.72 ff
Buddhist Bhikṣus, Intro. p. XLII

Caitraratha, A forest I.47.6
Cakṣu (r), Countries watered by I.47.44
Cākṣuṣa Manvantara, See Manvantara
Candra, The moon
— The birth story of II.28.1-11
— abducts Bṛhaspati's wife Tārā II.28.28
— married to twenty-seven daughters of Dakṣa II.28.21
— Candra and Pitṛs (changes in Moon's digits) I.52.54-71
— His position II.39.129
— Candra's chariot I.52.50-54
— N. of a Dvīpa (Mod. Tuva in Siberia) I.45.51-60
— N. of a Tīrtha sacred for Śrāddha II.15.28-29
Candrabhāgā (r), The Chinab I.45.94-96
Candraprabha, N. of a mountain I.47.4-5, p. 304 Ftn. 3
Caraka, A group of Brahmins I.61.10, 23-24
Carmaṇvatī, (r) The Chambal I.45.-97-98
Castes, (Varṇas) Formed in the Tretā Yuga I.8.154-164
— duties of castes I.8.171-181
— Echo of Puruṣa Sūkta I.6.71
Chariots (Divine), Given to Yayāti by Rudra II.31.18
— Remained with Pūru's line upto Parikṣit and disappeared with Janamejaya and reached Vasu II.31.21
— Given to Bṛhadratha of Magadha by Indra II.31.27
— taken by Bhīma after killing Jarāsandha and gifted to Kṛṣṇa II.31.27
— of Planets : The Sun I.51.54 ff
— Budha (Mercury) I.52.72-73
— Śukra (Venus) I.52.74-75
— Aṅgiras (Mars) I.52.76
— Bṛhaspati (Jupiter) I.52.77-78
— Śani (Saturn) I.52.79
— Rāhu I.52.80-81
— Ketu I.52.82-83
Cities of gods : On Mt. Meru, I.50.87-101
Clouds, Their formation I.51.22-26; Kinds I.51.28-37
Puṣkarāvartakas I.51.39-40
Parjanya I.51.43-50
Constellations (Nakṣatras) as distributed in Vīthis II.5.46-53
Construction of Towns, Forts etc. I.8.108-117
Continents (Dvīpas)
Their locations I.34.24-33
Caturdvīpī Theory I.34.46-57, Ft. Note 2 p. 241
Saptadvīpī Theory, p. 239 Ft. Note 1
Creation
by Rudra I.10.42-59
by Brahmā I.4.68-78.
Nine creations (1) Mahat, (2) Tanmātra or Bhūta, (3) Vikāra or Prākṛta, (4) Mukhya (of immobile beings), (5) Tiryaksrotas (of animals), (6) Ūrdhvasrotas (of divine beings), (7) Arvāksrotas (of mankind), (8) Anugraha (Sattva and Tamas), (9) Kaumāra (Both Prākṛta and Vaikṛta) I.6.55-64
See also under Avidyā Creation through Prakṛti I.4.17-82
Different theories: Introduction pp. XXIII-XXVI.
The Vedāntic-Sāṅkhya Theory I.4.16ff
The Purāṇic Theory I.4.68-78
The Sāṅkhya Theory I.5
Creation (i.e. recreation) after dissolution of the Universe I.7.72; II.41.9-38
Cyavana, Śiva's disciple I.23.162
S. of Bhṛgu, Etymology of the N. II.4.89; married to Sukanyā II.4.90

Dadhīca, A sage: Advocate of Śiva's presence at Dakṣa's sacrifice I.30-103-104
Curses Dakṣa I.30.106
Daitya (demons), (Dānavas, Yakṣas, Gandharvas, Apsaras etc.) Their origin II.7, II.8
— Daityas etc. Their progeny II.6.67-86, II.7
— Daitya domination for ten Yugas II.35.91
— Daityas killed by Raji II.30.86-88
— Daityas killed in Tārakāmaya battle II.6.69
Dakṣa (i) God Brahmā's son, Satī's father, insults Śiva I.30.46-49; Satī's self-immolation I.30-53-55; cursed by Rudra I.30.57-61; curses Rudra I.30.62-64
(ii) S. of Pracetas I.30.74-75; Performs sacrifice at Gaṅgādvāra I.30.94; Dispute with Dadhīca about Rudra's share I.30.103-106; Dakṣa's sacrifice destroyed at Devī's request I.30.139-159, I.30.167-171; Dakṣa submits to Śiva and is pardoned I.30.168-179; 286-294
— Dakṣa eulogised Śiva I.30.180-284
— Progeny of Dakṣa's daughters II. 6,7,8
Dāna, Charitable gifts II.18
Danu, Dakṣa's daughter and wife of Kaśyapa, progeny of, II.7
Daśaratha, K. of Ayodhyā, father of Rāma II.26.182; II.36.91
Daśāśvamedha, A holy centre for Śrāddha (under Vārāṇasī) II.15.45
Death, Process of II.40. 87-92
Devas, Sons of Aditi and Kaśyapa, The race of Devas I.31; The Three groups of (Yāma, Śukra and Tṛptimanta) I.31.5.ff
Devaki, mother of Kṛṣṇa but Aditi in former birth II.34.193-198
Devī, (Satī, Umā)
(i) Birth from Dakṣa I.30.40-41; married to Śiva; Self-immolation at Śiva's insult I.30.46-55
(ii) Born of Himavān and Menā I.30.70; II.11.7
(iii) Performed penance for Śiva II.11.10-16; married to Śiva I.30.70-73
Devikā (r) Mod. Deeg, a tributary to Ravi I.45.94-96
Dhanvantari, A physician, king of Vārāṇasi II.30.9-22
Dharma, (i) Duty,—General concept I.59-21-32
—as practice of Śiṣṭas I.59.33-38
—Characteristics of Dharma I.59.40-55
(ii) Duties of Castes (Varṇas) and Stages of life (āśramas) I.8.154-181
Dharma, N. of a Prajāpati, His race II.5
Dharmaprṣṭha, N. of a sacred place at Gayā II.49, 95-99
Dhātaki-Khaṇḍa, N. of a subcontinent I.49.119-120
Dhruva, (K) Son of Uttānapāda II.1.75-77
got eternal position II.1.78-79
The Polar Star, the pivot of heavenly bodies I.52.83 ff; controls divine luminaries I.52.83-99
Dhundhumāra (King Kuvalāśva), killed demon Dhundhu. Hence this epithet II.26.29-66
Dīrghatamas, A sage, son of Aśija and Mamatā, Birth story II.37.44-47; follows the Bull-cult (Godharma) II.37.47-59; Punishment and rescue by King Bali-II.37.60-65; Procreates sons for Bali II.37.83-86; Eye sight restored and named Gautama II. 37.90-92
Dissolution (Pralaya), End of the World
— (i) Nitya (Daily disappearance)
— (ii) Naimittika (Periodical) I.7. 40-65; II.38.196-202, 244-245
— (iii) Prākṛtika (of Prakṛti) II. 40.5-33
— (iv) Ātyantika (Final) I.7.38; II.40.41-45
— Ābhūta-Saṁplava II.36.211, 237-245; II.39.336-351
Intro. pp. XXVI-XXVII
Diti, W. of Kaśyapa, mother of Daityas: Diti's progeny II.6.49 ff

Earth, Caturdvīpī theory II.34.46ff
Saptadvīpī theory II.34.23-31

Milked by Pṛthu II.1.96-97, 148-190
Ekārṇava, Cosmic Ocean (doctrine) I.6.1-3; p. 43, Ft. n. 1
Elephant Lore, II.8.203-235; Etymology of synonyms for elephants, II.8.227-228
Embryology, I.14.16-25
Evolution of the Universe: Sāṅkhya Theory I.5
The Purāṇic Theory I.4.68-78

Food-articles, Prescribed for Śrāddha II.16.6-11a; II.21.1-12
— Prohibited for Śrāddha II.16.11b-17

Gajacchāyā (or Kuñjaracchāyā), a special occasion (Parvan) II.21.11-12; Ft. Note 4, p. 639
Gaṇḍakī (r) I.45.94-96
Gandhamādana (1) N. of a mountain I.34.35, p. 239 Ft. N. 2
Gandharvas (& Apsaras), Birth from Kaśyapa & Muni: Their Names, descendants etc. II.8
Gaṇeśa (Nikumbha), Śiva's servant—Vacator of Vārāṇasi II.30.30-53.
Gaṅgā, Heavenly I.47.26-29 - Descent & held up by Śiva I.47.30-36—Three ways (Stages?) of flowing (Tripathagā) I.47.26-40, p. 306-307 Ft. No. 2
—Seven channels (& their identification) I.47.37-39, P. 307 Ft. n. 1&2
—The regions watered by I.47.45-49
—Her epithets (with etymology): Bhāgīrathī 47.31-40, Jāhnavī II.29. 51-55
Gautama, (i) One of the seven sages I.3.25-28
(ii) Transmitter of this Vā. P. to Niryantara II. 41.63
(iii) An incarnation of Śiva I.23.151-152
(iv) Name of Dīrghatamas (See Dīrghatamas)
Gayā, A famous holy place in Bihar
— Glory (Māhātmya of Gayā) II. Chs. 43 to 50
— Gayāsura, The story of-II.44
— The story of Śilā on Gayāsura's head II.45
— Gayāśiras or Phalgu Tīrtha II.49. 28-29
— Area of Gayā and Gayāśiras II.43.26
— Procedure of Pilgrimage at Gayā II. Chs. 48 and 49; Intro. P. LXV
Gayāvalas, Priests appointed by Brahmā at Gayā II.44.73.81
Geographical divisions of the earth and their first rulers. I.33.9-20, p. 231 Ft. ns. 1,2,3
Godāvarī (r) I.45.112; Sacred for Śrāddha II.15.19
Godharma, The Bull-cult II.37.47, 54-55
Gokarṇa, (i) An incarnation of Śiva I.23.161
(ii) A holy place in Karnatak sacred for Śrāddha II.15.21-22
Gomatī, A sacred river I.2.8, I.45.95
Grāma, (a musical term) Basic scales of the seven notes. Three grāmas: (1) Ṣaḍja (2) Madhyama and (3) Gāndhāra. See Intro. p. XLIX and II.24.36 and p. 662 Ftn. 2
Guṇas (and creation of the Universe): I.5 and Intro. XXIV

Haihaya, (K) II.32.4-Haihaya line of Yadu II.32
Hairaṇyata (or Hiraṇvat) : Country associated with r. Hiraṇvatī (=Zarafshan) adjacent to Sogdiana I.45.6-20, p. 285 Ftn. 2
Halāhala, Deadly poison churned out of the sea I.54.56-62
(also Kālakūṭa) Drunk by Śiva I.54.89-94
Harivarṣa, A continent I.34.29
Hells, Names of Hells II.39.146-149 Tortures in-I.14.25-31; II.39. 146-184
— Post-hell evolution I.14.33-39
Hemakūṭa (m), A varṣa-parvata-I.34.24-27
Himālaya, Himavān, (i) A mountain I.45.96; I.34.24-27.
(ii) Father of Umā I.30.70-71
(iii) Residence of Śveta an incarnation of Śiva I.23.107-108
Hiraṇyakaśipu, A demon-king: Birth II.6.57-58; N. explained II.6.60; Father of Prahlāda II.6.70; Killed by

Nṛsiṁha II.6.66
Hiraṇyākṣa, Demon killed by Varāha II.35-78
— Sons of Hiraṇyākṣa II.6.67-68
Horse-sacrifice, of Sagara II.26.163
Hūṇa, A people of Bhārata Varṣa I.45.135-137

Ikṣu (Cakṣu?) (r) The Oxus I.47.37-39 p. 307 Ftn 2
Ikṣvāku, K. Born of Manu II.23.4; II.26.8
— His sons Vikukṣi, Nimi, Daṇḍa II.26.9
— Ikṣvāku dynasty II.26
— Dynasty extinct with Sumitra in Kali Age II.37.286-288
Ilā, Daughter of Manu II.23.7
Marries Budha, mother of Purūravas II.23.15-17
Transformed into a male (Sudyumna) II.23.18
Ilāvṛta, A subcontinent (Around the Pamirs) I.46.11-16
Incarnations, (i) of Viṣṇu II.36.68-111
(ii) of Śiva I.23.105-214
Indras, General characteristics and Powers of II.3.6-20; Present Indra—Mahābala II.3.5
(ii) Vyāsa in the 7th Dvāpara I.23.127-128

Jahnu, (K) S. of Suhotra and Keśikā—drinks up the Gaṅgā II.29.51-55
Jaigiṣavya, An incarnation of Śiva I.23.127-128
Jamadagni, Exchange of Carus and Jamadagni's birth as a special case II.29.64-82;—married to Reṇukā—Birth of Paraśurāma II.29.86-88
Jambūdvīpa, Geography of Jaṁbūdvīpa I. Chs. 34 & 35
— Mountain-systems in I.34.13-27
— Divisions of Jaṁbūdvīpa I.34.28-ff
— Founder King Agnidhra I.33.11
Janaka (K). II.27.4-5; Founded the city of Mithilā II.27.6
Janamejaya, S. of Parikṣit—established Vājasaneyika Brāhmaṇas II.37.246
— cursed by Vaiśaṁpāyana & crippled II.37.246-251
Janamejaya, (Lohagandhi) II.31.22-24; His horse-sacrifice II.31.25-26
Lost divine chariot, sought refuge in Indrota II.31.25
— loses divine chariot given by Indra to Bṛhadratha II.31.27
Jārudhi, A mountain I.41.66-73
Jātukarṇa (—karṇya), Teacher of Kṛṣṇa Dvaipāyana in Vā. P. Text Transmission II.41.66
Jaya (gods), Birth from Brahmā's mouth II.5.5; 6-4
— different names in different yugas II.5.8-19; II.6 33-47
— Neglect of Brahmā's advice II.6.9-12
— Cursed by Brahmā and pardoned II.6.14-30
Jayanti, daughter of Indra, Deputed to Śukra for service during penance II.35.149-151; II.36.4-11.
Jivas, Number of, in each species II.39.195-208
Jvara, Fever, types of, I.30.296-302
Jyāmagha, (K) Banished, wandered II.33. 29-31
— married Śaibyā, a henpecked husband II.33.32.35
— His race II.33. 36-48

Kadru, Wife of Kaśyapa, mother of Serpents II.8-65
Kailāsa (mt), Location I.42.2-22; Description I.41, I.4 7.1
Kakṣivān & Cakṣus, Sons of a Śūdra woman and Dirghatamas, attain Brahminhood II.37.70,73
Kakutstha, S. of King Śaśāda II.26.20-23
Kāla (Time), Nature of I.31.24ff; I.32.6-35; Units of I.57-6-20
— identified with Yuga I.32.6
Kālāgni, Fire at the end of a Kalpa II.38.156-161
Kālañjara (Bundelkhand, M.P.), Place sacred for Śrāddha, Residence of Śveta II.15.93, I.23.191-192
Kali Age, Life in I.58.31-74; a relieving feature II.36.115-125; II.37. 382-405
Kaliṅga, Orissa—A deśa and a people in Bhārata I.45.124-131
Kalmāṣapāda, K. Saudāsa turned demon I.2.10, II.26.176
Kalpa, Serial order of I.21.26-34, I.22.9 ff; transition between 2 Kalpas I.7; I.21

— the end of II.38.120-201
— Identified with Rudra's incarnations I.23.57-74
Kaṁsa, His attempt to kill Devakī but spared on Vasudeva's promise II.-34.219-228. killed sons of Devaki II.34.172-173
(Kanyā) Kumārī, Sacred Place for Śrāddha II.15.28-29
Kapila, a sage, an incarnation of Viṣṇu, burns the sons of Sagara II.26.147
Karma, Identified with destiny I.9.53-56; Law of Karman inexorable I.9.52
Kārtavīrya, Sahasrārjuna, a Haihaya King, Son of Kṛtavīrya II.32.8; Boons from Datta II.32. 10-13; emperor of seven continents II.32, 21-23; Exploits II.32.14-37; Capital Māhiṣmati II.32.26; Rāvaṇa Defeated and taken captive II.32. 35-36; cursed by Āpava II.32.38-47, II.33.3-13; Killed by Paraśurāma II.32.47
Kaśyapa (Mārica), Creation of II.3, II.5.54-76; Wives of II.5.55; Kaśyapa's race, Diti's progeny II.6; Danu's progeny II.7; Dynasties of Yakṣa and Gandharvas II.8
Kauśāmbī, A city (Mod. Kosam, U.P.) II.37.267
Kāverī (r) A sacred river in South India I.45.104
Ketu, Chariot of, I.52.82.83
Ketumāla, A Varṣa, I.35.34-41; I. 44
Kiṁpuruṣa, a Sub-continent I.46.4-7
Kings, Future dynasties of, Intro. pp. LIII-LIX, II.37. 289-377
Kolāhala, The twelfth battle between Devas & Asuras. In this Raji killed demons II.35.85-86
Krauñcadvīpa, A continent I.49.58-70, 134
Kṛcchra, a rite of expiation, II.16.67
Kṛṣṇa, His birth, II.34.174
Viṣṇu's incarnation II.34.192-198
Celebrations of birth II.34. 199-203
Kṛṣṇa withdrew his Viṣṇu form and was taken to Nanda (ibid) 205-210.
Accused of Prasena's murder for Syamantaka theft (ibid) 35-40
Quarrel of Balarāma for Syamantaka, Involvement in Syamantaka scandal II.34.20-98; Marries Jāṁbavān's daughter (ibid.) 47-51; Viṣṇu's incarnation (ibid.) 39-55, 191-245.
Kṛṣṇa's wives II.34.233-235
Kṛṣṇa's sons (ibid) 234-245.
Kṛṣṇa Dvaipāyana, S. of Kālī and Parāśara I.60.11; II.9.84
Kṛṣṇā-Veṇī, (r) (Mod. Kṛṣṇā) a-sacred river, I.45.104
Kṛta Age, Characteristics I.8.49-63 Transition from Kṛta to Tretā I.8.69-76
Kṣattriyas attaining Brahminhood II.29. 111-114.
Kubera, Lord of wealth, Parentage, Etymology of name & Progeny II 9.35-41
Kuru (Uttara), Western Siberia II. 45.11-42
Kurukṣetra, Sacred place for Śrāddha II.15-64
— Sacrificial session at I.1.10-12
Kuśa-dvīpa, A continent I.49. 48-57
Kusumapura (Mod. Patna, Bihar) II.37.313

Lakṣmī (Śrī), Daughter of Bhṛgu, consort of Viṣṇu I.28.2
Lauhitya or Lohīta (r), Brahmaputrā in Assam II.15.95
Lavaṇa, A demon killed by Śatrughna. II.26.184
Liṅga, Appearance of I.55.19-27; eulogy by Viṣṇu I.55.30-50
Lohitā, The river Brahmaputrā I. 45.96.
Loka, The higher worlds II.39. 138-142
— The Nether worlds II.39.143-184
— Brahmaloka II.39.80-81
— Vairāja Loka II.39.61-79
— Distances in the planets and Lokas II.39 128-142; II.39. 211-223.
Lokāloka (mt.) I.49. 144-147, 157-159; I.50. 205-207
Luminaries. Their locations, dimensions and movements I.51
Arrangement of I.53; II. 5.47-53
Lunar Race, II.29

Madhu-Kaiṭabha, Slaying of I.25.29-53
Magadha, N. of a people in Bhāratavarṣa I.45.123
Mahā-meru see Meru
Mahālaya, Region of Śiva I.23.

166-67, 168-69; (Oṁkāranātha or Amareśvara in M.P.) Sacred place for Śrāddha II.15.80, 82.
Mahānadi alias Mandagāminī (r), A river rising from Ṛkṣa mountain I.45.107
Mahā-purāṇas, List of, II-42.3-11
Mahat, The first principle I.4.25,27, 42-45
Mahendra (mt.) (i) A Kula-parvata in Bhāratavarṣa I.45.88
(ii) mt. sacred for Śrāddha II.15. 17
Māhiṣmati (=Maheśvara, M.P.) Kārtavīrya's capital II.32.26
Malaya, A Kula-parvata in Bhāratavarṣa I.45.88
Mānasa, A Lake I.42.47-48
Sacred tanks at Gayā II.49.1; II.49.1-13
Mandākinī (r) I.45.99-101
Mandara (mt.) in Bhāratavarṣa I.45. 90
Mandehas, Demons daily attacking the Sun-god I.50.162-165
Manu, Born of half the body of Brahmā I.10.7, 10-11; His wife Śatarūpā born of Brahmā's other half I.10.10-11
His progeny I.10.15.ff
Manu, Vaivasvata, Son of Vivasvān & Saṁjñā, Brother of Yama and Yamunā II.22.37-38
His progeny II.23
Manvantara, Manu-period—each period consists of Manu, seven sages, gods, Indra, sons of Manu p. 457, Ftn. 1
— 14 in number; their names II.1.3-4
— period 74 Yugas I.61.138-140
— Transition from one Manvantara to another I.61.145-180
— Previous Manu-periods II.1.1-68
— Future Manus II.38.9ff
— Sāvarṇi Manu II.38.59 69
— Dharma Sāvarṇi II.38.70-86
— Ṛtu (Rudra) Sāvarṇi II.38.86-99
— Raucya II.38.100.109
— Bhautya II.38.110-118
Mārīca, Race of II.13
Mars, The chariot of I.52.76
Marut-gods, Birth story II.6.84-110; Assignment of zones to Marut gods II.6.111-134
Measurement of distance (Units) II. 39.117-127
Medhātithi, Son of Svāyaṁbhuva Manu I.33.9; K. of Plakṣa continent, Seven sons assigned seven sub-continents I.33.32-34
Megasthenes and Candragupta, Intro. pp. LIX-LX
Meru (mt.), Identified with the Pamirs I.34.13 ff; I.35
Milking of the Earth, List of persons milking the earth II.1.148-190
Milky Way, I.47.26-29
Mithilā, Capital of Janaka II.27.6
Months, Ancient and modern names I.52.2-26; p. 354-55 Ftn. 4
Moon, The Lord of Stars (Dakṣa's daughters) II.5.53
— His chariot and movements I.52. 49-71
Mountains, Kulaparvatas I.45.2 ff
Muhūrta, A unit of Time I.50.168-174
Mukhya Sarga, (Creation of immobile beings) I.6.57
Muṇḍapṛṣṭha, (At Gayā). Place Sacred for Śrāddha II.15.102
Music, Science of II. Chs. 24 & 25; Introduction pp. XLVIII-LI

Nābhi, K. of Himavarṣa I.1.74; I.33.41-50
Nagna, Nudes, not covered by Vedas II.16.27 ff
— Should not be allowed to see Śrāddha food II.16.24
Nahuṣa, S. of king Āyu, I.2.23; married to Virajā II.11.88; His progeny II. 31.11ff
Naimiṣa, (i) Forest on the Gomatī, the venue of the Purāṇic Sattra I.2. 8, 24-34
— Description of the Sattra I.2.24-33
(ii) Forest in Kurukṣetra I.1.10-12
—Etymology of the name I.1.164-166, I.2.7-12
Naimiṣeyas, Brahmin performers of the Sattra in Naimiṣa forest I.21 ff. Kill Purūravas I.2.18-21
Performance of a Sattra I.2.23-32
Nakṣatras (Constellations), Distribution in Vithis II.5.46-53
Nandana, A park of gods I.36.11
Nārada, A sage, Son of Parameṣṭhin II.4. 137-140
S. of Kaśyapa—mental son of Brahmā I.1-118

Brother of Arundhati and Parvata gives Arundhati to Vasiṣṭha II.9.79-80
Instructs Dakṣa's sons and frustrates Dakṣa's mission of procreation II.4, 137-140, 146-159
— Cursed by Dakṣa II.4.150-158
—A musician, Intro. p. 1
Nārāyaṇa, Etymology of the name I.6.5
— Sleeps on Cosmic Waters I.6.1-3, p. 43 Ftn. 1.
Narmadā, (i) A sacred river I.45.99-101; Association of Sahasrārjuna II.32.28-29
(ii) W. of Purukutsa and mother of Trasaddasyu II.26.74
Nāṭya-Śāstra, mention of, Intro. P. L Ftn. 3; P. Li Ftn. 1
Netherworlds (Narakas), Description of seven I.50.10-54
Nikuṁbha, Evacuator of Vārāṇasi for Śiva II.30.30-53
— Son of Haryaśva II.26.62-63
Nilakaṇṭha, Origin of the epithet I.54. 89-90
Nimi, S. of Ikṣvāku II.26.9; Ruler of Videha (Bihar) II.27
— Founder of the city Jayanta II.27. 1-3
Non-Vedic Religions, Intro. XLIII
Non-violence, Purāṇas in favour of (even in sacrifices) I.57. 98-101
Nṛsiṁha, Incarnation of Viṣṇu, Kills Hiraṇyakaśipu II.6.66
Numerals, Technical names II.39. 93-102

Omens, Foreboding death I. 19
Oṁkāra, Description of I.20.1-22
— Esoteric explanation I.26
— Characteristics of realization of Oṁkāra. I.20.27-29

Pallavas and Pāradas, Tribes defeated and punished by Sagara, II.26.135. 140
Pañcalakṣaṇas & Vāyu Purāṇa, Intro. pp. XXII-XXXII
Pañcaśikha, a disciple of Śiva I.23. 131-132 (Probably a Sāṁkhya teacher like Kapila and Āsuri mentioned there).
Parāśara, Son of Śakti and Adṛśyanti I.1.160; II.9.83
father of Vyāsa I.1.160; II.9.84
descendants of II.9.84-87
Paraśurāma, Birth II.29.86-89; Cause of his Kṣattriya nature II.29.64-77; Kills Kārtavirya II.32.47
Parikṣit, Son of Abhimanyu, Father of Janamejaya II.37.245,246
Parvans, days of changes of the moon I.56.32ff
Pavitra, a ring of Darbha grass around finger II.12.10
Phalaśruti, of hearing Vāyu Purāṇa II.41.51-54, 68-70
— of Gayā Māhātmya II.50.75-79
Phalgu (r) II.49.28 ff.
Philosophy, Advaita II.42. 28-43
Piśāca II.8.251; Sixteen Varieties II. 8.253-256; description II.8.261-273; Brahmā grants boons II.8.274-282; —an anecdote of Piśācas & Rākṣasas II.8.108-121
Pitṛyāna, Path of Pitṛs I.8.187-189
Pitṛs, Manes, Born of Svadhā. Their birth, their classes and mental daughters II.11.2-100; Summary in Ftn. 1 on pp. 578-79; Pitṛs: amūrtas (formless), Samūrtas (endowed with form) II.10.55-56, II.11.100
Pitṛs and Devas as fathers and Sons II.10.18-23-34
Pitṛs-Saptārcis. Their Mantras II. 12.16, 21-27
Plakṣa dvīpa, I.49
Prabhāsa, A holy place in Saurastra II.15.40
Prahlāda, Hiraṇyakaśipu's son II.6.70
His period of rule II.35.70
Defeated by Indra after churning of Amṛta II.35.79
Prajāpati, Stay in Ekārṇava I.6.1-3
Prākṛta Sarga, The first creation of Brahmā, Intro XXVI; I.6.58-61
Pramati, Incarnation of Viṣṇu to kill Mlecchas I.58.73-74
Pratisarga, Dissolution and recreation of the Universes I.7; II.40 and 41
Pratyāhāra, Restraint over sense-organs II.15.131
Prayāga, Allahabad—a sacred place for Śrāddha II.15.92
Capital of the Kingdom of Purūravas II.29.46-47
Priyavrata (K.), Son of Manu, married to Kanyā daughter of Kardama I.33.7-8
— crowned seven sons over seven continents I.33.10 ff

Pṛthu, King, Son of Vena, Story of birth II.1.126
— The first emperor coronated by Devas II.1.129-131
— Established law and order II.1.132-134
— Milked the earth II.1.150-174
Pulaha (a sage), I.31.16-18
Pulastya, I.31.16-18
Purāṇa, Characteristics of, Intro. pp. XXII-XXXII
Purūravas, Son of Budha and Ilā II. 29.1
— Inherited the kingdom of Pratiṣṭhāna II.23. 22-23
— Greatness of p.II.29.1-3
— Urvaśi marries Purūravas II.29.5-14
— Marriage contract broken through Gandharvas II.29.16-27
For re-union performs Yajñas II. 29.38-45; had six sons from Urvaśi II.29. 48-49
Puṣkara, a lake, a sacred place for Śrāddha II.15.40

Rādhā-Kṛṣṇa cult, II.42.44-53
Rāhu - His chariot I.52.80-81; Joining to the Moon on the full-moon day I.52.81
Raji, (K.) helps Indra to defeat Daityas and is cheated by Indra about Indra-hood II.30.77-90
Rākṣasa and Yakṣa, Their etymologies II.8.97,98
Sons of Khaśā II.8.158-187
Rākṣasas-Seven tribes of and descriptions II.9.57-63
Rāma, S. of Jamadagni, Kṣattriya Nature due to interchange of caru II.29.64-83
Incarnation of Viṣṇu to kill Kṣattriyas II.36-90
Rāma, S. of Daśaratha, II.26.183; Incarnation for killing Rāvaṇa II. 36.91
Kills Rāvaṇa II.26 190-196
Rāma's sons, Lava and Kuśa II.26. 197
Ramaṇaka, A continent identified with Sogdiana I.45.2-5
Raudri Sṛṣṭi, Rudra's creation I.10. 42-59
Raurava, A hell II.39.146
Rāvaṇa, His description and his previous birth II.9.42-45; Span of Life II.9-46-48; Killed by Rāma II.9.-48; II.26.194, 196
Recreation of the Universe, I.7.72, II.41-9-38, Intro. p. XXVI·
Religions and Philosophy in Va. P. Intro. pp. LI-LIII
Religious sects in Vā. P., Intro. pp. XLI-XLIII
Reṇukā, Princess, Kamali m. to Jamadagni, Paraśurāma's mother II.29. 86b-88
Review of the contents of the Purāṇa II.41.44-45
Ṛgveda, Division among principal teachers I.60.24-31
See Ftns. pp. 431-432
River System in Bhārata (Sec Bhārata Varṣa)
Ṛkṣa parvata (mt.) I.45.88; Ftn. 1 on p. 293
Ṛṣabha (i) An incarnation o Śiva I.23.133-134
(ii) Son of King Nābhi and Marudevi, father of Bharata I.33.51-52
Rohiṇi, (i) A constellation (See p. 501 *Ft. note)
(ii) Vasudeva's wife II.34. 159-162
Romaharṣaṇa, the Sūta I.1.13-17
Royal dynasties of Kali age, II.37
Rudra, Aṣṭa-mūrti concept—Intro. XXXV;The 'Crier'—Eleven Rudras I.9.71-73—These Rudras born of Kaśyapa and Surabhi II.5.68-70
See Intro. pp. XXXIV-XXXV
Rudra-Sāvarṇi, See Manvantaras
Rukmiṇi, Princess of Vidarbha, marries Kṛṣṇa II.34.233
Her sons II.34.237-240

Sacrifices, Spread of Yajña-cult I.29. 12-13; p. 187 Ftn. 2,3
Sacrificial horse of Sagara II.26.143., 163-164. Loss and recovery II.26. 144-151
Rāma's Sacrifice II.36.91
Sacrificial Session at Naimiṣa I.2.23-32
Sagara, Etymology II.26. 132
(K.) Son of Bāhu, born in Aurva's hermitage II.26.132
Educated by Aurva II.26.134
attempts to exterminate his enemies who seek refuge with Vasiṣṭha (Ibid) 135-137; Pardoned

but with humiliation 138-149. His horse sacrifice (Ibid) 143. Sons burnt by Kapila (ibid) 144-147. His grandson Aṁśumān propitiates Kapila and brings back the horse. Kapila grants sea status of Sagara's son II.26.150

Sages, Seven (Saptarṣis) I.31.16-18
Rebirth of II.4.37-45
Their race II.4.73 ff. Their families and progeny I.28; Mind-born sages I.9.61-63; Race of Sages II.9

Sahya, The Western Ghats. A Kulaparvata in India I.45.88

Śaka-dvipa, A Purāṇic continent identified with ancient Scythia I.49. 73-102

Śākalya, A Ṛgvedic Sage, Death of I.60.35-60

Śakrajit and Syamantaka: episode, II. 34.20-95

Śakti, (i) Creation I.9.69.70; epithets of Śakti I.9.78-79
(ii) S. of Vasiṣṭha and Arundhatī I.2.9
Curses K. Kalmāṣapāda I.2.10
Father of Parāśara I.2.11

Śālagrāma, (Near Kedar, V.P.)
Place sacred for Śrāddha II.15.88

Śālmali dvipa, A Purāṇic continent I.49.29-45

Sāma-Veda, No. of Mantras I.61.63, Intro XLVII

— Schools and Teachers of I.61.27-45, p.440 Ftn. 1.

Samudra-Manthana : the fourth battle between Devas and Asuras II.35.74

Saṁvartaka, (i) World-drowning clouds II.38.162-173
(ii) Fire annihilating the world II.38.156

Śaṁyu, S. of Bṛhaspati
Interlocutor in Śrāddha-Kalpa II. Ch. 10 to 21

Sanatkumāra, Brahmā's Mind-born son like Sanaka I.9.65-66
Narrator of Gayā Māhātmya II.43-50

Śanda and Amarka, Śukra's sons II.4.76-77; side with Devas II.36.63-66

Śani (Saturn), son of Sun and Chāyā II.22.50-51
See under 'Chariot' for his chariot.

Sāṅkhya, A school of Philosophy II. 40.2-3; Intrd. LII

Sannyāsa, The 4th Stage of life, Duties of I.8.179
Expiation for violating the rules I.18. 1-31
The last stage in Yoga I.17
Way of facing death I.19.33-40

Sapta Godāvara, Solangipur (A.P.) or the confluence of the Godāvarī in the sea. Places sacred for Śrāddha II.15.19

Sarasvati (r), A river in Kurukṣetra I.45.94-96

Sarayū, A sacred river I.45.94-96

Sarga, See creation

Śatadru (the Sutlej) I.45.94-96

Śatarūpā, Manu's consort, born of Brahmā (See Manu)

Sati, Śiva's consort I.30.41-55

Satrājit, Father of Satyabhāmā II.26. 55. Obtained the Syamantaka-jewel from Sun-god II.34.20-28
(For Syamantaka episode see Kṛṣṇa)

Satyabhāmā, Kṛṣṇa's wife II.26.55

Satyavati, Pitṛs of Satyavati (story) II.51-66

Sheaths around the Universe I.49.152-156; I.50.82-85

Śilā, The sacred slab at Gayā, the story of II. 45, 46

Śilā-Tirtha II.46; Ftn. pp. 929-930

Śiśumāra, Gangetic porpoise imagined in the Sky I.52.91-95

Sītā (r), Yarkand-Tarim (The eastern 'extension' of Sītā is Hwang-Ho of China) I.42.17-24

Sītā, Rāma's consort (See Dāśarathi Rāma)

Śiva, Born as Brahmā's son I.27.4; I.25.13-16

— Called Rudra 'The crier' after birth I.9.71-74

— Eight names and eight forms of I.27.6-16, 49-58

— Created non-procreating progeny I.10.42-52

— Cause of his blue throatedness I.54.48-102

— Names of his forms and consorts of, Intro. XXXIV-XXXV

— The supreme deity I.1.185

— His highest abode (city) II.39.230-309

— Śiva's incarnations & disciples I.23.107-214

— Origin of his Liṅga-image I.55.19-27; Intro. XXXVI

— Śiva-Viṣṇu identity I.25.14-29

Śiva's eulogy
— by god Brahmā I.54. 65-77
— by Brahmā and Viṣṇu I.24.90-164; I.55.30-50
— by Dakṣa I.30.180-284
— by Śukra II.35.162-203
Skanda, Birth-story II.11.20-36; His exploits II.11.37-50; Commander of Deva Army II.11.47-48
His evolution as a deity, Intro. XXXVII
Solar Chariot, Significance of its parts and horses I.51.54 ff
Names of devas etc. accompanying him I.52.1 ff and p. 354 Ftns. 1-4
Śrāddha-Kalpa
— Proper Time for I.56
— Procedure of II.10.15 ff; II.12.7-32; II, Chs. 13 and 14
— Qualifications of invitee II.21.22-31
— Precedence among invitees II.17. 50-58
— Ineligible Brāhmaṇas II.21.31-42
— Defilers of rows of invitees II.17.66-83
— Yogins preferred as invitees II.10. 66-79
— Vessels suitable for II.12. 1-5
— Articles of food and meat recommended for Śrāddha II.21; 1.12; II.16.6-11a
— Articles etc. to be avoided at Śrāddha II.16.11b-17
— People polluting food for Śrāddha by sight II.16.24, 27-40
— Things prohibited for Śrāddha II.16.43-48
— Purification of articles for Śrāddha II.16.50-58
— Personal purification of the Śrāddha-performer II.16.60-76
— Fruits of Śrāddha-performance under various constellations and days of the week II.20
— Fruits of Śrāddha on various Tithis II.19.10-19
— Holy places for Śrāddha II.15.1-125
— Places to be avoided for Śrāddha II.16.20-23
Śriśailam, Śriparavata (Mt. in Andhra Pradesh) Place sacred for Śrāddha II.15.28-29
Sudeṣṇā, Queen of K. Bali II.37.68; sends a maid-servant to Dirghatamas II.37.69-74; begets Anenas from him II.37.76-79
Sudyumna, A bi-sexual son of Manu II.23.25-28
Śukra, Son of Bhṛgu and Divyā II.4. 74
— His other names II.4.75
— His sons II.4.76-77
— Obtains Saṁjīvanī Mantra from Śiva II.36.1-2
— Duped by Jayanti in marriage II.36.6-12
— Curses Daityas II.36.35-37
— Śukra's eulogy of Śiva II.35.162-203
Sun (Sūrya), 12 Suns, their distribution one per month I.52 (Ch.)
Sun-worship, Intro. p. XLI
Sūta, Birth during sacrifice as a mixed caste I.1.28-33
Syamantaka episode, Syamantaka jewel gifted by the Sun-god to Satrājit II.34.20-28.; Satrājit gives it to his brother Prasenajit (ibid) 30; Kṛṣṇa's request for it refused (ibid) 32; Prasenajit killed in hunting and jewel taken away by Jāmbavān 33-34. To clear the people's suspicion Kṛṣṇa brings the jewel from Jāmbavān, returns it to Satrājit 37; Śatadhanvā kills Satrājit & takes the jewel which Akrūra takes 58-59; Kṛṣṇa kills Śatadhanvā 74; Akrura fled away with the jewel, performed Yajñas and outbreak of a famine at Dvārakā in the absence of Syamantaka 79-90; Akeūra returns to Dvāraka, Kṛṣṇa's open charges in the Assembly against Akrūra for Syamantaka 92-94; Akrūra hands over the jewel in the Assembly and Kṛṣṇa returns in to Akrūra 95-96. (all refs. from ch. 34)
Tala, N. of a nether world II.39.146, 153
Tālajaṅgha, S. of Jayadhvaja II.52. 50
His 100 sons known as Tālajaṅghas II.52.51-52
Tāmravarṇā, (R.) Tāmraparṇi in South India I.45.105
Tapoloka, One of the seven higher worlds II.39.140
Tārakāmaya, Battle between Devas and Asuras for Tārā abducted by Soma II.35.74

Teacher-Transmitters of the Vā. P. II.41.58-66; Intro. XXII
Time, Units of, II.38.213-226; Muhūrta and other Divisions of, II.6.37-45. Systems of calculating : Saura, Saumya, Nākṣatra and Sāvana (See Kāla). Saptarṣi era, Krauñca andDhruva era I.57.17, 18
Tiryaksrotas, Second Type of creation (See Creation)
Tradition, Historical in Va. P., II.37; Intro. pp. LIII-LIX
Tretā Yuga, Characteristics of I.8.74 ff; I.57.39-125
— Agricultural development in I.8. 124-137
— Evolution of Varṇas (Castes) I.8. 154-164
— Duties of Varṇas I.8. 171-181
Trinity, Synthesis of Brahmā, Viṣṇu and Maheśa II.5.86-121
Triśaṅku (=Satyavrata) K. in the Solar race, Story of II.76-116
Turvasu, S. of Yayāti, cursed by Yayāti for his refusal to accept father's old age II.31.40-43
Tuṅgabhadrā, A sacred river, a tributary of Kṛṣṇā I.45.104

Umātuṅga, Mt. sacred for Śrāddha II.15.81
Units of Time I.57.6-20
Upasaṁhāra, See Pratisarga (Dissolution of the Universe)
—Introd. p. XXVI
Ūrvaśī, A celestial lady, Her contract marriage with Purūravas II.29. 5-14. Her six sons 29.48-49
Returns to Gandharvas II.29.16-27
Uttarakuru, A sub-continent of Jaṁbūdvīpa (Corresponding to Western Siberia) I.35.42-47; I.45.21-50

Vaikṛta creation (=Ūrdhvasrotas)-See Creation
Vaiṣṇavism, Intro. pp. XXXIX-XLI
Vaiśaṁpāyana, Preceptor of Yājñavalkya, Story of his punishment to Y, I.61.17-19
Vaivasvata, A Manvantara. Creations in II, Chs. 3&4
Vārāṇasī, A sacred place for Śrāddha II.15.93-94
Vasiṣṭha (i) Brahmā's mind-born son I.9.61-63
One of the Saptarṣis in Vaivasvata Manvantara II.4.46-47
Śakti's father I.2-9
Protects tribals from Sagara II.26.135-137
(ii) A Vyāsa I.23.131-132
(iii) A disciple of one of the incarnations of Śiva I.23.149
Vasu (Upāricara), (K.) A pious King, Fall for his view on sacrificial Hiṁsā I.57.103-111
Vasudeva (See Ānakadundubhi)
Vāsudeva (See Kṛṣṇa)—exchanges Kṛṣṇa for Nanda Gopa's daughter II.34.209-210
—Kaṁsa spares the child (ibid) 211-213
Vāyu, Narrator of the Vā. P. I.2.34-41
Vāyu Purāṇa, Contents I.1.46-177; I.3.2-22
Pādas of I.4.12-14
Vedas, Compilation of and distribution among disciples I.60-11-30
— Branches of Veda and their teachers I.61.1-77 and Ftns
— Personified II.42.69-87
Vena, King Pṛthu's father: punished for his bad rule II.1.107-125
Vikukṣi, Son of Ikṣvāku, Called Śaśāda II.26.12-19
— Ruled in Ayodhyā II.26.20-23
Vindhya, A Kulaparvata in India I.45.88
Vipāśā, (r) the Beas I.45.99-101
Virocana, a demon-king, son of Bali (but of Prahlāda in the Text), killed by Indra II.35.80
Viṣṇu—Viṣṇu and Śiva identified I. 25.19-29
— Greatness of Viṣṇu II.35.4-57
— Sleeps on Cosmic Waters after Pralaya I.24.5-14
— Viṣṇu's incarnations II.36.72 ff.
— Viṣṇu kills Bhṛgu's wife II.35.139
— Cursed by Bhṛgu (cause of Viṣṇu's incarnations II.35. 140-141
Vṛṣṇi, A king, Son of Sāttvata II.34. 1-2; Race of Vr. II. Ch. 34
Vyāsa, Kṛṣṇa Dvaipāyana, S. of Parāśara and Satyavatī II.9.84; Classified the Vedas and gave to his disciples I.60.11-23 I.61-47
— Incarnations called Vyāsa I.23. 109-214

Yadu, Eldest son of Yayāti II.31.16
The Haihaya line II.32.4;Kārtavīrya a Haihaya II. 31.8-10
Yādavas, The race of Yadu II. Ch. 32
Yājñavalkya, A sage, Asked to recant the Yajurveda I.61.12-19
— Received Yajurveda from the Sun-god I.61.21
— Dispute at Janaka's sacrifice I.66. 35-62; defeats Śākalya I.60.50-59
— Disciples of Yājñavalkya (Vājis) I.61.24-26
Yajurveda, No. of Mantras I.61.64-66 and for white Yajurveda 67-86. See Intro. pp. XLVII-XLVIII
Yakṣas, (See Rākṣasas & Yakṣas)
Yama, God of death, Son of the Sun and Saṁjñā II.22.29; cursed by Chāyā II.22.54-56; approaches his father II.22.57-63
Yamunā (i) Yama's sister II.22.29
(ii) A sacred river I.45.94-96
Yavanas, A people of Western Bhārata I.48.115-119
Yayāti, S. of Nahuṣa, story of exchange of youth with his son II.31. 28-101
Yoga, Māheśvara I.10.65-89
— Pāśupata I, Chs. 11, 14, 15
— Disturbances in Yoga I.12
— Supreme powers attainable in Yoga I.13
— Rules of conduct in Yoga I.16
— Expiation for violation of rules I.18
— The ultimate state in Yoga I.17
— Yogic way of death I.19.33-40
— Yogins advised to attain Om I.20. 21-26
Yuga, Characteristics of, I.30.28-64
— Duration of Yugas I.57. 23-28
— Condition in the Kṛta Yuga I.8. 49-63
— Condition in the Tretā Yuga I.8. 74 ff., I.57.39-125
— Conditions in the Dvāpara Yuga I.58.1-29
— Conditions in the Kali Age I.58.31-74; II.36.115-125; II.37.382-405